Tab. 14

R36311

# ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK

OF

# ZOOLOGY.

*GENERAL PART AND SPECIAL PART: PROTOZOA TO INSECTA.*

BY

DR. C. CLAUS,

*Professor of Zoology and Comparative Anatomy in the University of Vienna; Director of the Zoological Station at Trieste.*

TRANSLATED AND EDITED BY

ADAM SEDGWICK, M.A.,

*Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge,*

WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF

F. G. HEATHCOTE, B.A.,

*Trinity College, Cambridge.*

ROYAL COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS, EDINR.
LIBRARY

WITH 706 WOODCUTS.

LONDON:
W. SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO.,
PATERNOSTER SQUARE.
1884.

Printed by Hazell, Watson, & Viney, Limited, London and Aylesbury.

# PREFACE TO THE ENGLISH TRANSLATION.

I UNDERTOOK the translation of Professor Claus' excellent "Lehrbuch der Zoologie" with a view of supplying the want, which has long been felt by teachers as well as students in this country, of a good elementary text-book of Zoology. Professor Claus' works on zoology are already well known in this country; and I think it will be generally admitted that they take the first place amongst the zoological text-books of the present day.

It has been decided to publish the English translation in two volumes. The second volume, which begins with Mollusca, is in the press, and will, I trust, appear early in the autumn.

The German has been, with one or two unimportant exceptions, closely followed throughout. These exceptions, and the few additions which I have thought it necessary to make, have in all cases been indicated by enclosure within brackets.

I must ask the indulgence of the reader towards the errors and deficiencies of this translation. I trust that they will be found to be neither numerous nor important. I have to thank Mr. Heathcote for the assistance he has given me in the laborious work of translation. I am also indebted to Professors Newton and Foster, Dr. Gadow, and Mr. W. Heape for advice and assistance.

ADAM SEDGWICK.

TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
1884.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## GENERAL PART.

## CHAPTER IV.



## CHAPTER V.

# SPECIAL PART.

## CHAPTER VI.



## CHAPTER VII.



## CHAPTER VIII.



## CHAPTER IX.

## CHAPTER X.



## ERRATA.

Page 23, last line—*for* "productr" *read* "products."
,, 35, line 9 from bottom—*for* "outgrowth" *read* "outgrowths."
,, 38, ,, 4 from bottom—*for* "possesses" *read* "possess."
,, 46, ,, 4 of explanation of fig. 38—*for* "commencing with" *read* "with commencing."
,, 48, ,, 6 from bottom, *for* "also bring" *read* "also must bring."
,, 58, ,, 10—*for* "repulsion" *read* "expulsion."
,, 73, ,, 14 from bottom—*for* "actual" *read* "kinetic."
,, 95, ,, 5—*omit* "those forms."
,, 156, ,, 12—*for* "spines" *read* "stings."
,, 171, ,, 9—*for* "Carnivora" *read* "Marsupials."
,, 173, ,, 10—*for* "five toed" *read* "five-toed."
,, 205, ,, 20—*for* "Stylongchia" *read* "Stylonychia."
,, 205, ,, 14 from bottom—*for* "style" *read* "stalk."
,, 208, ,, 16—*for* "congregating" *read* "conjugating."
,, 212, ,, 14 from bottom—*for* "burst" *read* "discharge."
,, 327, ,, 8—*for* "Tetrarhyncus" *read* "Tetrarhynchus."
,, 352, Explanation of fig. 284—*for* "Douchmius dodenalis" *read* "Dochmius duodenalis," and *for* "vulna" *read* "vulva."
,, 543, line 18—*for* "arrentokia" *read* "arrenotokia."

# GENERAL PART.

## CHAPTER I.

### ORGANISED AND UNORGANISED SUBSTANCES.

In the world, which is perceptible to our senses, we distinguish between living organized and lifeless unorganised bodies. The former (*i.e.*, animals and plants) are endowed with the power of movement, and they remain the same in spite of manifold changes both of themselves as a whole and of their parts, and in spite of continual change of the matter entering into their composition. Unorganised bodies, on the other hand, are found in a condition of constant rest; and although this rest is not necessarily fixed and unchangeable, *yet they are without that independence of movement which manifests itself in metabolism.* In the former we recognize an organization, a composition of unlike parts (organs), in which the matter exhibits its activity in a fluid and dissolved form; in the latter we meet with a mass which is more uniform, though as far as the position and arrangement of the molecules are concerned, not always homogeneous, and in which the various parts continue in a state of resting equilibrium so long as the unity of the body remains undisturbed. The matter of unorganised bodies (for instance, of crystals) is in a state of stable equilibrium, while through the organised being a stream of matter takes place.

The properties and changes of living bodies are strictly dependent on the physico-chemical laws of matter, and this is recognized more clearly as science advances; yet it must be admitted that we are entirely ignorant of the molecular arrangement of the material basis of a living organism, and it exists under conditions the nature of which is as yet unexplained. These conditions, which we may designate, as vital without thereby calling in question their dependence on material processes, distinguish organisms from all unorganised bodies. They relate (1) to the mode of origin, (2) to the mode of maintenance, (3) to the form and structure of the organism.

Living bodies cannot be manufactured by physico-chemical means from a definite chemical mixture under definite conditions of warmth, pressure, electricity, etc.; their existence rather presupposes, according to our experience, the existence of like or at least very similar beings from which they have originated. It appears that, in the present state of our knowledge, there is no evidence to show that an independent abiogenetic generation (*generatio æquivoca*, spontaneous generation) actually takes place, even in the simplest and lowest forms of life; although very recently some investigators (Pouchet) have been led by results of remarkable but equivocal experiments to the opposite view. The existence of the *generatio æquivoca* would offer a very important service to our contention for the physico-chemical explanation; *it even appears to be a necessary postulate in order to explain the first appearance of organisms.*

The second and most important characteristic of organisms, and that on which the very maintenance of life depends, is their *metabolic power*, *i.e.*, the power which they possess of continually using up and renewing the matter composing the body. Every phenomenon of growth presupposes the reception and change of material constituents; every movement, secretion, and manifestation of life depend on the exchange of matter, on the breaking down and building up of chemical compounds. On this alternating destruction and renewal of the combinations of the body substance two properties necessary to living things depend, viz., *the reception of food and excretion of waste products.*

It is the *organic* substances (so called on account of their occurrence in organisms), *i.e.*, the ternary and quaternary carbon compounds (the former composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, the latter of these with the addition of nitrogen, and among the latter are included the albumins) which undergo the exchanges characterising metabolism; they either (in animals) break up under the influence of oxidation into substances of simpler composition; or (in plants) are built up by substitution from simpler inorganic substances. But just as the general fundamental properties (elasticity, weight, porosity) of organisms agree so closely with those of inorganic bodies, that it was possible to construct a general theory of the constitution of matter, so all the elements (fundamental substances which differ qualitatively, and are chemically incapable of further simplification) of organic matter are again found in inorganic nature. A vital element, *i.e.*, an element peculiar to organisms no more exists than does a vital force working independently of natural and material processes. Also with reference to the method of arrangement of the atoms, *organic and inorganic substances have been erroneously put in sharp contrast;* and the whole of the carbon compounds have been contemplated as the products of organisms only. Now, however, it has been shown for some time not only that the atomic arrangement and constitution of both are explained by the same laws, but also that a great many of the former (urea, alcohol, vinegar, sugar) can be artificially built up by synthesis from their elements. These facts point to the probability that many other organic substances will be synthetically produced, and among them, albumin; and they also permit us to conclude that in the origination of organised bodies the same forces were in action which are sufficient for the formation of unorganised bodies. The functions peculiar to organisms, viz., metabolism, movement, growth, are accordingly to be referred to the properties of the chemical compounds composing them, and particularly to the complicated molecular arrangement of living matter.

Nevertheless, this important property of living things, viz., metabolic action, may under certain conditions be temporarily suppressed, without thereby depriving the organism of the power of existence. By removal of water or of heat it is possible, in the case of many of the lower organisms and their germs, to suspend the vital processes for months and even years; and then to restore the apparently lifeless body to the full excercise of its vital properties by the simple addition of water or warmth (eggs of Apus, Ostracoda, Anguillula tritici, Rotifera—frogs, water insects, plant seeds).

Finally, the living body is distinguished by its entire form and by the manner in which its various parts are connected together; in other words, by its organization. The form of a crystal, the inorganic individual, is unchangeable, and is bounded by straight lines meeting at determined angles, and by plane, rarely spherical surfaces, which are capable of mathematical expression. The shape of organisms,* on the other hand, in consequence of the semifluid consistency of the material composing them, is less sharply determinable and is within certain limits variable. Life manifests itself as a connected series of ever-changing states; and the movements of matter are accompanied by growth and change of form.

* The fact that there are a number of solid excretion products of organisms (shells) whose form is mathematically determinable does not of course annul this distinction.

The organism commencing as a simple cell, the egg or germ, develops by a gradual process of differentiation and change of its parts up to a definite point at which it has the power of reproducing itself; finally it dies, and breaks up into its elements. The greater part of the substance composing organised bodies is more or less semifluid and liable to osmotic action,—a condition which appears to be necessary both for the carrying on of chemical changes (*corpora non agunt nisi soluta*), and for the modification of the entire form of the organism; it is not however homogeneous and uniform, but is composed of solid, semifluid, and fluid parts which exist as combinations of elements of a peculiar form. Crystals do not possess heterogeneous units subordinated to one another, which, *like the organs of living bodies, serve as instruments for the performance of different functions*, but are composed of molecules of similar atomic constitution; the absence of uniformity in their structure in different directions (planes of cleavage) being due to the arrangement of the molecules, and not to any difference in the molecules themselves. *Organs* again prove, on examination of their finer structure, to be built up of different parts or tissues (organs of a lower order), and these again are composed of the ultimate unit of cell, *the cell.* The cell, last of all, is to be traced back to the germ cell (ovum, spermoblast) (fig 1.)

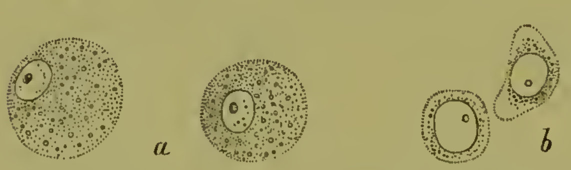



FIG. 1.—*a*, young ova of a Medusa; *b*, mother-cells of spermatozoa of a Vertebrate; one of them presented amœboid movement.

The cell by its properties stands in direct contrast to the crystal, and potentially possesses the properties of the living organism. *It consists of a small lump of a semifluid albuminous substance (protoplasm), containing, as a rule, a dense or vesicular structure, the nucleus*, and is frequently surrounded by a peripheral structureless membrane. If the latter is not developed, the presence of life is indicated by a more or less pronounced amœboid movement, the fluid protoplasm sending out and drawing in processes of a continually changing form.

In this organised fundamental structure, from which all tissues and organs of animals and plants are developed, lie latent all the characters of the organism. The cell is, therefore, in a certain sense the first form of the organism, and indeed the simplest organism. While its origin points to the pre-existence of cells of a similar kind, its maintenance is rendered possible by metabolism. The cell has its nourishment and excretion, its growth, movement, change of form, and reproduction. With participation of the nucleus it begets by division or endogenous cell formation new units like itself, and furnishes the material for the construction of tissues, for the formation, growth and change of the body. With justice, therefore, is the cell recognised as the special embodiment of life, and life as the activity of the cell.

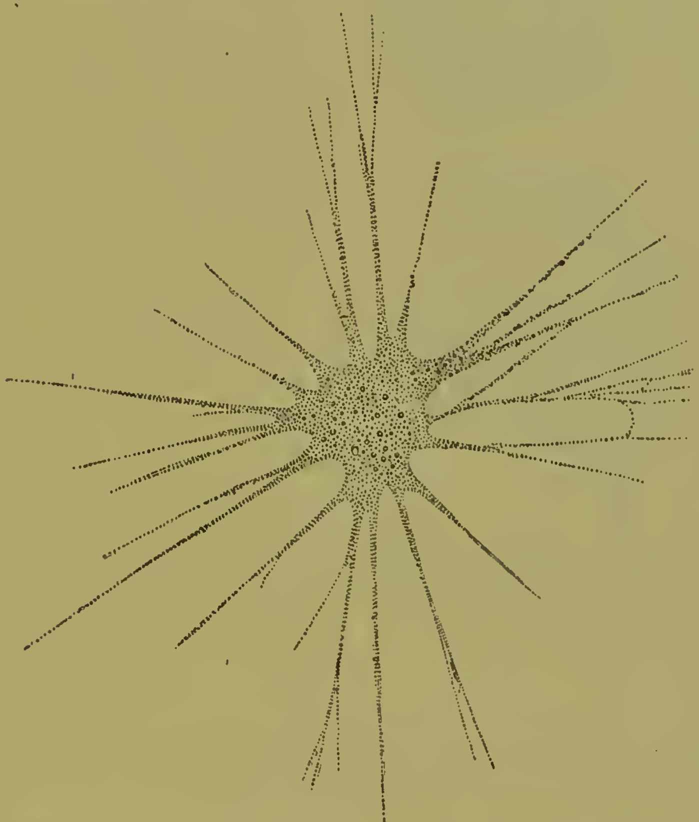


FIG. 2.—Amœba (Protogenes) porrecta (after Max Schultze).

Nor is this conception of the significance of the cell as the criterion of organisation and as the simplest form of life contradicted by the facts that the nucleus also sometimes fails (so-called cytodes of Hæckel), and that bodies undoubtedly manifesting vital phenomena are known which are structureless under the highest power of the microscope. Many Schizomycetes (Micrococcus) are so small that it is difficult to distinguish them in some cases from the granules of precipitates, especially when they show only molecular motion [Brownean movements] (fig. 3). *Consequently, the living protoplasm, with its unknown molecular arrangement, is the only absolute test of the cell and organism in general.*

While appreciating the essential differences which have been expressed in the above discussion of the properties of living things and unorganised bodies, we must not in our criticism of the relations between them lose sight of the fact, that in numerous lower forms of life, metabolism, and all the activities of life can be completely suppressed by the removal of warmth and water, without thereby injuring the capacity of the organism for continuing to live; and further, that in the smallest organisms, which are proved to be such by their capacity of reproducing themselves by their metabolism, and it is impossible, by means of the very strongest powers of the microscope, to detect any organization. Since, moreover, the organic matter composing such forms consist of combinations which can be produced by synthesis, independently of organization, we must allow that hypothesis a certain justification which asserts that the simplest forms of life have been developed from unorganised matter, in which the same chemical elements occur as are found in organisms.

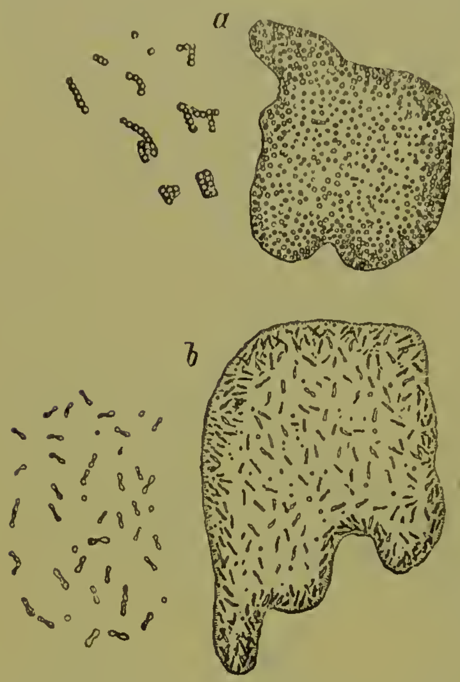



FIG. 3.—Schizomycetes (after F. Cohn). *a*, Micrococcus; *b*, Bacterium termo, Bacteria found in putrefying bodies both in motile and *Zooglœa* form.

Since no fundamental difference has been shown to hold between the matter and force of crystals and those of organized beings, we might look upon the first appearance of life as essentially only the solution of a difficult mechanical problem (with Du Bois Reymond), were we not obliged to conclude that there is present even in the simplest and most primitive organisms the germs of sensation and consciousness, attributes which we cannot regard as simply the results of the movement of matter.

# CHAPTER II.

## ANIMALS AND PLANTS.

THE division of living bodies into animals and plants rests on a series of ideas early impressed on our minds. In animals we observe free movements and independent manifestations of life, arising from internal states of the organism, which point to the existence of consciousness and sensation. In the majority of plants, which pass their lives fixed in the earth, we miss locomotion and independent activities indicative of sensation. Therefore we ascribe to animals voluntary movement and sensation, and also a mind which is the seat of these.

Nevertheless these conceptions apply only to a proportionately narrow circle of organisms, viz., to the highest animals and plants. With the progress of experience, the conviction is forced upon us that the traditional conception of animals and plants needs, so far as science is concerned, to be modified. For although we find no difficulty in distinguishing a vertebrate animal from a phanerogamous plant, still our conceptions do not suffice when we come to the simpler and lower forms of life. There are numerous instances amongst the lower animals in which power of locomotion and distinct signs of sensation and consciousness are absent; while, on the other hand, there are plants which possess irritability and the power of free movement. Accordingly the properties of animals and plants have to be compared more closely, and at the same time the question has to be discussed, whether there are any absolute distinctive characters which sharply separate the one kingdom from the other.

1. In their *entire form and organization* there seems to be an essential contrast between animals and plants. Animals possess a number of internal organs of complicated structure, lodged within a compact outline; while in plants the nutritive and excretory organs are spread out as external appendages, with a considerable superficial extension. In the one case there is found an inner, and in the other an outer position for the absorbent surface. Animals have a mouth for the entry of solid and fluid nutritive matters, which are digested and absorbed in the interior of an alimentary canal, into which open various glands, (salivary glands, liver, pancreas, etc). The useless solid remains of the food pass out through the anus as fæces. The nitrogenous waste material is excreted by a special urinary

organ (kidney), mostly in a fluid form. For the movement and circulation of the fluid carrying the absorbed nutriment, there is a pulsatory pump (heart) and a system of blood vessels, while respiration is usually carried on in terrestrial animals by lungs, and in aquatic animals by gills. Finally, animals possess internally placed generative organs, and a nervous system, and sense organs for the production of sensation.

In plants, on the contrary, the vegetative organs have a much simpler form. Roots serve to absorb fluid nutriment, while the leaves act as respiratory and assimilating organs, taking in and giving out gas. The complicated systems of organs found in animals are absent, and a more uniform parenchyma of cells and vessels, in which the sap moves, composes the body of plants. The generative organs also are placed in external appendages, and there are no nervous and sense organs.

Nevertheless, the above mentioned differences are not universally found, but rather hold only for the higher animals and plants, and gradually disappear with the simplification of the organization.

Even among vertebrates, and still more is it the case amongst mollusca, and the lower segmented animals, the respiratory and vascular organs are considerably simplified. The lungs or gills may fail as special organs, and be replaced by the whole outer surface of the body. The blood vessels are simplified, and sometimes they and the heart are absent, the blood being moved in more irregular streams in the body cavity and in the wall-less spaces in the organs. Similarly, the digestive organs are simplified; salivary glands and liver may no longer be found as glandular appendages of the alimentary canal. The alimentary canal may become a blind, branched, or simple sac (Trematoda), or a central cavity, the walls of which are in contact with the body wall (Cœlenterata). The mouth and alimentary canal may also fail (Cestodes), nourishment being taken in by osmosis through the outer walls of the body as in plants. Finally, nerves

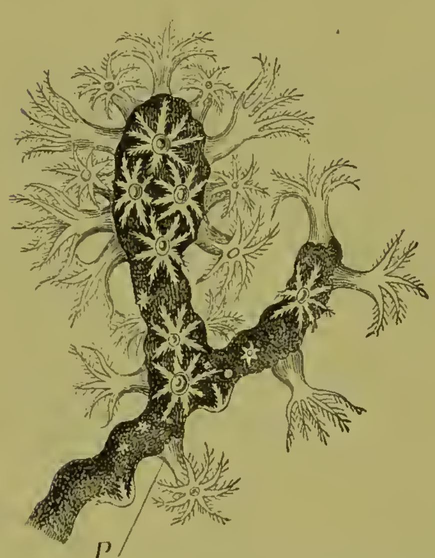



FIG. 4.—Branch of a Polyparium of Corallium rubrum (after Lacaze Duthiers). *P*, Polyp.

and sense organs are totally absent in many organisms, which are looked upon as animals, *e.g.*, in the whole of the Protozoa.

With such reduction of the internal organs it is easy to understand that the simpler lower animals, such as colonies of polyps and the Siphonophora, should often in their outer appearance and the manner of their growth resemble plants, with which they were formerly confounded, especially when they at the same time lacked the power of free locomotion (Polyps, Hydroids, figs. 4, 5). In these cases it is as difficult to apply the idea of "individuality" as it is in the vegetable kingdom.

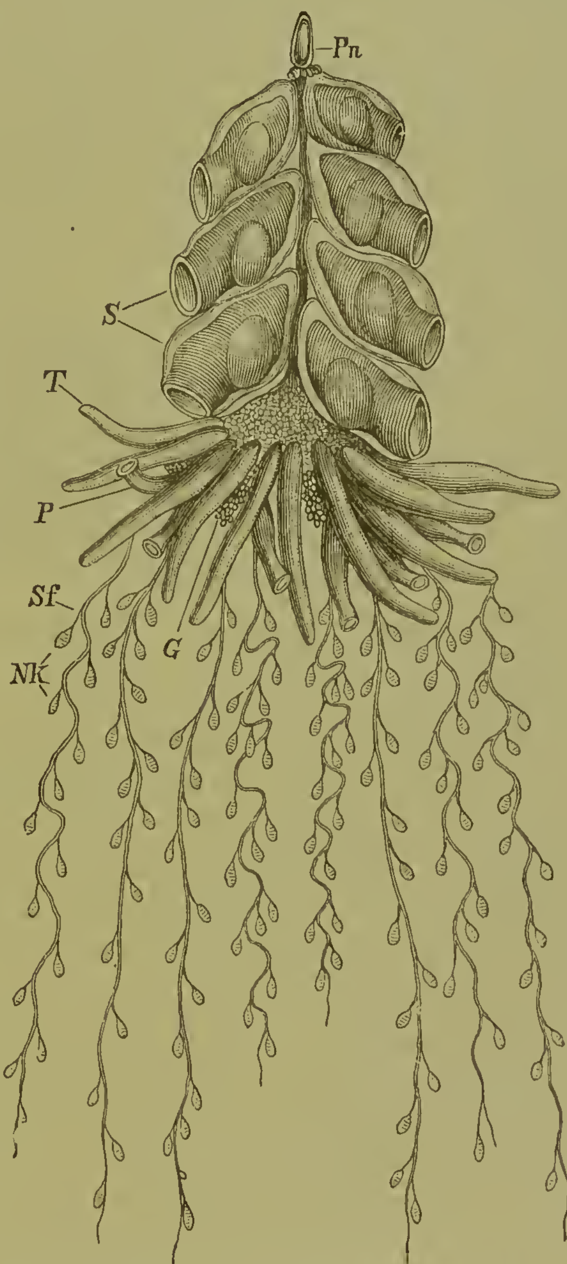



FIG. 5.—Physophora hydrostatica. *Pn*, Pneumatophor; *S*, Swimming-bells; *T*, Dactylozooid; *P*, polypite or stomach with the tentacles, *Sf.*; *Nk*, terminal swellings on the latter provided with thread-cells; *G*, Clusters of gonophores

2. *Between animal and vegetable tissues* there exists also generally an important difference. While in the vegetable tissues the cells preserve their original form and independence, in the animal tissues they undergo very various modifications at the expense of their independence. Accordingly vegetable tissues consist of uniform cell-aggregates, the individual cells of which have retained sharply-marked boundaries; while in animal tissues the cells give rise to extremely different structures, in which the cells as such do not always remain recognisable. The reason for this unlike condition of the tissues must apparently be sought in the different structure of

the cell itself; the vegetable cell being surrounded outside its primordial utricle by a thick non-nitrogenous cuticle, the cellulose capsule; while the animal cell possesses a very delicate nitrogenous membrane, or instead of this only a more viscous boundary layer of of its own semi-fluid contents. Nevertheless, there are also vegetable cells provided only with a simple naked primordial utricle; and, on the other hand, animal tissues which resemble vegetable tissues in the fact that the cells remain independent and develop a capsule (Chorda dorsalis, cartilage, supporting cells in the tentacles of hydroids, fig. 6).

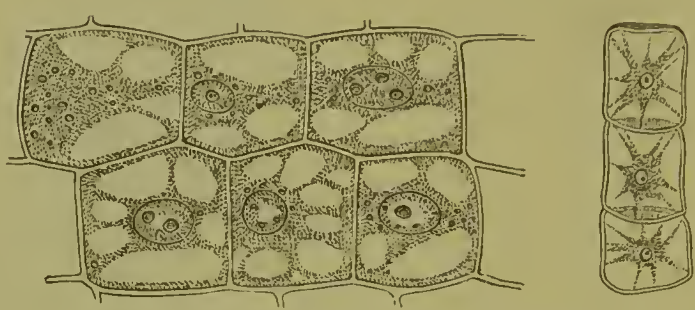



Fig. 6.—*a*, Vegetable parenchyma (after Sachs). *b*, Axial-cells from the tentacles of Campanularia.

Neither can we, as has been done by many investigators, regard the multicellular composition of the body as a necessary sign of animal life. For not only are there many unicellular algæ and fungi, but also animal organisms which are composed of one simple or complexly differentiated cell (Protozoa). Finally, it is not possible to see any reason why unicellular animals should not exist, especially when we consider that the cell forms the starting-point for the development of the animal body.

3. Least of all can a test be found in the reproductive processes. In plants indeed we find a predominance of the asexual method of increase by spores and buds, but similar methods of increase are widely present amongst the lower and more simply organised animals. Sexual reproduction is effected both in animals and plants by processes which are essentially similar; consisting in both of the fusion of the male element (*spermatozoon*) with the female element (*ovum*); and the form of these elements presents in both kingdoms a great agreement, at any rate they are in every case derived from cells. The structure and position of the generative organs inside the body, or as outer appendages of it, cannot be regarded as a distinguishing mark, inasmuch as in both kingdoms the greatest difference prevails in this respect.

4. *The chemical constituents and the metabolic processes* in animals and plants present, on the whole, important features of difference. Formerly great importance was attached to the fact that plants consist chiefly of ternary (non-nitrogenous) compounds, while animals consist of quaternary nitrogenous compounds; and a greater importance was attached in the former to the carbon, in the latter to the nitrogen. But ternary compounds are found to be largely present in the animal body, *e.g.*, fats, carbohydrates; while, on the other hand, quaternary proteids play an important part in those parts of a plant which are especially active in growth. Protoplasm found in the living vegetable cell is richly nitrogenous, and of an albuminous nature; and it agrees in its micro-chemical reactions with sarcode, the contractile substance of the lower animals. In addition, the modifications of egg albumen, known as fibrin, albumen, and casein, are also found in vegetable cells. Finally, it is not possible to mention any substance which is universally and exclusively found either in animals or in plants. Chlorophyll (green colouring matter of leaves) occurs in the lower animals (Stentor, Hydra, Bonellia), while, on the other hand, it is totally absent in Fungi. Cellulose, a peculiar non-nitrogenous substance found in the outer membranes of vegetable cells, occurs in the mantle of Ascidians. Cholesterin, and certain substances especially characteristic of nervous tissues, are also found in plants (Leguminosæ).

Of far greater importance is the difference in the nourishment and metabolic processes. Plants take up with certain salts (phosphates and sulphates of the alkalies and earths) more especially water, carbonic dioxide (carbonic acid), and nitrates or ammonia compounds, and build up organic compounds of a higher grade from these binary inorganic substances. Animals, in addition to taking up water and salts, require organic food, especially carbon compounds (fat) and nitrogenous, albuminous substances; which, in the cycle of metabolism, break down to nitrogenous waste products (amides and acids), kreatin, tyrosin, leucin, urea, etc.; uric acid, hippuric acid, etc. Plants exhale oxygen, whilst they are decomposing carbon dioxide by means of their chlorophyll under the influence of light, and are forming in their chlorophyll corpuscles organic substances from carbon dioxide and solutions containing combined nitrogen. Animals take up oxygen through their respiratory organs for the maintenance of their metabolism. The processes of metabolism and of respiration, therefore, in the two kingdoms are indeed mutually determinant, but have an exactly opposite result. The life of animals depends on the analysis of complex compounds, and is essentially an oxidation process, by which potential energy is converted into kinetic (movement, production of heat, light). The vital activity of plants, on the contrary, is based, so far as it relates to assimilation, on synthesis, and is essentially a process of reduction; under the influence of which the energy of warmth and light is stored up, kinetic energy being converted into potential.

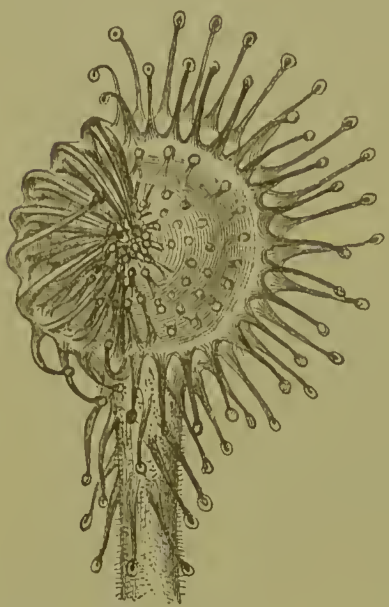


FIG. 7.—Leaf of Drosera rotundifolia, with partially contracted tentacles (after Darwin).

Nevertheless, this difference also is not applicable as a test in all cases. Recently the attention of investigators has been turned, especially by Hooker and Darwin,* to the remarkable nutritive and digestive processes in a group of plants which were first observed a hundred years ago (Ellis). The plants in question catch, after the manner of animals, small organisms, especially insects, and absorb from them through the glandular surface of their leaves the organic matter after a chemical process resembling animal digestion (leaves of the Sun-dew, *Drosera rotundifolia,* and the fly-catcher, *Dionæa muscipula.* Figs. 7 & 8). Many parasitic plants and almost all fungi have not, however, in general, the power of making organic substances from inorganic, but suck up organic juices; and in taking up oxygen and giving out carbonic acid, they present a respiratory process resembling that found in animals.

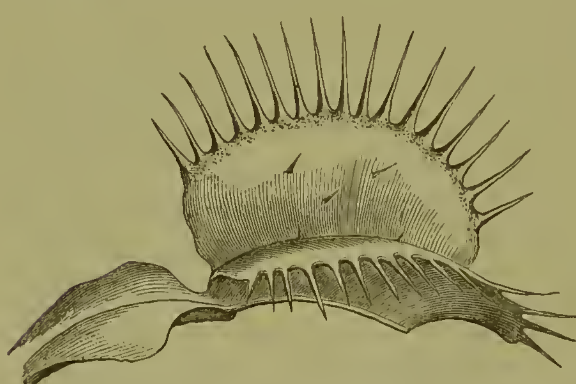


FIG. 8.—Leaf of Dionæa muscipula in expanded condition (after Darwin).

It was established by Saussure's observations that all plants require oxygen at certain intervals; that in those parts of plants which are not green, not possessing chlorophyll, and also in the green parts in the absence of sunlight, *i.e.* at night, a consumption of oxygen and exhalation

* Compare especially Ch. Darwin, "Insectivorous Plants." London, 1875.

of carbonic acid goes on. In plants, therefore, together with the characteristic deoxidation process, there is always found a process of oxidation analogous to that occurring in animal metabolism; by which a part of the assimilated substances is again destroyed. The growth of plants is impossible without the consumption of oxygen and the production of carbonic acid. The more energetic the growth, the more oxygen is consumed, as indeed the germinating seed or the quickly unfolding leaf and flower buds rapidly consume oxygen and excrete carbonic acid. In this connection should be mentioned the fact that the movements of protoplasm depend upon the inspiration of oxygen. The production of heat (in germination), also of light (*Agaricus olearius*) is accompanied by an active consumption of oxygen. Finally, there are organisms (yeast cells, Schizomycetes) which indeed manufacture both nitrogenous and albuminous compounds, but do not assimilate the carbon of carbonic acid, but rather derive the necessary carbon from prepared carbohydrates (Pasteur, Cohn).

5. *Voluntary movement and sensation,* according to the common view, is the chief characteristic of animal life. Formerly, the power of free locomotion was looked upon as a necessary property of animals; and as a consequence of this the fixed colonies of Polyps were considered to be plants, until Peyssonnel brought forward proof of their animal nature, a view which by the influence of the great naturalists of the last century has gained general recognition. More recently, on the discovery of the existence of motile spores of algæ, it was first recognised that plants also, especially at certain stages of their development (fig. 9), possessed the power of free locomotion, so that we are compelled to direct our attention to the signs by which the voluntary nature of the movement can be decided for a distinction between the respective movements of animals and plants. As such for a long time was regarded the contractile nature of the movement as opposed to the uniform movements of plants carried out with rigid bodies.

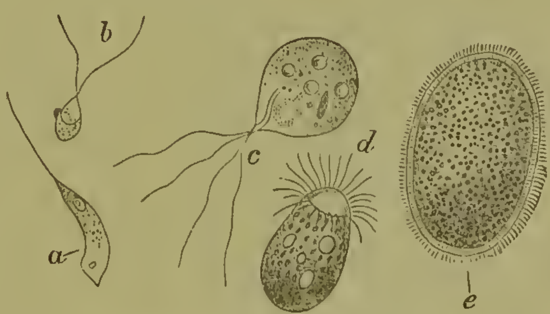


FIG. 9.—Zoospores, *a*, of *Physarum*; *b*, of *Monostroma*; *c*, of *Ulothrix*; *d*, of *Bedogonium*; *e*, of *Vaucheria* (after Reinke).

In the place of muscles, which as a special tissue are absent in the lower animals, there is present an undifferentiated albuminous substance known as sarcode, the contractile matrix of the body. The viscous contents of vegetable cells, known as protoplasm, possesses likewise the power of contractility, and resembles sarcode in its most essential properties. Both present the same chemical reactions and agree in the frequent presence of cilia, vacuoles, and streams of granules. Pulsating spaces, the contractile vacuoles, are not exclusively a possession of sarcode, but may also occur in the protoplasm of vegetable cells (*Gonium*, *Chlamydomonas*, *Chætophora*). The contractility of the protoplasm of vegetable cells is, as a rule, limited by the cellulose membrane, but in the naked cells of *Volvocina* and *Saprolegnia*, and in the amœba-like forms occurring in the development of *Myxomycetes*, the contractile power is as intense as in the sarcode of *Infusoria* and *Rhizopoda*. The amœboid movements of the plasmodium of Myxomycetes (fig. 10) are not inferior in intensity to those of a genuine Amœba belonging to the Rhizopoda, *e.g.*, *Amœba polypodia* (*princeps*), (fig. 11). In these similar phenomena of movement of the lower animals and plants we seek in vain for any test of volition, the interpretation of which will depend upon the individual judgment of the observer.


Fig. 10.—Zoospores of *Aethalium septicum* after de Bary. *a*, in condition of hatching; *b*, as mastigopods; *c*, in the amœboid stage; *d*, a piece of plasmodium.

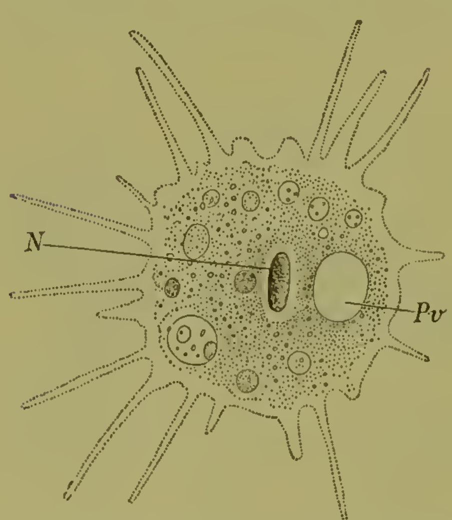



Fig. 11.—*Amœba Dactylosphæra polypodia*. N, nucleus. *Pv*, contractile vacuole (after Fr E. Schultze).

The faculty of sensation, which is inconceivable as a function of matter and which must be always pre-supposed wherever we have to do with voluntary movement, can by no means be affirmed with certainty in all animal organisms. Many of the lower animals entirely lack a nervous system and sense organs, and, on stimulation, exhibit but slight movements not more intense than those of plants. This irritability, however, appears widely present among the higher plants. The sensitive plants move their leaves on the application of mechanical stimuli (*Mimoseæ*), or bend like the sundew (*Drosera*, fig. 7) small knobbed processes of the leaf surface which are comparable to the tentacles of polyps. The fly-catcher (*Dionæa*, fig. 8) brings the two halves of the leaf together in a valve-like manner when touched by insects. The stamens of the *Centaurea* contract along their whole length on mechanical and electrical stimulation, and according to the same laws as do the muscle of the higher animals. Many flowers open and shut under the influence of light at certain times of the day.

Accordingly *irritability* as well as *contractility* appears to be a property both of vegetable tissue and of the protoplasm of vegetable cells; and it is not possible to determine whether volition and sensation, which we exclude from these phenomena in plants, play a part in the similar sensory and motor phenomena of the lower animals.

In none of the above-mentioned characteristics of animal and vegetable life, then, do we find any absolute test, and we are not in a position to indicate the presence of a sharp line between the two kingdoms.

From the common starting-point of the contractile substance* animals and plants are developed in different directions; at the beginning of their development they present many kinds of resemblance, and it is only on their attaining a more complete organization that the full opposition between them is apparent. In this sense, without wishing to draw a sharp line between the two series of organization, we can define our conception of an animal by putting together all the characteristics distinguishing the direction of animal development.

An animal, therefore, is to be defined as an organism provided with the power of free and voluntary movement, and with sensation; whose organs are internal, and are derived from a development of the internal surfaces of the body; which needs organic food, inspires oxygen, changes potential energy into kinetic under the influence of oxidation processes in metabolism, and excretes carbonic acid and nitrogenous waste productr.

* The formation of an intermediate kingdom for the simplest forms of life is neither scientifically justified, nor from practical considerations desirable. On the contrary, the acceptance of the *Protista* would only double the difficulty of determining the limit.

Zoology is the science which has animals for its subject, and which seeks to examine the phenomena of their structure and life, as well as their relations to one another and to the outer world.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### THE ORGANIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT OF ANIMALS IN GENERAL.

In the foregoing comparison of animals and plants for the establishment of a correct idea of the meaning of the word "animal," the great variety and the numerous grades of animal structure have been hinted at. Just as the complex organism is built up from the ovum by a process of gradual differentiation, and often during its free life passes through conditions which lead in ascending series to an ever higher development of the parts and to a more complete performance of functions; so, if the animal kingdom be examined as a whole, there is apparent a similar law of gradually progressing development, of an ascent from the simple to the complex, manifest both in the form of the body and in the composition of its parts as well as in the completeness of the phenomena of life.

It is true that the grades of animal structure do not, like those of the developing individual, follow the one upon the other in a single continuous series; and the parallel between the developmental gradation of types in the animal kingdom as a whole and the successive conditions of an individual animal breaks down in so far as we distinguish in the former, as opposed to the latter, a number of types of animal structure often overlapping, but still, in their higher development, essentially different from each other. These we regard as the highest divisions of the system.

#### INDIVIDUAL—ORGAN—STOCK.

The animal organism, when viewed from a physiological and morphological stand-point, presents itself as an independent and indivisible unit, as a "complete individual." Amputated limbs or excised parts of the body do not develop into new animals; in fact we cannot usually remove a single piece of the body without thereby endangering the life of the organism, for it is only as a complex of all its parts that the body can retain its full vital energy. With reference to the property of the indivisibility of the individual, we understand by the term organ every part of the body which as a unit subordinate to the higher unit of the organism presents a definite form and structure, and performs a corresponding function; that is to say, an organ is one of those numerous instruments on the combined working of which the life of the individual depends.

There are certainly among the simpler animals many instances in which the term individual in its usual sense cannot be rightly applied. In such cases we have to do with structures which from their development must be termed individuals, and represent individuals, accordingly, in a *morphological* sense. A great many of them are, however, fused to a common stock, forming what is known as a colony, and are related physiologically to this, as organs are to an organism. They are accordingly *incomplete* or *morphological* individuals, which are usually incapable of leading a separate existence; and, when they differ from each other in form and function, dividing amongst themselves the labours, the performance of which is necessary for the maintenance of the whole colony, they always perish if separated from it.

Such polymorphous* stocks of animals present the properties of individuals although they are morphologically aggregations of individuals which behave physiologically as organs (fig. 5). On the other hand, groups of organs can acquire individual independence.

In the animal body organs do not always remain single, but the same organ may be often repeated. The manner of the repetition is dependent on the kind of symmetry, which may be radiate or bilateral. In animals with radiate symmetry, *the Radiata*, it is possible to connect two opposite points of the body by an axis, which may be called the chief axis, and to divide the body by sections passing through this axis into a number of equivalent and symmetrical parts known as *antimeres*. The organs which are not repeated are situated in the chief axis of the body, while the other organs, which are uniformly repeated in each antimere, are situated peripherally. Each antimere contains, therefore, a definite group of organs and represents a secondary unit, which, together with its fellows and the central organs, constitutes the primary unit, *i.e.*, the perfect animal.

In a radiate animal a number of lines can be drawn at right angles to the chief axis, corresponding in number to the antimeres, and each passing along the middle of an antimere; such lines are known as *radial*. Similarly, a corresponding number of *inter-radial* lines

* *Vide* R. Leuckart, "Ueber den Polymorphismus der Individuen und die Erscheinung der Arbeitstheilung in der Natur." Giessen, 1851.

can be drawn, passing between the antimeres. A vertical section through a radial line divides the corresponding antimere into two

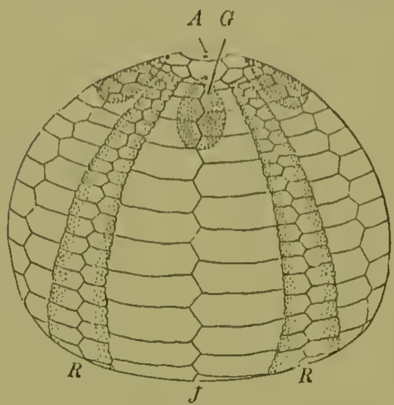



FIG. 12*a*.—Sea-urchin (diagrammatic). *J*, inter-radius with the double row of interambulacral plates and the genital organs *G*; *R*, radii with the double row of ambulacral-plates perforated by the ambulacral pores. *A*, anus.

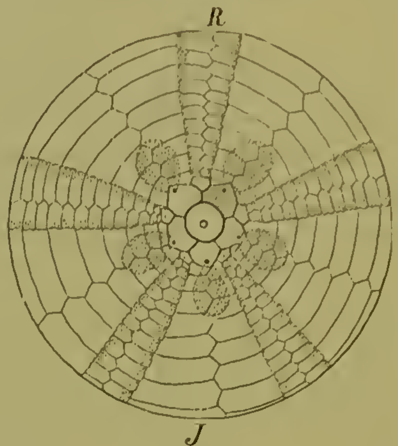



FIG. 12*b*.—Shell of a Sea-urchin seen from above. *R*, radius with the perforated plates; *J*, inter-radius with the corresponding generative organs and their pores.

equal parts, while a similar section through an inter-radial line divides one antimere from its neighbour. Radiate animals may have two, three, etc., radii; and in animals which possess an uneven number of radii, one radius and one inter-radius always fall in the same vertical plane (fig. 12*a*, *b*, and fig. 13). In animals with an even number of radii, on the contrary, each vertical plane passes through two radii or two inter-radii. A vertical section passing through one radius would, if prolonged, pass through the radius of the opposite antimere (fig. 14*a*). For example, an animal with four radii possesses four antimeres, each of which will be divided into two, by two radial vertical sections passing at right angles to each other through the chief axis; while they will all be separated from each other by two similarly directed inter-radial sections.

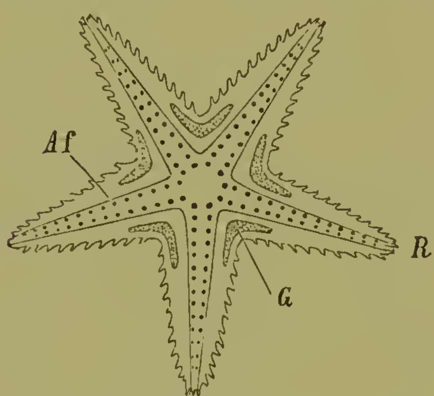



FIG. 13.—Star-fish (diagrammatic). *G*, generative organ in inter-radius; *Af*, position of the ambulacral feet in the radii.

Biradiate forms (the Ctenophora) possess, on the contrary, only two radii, which lie in a common vertical plane. A second vertical plane crossing the first at right angles passes through the inter-radii, and divides the antimeres from each other. The first, in which the greater number of organs are repeated, may be designated the *transverse plane*, while the second, corresponding to the median plane of bilateral animals, is known as the *sagittal plane* (fig. 14*b*).

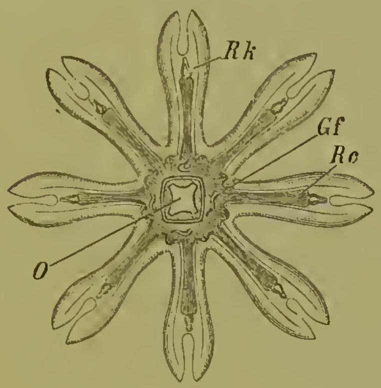



FIG. 14*a*.—Acalepha larva (Ephyra). *Rk*, marginal body; *Gf*, gastric filament. *Rc*, radial-canal; *O*, mouth.

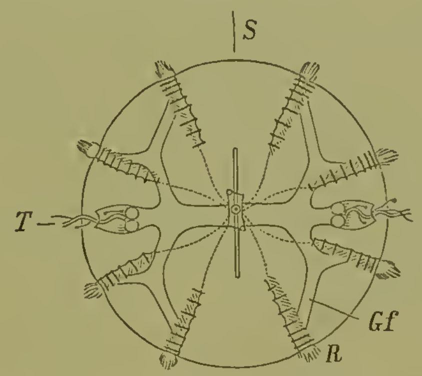



FIG. 14*b*. — Ctenopheran seen from above. *S*, sagittal plane; *T*, trans verse plane; *R*, vibratile plates; *Gf*, gastric canals.

In the bilateral arrangement, which is found also in each individual antimere of the Radiata, only one plane, the *median plane*, can be imagined, which passes through the chief axis and divides the body into two exactly similar parts (right and left). These two halves, as opposed to antimeres, may be termed *parameres*. In bilateral animals we distinguish an anterior and posterior end, a right and a left side, and a dorsal and a ventral surface. The unpaired organs are placed in the middle line, on each side of which, in the two halves of the body, are placed the paired organs. The plane which is placed at right angles to the median plane (passing from right to left) and separates the unlike dorsal and ventral halves of the body, is known as the lateral plane. The antimeres of the Radiata also consist of two parameres, and are therefore bilateral, in that the vertical plane passing through the radius like the median plane divides them into two similar parts.

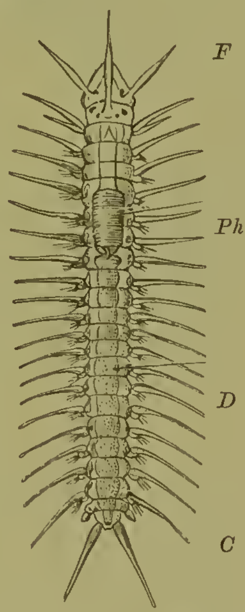



FIG. 15.—Segmented worm (Polychætc). *Ph*, pharynx; *D*, alimentary canal; *C*, cirrus; *F*, tentacle.

The same groups of organs or similar parts of the same organ may also be repeated in a longitudinal direction. This occurs especially frequently in bilateral, less frequently in radiate animals (*strobila*). The body thus obtains a segmentation, and is divisible into successive sections, the *segments* or *metameres*, which are placed one behind the other, and more or less completely resemble each other in structure (*Annelids*, fig. 15). The successive segments may in structure and function appear completely equivalent, and represent, like the antimeres of the Radiata, individuals of a lower order, which on the severance of their mutual connection can acquire independence and remain alive for a shorter or longer period (*proglottis* of Cestodes).

In animals of higher organization the segments are much more intimately connected, and are mutually dependent, but they lose at the same time their complete homonomy. In the same degree as the metameres acquire an unlike structure, and corresponding to this a varying importance in the life of the organism, they lose their individual independence, and sink more and more to the value of organs.

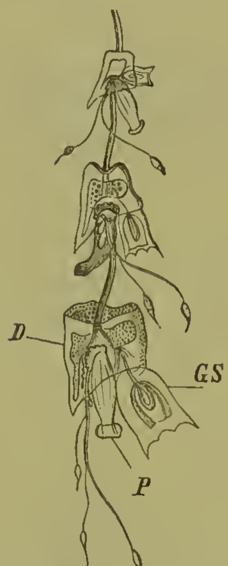



FIG. 16.—Portion of Diphyes fter R. Leuckart). *D*, hydrophyllium ; *Gs*, gonophore ; *P*, Polyp with tentacle. The groups of individuals separate themselves as Eudoxia.

The metameres in the polymorphous colonies are quite analogous to the segments of the individual. In them there follow, one behind the other, similar groups of different individuals, each of which fulfils singly the conditions necessary for existence, and therefore can continue to live as a colony of a lower order when separated from the stock (*Eudoxia*, *Diphyes*, fig. 16).

The distinction into a higher and lower order also holds for organs. There are organs which are reducible to a single cell, or to an aggregation of equivalent cells (simple organs), and others in the formation of which various cells and tissues (compound organs) participate, and which frequently, in their turn, may be divided into parts different in structure and function. The compound organs of higher order are composed of different parts which function as organs of a lower order. These, again, are composed of various kinds of cells and cell derivates, which are organs of a still lower order. Finally, in the last analysis, we come to the cell or the area of protoplasm corresponding to it, which is the simplest and ultimate organ. On the other hand, we group together organs of different order, which are intimately connected so far as their chief function is concerned, under the name of *system* (vascular system, nervous system) or *apparatus* (digestive apparatus), although we cannot clearly distinguish them from compound organs.

## CELLS AND CELL TISSUES.

The constituent parts of which an organ is made up are known as tissues. They possess a definite structure, visible with the help of a microscope, and have either the form of cells or of structures derived from cells. Tissues have a function corresponding to their special structure, and this function determines the whole function of the organ. They may, therefore, be regarded as organs of a lower order. The ultimate unit, the organ of the lowest order, or elementary organ,* from which all tissues are derived, is the cell. The essential part of a cell is not, as we have already seen, the membrane or the nucleus, but the protoplasm, with its special molecular arrangement, in which reside the functions of independent movement, of metabolism and of reproduction (fig. 1).

The nucleus of a cell is either a solid mass of protoplasm or a more fluid structure enclosed by a firm membrane, and may contain one or more solid bodies (nucleolus). Different as are the forms which the nucleus may take, it always contains a fluid substance, the *nuclear fluid*, and a protoplasmic substance, the *nuclear substance* of a special importance for the functions of the nucleus (fig. 17).

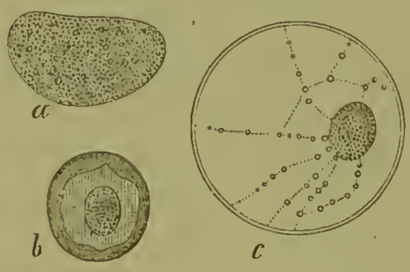


FIG 17.—Different forms of nuclei (after R. Hertwig). *a*, nucleus from a cell of a Malpighian tubule of a caterpillar. *b*, nucleus of a Heliozoon with a cortical layer and nucleolus in the nuclear fluid. *c*, nucleus from the egg of a Sea-urchin. Nucleolus imbedded in a protoplasmic fibrous network surrounded by nuclear fluid.

An important and very general property of protoplasm is its power of contractility. The living mass presents, in connection with metabolism, phenomena of movement. These movements are not merely confined to the currents of solid particles suspended in the viscous contents of the cell, but are shown also in the change of form of the whole cell. If the outer part of the protoplasm has condensed so as to give rise to a cell membrane, *i.e.*, if the cell has acquired a distinct wall, the changes in its form are very much restricted. In other cases the movement shows itself in a quick or slow change in the outer form. The cell in this case manifests

* Th. Schwann, "Microscopische Untersuchungen über die Uebereinstimmung in der Structur und dem Wachsthum der Thiere und Pflanzen." Berlin, 1839. Fr. Leydig, "Lehrbuch der Histologie des menschen und der Thiere." Frankfurt a.M. 1857.

the so-called amœboid motion; it sends out processes, draws them in again, and is able by such means to change its position. This capacity of change of form is especially possessed by young undifferentiated cells, which have not developed an outer membrane. Such cells in their later growth usually develop a cell membrane, which accordingly is not, as was formerly supposed, a necessary constituent of the cell, but is merely an indication that the cell has undergone a certain amount of differentiation from its early indifferent condition.

It has been already pointed out that the fundamental properties which distinguish the life of organisms manifest themselves also in the life of their constituent cells. According to our present knowledge, cells always originate from pre-existing cells; a process of free cell formation, as conceived by Schwann and Schleiden, indicated by the precedent origin of nuclei in a formative organic material, has never been proved.

Such a process may, however, take place when the formative matter is the plasma of a cell, or of several cells fused together (plasmodium). In such cases we have a process of free cell formation (*e.g.*, spore formation in Myxomycetes) which certainly is not clearly marked off from a process of new formation within the mother cell, and is to be looked upon as a modification of the so-called endogenous cell formation. This leads us to a consideration of the very widely distributed method of cell increase by *division*. When the cell has reached a certain size by the absorption and assimilation of nutrient matter, the protoplasm separates itself into two nearly equal portions, this process being usually preceded by the division of the nucleus. Each portion receives half of the original nucleus.

During its division the nucleus undergoes, as has been recently shown in many instances, peculiar differentiations and changes (fig. 18). It becomes spindle-shaped; its contents take on the form of longitudinally arranged striæ, running from pole to pole of the spindle; the centre of each of the striæ becomes thickened, giving rise to a cross equatorial zone of granular matter, the nuclear plate (thickened zone). The central thickenings constituting the nuclear plate divide. Each half travels towards the poles of the spindle, and becomes there enclosed in a clear fluid mass, which appears in the protoplasm. From these two structures the new nuclei are formed at the poles of the now dumb-bell shaped nuclear spindle, the striæ of which vanish during the constriction of the protoplasm, which has already commenced and quickly progresses. The division is completed when the young nuclei, proceeding from the two poles of the nuclear spindle and the surrounding clear protoplasm, have attained their definite size, and the remains of the fibres have been absorbed.

During these processes the protoplasm of the cell has gradually become more and more constricted by a furrow which is directed transversely to the long axis of the nuclear spindle, and which after the completion of the division of the nucleus brings about a separation of the cell contents into two masses—the daughter cells (fig. 18).

If the products of the division are unequal, so that the smaller portion may be looked upon as a production of the larger, we give the name "*budding*" to this form of reproduction.


FIG. 18.—Processes of cell division in an embryonic blood corpuscle of a chick (after Bütschli). *K*, nuclear spindle. *Kp*, nuclear plate or equatorial thickening.

Finally, the term *endogenous* cell formation is applied to that method of increase in which the cells originate within the mother-cell. In this case the protoplasm does not divide by a progressive constriction and separation into two or more parts, but differentiates itself round the newly formed nuclei, with which the original nucleus may persist.

The ovum which we have to contemplate as the starting-point of the development of the organism produces by these various methods of cell multiplication the material of cells which serves for the formation of the tissues. Groups of originally indifferent and similar cells break up and assume severally a changed appearance. The constituent elements undergo various differentiations, and from them and their derivates is produced a definite form of tissue, endowed with a function corresponding to the peculiarity of its structure.

The separation of groups of different cells leading to the establishment of various tissues prepares the way for the physiological division of labour between the organs, which, like the tissues composing them, can, according to the functions which they perform, be divided into *organs of vegetative life* and *organs of animal life*.

The former have to do with the nutrition and maintenance of the body; the latter, on the contrary, serve for movement and sensation, functions which are exclusively the property of animals (as opposed to plants). For the sake of clearness we will divide the vegetative tissues into two groups,—into cells and cell-aggregates (epithelium), and into tissues of connective substance. In the tissues of animal life we distinguish muscular and nervous tissues. This classification of the tissues has no other aim than to facilitate a general review of the different forms of tissue, and to render possible a criticism of their relationships; it lays no claim to establish an absolutely sharp line between the various groups.

**1. Cells and cell-aggregates.** Cells may either be free and isolated from each other, floating in a fluid medium, or they may be placed near one another forming part of an aggregation of cells spread out superficially. To the former belong the cells of the blood, chyle, and lymph. The blood of invertebrates, which is generally colourless, and

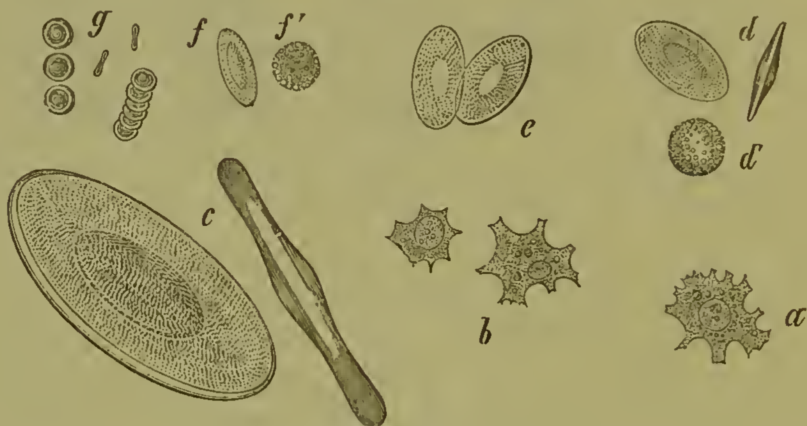



Fig. 19.—Blood-corpuscles (after Ecker). *a*, colourless blood corpuscles from the heart of the fresh-water mussel (Anodonta). *b*, from the caterpillar of Sphinx. *c*, red corpuscles from Proteus. *d*, from the smooth adder. *d′*, lymph corpuscles of the same. *e*, red corpuscles of the frog. *f*, of the pigeon. *f′*, lymph corpuscles of the same. *g*, red blood corpuscles of man.

the blood of vertebrates, which is with few exceptions red, consists of a fluid albuminous plasma containing numerous blood-corpuscles in suspension. These corpuscles are in invertebrates irregular often spindle-shaped cells, endowed with the capacity of amœboid movement. In the blood of vertebrates, in addition to such colourless amœboid corpuscles there are found red corpuscles (discovered by Swammerdam in the frog); and these are so numerous as to give the blood a uniformly red appearance to the unaided eye. They are thin discs with an oval, nearly elliptical or circular (Mammalia Petromyzon) contour, with nuclei in the first case, and without nuclei in the second (except in the embryo) (fig 19). They contain the red colouring matter of the blood, *hæmoglobin*, which plays so important a part in respiration. They arise in all probability from the colourless corpuscles which are always far less numerous in normal blood. The colourless corpuscles are genuine cells of variable form, and have the power of amœboid motion (migration into tissues, regeneration of tissues, etc.); they come from the lymphatic glands, in which they arise as lymph corpuscles, and eventually pass with the lymph stream into the blood. The ova and spermospores, after

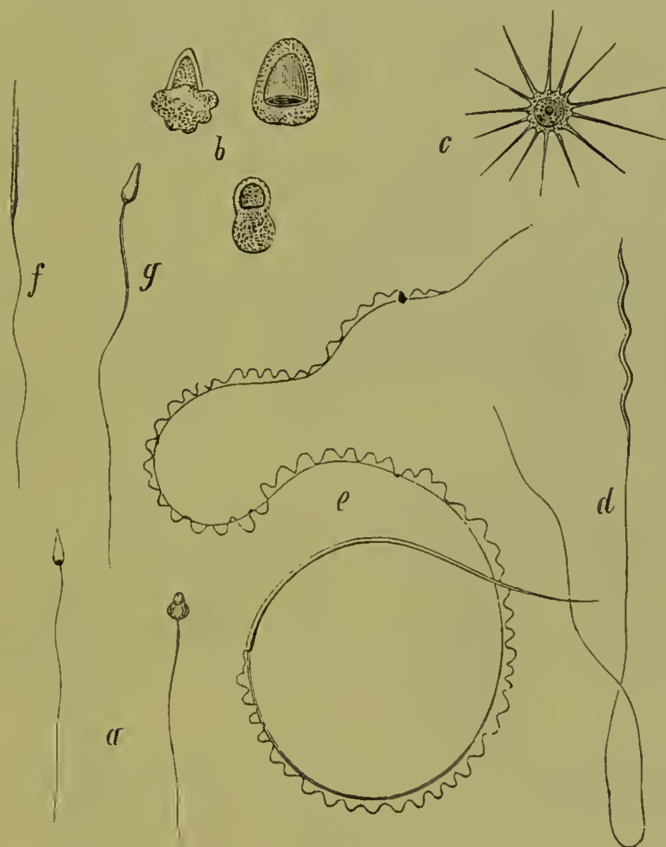



FIG. 20.—Spermatozoa. *a*, of Medusa. *b*, of a Nematode. *c*, of a Crab. *d*, of Torpedo. *e*, of Salamander (with undulating membrane). *f*, of Frog. *g*, of a Monkey (Cercopithecus).

they have separated from the epithelial layer in the wall of the ovary and testis, as well as the spermatozoa produced from the spermospores, respectively belong to the category of free cells. The form and size of the spermatozoa present great variations. They always consist of a modified cell, frequently of a very small cell with a long flagellum, nucleus, and remains of protoplasm. In many cases the head is elongated into a fibre-like structure, or is twisted like a corkscrew (Birds, Selachians). Sometimes a distinct head is absent, and the spermatozoon is thread-like (Insects). In the Nematodes the spermatozoon is hat-shaped; while in Crustacea it has the form of a cell, with long radiating processes (fig. 20).

*Epithelial tissues* consist of aggregations of cells which as simple or stratified layers cover the external and internal surfaces of the body, and which line its closed spaces (*Endothelium*). According to the different shape of the cells composing it, we distinguish cylindrical, ciliated, and pavement epithelium. In the first case the cells, in consequence of the elongation of the long axis, are cylindrical (fig. 21, *c*); in the second, the free surface of the cells is beset with vibratite cilia or flagella (fig. 21, *d*), which are continuous with the living protoplasm of the cell. If only one flagellum projects from the cell (sometimes a flat cell fig. 21, *b*) *then* the name flagellate cell is applied (collared cell of sponges, fig. 21, *e*). Finally, in the case of pavement epithelium (fig. 21, *a*) the cells are flattened; and if there

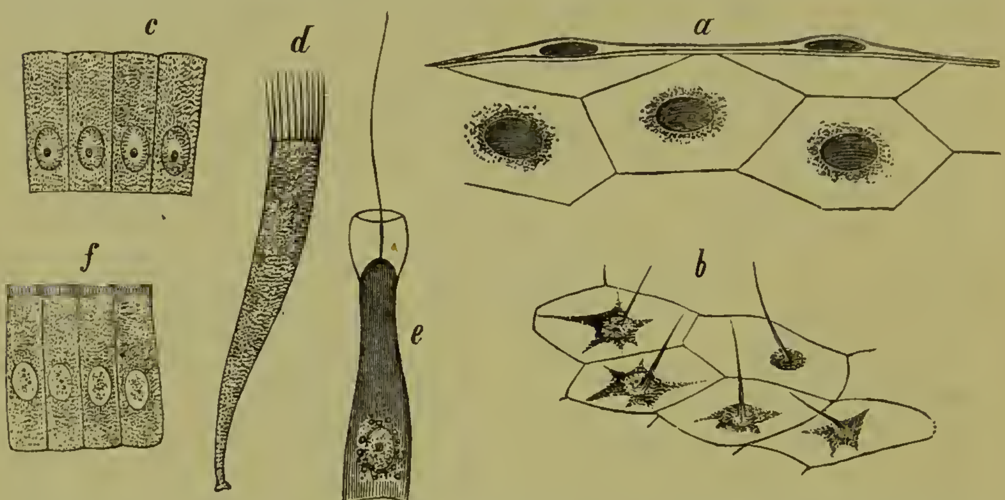



Fig. 21.—Various kinds of epithelial cells. *a*, Flat cells. *b*, flat cells with flagella (from a Medusa). *c*, cylindrical cells. *d*, ciliated cell. *e*, flagellate cell with collar (from sponge). *f*, cylindrical cell with porous border (intestinal epithelium).

is more than one layer the superficial cells are flat, while those in the deeper layers are more and more rounded.

While the cells of the lower layers retain their semi-fluid character, and are occupied in continual cell division and growth; those of the upper layers possess a firmer consistency, gradually become horny, and are thrown off as scales or continuous flakes, to be replaced by the continuous growth of the lower layers. Thick stratified layers of cornified cells, almost fused with one another, give rise to indurated or horny structures (nails, claws, hoofs), which may form a more or less complete coat for the body and function as protective exoskeleton (fig. 21, *a* to *f*).

There are also cells the free surface of which is distinguished by a well-marked thickening. The protoplasm of the free surface of such cells becomes hardened so as to give rise to a thick superficial border, perforated at right angles to its surface by a number of fine canals which give it a striated appearance (intestinal epithelium, fig. 21, *f*, epidermis cells of Petromyzon). If these thickened borders fuse together so as to form a continuous layer which obtains a certain independence, we obtain cuticular membranes, which, according to their origin, may be homogeneous or stratified (fig. 22, *a*, *b*, *c*), and

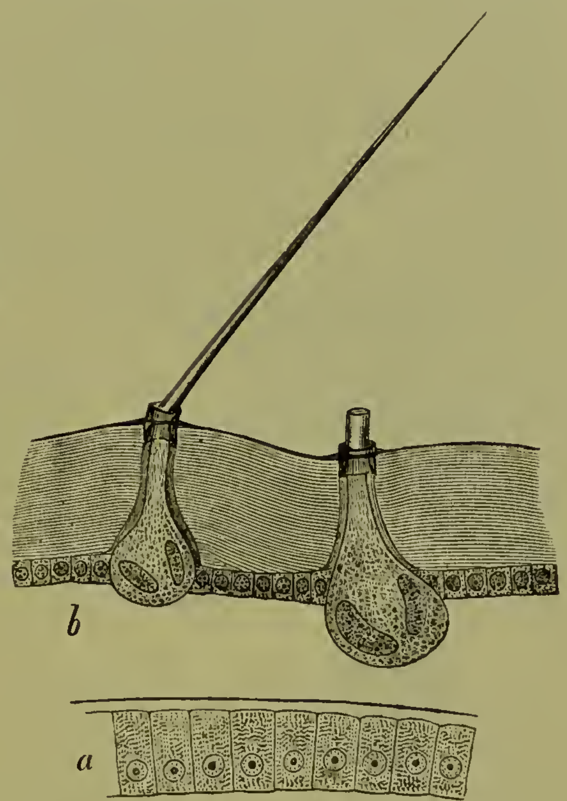



FIG. 22.—*a*, Cuticle and hypodermis of the larva of Corethra. *b*, cuticle and hypodermis of a Gastropacha caterpillar, with two poison glands beneath corresponding bristles.

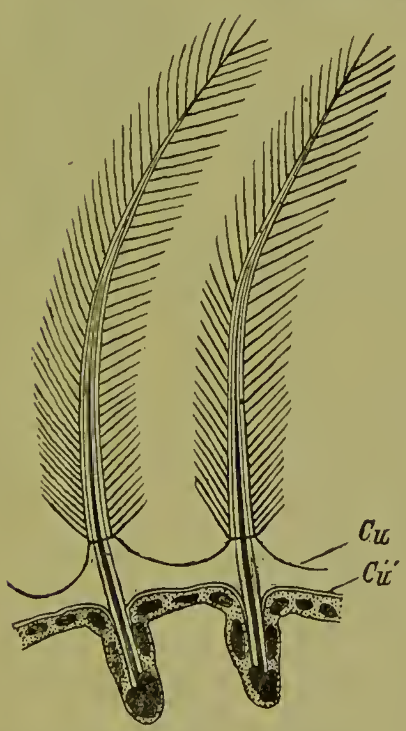



FIG. 22*c*.—*Cu*, cuticle with bristles in the condition of ecdysis. *Cu'*, newly-formed cuticle (Branchipus).

may exhibit various patterns of different kinds. Very frequently the surfaces of the individual cells are indicated on the cuticle as polygonal figures; and, in addition to the very fine pores, there are also found larger passages produced by out-growth from the cells. These latter lead to the appearance of various cuticular appendages, such as hairs, bristles, scales, etc., which are placed on the cuticular pores, and contain as a matrix their special cell or a process of it. Cuticular membranes may obtain a very considerable thickness, and, by the deposition of calcareous salts, a high degree of firmness (carapace of Crustacea) so that they acquire the value of skeletal tissues, which, however, it is generally difficult to distinguish from certain connective tissues.

While cuticular structures are solid secretions which are of use in supporting and giving a definite form to the organism, there are, on the other hand, various fluid secretions proceeding from cells which give rise to no structures, and which are often of considerable importance from a chemical point of view. In this case the epithelium becomes glandular tissue. In the simple cases the gland is constituted of a single cell, the secretion of which either passes out through the free surface of the membrane, or a special opening in

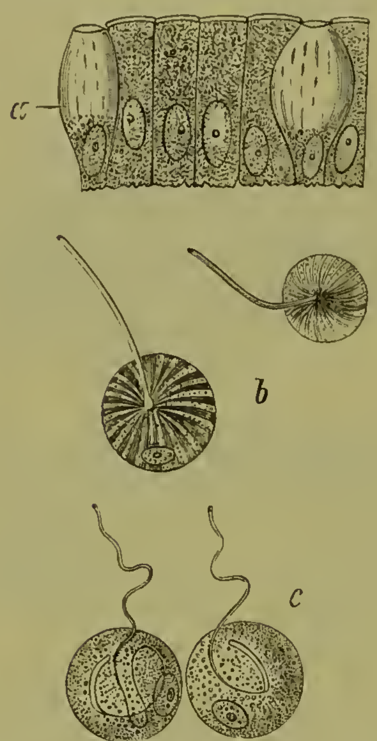



FIG. 23.—Unicellular glands. *a*, goblet cells from the epithelium of the small intestine of a vertebrate. *b*, unicellular cutaneous gland of Argulus with long duct. *c*, unicellular cutaneous gland of insects with cuticular duct.


FIG. 24.—Gastric glands. *a*, their origin as invaginations of the epithelium. *b*, perfect gastric glands.

it (fig. 23). If several cells enter into the formation of a gland, they are arranged in the simplest cases round a central cavity, which receives the secretion. The gland then has the form of a sack or blind tube, derived from an invagination of the epithelium, either of the inner or the outer surface of the body, into the subjacent tissue.

From this fundamental form the larger and more complicated glands are to be derived, as the result of continued regular and irregular outgrowth. While their form presents great variations, they are universally characterised by the transformation of their terminal portion into a duct; this differentiation may also appear in the simple glandular tubes, and even in the unicellular glands (figs. 23, 24).

**2. The tissues of the connective substance.** Under this term there are included a great number of different tissues which morphologically resemble each other in the presence of a greater or less amount of intercellular substance, intercalated between the cells (connective tissue corpuscles). They connect and surround other tissues, and serve as supporting and skeletal structures. The intercellular substance arises from the cells as a differentiation of the peripheral part of their protoplasm; it cannot accordingly be genetically clearly distinguished from the cell membrane and its differentiations, which we have considered in connection with epithelial tissue. The cell walls already produced by the protoplasm may also become fused with the intercellular substance, and so contribute to its increase. The intercellular substance is usually secreted by the whole periphery of the cell, and presents great variations both in its morphological and chemical characters.

When the amount of intercellular substance is small, the tissue is called *cellular* or *vesicular* connective tissue. This form is found especially in medusæ, molluscs, and worms, and to a less extent in vertebrates (notochord, fig. 25), and is not sharply marked off from cartilaginous tissue. Embryonic connective tissue, which consists of closely aggregated embryonic cells, evidently closely resembles it.

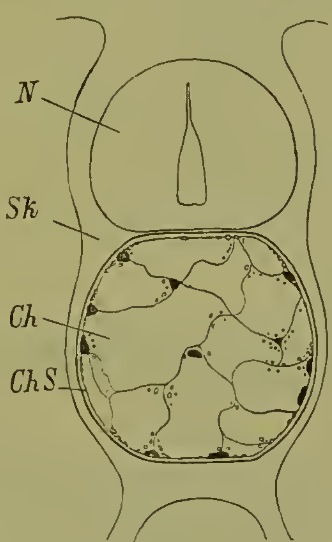


FIG. 25.—Vertebra of larva of a toad (after Götte). *Ch*, notochord cells; *ChS*, notochord sheath; *Sk*, skeletogenous tissue; *N*, spinal cord.

*Mucous* or *gelatinous* connective tissue is characterised by possessing a watery hyaline and gelatinous matrix. The condition of the cells in each case is different. Frequently they send out delicate, often branched processes which anastomose with one another and form a network. In addition, however, parts of the intercellular substance may be differentiated into bundles of fibres (Wharton's gelatine in the umbilical cord). Such forms of tissue are found amongst the Invertebrata, *e.g.*, in Heteropods and Medusæ, whose gelatinous disc, in consequence of the reduction or complete absence of cells, is reduced to a layer of soft or hardened connective tissue but little different in its origin, as a unilateral cell excretion, from cuticular structures (Hydroid Medusæ, swimming bells of Siphonophora). The so-called secreted tissue of young Ctenophora, and the gelatinous tissue of Medusæ and Echinoderm larvæ, into which cells eventually migrate, being at first absent, has a similar relation (fig. 26).

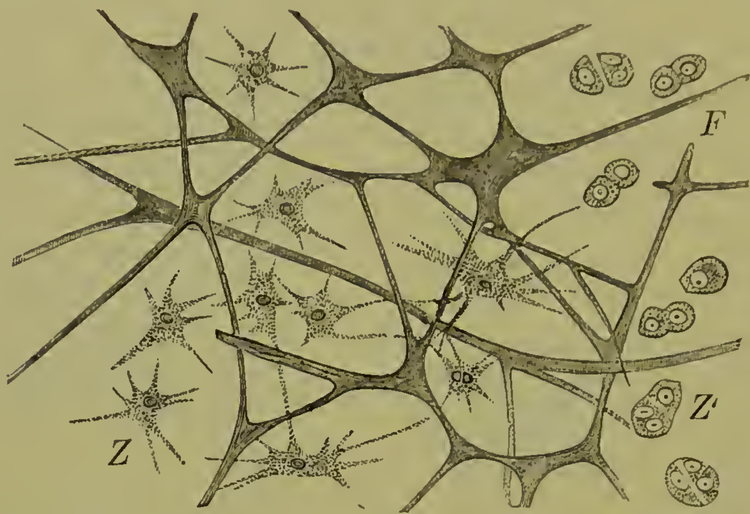



FIG. 26.—Gelatinous tissue of Rhizostoma. *F*, fibrous network; *Z*, cells with processes; *Z′*, the same in division.

Reticular connective tissue consists of a network of star-shaped and branched cells, the spaces of which contain another kind of tissue element. In the so-called adenoid tissue, which functions as the supporting tissue of the lymph glands, the contents of the intercellular spaces are lymph corpuscles.

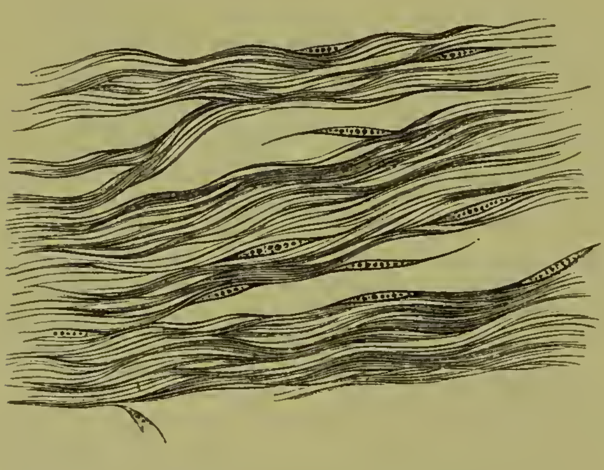


FIG. 27.—Fibrillar connective tissue.

A form of connective tissue very widely scattered amongst the Vertebrates is the so-called *fibrillar connective tissue* (fig. 27). This consists of a large proportion of spindle-shaped, or also branched cells, and of a solid intercellular substance, totally or partially broken up into bundles of fibres, which possesses the property of yielding gelatine on boiling. If the protoplasm of the cells is mostly or entirely used up in the formation of fibres, fibrous tissue is produced with nuclei in the position of the original cells. Very often the fibres have a wavy outline, and are arranged nearly parallel to one another (ligaments, tendons). In other cases they cross one another at an angle in different directions (dermis), or they present a net-like arrangement (mesentery). Fat tissue consists of ordinary connective tissue in which the cells are for the most part round and contain greater or smaller fat globules.

If the normal fibrillæ and bundles of fibrillæ be treated with acids and alkalies, they swell up, and a second form of fibre, which resists these *re-agents*, comes into view. These are the *elastic* fibres (fig. 28), so called because they preponderate in tissue which is especially elastic. They present a tendency to branch and to form networks, and often possess great strength (ligamentum *nuchæ*, arterial wall). They may also be spread out and connected together so as to form a perforated membrane (fenestrated membrane).

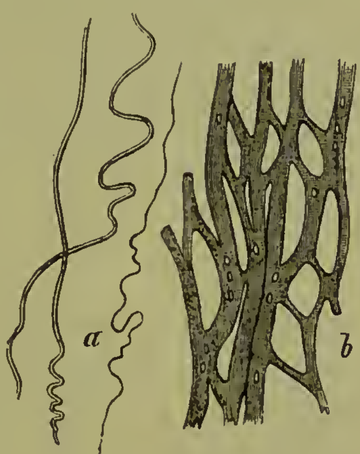



FIG. 28.—Elastic fibres, *a*; *b*, network.

*Cartilage* is another form of connective tissue. It is characterized by the shape of its cells, which are usually spherical, and its firm intercellular substance. The latter contains chondrin, and determines the rigidity of the tissue. Externally, cartilage is covered by a vascular connective tissue-coat, known as the perichondrium. When the intercellular substance is very slightly developed, we get tissues which are transitional to the cellular connective tissue.

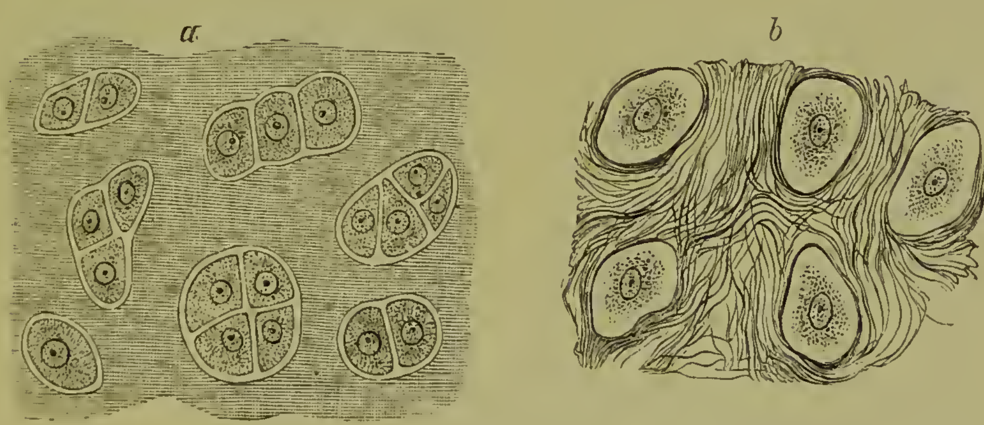



FIG. 29.—*a*, Hyaline cartilage with cells. *b*, Fibro-cartilage.

According to its special constitution, three kinds of cartilage may be distinguished, viz., hyaline (fig. 29, *a*), fibrous (fig. 29, *b*), and elastic cartilage; the latter containing a network of elastic fibres. There are also intermediate forms, approximating to the fibrillar connective tissue, in which cartilage cells may be surrounded by bundles of connective tissue fibres. The cells are placed in spaces, which are usually round, in the intercellular substance, and are surrounded by firm layers which are separated off from the latter, and have the appearance of capsules. These so-called cartilage capsules were formerly looked upon as the membranes of the cartilage cells, analogous to the cellulose capsules of plant cells; a view of them which is not in any way opposed by what is known as to their development as secretions of the protoplasm. Nevertheless, the capsules stand in closer relation to the earlier formed intercellular substance which has been produced in the same way, in that they often fuse with it. The growth of the cartilage is accordingly in the main interstitial. We frequently see in the spaces in the cartilage several generations of cells surrounded by special capsules placed one within the other. In such cases the secreted capsules have remained separate from the intercellular substance. Certain kinds of cartilage, moreover, have spindle-shaped cells, and sometimes the cells are prolonged into numerous radiating processes.


FIG. 30.—Incrusted cartilage, or cartilage bone.

Calcareous salts may also be deposited in the intercellular substance in a greater or less quantity. In this way arises the so-called incrusted cartilage, or the cartilage bone (fig. 30), which in the sharks is present as a persistent form of skeletal tissue, but in the higher vertebrates only as a transitional structure. Cartilage owes its special usefulness as a skeletal tissue to its rigidity. It is sometimes found in the Invertebrata (Cephalopoda, tubicolous worms such as Sabella, Cœlenterata), and very generally in the Vertebrata, whose skeleton always contains a certain amount of cartilage, and in fishes may be exclusively constituted of it (cartilaginous fishes).

*Osseous tissue* possesses a still higher degree of rigidity. The intercellular substance is strengthened and hardened by the deposition of carbonate and phosphate of lime, while the cells (the so-called bone corpuscles) possess numerous fine processes which anastomose with each other (fig. 31 *a*, *b*, *c*). The cells occupy spaces in the compact intercellular substance, which is also traversed by numerous canals, known as Haversian canals. These contain the nutritive blood-vessels and correspond exactly in their course and branchings to the latter. The intercellular substance consists of lamellæ, which are arranged concentrically round the canals. The Haversian canals begin on the surface of the bone, which is covered by a vascular and nervous connective tissue layer, known as periosteum, and open into larger spaces (marrow spaces), which in the long bones occupy the axis of the bone, but in the spongy bones have an irregular distribution.

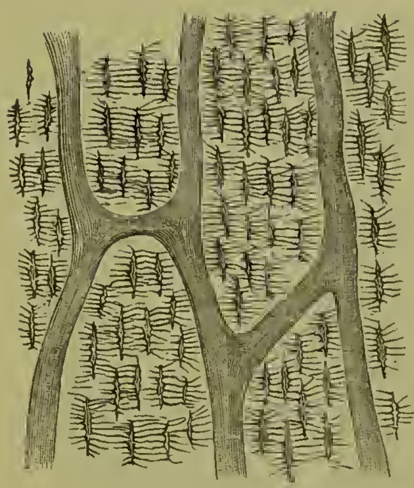



FIG. 31*a*.—Longitudinal section through a long bone (after Kölliker). *G*, Haversian canal.

In a second form of osseous tissue the cells themselves remain in the outer part of the excreted intercellular substance, and only their

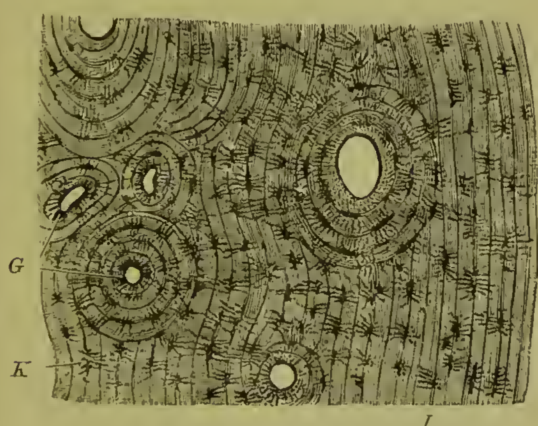



FIG. 31*b*.– Transverse section through a long bone (after Kölliker). *K*, bone corpuscles; *G*, Haversian canals; *L*, lamellæ.

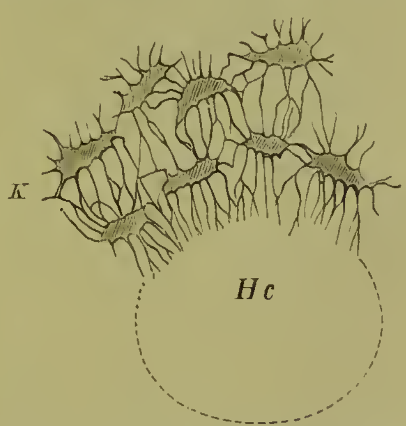



FIG. 31*c*.—*K*, spaces containing the bone corpuscles and their processes—they open into the Haversian canal, *Hc* (after Kölliker).

numerous processes, which run parallel to one another and are of great length, are embedded in it. The intercellular substance, which is hardened by the deposition of calcareous salts, is therefore traversed by a great number of fine tubes. It is deposited on one side only of the cells, and in its origin recalls the hard carapace of the Crustacea, which is similarly traversed by prolongations of cells.

This kind of osseous tissue, traversed by fine parallel tubes, is found in osseous fishes, and quite universally as the dentine of teeth (fig. 32).

With regard to its development, bone is preceded by soft connective tissue or by cartilage. In the first case, it develops by the transformation of the connective tissue cells into bone corpuscles, and by the hardening of the intermediate tissue. More frequently it is preceded by cartilage; and this holds for a great part of the vertebrate skeleton. Formerly great importance was attached to this difference in the origin

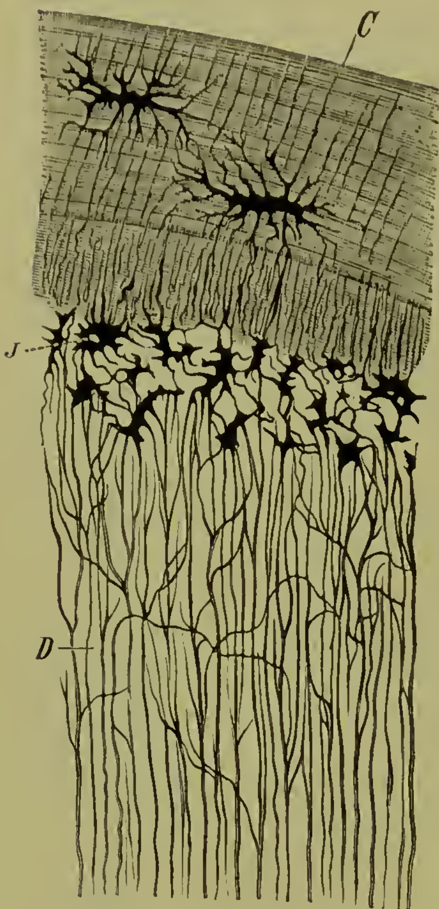



Fig. 32.—Section through the root of a tooth (after Kölliker). *C*, cement; *J*, interglobular spaces; *D*, dentine with dentinal tubes.

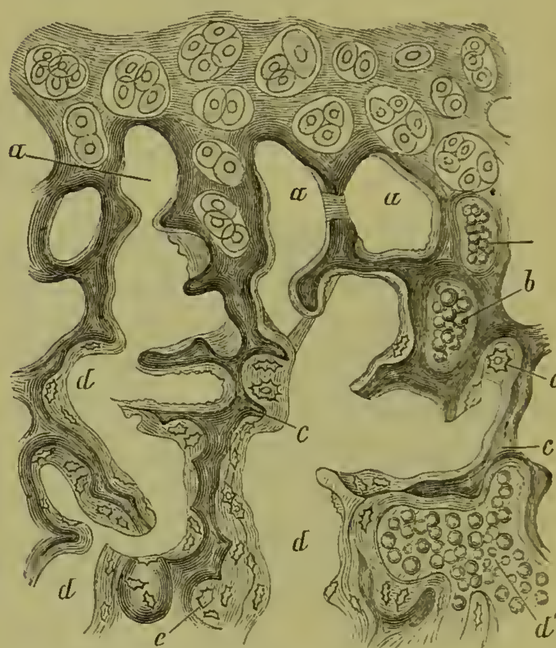



Fig. 33.—A section of ossifying cartilage (after Frey). *a*, Smaller marrow spaces placed in the cartilage; *b*, ditto, with cells of the cartilage marrow; *c*, remains of the calcified cartilage; *d*, larger marrow spaces; *e*, osteoblasts.

of bones; and a primary was distinguished from a secondary method of bone development. In reality the two processes resemble each other closely. For in the latter case, in conjunction with a precedent deposition of lime, and partial destruction or reduction of the cartilage, there is a new formation of a soft connective tissue-substance (osteogenic substance) from the centre outwards, the cells (osteoblasts) of which give rise to bone corpuscles, and the intermediate tissue becomes the hard basis of bone (fig. 33). Moreover, cartilage bones grow in thickness at the expense of the periosteum, the connective tissue of which is directly transformed into bony substance.

3. **Muscular tissue.** We ascribe the property of contractility to the protoplasm itself of the active cell; but we observe that, even in the protoplasmic body substance of the Infusoria, a striated arrangement obtains in those parts in which the contractile function especially resides. By a similar differentiation of the protoplasm certain cells and aggregations of cells possess in a much higher degree the power of contractility, and give rise to the so-called muscular tissue which serves exclusively for movement. At the moment of their activity these cells undergo a change of shape; they become shorter and broader than when at rest.

FIG. 34*a*.—Myoblasts of a Medusa (Aurelia).

In many Cœlenterata, cells are found in which a part only of the cell is developed into a contractile fibre. It is the deeper parts of such cells which give rise to delicate muscular fibres or networks of fibres, while the superficially placed body of the cell * (myoblast), the part which produces the above, performs other functions, and usually bears a cilium. In consequence of their epithelial-like arrangement, the myoblasts receive the name of muscle-epithelium (fig. 34 *a*, *b*). In their further development the greatest part of the cell protoplasm appears to give rise to contractile muscle-substance; and sometimes the whole cell becomes elongated into a muscle fibre.

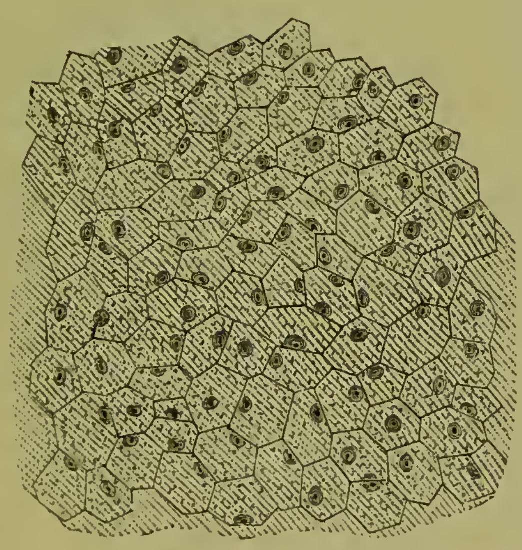


FIG. 34*b*.—Muscle-epithelium of a Medusa (Aurelia).

Two kinds of muscles, which are morphologically and physiologically different, are to be distinguished, viz., the *smooth muscles*, or contractile fibre-cells; and the *cross-striped muscle-substance*.

* These cells have been called neuro-muscular cells; a misleading term, since it cannot be shown that they have had anything to do with the origin of ganglion cells.

In the first case we have to do with flat, spindle-shaped, or band-shaped elongated cells, and with layers of such cells. They react slowly to nervous stimuli: they enter the condition of contraction gradually, and remain contracted for some time. The contractile substance appears for the most part to be homogeneous, but it is sometimes longitudinally striated. The smooth muscles have the widest distribution amongst the Invertebrata; but they are also found in vertebrates, in the walls of numerous organs (vessels, ducts of glands, intestinal wall) (fig. 35).

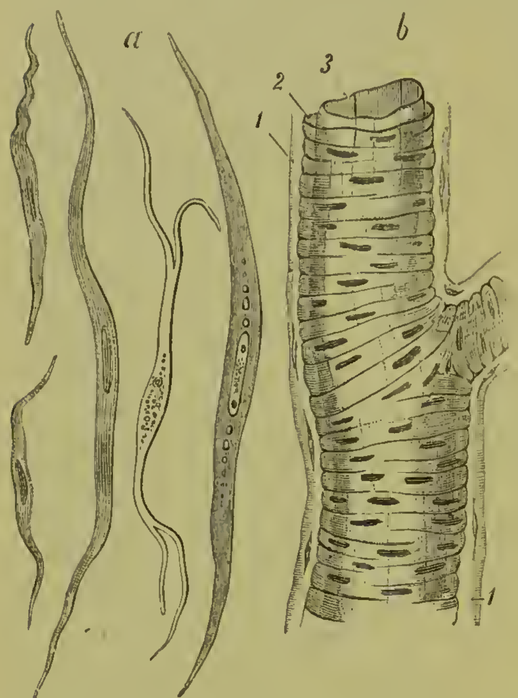



FIG. 35.—*a*, smooth muscle fibres isolated. *b*, piece of an artery (after Frey); 1, outer connective tissue layer; 2, the middle layer formed of smooth muscle fibres; 3, non-nucleated inner layer.

Cross-striped muscle consists of cells, more frequently of multi-nucleated so-called primitive bundles. It is characterised by the partial or complete transformation of its protoplasm into a cross-striped substance, consisting of special doubly refracting elements (sarcous elements) connected together by a simply refracting intermediate substance (fig. 36, *a*, *b*). Physiologically, this form of muscular tissue is characterised by the energetic and considerable contraction which immediately follows its excitation, a property which renders it especially suitable for the carrying out of powerful movements (muscles of vertebrate skeleton).


FIG. 36.—*a*, Primitive fibre. *b*, cross-striped muscle fibre (primitive muscle bundle) of Lacerta with nerve termination.

In the simplest cases the cross-striped fibrillæ are produced by the deeper parts of the myoblasts, which form a continuous flat surface epithelium (muscle epithelium) above the layer of delicate fibres (Medusæ and Siphonophora) (fig. 34 *b*). In the higher animals they arise from the transformation of a greater quantity of protoplasm, and almost the whole contents of the cell are concerned in their production. Rarely the cells remain single, and never acquire more than one nucleus, so that the muscle is composed of only a single cell (eye muscles of Daphna). Sometimes the cells become elongated into long fibres, the primitive bundles; the nuclei at the same time increase in number, and a membrane, the sarcolemma, becomes developed on the outer surface of each fibre. More frequently, however, the primitive bundles arise by the fusion of several cells placed in a row. Either the nuclei come to lie close to the sarcolemma in a peripherally-placed layer of finely granular protoplasm, or they are arranged in a row in the axis of the fibre in some finely granular non-contractile protoplasm. The finer and coarser muscular bundles are composed of many primitive bundles (fibres) placed close together and held together by connective tissue. The fibrillation of the muscular bundles corresponds to the direction of the primitive bundles (muscles of Vertebrata). Finally, both the simple cells, and the multi-nucleated muscles which arise from them, may be branched (heart of Vertebrata, intestine of Arthropods, etc).

4. **Nervous tissue.** As a rule, nervous tissue is found with muscular tissue, and is the means by which stimuli are conveyed to the latter: but above all, it is the seat of sensation and the will. With regard to this important function it would appear probable that in phylogeny the elements of nervous tissue have not arisen in connection with muscular tissue, but in connection with the sense cells found in the skin, *i.e.*, differentiated Ectoderm cells, and that then, still remaining connected with the sense-cells, they have travelled inwards into the subjacent tissue; while the connection with the muscle-cells, which at first possessed an independent irritability, is only secondary.

Nerve-tissue contains two distinct structural elements, nerve cells or ganglion cells, and nerve fibres; both possess a distinct minute structure and molecular arrangement, as well as chemical composition.

The ganglion cells act as centres for nerve-stimuli, and are found especially in the central organs which are known as brain, spinal cord, or simply ganglia. They usually possess a finely granular contents, with a large nucleus and nucleolus and one or more processes (unipolar, bipolar, multipolar, ganglion cells), one of which is the root of a nerve fibre (fig. 37, *a*, *b*).

Frequently the ganglion cells are enclosed in connective tissue sheaths, which are prolonged over their processes and so over the nerve fibres. Very generally several ganglion cells are enclosed in a common sheath.

Nerve fibres are either centrifugal, *i.e.*, they carry nervous impulses from the central organ to the peripheral organs (motor, secretory nerves); or they are centripetal, *i.e.*, they carry them from the periphery to the central organs (sensory nerves). They are prolongations of ganglion cells, and, like them, are frequently enclosed in a nucleated sheath. The larger and smaller nerves are composed of a number of such fibres bound together. According to the minute structure of the nervous substance we distinguish two kinds of nerve fibres—(1) the so-called medullated nerves, with a double contour; (2) the non-medullated or naked axis cylinders (fig. 38, *a*, *b*, *c*).

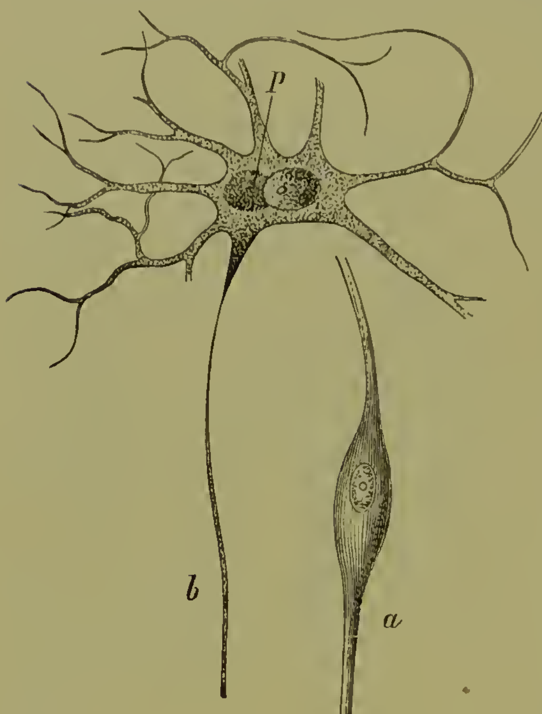



FIG. 37.—*a* bipolar ganglion cell. *b*, nerve cell, from the human spinal cord (anterior cornu), (after Gerlach). *P*, pigment body.


FIG. 38.—Nerve fibres (partly after M. Schultze). *a*, non-medullated sympathetic fibre. *b*, medullated fibres, one of them commencing with coagulation of the axis cylinder. *c*, medullated nerve fibre with the sheath of Schwann.

The former are distinguished by the fact that, on the death of the nerve and as the result of coagulation, a strongly refractile fatty substance which forms a sheath for the nerve fibre comes into view. This sheath is known as the medullary sheath, and the central fibre as the axis cylinder. The medullary sheath disappears near the ganglion cell, the axis cylinder only entering the protoplasm of the latter. They possess in addition an outer sheath, known as the sheath of Schwann (cerebro-spinal nerves of most vertebrates).

In the second form, *i.e.*, in the non-medullated nerve fibres, the medullary sheath is absent, the axis cylinder being either naked or surrounded by a connective tissue sheath. The axis cylinder here also is connected with a ganglion cell (sympathetic nerves, nerves of Cyclostomata and Invertebrates). Very often, however, and this is especially the case with sense nerves, we find that the axis cylinder may break up into very fine nerve fibrillæ, and be, so to speak, resolved into its elements.

Finally, the nerves of Invertebrates very often appear as finely striated bundles of fibrillæ, in which, on account of the absence of a sheath, it is not possible to recognise the limits of the individual axis cylinders.

Peripherally the sensory nerves become connected with accessory structures (end-organs), derived usually from epithelial cells and their cuticular products, or rarely from connective tissue substance (Tactile organs). The end-organs are therefore for the most part derived from modified epithelial cells (sensory epithelium). Ganglion cells are frequently found inserted in the course of the nerve fibres close to their termination (fig. 39, *a*, *b*, *c*.)

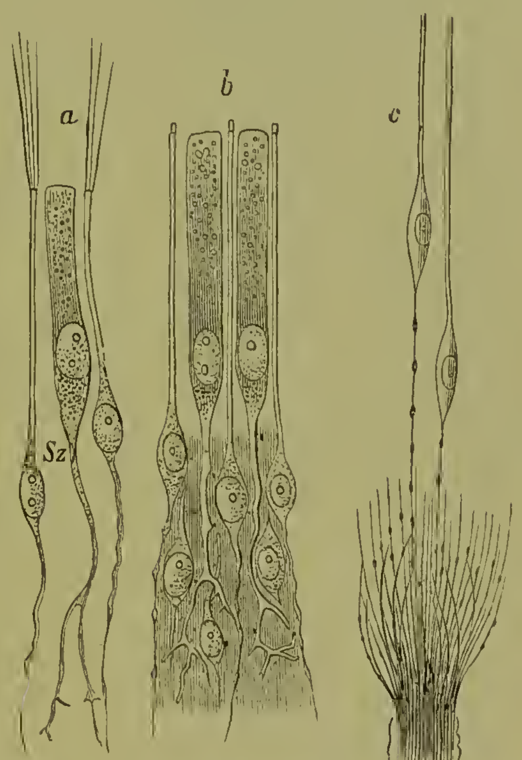



Fig. 39.—Rod-shaped sense cells from the olfactory organ (after Max Schultze). *a*, from the frog; *Sz*, supporting cell between two ciliated rod-cells. *b*, from man. *c*, from pike. Probable connection between the nerve fibrillæ and the sense cells.

## INCREASE IN SIZE AND PROGRESSIVE DIFFERENTIATION, DIVISION OF LABOUR AND PERFECTION.

The lowest organisms possess neither tissues nor organs formed from cells. The whole organism consists of a single cell. The body of such an animal is composed of protoplasm, and its skin of the cell membrane. The latter is often without an opening for the entrance of solid bodies; the entrance of food being entirely effected by endosmosis. In such cases, *e.g.*, in the Gregarines and parasitic Opalines, the outer body-wall suffices, like the membrane of the cell, for the performance of such vegetative functions as the absorption of food and the removal of the excretory products. The protoplasm (Sarcode) constitutes the body parenchyma, and is the seat of the animal and vegetative vital activities.

Accordingly there results a definite connection between the functions of the peripheral layer and of the included mass, in which the processes of animal and vegetative life are carried on. This connection pre-supposes a definite relation between the superficial area of the surface and the size of the mass, and this relation changes as growth proceeds. For while the surface increases by squares, the mass increases by cubes; while the mass increases in three dimensions, the surface only increases in two, and therefore as growth proceeds the relation changes to the disadvantage of the latter. In other words, with increase of size the superficial area becomes relatively smaller. Finally it becomes relatively so small that the vegetative processes cannot be carried on, and it is necessary for the maintenance of life that for a given energy of life it should be increased by the production of new surfaces.

This holds not only for the simple unicellular organisms, which resemble cells in their nutritive processes, but also for cells themselves whose size never exceeds certain fixed limits. Further, as the organism increases in size, not only does it divide into several cells, but these cells arrange themselves in such a way as to give the largest possible extent of surface. The cellular organism accordingly acquires not only an outer but also an inner surface on which the cells are arranged in a regular layer. With the appearance of an inner surface, a division of labour is established. The outer layer carries on the animal functions and such vegetative processes as those of respiration and excretion, while the *inner* (*digestive cavity*) *serves for the reception and digestion of food.*

We thus not only see that increase in size must be accompanied by an increase in the complexity of organization, but also bring out at the same time the essential characteristics of animal organization.

The numerous cells developed from the original simple organism were at first equivalent to one another, and all endeavoured to take up a peripheral position (colonies of Protozoa—*Volvox*—Blastosphære) (fig. 40, *a*, *b*.) Then, in consequence of the needs of the growing organism, it became necessary that they should be divided, so as to bound two surfaces, into an external and an internal layer; the one forming the outer wall of the body and known as ectoderm, and the other lining the central cavity (digestive cavity) known as endoderm; these two layers being continuous with one another at the opening of the central digestive cavity, or mouth opening (fig. 40 *c*). The cells of the two layers, in correspondence with the difference in their function, possess a different structure. Those of the outer layer, which carry on the animal functions, are usually cylindrical ciliated cells containing a pale albuminous substance; those of the inner layer are more rounded and of a darkly granular aspect; they may also bear cilia for the movement of the contents of the cavity which they line. In actual fact we find this form, which from a physiological standpoint is the simplest organism with cellular differentiation that we can conceive of, realised in the two-layered "gastrula," which appears in the development of almost all groups of the animal kingdom as a free-swimming larva, and to which the adult sexually mature Cœlenterate closely approximates.

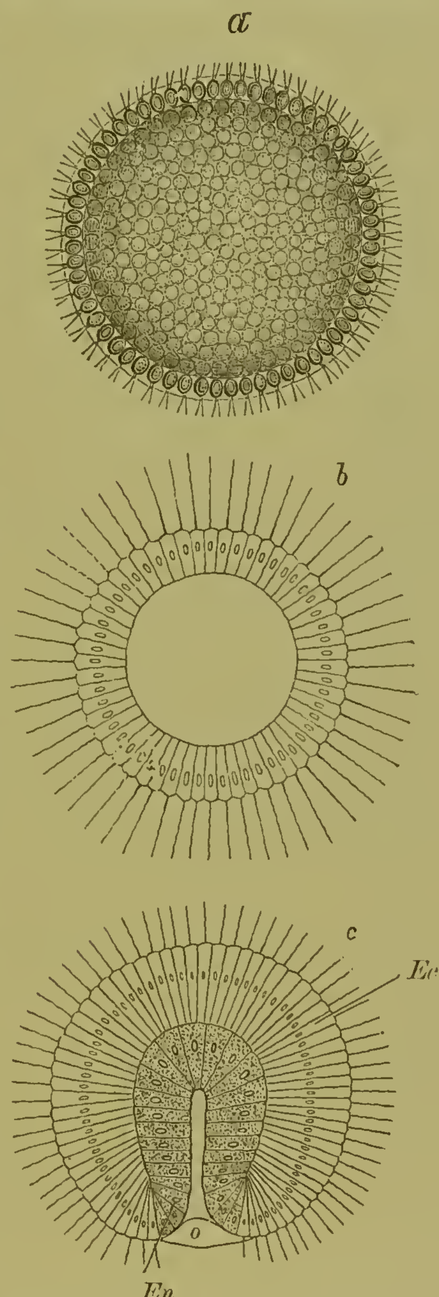


FIG. 40.—*a*, Cell colony of young *Volvox Globator* (after Stein). *b*, Blastosphere stage of an Acalepha larva (*Aurelia Aurita*). *c*, Gastrula stage of *b*; *Ec*, Ectoderm; *En*, Endoderm; *o*, Blastopore (mouth of Gastrula).

As the organism increases in size, additional complications ensue. These result partly from a still further increase of surface brought about by secondary invaginations and partly from the appearance of some intermediate tissue placed between the two primary layers. The secondary invaginations perform special functions and give rise to glands; while the intermediate tissue, developed from one or both of the primary layers, primitively serves as a support for the body and forms the skeleton; and it also gives rise to muscles which increase the organism's power of movement and apply themselves, on the one hand, to the ectoderm (somatic muscles), and on the other, to the endoderm (splanchnic muscles). Between the primary layers of the body there is primitively present a space, the primary body cavity.* Subsequently a second space, developed as a split in the intermediate tissue may appear, giving rise to the secondary body cavity.† From the latter the vascular system is developed.

Contemporaneously with the appearance of muscles a nervous system is usually differentiated from modified cells of the outer layer. Outgrowths from the body also are developed, which may have either a radiate or a bilateral arrangement. They take the form either of organs of nutrition (gills) originating from the need for an increase of surface, or of organs of prehension and movement (tentacles, limbs).

The increasing complexity of organization depends, therefore, not only upon the extension of the surfaces endowed with vegetative functions, and on the appearance of the organs of animal life, but also on a progressing process of division of labour; which results in a clearer and more definite localization of the various functions, necessary for the maintenance of life, in special organs. The greater this specialization the more completely will each organ be able to discharge its special functions, and supposing a proper co-ordination between the working of all the organs, a great advantage accrues to the organism, which is thereby rendered capable of a higher and more complete life. Therefore we find, as a general rule, that the larger the body and the more complex the organization, the higher and more perfect is the life. In this relation, however, the form and arrangement of the organs which characterize the various groups (types), as well as the special conditions of life which are limited by them, must be taken into account as compensating factors.

## CORRELATION AND CONNECTION OF ORGANS.

The organs of the animal body stand in a mutually limiting relation to one another, not only in their form, size, and position, but also in their actions; for since the existence of an organism depends upon the blending of the individual performances of all its organs to a united manifestation, the various parts and organs must all, in

* Usually known as segmentation cavity.—Ed.
† Usually known as "body cavity," or "cœlom."—Ed.

a definite and regular manner, be adjusted and subordinated to one another. This relation of dependence, necessarily resulting from the conception of the organism, has been very suitably termed "*Correlation*" of organs; and many years ago served for the establishment of several principles, the cautious application of which has been of great service to the comparative method.

Each organ, in order that it may properly discharge the functions which are requisite for the maintenance of the entire machine, must comprise a certain number of working units, and consequently must have a certain size and possess a form dependent partly on its functions and partly on its relation with other organs. If an organ becomes abnormally enlarged it increases at the expense of the surrounding organs, and the form, size, and function of the latter become injuriously modified. It, in fact, led Geoffroy St. Hilaire to enunciate the "*principe du balancement des organes*,"—a principle which was not at first generally accepted, but which enabled that investigator to establish the doctrine of "Abnormalites" (Teratology).

The organs which are physiologically similar, *i.e.*, organs which perform in general the same function, as, for instance, the teeth or the alimentary canal or the organs of movement, undergo great and various modifications; and the particular methods of nutrition and habits of life, as well as the external conditions which must be fulfilled if the life of any particular genus is to continue, depend upon the special arrangement and action of the individual organs. Given therefore the special form and arrangement of a particular organ or part of an organ, it is possible to arrive at conclusions concerning the special structure, not only of many other organs, but even of the entire organism, and to reconstruct to a certain extent the whole animal so far as its essential features are concerned. This was first done by Cuvier for many extinct Mammalia, with the aid of scanty fragments of fossil bones and teeth, in a masterly manner.

If we regard the life of the animal and its maintenance, not as the result, but as the end sought, as the aim of all the special arrangements and actions of the individual organs and parts, we are led to the "*principe des causes finales*" (*des conditions d'existence*) of Cuvier, and consequently to the so-called teleological doctrine by which we certainly do not attain to a mechanico-physical explanation. However that may be, this theory, if it be regarded merely as an expression of the reciprocal relations which necessarily exist between the form and function of the parts and of the whole, and not in the Cuvierian sense as implying the existence of design, renders important and indispensable service to the understanding of the complicated correlations and the harmonious adjustments in the organic world.

The same plan of structure and arrangement of the organs is not found, as Geoffroy St. Hilaire asserted in his theory of analogies, in the whole animal kingdom; but, on the contrary, there are, as Cuvier stated, several plans of organization or *types.* The term "Type" was applied by Cuvier to the chief, *i.e.*, the most comprehensive and general divisions of his system; and each type was distinguished by the sum of the characters of its form and structure. In the essential characteristics of their structure, the higher and lower members of the same type agree, while in the unimportant details they present the most marked differences. The different types themselves do not represent absolutely isolated groups, nor groups which are exactly equivalent to one another, but in a greater or less degree they are related to one another; this is evident after an examination of the lower forms and a careful comparison of the developmental histories.

To *morphology* belongs the task of pointing out the identity of plan under the most diverse conditions of organization and habits of life, not only among animals of the same group but also between those of different groups. This science has for its object the determination of *homologies,* as opposed to *analogies* which concern the similarity of function, *i.e.*, the physiological equivalence of organs found in different groups, *e.g.*, the wing of a bird and that of a butterfly. That is to say, it has to trace back to the same primitive structure parts of organisms belonging to the same or different groups, which with a different structure and under deviating conditions of life discharge different functions; as, for example, the wing of a bird and the fore-limb of a mammal; and so to show their morphological equivalence. In the same way the organs of similar structure which are repeated in the body of the same animal, *e.g.*, the fore and hind limbs, are designated as *homologous.*

### THE STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE COMPOUND ORGANS.

The *vegetative organs* comprise the organs of *nourishment* which are necessary for all living organisms, whether animal or vegetable. In the former, however, they gradually and in the most intimate connection with the progressive development of the animal functions, attain a higher and more complicated structure. In animals, the reception of food is followed by its digestion. The substances to be assimilated, which have been made soluble by digestion, enter a nutrient fluid (blood) which permeates the body, and is carried in more or less definite tracts to all the organs. To the latter the blood yields its ingredients, and receives from them such decomposition products as have become useless, and carries them away to be excreted in definite organs. The organs which serve for the performance of the different functions of nutrition and excretion

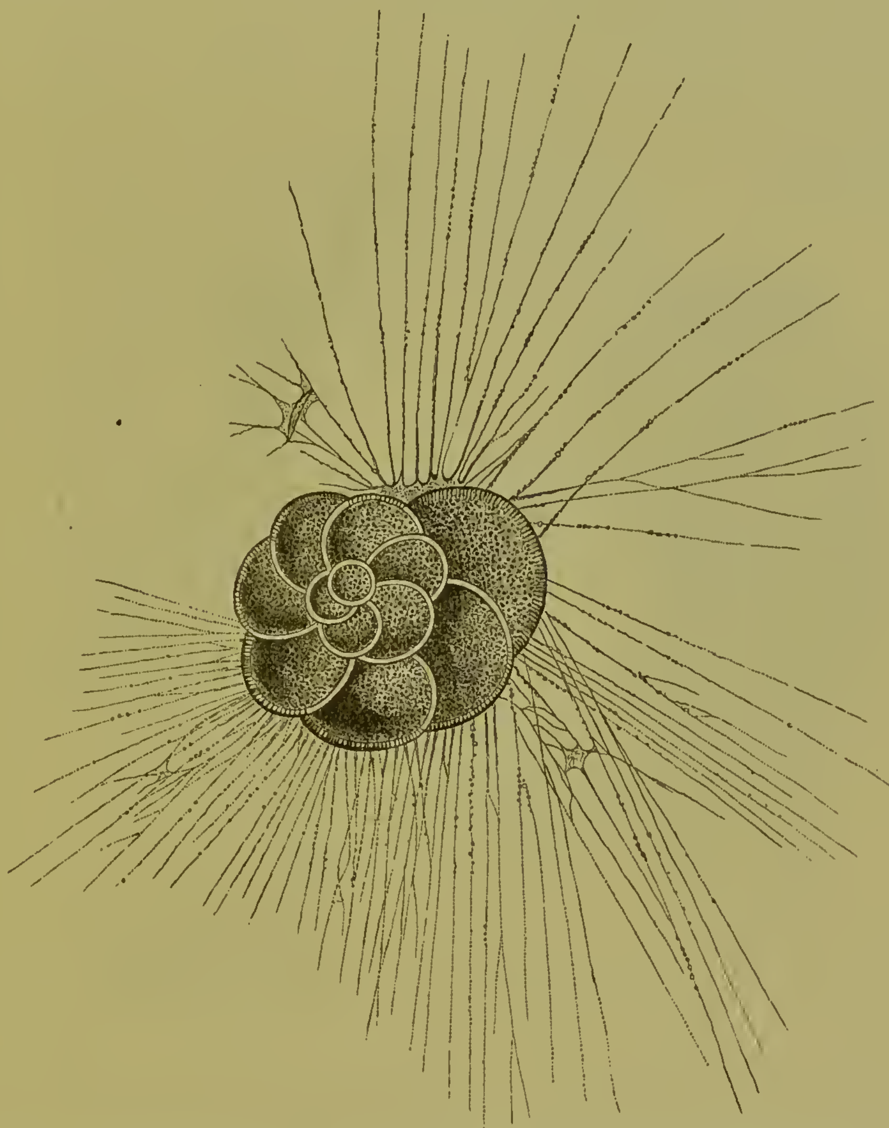


FIG. 41.—Rotalia veneta (after M. Schultze) with a diatom caught in the pseudopodial network.

consist of the apparatus for the *reception of food* and for its *digestion*, and for *blood formation;* and of the organs of *circulation*, *respiration*, and of *excretion*.

**Digestive organs.** Even animals which have only the value of a single cell (Protozoa) swallow solid particles of food. This is effected in the simplest cases, as in the Amœbæ and Rhizopoda, by prolongations of the sarcode (pseudopodia) surrounding the foreign body (fig. 41). In the Infusoria, which are covered by a firm cuticle, there is a central semi-fluid mass of sarcode (endoplasm), which is distinct from the more compact peripheral layer of sarcode (ectoplasm), and which receives the nutrient substances through the mouth and digests them. Rows of larger cilia are present, which serve the purpose of procuring food (adoral ciliated zone of the Ciliata) (fig. 42).

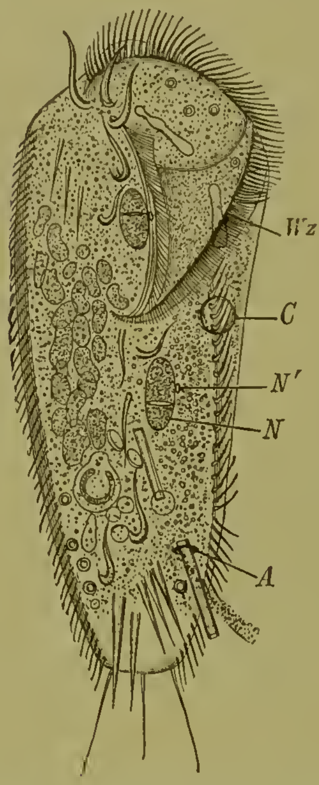



Fig. 42.—Stylonychia mytilus (after Stein) viewed from the ventral surface; *Wz*, adoral zone of cilia; *C*, contractile vacuole; *N*, nucleus; *N′*, nucleolus (paranucleus); *A*, anus.

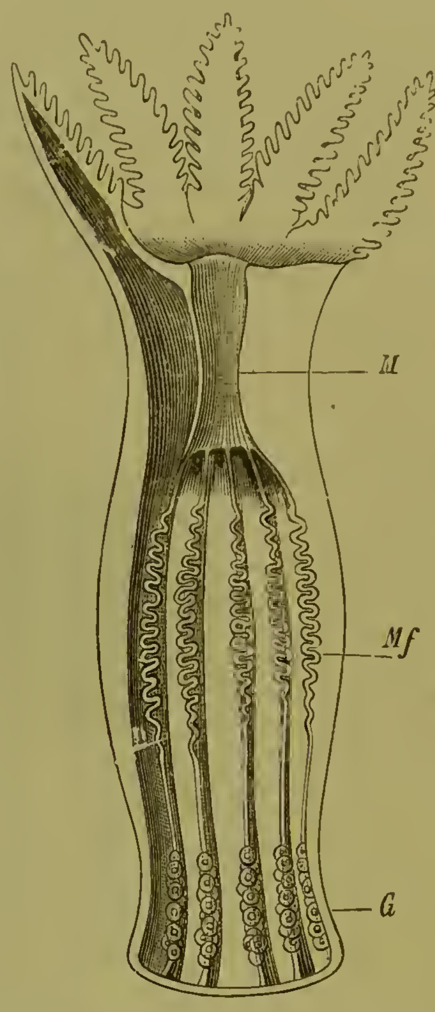



Fig. 43.—Longitudinal section through the body of an Anthozooid (Octactinia). *M*, stomachic tube with the mouth opening in the centre of the feather-like tentacles; *Mf*, mesenteric folds; *G*, genital organs.

Among the animals with cellular differentiation (*Metazoa*), the internal cavity of the body in the Cœlenterata (morphologically identical with the alimentary cavity and not with the body cavity of other animals) functions as a digestive cavity, and its peripheral radially arranged portions as a system of vascular canals (gastrovascular canals). In the larger Polyps (Anthozoa) a tube derived from an invagination of the oral disc projects into the central part of the digestive cavity. This is known as the stomach of the polyp, although it serves entirely for the introduction of food, and should be called rather the buccal or œsophageal tube (fig. 43).

Organs for the prehension of food are found even with this simple digestive system. For near the mouth are placed radially or bilaterally arranged appendages or processes of the body, which set up

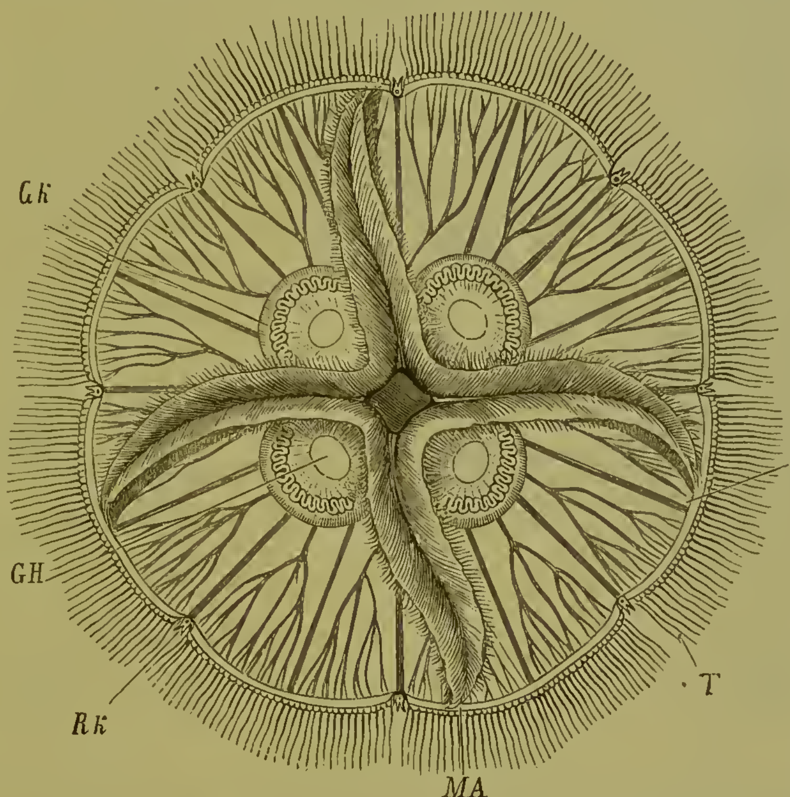



Fig. 44.—Aurelia aurita seen from the oral surface. *MA*, the four oral tentacles with the mouth in the centre; *Gk*, genital folds; *GH*, opening of the genital pouches; *Rk*, marginal bodies; *RG*, radial canals; *T*, tentacles at the margin of the disc.

currents to convey small particles of food, or as tentacles seize foreign bodies and convey them to the mouth (Polyps, Medusæ) (fig. 44).

Such appendages serving for the capture of prey may also be placed further from the mouth (tentacles of Medusæ, Siphonophora, Ctenophora).

When the digestive cavity acquires a wall distinct from the body wall, and usually separated from the latter by the body cavity (excepting the parenchymatous worms), it appears in the simplest cases as a blind tube, which may be either simple, bifurcated, or branched (fig. 45), with sharply marked off pharyngeal structures (Trematoda, Turbellaria), or as a tube communicating with the exterior by an anus (fig. 46).

In the last case it becomes divided so as to lead to the distinction of three parts—(1) of the fore-gut (œsophagus) for the reception of the food, (2) of the mid-gut for the digestion of the food, and (3) of the hind-gut for the expulsion of the undigested remains of the food. Sometimes the alimentary canal aborts; and, as in the mouthless Protozoa (Opalina), the mouth opening may be absent (Acanthocephala, Cestoda, Rhizocephala).

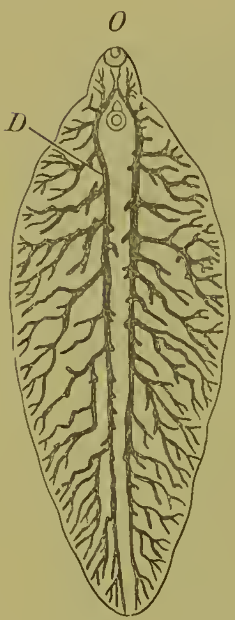



FIG. 45. — Alimentary canal of Distomum hepaticum (after R. Leuckart); *D*, alimentary canal; *O*, mouth.


FIG. 46.—Alimentary canal of a young nematode. *O*, mouth; *Oe*, fore-gut (œsophagus) with pharyngeal dilatation, *Ph*; *D*, mid-gut; *A*, anus.

In the higher animals, usually, not only is the number of the divisions greater, but their shape and structure becomes more complicated. The organs for the seizure of food also become more complicated, and the appendages placed nearest the mouth often become modified to subserve this function. A special chamber, the buccal cavity, becomes marked off from the fore-gut, in front of or within which hard structures, such as jaws and teeth, for the seizure and mastication of the food are placed (Vertebrata, Gastropoda); and into which secretions (salivary) having a digestive function are poured. The masticatory organs are sometimes placed completely outside the body in front of the mouth, and consist of modified limbs (Arthropoda), which in the parasites are metamorphosed into structures for piercing and sucking; or they may have shifted so as to lie entirely within the pharynx (Rotifera, errant Annelids) or in a muscular dilatation of the posterior end of this organ. At this place there is usually developed a widened chamber, the stomach, which by repeated mechanical action (masticatory stomach of Cray-fish) or by the secretion of digestive fluids (pepsin) furthers digestion; or it may, as in birds, subserve both these functions. From the stomach the food passes into the mid-gut. Dilatations and out-growths of the buccal cavity give rise to cheek and throat pouches, of the œosphagus to the crop, of the stomach to blind sacs which serve as reservoirs for the food (stomach of Ruminants) (figs. 47 & 48).

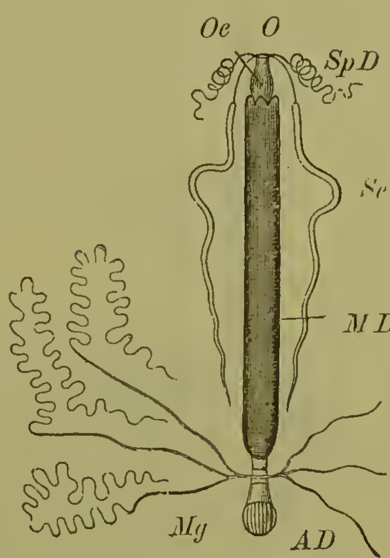



FIG. 47.—Alimentary canal and accessory glands of a caterpillar. *O*, mouth; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Sp D*, salivary glands; *Se*, spinning glands; *MD*, intestine (mid-gut); *AD*, rectum (hind gut); *MG*, Malpighian tubes.

In the middle section of the alimentary canal, or intestine, the digestive processes, already commenced in the mouth by the action of the salivary secretion and continued in the stomach by the action of the pepsin of the gastric juice (upon albumins in an acid solution), is completed. The food constituents which have been so far unacted upon (chyme) are in the intestine submitted to the action of the secretions of the liver, pancreas, and intestinal glands, and by them converted into the chyle, which is absorbed by the intestinal walls; the albumins being converted, as in the stomach, into soluble modifications by the action of trypsin (acting, however, only in alkaline solutions). The intestine often attains a great length, and becomes divided into regions possessing a different structure; *e.g.*, in the intestine of mammals three regions can be distinguished—duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. Its surface is, as a rule, increased by the development of folds and villi, and sometimes of outgrowths. Amongst

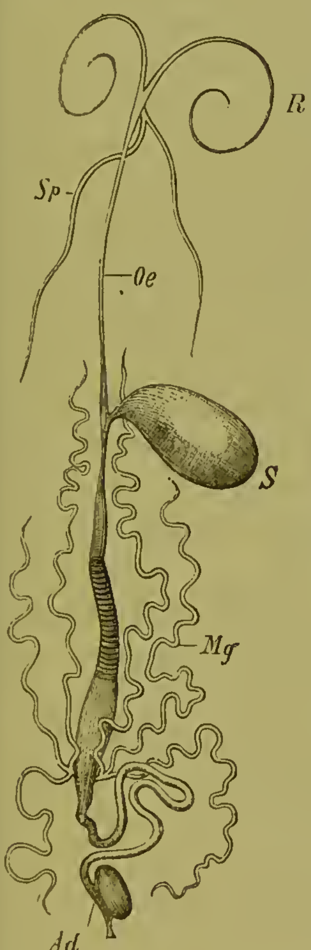



FIG. 48.—Alimentary canal of a butterfly. *R*, proboscis (maxillæ); *Sp*, salivary glands; *Oe*, œsophagus; *S*, sucking stomach; *Mg*, Malpighian tubules; *Ad*, rectum.

the Invertebrata it is often possible to distinguish an anterior especially widened portion of the intestine, which receives the hepatic secretion and is called stomach from the posterior, narrower, and longer section, which is known as intestine.

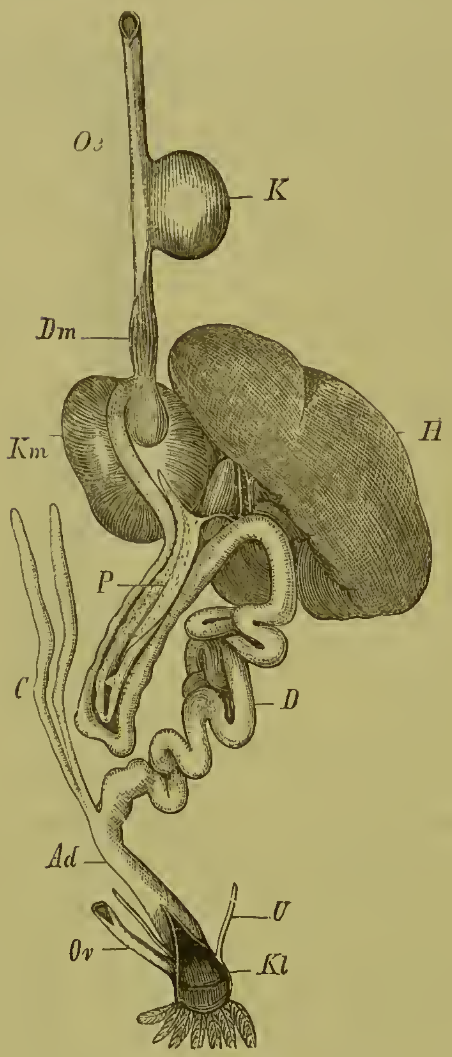



FIG. 49.—Alimentary canal of a bird. *Oe*, œsophagus; *K*, crop; *Dm*, proventriculus; *Km*, gizzard; *D*, small intestine; *P*, pancreas placed in the loop of the duodenum; *H*, liver; *C*, the two cæca; *U*, ureter; *Ov*, oviduct; *Ad*, large intestine; *Kl*, cloaca.

The hindermost section of the alimentary canal or hind gut, which is not always sharply marked off from the intestine, is especially concerned with the collection and repulsion of the undigested remains of the food, or fæces. It may also possess cæcal appendages attached to its anterior part, and possessing a digestive function. In the lower animals it is a small structure, but in the higher animals it attains a much more considerable length, and receives anteriorly one (Mammalia) or two (Birds) cæca, and it may be sub-divided into two parts, known as large intestine and rectum; in the Vertebrata its hind end receives the ducts of various glands (kidney, generative organs, anal glands). It may in addition discharge other functions, *e.g.*, a respiratory (larvæ of Libellulidæ) or a secretory function (larva of Ant Lion).

The salivary glands, liver, and pancreas are to be regarded as outgrowths of the alimentary canal which have become differentiated into glands.

The secretion of the salivary glands is poured into the buccal cavity, and there performs two functions—(1) it dilutes the food. (2) it has a chemical action upon it, converting the starch into sugar: they are absent in many aquatic animals and are especially developed in herbivorous animals.

The liver, distinguished in the higher grades of development by its great size, is an appendage of the first part of the small intestine (duodenum). The first trace of it is met with in the lower animals in the form of a characteristically coloured part of the cellular covering of the gastric cavity or intestinal wall (Cœlenterata, worms). In the higher animals it has at first the form of a small blind sac (small Crustacea); this, by a process of branching, is converted into a complicated structure composed of ducts and follicles, which may become connected together in very different ways so as to give rise to an apparently compact organ. Nevertheless, it must be remembered that, in the different groups of animals, glands, which differ both morphologically and physiologically, are included under this term, "liver." While in the Vertebrata the liver, as a bile-producing organ, possesses no known relation to digestion, in the Invertebrata the secretions of many glands, which are generally called "liver," but which would be more appropriately termed *hepato-pancreas*, exercise a digestive action upon starch and albumen, and at the same time contain bye-products and colouring matters similar to those found in the bile of Vertebrates (Crustacea, Mollusca).

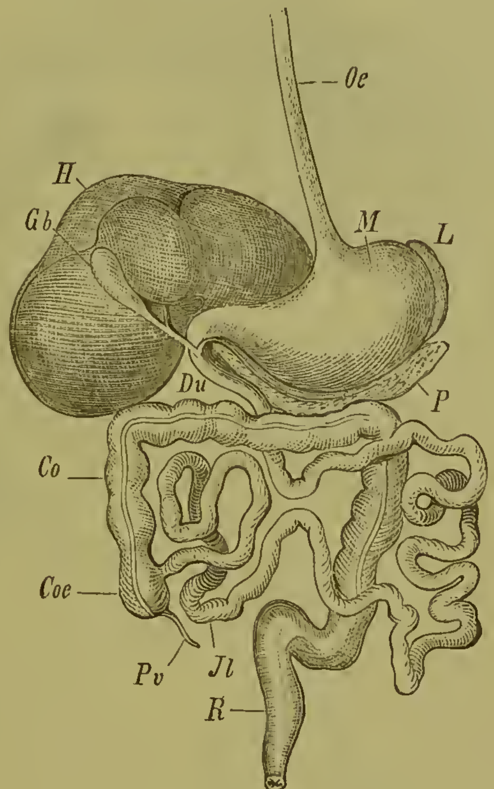



FIG. 50.—Alimentary canal of Man. *Oe*, œsophagus; *M*, stomach; *L*, spleen; *H*, liver; *Gb*, gall bladder; *P*, pancreas; *Du*, duodenum receiving the bile and pancreatic ducts; *Jl*, ileum; *Co*, colon; *Coe*, cæcum with vermiform process, *Pv*; *R*, rectum.

**The Organs of Circulation.** The nutrient material or chyle resulting from digestion is distributed by a system of spaces to all parts of the body. Excluding the Protozoa, in which the distribution of nutrient material is effected in the same manner as in the cell or tissue unit, the simplest form of vascular system in animals with cellular tissues, *i.e.*, in the Metazoa, is found in the Cœlenterata. In these animals the digestive cavity itself extends to the extreme periphery of the body, and serves to distribute the nutritive fluids (gastro-vascular system of Polyps, so-called vessels of Medusæ and Ctenophora). The so-called stomach of the Anthozoa is simply an invagination of the body wall into the central cavity of the animal, and functions only as œsophagus.

When a distinct alimentary canal is present, the chyle is absorbed by the walls of the gut, and passed through them into the cœlom or space developed between the gut and body walls (into the general

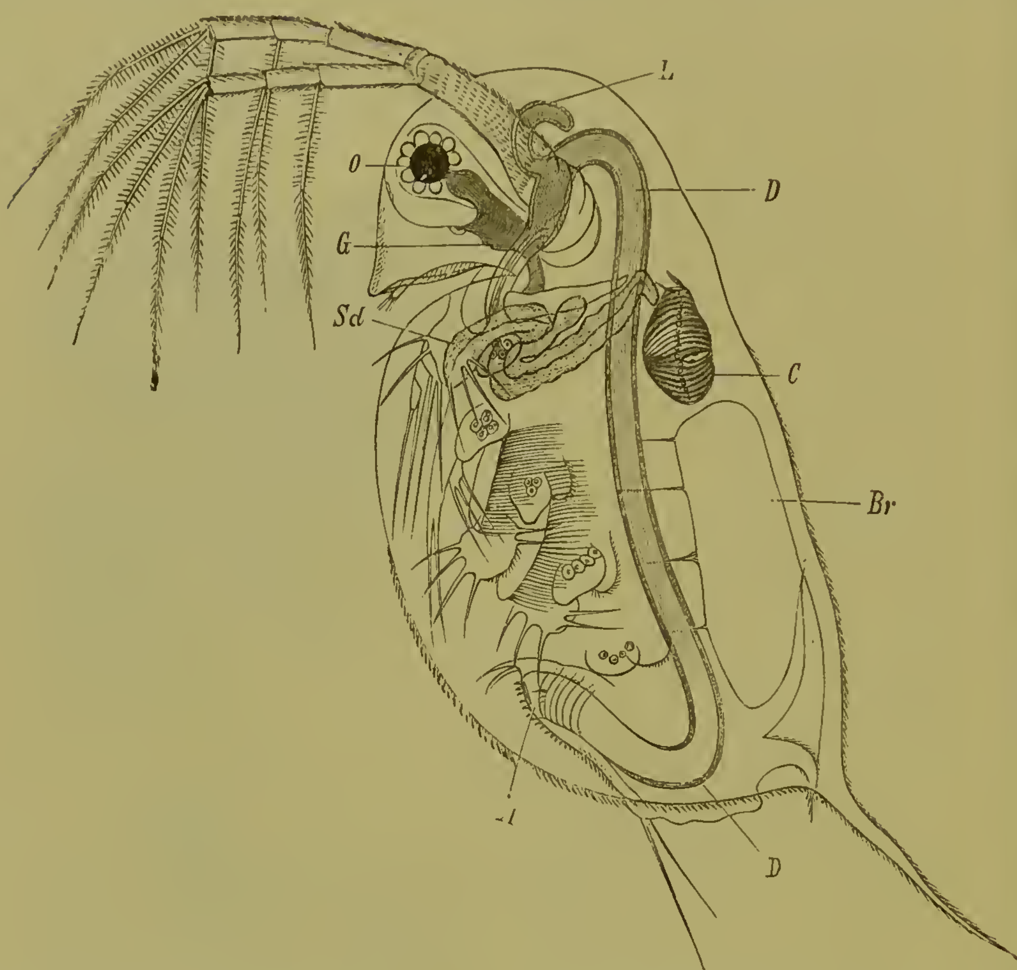



Fig. 51.—Daphnia with simple heart. *C*, the slit-like opening on one side is seen; *D*, alimentary canal; *L*, liver; *A*, anus; *G*, brain; *O*, eye; *Sd*, shell gland; *Br*, brood pouch placed dorsally beneath the carapace.

tissue of the body in the acœlomate parenchymatous worms), and there gives rise to a fluid, the blood, in which (with some few exceptions) corpuscles (cellular structures produced in the organism) are found. In this space, or in a system of lacunæ derived from it, the blood circulates. Primitively its movements are quite irregular, taking place with each movement of the body (as in many worms), and are effected chiefly by the contractions of the somatic muscles

(Ascaris), but also by the movements of other organs, *e.g.*, the alimentary canal (Cyclops). At a higher stage of development a rudiment of the central organ of the circulation appears, in that a special section of the blood path acquires a muscular investment, and as a pulsating heart, comparable to a force and suction-pump,

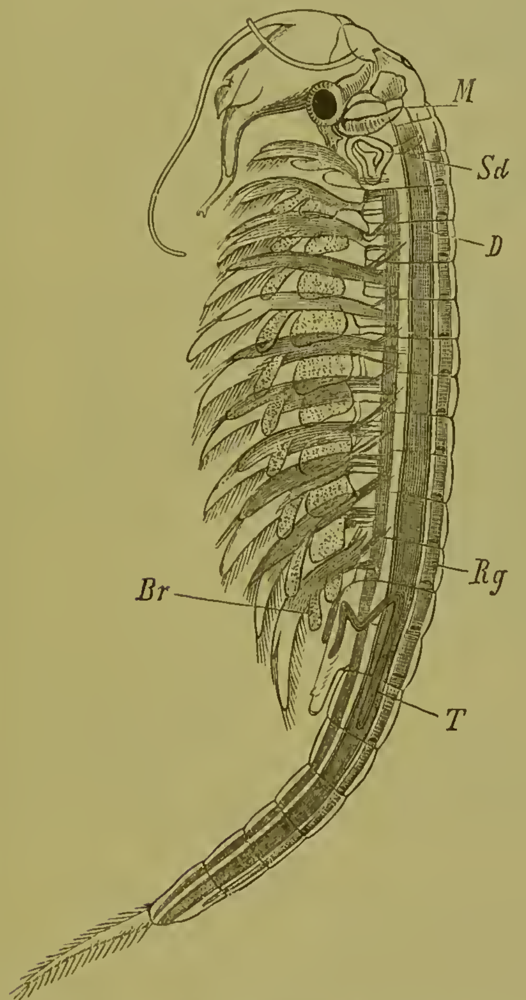



Fig. 52.—Male of Branchipus stagnalis with many-chambered heart or dorsal vessel *Rg*, the lateral openings in which are repeated in every segment. *D*, intestine; *M*, mandible; *Sd*, shell gland; *Br*, branchial appendage of the 11th pair of legs; *T*, testis.

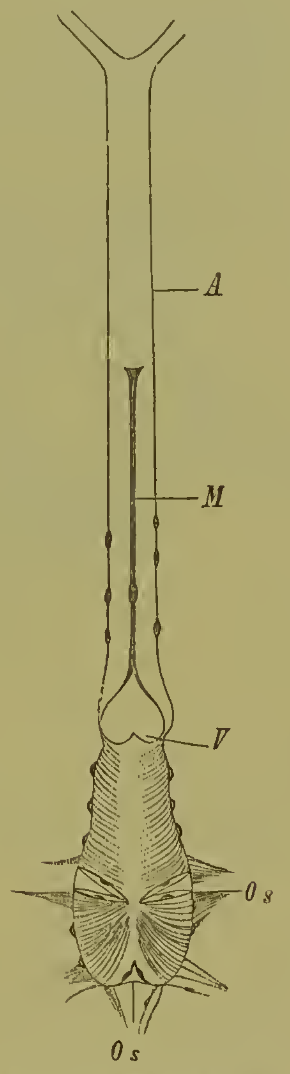



Fig. 53.—Heart of a Copepod (Calanella) with an anterior artery, *A*. *Os*, ostia; V, valves at the arterial ostium; M, muscle.

maintains a continuous circulation of the blood. The heart is either sac-shaped, with two lateral or one anterior slit-like opening (Daphnia, Calanus) (fig. 51), or elongated and divided into successive chambers and perforated by many pairs of slit-like openings (Insects, Apus) (fig. 52). As a rule, each chamber possesses a pair of laterally placed ostia, provided with lip-like valves, which act so as to allow the blood only to enter the organ.

From the heart, as central organ of the circulation, well defined canals, the blood vessels, are then developed, which in the Invertebrata may alternate with lacunæ not provided with walls. In the simplest cases it is only the tracts along which the blood travels from the heart which are provided with independent walls, and developed into blood vessels (marine Copepoda, Calanella, fig. 53). At a higher stage of development not only do these efferent vessels acquire a more complicated structure, but a part of the lacuna-system, especially in the neighbourhood of the heart, acquires a membranous investment, and gives rise to vessels which carry the blood back to the

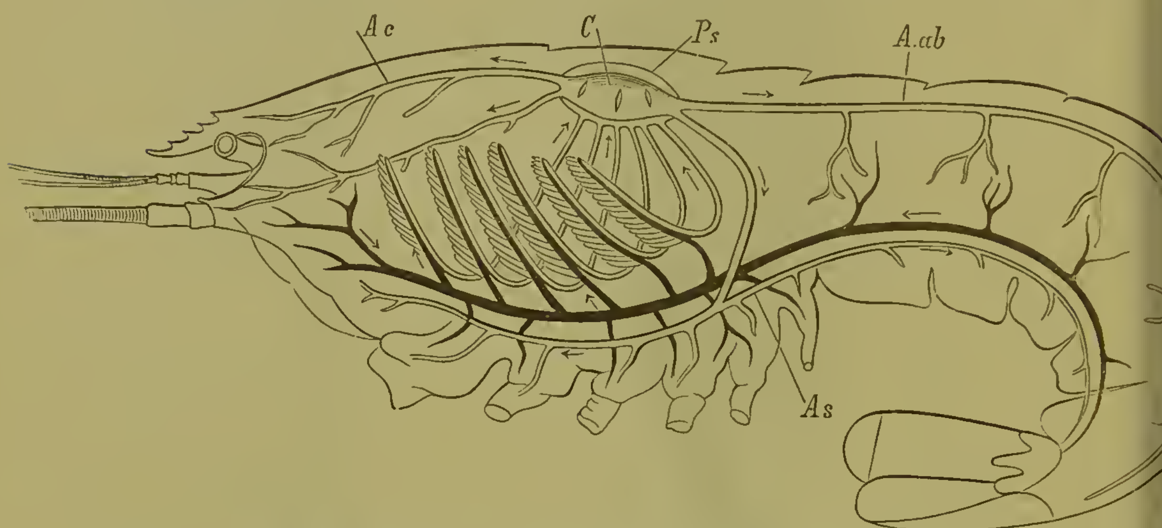



FIG. 54.—Heart and blood vessels and gills of the crayfish. *C*, heart, in a blood sinus; with *Ps* several pairs of ostia; *Ac*, cephalic aorta; *A ab*, abdominal aorta; *As*, sternal artery.

pericardial sinus, from which it passes through the venous ostia into the heart (Scorpions, Decapods) (fig. 54).

In other cases (Molluscs) the blood flows directly from the afferent vessels into the heart, the walls of the vessel being directly continuous with the walls of the heart. The heart in such cases consists of two chambers, the one known as auricle serves for the reception of the returning blood, the other known as ventricle for its propulsion (fig. 55).

The vessels passing from the ventricle and carrying the blood from the heart are called arteries; those returning the blood to it are called veins, and, in the higher animals, are distinguished from the arteries by their thinner walls. Between the ends of the arteries and the beginning of the veins the body cavity intervenes either as a blood sinus or as a system of blood-lacunæ; or the arteries and veins are connected by a network of delicate vessels, the capillaries. If the connection between arteries and veins is effected by capillaries in all parts of the vascular system, and the body cavity, as in the Vertebrata, no longer functions as a blood sinus, the vascular system is spoken of as being completely closed.

In the Vertebrates and segmented worms the vascular system obtains a considerable development before a true heart is differentiated in it. At first rhythmically pulsating sections, very frequently the

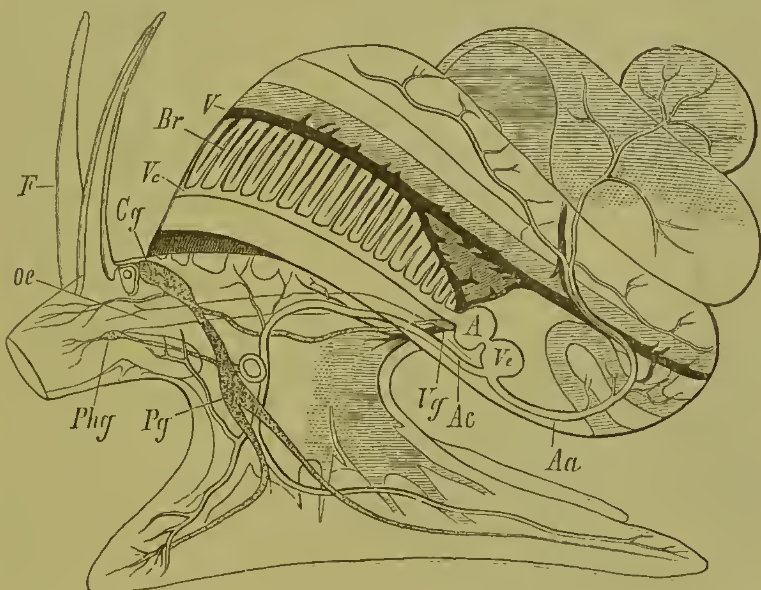



FIG. 55.—Nervous system and circulatory organs of Paludina vivipara (after Leydig). *F*. tentacle; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Cg*, cerebral ganglion with eye; *Pg*, pedal ganglion with adjacent otocyst; *Vg*, visceral ganglion; *Phg*, pharyngeal ganglion; *A*, auricle of heart; *Ve*, ventricle; *Aa*, abdominal aorta; *Ac*, cephalic aorta; *V*, vein; *Vc*, afferent vessel. *Br*, gill.

dorsal vessel, or the lateral vessels connecting this with the ventral vessel (fig. 56), serve for the propulsion of the blood.

Similarly amongst the Vertebrata, the lancelet (Amphioxus) possesses no distinctly differentiated muscular heart, the function of that organ being discharged by various parts of the vascular system which are contractile. The arrangement of the vessels supplying the pharyngeal section of the alimentary tract, which has a respiratory function and is known as the branchial sac, admits of a comparison with the vascular arrangement of the segmented worms, and represents the simplest form of the vertebrate vascular system. The longitudinal vessel which runs in the ventral wall of the branchial sac gives off numerous lateral branches, which ascend in the branchial walls. These lateral vessels are contractile at their point of origin from the ventral vessel. The anterior pair, placed behind the mouth, unite beneath the notochord to form the root of the median body artery (descending or dorsal aorta) which receives the hinder successive pairs of lateral vessels. This dorsal artery gives off branches to the muscles of the body wall and the viscera, from which the venous blood in part is returned to the ventral pharyngeal vessel; part of it, however, before reaching the latter, traverses a capillary network in the liver.

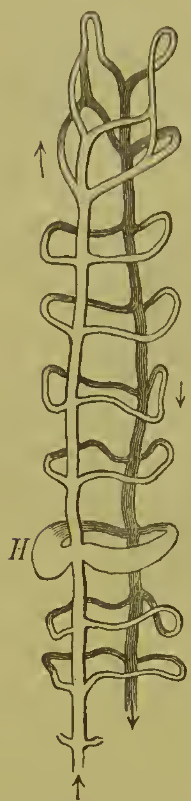



FIG. 56.—Anterior part of the vascular system of an Oligochæte worm (Sænuris) (after Gegenbaur). In the dorsal vessel the blood moves from behind forward; in the ventral vessel from before backwards (see arrows). *H*, heart-like dilated transverse lateral vessels.

From the hinder part of the ventral pharyngeal vessel there is developed, in the higher Vertebrata, the heart, which at first has the shape of an S-shaped tube, but later acquires a conical form and becomes divided into auricle and ventricle. The former receives the blood returning from the body and passes it on into the more powerful ventricle, from which arises an anterior vessel, the ascending or cardiac aorta, presenting a swelling at its root, known as the aortic bulb. This vessel leads, by means of lateral vascular arches, the arterial arches, into the dorsal aorta, which passes backwards beneath the vertebral column, and supplies the body. Valves placed at the two ostia of the ventricles regulate the direction of the blood stream; and they are so arranged as to prevent any backward flow of blood from the cardiac aorta into the ventricle in diastole, and from the ventricle into the auricle in systole.

In consequence of the insertion of the respiratory organs on to the system of the arterial arches, the latter, and at the same time the structure of the heart, assumes various degrees of complication. In fishes (fig. 57), four or five pairs of gills are inserted in the course of the arterial arches, which break up into a respiratory capillary network in the branchial leaflets. From this network the arterialised blood is collected into efferent branchial arches, the branchial veins, corresponding each to a branchial artery; and these unite to form the dorsal aorta. In such cases the heart remains simple, and receives venous blood.

With the appearance of lungs as respiratory organs (Dipnoi, Perennibranchiate Amphibia, larvæ of Salamanders and Batrachians) (fig. 58), the heart obtains a more complicated structure, in that the auricle becomes divided into a right and left division, the latter of which receives the arterialised blood, returning from the lungs by the pulmonary veins. The septum between the two divisions of the auricle may, however, remain incomplete (Dipnoi, Proteus). The advehent pulmonary vessels, the pulmonary arteries, always proceed from the

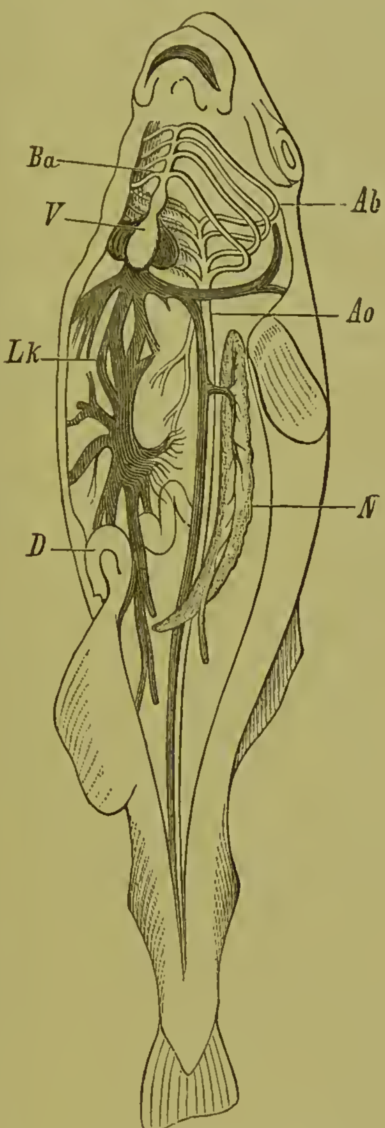



Fig. 57.—Diagram of the circulatory organs of an osseous fish. *V*, ventricle; *Ba*, aortic bulb with the arterial arches which carry the venous blood to the gills; *Ao*, dorsal aorta into which open the vessels from the gills or branchial veins *Ab*. *N*, kidney; *D*, alimentary canal; *Lk*, portal circulation.

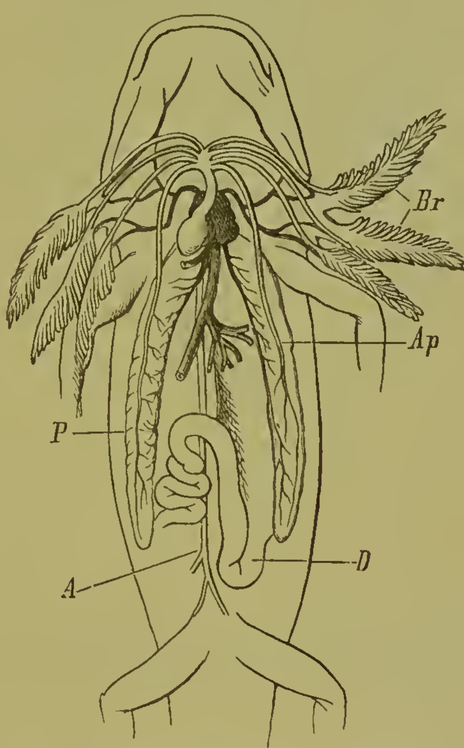



Fig. 58.—Gills (*Br*) and pulmonary sacs (*P*) of a perennibranchiate amphibian. *Ap*, pulmonary artery proceeding from the posterior of the four aortic arches. The other three lead to the three pairs of gills; *D*, alimentary tract; *A*, aorta.

posterior vascular arch, which, as a rule, loses its relation to the branchial respiration.

On the disappearance of the gills, which is completed during the metamorphosis in the Salamandrina and Batrachia, the pulmonary arteries obtain a much more considerable size and become the direct continuation of the hindermost pair of vascular arches, while the remaining and primitively most important portions of the latter, *i.e.* the portions leading to the dorsal aorta, are reduced to rudimentary ducts (Ductus Botalli) or completely obliterated. Contemporaneously with these changes there appears a fold in the lumen of the ventral or cardiac aorta, leading to a separation of the posterior vascular arch (pulmonary artery), which now receives through the ventricle venous blood from the right auricle, from the system of anterior arches which give origin to the cephalic vessels and dorsal aorta and receive arterial blood from the left auricle (mixed, however, with venous blood in the ventricle) (fig. 59).

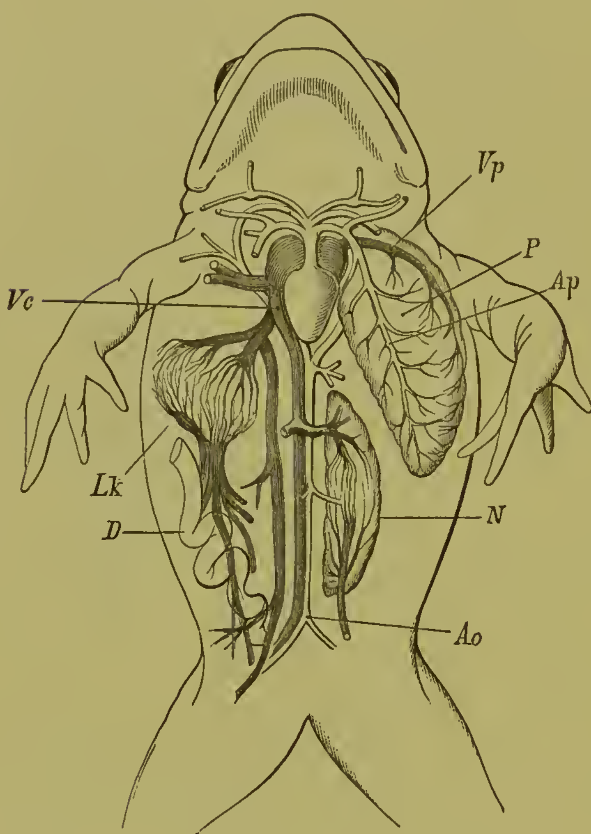



Fig. 59.—Circulatory organs of the frog. *P*, left lung, right lung is removed; *Ap*, pulmonary artery; *Vp*, pulmonary vein; *Vc*, vena cava inferior; *Ao*, dorsal aorta; *N*, kidney; *D*, alimentary canal; *Lk*, portal circulation.

In Reptiles the separation of the arterial from the venous blood is more complete, in that there is an incomplete ventricular septum which foreshadows the later division of the ventricle into a right and a left half. From the left division arises the right aortic arch, which gives origin in its further course, to the arteries to the head (carotid arteries). A vessel to the lungs and a left aortic arch may also be distinguished. The left aortic arch and pulmonary artery receive only venous blood, while the right aortic arch, and therefore the carotids which proceed from it, receive principally arterial blood from the left side of the ventricle (fig. 60).

The ventricular septum, and consequently the separation of the right from the left ventricle, is found complete for the first time in the Crocodilia, and in these animals the right aortic arch arises from the left ventricle. But the separation of the arterial and venous blood is even now not quite complete, for at the point where the two aortic arches cross one another there is a passage (foramen Panizzæ) leading from one into the other, and through which a communication may take place.

It is only in Birds and Mammals, in which, as in the Crocodilia, the right and left ventricle are completely separated, that a separation between the two kinds of blood is completely effected (fig. 61). In Birds the right aortic arch persists, and the left entirely disappears; while in Mammalia the opposite obtains, the left arch persisting and giving rise to the dorsal aorta. In these animals the blood is essentially different from the chyle both in colour and composition, and there is present a special system of chyle and lymph vessels. This system originates in simple tissue spaces, which are without walls, and its main trunks open into the vascular system. The contents are derived from the nutrient material absorbed from the intestine (chyle), and from the fluids which have transuded into the tissues from the capillaries (lymph), and they serve to renovate the blood. In the actual course of the lymph and chyle, *i.e.*, in the lymphatic vessels themselves, are placed peculiar glandular organs, known as lymphatic glands (blood glands), in which the lymph receives its form elements (lymph corpuscles = white blood corpuscles).

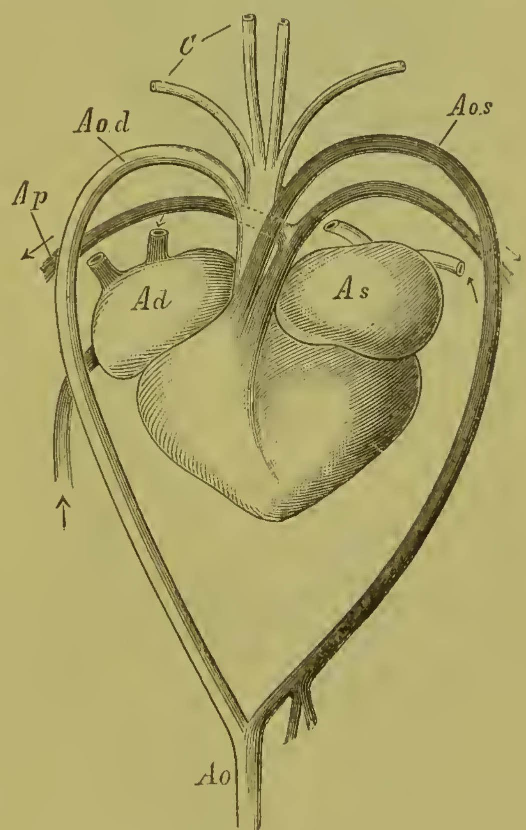



Fig. 60.—Heart and great vessels of a Chelonian. *Ad*, right auricle; *As*, left auricle; *Ao.d*, right aortic arch; *Ao.s*, left aortic arch; *Ao*, aorta; *C*, carotids; *Ap*, pulmonary arteries.

**Organs of Respiration.** The blood needs for the retention of its properties not only this continued renovation by the addition of nutrient fluids, but also the constant introduction of oxygen, with the reception of which is closely connected the excretion of carbonic acid (and water). The exchange of these two gases between the blood and the external medium is the essential part of the respiratory process, and is effected through organs which are suited for carrying on this process either in air or in water. In the simplest cases the exchange of these two gases takes place through the general surface of the body; and in all cases, even when special respiratory organs are present, the outer skin also takes part in respiration.

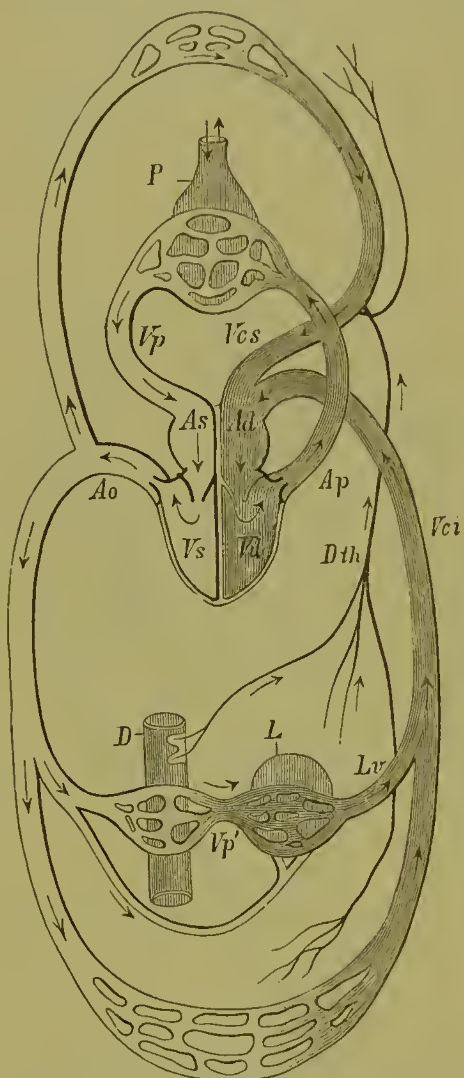



FIG. 61.—Diagram of the circulation in an animal with a completely separated right and left ventricle, and a double circulation (after Huxley). *Ad*, right auricle receiving the superior and inferior venæ cavæ, *Vcs*, and *Vci*; *Dth*, thoracic duct, the main trunk of the lymphatic system; *Ad*, right auricle; *Vd*, right ventricle; *Ap*, pulmonary artery; *P*, lung; *Vp*, pulmonary vein; *As*, left auricle; *Vs*, left ventricle; *Ao*, aorta; *D*, intestine; *L*, liver; *Vp'*, portal vein; *Lv*, hepatic vein.

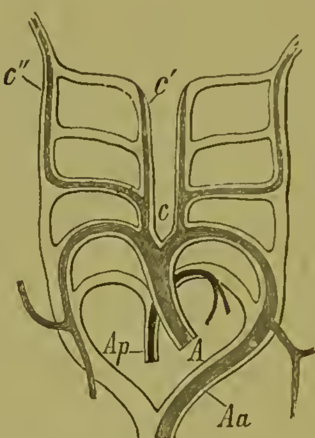



FIG. 62.—Diagram of the great arteries of a mammal with reference to the five embryonic arterial arches (after Rathke). *c*, common carotids; *c'*, external carotid; *c''*, internal carotid; *A*, aorta. *Ap*, pulmonary artery; *Aa*, aortic arch.

Inner surfaces also may be concerned in this exchange, especially those of the digestive cavity and intestine, or, as in the Echinoderms, in which a separate vascular system is developed, the surface of the whole body cavity.

Respiration in water obviously takes place under far more unfavourable conditions for the introduction of oxygen than does the direct respiration in air, because it is only the small quantity of oxygen dissolved in water which is available. Hence this form of respiration is found in animals low in the scale of life in which the metabolic processes are less energetic (worms, molluscs, and fishes).

Organs of aquatic respiration, or *gills*, have the form of external appendages possessing as large a surface extension as possible. They consist of simple or antler-shaped or dendritically branched processes (fig. 63 *a*, *b*), or of lancet-shaped closely-packed leaves with a large surface extension (fig. 64).

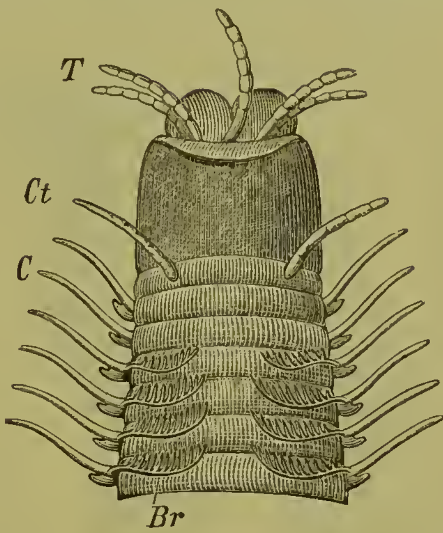



FIG. 63*a*.—Head and anterior body segments of a Eunice, viewed from the dorsal surface. *T*, tentacles. *Ct*, tentacular cirrus. *C*, parapodial cirrus. *Br*, parapodial gill.

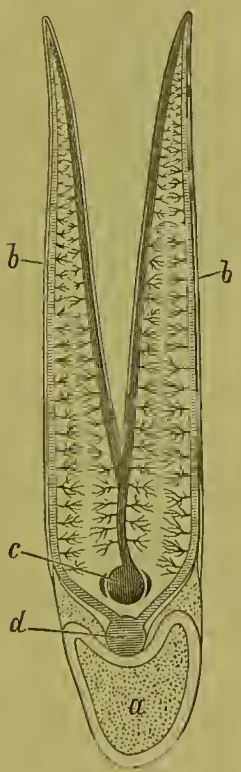



FIG. 64. — Transverse section through the gill of a Teleostean fish. *b*, branchial leaflet with capillaries; *c*, branchial artery containing venous blood; *d*, branchial vein containing arterial blood. *a*, branchial bar.

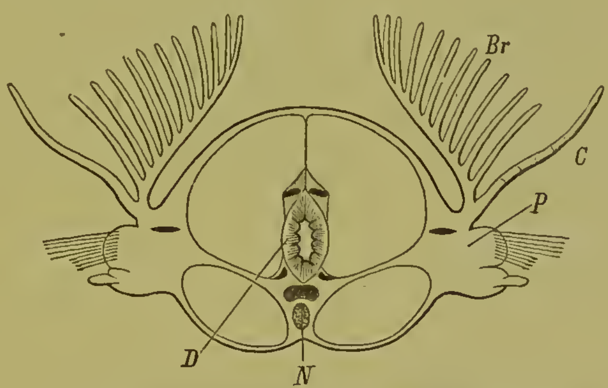



FIG. 63*b*.—Transverse section through the body of Eunice. *Br*, gill; *C*, cirrus; *P*, parapodium with a bundle of setæ; *D*, alimentary canal; *N*, nervous system

The organs of aërial respiration, on the contrary, are internal. They present likewise the condition favourable for an exchange of gases between the air and the blood, viz., a large extent of surface. They have the form either of *lungs* or air-bearing tubes. In the first case (Spiders, Vertebrates) they consist of spacious sacs with alveolar or spongy walls, traversed by numerous septa and folds which bear an extremely rich network of capillaries. The *air tubes* or *tracheæ* (fig. 65) constitute a branched system of canals which extend throughout the whole body, and carry the air to all the organs. Thus instead of the respiratory process being localised, as it is in animals with lungs, it is carried on in all tissues and organs of the body, which are surrounded by a fine tracheal network. Nevertheless, the air tubes in the case of the modification known as *fan-tracheæ* present an approximation in their structures to lungs, in that the main stems, without further branching, give rise to flat hollow leaves.

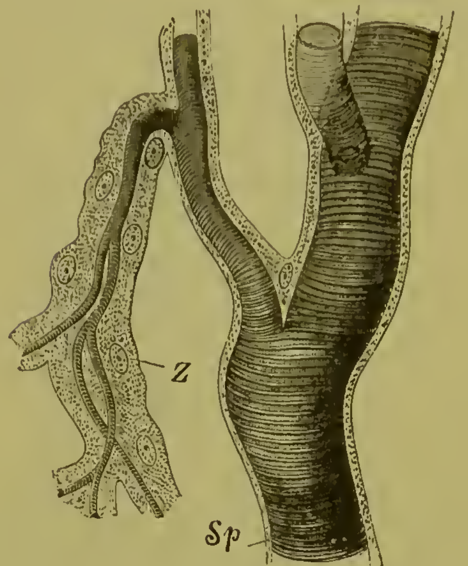



Fig. 65.—Tracheæ with fine branches (after Leydig). *Z*, cellular, outer wall; *Sp*, spiral thread.

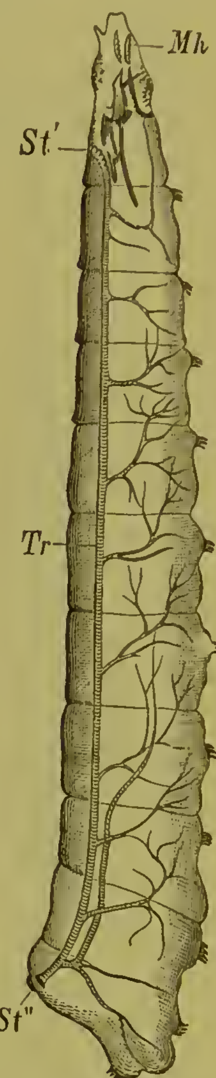



Fig. 66*a*. —Tracheal system of a Dipterous larva. *Tr*, Longitudinal stem of the right side with tufts of tracheæ; *St′*, and *St″*, anterior and posterior stigmata; *Mh*, oral hooks.

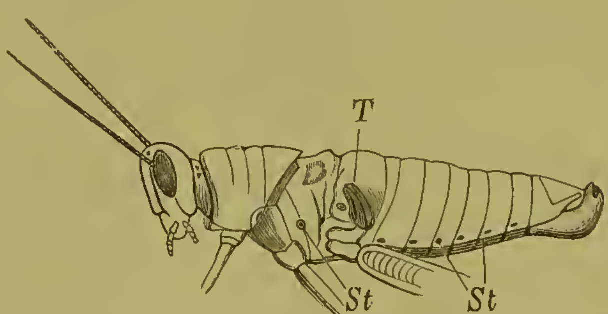
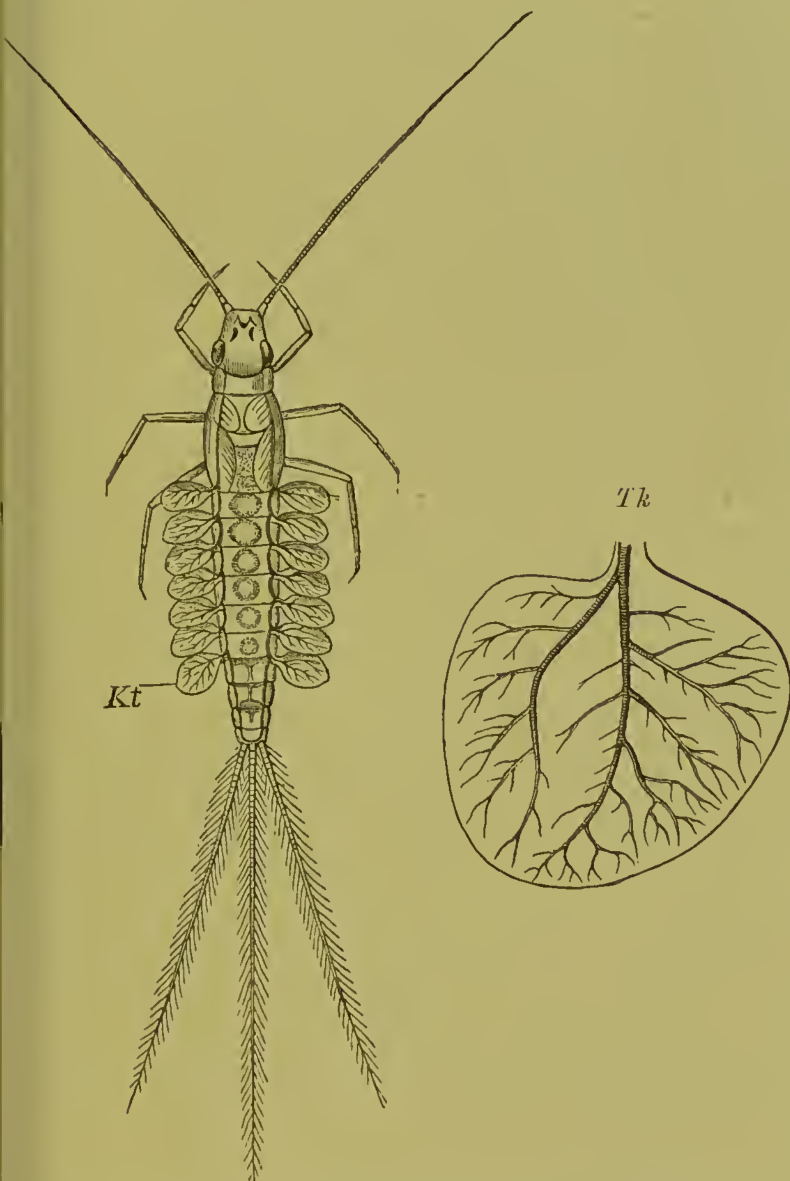



Fig. 66*b*.—Lateral view of head and body of an Acridium. *St*, stigmata; *T*, Tympanum.

Openings in the body wall are present, placing the organs of aërial respiration in communication with the exterior. These openings may be numerous, and paired, placed symmetrically on the sides of the body (fig. 66 *a*, *b*) (*stigmata* of Insects, Spiders), or they may be more restricted in number, and communicate also with cavities of complicated structure which are used for other functions (nasal cavities of Vertebrates). In the aquatic larvæ of certain




G. 67*a*.—Larva of an Ephemeral fly with seven pairs of tracheal gills *Kt*, slightly magnified; *Tk*, isolated tracheal gill strongly magnified.


FIG. 67*b*.—Tracheal system at the sides of the alimentary canal of an Agrion larva (after L. Dufour). *Tst*, main tracheal trunk; *Kt*, tracheal gills; *Na*, the three simple eyes.

Insects (Ephemeridæ, Libellulidæ) the tracheæ may be without any external openings. In such cases processes of the body filled with a close network of tracheæ, which take up oxygen from the water, and are known as *tracheal gills*, are developed (fig. 67 *a*, *b*). In rare instances tracheal gills are developed on the wall of the rectum, and thus acquire a protected position (rectal respiration of Aeschna, Libellula).

In other respects the branchial and pulmonary respiratory processes are essentially the same. In the pulmonate snails (Lymnæus), the pulmonary cavity may be filled with water, and yet continue to function as a respiratory organ (in the young state and also under special conditions in the adult, the animal remaining permanently in deep water). With this fact before us of an air-breathing surface functioning as a gill, it will not surprise us to find that gills and branching folds of skin, which under normal circumstances serve for breathing in water, can, provided they be protected from shrivelling up and desiccation either by their position in a damp space or by their copious blood supply, function as lungs, and allow their possessors to live and breathe on land (Crabs, Birgus latro, labyrinthobranchiate Fishes).

A rapid renewal of the medium which carries the oxygen and surrounds the respiratory surfaces is of the greatest importance for the gaseous exchanges. We find, therefore, very often special arrangements, by which the removal of that part of the respiratory medium which has been deprived of oxygen and saturated with carbonic acid and the introduction of another portion containing oxygen and free of carbonic acid, is effected. In the simplest cases this renewal can, although not very efficiently, be brought about by the movements of the body, or by a continuous oscillation of the respiratory surfaces themselves; a method which is especially common when the gills are placed in the region of the mouth and function also as organs of food prehension, *e.g.*, the tentacles of many attached animals (Polyzoa, Brachiopoda, tubicolous Worms, etc.) Very frequently the gills appear as appendages of the organs of locomotion, *e.g.*, of the swimming or ambulatory feet (Crustacea, Annelids), the movement of which brings about a renewal of the respiratory medium around the gills. The movements become more complicated when the gills are enclosed in special chambers (Decapoda, Pisces), or when the respiratory organs are placed within the body, as happens in the case of tracheæ and lungs, in which case also a renewal of the air is effected either by a more or less regular movement of neighbouring parts, or by rhythmical contractions and dilatations of the air-chamber, constituting the so-called *respiratory movements.* The term *respiration* is now not only applied to these movements so obvious to the eye in air-breathing animals, but also to the osmotic processes, secondarily dependent upon the entrance and exit of *air*, which effect the gaseous exchanges. Taken strictly in this sense it is an incorrect term, inasmuch as in the respiratory movements of animals provided with branchial cavities we have to do with the entrance and exit of *water*.

In the higher animals provided with red blood, the difference in the condition of the blood before and after its passage through the respiratory organs is so striking that it is possible to distinguish blood rich in oxygen from blood rich in carbonic acid, by the colour. The latter is dark red, and is known as venous blood; the former, *i.e.*, blood which has just left the gills or lungs, on the contrary, has a bright red colour, and is known as arterial blood.

While the terms *venous* and *arterial* are used in an anatomical sense to express the nature of the blood-vessel,—those carrying the blood to the heart being called venous, and those carrying it from the heart arterial,—they are also used in a physiological sense as an expression for the two conditions of the blood before and after its passage through the respiratory organs, *i.e.*, to express the quality of the blood. Since, however, the respiratory organs may be inserted in the course of either the venous or arterial *vessels*, it is obvious that, in the first case, there must be venous vessels carrying arterial blood, (Molluscs and some Vertebrates), and, in the latter, arterial vessels carrying venous blood (Vertebrates).

**Animal heat.** The intensity of respiration stands in direct relation to the energy of the metabolism. Animals which breathe by gills and absorb but little oxygen are not in a position to oxidise a large quantity of organic constituents, and can only transform a small quantity of potential into actual energy. They perform, therefore, not only a proportionately smaller amount of muscular and nervous work, but also produce in only a small degree the peculiar molecular movements known as heat. The source of this heat is to be sought, not, as was formerly erroneously supposed, in the respiratory organs, but in the active tissues. Animals in which thermogenic activities are small have no power of keeping independently their own internal heat when exposed to the temperature influences of the surrounding medium. This is also true of those air-breathing animals in which the metabolic and thermogenic activities are great, but which, in consequence of their small size, offer a relatively very large surface for the loss of heat by radiation (Insects). On account of the exchanges of heat which are continually taking place between the animal body and the surrounding medium, the temperature of the former must in such animals be largely dependent on that of the latter, falling and rising with it. Hence, most of the lower animals are *poikilothermic*,* or, as they have less appropriately been called, *cold-blooded*.

The higher animals, on the contrary, in which, on account of their highly developed respiratory organs and energetic metabolism, the thermogenic activity is great, and which are protected from a rapid loss of heat by radiation by the size of their bodies and by the possession of a covering of hairs or feathers, possess the power of maintaining a constant temperature, which is independent of the rising and falling of the temperature of the surrounding medium. Such animals are designated *homothermic*, or *warm-blooded*. Since they require a high internal temperature, varying only within small limits, as a necessary condition for the normal course of the vital processes, or one may say for the maintenance of life itself, they must possess within themselves a series of regulators whose function is to keep the body temperature within its proper limits, when the temperature of the surrounding medium is high. This may be effected either by diminishing the production of internal heat (diminishing the metabolism) or by increasing the loss of heat from the surfaces of the body (by radiation, evaporation of secretions, cooling in water); and, on the contrary, when the temperature of the outer medium is too low, by increasing the production of internal heat (increasing the metabolic activity by more plentiful food supply, more vigorous movements), or by diminishing the loss of heat by the development of better protective coverings.

When the conditions necessary for the action of these regulators are absent (want of food, small and unprotected bodies), we find either the phenomenon of winter sleep, in which life is preserved with a temporary lowering of the metabolic processes; or, when the metabolic processes of the organism do not enter into abeyance, the remarkable phenomena of migration (migration of birds).

**Organs of Secretion.** The respiratory organs stand to a certain extent intermediate between the organs of nutrition and those of excretion, in that they take in oxygen and excrete carbonic acid. In addition to this gas a number of excrementitious substances, mostly in a fluid form, which have entered the blood from the tissues, pass out by the lungs. The function, however, of excretion

* Col. Bergmann, "Ueber die Verhältnisse der Wärmeökonomie der Thiere zu ihrer Grösse," Göttinger Studien, 1847; also Bergmann und Leuckart, "Anatomisch-physiologische Uebersicht des Thierreichs," Stuttgart, 1852.

is mainly discharged by the special *secretory organs*. These have the form of glands of a simple or complex structure which originate from invaginations of the outer skin or of the intestinal wall, and consist essentially of simple or branched tubes, or of racemose and lobulated glands.

Among the various substances which by the aid of the epithelial lining of the walls of glands are removed from the blood and sometimes utilised further for the performance of various functions, the nitrogenous excretory substances are especially important. The organs by which the excretion of these ultimate products of metabolism are effected are the *kidneys*. In the Protozoa they are represented by the contractile vacuoles; in the Worms they appear as the so-called *water-vascular vessels*, and are constituted of a system of branched canals which take their origin in delicate internal ciliated funnels, which open into the spaces in the parenchymatous tissues or the body cavity. In the latter case the ciliated funnels have a wide opening. In the Platyelminthes (flat worms) the efferent ducts of the system consist of two main lateral trunks (fig. 68, *Ex.*), which frequently open together at the hind end of the body by means of a medium terminal contractile vesicle (fig. 68, *ep*).

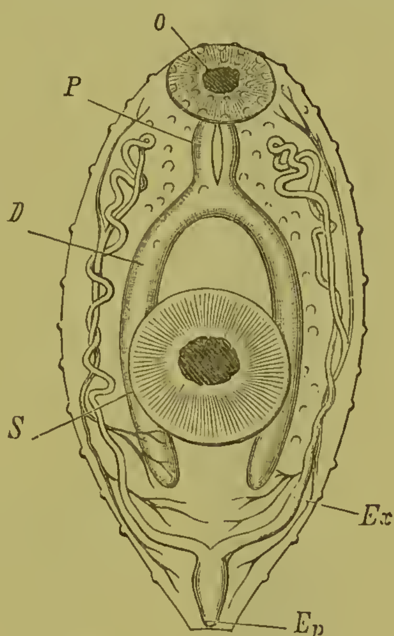



FIG. 68.—Young Distomum (after La Valette). *Ex*, main stems of the excretory system; *Ep*, excretory pore; *O*, mouth with sucker; *S*, sucker in the middle of the ventral surface; *P*, pharynx; *D*, alimentary canal.

In the segmented worms the paired kidneys are repeated in every segment, and are known as *segmental organs* (figs. 69 and 70). The *shell-glands* of Crustacea are in all probability to be traced back to these segmental organs: as are also the paired kidney (organ of Bojanus) of mussels, and the unpaired renal sac of Snails, both of which communicate by means of an internal opening with the *pericardial* division of the body cavity.

In the air-breathing Arthropods and some Crustacea (Orchestia) the urinary organs are tubular appendages (Malpighian vessels) of the hind gut. In the Vertebrata the urinary organs or kidneys obtain a greater independence, and open to the exterior by special openings which are usually common to the generative organs; they consist essentially of a number of coiled tubes, which in the more primitive types of Vertebrates have a ciliated funnel-shaped opening into the body cavity (Dogfish embryo, fig. 71).

The individual tubules of which the vertebrate kidney is composed do not open directly to the exterior, as do the segmental organs of Annelids, but there is present on each side of the body a duct, the kidney duct, which receives the tubules of its own side and opens posteriorly into the cloaca. They also possess an important structure peculiar to the kidney of the Vertebrata known as the "Malpighian body," which consists of a capsular widening of the lumen of each

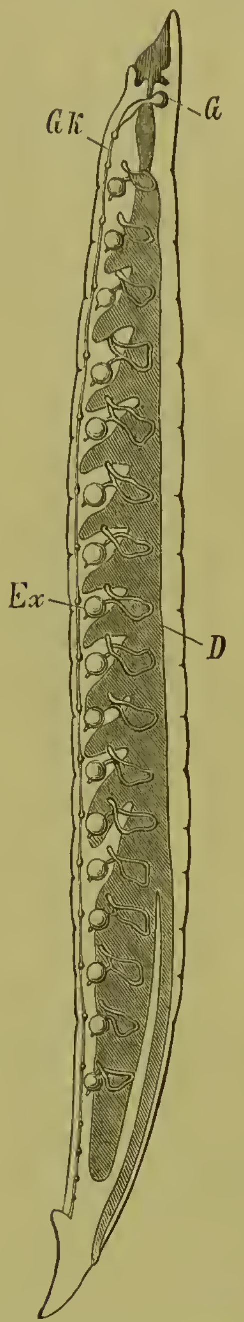



Fig. 69.—Longitudinal section through the medicinal Leech (after R. Leuckart). *D*, alimentary canal; *G*, brain; *Gk*, ventral chain of ganglia; *Ex*, excretory canals (segmental organs, water-vascular system).

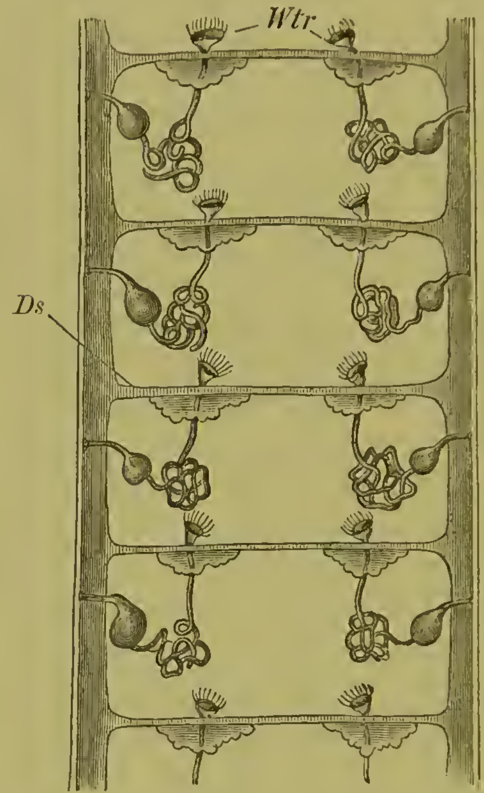



Fig. 70.—Diagrammatic representation of the segmental organs of a segmented worm (after C. Semper). *Ds*, dissepiment; *Wtr*, ciliated funnels which lead into the coiled tubes.

tubule, into which projects a coil of arterial blood vessels known as the *glomerulus* (fig. 72).

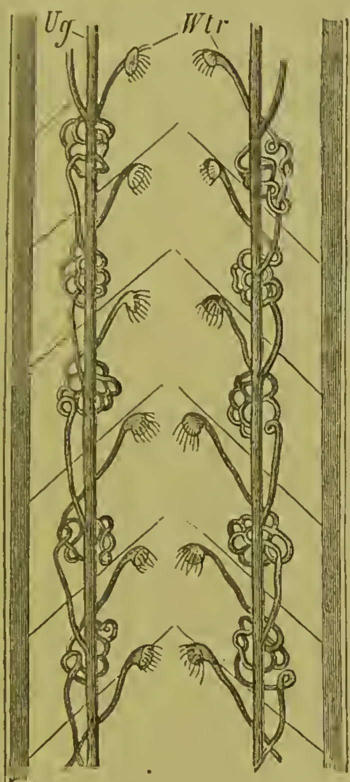



Fig. 71.—Diagrammatic representation of the kidney (segmental organs) of a dog-fish embryo (after C. Semper). *Wtr*, ciliated funnels; *Ug*, kidney duct.

Very generally the outer body surface is the seat of special secretions which frequently play an important part in the economy of the animal, and are used especially as a means of protection and defence. The same is true also of the secretions of the accessory glands opening into the anterior or posterior end of the alimentary canal (salivary glands, poison glands, anal glands) (fig. 73).

To the class of cutaneous glands belong, in the first place, the sweat-glands and the sebaceous glands of Mammalia. The fluid secretion of the former, on account of the ease with which it is evaporated, is of special use in keeping the body cool, while that of the latter keeps the integument and its special covering soft and supple. The coccygeal glands of water-birds are derived from an aggregation of sebaceous glands; their secretion by keeping the feathers oiled preserves them from becoming saturated with water during swimming.

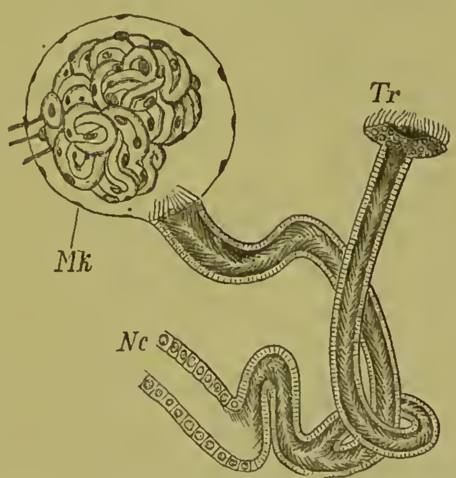



Fig. 72.—Ciliated funnel and Malpighian body from the anterior part of the kidney of Proteus (after Spengel). *Nr*, kidney tubule; *Tr*, ciliated funnel; *Mk*, Malpighian body.

The unicellular and multicellular integumentary glands, which are found so widely present in Insects, belong, for the most part, to the category of oil and fat glands. Aggregations of cells whose function is to secrete calcareous matters and pigment are especially widely present in the integument of the Mollusca, and serve for the building up of the beautifully coloured and variously shaped shells of these animals. Integumentary glands and aggregations of glands may also acquire a relation to the acquisition of food (spinning glands of Spiders). Finally, mucous glands are very widely present in the skin of animals which live in damp localities (Amphibia, Snails) and in water (Fishes, Annelids, Medusæ).

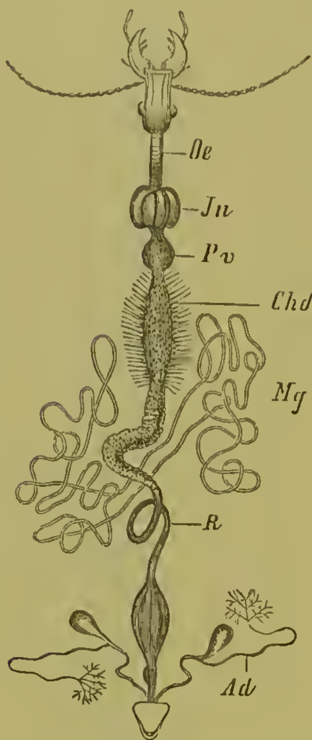



Fig. 73.—Alimentary canal with its accessory glands of a beetle (Carabus) (after Léon Dufour). *Oe*, œsophagus; *Jn*, crop; *Pv*, proventriculus; *Chd*, chylific ventricle; *Mg*, Malpighian tubules; *R*, rectum; *Ad*, anal glands with bladder.

## ORGANS OF ANIMAL LIFE.

Of the so-called animal functions, that of locomotion is the most conspicuous. Animals perform movements for the purpose of procuring food and escaping from their enemies. The muscles used for locomotion are, as a rule, and especially in the simpler forms, intimately united with the skin, and give rise to a muscular body wall (Worms), the alternate shortening and elongation of which brings about a movement of the body. The muscles may also be especially concentrated in parts of the body wall, *e.g.*, in the subumbrellar surface of Medusæ beneath the supporting gelatinous tissue, or in the ventral surface of the body giving rise to a foot-like organ (Molluscs), or they may be broken up into a series of successive and similar segments (Annelids, Arthropods, Vertebrates). The latter arrangement prepares the way for the rapid and more complete form of movement found in animals in which the hard parts also, whether exoskeletal (Arthropods) or endoskeletal (Vertebrata), have become divided into a series of longitudinally arranged segments or rings, which offer a firm attachment to and are moved by the segments of the muscular system. By this arrangement more powerful muscular actions are rendered possible.

Thus it becomes indispensable that hard parts should be developed to act as a skeletal support for the soft parts, and also to protect them. The skeletal structures may be external, in which case they have the form either of external shells, tubes or successive rings, and are usually products of the external skin (*chitin*), or they may be internal (*cartilage, bone*) and give rise to *vertebræ* (fig. 74 *a, b*). In either case the body becomes divided at right angles to its long axis into a series of segments, which, in the simpler cases of locomotion, are homonomous (Annelids, Myriapods, Snakes). As development progresses some of the muscles required for locomotion gradually lose their relation to the long axis of the body, and acquire a relation to secondary axes; and in this way conditions are acquired for the accomplishment of more difficult and complete forms of locomotion. The hard parts in the long axis of the body then lose their primitive

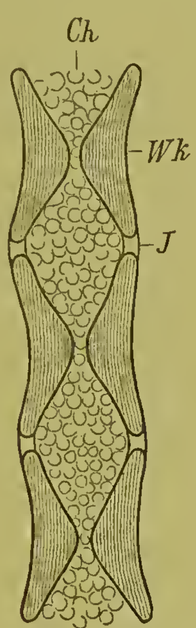



FIG. 74 *a*—Diagram of the vertebral column of a Teleostean fish with vertebral constriction of the notochord. *Ch*, notochord; *Wk*, bony vertebral bodies; *J*, membranous intervertebral section.

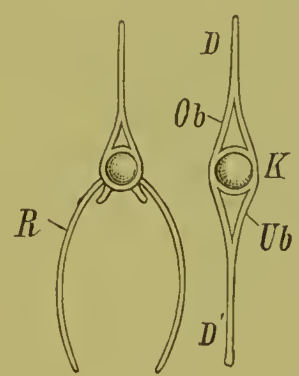



FIG. 74 *b*—Vertebra of a fish. *K*, vertebral body. *Ob*, neural arch (neurapophysis); *Ub*, hæmal arch (hæmapophysis); *D*. neural spine; *D'*, hæmal spine; *R*, rib.

uniform segmentation and partially fuse with one another to form several successive regions, the parts of which are capable of a greater or less amount of movement upon one another (head, neck, thorax, lumbar region, etc.) In this case, however, the parts of the skeleton of the chief axis are usually less movable upon one another, while, on the contrary, a much more perfect locomotion is effected by the extensive movements of the paired extremities or limbs. The limbs likewise possess a solid skeleton, to which the muscles are attached, and which is usually elongated and may be external or internal, and is attached more or less closely to the axial skeleton.

The most essential property of animals is that of *sensation*. This property, like that of movement, resides in definite tissues and organs which constitute the *nervous system.* For those cases in which a nervous system has not separated from the common contraetile basis (sarcode) or from the uniform cell parenchyma of the body, we may suppose that the organism possesses the first beginnings of an irritability serving for pereeption. This, however, can scarcely be called sensation, for sensation pre-supposes the presence of consciousness of the unity of the body, and this we can scarcely attribute to the simplest animals without a nervous system.

The appearance of museles is coincident with that of the nervous tissues, whieh are developed in eonnection with the sense epithelium of the surface (Polyps, Medusæ, Echinoderms). In such cases the nerve fibres and ganglion eells whieh all lie mingled together keep their ectodermal position and their eonnection with the sense epithelium. The view that the first differentiation of the nervous and museular tissues is to be sought in the so-called *neuromuscular* cells of the fresh-water polyps and Medusæ has been shown by later researches to be untenable.


Fig. 75.—Diagram of the nervous system of a star-fish. *N*, nerve ring which connects together the five ambulacral centres.

The arrangements of the nervous system can be traced back to three distinct types—(1) the radial arrangement found in the radiate animals; (2) the bilateral arrangement found in segmented Worms, Arthropods, and Molluses; (3) the bilateral arrangement of the Vertebrata. In the first case the eentral organs are radially repeated; in the Eehinoderms as the so-called ambulacral brains or nerves, which are found in the arms and are eonnected together by a eireumoral nervous commissure eontaining ganglion cells (fig. 75).

In the second type the nervous system, in the simplest cases, consists of an unpaired or paired ganglionic mass placed in the anterior part of the body above the pharynx, and known as the supra-œsophageal ganglion or brain. From this centre radiate in the simplest cases (Turbellaria) nerves which have a bilaterally symmetrieal distribution, and of which two are larger than the others, and take a lateral course (fig. 76).

At a higher stage of development a circum-pharyngeal nerve ring is developed. With the commencing segmentation of the body the number of ganglia increases, and in addition to the brain there is present a ventral nervous system consisting either of ventral cord

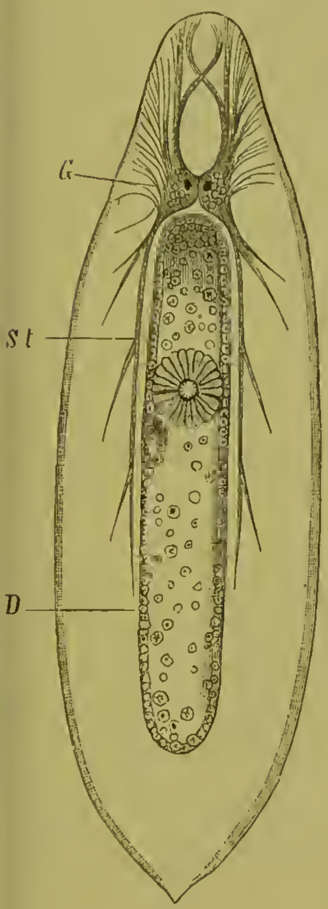



FIG. 76.—Alimentary canal and nervous system of Mesostomum Ehrenbergi (after Graff). *G*, the paired cerebral ganglia with two eye-spots; *St*, one of the two main lateral nerves; *D*, alimentary canal with mouth and pharynx.

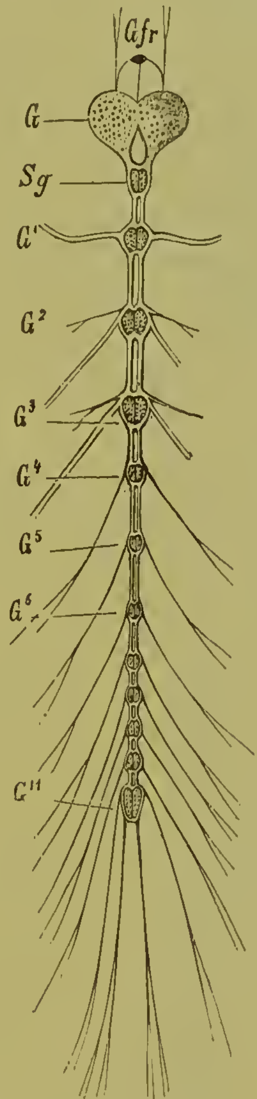



FIG. 77.—Nervous system of the larva of Coccinella (after Ed. Brandt). *G*, supra-œsophageal ganglion or brain; *Gfr*, frontal ganglion; *Sg*, subœsophageal ganglion; *G'*,-*G''*, tho eleven ganglia of the ventral chain of thorax and abdomen.

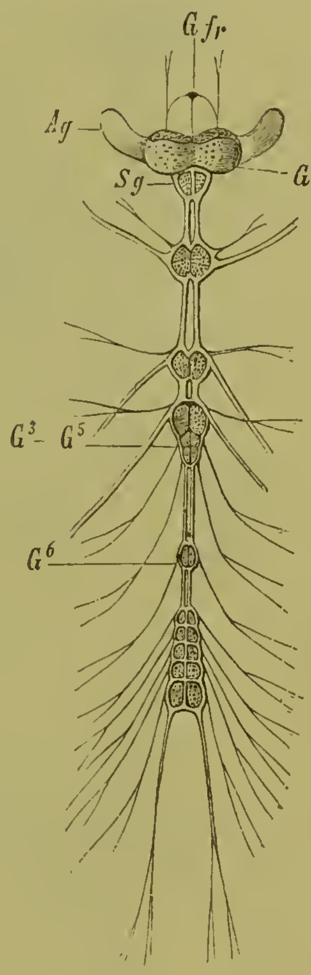



FIG. 78.—Nervous system of adult Coccinella (after Ed. Brandt). *Ag*, optic ganglion. The other letters as in fig. 77.

(Gephyrea) or of a ventral chain of ganglia, which may have a homonomous (Annelids) or heteronomous (Arthropods) arrangement (figs. 77 and 78). The concentration of the nervous system begun in the latter case may, by the fusion of the brain and ventral cord, be carried to a still further extent, so that in many cases (numerous Arthropods) only a sub-œsophageal ganglion is present. In Molluscs, animals in which segments are not developed, the subœsophageal ganglion is represented by the pedal ganglion, and there is in addition a third pair of ganglia constituting the visceral ganglia (fig. 55). In Vertebrates, the nervous centres are arranged as a cord, lying on the dorsal side of the skeletal axis, and known as the spinal cord, the segmentation of which is indicated by the regular repetition of the spinal nerves.

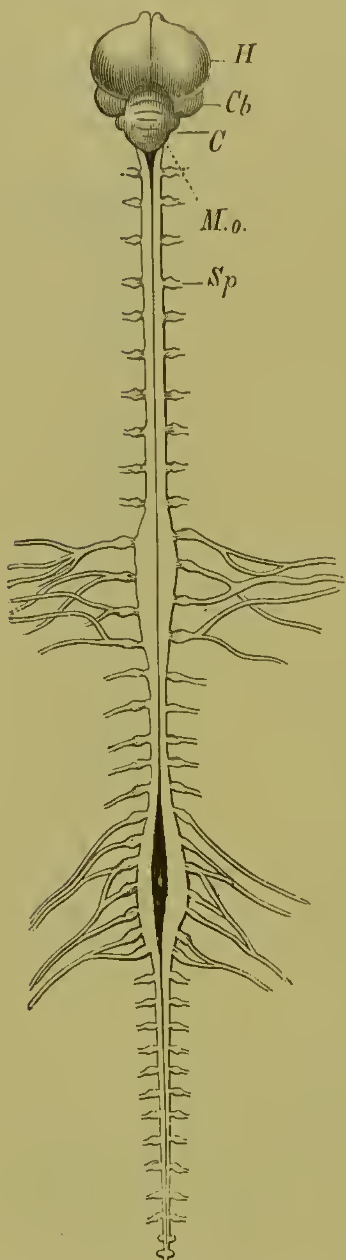



Fig. 79.—Brain and spinal cord of a pigeon. *H*, cerebral hemispheres; *Cb*, optic lobes; *C*, cerebellum; *Mo*, medulla oblongata. *Sp*, spinal nerves.

This cord, which is traversed by a central canal, is anteriorly widened and (except in Amphioxus) differentiated into a complicated ganglionic apparatus, the brain (fig. 79).

The so-called sympathetic or visceral nervous system appears in the higher animals (Vertebrata, Arthropoda, Hirudinea, etc.) as a comparatively independent part of the nervous system. It consists of ganglia and plexuses of nerves which stand in connection with the central nervous system, but are not under the direct control of the will of the animal. They innervate the organs of digestion, circulation, respiration, and generation, and they can carry on their functions for a longer or shorter time after destruction of the sensory and motor centres. In the Vertebrata (fig. 80), the system of visceral nerves consists of a double chain of ganglia, placed on each side of the vertebral column and connected with the spinal nerves and the spinal-like cranial nerves, by connecting branches, the *rami communicantes*. The ganglia correspond in number with the above-mentioned spinal and cranial nerves, and they send nerves to the blood vessels and viscera, which there form a complicated network of nervous fibres containing here and there ganglion cells.

The nervous system possesses further peripheral apparatus, the *sense organs*, the function of which is to bring about the perception of certain conditions of the outer world as impressions of a definite mode of sensation (specific energy of nerves* Joh. Müller).

These peripheral organs usually have the form of peculiarly arranged aggregations of hair-shaped or rod-shaped nerve terminations (hair-cells, rod-cells of sensory epithelium) connected by fibrillæ with ganglion cells, through which under the action of external influences a movement of the nervous substance is set up, which travels to the central organ and there affects con-

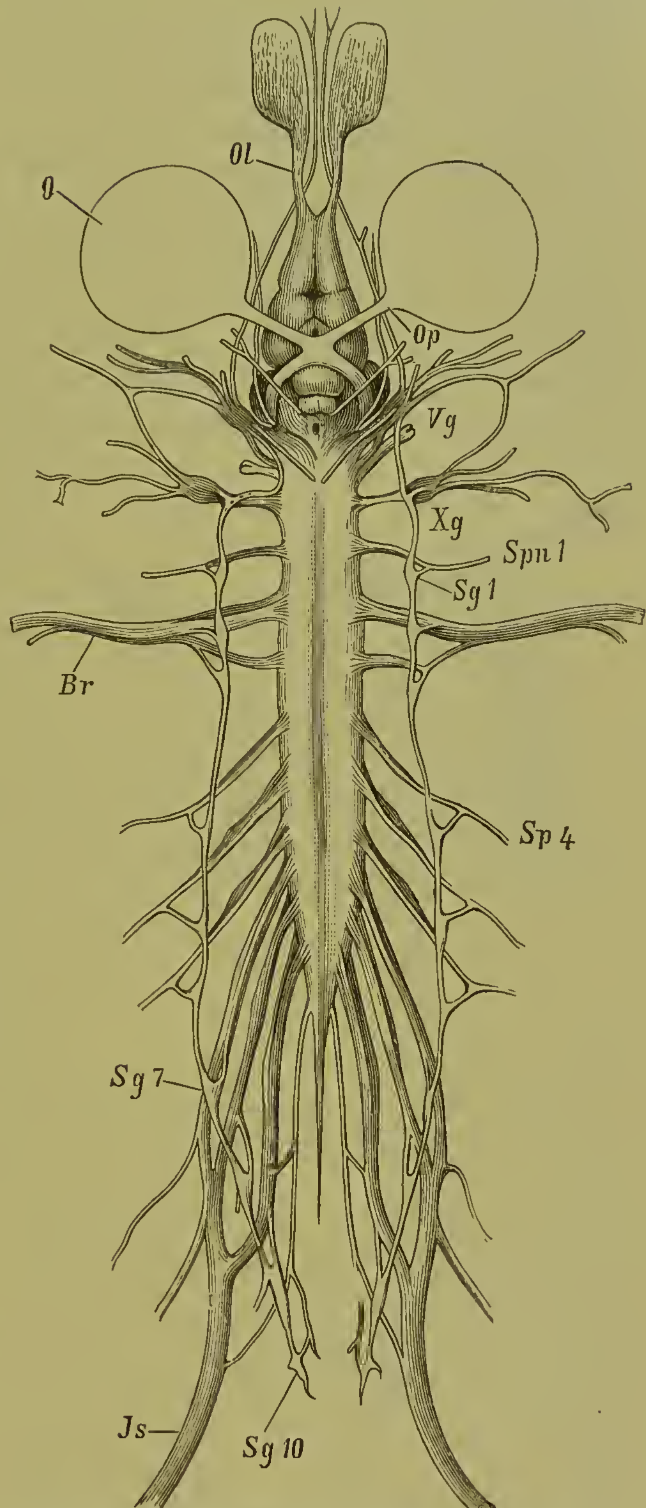



Fig. 80.—Nervous system of the frog (after Ecker). *Ol*, olfactory nerves; *O*, eye; *Op*, optic nerve; *Vg*, Gasserian ganglion; *Xg*, ganglion of vagus; *Spn* 1, first spinal nerve; *Br*, brachial nerve; *Sg*1-10, the ten ganglia of the sympathetic system. *Js*, ischial nerve.

* In opposition to the differences in the qualities of the sensations produced by each individual sense organ (colour, tone).

sciousness as a specific sensation. To these end-cells there are often added cuticular structures, whose function is to communicate the external movement to the nervous substance (retinal rods).

The special sensations have quite gradually been developed from the general sensations (comfort, discomfort, pleasure, pain), *i.e.*, nerves of special sense have been derived from sensory nerves which have acquired a special form of peripheral termination, and so become accessible to a special stimulus with which the special sensation is always associated. But it is not till a higher stage of development is reached that the sense-perceptions can be compared according to the nature of the sensations with those of our own body. We can estimate the sense energies of the lower animals exceedingly vaguely, and only by the insufficient method of comparing them with our own sensations; and it is certain that among the lower animals there are many forms of sensation of which we, in consequence of the specialised nature of our own senses, can have no conception.

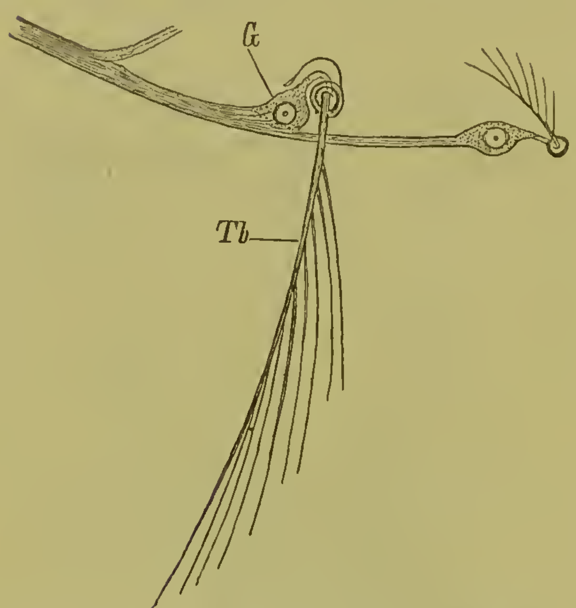


FIG. 81.—Nerves with ganglion cells (*G*) beneath a tactile bristle (*Tb*) from the skin of Corethra larva.

Probably of all the senses, that of *touch* is the most widely distributed, and with this we certainly often see a number of special sensations united. It is generally distributed over the whole surface of the body; frequently, however, it is concentrated on processes and appendages of it. Probably the tentacular appendages of the Cœlenterata and Echinodermata have this significance. In the Bilateralia with a differentiated head there are contractile or stiff segmented processes on the head, the *antennæ* or feelers which in the worms are repeated as paired cirri on every segment of the body. It is often possible to trace special nerves to the skin and to find touch organs containing their endings. In the Arthropoda the ganglionic end-swelling of a tactile nerve usually lies beneath a cuticular appendage, such as a bristle, which transmits the mechanical pressure on its point to the nerve (fig. 81).

In the Primates amongst the Mammalia there are present papillæ in the skin (especially on the volar surface) in which the structures known as *touch-bodies*, containing the termination of tactile nerves, are placed (fig. 82).

In addition to the general sensibility and the tactile sensations, the higher animals possess, as a special form of sensibility, the capacity of distinguishing different temperatures.

The sensations of *sound* are produced through an organ, the **auditory organ**, which is, in a certain measure, a special modification of a tactile organ. The auditory organ in its simplest form appears as a closed vesicle filled with fluid (*Endolymph*) and one or more calcareous concretions (otoliths); and containing in its walls rod or hair cells in which the nerve fibrillæ end (fig. 83). Sometimes the vesicle lies on a ganglion of the central nervous system (Worms), sometimes at the end of a shorter or longer nerve, the auditory nerve (Molluscs, Decapoda). In many aquatic animals the vesicle may be open and its contents communicate directly with the external medium, in which case the otoliths may be represented by small particles such as sand-grains which have entered it from the exterior (Decapod Crustaceans). In Molluscs a delicate sensory epithelium (macula acustica, fig. 83 *Cz*, *Hz*.), marks the percipient portion of the inner wall of the vesicle; while in Crustacea the fibres of the auditory nerve end in cuticular rods or hairs which project from the wall of the vesicle, and, like the olfactory hairs of the antennæ, bring about the nervous excitations. In the Vertebrata not only does the auditory vesicle obtain a more complicated form (membranous labyrinth), but there are also added to it apparatuses for conducting and magnifying the sound (fig. 84). The tympanum of Acrideidæ and Locustidæ, which is generally looked upon as an auditory organ, is built upon quite a different type, since here, instead of a vesicle filled with fluid, air cavities serve for the action of the sound waves on the nerve-endings.


Fig. 82.—Tactile papilla from the volar surface with the touch corpuscle and its nerve *N*.

The **visual organs or eyes** * are, after the tactile organs, the most widely distributed, and indeed are found in all possible stages

* Cf. R. Leuckart, "Organologie des Auges," Graefe and Sämisch, Handbuch der Ophthalmologie, Bd. II.

of perfection. In the simplest cases they are known as *eye-spots*, and consist of irritable protoplasm, *i.e.*, nervous substance, containing pigment granules; and in this form they are perhaps scarcely capable of distinguishing light from darkness, but are only susceptible to the warm rays. It is hardly possible to conceive that pigment is indispensable for the sensation of light, because there are many eyes of complicated structure from which pigment may be altogether absent. The view, however, according to which the pigment itself is sensitive to light, *i.e.*, is chemically changed by the light waves and transmits the excitation produced by these movements to the protoplasm or

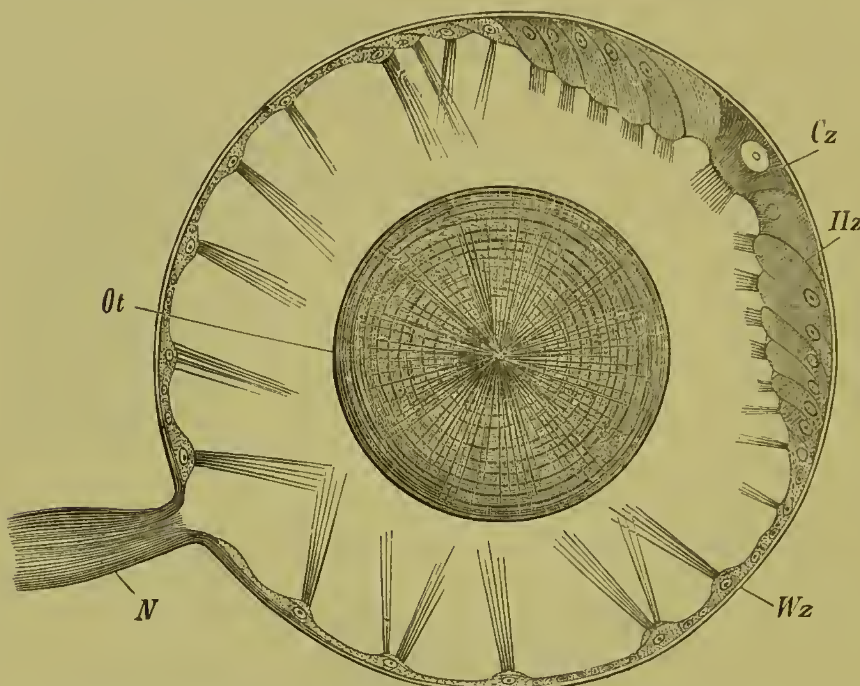



FIG. 83.—Auditory vesicle of a Heteropod (Pterotrachea). *N*, acoustic nerve; *Ot*, otolith the fluid of the vesicle; *Wz*, ciliated cells on the inner wall of the vesicle; *Hz*, auditory cells; *Cz*, central cell.

the adjacent nervous substance cannot in itself be contradicted, but it is by no means clear that such changes are produced by the light rays as opposed to the heat rays. Of greater importance in this relation appears the special nature of the nerve endings, through which certain movements, progressing in regular waves, the so-called ether waves, are transmitted to the nerve fibres and give rise to a stimulus which travels to the central organ and is by it perceived as light. In all cases in which in the lower animals specific nerve endings cannot be made out, we have probably only to do with a forerunner of the eye, consisting merely of the pigmented termination of a cutaneous nerve which is sensitive only to gradations of temperature. Although the sensation of light is the function of the nerve centre, the rods and cones at the end of the optic nerve fibres are the elements which convert the external movement of the ether waves into an excitation of the optic nerve fibres adequate for the production of the sensation of light.

For the perception of an image refractile apparatuses in front of the terminal expansion of the optic nerve (retina) are necessary; and further, the elements of the latter must be sufficiently isolated to admit of the stimuli set up in them being carried as separate movements to the nerve centre. Instead of a general sensation of light a complex sensation made up of many separate perceptions is produced, which correspond in position and quality with the parts of the exciting source. For the refraction of the light convex and often lens-shaped thickenings of the body covering (cornea, corneal lens) through which the rays pass into the eye, are developed; refractile bodies are also found behind the cornea (lens, crystalline cone). The rays diverging from the various parts of the source of the light are, by means of the refractile media, collected and brought to corresponding foci on the retina or peripheral expansion of the optic nerve, which consists of the rod-shaped ends of the nerve fibres and some more or less complicated ganglionic structures. Lately, in consequence of the discovery of the visual purple* in the outer segments of the rods, it has been attempted to reduce the excitation of the end apparatus of the optic nerve to a photo-chemical process taking place in the retina. The fact that the diffuse pigment (visual purple) of the outer segments of the rods is bleached by the

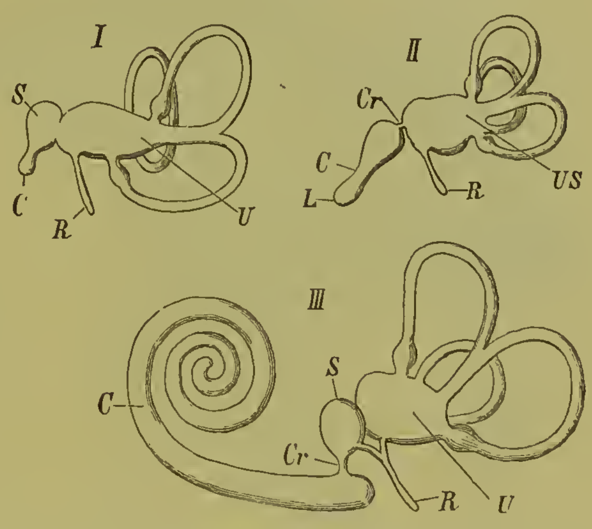



Fig. 84.—Diagram of the auditory labyrinth. I. of a fish. II. of a bird. III. of a mammal (after Waldeyer). *U*, utricle with the three semicircular canals; *S*, saccule; *US*, alveus communis; *C*, cochlea; *L*, lagena; *R*, aqueductus vestibuli; *Cr*, canalis reuniens.

* In addition to the older works of Krohn, H. Müller, M. Schultze, cf. Boll Sitzungsberichte der Akad. Berlin, 1876 and 1877, also Ewald and Kühne.

action of light is of the highest interest, but it cannot be taken as proving a direct participation of the visual purple in the visual process, inasmuch as the visual purple is not present in those parts of the eye in which alone a distinct image is formed, viz., the macula lutea and, generally, the outer segments of the cones.

The pigment of the eye seems to be of importance for absorbing the superfluous rays of light which would be injurious to the perception of an image. It is distributed partly immediately outside the retina, forming the choroid coat of the eye, which extends also inwards between the individual retinal elements; and partly in front of the lens, giving rise to a transversely placed curtain, the *iris* which is pierced by an opening, the *pupil*, capable of contracting and dilating. In the higher grades of development the whole eye is, as a rule, enclosed in a hard, connective tissue coat, the *sclerotic*, and thus marked off as an eye bulb.

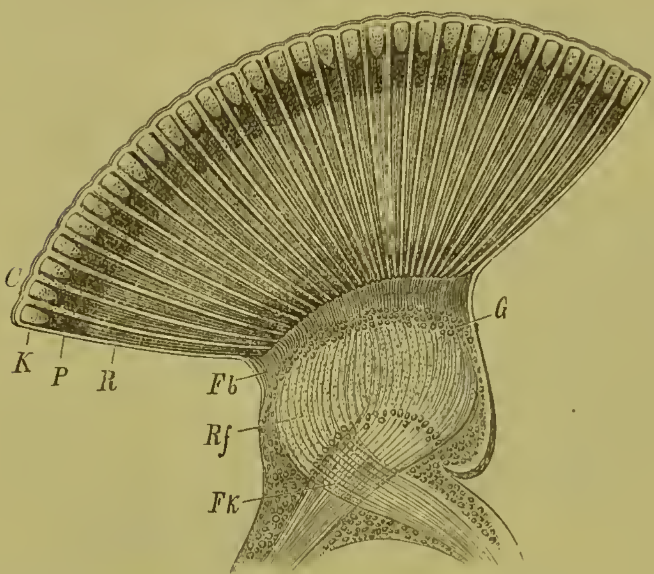



FIG 87.—Diagrammatic representation of the compound eye of a Libellula. *C*, cornea; *K*, crystalline cone; *P*, pigment; *R*, nerve rods of retina; *Fb*, layer of fibres; *Gz*, layer of ganglion cells; *Rf*, retinal fibres; *Fk*, crossing of fibres.

The arrangements by which the shining points of an object act in regular arrangement on corresponding points of the optic nerve and so render possible the perception of an image vary, and are closely dependent upon the whole structure of the eye. Leaving out of consideration the simplest eyes, such as we find in Worms and the lower Crustacea, two types of eye are to be distinguished.

1. The first form occurs in the so-called *facetted eyes** (figs. 85 & 86) of Arthropods (Crustacea and Insects). The retina of such eyes has a hemispherical form, the convex surface being directed outwards, and consists of large compound nerve rods, the retinulæ

* See Joh. Müller, "Zur vergleichenden Physiologie des Gesichtssinnes," Leipzig, 1826. H. Grenacher, "Untersuchungen über das Sehorgan der Arthropoden," Göttingen, 1879.

(figs. 85 & 86 *Rf* & *R*), which are separated from one another by pigment sheaths. In front of these rods are placed the strongly refractile crystalline cones (*k*), and in front of these again the lens-shaped corneal facets (*C* & *F*).

The eye is enclosed by a firm chitinous layer, which, following the sheath of the entering optic nerve, surrounds its soft parts and reaches as far as the cornea. That part of the eye which is known as optic nerve corresponds in a great measure to the retina itself, and contains a layer of ganglion cells and of nerve fibres.

A reversed and reduced picture of the object is thrown behind each convex corneal facet (lying far from the sensitive layer of nervous rods), and only the perpendicular rays can be perceived since all the others are absorbed by the pigment. Accordingly the light impressions caused by these axial rays, whose number corresponds with the separate nerve rods, form a mosaic on the retina which repeats the arrangement of the parts of the external object emitting light. The picture which is here formed lacks, however, brilliancy and distinctness.

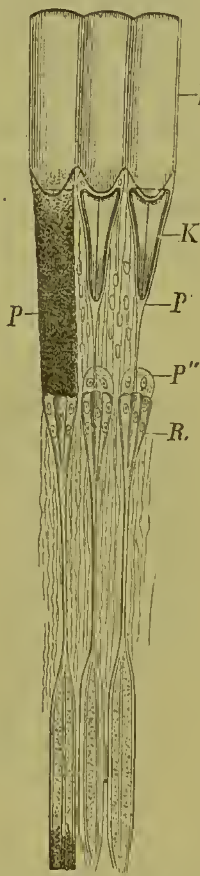



FIG. 86.—Three facets with retinulæ from the compound eye of a cockchafer (after Grenacher). The pigment has been dissolved away from two of them. *F*, corneal facet. *K*, crystalline cone. *P*, pigment sheath. *P′*, chief pigment cell. *P″*, pigment cells of the second order. *R*, retinulæ.

2. The second form of eye, which is widely distributed in the animal kingdom (the simple eye, Annelids, Insects, Arachnida, Molluscs, Vertebrates) corresponds to a globular camera obscura with collecting lenses (cornea, lens) on its exposed anterior wall on which the light falls and usually with additional dioptric media filling the optic chamber (vitreous humour.) The simple eye of Insects seems to have originated from the simple metamorphosis of part of the integument, beneath which are placed the end organs of the optic nerve (fig. 87). The cuticular covering (*CL*) projects as a lens-shaped thickening into the subjacent layer of transparent, elongated, hypodermis cells (*Gk*), within which are placed elongated rod-like nerve-cells with refractile cuticular portions, closely aggregated to form a retina (fig. 87 *Rz*). The hypodermis cells surrounding the edge of the lens are filled with pigment, and form an iris-like dark ring

through the opening in which the rays of light enter the eye to fall on the terminal segments of the retinal cells (fig. 87).

In the more highly developed forms of this type of eye, especially in the Vertebrate eye, the peripheral portion of the optic nerve spreads out so as to form a cup-shaped nervous membrane, the retina, placed immediately behind the refractile media and surrounded by a vascular pigmented membrane, the choroid. The choroid, again, is surrounded by a tough supporting membrane composed of fibrous connective tissue, and known as the sclerotic, which is continued over the anterior part of the eye, *i.e.*, that part through which the light passes, as a thinner transparent membrane. Of the refractile media which are placed behind the cornea and fill the cavity of the optic bulb, viz., the aqueous humour, the lens (fig. 88 *L*), the vitreous humour (*Gl*), the lens is the most powerful. Grasped by the thickened muscular anterior part of the choroid (the ciliary body (*Cc*) and ciliary processes), the peripheral part of its anterior face is covered by a forward continuation of the choroid, the iris (*Jr*), which, as a ring-like contractile border, forms a kind of diaphragm perforated by a central contractile opening, the pupil, through which the light enters the eye (fig. 88). The reversed image which is formed in the hinder part of the Vertebrate eye on the cup-shaped retina has a very considerable brilliancy and definition.

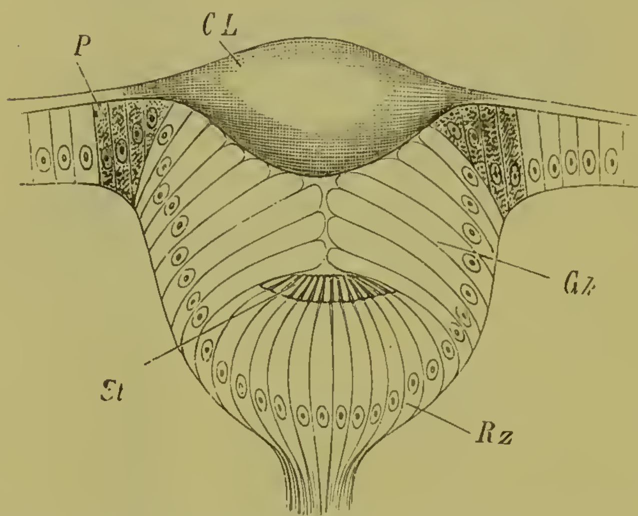



Fig. 87.—Transverse section through the simple eye of a beetle larva (partly after Grenacher). *CL*, corneal lens; *Gk*, the subjacent hypodermis cells, the vitreous humour of Authors; *P*, pigment in the peripheral cells of the latter; *Rz*, retinal cells. *St*, cuticular rods of the latter.

The eyes of many Cephalopods may be looked upon as a modification of this type of eye. In the eye of Nautilus the lens is absent, and the light enters through a small opening. In this case a reversed, but not brilliant, image is formed on the retina placed on the hinder wall of the eye.

To enable the eye to see clearly objects in different directions and at different distances, special apparatuses for its movement and accommodation are necessary. They are represented by muscles which can in the former case move the optic bulb and modify the direction of sight in obedience to the will of the animal, and in the latter act upon the refractile media, and vary their relation to the retina. In many compound eyes (Decapod Crustacea) that part of the head on which the eye is placed is prolonged so as to give rise to a movable stalk-like process, which bears the eye at its extremity. The eyes of Vertebrata possess in addition special protective arrangements, *e.g.*, eyelids, lacrymal glands.

The position and number of the eyes present very great variations amongst the lower animals. The paired arrangement on the head appears to be the general rule among the higher animals; nevertheless visual organs sometimes occur on parts of the body far removed from the brain, as for instance, in Euphausia, Pecten, Spondylus, and certain Annelids (Sabellidæ). In the Radiata the eyes are repeated at the periphery of the body in each radius. In the star fishes they lie at the extreme end of the ambulacral furrow at the tip of the arms, in the Acalephæ as the marginal bodies on the edge of the umbrella.

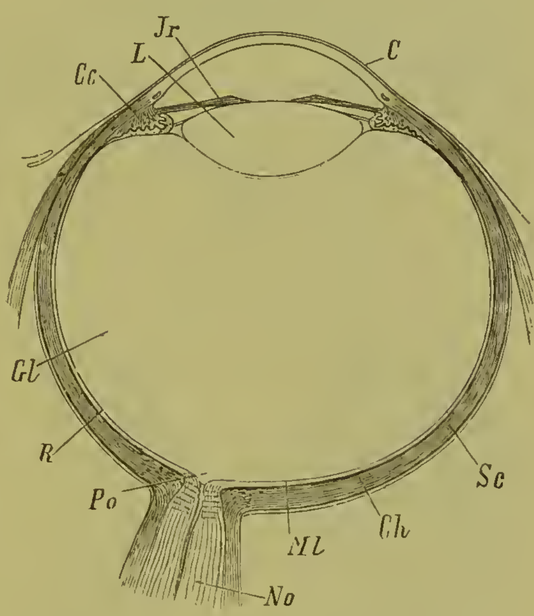



Fig. 88.—Transverse section through the human eye (after Arlt). *C*, cornea; *L*, lens; *Jr*, iris with pupil; *Cc*, ciliary body; *Gl*, vitreous humour; *R*, retina; *Sc* sclerotic; *Ch*, choroid. *Ml*, macula lutea; *Po*, papilla optica; *No*, optic nerve.

The sense of **smell** appears to be less widely distributed. Its function is to test the quality of gaseous matters and to produce in consciousness the special form of sensation known as "Smell." This sense in aquatic animals which breathe through gills cannot be sharply marked off from that of taste. The small pits, standing in connection with nerves and provided with an epithelial lining of hair-bearing sense cells are to be looked upon as the simplest form of olfactory organ (Medusæ, Heteropoda, Cephalopoda). Nevertheless scattered hair cells (Lamellibranchiata) may also have to do with the same sensation. In the Arthropoda the cuticular appendages of the antennæ in which the gangliated swollen extremities of nerves occur are to be explained as olfactory fibres. In the Vertebrata the olfactory organ usually has the form of a paired pit or cavity placed on the under surface of the head (nasal cavity), on the walls of which the ends of the olfactory nerve are distributed. The higher air-breathing Vertebrata are distinguished by the fact that in them this cavity communicates with the pharynx, and by the great surface extension (in a confined area) of the much-folded olfactory mucous membrane. The fibres of the olfactory nerve terminate in delicate elongated cells, bearing rods or hairs and placed between the epithelial cells of this mucous membrane.

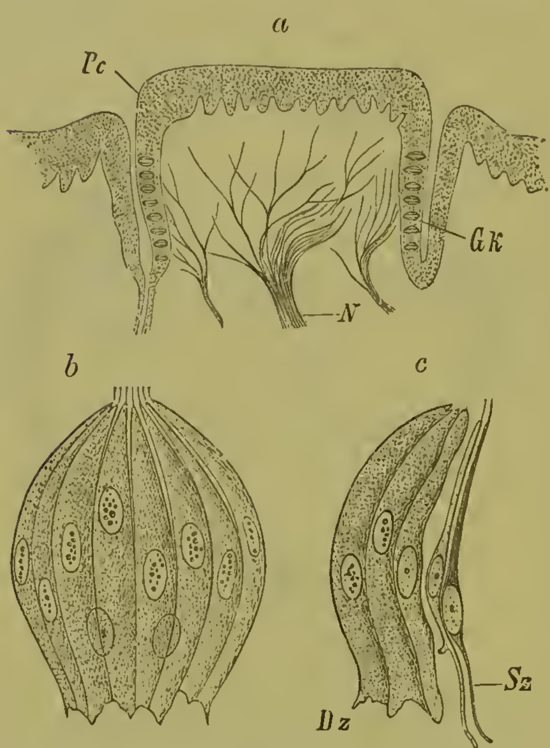


FIG. 89.—*a* Transverse section through a circumvallate papilla of a calf (after Th. W. Engelmann). *N*, nerve; *Gk*, taste buds in the side-wall of the papilla, *Pc*. *b*, isolated taste bud from the lateral taste organs of a rabbit. *c*, isolated supporting cells (*Dz*) and sense cells (*Sz*) from the same.

The special sense of **taste** is confined to the mouth and pharynx. Its function, from what we know of the higher organisms, is to test the quality of fluid substances, and to bring about the special sensation of taste. The presence of this sense can be demonstrated with certainty in the Vertebrata, and it is connected with the distribution of a special nerve of taste, the glossopharyngeal, which in man supplies the tip, edges, and root of the tongue and also parts of the soft palate, making these parts capable of the taste sensation.

The so-called taste-buds found in special papillæ (papillæ circumvallatæ), with their central fibre-like cells, are explained as the percipient organs of this sense (fig. 89 *a*, *b*, *c*). Taste is, as a rule, connected with the tactile and temperature sensations of the buccal cavity, and also with the olfactory sensations. Finally, special organs of taste appear to be present also in the Molluscs and Arthropods as a specific sensory epithelium at the entrance to the buccal cavity.

In the lower animals the taste and olfactory organs are still less clearly distinguishable than in the higher, and there are numerous senses of an intermediate character for the purpose of testing the surrounding medium.

The sense-organs of the lateral line of Fishes and Salamanders, and the organs resembling taste-buds of the Hirudinea and Chætopoda have been described as organs of a sixth sense. They probably bring about certain sensations referring to the quality of the water.

## PSYCHICAL LIFE* AND INSTINCT.

The higher animals are not only rendered conscious of the unity of their organization by their feelings of comfort and discomfort, pleasure and pain, but also possess the power of retaining residua of the impressions of the outer world conveyed through the senses, and of combining them with simultaneously perceived conditions of their bodily state. In what manner the irritability of the lower protoplasmic organisms leads by gradual transitions and intermediate steps to the first affection of sensation and consciousness is as completely hidden from us as are the nature and essence of the psychical processes which we know are dependent on the movement of matter.

We are, however, justified in supposing that a nervous system is indispensable for the development of these internal conditions which may be compared with that condition of our own organization called consciousness. Again, as animals have sense-organs capable of receiving impressions of definite quality from external causes, together with a capacity for retaining in their memory residua of their perceptions, and the power of connecting them with present and with the recollection of past states of bodily sensation so as to form judgments and conclusions, they possess all the conditions essential for the operation of the intelligence; and, as a matter of fact, they do manifest in an elementary form nearly all the phenomena which distinguish human intelligence.

The actions of animals are not only voluntary, the result of experience and intellectual activity, but are also largely determined by internal impulses which work independently of consciousness, and cause numerous, often very complicated, actions useful to the organism. Such impulses tending to the preservation of the individual and the

* W. Wundt, "Vorlesungen über die Menschen und Thierseele." 2 Bde. Leipzig, 1863. W. Wundt, "Grundzüge der physiologischen Psychologie," Leipzig, 1874.

species are called *instincts*;* and they are usually regarded as a special property of the lower animals, and contrasted with the conscious reason of Man. But just as the latter must be looked upon as a higher form of the understanding and intellect, and not as something essentially distinct from them, so a closer examination shows that instinct and the conscious understanding do not stand in absolute contrast, but rather in a complex relation, and cannot be sharply marked off from one another. For if, according to the general view, we recognise the essence of instinct in the *unconscious* and the *innate*, still we find that actions which were at first performed under the direction of conscious intelligence become, by constant practice, completely instinctive and are performed unconsciously: and that, in accordance with the theory of descent, which the whole connection of natural phenomena renders so probable, instincts have been developed from small beginnings, and have only been able to reach the high and complicated forms which we admire in many of the more highly organised animals (Hymenoptera), when assisted by a certain amount, however small, of intellectual activity.

Instinct accordingly may be rightly defined as a mechanism which works unconsciously, and is inherited with the organization, and which, when set in motion by external or internal stimuli, leads to the performance of appropriate actions, which apparently are directed by a conscious purpose. We must not, however, forget that while the intellectual activities are the direct means whereby higher and more complicated instincts arise from simple ones, they themselves depend upon mechanical processes. We may well suppose that the simplest form of instinct is identical with the definite reaction of living matter following a stimulus, or, in other words, with that special form of molecular change which is caused by an external action (as, for instance, the contraction of an *Amœba* when brought into contact with a foreign body).

By the theory of partly instinctive, partly intellectual processes, we may explain the phenomena of association in societies so often found among the higher animals,† *i.e.*, the association of numerous

* Compare H. S. Reimarius, "Allgemeine Betrachtungen über die Triebe der Thiere," Hamburg, 1773. P. Flourens, "De l'instinct et de l'intelligence des animaux," Paris, 1851.

† The origin of the so-called animal stocks with incomplete or confined individuality among the lower animals is quite different, and merely determined by processes of growth; at the same time the advantage for the preservation of the species gained by the fusion is the same. Cf. the animal stocks of the Vorticellidæ, Polyps, and Siphonophora, Bryozoa and Tunicata.

individuals into communities—the so-called animal-polities—which may be complicated by the division of labour (Bees, Wasps, Ants, Termites).

In fact here the combined action appears to be mutually assisting or mutually limiting as we find in those forms the so-called animal stocks, the individuals of which are bound together by continuity of body. The advantages to be gained by this mutual rendering of service are not merely limited to the greater facilities for nourishment and defence, and therefore for the preservation of the individual; but, above all, tend to the maintenance of the offspring, and hence to the preservation of the species. It is for this reason that the simplest and commonest associations, from which the more complicated communities, subdivided by partition of labour, are derived, are generally communities of both sexes of the same species.

## REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS.

On account of the limit set to the duration of the life of every organism, it appears absolutely necessary for the preservation of the animal and vegetable kingdoms that new life should originate. The formation of new organisms might be due to spontaneous generation (*generatio equivoca*); and formerly this was supposed to take place, not only in the simpler and lower organisms, but also in the more complicated and higher. Aristotle thought that Frogs and Eels arose spontaneously from slime; and the appearance of maggots in putrefying meat was, till Redi's time, explained in the same manner. With the progress of science the limits within which this supposition could be applied became ever narrower, so that they soon came to include only the Entozoa and small animals found in infusions. Finally it has been shown by the researches of late years that these organisms also must, for the most part, be withdrawn from the region of the *generatio equivoca;* so that at present, when the question of spontaneous generation is discussed, it is only the lowest organisms, those found in putrefying infusions, that are considered. The greater number of investigators,* supported by the results of

* Cf. especially Pasteur, "Memoire sur les corpuscules organisés qui existent dans l'atmosphère" (Ann. des. Sc. Nat.), 1861; also "Expériences relatives aux générations dites spontanées" (Compt. rend. de l'Acad. des Sciences, tome 50).

numerous experiments, have rejected, even for the latter animals, the idea of spontaneous generation, which, however, still finds in Pouchet* a prominent and zealous supporter.

Biogenesis, as opposed to abiogenesis, or spontaneous generation, must be regarded as the usual and normal form of reproduction. Fundamentally it is nothing else than a growth of the organism beyond the sphere of its own individuality, and can be always reduced to a separation of a part of the body, which develops into an individual resembling the parent organism. Nevertheless the nature and method of this process differ extraordinarily; and various kinds of reproduction can be distinguished, viz., *fission*, *budding* (*spore-formation*), *sexual reproduction*.†

**Reproduction by fission**, which, with that by *budding* and *spore-formation*, is included under the term *monogenous asexual reproduction*, is found widely scattered in the lowest animals, and is also of special importance for the reproduction of the cell. It consists simply of a division of the organism into two parts by means of a constriction which gradually becomes deeper, and eventually leads to the separation of the whole body of the organism into two individuals of the same kind. If the division remains permanently incomplete, and its products do not completely separate from each other, compound colonies of animals arise. The number of individuals in such colonies increases by a continuation of the process of incomplete and often dichotomous division of the newly-formed individuals (Vorticella, Polyp stocks). The division may take place in various directions—longitudinal, transverse, or diagonal.

**Budding** differs from fission by a precedent disproportionate and asymmetrical growth of the body, giving rise to a structure not absolutely necessary to the parent organism which is developed to a new individual, and by a process of constriction and division becomes independent. If the buds remain permanently attached to the parent, we have here also the conditions necessary for the formation of a colony (Polyp colonies). Sometimes the budding takes place at various parts of the outer surface of the body, irregularly or obeying definite laws (Ascidians, Polyps); sometimes it is localised to a definite part of the body, separated off as a *Germ-stock* (Salpa, stolo prolifer). The cell-layers distinguished as germinal

* Pouchet, "Nouvelles expériences sur la génération spontanée et la résistance vitale," Paris, 1864.

† Cf. R. Leuckart's article, "Zeugung" in R. Wagner's "Handwörterbuch der Physiologie."

layers are repeated in the commencing buds, and from them the organs are differentiated.

**The reproduction by spores** is characterised by the production within the organism of cells, which develop into new individuals *in situ* or after leaving the organism. But this conception of spores, which is taken from the vegetable kingdom, can only be applied to the Protozoa and coincides with endogenous cell-division. The cases of so-called spore-formation amongst the Metazoa (germinal sacs of Trematodes) are probably identical with egg formation, and are to be reduced to a precocious maturation and spontaneous development of ova (Parthenogenesis, Pædogenesis).

**The digenous or sexual reproduction** depends upon the production of two kinds of germinal cells, the combined action of which is necessary for the development of a new organism. The one form of germ cells contains the material from which the new individual arises, and is known as the *egg-cell*, or merely *egg* (*ovum*). The second form, the *sperm-cell* (*spermatozoon*), contains the fertilising material, *semen* or *sperm*, which fuses with the contents of the egg-cell, and in a way which is not understood gives the impetus to the development of the egg.

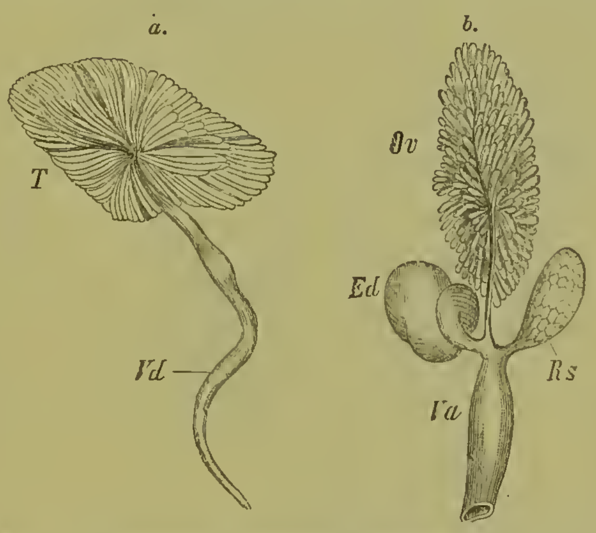



Fig. 90.—Generative organs of a Heteropod (Pterotrachea) after R. Leuckart. *a*, Male-organs; *T*, testis. *Vd*, vas deferens. *b*, female organs; *Ov*, ovary; *Ed*, albumen gland; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis; *Va*, vagina.

The cell structures from which the eggs and sperm arise are called *sexual organs*, for reasons which will be evident in the sequel; the eggs being produced in the *female* organ or *ovary*, and the semen in the *male* organ or *testis*. The *egg* is the *female*, and the *semen* the *male* product.

The structure of the sexual organs presents extraordinary differences and numerous grades of progressive complication. In the simplest cases, both products arise in the body wall, the cells of which give rise at determined places to ova or spermatozoa (Cœlenterata). Sometimes they arise in the ectoderm (Hydroid-Medusæ), sometimes in the entoderm (Acalepha, Anthozoa). A similar arrangement obtains in the marine Polychæta, in which the ova and spermatozoa are developed from the epithelium of the body-cavity (mesoderm), and dehisced into the body cavity. Usually, however, special glands, the ovaries and testes, are developed, which perform no other function than that of secreting ova and spermatozoa (Echinoderms).

As a rule, however, there are found associated with the male and female generative glands accessory structures and a more or less complicated arrangement of ducts, which discharge definite functions in connection with the development of the generative products subsequent to their separation from the glands, and ensure a suitable meeting between the male and female elements (fig 90). The ovaries are provided with ducts, the oviducts, which are not rarely derived


FIG. 91, *a*.—The female organs of Pulex (after Stein). *Ov*, ovarian tubes ; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis ; *V*, vagina ; *Gl*, accessory gland. *b*, The male generative organs of a water-bug (Nepa) (after Stein). *T*, testis ; *Vd*, vasa deferentia ; *Gl*, accessory glands ; *D*, ductus ejaculatorius.

from structures serving quite another purpose (segmental organs). The oviducts, in their course, may receive glandular appendages of various kinds which furnish yolk for the nourishment of the ovum, or albumen to surround it, or material for the formation of a hard egg-shell (chorion). These functions may be sometimes discharged by the ovarian wall (Insects), so that the egg when it enters the oviduct has taken up its accessory yolk and acquired its firm egg-shell. Very often the ducts also discharge these various functions, and are divided into corresponding regions ; they are often dilated at part of their course to form a reservoir for the retention of the eggs or of the developing embryos (uterus). Their terminal section presents differentiations subserving fertilization (receptaculum seminis, vagina, copulatory pouch, external generative organs). The efferent ducts of the testis, the vasa deferentia, likewise frequently give rise to reservoirs (vesiculæ seminales) and receive glands (prostate), the secretion of which mixes with the sperm fluid or surrounds aggregations of the spermatozoa with a firm sheath (spermatophors).

The terminal section of the vas deferens becomes exceedingly muscular, and gives rise to a ductus ejaculatorius, which, as a rule, is accompanied by an external organ of copulation to facilitate the conveyance of the semen into the female generative organs. The generative organs present either a radial (Cœlenterata, Echinodermata) or a bilaterally symmetrical arrangement (fig. 91), a contrast which is visible in the typical arrangement of all the systems of organs.

The simplest and most primitive condition of the generative organs is the *hermaphrodite.* Ova and spermatozoa are produced in the body of one and the same individual, which thus unites in itself all the conditions necessary for the preservation of the species, and alone represents the species. Instances of hermaphroditism are found in every group of the animal kingdom. But they are especially numerous in the lower groups, and also in animals in which the movements are slow (Land-snails, Flat-worms, Hirudinea, Oligochœta), or which live singly (Cestoda, Trematoda), or in attached animals which are without power of changing their position (Cirripedia, Tunicata, Bryozoa, Oysters). The hermaphrodite arrangement of the generative organs presents great variation, which, to a certain extent, forms a gradual series tending towards the separation of the sexes.

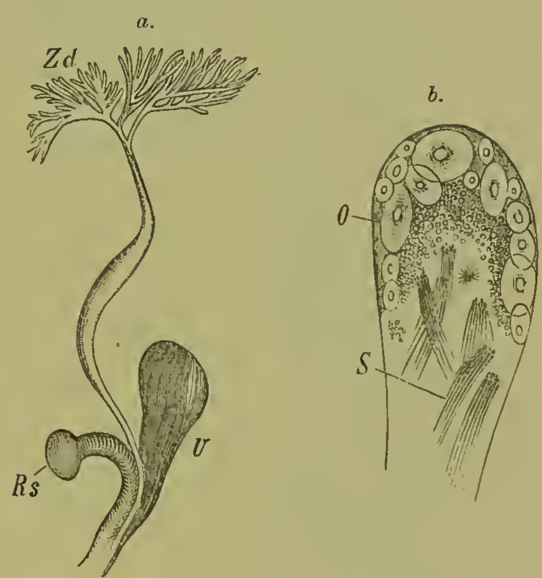



Fig. 92.—Sexual organs of a Pteropod (Cymbulia) (after Gegenbaur.) *a*, *Zd*, hermaphrodite gland with common duct; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis; *U*, uterus. *b*, Acinus of the hermaphrodite gland of the same. *O*, ova; *S*, spermatozoa.

In the simplest cases, the points of origin of the two kinds of generative products lie close to one another, so that the spermatozoa and ova meet directly in the parent body (Ctenophora, Chrysaora).

The elements of both sexes arise in layers of cells which have a definite position beneath the entodermal lining of the gastro-vascular canals, and can be traced back to growths of the ectoderm. At a higher stage the ovaries and testes are united in one gland, the hermaphrodite gland (Synapta, Pteropoda), provided with a single duct common to the ova and spermatozoa (fig. 92), but which, as in Helix (fig. 93), may partially separate into vas deferens and oviduct. In other cases the ovaries and testes appear as completely separated glands with separate ducts, which may still open into a common cloaca (Cestoda, Trematoda, rhabdocœle Turbellarians, fig. 94), or may possess separate openings (Hirudinea, fig. 95).

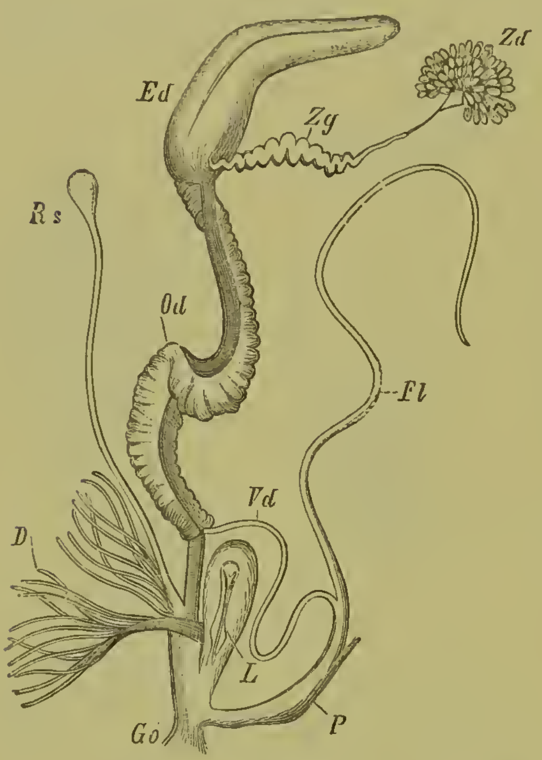



FIG. 93.– Sexual organs of the Roman Snail (Helix pomatia). *Zd*, hermaphrodite gland; *Zg*, its duct; *Ed*, albumen gland; *Od*, oviduct and seminal groove; *Vd*, vas deferens; *P*, protrusible penis; *Fl*, flagellum; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis; *D*, finger-shaped gland; *L*, Spiculum amoris; *Gö*, common genital opening.

Two hermaphrodite individuals may, and this appears to be the rule, mutually fertilise each other at the same time, or cases may occur in such hermaphrodites in which self-fertilization is sufficient for the production of offspring. But this original condition of self-fertilization appears to be the exception in almost all hermaphrodites. In those animals in which the ovary and testis are not completely separated from one another cross-fertilization is rendered necessary, and self-fertilization prevented by the fact that the male and female elements are matured at different times (Snails, Salps).

From this form of complete hermaphroditism the generative organs pass through a stage of incomplete hermaphroditism, in which, though the organs of both sexes are present, one of them is rudimentary, to reach the diœcious condition in which the sexes are completely separated (*Distomum fillicolle* and *hæmatobium*). Animals in which the sexes are distinct not unfrequently present traces of an hermaphrodite arrangement; such, for instance, as may be seen in the arrangement of the generative ducts of the Vertebrata. In the Amphibia both male and female generative ducts, which are secondarily derived from the urinary ducts, are developed in each individual. The oviduct (Müllerian duct) in the male atrophies, and is only represented by a small rudiment (fig. 96*b*, *Mg*); while, on the contrary, in the female, the vas deferens (Wolffian duct) is rudimentary, or, as in Amphibia, functions as the efferent duct for the kidney secretion (fig. 96*a*, *hg*).

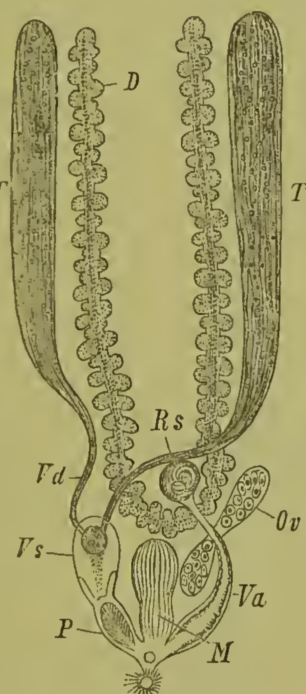



Fig. 94.—Generative apparatus of a rhabdocœe Turbellarian (vortex viridis) (after M. Schultze). *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Vs*, seminal vesicle; *P*, protrusible penis; *Ov*, ovary; *Va*, vagina; *M*, uterus; *D*, yolk gland; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis.

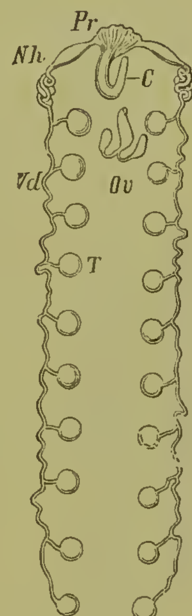



Fig. 95.—Generative apparatus of the medicinal leech. *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Nh*, vesicula seminalis; *Pr*, prostate; *C*, penis; *Ov*, ovaries with vagina and female generative opening.

With the separation of the male and female generative organs in different individuals the most complete form of sexual reproduction, so far as concerns division of labour, is reached; but at the same time a progressing dimorphism of the male and female individuals becomes apparent. This is due to the fact that the organization in bisexual animals is more and more influenced by the deviating functions of the sexual organs, and with the increasing complication of sexual life becomes modified for the performance of special accessory functions connected with the production of ova and spermatozoa.

In the first place, the modification of the generative ducts of the two sexes in accordance with the function they have to perform determines the development of secondary sexual characters and of sexual dimorphism. Other organs as well as the generative apparatus present differences in the two sexes, being modified for the

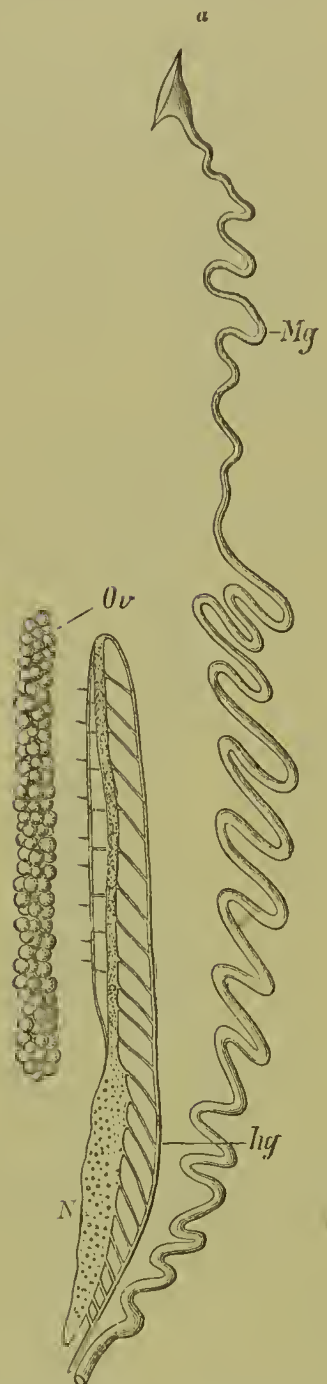



Fig. 96*a*.—Left urinary and generative organs of a female Salamander without the cloaca. *Ov*, ovary; *N*, kidney; *hg*, urinary duct corresponding to the Wolffian duct; *Mg*, Müllerian duct as oviduct.

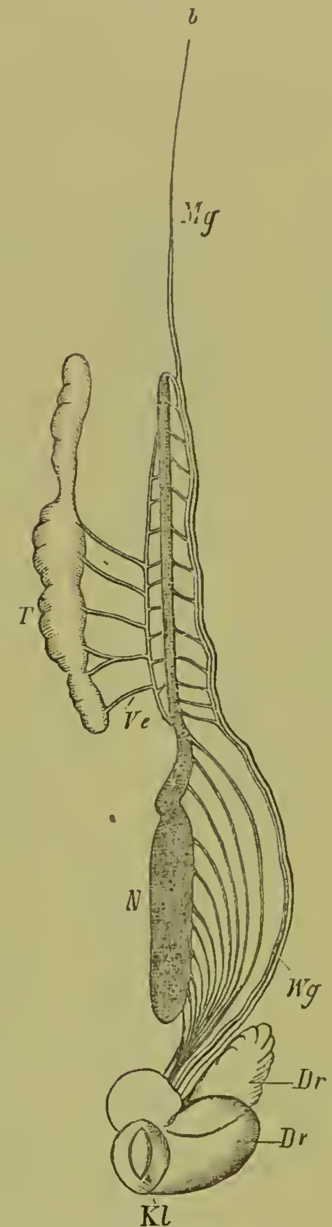



Fig. 96*b*, Left urinary and generative organs of a male Salamander, more diagrammatic. *T*, testis; *Ve*, vasa efferentia; *N*, kidney with its collecting tubules; *Mg*, Müllerian duct as a rudiment; *Wg*, Wolffian duct or vas deferens; *Kl*, cloaca with accessory glands *Dr*, of the left side.

performance of special functions in the sexual life. The female is the passive agent in copulation, merely receiving the semen of the male; the female possesses material from which the offspring

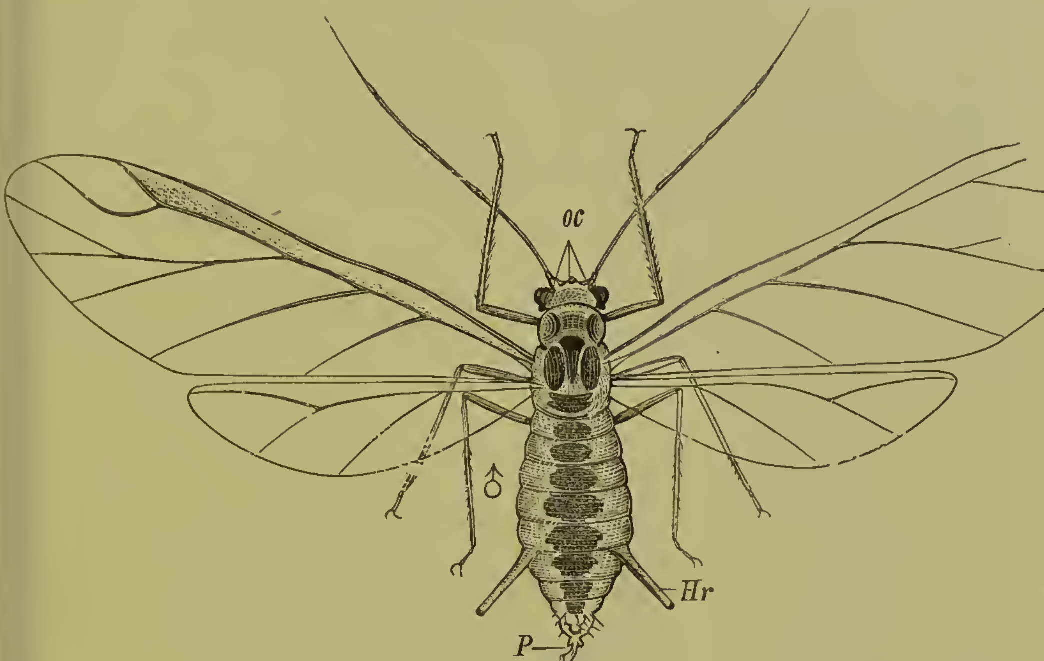



FIG. 97a.—Male of Aphis platanoides. *oc*, ocelli; *Hr*, honey tubes; P, copulatory organ.

develop, and accordingly takes care of the development of the fertilised egg and of the later fate of the offspring. Hence the female usually possesses a less active body and numerous arrangements for the protection and nourishment of her offspring, which develop either from eggs laid by the mother and sometimes carried about with her, or in the maternal body and are born alive. The function of the male is to seek, to excite, and to hold the female during copulation; hence, as a rule, he possesses greater vigour and power of movement, higher development of the senses, various means of exciting sexual feeling, such as brighter colouring, louder and richer voice, prehensile organs, and external organs for copulation (fig. 97, *a*, *b*).

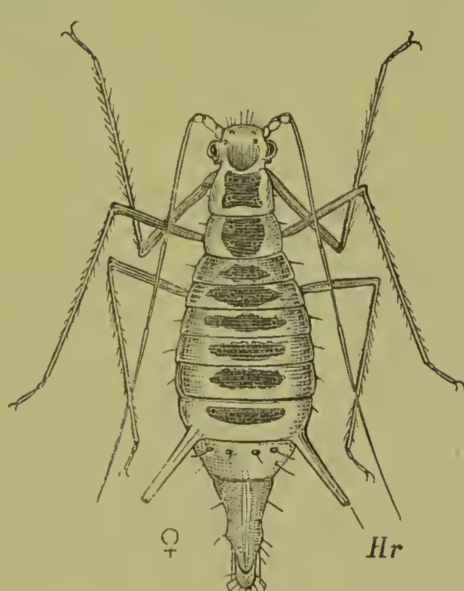



FIG. 97*b*, Apterous oviparous female of the same.

In exceptional cases, the functions relating to the maintenance of the offspring may be discharged by the male, *e.g.*, Alytes and the Lophobranchia. Male birds also often share with the female the labour of building the nest, of bringing up and protecting the young. But it is a rare exception to find, as in Cottus and the Stickleback (Gasterosteus), that the care and protection of the young fall exclusively upon the male, that he only bears the brood pouch and alone builds the nest,—an exception which bears strong witness to the fact that the sexual differences both in form and function were first acquired by adaptation.

In extreme cases, the sexual dimorphism may lead to so great a difference in the sexes that without a knowledge of their development

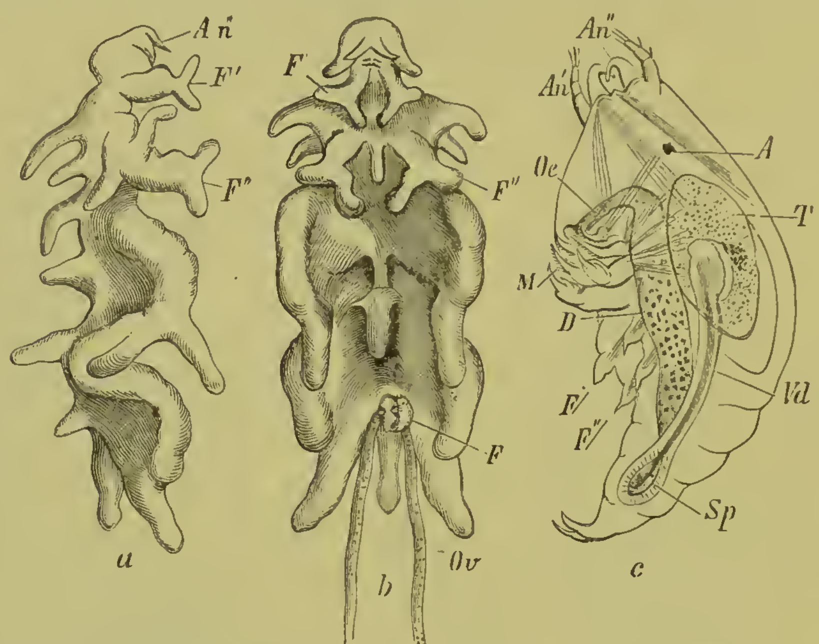



FIG. 98.—Chondracanthus gibbosus, magnified about 6 times. *a*, female from the side. *b*, female from the ventral surface with the male (F) attached. *c*, male isolated, under strong magnification. *An'*, anterior antenna; *An''*, clasping antennæ; *F'* and *F''*, the two pairs of feet; *A*, eye; *Ov*, egg sacs; *Oe*, œsophagus; *D*, intestine; *M*, mouth parts; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Sp*, spermatophore.

and sexual relations, the one sex would be placed in a different family and genus to the other. Such extremes are found in the Rotifera and parasitic Copepoda (Chondracanthus, Lernæopoda, fig. 98, *a*, *b*, *c*), and are to be explained as the result of a parasitic mode of life.

The difference in the two kinds of individuals representing and maintaining the species, whose copulation and mutual action was known long before it was possible to give a correct account of the real nature of reproduction, has led to the designation "sexes," from which the term *sexual* has been taken to apply to the organs and manner of reproduction.

In reality sexual reproduction is nothing else than a special form of growth. The ova and spermatoblasts represent the two forms of germinal cells which have become free, and which, after a mutual interaction in the process of fertilization, develop into a new organism. Nevertheless under certain conditions the egg can, like the simple germ cell, undergo spontaneous development; numerous instances of this mode of development, which is known as *partheno-genesis,* are found in Insects. The necessity of fertilization therefore

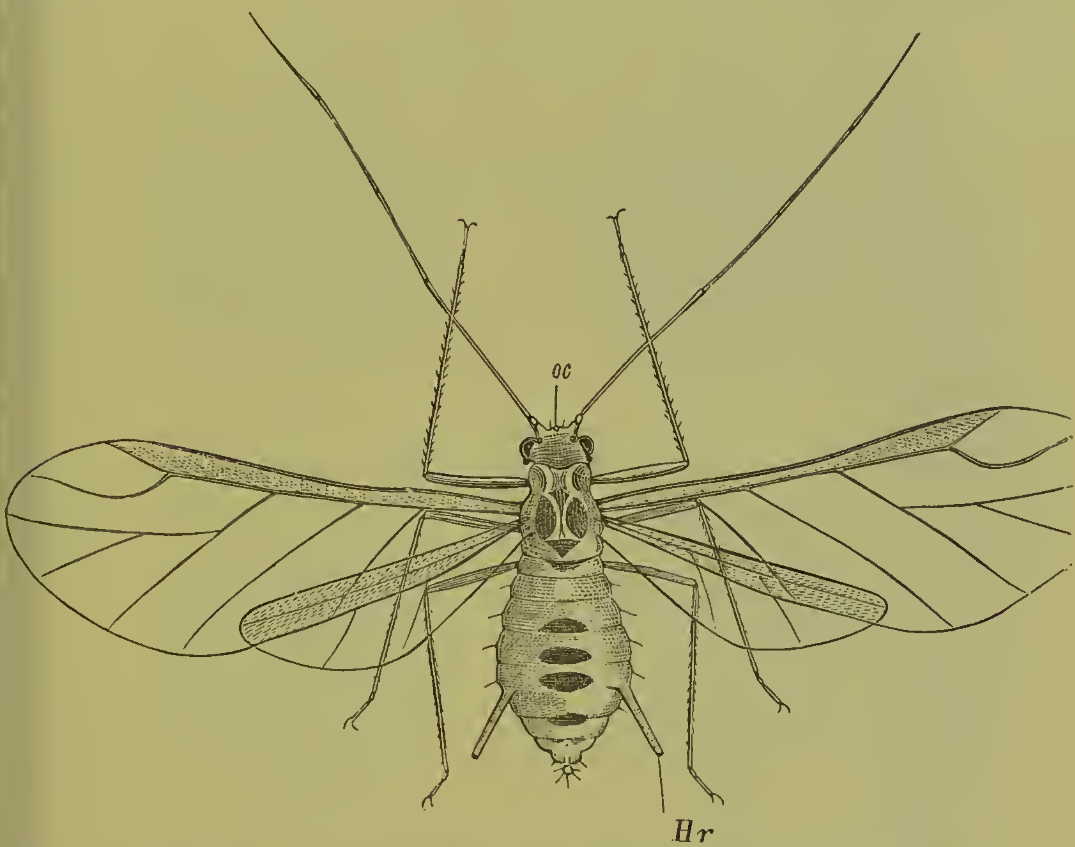



FIG. 99.—Viviparous form of Aphis platanoides. *Oc,* ocelli; *Hr,* honey tubes.

no longer enters into our conception of the egg-cell, and no absolute physiological test is left to enable us to distinguish it from the germ-cell. It is usual to regard the place of origin in the *sexual organ* and in the *female* body as a feature distinguishing the ovum from a germ cell, but even with this morphological test we do not in each individual case arrive at the desired result (*Bees, Bark-lice, Psychidæ*). We have already given prominence to the fact that ovaries and testes, in the simplest cases, consist of nothing more than groups of cells of the epithelium of the body cavity or of the outer skin. These, however, do not acquire the character of sexual organs until, at a higher stage of differentiation, the contrast between the two sexual elements has made its appearance. When the male elements, and with them the necessity of fertilization, are absent, and when, at the same time, the organ which produces the germ cells possesses, in its full development, a structure similar to that of an ovary, it becomes very difficult to distinguish whether we have to do with a pseudovary (germ-gland), and with an animal which reproduces asexually; or with an ovary and a true female, whose eggs possess the capacity of developing spontaneously. It is only a comparison with the sexual form of the animal which makes the distinction possible. To take the case of the Plant-lice or Aphides; in these animals we find a generation of viviparous individuals, easily distinguishable from the true oviparous females, which copulate and lay eggs. They resemble the latter in the fact that they are provided with a similar reproductive gland, constructed upon the ovarian type; but they differ from them in this important peculiarity, that they are without organs for copulation and fertilization (in correspondence with the absence of the male animal) (fig. 99). The reproductive cells of the organs known as *pseudovaries* have an origin precisely similar to that of eggs in the ovaries, and only differ from ova in the very early commencement of the embryonic development. The viviparous individuals will therefore be more correctly regarded as *agamic* females peculiarly modified in the absence of organs for copulation and fertilization; and the reproductive cells are by no means to be relegated to the category of germ-cells (as formerly was done by Steenstrup). We must therefore speak of the reproductive processes in the Aphides as being sexual and parthenogenetic and not sexual and asexual. A comparison of the mode of reproduction of the Bark-lice with that of the Aphides, especially of the species Pemphigus terebinthi, puts the correctness of this supposition beyond the sphere of doubt.

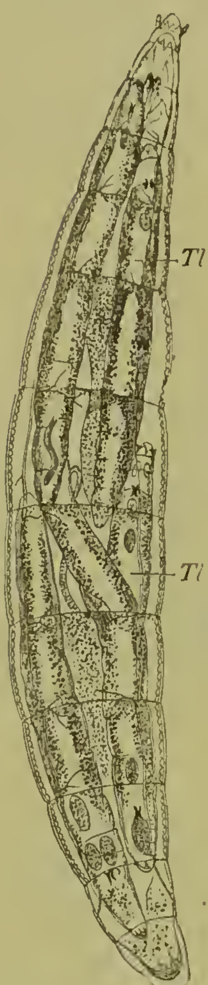



FIG. 100.—Viviparous *Cecidomyia* (Miastor) larva (after Al. Pagenstecher). *Tl*, Daughter larvæ developed from the rudimentary ovary.

A similar condition is found in the viviparous larva of Cecidomyia. Here the rudiment of the generative glands very early assumes a structure resembling that of the ovary, and produces a number of reproductive cells which resemble ova in their method of origin, and at once develop into larvæ. The pseudovary is clearly derived from the rudiment of the sexual gland, but without ever reaching complete development (fig. 100). The ovary acquires to a certain extent the signification of an organ for producing germ-cells, and it is not improbable that many products (*Redia*, *Sporocyst*) regarded as spores or germ-cells correspond to embryonic ovaries which produce ova capable of spontaneous development.

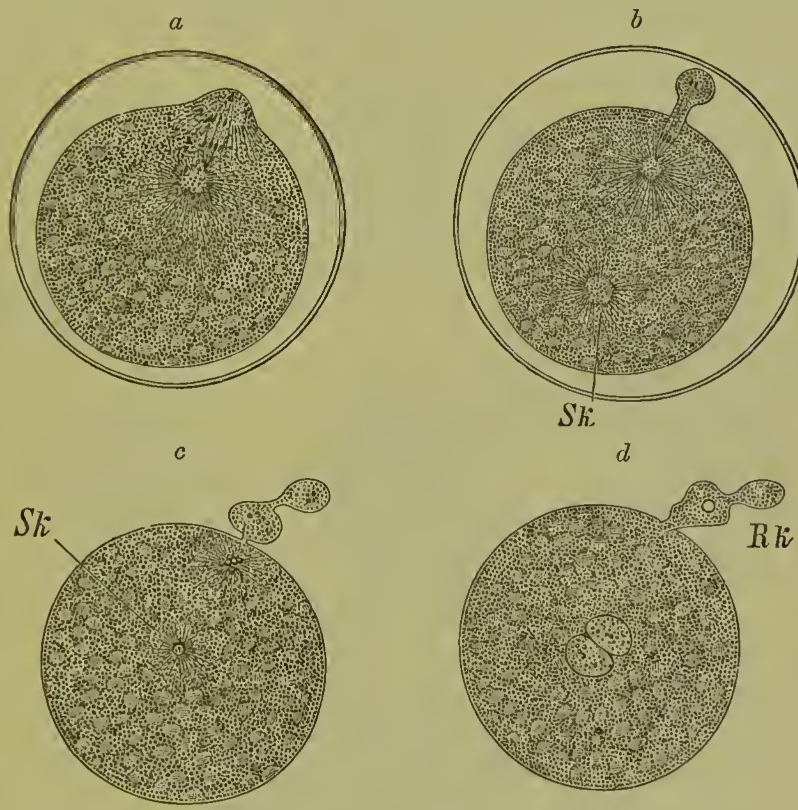



FIG. 101.—Ovum of Nephelis (after O. Hertwig). *a*, the ovum half-an-hour after deposition. a projection of the protoplasm indicates the commencing formation of the first polar body; the nuclear spindle is visible. *b*, The same an hour later, with polar body extruded, and after entrance of the spermatozoon. *Sk*, male pronucleus. *c*, The same another hour later without egg membrane, and with two polar bodies and male pronucleus (*Sk*); *d*, the same an hour later with approximated female and male pronuclei; *Rk*, polar bodies.

## DEVELOPMENT.

It follows from the facts of sexual reproduction that the simple cell must be regarded as the starting-point for the development of the organism. The contents of the ovum spontaneously or under the influence of fertilization enter upon a series of changes, the final result of which is the rudiment of the body of the embryo. These changes consist essentially in a process of cell division which implicates the whole protoplasm of the ovum, and is known as *segmentation*.

For a long time the behaviour of the germinal vesicle at the commencement of segmentation and its relation to the nuclei of the first formed segments were obscure, and the knowledge of the changes and fate of the spermatozoa which enter the ovum in the process of fertilization was, in like manner, in a very unsatisfactory state. Of late years, numerous investigations, especially those of Bütschli, O. Hertwig, Fol, etc., have thrown some light on these hitherto completely obscure processes. It was supposed that in a ripe ovum preparing itself for segmentation the germinal vesicle disappeared,

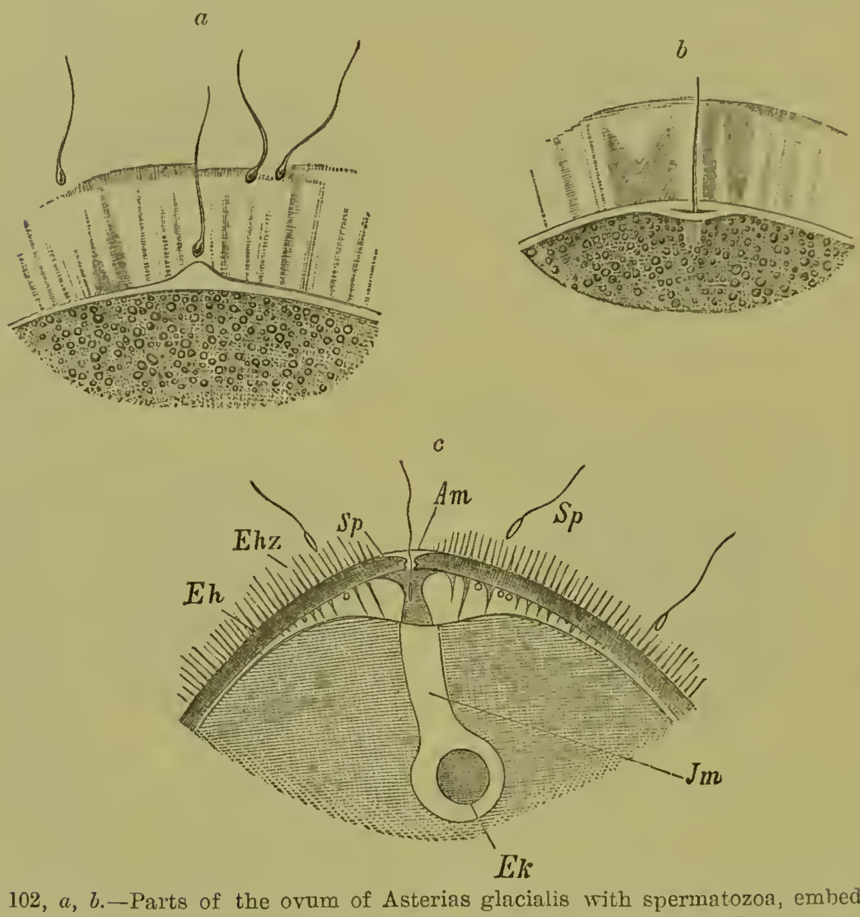



FIG. 102, *a*, *b*.—Parts of the ovum of Asterias glacialis with spermatozoa, embedded in the mucilaginous coat (after H. Fol.) *c*, upper part of the ovum of Petromyzon (after Calberla). *Am*, micropyle; *Sp*, spermatozoa; *Jm*, path of the spermatozoon; *Ek*, female pronucleus; *Eh*, membrane of ovum; *Ehz*, prominences of the same.

and a new nucleus was formed quite independently of it; and that the persistence and the participation of the germinal vesicle in the formation of the nuclei of the first segmentation spheres were exceptional (Siphonophora, Entoconcha, etc.) Thorough investigations carried out on the eggs of numerous animals have, however, shown that as a matter of fact the germinal vesicle of the ripe ovum only experiences changes in which the greater part of it, together with some of the protoplasm of the ovum, is thrown out of the egg as the so-called *directive bodies* or *polar cells* (fig. 101). The part of it, however, which remains in the ovum retains its significance as a nucleus, and is known as the female pronucleus. This fuses with the single spermatozoon (male pronucleus) which has forced its way into the ovum (fig. 102); and the compound structure so formed constitutes the nucleus of the fertilized ovum, or as it is generally called, the first segmentation nucleus.

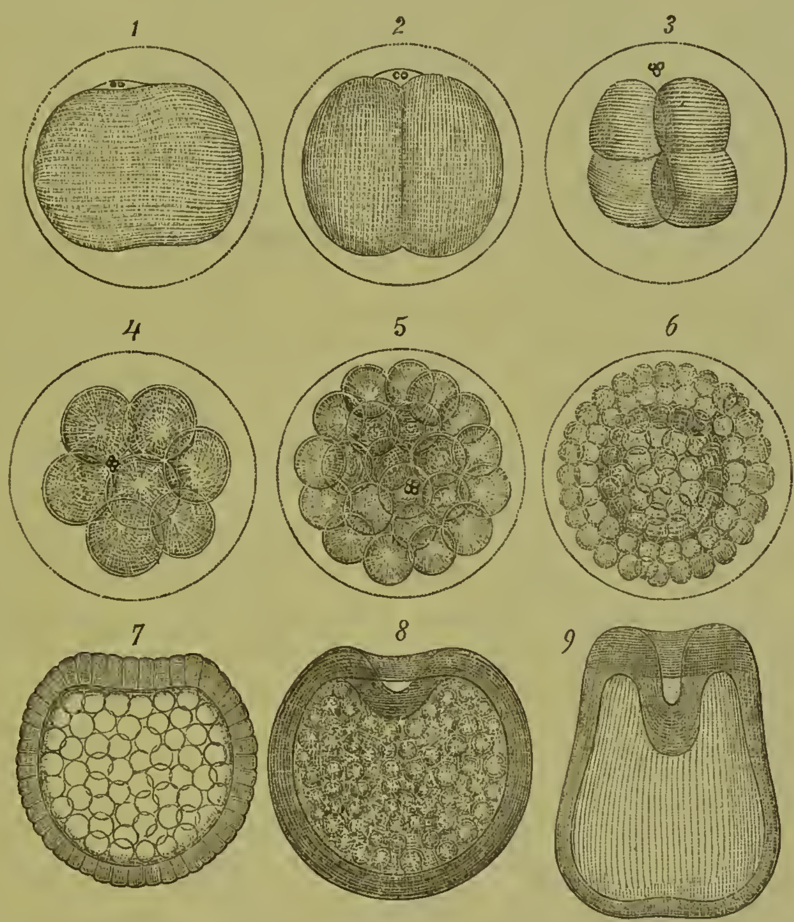



FIG. 103.—Development of a Star-fish, Asteracanthion berylinus (after Alex. Agassiz). 1, Commencing segmentation of the flattened egg—at one pole are seen the polar bodies; 2, stage with two segments; 3, with four; 4, with eight; 5, with thirty-two segments; 6, later stage; 7, blastosphere with commencing invagination; 8 and 9, more advanced stages of invagination. The opening of the gastrula cavity becomes the anus.

This new nucleus, which divides to give rise to the nuclei of the first segmentation spheres, would appear therefore to be the product of the fusion or conjugation of the part of the germinal vesicle, which remains behind in the ovum, with the male pronucleus, which is a derivative of the spermatozoon which has entered the ovum. *Fertilization would appear, therefore, to depend upon the addition* *of a new element bringing about the regeneration of the primary nucleus of the ovum or germinal vesicle,* and would have impressed its influence on the constitution of the conjugated nucleus. The regenerated ovum is therefore the starting-point of the subsequent generations of cells which build up the embryonic body.

Both the origin of the polar bodies which takes place in the ripe ovum *independently* of fertilization, and the division of the segmentation nucleus are accompanied by the appearance of the nuclear spindle and star-shaped figures at the poles of the spindle which are so characteristic of the division of nuclei. The male pronucleus, before it fuses with the female pronucleus, also becomes surrounded by a layer of clear protoplasm, around which a star-shaped figure appears (fig. 101). In those cases in which segmentation takes place without a precedent fertilization (*parthenogenesis*), the female pronucleus appears to possess within itself the properties of the first segmentation nucleus.

The fertilization is followed by the process known as segmentation, in which the ovum gradually divides into a greater and greater number of smaller cells. Segmentation may be *total, i.e.*, the whole ovum segments (fig. 103), or it may be *partial*, in which case only a portion segments (fig. 105).

Total segmentation may be regular and *equal*, the resulting segments being of equal size (fig. 103); or it may sooner or later become irregular, the resulting segments being of two kinds—the one smaller and containing a preponderating amount of protoplasm, the other larger and containing more fatty matter. In these cases the segmentation is said to be *unequal.* The process of division proceeds much more quickly in the smaller segments, while in the larger and more fatty segments it is much slower, and may eventually come to a complete standstill. The development of the frog's egg will serve as an example of unequal segmentation, of which there are various degrees (fig. 104). In this egg a dark pigmented and protoplasmic portion can be distinguished from a lighter portion containing much fatty matter or food yolk. The former is always turned uppermost in the water, and is therefore called the upper pole of the egg. The axis which connects the upper pole with the lower is known as the chief axis. The planes of the two first segmentation furrows pass through the chief axis and are at right angles to each other. They divide the egg into four equal parts. The third furrow (fig. 104, 4) is equatorial, taking place in a horizontal plane. and cutting the chief axis at right angles. It lies, however, nearer the upper pole than the lower, and marks the line of division between the upper and smaller portion of the egg from the lower

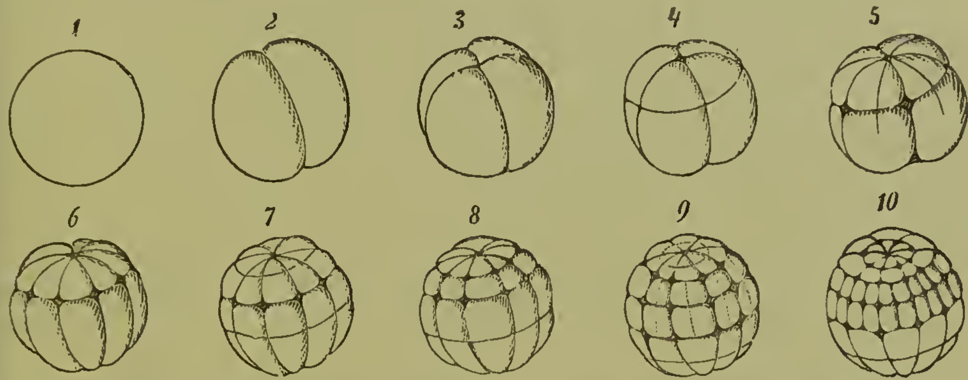



FIG. 104.—Unequal segmentation of the Frog's egg (after Ecker) in ten successive stages.

and larger portion, in which the segmentation proceeds much more slowly than in the former.

In *partial* segmentation we find a sharply marked contrast between the formative and nutritive parts of the egg, inasmuch as the latter does not segment. The terms *holoblastic* and *meroblastic* therefore have been applied to total and partial segmentation respectively.

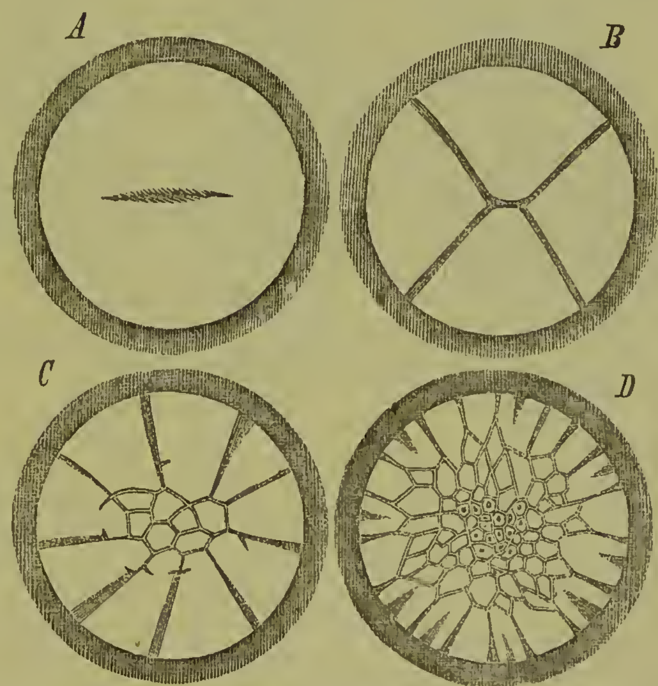



FIG. 105. Segmentation of the germinal disc of a Fowl's egg, surface view (after Kolliker). *A*, germinal disc with the first vertical furrow; *B*, the same with two vertical furrows crossing one another at right angles; *C* and *D*, more advanced stages with small central segments.

Nevertheless, in total segmentation also, either groups of segments of a definite quality, or, at any rate, a fluid yolk material may be used for the nourishment of the developing embryo. In fact, the contents of every egg consists of two parts—(1) of a viscous albuminous protoplasm; and (2) of a fatty granular matter, the *deutoplasm*, or food yolk. The first is derived from the protoplasm of the original germinal cell, while the yolk is only secondarily developed with the gradual growth of the first; and not unfrequently it is derived from the secretion of special glands (yolk glands, *Trematodes*); it may even be added in the form of cells.

In the Ctenophora and other Cœlenterata we see already in the first-formed segments the separation of the formative matter or peripheral ectoplasm from the nutritive matter or central endoplasm.

In eggs undergoing a partial segmentation the formative matter usually lies on one side of the large unsegmenting food yolk. In accordance with this, the segments of such eggs, known as *telolecithal*, arrange themselves in the form of a flat disc (germinal disc); hence this kind of segmentation has been called discoidal (eggs of Aves, Reptilia, Pisces) (fig. 105). The food yolk may, however, have a central position. In such *centrolecithal* eggs the segmentation is

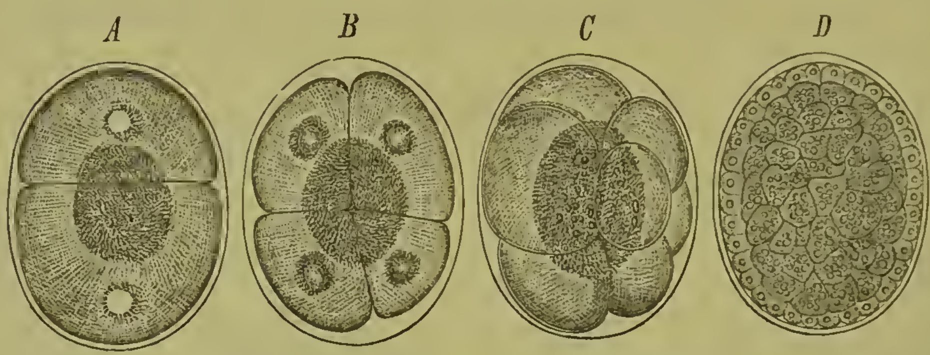



FIG. 106.—Unequal segmentation of the centrolecithal egg of Gammarus locusta (in part after Ed. van Beneden). The central yolk mass does not appear till a late stage and undergoes later an "after-segmentation."

confined to the periphery, and is sometimes equal (Palæmon) and sometimes unequal (fig. 106). The central yolk mass may at first remain unsegmented, but later it may undergo a kind of after-segmentation and break up into a number of cells (fig. 106). Again, in other cases the food yolk, at the commencement of segmentation, has a peripheral position, so that the cleavage process is at first confined to the inner parts of the egg, and only in later stages, when the food yolk has gradually shifted into the centre of the egg, appears as a peripheral layer on the surface. This is found especially in the eggs of Spiders (fig. 107). The first processes of segmentation in these at first *ectolecithal* ova are withdrawn from observation, since they take place in the centre of an egg covered by a superficial layer of food yolk, until the nuclei with their protoplasmic investment reach the periphery, and the fatty and often darkly-granular food yolk comes to constitute the central mass of the egg (Insects).

As various as the forms of segmentation are the methods by which the segments are applied to the building up of the embryo. Frequently in cases of equal segmentation the segments arrange themselves in the form of a one-layered vesicle, the *blastosphere*, the central cavity of which not rarely contains fluid elements of the food yolk; or they are at once divided into two layers around a central cavity containing fluid; or they form a solid mass of cells without

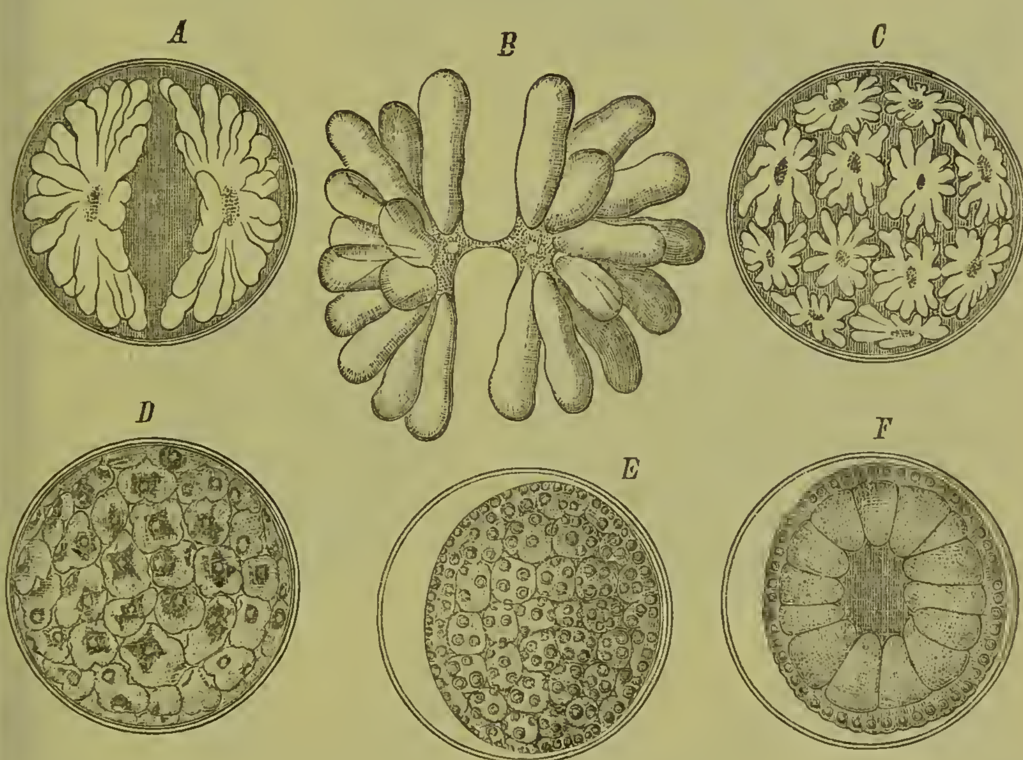



FIG. 107.—Six stages in the segmentation of a spider's egg (Philodromus limbatus) after Hub. Ludwig. *A*, egg with two deutoplasmic rosette-like masses (segmentation spheres); *B*, the rosette-like masses with their centrally placed nucleated protoplasm without egg membrane; *C*, egg with a great number of rosette-like masses; *D*, the rosette-like masses have the form of polyhedral deutoplasmic columns, each of which has a cell of the blastoderm lying immediately superficial to it; *E*, stage with blastoderm completely formed; *F*, optical section through the same. The yolk columns form within the blastoderm a closed investment to the central space.

any central cavity. In numerous cases, especially when the food yolk is relatively abundant (unequal and partial segmentation) or the food supply continuous, the embryonic development is longer and more complicated. The embryonic rudiment in such cases has at first the form of a disc of cells lying on the yolk; it soon divides into two layers, and then grows round the yolk.

The two-layered gastrula is, as a rule, developed from the blastosphere by invagination (embolic invagination). In this process the one half (sometimes distinguished by the larger size and more granular nature of its cells) of the cell wall of the blastosphere is pushed in upon the other half (fig. 108), and on the narrowing of the

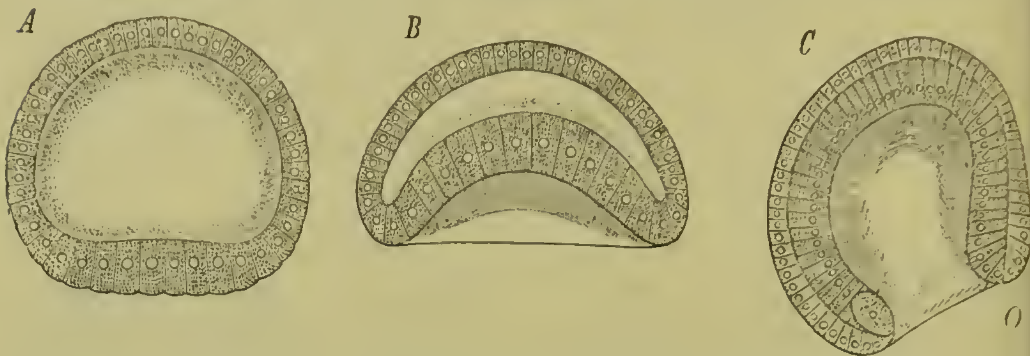



FIG. 108.—*A*, Blastosphere of Amphioxus ; *B*, invagination of the same ; *C*, gastrula, invagination completed ; *O*, blastopore (after B. Hatschek).

aperture of invagination (*blastopore*, mouth of gastrula) becomes the endodermal layer (*hypoblast*) lining the gastrula cavity. The outer layer of cells constitutes the ectoderm or *epiblast*. This mode of formation of the gastrula, which is very common, is found, *e.g.*, in Ascidians, and amongst the Vertebrata in Amphioxus (fig. 108).

More rarely the gastrula arises by *delamination*. This process consists of a concentric splitting of the cells of the blastosphere into an outer layer (epiblast), and an inner (hypoblast) (fig. 109).

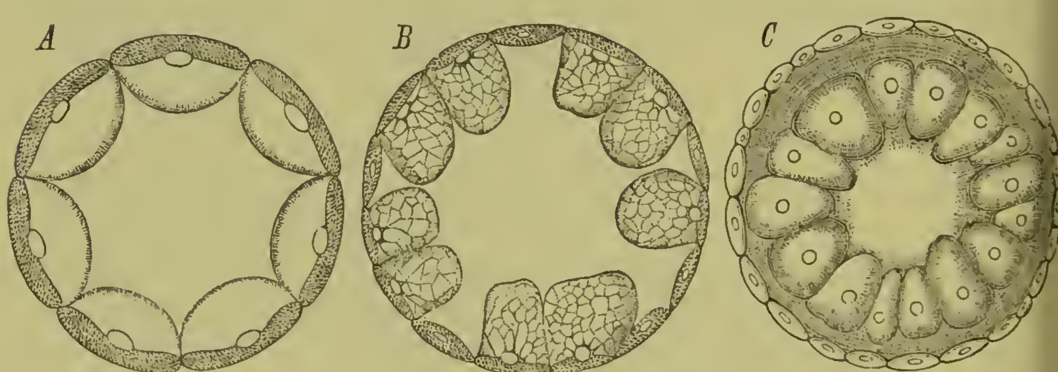



FIG. 109.—Transverse sections through three stages in the segmentation of Geryonia (after H. Fol.) *A*, stage with thirty-two segments, each segment is divided into an external finely granular protoplasm (ectoplasm) and an inner clearer layer (endoplasm) ; *B*, later stage ; *C*, embryo after delamination; with ectoderm slightly separated from the endoderm, which is composed of large cells surrounding the segmentation cavity.

The central cavity of the gastrula in this case is derived from the original segmentation cavity, and the gastrula mouth is only secondarily formed by perforation. This method of development of the gastrula has hitherto only been observed in some hydroid Medusæ (Geryonia).

Finally, when the inequality of the segmentation is very pronounced, the gastrula is formed by a process known as epibole. In this process of development the epiblast cells, which are early distinguishable from the much larger hypoblast cells, spread themselves over the latter as a thin layer (fig. 110); and in this, as in the second method of development of the gastrula, the cavity of the gastrula is, as a rule, a secondary formation in the centre of the closely-packed mass of hypoblast cells. The blastopore is usually found at the point where the complete enclosure of the hypoblast is effected.

It sometimes happens that a part of the primary blastosphere is developed more rapidly than the remainder, and gives rise to a


FIG. 110.—*A*, Unequal segmentation of the egg of Bonellia; *B*, epibolic gastrula of the same (after Spengel).

bilaterally-symmetrical stripe-like thickening placed on the dorsal or ventral surface of the embryo. Frequently, however, such a *germinal* or *primitive streak* is not developed, and the rudiment of the embryo continues to develop uniformly. Formerly great importance was attached to these differences, the one being distinguished as an *evolutio ex una parte*, and the other an *evolutio ex omnibus partibus.* It is not, however, possible to draw a sharp line between these two methods of development, nor have they the significance which was formerly ascribed to them, for closely allied forms may present great differences in this respect according to the amount of food yolk and the duration of the embryonic development.

The Cœlenterata, the Echinoderms, the lower Worms and Molluscs, Annelids, and even Arthropods and Vertebrates (Amphioxus) present us with examples of regular development of all parts of the body of the embryo which, if the yolk membrane fails, has no need of a special protective envelope. In this latter group, however, the formation of the germinal streak, which is in close relation with the formation of the nervous system, is accomplished later, during the post-embryonic development, when the larva is free-swimming and can procure its own food. In like manner many Polychætes and Arthropods (Branchipus) only acquire a germinal streak in the course of their later growth as larvæ.

In all cases in which the embryonic development begins by the formation of a germinal streak, the embryo only becomes definitely limited after the yolk has been gradually surrounded, as a result of processes which are connected with the complete entry of the yolk into the body cavity (Frogs, Insects), or with the origin of a yolk sac from which the yolk passes gradually into the body of the embryo (Birds, Mammals). The progressive organization of this latter, up to its exit from the egg membranes, presents in each group such extraordinary variations that it is not possible to give a general account of them.

Of primary importance is the fact that in the rudiment of the germ two cell layers first make their appearance—one the ectoderm, which gives rise to the outer integument; and the other the endoderm, from which arises the lining membrane of the digestive cavity and of the glands opening into it. Between these two layers there is formed, either from the outer or the inner layer, or from both layers, an intermediate layer, known as the mesoderm. From the mesoderm arise the muscular system and the connective tissues, the corpuscles of the lymph and blood, and the vascular system. The body cavity may either be derived from the persisting segmentation cavity, *i.e.*, the primitive space between the ectoderm and endoderm (primary body cavity), or it may be developed secondarily as a split in the mesoderm (cœlom), or as outgrowths from the rudiment of the alimentary canal (archenteron), in which case it is known as an enterocœle body cavity.

The nervous system and organs of sense are probably in all cases derived from the ectoderm, very frequently as pit- or groove-like invaginations which are subsequently constricted off. On the other hand, the urinary and generative organs arise both from the outer and inner layers as well as from the middle layer, which is itself derived from one of the primary layers or from the walls of the primary single-layered blastosphere.

Accordingly, as a rule the rudiments of the skin and glandular lining of the alimentary canal are the first differentiations in the embryo; and many embryos, the so-called Planulæ and Gastrulæ, on leaving the egg, have only these two layers and an internal cavity, the archenteron. Then follows the development of the nervous and muscular systems,—the latter taking place sometimes contemporaneously with or after the first appearance of the skeleton,—especially in cases in which a germinal streak is developed. The urinary organs and various accessory glands, the blood-vessels and respiratory organs do not appear till later.

The degree of difference between the offspring on attaining the free condition (*i.e.*, at birth or hatching) and the sexually mature adults, both as regards form and size as well as organization, varies considerably throughout the animal kingdom.

It is a very striking fact that an embryo provided with a central cavity and a body wall composed of only two layers of cells appears in different groups of animals as a freely moveable larva capable of leading an independent life. Having recognized this fact, it was not a great step, especially as Huxley* some time ago had compared the two membranes of the body wall of the Medusæ (called later by Allman *ectoderm* and *endoderm*) with the outer and inner layers of the vertebrate blastoderm (epiblast and hypoblast), to arrive at the conclusion that there was a similar phylogenetic origin for the similar larvæ of very different animal types, and to trace back the origin of organs functionally resembling each other to the same primitive structure.

It was A. Kowalewski† who, by the results of his numerous researches on the development of the lower animals, first gave this conception the groundwork of fact. He not only proved the occurrence of a two-layered larva in the development of the Cœlenterata, Echinoderms, Worms, Ascidians, and in Amphioxus amongst Vertebrates, but also on the ground of the great agreement in the later developmental stages of the larvæ of Ascidians and Amphioxus and in the mode of origin of equivalent organs in the embryos of Worms, Insects, and Vertebrata, protested against the hitherto universally received view implied in Cuvier's conception of types, that the organs of different types could not be homologous with one another.

* Thomas Huxley, "On the Anatomy and Affinities of the family of Medusæ." Philosophical Transactions. London, 1849.

† Cf. A. Kowalewski's various papers in the "Mémoires de l'Acad. de Petersbourg," on Ctenophora, Phoronis, Holothurians, Ascidians, and Amphioxus, 1866 and 1867.

Inasmuch as Kowalewski,* from the results of his embryological work, drew the conclusion that the nervous layer and embryonic skin of Insects and Vertebrates are homologous, and that the germinal layers of Amphioxus and Vertebrates correspond with those of Molluscs (Tunicata) or worms, he was in agreement with the long recognised fact that anatomical transitional forms and intermediate links between the different groups or types of animals exist, and that these latter do not represent absolutely isolated planes of organization, but the highest divisions in the system, and he only gave in reality an embryological expression to the claims of the descent theory. In fact, the conclusion which Kowalewski reached was completely correct—viz., that the homologies of the germinal layers in the different types afford a scientific basis for comparative anatomy and embryology, and must be recognised as the starting-point for the proper understanding of the relationships of the types. For this position we find amongst the vertebrata proofs at every step.

But while his own comprehensive embryological experiences inspired Kowalewski, the founder of the theory of the germinal layers, with a prudent reserve, other investigators, inclined to bold generalization, appeared at once with ready theories, in which the results of embryological investigations were interpreted in accordance with the theory of descent. Among these E. Haeckel's gastræa theory is especially prominent, which raises no less a claim "than to substitute, in the place of the classification hitherto received, a new system based on phylogeny, of which the main principle is homology of the germinal layers and of the archenteron, and secondarily on the differentiation of the axes (bilateral and radial symmetry) and of the cœlom." E. Haeckel † designated the larval form used as the point of departure the *Gastrula*, and believed to have found in it the repetition in embryonic development of a common primitive form, to which the origin of all Metazoa may be traced back. To this hypothetical prototype, which is supposed to have lived in very early times during the Laurentian period, he gave the name of *Gastræa*, and called the ancient group, supposed to be widely scattered and to consist of many families and genera, by the name *Gastræadæ*. From this supposition was deduced the complete homology of the outer and inner

* A. Kowalewski, "Embryologische Studien an Würmern und Arthropoden." Petersburg, 1871, p. 58-60.

† E. Haeckel, "Gastræatheorie," Jen. nat. Zeitschrift, 1874." For criticism see C. Claus, "Die Typenlehre und Haeckel's sogenannte Gastræatheorie." Vienna, 1874.

germinal layers throughout the whole Metazoa; the one being traced back to the ectoderm and the other to the endoderm of the hypothetical Gastræa; while for the middle layer, which is only secondarily developed from one or both of the primary layers, only an incomplete homology was claimed. It cannot, however, be said that this theory, which is essentially an extension of the Baer-Remak theory of the germinal layers from the Vertebrata to the whole group of Metazoa, with its pretentious and hasty speculation has created a basis for comparative embryology; such a basis can only be obtained as the result of comprehensive investigations.

## DIRECT DEVELOPMENT AND METAMORPHOSIS.

The more complete the agreement between the just born young and the adult sexual animal, so much the greater, especially in the higher animals, will be the duration of the embryonic development and the more complicated the developmental processes of the embryo. The post-embryonic development will, in this case, be confined to simple processes of growth and perfection of the sexual organs. When, however, embryonic life has, relatively to the height of the organization, a quick and simple course; when, in other words, the embryo is born in an immature condition and at a relatively low stage of organization, the post-embryonic development will be more complicated, and the young animal, in addition to its increase in size, will present various processes of transformation and change of form. In such cases, the just hatched young, as opposed to the adult animal, is called a *Larva*, and develops gradually to the form of the adult

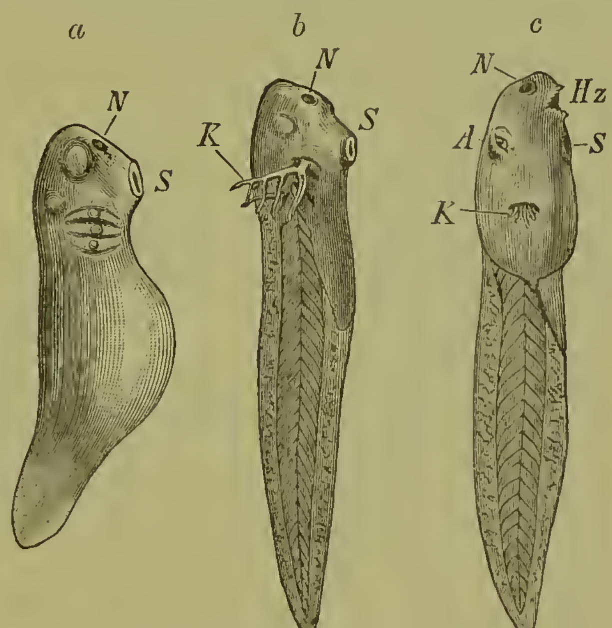



Fig. 111.—Larval stages of the Frog (after Ecker). *a*, embryo some time before hatching, with wart-like gill papillæ on the visceral arches. *b*, Larva some time after hatching, with external branchiæ. *c*, Older larva, with horny beak and small branchial clefts beneath the integumentary operculum, with internal branchiæ; *N*, nasal pit; *S*, sucker; *K*, branchiæ; *A*, eye; *Hz*, horny teeth.

sexual animal. The development of larvæ, however, is by no means direct and uniform, but is complicated by the necessity for special contrivances to enable them to procure food and to protect themselves; sometimes taking place in an entirely different medium, under different conditions of life. This kind of post-embryonic development is known as metamorphosis.

Well-known examples of metamorphosis are afforded by the developmental histories of the Insecta and Amphibia. From the eggs of Frogs and Toads proceed larvæ provided with tails, but without limbs, the so-called Tadpoles (fig 111). These, with their laterally compressed tails and their gills, remind one of fishes, and they possess organs of attachment in the form of two small cervical suckers by which they can anchor themselves to plants. The mouth is provided with horny plates; the spirally coiled intestine is surprisingly long; the heart is simple; and the vascular arches have the piscine relations. Later, as development proceeds, the external branchiæ abort, and are replaced by new branchiæ covered by folds of the integument, the caudal fin is enlarged, and the fore and hind limbs sprout out; the fore limbs remain for some time covered by the integument, and only subsequently break through it to appear on the surface. Meanwhile the lungs have developed as appendages of the anterior part of the alimentary canal, and supplant the gills as respiratory organs, a double circulation is developed, and the horny beak is cast off. Finally the tail gradually shrinks and atrophies; on the completion of which the metamorphosis of the aquatic tadpole into the frog or toad suited for life on land is accomplished (fig. 112).

We have then to consider two kinds of development, viz., development with a metamorphosis and direct development, which in extreme cases are distinctly opposed to each other, but are connected by intermediate methods. The size of the egg, or, in other words, the amount of food yolk available for the use of the embryo in proportion to the size of the adult animal appears to be a factor of primary importance in any explanation of these two distinct processes (R. Leuckart). Animals with a direct development require—generally in proportion to the height of their organization and the size of their bodies—that their eggs should be provided with a rich endowment of food yolk, or that the developing embryo should possess a special accessory source of nutriment; they arise therefore either from relatively large eggs (Birds), or they are developed inside, and in close connection with the maternal body, by which arrangement they have a continual supply of food material (Mammals). Animals, on the contrary, which pass through a metamorphosis always arise from eggs of relatively small size, are hatched in an immature condition as larvæ, and obtain independently, by their own activity, the materials which have been withheld from them while in the egg, but which are necessary for their full development. The number of embryos produced in the case of a direct development is, in proportion to the total weight of the material applied by the mother for reproductive purposes, far smaller than in the case of a development with metamorphosis. The fertility of animals whose young

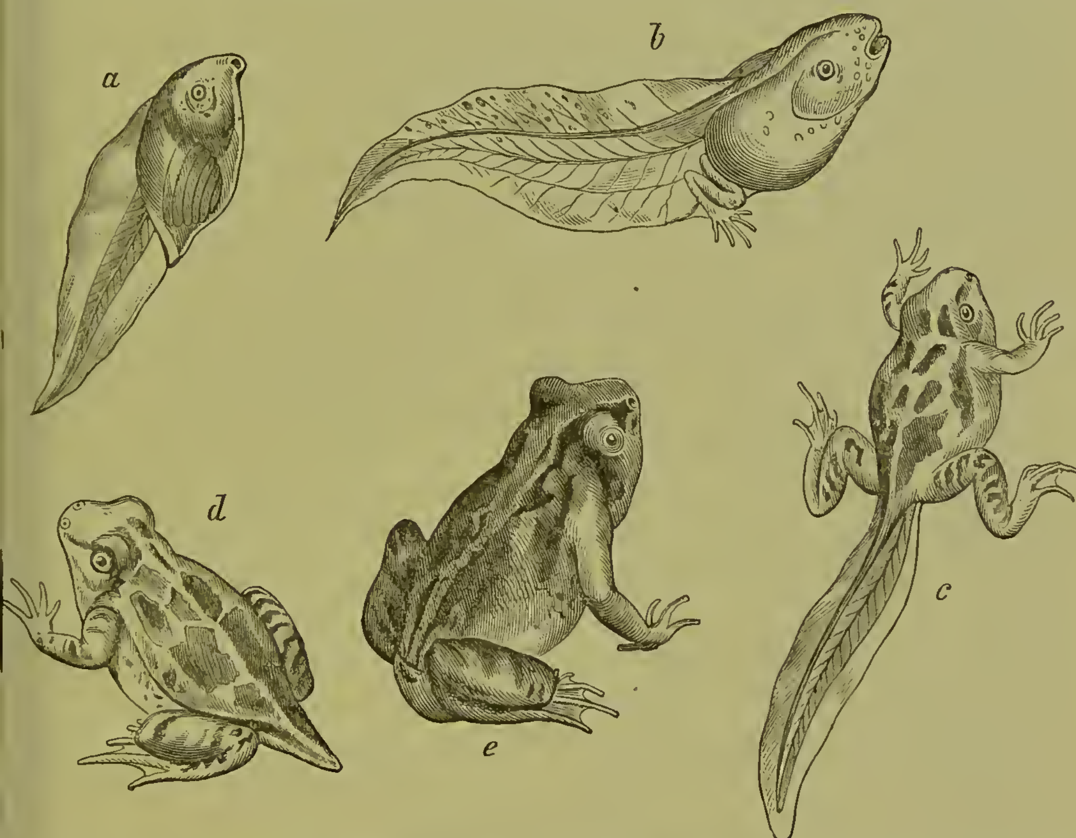



FIG. 112.—Later stages in the development of Pelobates fuscus. *a*, larva without limbs with well developed tail; *b*, older larva with hind limbs; *c*, larva with two pairs of limbs; *d*, young frog with caudal stump; *e*, young frog after complete atrophy of tail.

undergo a metamorphosis, or, in other words, the number of offspring produced from a given mass of formative material, is increased to an extraordinary degree, and has, in the complicated relations of organic life, a great physiological significance, though systematically it is of little importance.

Some time ago it was attempted to explain these indirect metamorphoses, in which both processes of reduction and new development take place, as the result of the necessity which the simply organized larva, hatched at an early stage of development, laboured under of acquiring special arrangements for its protection and nourishment (R. Leuckart). The proof that such relations do exist between the special larval organs and the peculiar methods of nutrition and protection is an important factor for the full understanding of these remarkable processes, but still is by no means an explanation of them. It is only by aid of the Darwinian principles and the theory of descent that we can get nearer to an explanation. According to this theory, the form and structure of larvæ are to be considered in relation to the development of the race, *i.e.* phylogeny, and are to be derived from the various phases of structure through which the latter has passed in its evolution, and in such a way that the younger larval stages would correspond to the primitive, and the older, on the other hand, to the more advanced and more highly organized animals, which have appeared later in the history of the race. In this sense the developmental processes of the individual constitute a more or less complete recapitulation of the developmental history of the species, complicated, however, by secondary variations due to adaptation, which have been acquired in the struggle for existence* (Fritz Müller's fundamental principle, called by Haeckel the fundamental law of biogenesis).

The greater the number of stages, therefore, through which the larva passes, the more completely is the ancestral history of the species preserved in the developmental history of the individual; and it is the more truly preserved the fewer the peculiarities of the larva, whether independently acquired, or shifted back from the later to the earlier periods of life (Copepoda.) On the other hand, there are certain larval forms without any phylogenetic meaning which are to be explained as having been secondarily acquired by adaptation (many Insect larvæ).

The historical record preserved in the developmental history becomes, however, gradually defaced by simplification and shortening of the free development; for the successive phases of development are gradually more and more shifted back in the life of the embryo, and run their course more rapidly and in an abbreviated form, under the protection of the egg membranes, and at the cost of a rich supply of nutrient material (yolk, albumen, placenta). In animals with a direct development, therefore, the complicated development within the egg membranes is a compressed and simplified

* Fritz Müller, "Für Darwin," Leipzig, 1863, p. 75—81.

metamorphosis, and hence the direct development, as opposed to the metamorphosis, is a secondary form of development.

## ALTERNATION OF GENERATIONS, POLYMORPHISM AND HETEROGAMY.

Both in direct development and indirect development by means of a metamorphosis, the successive stages take place in the life-history of the same individual. There are, however, instances of free development, in which the individual only passes through a part of the developmental changes, while the offspring produced by it accomplishes the remaining part. In this case the life-history of the species is represented by two or more generations of individuals, which possess different forms and organization, exist under different conditions of life, and reproduce in different ways.

Such a manner of development is known as alternation of generations (metagenesis), and consists of the regular alternation of a sexually differentiated generation with one or more generations reproducing asexually. This phenomenon was first discovered by the poet Chamisso* in the Salpidæ; but the observation remained for more than twenty years unnoticed. It was rediscovered by J. Steenstrup,† and discussed in the reproduction of a series of animals (Medusæ, Trematoda) as a law of development. The essence of the process consists in this, that the sexual animals produce offspring, which through their whole life remain different from their parents, but can give rise by an asexual process of reproduction to a generation of animals which resemble in their organization and habits of life the sexual form, or again produce themselves asexually, their offspring assuming the characters of the original sexual animal. So that in the last case the life of the species is composed of three different generations proceeding from one another, viz., sexual form, first asexual form, and second asexual form. The development of the two, three, or more generations may be direct, or may take place by a more or less complicated metamorphosis; similarly the asexual and the sexual generations sometimes differ but little from each other (*e.g.* Salpa), and sometimes present relations analogous to those which exist between a larva and the adult animal (*e.g.*

* Adalbert de Chamisso, "De animalibus quibusdam e classe vermium Linnæana in circumnavigatione terræ auspicante comite N. Romanzoff duce Ottone de Kotzebue annis 1815, 1816, 1817, 1818 peracta." Fasc. I. De salpa Berolini 1819.

† Joh. Jap. Sm. Steenstrup, "Ueber den Generationswechsel, etc," übersetzt von C. H. Lorenzen. Kopenhagen, 1842.

Medusæ). Accordingly we have to distinguish different forms of alternations of generations, which have genetically a different origin and explanation.

The latter form of alternations of generations resembles metamorphosis; and we have in most cases to explain it as having arisen in the following way:—The asexual form corresponds to a lower stage in the phylogenetic history, from which it has inherited the capacity of asexual reproduction, while the sexual reproduction belongs entirely to the higher form. To take as an example the alternation of generations of the Scyphomedusæ. The animal is hatched as a free-swimming ciliated planula (gastrula with closed blastopore) (fig. 113 *a*). After a certain time it fixes itself by the pole of its body,

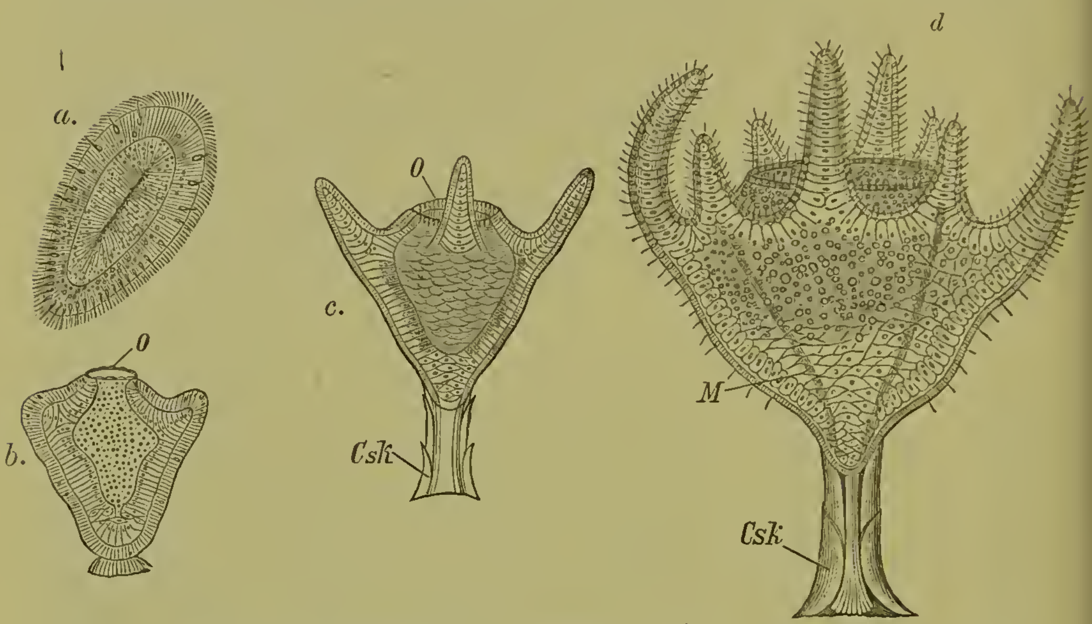



FIG. 113.—Development of the planula of Chrysaora to the Scyphistoma stage, with eight arms. *a*, Two layered planula with a narrow gastric cavity; *b*, the same after its attachment with just-formed mouth (*O*), and commencing tentacles; *c*, four-armed Scyphistoma polyp; *Csk*, excreted cuticular skeleton; *d*, eight-armed Scyphistoma polyp with wide mouth; *M*, longitudinal muscles of the gastric ridges; *Csk*, excreted cuticular skeleton.

which is directed forward in swimming, and acquires at its free extremity a new mouth, round which 1, 2, 4, 8, and finally 16 long tentacles soon make their appearance; while the broad oral region projects as a contractile cone (fig. 113 *b*, *c*, *d*). Inside the gastric cavity there project four gastric ridges with longitudinal muscular bands extending from the foot or point of attachment to the base of the oral cone. When the polyp, which has now become a Scyphistoma, has under favourable conditions of nutrition reached a certain size (about 2 to 4 mm.), ring-like constrictions are formed at the anterior part of the body, giving rise to a series of segment-like divisions. The anterior part of the body bearing the tentacles is first marked off; and following this a greater or less number of sections, the new segments appearing continuously in the direction from before backward. The hindermost or basal swollen club-shaped end of the polyp's body remains undivided. The Scyphistoma has

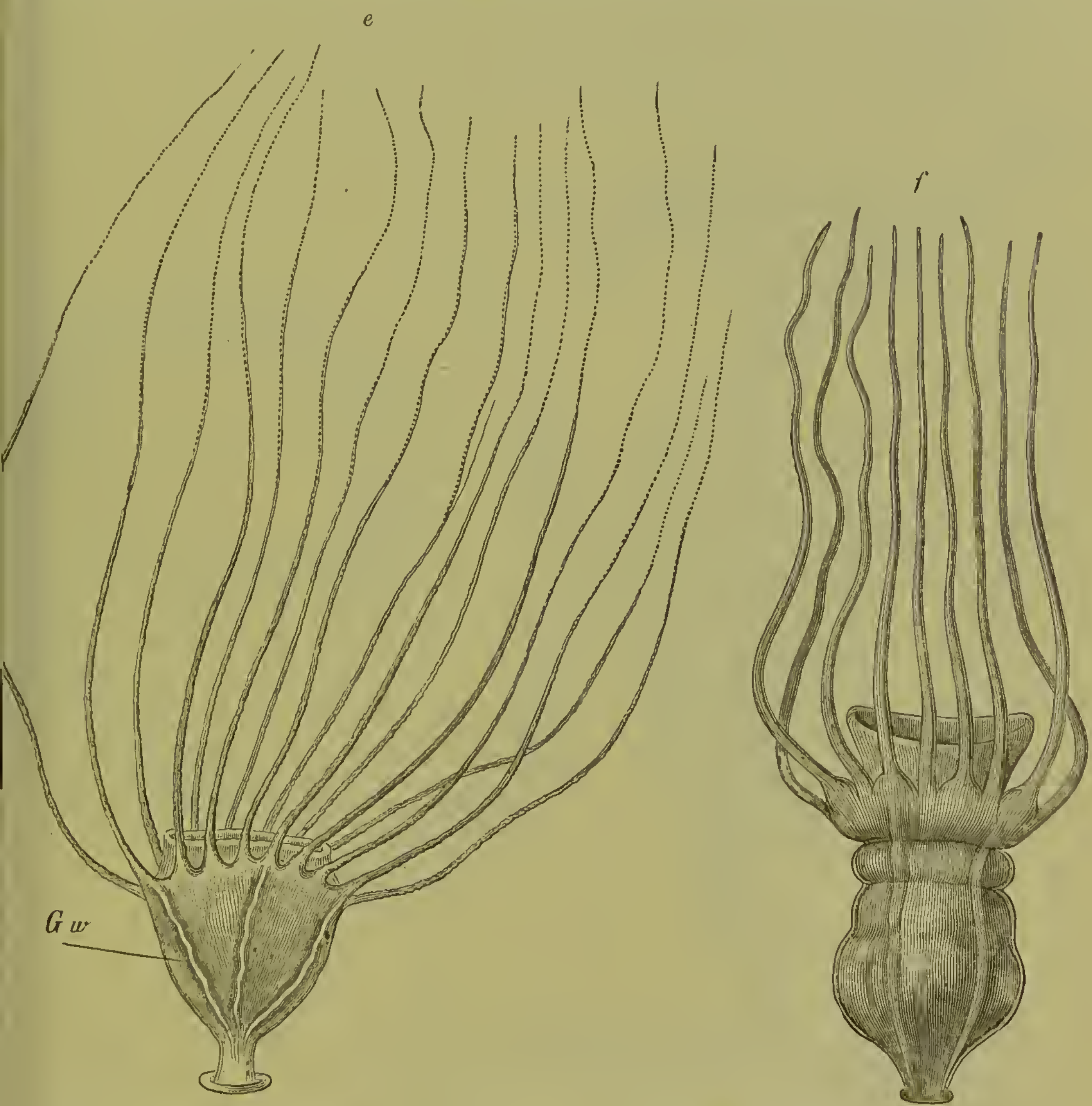



FIG. 113.—*e*, Stage of Scyphistoma with sixteen arms (slightly magnified); *Gw.* gastric ridges. *f*, Commencing strobilization.

now become the *Strobila*, which itself passes through various developmental phases. The tentacles abort; the successive segments, separated from each other by constrictions and provided with lobe-like continuations and marginal bodies, become transformed into small flat discs, which become separate, and, as *Ephyræ*, represent the larvæ of the Scyphomedusæ (fig. 113 *b*-*h*).

In the other cases in which the sexual and asexual forms morphologically resemble each other, as in Salpa, the origin of the alternation of generations may, as in the case of the origin of the diœcious from the hermaphrodite state, be traced back to the tendency towards the establishment of a division of labour acting upon an animal which possessed the capacity of sexual and asexual reproduction. It was advantageous for the formation of the regular chain of buds (stolo prolifer) that the power of sexual reproduction should be suppressed, and that the generative organs should become rudimentary and finally vanish in the budding individuals; while, on the other hand, in the individuals united in the chain, the generative organs were early developed, and the stolo prolifer was aborted and completely vanished.

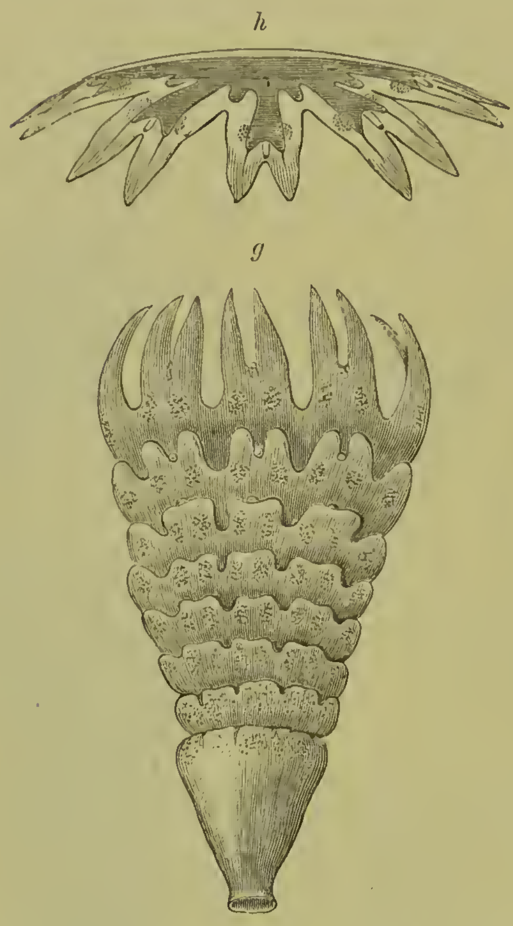



FIG. 113.—*g*, Fully developed Strobila with separating Ephyræ. *h*, Free Ephyra (of about 1·5 to 2 mm. diameter.

Special forms of alternation of generations may be distinguished in which colonies are formed as the result of the asexual reproduction by budding from a single animal, the buds remaining attached and developing into individuals which differ considerably in structure and appearance, and each of which performs special functions in maintaining the colony (nutritive, protective, sexual, etc.) Such a form of alternation of generations is known as *polymorphism*,* and reaches a great complication in the polymorphous colonies of the Siphonophora.

A form of reproduction which closely resembles metagenesis, but which genetically has quite a different explanation, is the lately

* R. Leuckart, "Ueber den Polymorphismus der Individuen oder die Erscheinung der Arbeitstheilung in der Natur." Giessen, 1851.

discovered process known as *heterogamy*. It is characterised by the succession of differently organized *sexual* generations living under different nutritive conditions.

Heterogamy, which was first discovered in certain small Nematodes (*Rhabdonema nigrovenosum* and *Leptodera appendiculata*), can scarcely be explained otherwise than as an adaptation to changed conditions. For when the embryo is developed as a parasite in conditions favourable for the acquisition of nutriment, it gives rise to a sexual form so different in size and structure from that which arises if the


FIG. 114.—A, Rhabdonema nigrovenosum of about 3·5 mm. in length at the stage when the male organs are ripe. *G*, genital gland; *O*, mouth; *D*, alimentary canal; *A*, anus; *N*, nerve ring; *Drz*, gland cells; *Z*, isolated spermatozoa. B, Male and female Rhabditis, length from about 1·5 to 2 mm.; *Ov*, ovary; *T*, testis; *V*, female genital opening; *Sp*, spicula.

embryo leads a free existence in damp earth or dirty water (*i.e.*, in conditions not so favourable for the acquisition of nutriment), that we should, from the difference in their structure, place the two forms in different genera. Rhabdonema nigrovenosum from the lungs of Batrachians and the free-living Rhabditis follow each other in a strictly alternating manner (fig. 114, A, B). Other cases of heterogamy are afforded by the Bark-lice (Chermes), and the Root-lice

(Phylloxera), in that one or more (winged and apterous) female generations are characterised by parthenogenetic reproduction, and consist only of oviparous females; while the generation of females, which lay fertilised eggs, appears with the males only at certain times of the year, and can be distinguished by their small size, and by the reduction of their mouth parts and digestive apparatus.

Such forms of heterogamy lead back apparently to alternations of generations, especially when the parthenogenetic generations present, in the structure of their generative apparatus, essential differences from the females which copulate.

The *plant-lice and gall-flies* afford instances of this. The reproductive processes of these animals, on the authority of Steenstrup and V. Siebold, were regarded for a long time as instances of alternations of generations, until the view, which was supported by the reproductive processes of the allied bark-lice, that they came under the head of heterogamy, received general assent. According to this view, the viviparous forms of the plant-lice (Aphides) are merely modified females adapted for parthenogenetic reproduction, and their reproductive gland is nothing more than the modified ovary. There are also cases of heterogamy in which, in the parthenogenetic generations, the development of the egg commences in the ovary of the larva, reproduction being shifted back into larval life. This form of heterogamy, which resembles alternations of generations, was shown to occur in the larva of Cecidomyia (Miastor) by Nic. Wagner and by O. Grimm in the larva of a species of Chironomus, and is to be looked upon as a case of precocious development of the egg in the parthenogenetic generation. The morphologically undeveloped larva has acquired the power of reproducing itself by means of its rudimentary ovary, a phenomenon which, following the proposal of C. E. v. Baer, has been designated *Pædogenesis*.

If the reproductive gland of the Cecidomyia larva be looked upon as a germ-gland, and the cells contained in it as germ cells or spores, the reproduction of the Cecidomyia falls into the category of alternations of generations. But the idea involved in the term "spore" is borrowed from the vegetable kingdom, and there is no reason for looking upon these or any other structures in the Metazoa as spores. The above explanation, therefore, is untenable. The reproductive cells in the Metazoa, which have been regarded in this light, have much more probably originated from masses of cells which represent the rudiment of the ovary. and which are usually visible in early stages of development.

Further it cannot be doubted that the development of the Distomeæ, which has hitherto been regarded as a case of alternation of generations really represents a form of heterogamy allied to pædogenesis. After the completion of the segmentation and embryonic development, the ciliated embryos (fig 115, *a*, *b*) pass from the egg into the water, where they swim about, and eventually make their way into the body of a Snail, in which they give rise to sac-like or branched Sporocysts (fig 115, *c*) or to Rediæ provided with an alimentary canal (fig. 115, *d*).

These stages in the development of Distomum which are apparently

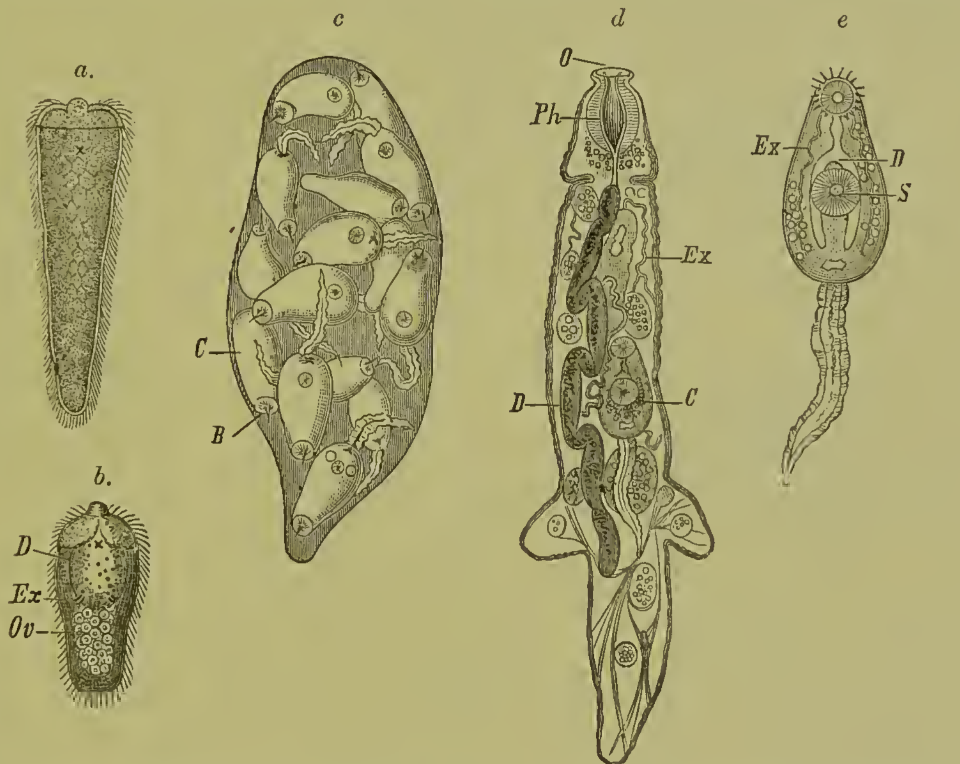



FIG. 115.—Developmental history of Distomum (in part after R. Leuckart). *a*, Free-swimming ciliated embryo of the liver fluke.—*b*, the same contracted, with rudiment of alimentary canal *D*; and aggregations of cells; *Ov*, rudiment of genital gland; *Ex*, ciliated apparatus of the excretory system.—*c*, Sporocyst, which has proceeded from a Distomum embryo, filled with Cercariæ *C*; *B*, spine of a Cercaria.—*d*, Redia with pharynx *Ph*; alimentary canal, *D*; *Ex*, excretory organs; *C*, contained Cercariæ.—*e*, free Cercaria; *S*, sucker; *D*, gut.

comparable to larvæ, produce by means of the so-called germ granules or spores a generation of offspring known as Cercariæ (fig. 115, *e*), which become free, and then make their way into the body of a new host, and, after the loss of the oral spine and caudal appendage, encyst (fig 115 *f*). Hence they are carried into the body of the permanent host to develop into the sexual adult form.

It is, however, extremely probable that the masses of cells from which the Cercariæ arise represent the rudiments of ovaries, the elements of which develop parthenogenetically without the addition of spermatozoa. The so-called germ sacs (Sporocysts or Rediæ) would in this case be larvæ, which possess the power of reproduction; and the development of the Distomeæ would come under the head of heterogamy. The Cercariæ, however, represent a second and more advanced larval phase. Provided with a motile tail, frequently with eyes and buccal spine, their organization, save in the absence of developed generative organs, presents great similarities to the sexually mature adults into which they develop. This development, however, takes place only in the body of another and usually more highly organized host after the loss of the larval organs.

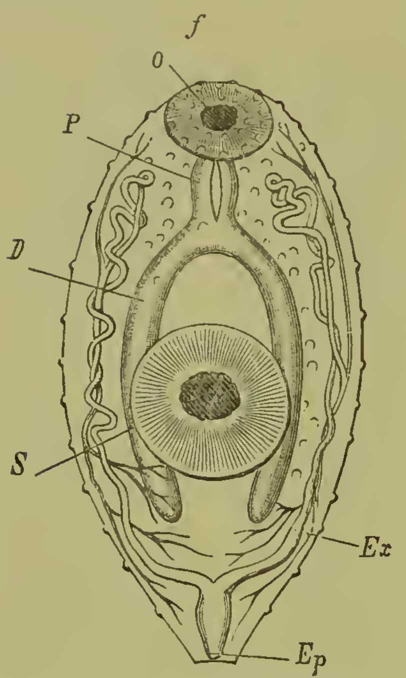



FIG. 115. *f*,—Young Distomum (after La Valette). *Ex*, main trunk of excretory system; *Ep*, excretory pore; *O*, mouth opening with sucker; *S*, sucker on middle of ventral surface; *P*, pharynx; *D*, limb of alimentary canal.

If the conception of a spore as an asexual reproductive product be maintained, it becomes impossible in practice to draw a sharp line between alternation of generations and heterogamy; since there is no test which enables us to distinguish between a spore and an ovum which develops parthenogenetically. On the other hand, if we interpret, as we are justified in doing, the so-called spores as precociously developed ova, alternation of generations and heterogamy can be clearly distinguished from one another, since in the former one generation is asexual, and increases entirely by budding and division; while in the latter both generations are sexual, though in one of them the ova may possess the power of spontaneous development.

An essential characteristic both of heterogamy and alternation of generations depends upon the different form of the individuals appearing in the generations which usually occur in a regularly alternating manner in the life-history of the species. But there are cases in which two methods of reproduction may follow each other in the life-history of one individual. This form of the reproductive process is of the greatest interest as throwing light upon the way in which the phenomena of alternation of generations and heterogamy may have arisen in that it appears in a certain degree as the precursor of the alternating sequence of two or more generations of individuals. The so-called alternation of generations in the stone-corals (Blastotrochus), which in early life reproduce themselves by budding, without thereby losing the power of acquiring sexual organs at a later period of life, forms an example of this method of reproduction.

In this category of incomplete heterogamy should be placed the reproductive processes of the Phyllopoda and Rotifera, in which the female produces summer eggs capable of parthenogenetic development, and later winter eggs requiring fertilization (*Daphnidæ*).

[In the above account the term alternation of generations, or metagenesis is applied to those cases in which sexual and asexual generations alternate; while heterogamy is applied to those cases in which two sexual generations or a sexual and parthenogenetic generation alternate.]

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### HISTORICAL REVIEW.*

THE origin of Zoology extends far back into antiquity. Aristotle (4th century B.C.), who scientifically and in a philosophic spirit worked up the experiences of his predecessors with his own extended observations, must be looked upon as the founder of this science. The most important of his zoological works† treat of the "Reproduction of Animals," of the "Parts of Animals," and of the "History of Animals." The last and most important work is, unfortunately, only incompletely preserved.

We must not expect to find in Aristotle a descriptive zoologist, nor in his works a system of animals followed out into the smallest

* Victor Carus, "Geschichte der Zoologie." München, 1872.

† Compare Jürgen Bona Meyer's "Aristoteles' Thierkunde" (Berlin, 1855). —Frantzius, "Aristoteles' Theile der Thiere" (Leipzig. 1853).—Aubert und Wimmer, "Aristoteles' Fünf Bücher von der Zeugung und Entwicklung der Thiere, übersetzt und erläutert" (Leipzig. 1860).—Aubert und Wimmer, "Aristoteles' Thierkunde." Band I. und II. (Leipzig, 1868).

details; a one-sided treatment of science was not the object of this great thinker.

Aristotle contemplated animals as living organisms in all their relations to the external world, according to their development, structure, and vital phenomena, and he created a comparative Zoology, which in several respects constitutes the basis of our science. The distinction of animals into *animals with blood* (ἔναιμα) and *animals without blood* (ἄναιμα), which he in no wise used as a strictly systematic conception, certainly depends, according to the meaning of the word, upon an error, since all animals possess blood; and the red colour can by no means be taken, as Aristotle believed, to be a test of the presence of blood; but as the possession of a bony vertebral column was put forward as a character of the animals provided with blood, the two groups established by this distinction coincided in their limits with the two great divisions of Vertebrates and Invertebrates.

The eight animal groups of Aristotle are the following:—

*Animals with blood*, Vertebrates—

(1) Viviparous animals (four-footed, ζωοτοκοῦντα ἐν αὐτοῖς), with which as a special γένος was placed the whale.

(2) Birds (ὄρνιθες).

(3) Oviparous four-footed animals (τετράποδα ἢ ἄποδα ᾠοτοκοῦντα).

(4) Fishes (ἰχθύες).

*Animals without blood*, Invertebrates—

(5) Soft animals (μαλάκια, Cephalopoda).

(6) Soft animals with shells (μαλακόστρακα).

(7) Insects (ἔντομα).

(8) Shelled animals (ὀστρακοδέρματα, Echini, Snails, and Mussels).

After Aristotle, antiquity only possesses one zoological writer of note—Pliny the elder—to point to. He lived in the first century, and, as is well-known, was killed in the great Eruption of Vesuvius (79), while captain of the fleet. The natural history of Pliny deals with the whole of nature, from the stars to animals, plants, and minerals; it is, however, of no scientific value as an original work, but is merely a compilation of facts collected from known sources, and is not by any means implicitly to be trusted. Pliny borrowed to a large extent from Aristotle, often understood him falsely, and also accepted here and there as facts fables, which had been rejected by Aristotle. Without setting up a system of his own, he divided animals according to the medium in which they lived—into Land-animals (Terrestria), Aquatic-animals (Aquatica), and Flying-animals (Volatilia),—a division which was accepted till Gessner's time.

With the decline of the sciences, natural history also fell into oblivion. The mind of man, fettered by the belief in authority, felt in the middle ages no need for an independent contemplation of Nature. But the writings of Aristotle and Pliny found an asylum within the walls of the Christian cloisters, which preserved the germs of science developed in Heathendom from complete extinction.

In the course of the middle ages, first the Spanish bishop, Isidor of Seville (in the seventh century), and later Albertus Magnus (in the thirteenth century) wrote works on natural history; but it was not until the renaissance of the sciences of the sixteenth century that the works of Aristotle again came to the fore, and the desire for independent observation and research was also roused. Works like those of C. Gessner, Aldrovandus, Wotton, testified to the newly awakening life of our science, whose scope was continually being increased by the discovery of new worlds.

The next century, in which Harvey discovered the circulation of the blood, Keppler the revolution of the planets, and Newton's law of gravitation formed the beginning of a new era in physics, was also a fruitful epoch for Zoology. Aurelio Severino wrote his "Zootomia democritæa" (1645), a work which contained anatomical drawings of various animals, more for the use and advancement of human anatomy and physiology. Swammerdam in Leyden dissected the bodies of Insects and Molluscs, and described the metamorphosis of the Frog. Malpighi in Bologna and Leeuwenhoek in Delft applied the invention of the microscope to the examination of tissues and the smallest organisms (animals from infusions). The latter discovered the blood corpuscles, and first saw the transverse striations of muscular fibres. The spermatazoa also were discovered by a student, Hamm, and called, on account of their movements, sperm-animals. The Italian Redi opposed the spontaneous generation of animals in putrefying matter, proved the origin of Maggots from Flies' eggs, and supported Harvey's famous expression, "*omne vivum ex ovo.*" In the eighteenth century the knowledge of the life-history of animals was enormously enriched. Investigators such as Réaumur, Rösel von Rosenhöf, De Geer, Bonnet, J. Chr. Schaeffer, Ledermüller, etc., discovered the metamorphosis and life-history of Insects and native aquatic animals, while at the same time, by expeditions into foreign lands, a great number of animals from other continents became known. In consequence of these extended observations and a continually growing eagerness to collect curiosities from foreign countries, the zoological material increased so largely that, in the absence of precise distinctions, nomenclature and arrangement, the danger of error was great, and a general review of the facts almost impossible. Under such conditions, the appearance of the systematiser Carl Linnæus (1707—1778) must have been of the greatest importance for the further development of Zoology.

Ray, who is justly placed in the first rank of Linnæus' predecessors, had earlier endeavoured to acquire a basis for the systematic treatment, and with a certain amount of success, but he failed to organise a thoroughly methodical arrangement. He was the first to introduce the conception of "species" and to consider anatomical characters as the basis of classification. In his work, entitled "Synopsis of Mammalia and Reptilia" (1693), he adopted Aristotle's division of the animal kingdom into animals with and animals without blood. With regard to the first he laid the basis of the definitions of Linnæus' first four classes; the latter he divided into a greater group, containing Cephalopods, Crustacea, and Testacea, and into a smaller containing the Insecta.

The importance of Linnæus' work to the development of science depended not on any far-reaching investigations or important discoveries, but on his acute sifting and exact division of the then existing facts, and on the introduction of a new method of more certain diagnosis, nomenclature, and arrangement.

By erecting for groups of different value a series of categories based on the ideas of species, genus, order, class, he obtained a means of creating a much more precise system of classification. On the other hand, by the introduction of the principle of binary nomenclature, he obtained a fixed and more certain method. Every animal received two names taken from the Latin language—the generic name, which was placed first, and the specific name, which together denote the fact that the animal in question belongs to a definite genus and species. In this way Linnæus not only arranged the facts then known, but also created a systematic framework in which later discoveries would easily find their proper place.

Linnæus's great work, the "Systema Naturæ," which in its thirteen editions received many changes, embraced the animal, vegetable, and mineral kingdoms, and in its treatment can only be compared to an exhaustive catalogue, in which the contents of nature, like that of a library, are registered in a definite order with a statement of their most remarkable characters. Every species of animal and plant obtained a place determined by its properties, and was with the specific name inserted under the genus. After the name followed a short Latin diagnosis, and a list of the synonyms of authors and statements concerning the habits of life, habitat, the native country, and any special characteristics.

Linnæus created for botany an artificial system of classification founded on the characters of flowers. Similarly his classification of animals was artificial, as it did not depend upon the distinction of natural groups, but took isolated features of internal and external structure as characters. Linnæus completed the improvements in Aristotle's classification which had been already begun by Ray, by establishing the following six classes, founded on the structure of the heart, the condition of the blood, the manner of reproduction and respiration.

(1) *Mammalia.*—With red warm blood, and a heart composed of two auricles and two ventricles, viviparous. The following orders were distinguished—Primates (with the four genera Homo, Simia, Lemur, Vespertilio), Bruta, Feræ, Glires, Pecora, Belluæ, Cete.

(2) *Aves.*—With warm red blood, and a heart composed of two auricles and two ventricles, oviparous—Accipitres, Picæ, Anseres, Grallæ, Gallinæ, Passeres.

(3) *Amphibia.*—With cold red blood and a heart composed of simple auricle and ventricle, breathing by lungs—Reptilia (Testudo, Draco, Lacerta, Rana), Serpentes.

(4) *Pisces.*—With cold red blood, and a heart composed of simple auricle and ventricle, breathing by gills—Apodes, Jugulares, Thoracici, Abdominales, Branchiostegi, Chondropterygii.

(5) *Insecta.*—With white blood, simple heart, and segmented antennæ—Coleoptera, Hemiptera, Lepidoptera, Neuroptera, Hymenoptera, Diptera, Aptera.

(6) *Vermes.*—With white blood, simple heart, and unsegmented antennæ—Mollusca, Intestina, Testacea, Zoophyta, Infusoria.

While the followers of Linnæus developed still further this barren and one-sided zoographical treatment and erroneously looked upon the framework of this system as an exact and complete expression of the whole of nature, Cuvier, by combining Comparative Anatomy with Zoology, laid the foundations of a natural system.

George Cuvier, born at Mömpelgard 1762, and educated at the Karlsakademie at Stuttgart, later Professor of Comparative Anatomy at the Jardin des Plantes in Paris, published his comprehensive investigations in numerous works, especially in his "Leçons d'Anatomie comparee" (1805).

In his celebrated treatise * published in 1812, on the arrangement of animals according to their organization, he established a new and essentially changed classification, which was the first serious attempt to build up a natural system. Cuvier did not, as most zootomists had done, look upon anatomical discoveries and facts as in themselves the aim of his researches, but he contemplated them from a comparative point of view, which led him to the establishment of general principles. By considering the peculiarities in the arrangements of the organs in relation with the life and unity of the organism, he recognised the reciprocal dependence of the individual organs, and appreciating fully the idea of the "correlation" of parts already discussed by Aristotle, he developed his principle of the conditions of existence without which an animal cannot live (*principe des conditions d'existence ou causes finales*). "The organism consists of a single and complete whole, in which single parts cannot be changed without causing changes in all the other parts." By comparing the organizations of many different animals, he found that the important organs are the most constant, and that the less important vary most in their form and development, and even are not universally present.

He was thus led to the principle so important for the systematist of the subordination of characters (*principe de la subordination des caractères*). Without being ruled by the pre-conceived idea of the unity of all animal organization, he became convinced, from a consideration of the differences in the nervous system and in the arrangement of the more important systems of organs, that there were in the animal kingdom four main types (*embranchements*), "general plans of structure on which the respective animals appear to be modelled, and whose individual subdivisions, as they may be called, are only slight modifications based on the development or the addition of some parts, without the plan of the organization being thereby essentially changed."

These four groups (*embranchements* Cuvier, *Typen* Blainville) were the Vertebrata, Mollusca, Articulata, and Radiata.

The views of Cuvier, who in knowledge of anatomical and zoological detail stood far above all his contemporaries, were, however, in opposition to the theories of men of note (the so-called School of

* "Sur un nouveau rapprochement à établir entre les classes qui composent le règne animal." *Ann. des Museum d'Hist. Nat.*, Tom XIX., 1812.

Natural Philosophy). In France, Étienne Geoffroy St. Hilaire pre-eminently defended the idea, which had been already expressed by Buffon, of the unity of the plan of animal structure, according to which the animal kingdom consisted of an unbroken gradation of animals. Convinced that nature always worked with the same materials, he put forward his theory of analogies, according to which the same parts, though differing in their form and the degree of their development, should be found in all animals; and, further, his theory of connections (*principe des connexions*), according to which the same parts always appear in the same mutual position. A third fundamental principle was that of the equivalence of organs, an increase in the size of one organ being accompanied by the diminution of another organ. The application of this principle had important results, and led to the scientific foundation of Teratology. His generalizations were, however, in the main hasty, in that they were founded on facts taken only from the Vertebrates; and if applied outside that group must lead to many rash conclusions, *e.g.*, that Insects are Vertebrates turned on to their backs.

In Germany, Goethe and the natural philosophers Oken and Schelling pronounced in favour of the unity of animal organization, but it must be confessed without taking account in a comprehensive manner of the actual facts.

The result of this controversy which in France was carried on with considerable vehemence was, that Cuvier's view was victorious, and his principles met with the more undivided assent since it appeared that they were confirmed by C. E. v. Baer's embryological work. Many gaps and errors were certainly discovered by later investigators in Cuvier's classification, and in detail it was much changed, but the establishment of his animal types as the chief groups of the system was retained, and was supported by the results of the developing Science of Embryology.

The most essential of the modifications which it has become necessary to make in Cuvier's system relate chiefly to the increase in the number of types. The Infusoria were some time ago removed from the Radiata, and as Protozoa arranged by the side of the four other groups. Lately the number of groups has been increased by the division of the Radiata into Cœlenterata and Echinodermata, and of the Articulata into Arthropoda and Vermes, and of the Mollusca into three groups.

In our times, however, Cuvier's view has experienced an essential modification in favour of the Natural Philosophers, and the idea of the absolute independence and isolation of each group must be given up. With a more complete study it has been shown that intermediate forms exist connecting the various types, and that consequently no sharp line of demarcation can be drawn between them. But just as the transitional forms between animals and plants cannot abolish the distinction between these two most important conceptions of the organic kingdom, so the existence of such transitional forms does not in any way affect the value of the idea of groups and types as the chief divisions of the animal system, but only renders it probable that the different groups have developed from a similar or common starting-point.

And to this corresponds the fact, which has become recognised with the progress of embryological knowledge, that similar larval stages and tissue-layers (germinal layers) are found in the developmental history of the different types. This fact points to a genetic connection.

Likewise the results of anatomical and embryological comparison have rendered it probable that the types are by no means absolutely independent, but are subordinated to one another in more or less close relation, that especially the higher groups are genetically to be derived from the Worms, a group which certainly includes extremely dissimilar forms, and eventually will, without doubt, be broken up into several types. We consider it, under such circumstances, convenient, in the present state of science, to distinguish nine types as the chief divisions, and to characterise them in the following manner:—

(1) *Protozoa.*—Of small size, with differentiations within the sarcode, without cellular organs, with predominating asexual reproduction.

(2) *Cœlenterata.*—Radiate animals segmented in terms of 2, 4, or 6; mesoderm of connective tissue, often gelatinous; and a central body cavity common to digestion and circulation (gastro-vascular space).

(3) *Echinodermata.*—Radiating animals, for the most part of pentamerous arrangement; with calcareous dermal skeleton, often bearing spines; with separate alimentary and vascular systems; and with nervous system and ambulacral feet.

(4) *Vermes.*—Bilateral animals with unsegmented or uniformly (homonomous) segmented body, without jointed appendages (limbs), with paired excretory canals sometimes called water-vascular system.

(5) *Arthropoda.*—Bilateral animals with heteronomously segmented

bodies and jointed appendages, with brain and ventral chain of ganglia.

(6) *Molluscoidea.*—Bilateral, unsegmented animals with ciliated circlet of tentacles or spirally rolled buccal arms; either polyp-like and provided with a hard shell case, or mussel-like with a bivalve shell, the valves being anterior and posterior; with one or more ganglia connected together by a periœsophageal ring.

(7) *Mollusca.* Bilateral animals with soft, unsegmented body, without a skeleton serving for purposes of locomotion; usually enclosed in a single or bivalve shell, which is excreted by a fold of the skin (mantle); with brain, pedal-ganglion and mantle-ganglion.

(8) *Tunicata.*—Bilateral unsegmented animals with sac-shaped or barrel-shaped bodies, and a large mantle cavity perforated by two openings; simple nervous ganglion, heart and gills.

(9) *Vertebrata.*—Bilateral animals with an internal cartilaginous or osseous segmented skeleton (vertebral column), which gives off dorsal processes (the neural arches) to surround a cavity for the reception of the spinal cord and brain; and ventral processes (the ribs) which bound a cavity for the reception of the vegetative organs; never with more than two pairs of limbs.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### MEANING OF THE SYSTEM.

VERY different opinions have been held in different places and at different times as to the value of the system. In the last century the French Zoologist Buffon held the system to be a pure invention of the human mind; while more recently L. Agassiz thought that a real meaning could be attributed to all the divisions of the system. He explained the natural system founded on relationship of organization as a translation of the thoughts of the Creator into human language, by the investigation of which we become unconsciously interpreters of his ideas.

But it is clear that we cannot call that arrangement, which is derived from the relations of organization founded in nature, an invention of man. Similarly it is preposterous to deny the subjective participation of our intellectual activity, since in every system there is expressed a relation of the facts of nature to our comprehension and to the state of scientific knowledge. In this sense Goethe appropriately calls a natural system a contradictory expression.

In establishing systems, that which comes into contemplation consists of the individual forms which are the objects of observation. Every systematic conception, from that of the species to that of the type, depends upon the bringing together of similiar properties, and is an abstraction of the human mind.

**Species.**—The great majority of investigators, till very recently, were agreed in looking upon the *species* as an independently created unit with special properties which were retained in propagation, and were really contented with the fundamental idea in Linnæus' definition of species: *Tot numeramus species quot ab initio creavit infinitum ens.*" This view also accorded with a dogma prevalent in Geology, according to which the flora and fauna of the successive periods of the earth's history were completely isolated, being created afresh at the beginning and destroyed by a vast catastrophe at the end of each period. It was supposed that no living thing could be preserved through one of these catastrophes from one period into the next; that every species of animal and plant was specially created with definite characters, which it retained unchanged until it was destroyed. This idea was confirmed by the difference between the fossil remains of Vertebrates (Cuvier) and Molluscs (Lamarck), and the living forms of these types.

As a matter of fact, however, neither in the animal nor in the vegetable kingdom do offspring resemble exactly the parent forms from which they have originated, but present differences more or less considerable, so that the idea of absolute identity must be removed from our definition of species, and agreement in the most essential particulars introduced in its place. The species would accordingly, in close agreement with Cuvier's definition, include all living forms which *have the most essential properties in common, are descended from one another, and produce fruitful descendants.*

All the facts of natural life, however, can by no means be arranged agreeably to this conception, which has for a fundamental principle that all essential peculiarities must be preserved unaltered by reproduction through all time. The great difficulties in defining species which occur in practice, and which prevent a sharp line being drawn between species and variety, indicate the insufficiency of the conception.

**Varieties.**—Individuals belonging to the same species do not resemble each other in all particulars, but present differences which, on closer investigation, suffice to distinguish the individual forms. Combinations of modified characters are often present in the same species, and occasion important variations (varieties) which can be inherited by the descendants. The more important of such variations which are maintained by reproduction are called *constant varieties* or *subspecies, or races*, and are divided into *natural races* and *artificial* or *domesticated races.*

The former are found in free natural life, and are usually confined to definite localities. They have arisen in course of time in consequence of conditions of climate, and under the influence of variations in manner of life and nourishment. The domesticated races, on the other hand, owe their origin to the care and cultivation of man. They comprise only domestic animals whose origin is still unknown.

Varieties, however, which have arisen from one species may differ very surprisingly from one another; in fact, they may present more important features of difference than do distinct natural species. An example of this is found in the domesticated race of pigeons, whose common descent from Columba livia (the rock pigeon) was shown by Darwin to be very probable. They are capable of such striking alterations, that their varieties, known as tumbler pigeons, fantail pigeons, etc., were held by ornithologists, who were without knowledge of their origin, to be real species, and were even divided into different genera.

In the natural state, too, it often happens that varieties cannot be distinguished from species by the quality of their characteristics. It is customary to consider that *the essential* of a character is to be found in the constancy of its occurrence, and to recognise varieties by the fact that their characteristics are more variable than those of species. If forms which are widely different can be connected by a continuous series of intermediate forms, they are held to be varieties of the same species. But if such intermediate forms are absent, they are held to be distinct species, even when the differences between them (so long as they are constant) are less.

Under such circumstances we can understand that in the absence of a positive test, the individual judgment and the natural tact of the observer decides between species and variety; * and how it is that the opinions of different observers have differed so widely in

* The establishment of the conception of sub-species is completely at variance with the common conception of species, and is the most striking proof that systematists themselves recognize that the distinction between species and sub-species is a relative one.

practice. This relation has been excellently and thoroughly discussed by Darwin and Hooker. As an example of the difference of opinion on this subject, Nägeli * divided the *Hieraciæ* found in Germany into three hundred species, Fries into one hundred and six, Koch into fifty-two, while other authors recognise hardly more than twenty. Nägeli indeed says, "There is no genus of more than four species on which all botanists are agreed, and many examples may be cited in which, since Linnæus' time, the same species have been repeatedly divided up and re-united."

We are therefore driven, in order to determine the essential property distinguishing species and variety, to consider the most important characteristic for the conception of species,—a characteristic which has hardly ever been used in practice, *i.e.*, the community of descent and the capacity for fruitful interbreeding. This means of determination, however, is also insufficient.

It is a commonly known fact that animals which belong to different species pair with one another and produce hybrids, *e.g.*, horse and ass, wolf and dog, fox and dog. Widely differing species, which are placed in different genera, have even been known to cross with one another, and to produce progeny, such as the he-goat and sheep, and the she-goat and ibex. The hybrids however are, as a rule, sterile. They are intermediate forms with imperfect generative system, without the power of propagation; and even in those cases where there is a power of reproduction (such cases are most frequently met with amongst female hybrids), there is a tendency to revert to the paternal or maternal species.

There are, however, exceptions to the sterility of the hybrid which appear to afford weighty proof against immutability of species. The experiments in breeding between the hare and rabbit, made on a large scale in Angoulême by Roux, have shown that their progeny, the hare-rabbit, is perfectly fertile. Half-bred hybrids of the rabbit and hare have been bred, and have been reproductive through many generations of pure in-breeding. In like manner careful inquiries into the hybridism of plants, especially the investigations of W. Herbert, lead to the conclusion that many hybrids are as perfectly productive among themselves as genuine species.

In a state of nature, too, hybrids of various kinds are found. Such hybrids have frequently been taken for independent species, and have been described as such (*Tetrao medius*, hybrid of *Tetrao*

* C. Nägeli, "Entstehung und Begriff der naturhistorischen Art." Münich, 1865.

*urogallus* and *Tetrao tetrix; Abramidopsis Leuckarti, Bliccopsis abramorutilus*, and others are, according to von Siebold, hybrids.) Sterility of hybrids is not the rule here, for a great number of wild plants have been recognised as hybrid species (Kölreuter, Gärtner, Nägeli—*Cirsium, Cytisus, Rubus*). This seems to render it the less doubtful that amongst animals which have been domesticated by man, persistent transitional forms can be obtained from originally different species, by gradual alteration brought about by cross breeding.

Pallas, adopting this view, gave it as his opinion that closely allied species, though at first they may refuse to breed together, or may produce sterile offspring, will, after long domestication, produce fertile progeny. And in fact, it has been shown to be probable that some of our domestic animals have originated in prehistoric times as the result of the unintentional crossing of different species. Rütimeyer especially endeavoured to prove this mode of origin for the domestic ox (*Bos taurus*), which he regarded as a new race resulting from the crossing of at least two ancestral forms (*Bos primigenius, brachyceros*). It may be looked upon as certain that the domestic pig and cat, and the numerous breeds of dogs, have originated from several wild species.

In connection with the exceptional cases which have just been discussed, we may lay great stress upon the perfect reproductive capabilities of mongrels, that is, of the progeny produced by the crossing of different varieties of the same species; though here also we meet with exceptions. Disregarding those cases in which mechanical causes render the interbreeding of different varieties impossible, it seems, according to the observations of breeders whose word may be depended upon, that certain varieties have difficulty in crossing with one another; and further that certain forms which have been bred by selection from a common stock are altogether incapable of fertile intercourse. The domestic cat introduced into Paraguay from Europe has, according to Rengger, become essentially altered in process of time, and has acquired a marked aversion to the European ancestral form. The European guinea pig does not breed with the Brazilian form, from which it is probably descended. The Porto-Santo rabbit, which was exported from Europe to *Porto-Santo* near Madeira in the fifteenth century, is so much altered that it can no longer breed with the European race of rabbits.

The evident difficulty of precisely defining the conception of species, in presence of the existence of a gradual, almost uninterrupted series of animal forms, and of the results of artificial selection, had already, in the beginning of this century, induced illustrious and highly esteemed naturalists to dispute the dominant views on the immutability of species. In the year 1809, Lamark, in his "*Philosophie Zoologique*," broached the theory of the descent of species from one another. He referred the gradual alterations in some degree to changing conditions of life, but mainly to use and disuse of organs.

Geoffrey St. Hilaire, too, the advocate of the idea of unity of organization of all animals and the opponent of Cuvier, expressed his conviction that species had not existed unaltered from the beginning. While agreeing essentially with Lamark's theory of the origin and transmutation of species, he ascribed a less influence to the inherent activity of the organism, and believed that he could explain the alterations through the direct operation of changes in the environment (*monde ambiant*).

The change in the fundamental views of Geology which took place at a later period must be ascribed to the opinions of these investigators. Lyell endeavoured (Principles of Geology) to explain geological alterations by means of the forces in operation at the present day, working gradually and without interruption through extended periods of time, and rejected the Cuvierian theory of mighty revolutions and catastrophes which destroyed all life. When the geologists with Lyell had given up the hypothesis of periodic disturbance of the course of natural events, they were obliged to assume the continuity of organic life during the successive periods of the formation of the earth, and to endeavour to account for the immense alterations of the organic world by slight influences operating gradually and without interruption throughout long periods of time. The variability of species, the origin of new species from previous ancestral forms in the course of ages, has become, accordingly, since the time of Lyell, a necessary postulate of geology in order to explain naturally the differences of animals and plants in successive periods without the supposition of repeated acts of creation.

## THE TRANSMUTATION THEORY, OR THEORY OF DESCENT, BASED ON THE PRINCIPLE OF NATURAL SELECTION (DARWINISM).

Nevertheless a more securely grounded theory based upon a firmer standpoint was needed in order to give more force to the Transmutation hypothesis which had remained disregarded; and this service was effected by the English naturalist, Charles Darwin, who employed a mass of scientific material to found a theory of the origin and mutation of species. This theory, which is closely connected with the views of Lamark and Geoffroy and in harmony with Lyell's doctrines, has received an almost universal recognition, not only on account of the simplicity of its principle, but also because of the objective and convincing way in which his genius expounded it.

Darwin * starts from the principle of heredity, according to which the characteristics of parents are transmitted to their offspring. But side by side with this, there is an adaptation determined by the peculiar conditions of nourishment, a limited variability of form, without which individuals of like descent would be identical. While heredity tends to reproduce identical characteristics, individual variations appear in the descendants of the same species, and in this way modifications arise, which in their turn are submitted to the law of heredity. Cultivated plants and domestic animals, the individual forms of which vary far more than do those living in a state of nature, are especially disposed to alteration; and capability of domestication is in reality nothing else than the capability of an organism to subordinate and adapt itself to altered conditions of nourishment and way of life.

*The so-called artificial breeding*, by which man succeeds by judicious choice in cultivating in plants and animals definite properties corresponding to his requirements, depends on the interaction of heredity and individual variation; and it is probable that the numerous races of domestic animals were in this way bred *unconsciously* by man, just as in our own days large numbers of new varieties are bred by judicious choice of the male and female parents. Similar processes are also at work in natural life, calling into existence new alterations and varieties. Here also we find a selection which is occasioned by the struggle of organisms for existence, and may be called *a natural selection.* All plants and animals are engaged, as Decandolle and Lyell had asserted ten years previously, in a mutual struggle for existence among themselves and with external conditions.

A plant has to fight against circumstances of climate, season, and soil; and has also to compete for existence with other plants which, by their superabundant increase, endanger the possibility of its preservation. Plants serve as food for animals, which themselves are engaged in a mutual struggle with each other; the carnivorous

* Ch. Darwin, "On the Origin of Species by means of Natural Selection." London, 1859.

feeding very largely upon herbivorous animals. Then again, all are struggling to multiply in great numbers. Each organism produces far more descendants than can in general be preserved. With a definite degree of fertility, a corresponding amount of destruction must take place; for in the absence of the latter the number of individuals would so increase in geometrical progression that no locality would suffice for the sustenance of their progeny. If, on the contrary, the protection afforded by fertility, size, special organization, colour, etc., were removed, the species would soon vanish from the earth. Amongst the complex conditions and interactions of life, even the most remotely connected organisms struggle with each other for existence (*e.g.*, the clover and the mice); but the most violent strife is waged between individuals of the same species, which seek the same food and are exposed to the same dangers. In this strife it necessarily happens that those individuals which are placed in the most favourable situation, through their special properties, have the greatest chance of maintaining themselves and of multiplying, and, in consequence, of reproducing the modifications useful to the species and of preserving them in their descendants, or even sometimes of increasing them.

Just as in the breeding of domesticated animals, an artificial selection is made by man to perpetuate and increase advantageous variations; so in the natural breeding of wild animals, in consequence of the struggle for existence, a selection is made by nature which leads to the preservation of modifications useful to the species.

Since, however, the struggle for existence in closely related forms must be the more violent the more nearly they resemble one another, the most divergent types will have the greatest chance of enduring and of producing descendants. Hence a divergence of characters and an extinction of intermediate forms is the necessary consequence. Thus by the combination of useful properties and by the accumulation of hereditary peculiarities, which were primitively of little importance, varieties gradually arise which ever diverge more and more; and this is what Darwin sought to prove by happily chosen examples. We can now comprehend why everything in the organism is directed towards one end, which is to ensure existence in the most perfect way. *The great series of phenomena which could hitherto only receive a teleological explanation are thus brought into causal relation, and can be explained as the inevitable result of efficient causes,* and their natural connection is thus rendered intelligible.

This principle of *natural selection*, which is the basis of the Darwinian theory, rests, on the one hand, on the interaction of adaptation and heredity, and on the other, on the *struggle for existence* which can be shown to occur everywhere in nature.

In its fundamental idea the natural selection theory is essentially an application of the doctrine of Malthus to plants and animals. Developed simultaneously by Darwin and Wallace,* it received from the former a most comprehensive scientific foundation.

We must certainly admit that Darwin's selection theory, although supported by what we know of biological processes and of the operation of the laws of nature, is very far from discovering the final causes and physical connection of the phenomena of adaptation and heredity, since it is unable to explain why such or such a variation should appear as the necessary consequence of a change in the vital conditions, and how it is that the manifold and wonderful phenomena of heredity are a function of organised matter.

It is clearly a great exaggeration when enthusiastic supporters of the Darwinian theory † say that it ranks as equal to the gravitation theory of Newton, because "it is founded upon a single law, a single effective cause, namely, upon the interaction of adaptation and heredity." They overlook the fact that we have here only to do with the proof of a mechanical and causal connection between series of biological phenomena, and not in the remotest degree with a physical explanation. Even if we are justified in connecting the phenomena of adaptation with the processes of nourishment, and in conceiving heredity as a physiological function of the organism, we still stand and regard these phenomena as "the savage who sees a ship for the first time." While the complicated phenomena of heredity ‡ remain completely unintelligible, we are only in a position to explain in general terms certain modifications of organs, on physical grounds, by the altered conditions of metabolism. It is only rarely—as in the case of the operation of use and disuse—that we are able more directly to relate the development or the atrophy of organs to the increase or decrease in their nutritive activity, *i.e.*, to give a chemico-physical explanation.

Darwin has been unjustly reproached with having left chance to

* Compare also A. R. Wallace, "Contributions to the Theory of Natural Selection."

† Compare E. Haeckel, "Natürliche Schöpfungsgeschichte. 4. Auflage. Berlin, 1873.

‡ It is clearly a misuse of the word "Law" to represent the numerous partially opposed and limiting phenomena of heredity as so many "laws of heredity," as E. Haeckel does.

play a considerable part in his attempt to account for the origin of varieties, with having accounted for everything by the struggle for existence, and with having given too little prominence to the direct influence of physical action on the mutation of forms. This reproach seems to arise from a misapprehension. Darwin says himself that the expression "chance," which he often uses to explain the presence of any small alteration, is a totally incorrect expression, and is only used to express our complete ignorance of the physical reasons for such particular variation.

If Darwin has by a series of considerations arrived at the conclusion that the conditions of life, such as climate, nourishment, etc., exercise but a small direct influence upon variability, since, for instance, the same varieties have arisen under the most different conditions, and different varieties under the same conditions, and that the complex adaptation of organism to organism cannot be produced by such influences, still he recognises in the alteration of the vital conditions and the mode of nourishment the primary cause of slight modifications of structure. But it is only *natural selection which accumulates those alterations, so that they become appreciable to us* and constitute a variation which is evident to our senses. It is exactly upon the intimate connection of direct physical action with the consequences of natural selection that the strength of the Darwinian theory rests.

The origin of varieties and races would appear, however, to constitute only the first stage in the processes of the continual changes of organisms. However slowly the process of selection may work, yet there is no limit to the extent and magnitude of the changes, or to the endless combinations of reciprocal adaptations of living beings if we allow a very long period of time for its operation. With the aid of this new factor of duration of time, which, according to geological facts, cannot be rejected, but stands to an unlimited extent at our service, the gap between variety and species disappears. Since the former are continually diverging with the lapse of time—and the more they do so and become differentiated in their organization so much the better will they be fitted to fill different places in the economy of nature and to increase in number—they at length attain the value of species, which in a state of nature do not interbreed, or, at any rate, only exceptionally produce progeny. *Thus, according to Darwin, a variety is a species in process of formation.* Variety and species are connected by continuous series of transitions, and are not absolutely distinct from one another; but are only relatively separated by the amount of difference in their morphological and physiological characteristics.

This conclusion of Darwin's, which extends the result of natural selection from the production of variety to that of species, is obstinately and often bitterly opposed by those who subordinate the phenomena of nature to traditional ideas.

Even if they do not deny the facts of variability, and even admit the influence of natural selection on the formation of natural varieties, they yet continue true to the belief that there is an absolute separation between species and race-variety. As a matter of fact, however, we are not in a position to draw such a line of separation. Neither the quality of the distinctive characteristics nor the results of crossing afford us a distinctive criterion between species and variety. The fact, however, *that we are not able to give any satisfactory definition of the conception of species, precisely because we are unable clearly to distinguish between species and variety*, adds so much the more weight to Darwin's argument, since neither the variability of the organism and the struggle for existence nor the great antiquity of life upon the globe can be contested.

The variability of forms is a firmly established fact; so, too, is the struggle for existence. Now if we add the operations of natural selection to these two factors, we are able to understand the origin of varieties. If we imagine the same process which has led to the formation of varieties continued through a greater number of generations and effective through a longer period of time—and we are the more justified in making use of these long periods of time, since with their help astronomy and geology have been enabled to explain many phenomena—the diverging characteristics will become more and more marked, and will at last gain the value of distinctive species-characters.

In still greater periods of time the species will become so far separated from one another by the simultaneous disappearance of the intermediate forms that they will represent different genera. Accordingly the greater differences of organization which are expressed in the higher divisions of the system, such as orders and sub-orders, etc., require a longer interval of time for their accomplishment, and an extinction of a greater number of intermediate forms. Finally, the different ancestral forms of the classes of a group may be referred to a common starting-point; and since the different groups of animals are connected by many intermediate forms, the number of the ancestral forms becomes much reduced.

The undifferentiated contractile substance, sarcode or protoplasm, was probably the starting-point of all organic life.

If these suppositions are correct, species no longer retain the signification of *independent and immutable units*, and appear, according to the great law of evolution, only as transient groups of forms, capable of change, and confined to longer or shorter periods of time, to definite conditions of life, and preserving, as long as these conditions do not vary, *a constancy in their essential characters*. The different categories of the system show the closer or more remote degree of relationship; and the system is the expression of genealogical relationship founded upon descent. All systems, however, must be imperfect and full of gaps, since the extinct ancestors of organisms living at the present time can only be very imperfectly supplied by the geological record; numerous intermediate forms are wanting and finally no traces of organic remains from the most ancient periods are preserved.

Only the ultimate twigs of the enormously ramified ancestral tree are accessible to us in sufficient number. Only the extreme points of the twigs are completely preserved; while of the numerous ramifications of the branches only the existence of a stump here and there has been demonstrated. Hence it appears quite impossible, in the present state of our knowledge, to attain to a sufficiently sure representation of this natural genealogical tree of organisms; and while we admire the bold speculations of E. Haeckel's genealogical attempts, it must be admitted that at present there is room for innumerable possibilities in detail, and that subjective judgment holds a more conspicuous place than objective certainty of fact. Hence we must be contented for the present with an incomplete and more or less artificial arrangement; although the *conception of the natural system theoretically* is established.

When the fundamental arguments of the Darwinian theory of selection and the transmutation theory founded upon it are submitted to criticism, it is soon apparent that direct proof by investigation is now, and perhaps always will be, impossible; for the theory is founded upon postulates which cannot be submitted to direct inquiry. Periods of time which cannot be brought within the limits of human observation are required for the alteration of forms under natural conditions of life; and the extremely complicated interactions, which in the natural state under the form of natural selection are tending to change plants and animals, can only be grasped in a general sense, while in their details they are practically unknown to us.

Further, plants and animals which are under the influence of natural selection are entirely inaccessible to the experiments of man, and the relatively few forms which man has, in a greater or less space of time, brought completely within his power, have been and are being altered and modified by the so-called *artificial* selection. The action of the *natural* selection, in Darwin's sense, is therefore in general incapable of direct proof, and even for the origin of varieties can only be illustrated and rendered probable by hypothetical examples. Against this we must, however, set the fact that there is a great probability in favour of the correctness of the theories of descent and transmutation of species, which have never received better support than from the natural selection theory of Darwin; and that this probability is supported, not only by the whole weight of morphological evidence, but also by the testimony of Palæontology and of geographical distribution.

## EVIDENCE IN FAVOUR OF THE THEORY OF DESCENT.

If the transmutation of species is to be regarded as an hypothesis, because it is incapable of being demonstrated by direct observation, then its value depends upon its correspondence with the facts and phenomena of nature.

**Evidence from Morphology.**—The *whole of Morphology* tends to show the correctness of the theory of transmutation of species. The degrees of resemblance between species which was for a long time expressed by the metaphorical term "*relationship*," and which rested upon an agreement in more or less important characteristics, led to the establishment of systematic groups, of which the highest, the kingdom or type, was founded upon a similarity in the most general features of organization and development. The agreement of numerous animals in the general plan of their organization, *e.g.*, the common possession by fishes, reptiles, birds, and mammals of a rigid column forming the axis of the body, and the dorsal position in regard to this of the central nervous system and the ventral position of the organs of nourishment and reproduction, are very well explained, according to the theories of selection and descent, by the derivation of all Vertebrates from a common ancestor possessing the characteristics of the type, while the supposition of a plan of the Creator renounces all explanation. In like manner is explained that similarity of characteristics by which the remaining groups and sub-groups, from class to genus, are distinguished, as well as the possibility of dividing all organized beings into groups subordinated the one to the other.

The impossibility of a sharply defined classification is also rendered comprehensible by the theory of descent. The theory requires the existence of forms transitional between intimately and remotely allied groups; and explains, as a result of the disappearance, in course of time, of numerous types which have been worsted in the struggle for existence, the fact that groups of equal value are of such various extent, and are often only represented by single forms.

It is not only systematic characters, but also the innumerable facts brought to light by the science of Comparative Anatomy which point to a nearer or more remote relationship between the different groups. For example, if we examine the structure of the extremities or the brain of Vertebrates, we find, in spite of considerable differences (sometimes bridged over by intermediate forms) in the various groups, that in all they are built upon a common type of structure. This type is found very variously modified and more or less differentiated in each secondary group, according to the different functions which the organ has to fulfil and according to the exigencies of the mode of life to which each species is subjected. In the fin of the whale, in the wing of the bird, in the anterior limb of the quadruped, and in the human arm it can be shown that there are present the same bones, here short and broad and immoveably connected, there elongated and jointed in different ways to allow of corresponding movements, sometimes with every part fully developed, sometimes simplified in one way or another, and partly or entirely rudimentary.

**Evidence from the facts of Dimorphism and Polymorphism.**—The phenomena of dimorphism and polymorphism in the same species, and the sexual differences which have been developed in animals originally hermaphrodite, may be quoted as important evidence of the extensive influence of adaptation.

Male and female forms differ not only in the fact that the former produce spermatozoa and the latter ova, but they exhibit numerous secondary sexual characteristics connected with the different functions which the male and female respectively have to perform. The existence of these secondary characteristics can in all cases be satisfactorily explained by means of natural selection. We may therefore, in a certain sense, speak of a sexual selection* by means of which the two sexes have been, in course of time, gradually separated from one another, not only in peculiarities of form and organiza-

* Ch. Darwin, "The Descent of Man, and Selection in Relation to Sex," Vol. I. and II. London 1871.

tion, but also in habits of life, in such a way as to favour the preservation of the race. Since the male sex generally has to take a more active part in the acts of copulation and fertilization it is comprehensible that the male form should differ more from the young than the female which supplies material for the formation and nourishment of the embryo and is charged with the care of the progeny. Very frequently the male sex is capable of quicker and more facile movements; in many Insects the male alone has the power of flight, while the female remains without wings (fig. 97). In the strife which the males of similar species have to wage for the possession of the females, those individuals which are most favoured by their organization (in respect of strength, capability for motion, prehensile organs, beauty, organs for production of sound, etc.) will prove the conquerors; while those females which possess properties especially favourable to the prosperity of the offspring will best fulfil their task.

At the same time variations in the duration of development, in the mode of growth and structure, may in a more passive way be favourable under the special conditions of life of the species. The secondary *sexual characters* may sometimes acquire such importance as to lead to essential and deeply engrained modification of the organism, and to a true sexual dimorphism (males of *Rotifera* with no digestive tube, dwarfed males of *Bonellia*, *Trichosomum crassicauda*).

It is a significant fact that dimorphism of sex reaches its highest extreme in parasites. In many parasitic Crustacea (*Siphonostoma*) such extreme cases, in which the large shapeless females have lost the organs of sense and locomotion, and even segmentation, while the males are small and dwarfed, are connected by numerous intermediate forms; and the circumstances which have operated as the cause of this sexual dimorphism are not far to seek. The influence of favourable conditions of nourishment which parasites enjoy does away with the necessity of rapid and frequent locomotion, increases in the female the capacity of producing reproductive material, and brings about such an alteration of form that the power of locomotion is diminished and the organs of movement atrophy and may completely vanish. The body acquires an unwieldy, shapeless character in consequence of the enormous size of the ovary which is filled with eggs, and throws out outgrowths and processes into which the ovaries project, or else acquires an unsymmetrical saclike form. The segmentation is lost and the limbs degenerate; the slender moveable abdomen which, when the animal was free-swimming, was an essential aid to locomotion, is reduced more and more till it becomes a short, unsegmented stump. The appearance of such a parasite is so strange that one can easily comprehend how it was that formerly one of these abnormal groups, the *Lernææ*, was placed among the endoparasitic Worms, or even among the Mollusca.

The more the female remains behind the type of its fully-developed, free-living allies, so much the more do the two sexes become morphologically remote from one another, for the form and organization of the male also are affected by the changed conditions of life, but in a different manner.* In the male sex the more favourable and abundant nourishment may not affect the necessity of locomotion and the development of the locomotive organs in so direct a manner, since the sexual activity of the male and the necessity for locomotion in order to select a female remain unaltered. Even when locomotion is reduced and rendered difficult, parasitism does not, in the case of the male, lead either to a complete loss of segmentation or to such unsymmetrical growths as we observe in many female parasitic Crustacea. The large quantity of generative material produced, which in the female is of the greatest importance for the preservation of the species, and which therefore favours the development of a large, shapeless, unwieldy body, is the less conspicuous in the male because a very small quantity of sperm serves for the fertilization of an enormous number of ova.

Thus, then, the extreme degree of parasitism in the male, even when accompanied by a confined and more creeping mode of locomotion, does not lead to an excessive increase in size nor produce an unsegmented and strange form of body, but, on the contrary, gives rise to the symmetrically formed, dwarfed pigmæan males. This extreme state is, however, connected with the normal state by numerous intermediate steps. Thus we find in the Lernæopods that the size of the male *Actheres* is only slightly reduced, while the true dwarfed males of the *Lernæopoda* and *Chondracanthidæ* are attached, like small parasites (fig. 98), to the posterior end of the female body, which is relatively enormously large. The preparation of a large amount of sperm which implies the possession of a large body, would only be a useless expenditure of material and time in the life of the species, and this must have been avoided by the influence of natural selection.

In addition to this sexual dimorphism we find in various groups of animals—especially in the insects which live together in great

* Compare C. Claus, "Die freilebenden Copepoden." 1863.

societies, the so-called animal communities—a third group of individuals (sometimes even divided into several series of forms) which are without generative organs and are incapable of reproduction, but which assume the functions of protecting, of providing nourishment for the community, and of caring for the young. Adaptive peculiarities suitable for the discharge of these functions are apparent in their structure and organization. These sterile individuals are in the *Hymenoptera* aborted females. Among the ants they are divided into workers and soldiers. Amongst the *Termites* they are derived from both males and females, in which the generative organs are reduced. Sterile individuals are also found amongst animals (Fishes) which do not form communities, and were formerly taken for particular species and described as such. Polymorphism is most highly developed in the Hydroids which are united in stocks—the *Siphonophora*.

The numerous cases of dimorphism and polymorphism in either sex of the same species, should be regarded from the same point of view. Dimorphic females among insects have been observed, *e.g.*, in the Malayan *Papilionidæ* (*P. Memnon, Pamnon, Ormenus*), in certain species of *Hydroporus* and *Dytiscus*, as also in the *Neurotemis*, a genus of the *Neuroptera*. In these cases, as a rule, one of the female forms is more nearly related in form and colour to the male orm whose peculiarities it has assumed. In other cases the differences are more connected with climate and season (seasonal dimorphism of butterflies), and also affect the male animal. They may be connected with the different forms of reproduction (parthenogenesis), and lead to the phenomenon of heterogamy (*Chermes Phylloxera, Aphis*). Much more rarely we find two kinds of males with dissimilar secondary sexual characters connected with copulation, as in the case of the "smellers" and "claspers"* described by Fritz Müller in the Isopoda (*Tanais dubius*).

**Evidence from Mimicry.**—Another series of phenomena which may probably be referred to useful adaptation is the so-called *mimicry*. Certain animal forms come to resemble other widely-distributed species, which are protected by any peculiarity of form and colour, so closely that they seem to have copied them. The cases of mimicry which have been principally made known by Bates and Wallace are directly connected with the protective resemblances mentioned above; that is, the resemblance of many animals in colour and body shape to the objects amongst which they

* Fritz Müller, "Facts for Darwin," p. 22.

live. For example, amongst the butterflies certain *Leptalidæ* resemble in outward appearance and in mode of flight a species of the family *Heliconius* (fig. 116), which appears to be protected from the pursuit of birds and lizards by a yellow disagreeable-smelling fluid, and share the same locality with the above-mentioned species. The most perfect instances of mimicry are found in the Tropics of the Old World, where the *Danaidæ* and *Acræidæ* are imitated by the Papilionidæ (*Danais niavius, Papilio hippocoon—Danais echeria, Papilio cenea—Acræa gea, Panopæa hirce*). Cases of mimicry frequently occur between insects of different orders; butterflies imitate the form of Hymenoptera, which are protected by the possession of spines (*Sesia bombyliformis—Bombus hortorum*, etc.) In the same way certain beetles resemble bees and wasps (*Charis melipona, Odontocera odyneroides*), and the Orthopteran genus *Condylodera tricondyloides* from the Philippines is like a genus of *Cicindelæ* (*Tricondyla*). Numerous Diptera have the form and colour of stinging *Sphegidæ* and Wasps. Also among Vertebrates (Serpents and Birds) some examples of mimicry are known.

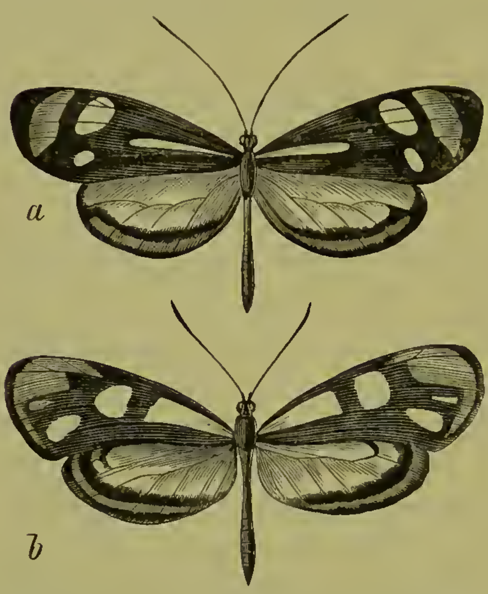



FIG. 116.—*a*, *Leptalis Theonoë*, var. *Leuconoë* (Pieris). *b*, *Ithomia Ilerdina* (the mimicked Heliconius). (After Bates.)

**Evidence from Rudimentary Organs.**—*Rudimentary* organs, too, which are so common, are satisfactorily explained by the theory of selection as the result of non-employment of such organs. Organs which were formerly functional have gradually or even suddenly become functionless as a result of adaptation to special conditions of life, and, through want of exercise, have, after the lapse of generations, become weaker and finally aborted or degraded (Parasites). We cannot, however, assert that rudimentary organs are in all cases useless. They have, on the contrary, often gained secondary functions, though this may be difficult to demonstrate.

We find, for instance, in certain snakes (*Pythonidæ*) that there are small processes armed with claws at the sides of the anus (*anal *claws*). These are the hind limbs which have become rudimentary, and which do not subserve locomotion but, in the male at least, assist in *copulation*. The blind worms possess a rudimentary shoulder girdle and breast bone, although the anterior extremities are wanting: these bones may be connected with the need of protecting the heart, or may aid in respiration. When we see that the upper incisor teeth are developed in the fœtus of many ruminants, and that these teeth are never cut, and that the embryos of the whalebone whales have the rudiments of teeth in their jaws, which they soon lose and never make use of in mastication, it is much more rational to ascribe to these structures a part in the growth of the jaw than to hold them for wholly useless. The rudimentary wings of the penguin are employed as oars, those of the ostrich as aids to running and as weapons for protection. The rudimentary stumps of the kiwi, on the contrary, appear valueless. In many cases we are not in a position to assign any function or value to rudimentary organs.

**Evidence from Embryology.**—The results of *embryology* too, *i.e.*, the *individual* development from the ovum to the fully developed form, are in complete agreement with the Darwinian theories of *selection* and *descent*. The fact that the animals belonging to one type have, as a rule, embryos which are much alike and undergo a similar developmental process, and that the closer the relationship between the adult forms the greater the similarity in their development (with some remarkable exceptions), supports the conception of a common ancestry and the hypothesis of differing gradations of blood-relationship.

If the groups of different value which correspond to the divisions and subdivisions of our classification are genetically derived from more or less remote ancestral forms, then the individual development will present so many the more common features the closer the forms stand to their common ancestor.

The fact that animals which differ much from one another and exist under very different conditions of life show an unusual agreement in their post-embryonic development up to a more or less late period (the free Copepoda, parasitic Crustacea, Cirripedia), is in no wise opposed to the theory, but may be explained by the influence which adaptation has exerted not only during the period of sexual life, but also during each developmental period, causing changes which have been inherited in corresponding periods of life.

The phenomena of metamorphosis afford numerous proofs of the fact that the adaptation of the embryonic form is as complete as that of the adult; and we can thus understand how larvæ of many insects belonging to different orders can present great resemblances to one another and be unlike the larvæ of insects of the same order. While as a general rule the development of the individual is an advance from a simpler and lower organization to one more complex which has become more perfect by a continued division of labour among its parts—and we shall later find a parallel to this law of perfection of the individual in the great law of progressive perfection in the development of groups—yet the course of development may, in particular cases, lead to numerous retrogressions, so that we may find the adult animal to be of lower organization than the larva. This phenomenon, which is known as *retrogressive metamorphosis* (*Cirripedia* and *parasitic Crustacea*), corresponds to the demands of the selection theory, since under more simple conditions of life, where nourishment is more easily obtained (parasitism), degradation and even the loss of parts may be of advantage to the organism.

Again, the facts of embryonic development, when considered in relation to the gradations expressed in the system are in complete accord with the theory of evolution. Numerous examples may be cited to prove that features, not only of the simple and more primitive, but also of the more perfectly organised groups of the same type, are reflected in the successive phases of fœtal life. In the case of a complicated free development by metamorphosis, which is usually correlated with an unusual simplification of the fœtal development within the egg-membranes, the relation of the successive larval stages to the allied smaller groups of the system, to the genera, families and orders, is more direct and striking. For example, in the early stages of the embryonic development of mammals certain structures occur, which in the lower fishes endure throughout life. Later stages show peculiarities which correspond to the characters of amphibia. The metamorphosis of the frog begins with a stage which in form and organization and mode of locomotion agrees with the fish type; and this stage is succeeded by numerous other larval stages in which the characters of the other orders of Amphibia (Perennibranchiata, Salamandrinidæ) and of individual families and genera of the same are repeated.

This undeniable likeness between the successive stages of individual development and between allied groups of the system allows us to institute a parallel between the former and the evolution of the species. The evolution of the species finds, it is true, a most imperfect expression in the relationship of the systematic groups, and can only be inferred from the history of the past for which palæontology affords us but slight material.

This parallel, which naturally presents numerous greater or smaller variations in detail, is explained by the theory of evolution, according to which *the developmental history of the individual appears to be a short and simplified repetition, or in a certain sense a recapitulation, of the course of development of the species.**

The historical record preserved in the developmental history of the individual must often be more or less blurred and obscure on account of the many adaptations which have occurred during the embryonic development, or during larval life. Especially in those cases where the peculiar conditions of the struggle for existence demand a simplification, the development will take a more direct course from the ovum to the perfect animal, will be thrown back into an earlier period of life, and finally will be completed before the animal is hatched, until, in absence of a metamorphosis, the historical record is completely suppressed. On the contrary, in the cases of progressive transformation where the larval states are gradually modified and live under similar conditions of life, the history of the species will be less imperfectly reproduced in that of the individual.

**Evidence from the Facts of Geographical Distribution.**—Unlike the facts of morphology, those of *geographical distribution* raise great difficulties for the theory principally because the phenomena are very complicated and our experiences are still too limited to permit of our establishing general laws. The present distribution of plants and animals over the surface of the earth is clearly the combined result of the earlier distribution of their ancestors and of the geological changes which have since taken place, the modifications in the extent and position of land and water, which must have had an influence on the fauna and flora.

Accordingly the geographical distribution of plants and animals† appears intimately connected with that part of geology which has for its aim the investigation of the most recent occurrences in the formation of the earth's crust and its contents. It cannot, therefore, be confined to an examination of the areas of distribution of the animals and plants of the present day, but must take cognizance of the distribution of the remains, enclosed in the most recent formations, of the nearest relations and ancestors of living forms, in

* Fr. Müller, "Für Darwin," Leipzig, 1864.

† A. R. Wallace, "The Geographical Distribution of Animals," London, 1876. P. L. Sclater, "Address to the Biological Section of the Brit. Association," 1875.

order to find an historical explanation of the known facts of distribution. Although in this sense the science of animal geography is still in its infancy, yet numerous and important phenomena of geographical distribution receive a satisfactory explanation according to the theory of transmutation of species on the supposition of migrations and gradual changes brought about by natural selection.

It is a most important fact that neither the resemblance nor the want of resemblance of the animals inhabiting different localities can be completely explained as the result of climatic and physical conditions. Closely allied species of plants and animals often appear under very different natural conditions, while a completely different fauna and flora can exist in a similar climate and on a similar soil. On the other hand, the extent of the difference between two fauna is closely connected with the limitations of space and the barriers and hindrances to free migration. The Old and New Worlds, which, leaving out of consideration the polar connection, are completely separated, have in part a very different fauna and flora, although with regard to the climatic and physical conditions of existence there are innumerable parallels which would equally favour the prosperity of the same species.

In particular if we compare the districts of South America with regions situated in the same latitude and possessing the same climate in South Africa and Australia, we find three fauna and flora which differ considerably, while the natural productions from different latitudes of South America with entirely different climates are closely allied. Here the northern animals are indeed specifically different from the southern, but belong to similar or nearly allied genera with the peculiar stamp characteristic of South America.

**Zoological Provinces.**—The surface of the earth can be divided into from six to eight regions according to the general features of the terrestrial and fresh-water fauna. These regions can indeed only be considered as a relative expression for large natural districts of distribution, since they cannot be applied to all groups of animals in the same manner, and it is impossible that they should differ in like degree and in the same direction. There must also be intermediate regions combining the characteristics of the neighbouring regions with peculiarities of their own; and the question must arise whether these should not be taken as independent regions.

The merit of having first established a natural division of the earth into zoological regions and sub-regions belongs to Sclater. This naturalist founded his system on the distribution of birds, and distinguished six regions, the limits of which agreed fairly well with the distribution of Mammalia and Reptilia. These regions are—

(1) *The Palæarctic Region*—Europe, the temperate part of Asia, and North Africa as far as Mount Atlas.

(2) *Nearctic Region*—Greenland and North America as far as North Mexico.

(3) *The Ethiopian Region*—Africa, south of Atlas, Madagascar, and the Mascarenes with South Arabia.

(4) *The Indian Region*—India south of the Himalayas, to South China, Borneo and Java.

(5) *The Australian Region*—Celebes and Lombok eastward to Australia, and the South Sea Islands.

(6) *The Neotropical Region*—South America, the Antilles, and South Mexico.

Other naturalists (Huxley) have since shown that the four first of these regions have a much greater resemblance to one another than any one of them has to the Australian or South American regions; that New Zealand is entitled by the peculiarities of its fauna to be considered as forming a region by itself; finally, that a circumpolar* province should be formed equal in value to the Palæarctic and Nearctic.

Wallace objects to the establishment either of a *New Zealand* or of a *circumpolar region*, and advocates the adoption of the six regions of Sclater on practical grounds, but suggests the modification that since the South American and Australian are much more isolated, the regions should not be of equal value.

These regions are bounded by extended seas, lofty mountain ranges, or vast sandy deserts, and obviously such boundaries do not constitute effective barriers to the migration of all animals, but allow certain groups to pass from one region to another.

The obstacles to immigration and emigration appear in certain places, at all events in the present time, to be insurmountable;

* Andrew Murray, on the contrary, in his work on the geographical distribution of Mammalia in 1866, distinguishes only four divisions—the Palæarctic, Indo-African, the Australian, and the American. Rütimeyer recognises in addition to the six provinces of Sclater a Mediterranean and Circumpolar province. J. A. Allen ("Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, Cambridge," vol. ii.) proposes to distinguish eight regions, in connection with "the law of circumpolar distribution of life in zones:"—(1) Arctic realm; (2) North Temperate realm; (3) Tropical American realm; (4) Indo-African Tropical realm; (5) Tropical South American realm; (6) Temperate African realm; (7) Antarctic realm; (8) Australian realm.

but in past ages, when the divisions of land and water were different, they must have been, for many forms of life, easily surmountable. The expression "centre of creation," which has long been used in the sense of a tolerably defined district of distribution—or better still, Rütimeyer's word, "centre of distribution" —has as a fundamental idea the endemic appearance of definite groups of typical species and their gradual extension * towards the boundaries of the said region, a conception which harmonizes well with the theory of the origin of species through gradual alterations.

The same laws apply also to the distribution of the inhabitants of the sea. Great seas studded with islands which serve to confine the land animals may favour the migration of marine species, while extended continents, which allow their inhabitants to wander freely over them, confine the sea animals within limits which cannot be passed. A great number of sea animals live only in the shallow water round the coast, and their distribution thus often coincides with that of the land animals; whereas the animals found on the opposite coasts of great continents are very different. For example, the sea animals of the east and west coasts of South and Central America differ to such a degree that, with the exception of a series of fishes, which, according to Günther, are found on both sides of the *Isthmus of Panama*, only a few forms are common to the two coasts. In the same way we find that the marine inhabitants of the east insular district of the Pacific differ completely from those of the west coast of South America. If, however, we advance to the west of this part of the Pacific till we come to the coast of Africa in the other hemisphere, we find that the fauna of this extensive district cannot be so sharply distinguished. Many species of fish are found from the Pacific to the Indian Ocean. Numerous Mollusca of the South Sea Islands live also on the east coast of Africa, almost beneath the opposite meridian. In this case the limits of distribution are not impassable, as numerous islands and coasts afford a resting place to wandering inhabitants of the sea. In respect of the different haunts of the inhabitants of the sea, we must make a distinction between the *littoral* animals, which are distributed along the coasts, and live under different conditions and at different depths on the bottom of the sea, and the *pelagic* animals, which swim on the surface.

* Compare Rütimeyer's Essay, "Ueber die Herkunft unserer Thierwelt." Basel and Genf, 1867.

But there also exists, at considerable depths and on the bottom of the sea, a rich and varied animal life. This has only lately been brought to our knowledge principally by the deep-sea explorations from North America, Scandinavia, and England. In place of that want of animal life which we should on *à priori* grounds expect to find, we see that numerous lowly organised animals of the most different groups are able to exist even at the greatest depths. Besides the lowest sarcode animals of the Foraminifera (Globigerina ooze), we find especially silicious sponges, certain corals, *Echinoderms,* and *Crustacea.** The representatives of the latter are in part of low type, but gigantic, and many of them blind. It is also a fact of more than ordinary interest, as showing the continuity of living creatures from successive geological formations up to the present time, that the deep sea animals are allied to ancient types which occur in Mesozoic formations, especially in chalk.

**Evidence from Palæontology.**—The results of *geological* and *palæontological* inquiry give us a third great series of facts in support of the theory of slow alterations of species and the gradual development of genera, families, orders, etc. The firm crust of our earth is formed of numerous and enormous rock strata, which have been deposited in a definite series by water in course of time, and also of the so-called volcanic or plutonic rocks, masses which have been forcibly ejected from the molten interior of the earth. The former or sedimentary deposits, which have undergone numerous alterations in the originally horizontal arrangement of their strata as well as in the petrographical condition of their rocks, contain a quantity of the fossilized remains of former plants and animals which have become buried in them, and thus afford an historical record of a rich fauna and flora which existed during the earlier periods of the earth's development. Although these so-called fossils have made us acquainted with a very considerable number of ancient organisms presenting great diversity of form, yet they only constitute a very small portion of the enormous quantity of living beings which have at all times existed upon the earth. They suffice, however, to teach us that a different fauna and flora existed at the time when each individual deposit was being formed, and that

* Compare Wyville Thomson, "The depths of the sea. An account of the general results of the dredging cruizes of the *Porcupine* and *Lightning*, during the summer months of 1868, 1869, 1870." London, 1873. Also the results of the *Challenger* expedition 1874-1876.

the deeper a stratum comes in the series, that is, the earlier it appears in the history of the earth, so much the more its fauna and flora differ from those of the present time. The more nearly one stratum follows another in the series, the closer the relationship between their respective fossils. Every sedimentary formation possesses characteristic fossils which appear very frequently; and from these, taking into account the succession of strata and the petrographic characters of the rocks, the place occupied by the stratum in the geological system can be defined with tolerable accuracy.

Without doubt the characters of the fossils and the relative positions of the strata are the most important aids to the determination of the geological age of the deposit; at any rate they furnish a more reliable criterion than does the structure of the rocks. The idea entertained in earlier times that rocks of the same period always possessed a similar, and rocks of a different period a dissimilar structure, has lately been given up as erroneous. Stratified or sedimentary deposits have arisen in every period under similar conditions. In past times, as at the present time, they were caused by the deposition of clay, of fine or coarse sand, of fine and coarse *débris*, by chemical precipitation of carbonates and sulphates of lime and magnesia, of silica and oxide of iron, and by accumulation of solid animal and vegetable remains. These have become transformed only in course of time into such hard rocks as argillaceous and calcareous schists, limestone, sandstone, dolomite, and conglomerates of many kinds; as the result of many causes, such as mechanical pressure of superincumbent masses, increase of temperature, internal chemical processes, and so forth.

Even though the peculiar structure of rocks may in many cases afford good ground for conjecture as to the relative age, yet it is certain that deposits of similar age may show an entirely different petrographical character; and, on the other hand, that deposits of very different ages may have given rise to rock formations that can be scarcely or not at all distinguished from one another.

The old idea that deposits of the same age must everywhere contain the same fossils, could only be maintained as long as geological investigations were confined to small districts. Similarly the idea, closely connected with the former, that the various geological formations, characterised by a series of definite strata, are entirely independent of one another, no longer obtains credit. The various formations,* as the group of strata of one district of distribution and belonging to one period are named, cannot be divided petrographically or

* The following table may serve for a bird's-eye view of the geological periods and their most important formations :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| QUARTIARY PERIOD (*Diluvial and Alluvial Formations*). | *Recent Periods* | (alluvium, marine and fresh-water formations). |
| | *Postpliocene* or *Diluvial Period* | (erratic boulders, glacial period). |
| TERTIARY PERIOD (*Cainozoic Formations*). | *Pliocene Period* | (subappenine formations, bone sand of Eppelsheim, etc.) |
| | *Miocene Period* | (Molasse, Tegel near Vienna, brown coal in North Germany, etc). |
| | *Eocene Period* | Flysch, Nummulite formation of the Paris basin. |
| SECONDARY PERIOD (*Mesozoic Formation*). | *Cretaceous Period* | Maestricht strata, white chalk, upper green sand, Gault, lower green sand, Weald. |
| | *Jurassic Period* | Purbeck strata, Portland stone, Kimmeridge clay, Coral Rag, Oxford clay, Great oolite, Lower oolite, Lias (white, brown, and black jura). |
| SECONDARY PERIOD (*Mesozoic Formations*). | *Triassic Period* | Keuper or upper new red sandstone, Muschelkalk (upper Muschelkalk, gypsum and anhydrite, Wellenkalk, Bunter Sandstein). |
| | *Permian* | Zechstein, Rothliegendes.—lower new red sandstone. |
| PALÆOZOIC PERIOD (*Palæozoic Formations*). | *Carboniferous Period* | Coal Measures of England, Germany, and North America, Kulmformation, Carboniferous limestone. |
| | *Devonian Period* | (Spiriferenschiefer, Cypridinenschiefer, Stryngocephalenkalk, etc.—old red sandstone.) |
| | *Silurian Period* | (Ludlow, Wenlock, strata, etc.) |
| | *Cambrian Period* | (slate, etc.) |
| ARCHÆAN PERIOD | | Thonschiefer, Laurentian formations. Mica schist, Older Gneiss formations. |

According to Professor Ramsay the groups of formations in England have a thickness of 72,584 feet, *i.e.*, about $13\frac{3}{4}$ English miles ; that is, formations of the—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Palæozoic period have a thickness of | 57,154 | | |
| Secondary ,, ,, | 13,190 | | 72,584 feet |
| Tertiary ,, ,, | 2,240 | | |

palæontologically from each other in such a manner as to lend support to the hypothesis of sudden and mighty revolutions and catastrophes destroying the whole living world. We may rather assert with certainty, that the extinction of old species and the appearance of new ones has not taken place at the same time at all points of the surface of the earth, for many species extend from one formation into another, and a number of organisms persist from the tertiary period to the present time, but little altered or even identical. Just as the commencement of the recent epoch is hard to define, and cannot be sharply separated from the diluvial period by the character either of its deposits or of its fossils, so it is with the remoter periods of the earth's history, which are founded, like periods of human history, upon great and important occurrences, and yet are in direct continuity.

Lyell has proved in a convincing way on geological grounds that there were not sudden revolutions extending over the whole surface of the earth, but that changes took place slowly, and were confined* to separate localities; in other words, that the past history of the earth consists essentially of a gradual process of development, in which the numerous forces which may be observed in action at the present day have, by their long continued operation, had an enormous total effect in transforming the earth's surface.

The reason for the irregular development of strata and for the limitations of formations is principally to be sought in the interruption of depositions, which, though widely distributed, were only of local importance. Were it possible that a single basin of the sea should have persisted during the whole period of sedimentary formation and under singularly favourable circumstances have formed new deposits in persistent continuity, then we should find a progressive series of strata interrupted by no gaps, which we should be unable to classify according to formations. Such an ideal basin would include only a single formation, in which we should find representatives of all the other formations of the surface of the earth.

* "Every sedimentary formation was extended at the time of deposition over a confined territory,—confined on the one hand by the extent of the sea or fresh-water basin, and on the other by the different conditions favourable to the deposition inside the basin. At the same time, in other places entirely or at any rate somewhat differently stratified formations (*i.e.*, formations of the same age, but of different composition) resulted. Thus marine, fresh-water, and swamp formations have been deposited at the same time from different rocks and with different fossils, while the land surface has remained free." Comp. B. Cotta. "Die Geologie der Gegenwart."

In reality this ideal continuous series of strata is interrupted by numerous and often large gaps, which determine the petrographical and palæontological differences, often strongly marked, between successive strata, and correspond to periods of inactivity, or, as may happen, to periods when the results of sedimentary action have been again destroyed. These interruptions of local deposits are explained by the constant alterations of level which the surface of the earth has undergone in every period in consequence of the reaction of the molten contents of the earth against its firm crust.

As we see in the present time that wide tracts of country are gradually sinking (west coast of Greenland, coral islands), while others are being slowly elevated (west coast of South America, Sweden); that strips of coast line are suddenly submerged beneath the sea by subterranean forces, and that islands as suddenly appear; so it was in earlier periods. Elevation and depression were at work, perhaps uninterruptedly, causing a gradual, more rarely a sudden (and then locally confined) interchange between land and sea. Basins of the sea rising with gradual movement became dry land and rose up first as islands, and afterwards as connected continents, the different deposits of which, with their included fossils, bear witness of the sea which once covered them. On the other hand, great continents sank beneath the sea, leaving perhaps their highest mountain peaks appearing as islands, and again became the seat of fresh deposition of strata. In the first case there would be an interruption of deposit, while in the latter there would result, after a longer or shorter period of inactivity, the beginning of a new formation. Since, however, elevations and depressions, even though affecting districts of great extent, must always be locally confined, the commencement and interruption of formations of equal age have not taken place everywhere at the same time. Deposits continued a long time on one tract after they had ceased on another; hence the upper and lower boundary of equivalent formations may show great want of uniformity, according to the different locality. This explains how it is that formations lying one above the other are composed of strata of very variable thickness, and why we can only in rare cases supply the gaps in the series of these strata from strata found in other countries. The whole succession of formations known to us up to the present time is not sufficiently complete to form an entire and uninterrupted series of the sedimentary formations. There are still numerous and important gaps in the geological record which we may expect to see filled in future days, when knowledge has increased, and perhaps only when formations now beneath the sea have become known to us.

**Imperfection of the Geological Record.** After the foregoing discussion we may consider that the continuity of living organisms in the successive periods of the earth's development and their close relationship has been proved partly by geological and partly by palæontological facts. The theory of descent, however, according to which the natural system must be regarded as a genealogical tree, requires still further proof. It requires proof of the presence of numerous forms, transitional not only between the species now existing and those in the more recent formations, but also between the species in all those formations which have immediately succeeded one another in point of time. The theory also demands proof that forms connecting the different groups of plants and animals of the present day have existed. The establishment and limitation of these groups can, according to Darwin, only be explained by the extinction, in the course of the earth's history, of numerous and intimately connected species. Palæontology is only able imperfectly to comply with these demands; for the numerous closely graduated series of varieties which, according to the theory of selection, must have existed, are, for the greater number of forms, entirely wanting in the geological record.

This want, however, which Darwin himself recognised as an objection to his theory, loses its importance when we consider the circumstances under which organic remains were generally deposited in mud, and preserved for succeeding ages in a fossil form; when we recognise the facts which indicate the extraordinary incompleteness of the geological record, and which show that the intermediate forms must have been in part described as species.

First of all we can only expect to find in deposits the remains of those organisms which possessed a firm skeleton supporting the softer parts of the body, since it is only the harder structures of the body, such as the bones and teeth of Vertebrates, the calcareous and silicious shells of Molluscs and Rhizopods, the shells and spines of Echinoderms, the chitinous skeleton of Arthropods, etc., which are able to resist rapid decay, and to undergo gradual petrifaction. Thus the geological record will fail to provide us with any account of the numerous and principally low organisms which are not provided with firm skeletal structures.

But also among those organisms which are capable of becoming fossilized, there are large groups which have only exceptionally left traces of their existence: these are the animals which lived on land. Fossil remains of land animals can only have survived when, during great floods or inundations, or for some reason or other their carcasses have been carried away by the water, floated hither and thither, and been surrounded finally by hardening mud. This explains not only the relative scarcity of fossil Mammalia, but also the fact that of the most ancient Marsupials (Stonesfield slate), scarcely anything is preserved but the underjaw, which, as the body decayed, was easily detached, and, on account of its weight, offered most resistance to the current of the water, and was the first part to sink to the bottom. Although it has been shown by such remains that Mammalia existed in the Jurassic period, yet the Eocene forms are the first which give us an insight into the details of their structure.

Circumstances must have been more favourable to the preservation of fresh-water animals, and most of all to that of marine animals, since the marine deposits have a much greater extent than the locally confined fresh-water deposits. Thick formations seem in general to have arisen under one of two conditions: either in a very deep sea, protected from the operation of winds and waves, no matter whether the bottom was gradually rising or sinking—in this case, however, the strata would be relatively poor in fossils, since only the inhabitants of the deep sea, which is comparatively wanting in animal and vegetable life, would be preserved—or in a shallow sea, in which the bottom underwent a gradual and continued depression during long periods of time favourable to the development of a rich and varied fauna and flora. In this case the sea would have retained uninterruptedly its rich fauna so long as the gradual sinking of its bottom was counteracted by the continual supply of sediment deposited upon it. Thick formations, all or most of the strata of which are rich in fossils, must have been deposited on extended and very shallow regions of the sea, during a long period of gradual depression.

Thus the great gaps which occur in the series of palæontological remains are explained by a consideration of the mode of origin of deposits. These remains must necessarily be confined to the more recent formations. The lower, more ancient, and very thick successions of strata in which the remains of the oldest fauna and flora must have been buried, seem to have been so completely altered by the heat of the molten interior of the earth, that the organic residua which they contain have been completely destroyed, or so altered that they cannot be recognised.

In any case it may be regarded as certain, that only a small part of the extinct animal and vegetable world has been preserved in a fossil state, and that of this we only know a small part. Therefore we cannot conclude that, because the fossil remains of intermediate stages cannot be found, they have never existed.

If fossilized transitional forms are wanting in the strata where they should have occurred, or if a species suddenly appears in the middle of a series of strata and suddenly disappears, or if whole groups of species make their appearance and quickly vanish, the value of these facts as arguments against the theory of selection is diminished by the circumstance that in certain cases series of transitional forms between more or less remotely related organisms have been found, and that many species have been developed in course of time as links between other species and genera; and again, that species and groups of species not unfrequently increase very gradually till they attain an unusually wide distribution, extend into later formations, and then gradually disappear again. Such positive facts have a higher value when we consider the incompleteness of fossil remains.

It will suffice here to refer to the Ammonites and Gasteropods, such as *Valvata multiformis*, as examples supplied to us by Palæontology of transitional forms which can be arranged in a gradual series.

**Relation of Fossil Forms with Living Species.**—The close relationship of the plants and animals of the present time to the fossil remains of recent formations is a fact of great importance. In particular, we find in the diluvial period and in the different tertiary formations the ancestral forms from which numerous living species are directly descended; and further the characteristic features of the fauna of any particular geographical province in the present epoch are foreshadowed by the fauna of the epoch immediately preceding in the same region; a fact which is proved by the fossil remains we find buried in the most recent strata.

Many fossil Mammalia from the diluvial period and the most recent (pliocene) tertiary formations of South America belong to types of the order of *Edentata* which are now distributed in that part of the world. Sloths and Armadillos of immense size (*Megatherium*, *Megalonyx*, *Glyptodon*, *Toxodon*, etc.) formerly inhabited the same continent, the mammalian fauna of which in the present day is so specially characterised by its Sloths, Armadillos, and Anteaters. In addition to these gigantic forms, small and extinct species have been found in the bone caves of Brazil, and some of these are so nearly related to the living forms that we may assume them to have been their ancestors.

This law of the "*succession of similar types*" in the same localities is also exemplified by the Mammalia of New Holland; for in the bone caves of that country are found many species nearly allied to its present Carnivora. The same law holds good for the gigantic birds of New Zealand, and, as Owen and others have shown, for the Mammalia of the Old World, which, indeed, is continuous by the circumpolar region with North America; and ancient types were able, in the tertiary period, to pass into North America, and *vice versâ* by that way. The presence of Central American types (*Didelphys*) in the early and middle tertiary formations of Europe is to be explained in the same way. It is even more difficult to distinguish the regions of distribution of the animals of that time than of those of the later tertiary period.

The evolution of the ancient forms into those of the present time was effected in the case of lower, simply organised animals at a much earlier period than in the case of higher organisms. Rhizopods, indistinguishable from species living at the present time (*globigerina ooze*) were already living in the Cretaceous period. The deep sea explorations * have accordingly yielded the interesting result, that certain Sponges, Corals, Molluscs, and Echinoderms now living in the deep sea existed in the Cretaceous period. We meet with a number of living species of Molluscs in the oldest tertiary period, though the mammalian fauna of this period differs completely from that of the present day. The greater number of species of Molluscs found in the recent tertiary period resemble those of the present day, but the Insects of that formation differ considerably from living species.

On the other hand, the Mammalia, even in the post-pliocene (diluvial) deposits, differ in part both in genera and species from those of the present day, although a number of forms have been preserved through the glacial period. On this account, and on account of the relative completeness of the tertiary remains, it is

* (*Rhizocrinus Lofotensis*—*Apiocrinites*, *Pleurotomaria*, *Siphonia*, *Micraster*, *Pomocaris*, etc.) Types of earlier and even of the older geological formations have been found preserved in the depths of the ocean, which, in spite of the great pressure, the want of light and deficiency in gaseous contents of the water, are more suited to the development of animal life than was formerly believed.

especially interesting to trace the recent mammalian fauna back through the pleistocene forms to the forms of the oldest tertiary period. It is possible to trace the ancestry of a number of mammalian species. Rütimeyer was the first to undertake to trace out the ancestral line of the *Ungulata*, and especially of the *Ruminantia*, so as to obtain a palæontological developmental history, and succeeded in obtaining results, by means of detailed geological and anatomical (deciduous teeth) comparison, which leave no room to doubt that whole series of species of existing mammalia are collaterally or directly related with each other and with fossil species. Rütimeyer's investigations have received corroboration in their essential points from the recent comprehensive works of W. Kowalevski, and have resulted in the establishment of a natural classification of the ungulate animals founded on phylogeny.

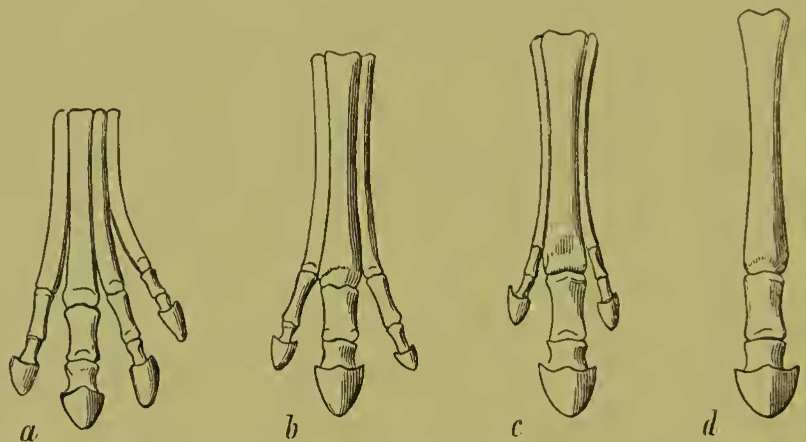



FIG. 117.—Bones of the feet of the different genera of the *Equidæ* (after Marsh). *a*, Foot of *Orohippus* (Eocene). *b*, Foot of *Anchitherium* (Lower Miocene). *c*, Foot of *Hipparion* (Pleiocene). *d*, Foot of the recent genus *Equus*.

In addition to these works we have the recent researches of Marsh, who has completed to an extraordinary degree our knowledge of the genealogy of the genus *Equus*, by numerous discoveries (fig. 117) in America (*Wyoming*, *Green River*, *White River*). The eocene *Orohippus*, in which the small posterior toes were present as well as the three principal toes which rested on the ground, was succeeded in the Lower Miocene formation by *Anchitherium* with three hoofs; and the latter was followed by the *Hipparion* of the Pleiocene formations; and this is the ancestral form of the existing genus *Equus*.

The origin of most orders of Mammalia, such as *Rodentia*, *Cheiroptera*, *Proboscidea*, *Cetacea*, *etc.*, cannot be clearly traced out, but for certain orders, as the *Prosimiæ*, *Carnivora*, *Ungulata*, and *Ro-*

*dentia*, remarkable transitional forms have been discovered among the remains of extinct types. These also appear most prominently among the tertiary remains of North America. In the Eocene period here (Wyoming) lived the *Tillodontia* with the genus *Tillotherium*,* characterized by having a broad skull like a bear, two broad incisor teeth like a rodent, and molar teeth like *Palæotherium*, and feet having five toes armed with strong claws. It thus united in its skeletal structure peculiarities of Carnivora and Ungulata. The *Dinocerata* (*Dinoceras laticeps mirabile*) were powerful Ungulates with five toed feet with six horns on their heads, without incisors in the præmaxillary bone, with strong sabre-like canine teeth in the upper jaw and with six molars.

A third type, that of the *Brontotheridæ* attained elephantine proportions, and was provided with transversely placed horns in front of the eyes. In addition to the foregoing there are a number of other groups of Mammals now completely extinct, the remains of which extend back into far earlier strata. Amongst them are the South American *Megatheridæ* (*Mylodon, Megatherium*), which belong to the order Edentata, and the *Toxodontia*, whose skull and dentition show relations to the Ungulates, Rodents, and Edentates. Many other types, however, especially of the Ungulates, which during the tertiary period inhabited both hemispheres, are now extinct in America, but still exist in the East. Elephants, Mastodonta, Rhinoceridæ, and Equidæ existed in America in the diluvial but not in recent periods. Of the Perissodactyles the group of Tapirs alone is preserved in America. This group has also been preserved in the Eastern hemisphere in the East Indian species.

In the palæarctic region also are found the remains of extinct intermediate groups of Mammals which existed during the tertiary period. In the Phosphorites of Quercy † in the south of France are found the remains of the skulls of Prosimiæ (*Adapis*), the dentition of which is intermediate between the ancient Ungulates and the Lemuridæ (*Pachylemuridæ*), so that the question may be raised whether the Prosimiæ had not a common ancestry with several

* Compare O. C. Marsh, "Principal Characters of the Tillodontia." *Amer. Journal of Science and Art*, Vol. xi., 1876.

O. C. Marsh, "Principal Characters of the Dinocerata." *Amer. Journal of Science and Art*, Vol. xi., 1876.

O. C. Marsh. "Principal Characters of the Brontotheridæ." *Amer. Journal of Science and Art*, Vol. xi., 1876.

† Compare H. Filhol, "Recherches sur les Phosphorites du Quercy, Étude des fossils qu'on y rencontre et spécialement des Mammifères." *Ann. Sciences géologiques*, Vol. vii., 1876.

eocene Ungulates (*Pachydermata*). In the same locality are found the well preserved remains of the bones of peculiar Carnivora which are well worthy of remark. These are the Hyænodonta. It was for a long time doubtful whether they were Marsupials or not, until Filhol showed from the reserve teeth of their permanent dentition that they were probably of the nature of placental Carnivora. The great agreement of the molars of these Hyænodonta with those of the carnivorous Marsupials, as well as the small size of the skull cavity and the relatively slight development of the brain, support the view, which is also rendered probable by many other circumstances, that placental Mammalia have developed from the Marsupials of the mesozoic period.

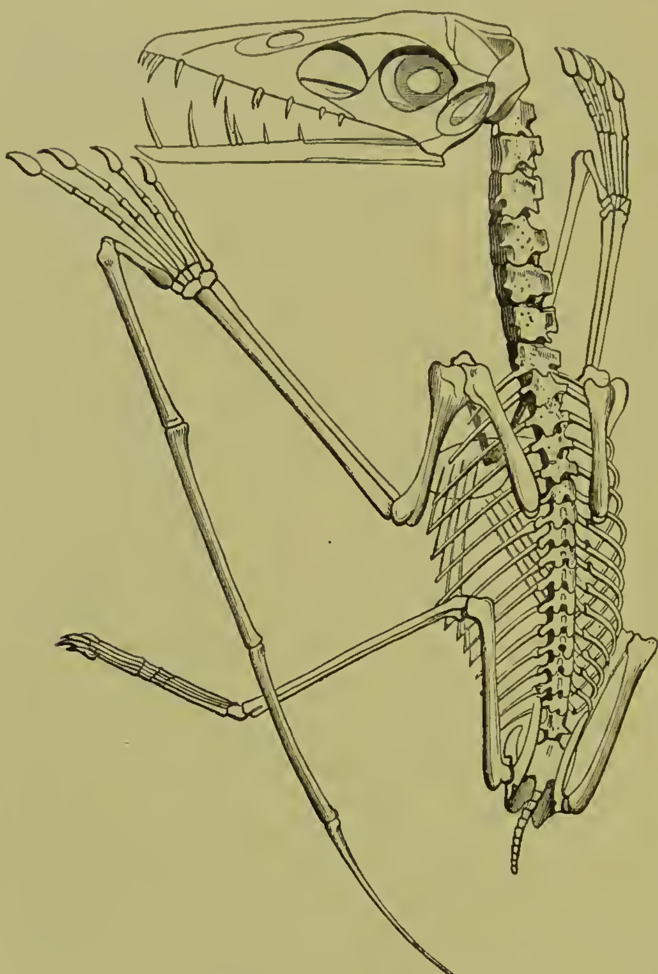


FIG. 118.—*Pterodactylus crassirostris* (after Goldfuss) about one-third natural size.

In the oldest strata of the Eocene formations in both hemispheres, the higher placental Mammalia already appear in a rich variety of forms, which contrast markedly with one another (*Artiodactyla*, *Perissodactyla*). There is, however, no ground for regarding the immeasurable period from the oldest Eocene to the Keuper, in which the oldest Mammalian remains (the teeth and bones of insectivorous Marsupials) have been found, as the period in which this higher development of the Mammalian organism has been effected.

In other cases also the science of palæontology has led to the discovery of intermediate forms between groups and even between classes and orders. The *Labyrinthodonta*, the most ancient of the Amphibia, found as early as the carboniferous period, present many piscine characters (*ventral exoskeleton*), and have a cartilaginous skeleton. Many fossil orders and sub-orders of Saurians (*Halosauridæ, Dinosauridæ, Pterodactylidæ* (fig. 118), *Thecodontidæ*) have not left a single representative in the present day; others again are transitional between recent orders. Such a relation has, for example, been recently shown between the "Pythonomorphous" lizards (related to the genus *Mosasaurus*) from the chalk in America, and serpents so far as the structure of the skull and jaw is concerned.

Owen's researches on the fossil Reptiles of the Cape have shown that certain Reptiles (*Theriodonta*) once lived there which showed a close resemblance to carnivorous Mammalia with regard to their dentition and the structure of their feet. The teeth of these animals, though only furnished with one root, can be divided into incisors, canine teeth, and molars, a fact which induces us to believe it possible that the dentition of the most ancient Marsupials hitherto known (Keuper) may be derived from that of a *Theriodon*-like Reptile.

Even as regards birds, a class so uniform in structure and so sharply defined, a form (*Archæopteryx lithographica*) (fig. 119) transitional between them and Reptile has been discovered in the Sohlenhofen slate, although the impression was not perfect. In this form the short tail of the bird is replaced by a long reptilian tail composed of numerous (20) vertebræ and provided with two rows of feathers (*Saururæ*). The articulation of the vertebral column and the structure of the pelvis indicated an affinity to the long-tailed Pterodactyls.

The discovery of a second and more perfect specimen of *Archæopteryx* has made known to us its dentition. It had sharp-pointed teeth wedged into the jaws. Other types of birds have also been found in the American chalk, which diverge more widely among themseves and from the Saurians than do the birds of any living order. These were defined as *Odontornithes* by Marsh,* and distinguished as a sub-class; they had teeth in the jaws, which latter were elongated to form a kind of beak. Some of them (Order *Ichthyornithes*) had bicœlous vertebræ, a crista sterni, and well

* O. C. Marsh, "On a new sub-class of fossil Birds (*Odontornithes*)." *American Journal of Science and Art*, Vol. v., 1873.

O. C. Marsh, "On the Odontornithes, or birds with teeth." *American Journal of Science and Art*, Vol. x., 1875.

developed wings (*Ichthyornis*). Others (*Odontolcæ*) had teeth em-

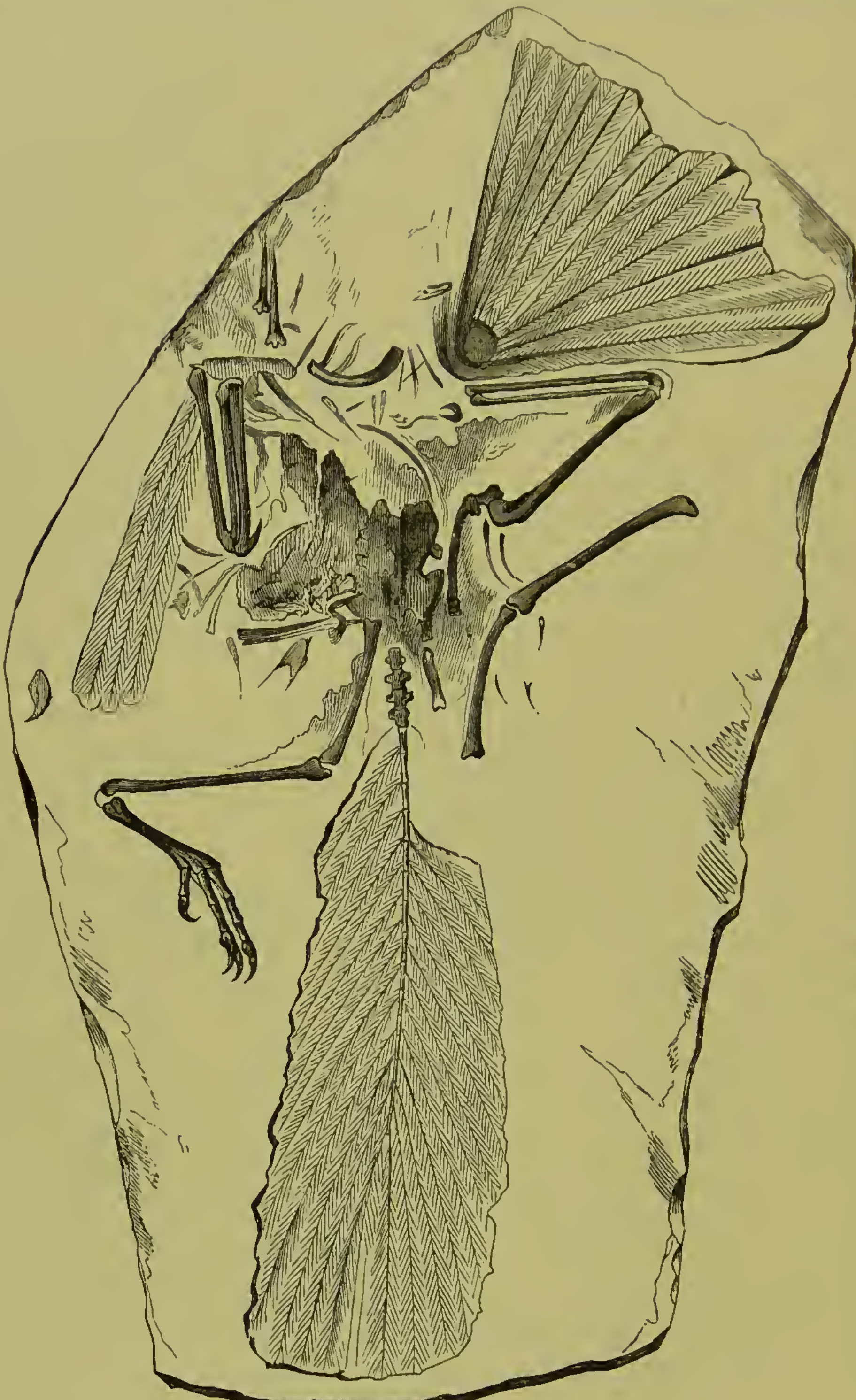


Fig. 119.—*Archæopteryx lithographica.*

bedded in pits, normal vertebræ, no keel to the breast-bone, and rudimentary wings. They were not capable of flight (*Hesperornis*, *Lestornis*). Possibly in future days we shall be able by the discovery of new types to establish the connection with the *Dinosaurians* (*Compsognathus*), the formation of whose pelvis and feet offer a closer relationship to those parts in birds.

**Advance towards perfection.**—If we compare the animal and vegetable life of the most ancient formations with that of the succeeding periods of the earth's development, it becomes evident that there has been, on the whole, a continual progress from a lower to a higher condition. The oldest formations of the so-called archæan time, the rocks of which are for the most part in a metamorphic state, must from their enormous thickness have occupied immeasurable time in their origin. They contain no fossil remains which can be recognised with certainty as such; although the presence of bituminous gneiss in the old formations is a proof of the existence of organic bodies at that time. All the organisms of these most ancient periods, which were certainly numerous, have been destroyed without leaving any further traces than the Graphite deposits of the crystalline schist. In the most ancient and very extensive groups of strata we find exclusively cryptogamous plants, especially Fuci, which formed extensive forests beneath the sea.

The warm seas of the primary period were inhabited by numerous sea animals of very different groups, such as Zoophytes, Molluscs (especially *Brachiopoda*), Crustaceans (larva-like *Hymenocaris*, *Trilobites*), and Fishes whose peculiar armoured forms (*Cephalaspidæ*) indicate a low stage of organization. In the coal formations we meet for the first time with the remains of land animals, Amphibia (*Apatheon*, *Archegosaurus*), with a notochord and a cartilaginous skeleton; we also find Insects and Spiders; and in the Permian formations we meet with large lizard-like reptilian forms (*Proterosaurus*); while fishes, exclusively Elasmobranchs and Ganoids with a notochord, and vascular cryptogamous plants (Tree-ferns, Lepidodendra, Calamites, Sigillaria, Stigmaria) still predominate.

In the carboniferous period isolated instances of the Lizards amongst Vertebrates and of Coniferæ and Cycadiæ amongst plants had already made their appearance; but in the secondary period they obtained such a preponderance that the whole period has been named from them the period of Saurians and Gymnosperms. Amongst the first the colossal Dinosaurians living upon the land, the flying Lizards or Pterodactyls, the Halosaurians, with their best known genera *Ichthyosaurus* and *Plesiosaurus*, are entirely peculiar to the secondary period.

Examples of Mammalia, although scarce, are found in the upper Triassic beds, and also in the Jurassic. Such Mammalia belong without exception to the lowest grade of Marsupials. Flowering plants appear for the first time in the chalk, as do the oldest remains of distinctly bony fishes.

Flowering plants and Mammalia—and amongst the latter the highest order of Apes is represented—so preponderated in the tertiary period that it has been called the period of leafy forests and Mammalia. The plants and animals of the upper tertiary beds show a gradually increasing resemblance to those of the present time, the higher we ascend in the series. Numerous lower animals and plants are identical, not only generically but also specifically with those now living, and the genera and species of the higher animals have a greater resemblance to those of the present time. With the transition to the diluvial and recent epoch, the number and area of distribution of the higher types of flowering plants increase, and in every order of Mammalia we find forms whose structure is specialized more and more in definite directions, and which therefore appear more perfect. In the diluvial age we find the first unmistakable traces of the existence of Man. His history and the development of his civilization has occupied only the last portion of the recent period which has been relatively so short.

Despite its great incompleteness the geological record affords sufficient material to prove the existence of a progressive development from simple and lower grades of organization to higher, and to confirm the law of a progress towards perfection in the succession of the groups. We are indeed unable to make use of more than a small period of the time that has been occupied in this progress towards perfection of organisms, since the organic world of the most ancient and extensive periods has completely disappeared from the record.

If, after the above discussion, we consider the hypothesis of Transmutation of Species and of Descent to have a firm foundation on fact, we must concede a high value to Darwin's theory of Selection as an explanation of the manner in which the transmutation of species has been effected.

There are yet natural historians who admit the great changes which the animal and vegetable world have undergone, and yet combat the Darwinian principle of Selection, without being able to give any other explanation. The phenomena of gradual progress towards perfection agree very well with the theory of Selection.

Natural Selection leads, on the whole, to a progressive differentiation of organs (division of labour), since it preserves any peculiarities which are of use in the struggle for existence, and thus tends to the perfection of the organism. We can therefore connect the progress of simple types to higher ones with the principle of utility implied by Natural Selection, without being obliged, with Nägeli, to have recourse to the obscure notion of an inexplicable tendency towards perfection. It is the latter mystical supposition, and not Natural Selection, which is contradicted by the fact that we find a number of Rhizopods, Molluscs, and Crustacea (*e.g.*, the genera *Lingula*, *Nautilus*, *Limulus*) have existed almost without alteration from the earliest formations through all the geological periods to the present time, and by the observation of a retrogression of organization in the course of development (*e.g.*, retrogressive metamorphosis of Parasites).

Nor again can it be objected that on the hypothesis of Natural Selection the lower types should have been long ago suppressed and have become extinct, while, as a matter of fact, there are higher and lower genera in every class, and the lowest organisms are numerous and widely distributed. It is precisely the great variety in the degrees of organization which brings about and is favourable to the greatest development of life, all the forms of which, both the higher and the lower, being best suited to their peculiar circumstances are able, more or less perfectly, to occupy a special place in nature, and in a certain sense to maintain it. Even the most simple organisms occupy a place in the economy of nature which can be filled by no other organisms, and are necessary to the existence of numerous higher grades.

However well grounded we admit the theory of Selection to be, we cannot accept it as in itself sufficient to explain the complicated and involved metamorphoses which have taken place in organisms in the course of immeasurable time. If the theory of repeated acts of creation be rejected and the process of natural development be established in its place, there is still the first appearances of organisms to be accounted for, and especially the definite course which the evolution of the complicated and more highly developed organisms has taken has to be explained. In the many wonderful phenomena of the organic world, amongst others in the origin of Man in the diluvial or tertiary period, we have a riddle the solution of which must remain for future investigators.

# SPECIAL PART.

## CHAPTER VI.

### PROTOZOA.

*Animals of simple constitution and small size; without tissues composed of definite cells. Sexual reproduction by means of ova and spermatozoa unknown.*

From a morphological point of view the Protozoa have remained at the stage of cells, in the protoplasm of which one or more nuclei may be present. The phenomena of segmentation of the egg and formation of the germinal layers are therefore absent from their development. The body is always composed of a contractile granular substance, filled with vacuoles; it may also contain a *pulsating vacuole*, and present the phenomenon of granule currents. The *pulsating vacuole* consists of a space without walls filled with a clear fluid. This space apparently diminishes and disappears through the contraction of the surrounding plasma, and then re-appears.

There exists, however, in the varying differentiations in the interior of the sarcode body, and in the differences in the external boundary, and in the manner of nourishment, a number of modifications which we shall use for the foundation of groups. In the simplest cases, the entire body consists of a small lump of sarcode, the contractility of which is confined by no firm external membrane. This lump of sarcode is sometimes semi-fluid, and protrudes and retracts processes. It is sometimes of tougher consistence in parts, and protrudes hair-like rays and threads (*Rhizopoda*). Nourishment takes place through the intussusception of extraneous bodies, which can be surrounded and enclosed by the protoplasmic substance at any portion whatsoever of the periphery of the body. In other cases the body which sends out slender processes (*pseudopodia*) secretes silicious or calcareous needles, lattice-work shells, or shells perforated by holes, to shelter and protect the body (*Foraminifera, Radiolaria*). In the *Infusoria* the sarcode body is bounded by an external membrane, and is capable of quick and varied locomotion by means of the movements of the cilia, hairs, bristles, etc., which it possesses. The solid nourishing matter is taken in through a mouth, and the remainder, after digestion, passes out through an anal aperture.

## CLASS I.—RHIZOPODA.*

*Protozoa without external investing membrane, the parenchyma of which protrudes and retracts processes; as a rule, a calcareous shell or silicious skeleton is secreted.*

The body-substance of these animals, the shells of which were described as *Foraminifera* or *Polythalamia*, long before their living contents were known, consists of *sarcode*, and is without any boundary membrane.

The body-substance, which is richly granulated and contains pigment, contracts slowly and sends out at the same time fine thread-like rays (fig. 120), for the most part of a semi-fluid consistency (*pseudopodia*); and these serve not only as a means of movement but also for the reception of nourishment. The pseudopodia may, how-


Fig. 120.—Optical section through portion of the sarcode body of *Actinosphaerium Eichhornii* (after Hertwig and Lesser). *N*, nuclei in the endosark, from which the vacuolated ectosark is clearly distinguishable. In the centre of the pseudopodia the axial thread is visible.

* Dujardin, "Observations sur les Rhizopodes" (*Comptes rendus*, 1835). Ehrenberg, "Uber noch jetzt zahlreich lebende Thierarten der Kreidebildung und den Organismus der Polythalamien" (*Abhandlung der Akad. zu Berlin*, 1839). Max Sigm. Schultze, "Uber den Organismus der Polythalamien" (Leipzig, 1854). Joh. Müller, "Uber die Thalassicolen, Polycystinen und Acanthometren" (1858). E. Haeckel, "Die Radiolarien" (Eine Monographie. Berlin, 1862).

ever, be broad, lobed, or finger-like processes by means of which a quick and flowing motion can be imparted to the body mass. A tougher, clear homogeneous external layer (*Exoplasm*) is usually to be distinguished as the peripheral boundary from a more fluid and more granular internal mass (*Endoplasm*). During motion the former is projected in processes into which the granules of the latter stream more or less quickly.

In the stiffer pseudopodia streams of granules are observable, slow but regular, passing from the base to the extremity and *vice versâ*. The explanation of these movements is to be sought in the contractility of the surrounding portions of sarcode (fig. 120).

A pulsating space, the contractile vacuole, is not unfrequently to be found in the sarcode, *e.g.*, *Difflugia*, *Actinophrys*, *Arcella* (fig. 121). Nuclei are also usually present in the sarcode, by which the morphological value of the Rhizopod body as cell or as cell aggregate is placed beyond all doubt. There are also forms in the protoplasm of which no trace of a cell nucleus has been found. In such either the protoplasm of the nucleus is not yet differentiated as a separate structure (the Monera of E. Haeckel), or we have to do with a transient, non-nucleated stage in the life-history.

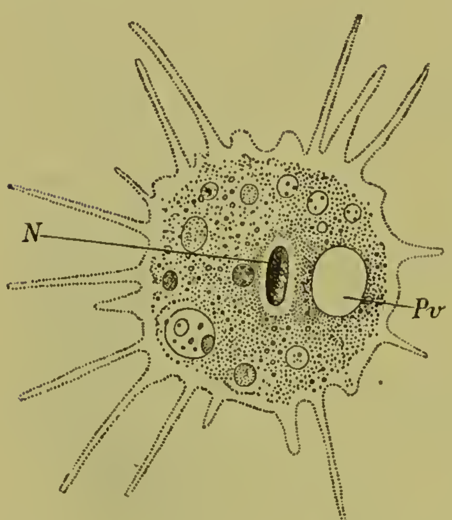


FIG. 121.—*Amœba (Dactylosphæra) polypodia* (after Fr. E. Schultze). *N*, Nucleus. *Pv*. pulsating vacuole.

The sarcode usually secretes silicious or calcareous structures, either as fine spicula and hollow spines which are directed from the centre to the periphery in regular order and number, or as lattice-work chambers (*Radiolaria*), which often bear points and spines, or finally as single and many chambered shells with finely perforated walls (*Foraminifera*) and one larger opening. Through this last (fig. 123), as well as through the countless pores of the small shells (fig. 122), the slender threads of sarcode pass out to the exterior as pseudopodia, changing without intermission in form, size, and number, and often joining themselves together in delicate networks (figs. 122, 123).

The pseudopodia, by their slow, creeping movements, afford a means of locomotion, while they also serve for the taking up of nourishment by surrounding and transporting into the interior of the body small vegetable organisms as *Bacillaria*. Among the shell-bearing forms, the reception and digestion of food takes place outside the shell in the peripheral threads and networks of sarcode; for each spot on the surface can for the time being assume the functions of mouth, and

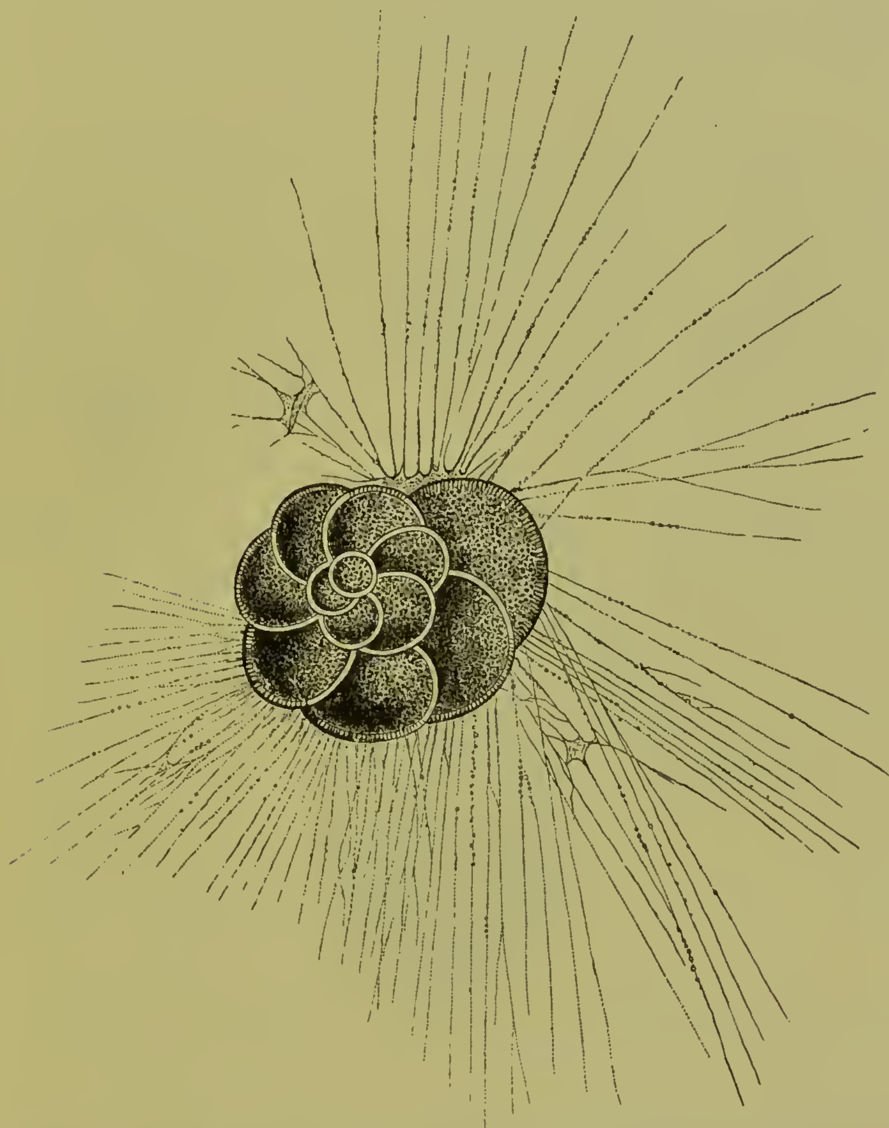


FIG. 122.—*Rotalia veneta* (after M. Schultze), with a Diatom taken in the network of Pseudopodia.

also of anus, by rejecting the undigested remnants. The Rhizopoda live for the most part in the sea, and contribute by the accumulation of their shells to the formation of the sea sand, and even to the deposition of thick strata. An innumerable quantity of fossil forms from various and very ancient formations are known.

### *Order* 1.—Foraminifera.*

*Rhizopoda, either naked or with a shell, the shell almost invariably calcareous and usually pierced with fine pores for the exit of the pseudopodia.*

Only in rare cases, for instance *Nonionina* and *Polymorphina*, is the shell substance of a silicious nature; in all other forms it is

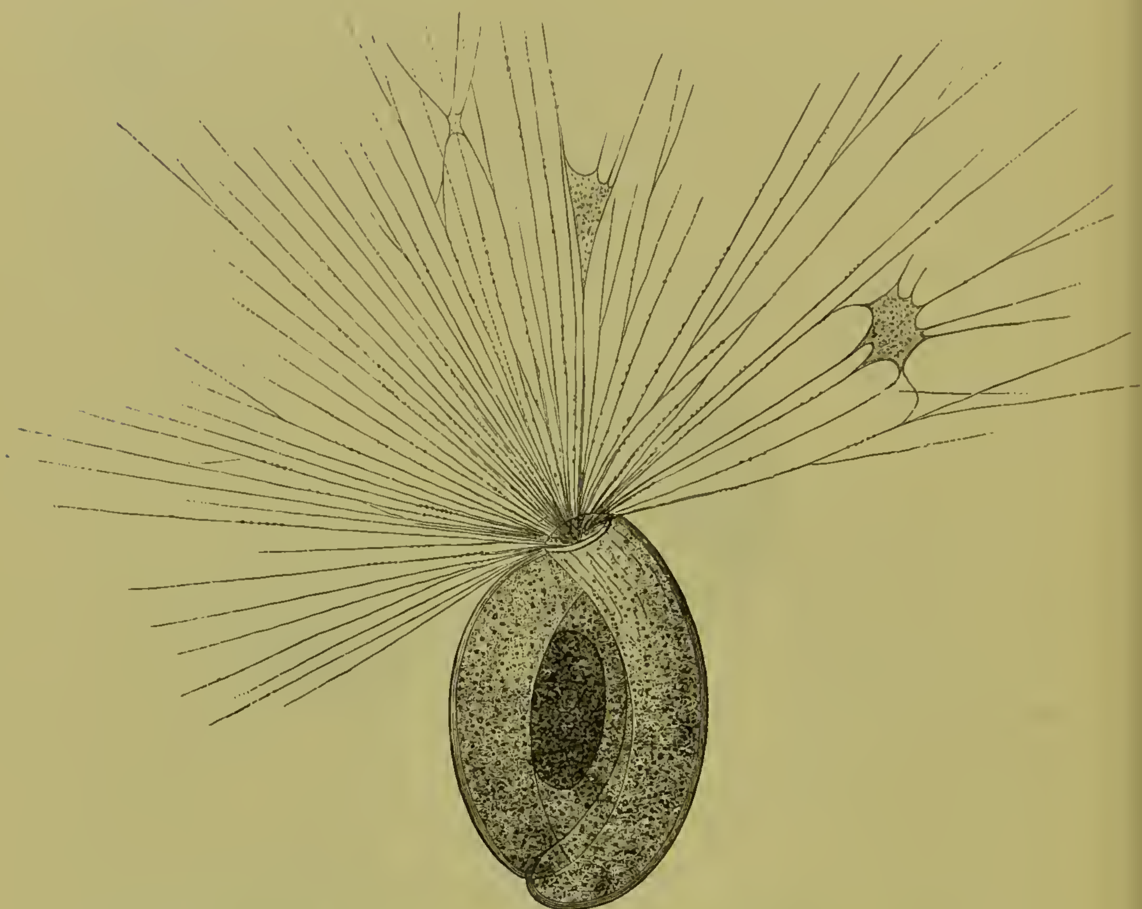


Fig. 123.—*Miliola tenera*, with network of pseudopodia (after M. Schultze).

membranous or consists of a calcareous deposit in a basis of organic matter. The shell is either a simple chamber, usually provided with a large opening, or is many chambered, that is, is composed of numerous chambers arranged upon one another according to definite laws. The spaces of these chambers communicate by means of narrow

* Besides D'Orbigny, Max Schultze, l. c., compare W. C. Williamson, "On the recent Foraminifera of Great Britain," London, 1858. Carpenter, "Introduction to the Study of the Foraminifera," London, 1862. Reuss, "Entwurf einer system. Zusammenstellung der Foraminiferen," Wien, 1861.

passages and large openings in the partition walls. In like manner those portions of the living sarcode body which are enclosed in the individual chambers are in direct communication with one another by means of processes which pass through the passages and openings in the septa, and connect one portion with another. The quality of the body-substance, the mode of movement and nourishment, agree closely with those which have been depicted as characteristic of the order. Our knowledge of the mode of reproduction is imperfect. Amongst the forms without a shell, fission has been observed as well as fusion, which may perhaps be referred to a species of sexual reproduction (*conjugation*). The reproduction of shell-bearing Foraminifera such as *Miliola* and *Rotalia* has also been observed. The former produces from the protoplasm of its body single chambered, the latter three chambered, young. Probably this mode of reproduction is preceded by an increase in the number of nuclei, and the animal divides into as many portions as there are nuclei, each of which becomes a young Foraminifer, and contains but one nucleus.

In spite of their small size, the shells of our simple organisms may lay claim to no small consequence, since they not only accumulate in enormous quantity in the sea sand (M. Schultze calculated their number for an ounce of sea sand from Molo di Gaeta at about one and a half millions), but are also found as fossils in different formations (the cretaceous and tertiary), and have yielded an essential material to the construction of rocks. Silicious nodules of Polythalamia are even found in Silurian deposits. The most remarkable, on account of their considerable size, are the *Nummulites* (fig. 124) in the thick formation of the so-called Nummulite limestone (Pyrenees). A coarse chalk of the Paris basin, which makes an excellent building stone, contains the *Triloculina trigonula* (*Miliolite chalk*).

The greater number of Foraminifera are marine, and move by creeping on the bottom of the sea, but Globigerina and Orbulina have been met with on the surface. The bottom of the sea at very considerable depths is also covered with a rich abundance of forms, especially with *Globigerina*, the remains of the shells of which give rise to an enduring deposit.

1. Sub-order: **Lobosa** (*Amœbiformes*).—Amœba-like fresh-water Rhizopoda, usually with pulsating vacuole, sometimes naked, sometimes with a single-chambered firm shell. The sarcode body consists as a rule of a tougher exoplasm and a fluid granular endoplasm. The pseudopodia are lobed or finger-shaped processes of considerable

size, occasionally tougher slender processes without granule streams (figs. 125 and 126).

*Amœba princeps* Ehrbg., *A. terricola* Greef., *Petalopus diffluqiens* Clap. Lachm. Here should also be placed the famous *Bathybius Haeckeli* Huxl., which is found in the deep sea mud of the Atlantic Ocean, if it is indeed a living organism (and not simply a deposit of Gypsum).

*Arcella vulgaris* Ehrbg., *Difflugia proteiformis* Ehrbg., *Euglypha globosa* Cart. have shells and tough, pointed, dichotomously branching pseudopodia (fig. 125).

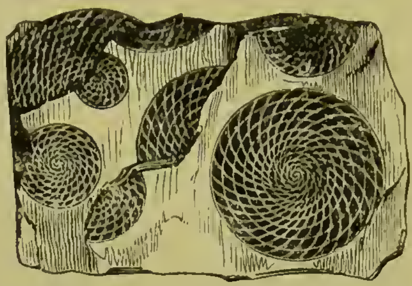


Fig. 124.—Nummulitic Limestone, with horizontal section of *N. distans* (after Zittell).


Fig. 126. — *Difflugia oblonga* (after Stein).

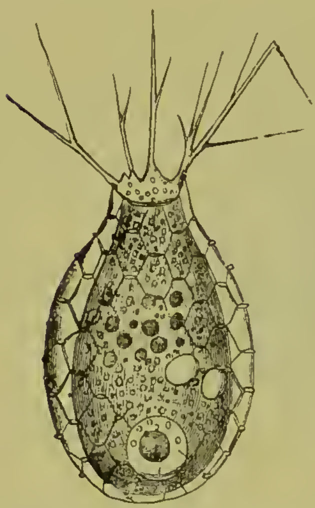


Fig. 125. — *Euglypha globosa* (after Hertwig and Lesser).

Fig. 127. — *Acervulina globosa* (after M. Schultze).

2. Sub-order: **Reticularia** (*Thalamophora*). Principally marine Rhizopods with extremely slender anastomosing pseudopodia, with granule streams in the latter, rarely naked (*Protogenes, Lieberkühnia*), usually with membranous or calcareous shell, which is single-chambered (*Monothalamia*) or many-chambered (*Polythalamia*) (fig. 127).

1. *Imperforata.* With membranous or calcareous shell, which is without fine pores, but possesses, in one place, an opening, either simple or sieve-like, through which the pseudopodia project. To these belong the *Gromidæ*, with a membranous chitinous shell: *Gromia oviformis* Duj., and *Miliolidæ*, with a porcellanous shell: *Cornuspira planorbis* M. Sch., *Miliola cyclostoma* M. Sch., from the Miliolite chalk.

2. *Perforata.* The shell, which is usually calcareous, is invariably pierced with innumerable fine pores as well as by one larger opening, and has complicated passages in the partition walls of its chambers.

The *Lagenidæ* have a hard shell, with a large opening surrounded by a toothed lip: *Lagena vulgaris* Williamson.

The *Globigerinidæ* on the contrary have a hyaline shell pierced by large pores, and a simple slit-like opening: *Orbulina universa* D'Orb., *Globigerina bulloides* D'Orb., *Rotalia* D'Orb., *Textularia* D'Orb.

The greatest size is attained by the *Nummulinidæ*, which possess a firm shell and an internal skeleton, which last is pierced by a complicated canal system: *Polystomella* Lam., *Nummulina* D'Orb.

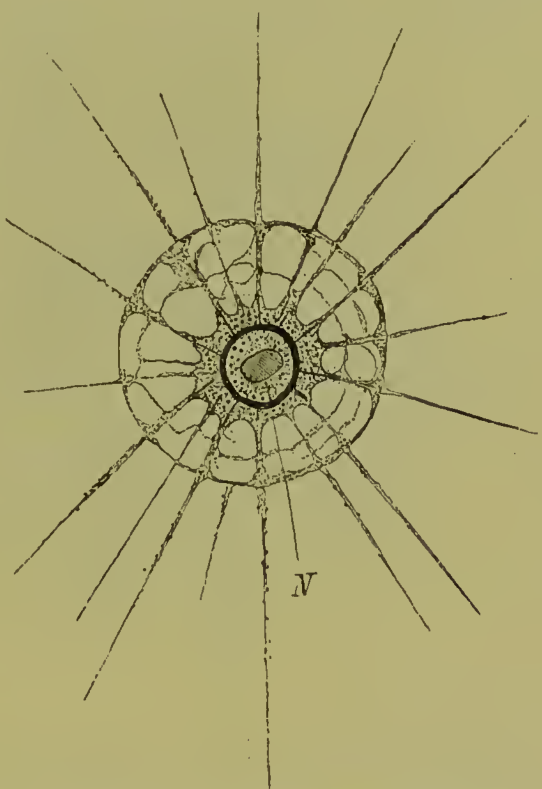



Fig. 128.—Young *Actinosphærium*, still with a single nucleus (after F. E. Schultze). *N*, Nucleus.

## *Order* 2.—Heliozoa.*

*Fresh-water Rhizopods usually with pulsating vacuole, and one or more nuclei. A radial silicious skeleton sometimes present.*

The sarcode body sends out in all directions tough radiating pseudopodia (fig. 128). When a skeleton is secreted, it consists either of radially arranged silicious spines (*Acanthocystis*) or of latticed silicious shells (*Clathrulina*), and so closely resembles the skeleton of the Radiolaria that the Heliozoa have been actually described as *fresh-water Radiolaria*.

They differ from the Radiolaria in the absence of the complicated

* L. Cienkowski, "Ueber *Clathrulina*." *Archiv. fur mikrosk. Anatomie*, Tom III., 1867. R. Greeff, "Ueber Radiolarien und radiolarienähnliche Rhizopoden des süssen Wassers." Tom V. & XI. R. Hertwig und Lesser, "Uber Rhizopoden und denselben nahe stehende Organismen." Suppl. Tom X., 1874. Also Archer and F. E. Schultze, etc.

differentiations of the sarcode, particularly of the central capsule. One or more nuclei may be present in the central mass. An important distinguishing mark is afforded by the presence of the pulsating vacuoles, which have not been observed in any marine Radiolarian.

The reproduction very frequently takes place by fission, occasionally

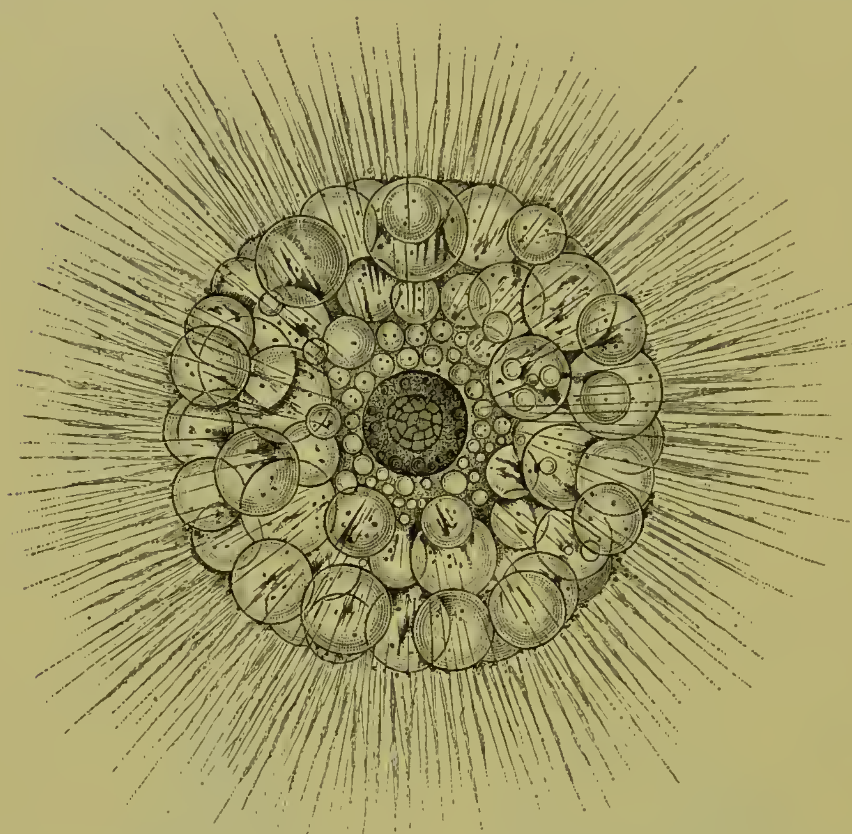


FIG. 129.—*Thalassicolla pelagica*, with central capsule and single large nucleus, also numerous alveoli in the protoplasm (after E. Haeckel).

after previous conjugation of one or more individuals, also during encystment. Multiplication by spores has also been observed (*Clathrulina*).

In the *Actinophryidæ* there is no skeleton secreted: *Actinosphærium Eichhornii* Ehrbg. The central matter contains numerous nuclei. *Actinophrys sol* Ehrbg. of small size, with a single central nucleus.

In the *Acanthocystidæ* slender silicious spikes are found: *Acanthocystis Spinifera* Greeff. with silicious spikes and needles.

In *Clathrulina* there is a latticed silicious shell, and the body has a stalk: *Clathrulina elegans* Cienk.

## *Order* 3.—RADIOLARIA.*

*Marine Rhizopoda with complicated differentiation of the sarcode body, with central capsule and radial silicious skeleton.*

The sarcode body contains a membranous porous capsule (the *central capsule*), in which is contained a tough slimy protoplasm with vacuoles and granules (*intracapsular sarcode*), fat and oil globules, and albuminous bodies, and more rarely crystals and concretions. The intracapsular mass contains also a single large nucleus or several small nuclei. The sarcode which surrounds the capsule and which emits on all sides simple or anastomosing pseudopodia, contains numerous yellow cells, sometimes pigment masses; and in some cases delicate transparent vesicles, or alveoli, are found in the peripheral layer between the radiating pseudopodia (*Thalassicolla pelagica*, fig. 129).

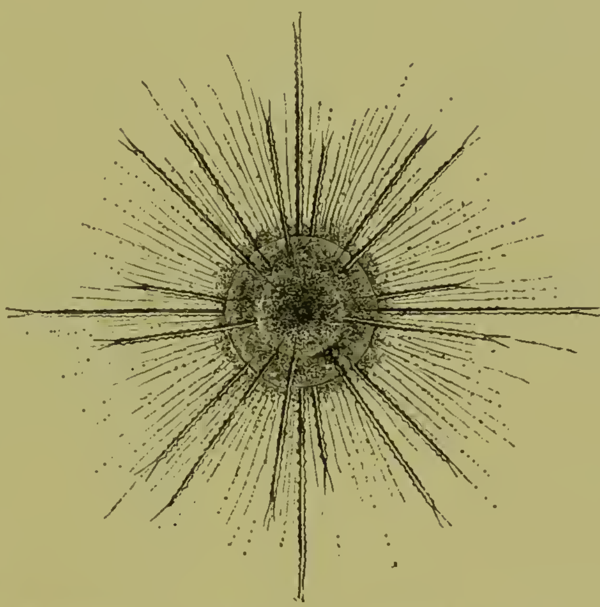


FIG. 130.—*Acanthometra Mülleri* (after E. Haeckel).

Many Radiolaria form colonies, and are composed of numerous individuals. In such colonies the alveoli are placed in the common protoplasm, which contains in itself, not as in the monozoic Radiolaria a single central capsule, but a number of capsules. Only a few species remain naked and without firm deposits; as a rule, the soft body possesses a silicious skeleton, which either lies entirely outside the central capsule (*Ectolithia*) or is partially within it (*Entolithia*). In the most simple cases the skeleton consists of small, simple, or toothed silicious needles (spicula) united together, which sometimes give rise to a fine sponge work round the periphery of the protoplasm, *e.g.*, *Physematium*. In a higher grade we find stronger hollow silicious spicules, which radiate from the middle point of the body to the periphery in regular number and order, *e.g.*, *Acanthometra*

* Joh. Müller, "Ueber die Thalassicollen, Polycystinen und Acanthometren," *Abh. der Berl. Akad.* 1858. E. Haeckel. "Die Radiolarien," Eine Monographie Berlin, 1862.

(fig. 130). A fine peripheral framework of spicules may be added to these. In other cases simple or compound lattice-works, and pierced shells of various external form (like helmets, bird-cages, shells, etc.) are found, and on the periphery of these, spicules and needles, and even external concentric shells of similar shape may be formed, *e.g.*, *Polycystina* (figs. 131 and 132).

Up to the present time but little has been made out about the reproduction of these animals. Besides fission (*Polycyttaria*), the formation of germs has been observed. These are formed from the contents of the central capsule, and, after the bursting of the latter, become free-swimming mastigopods. Radiolaria are inhabitants of the sea, and swim at the surface, but are also able to sink to deeper levels.

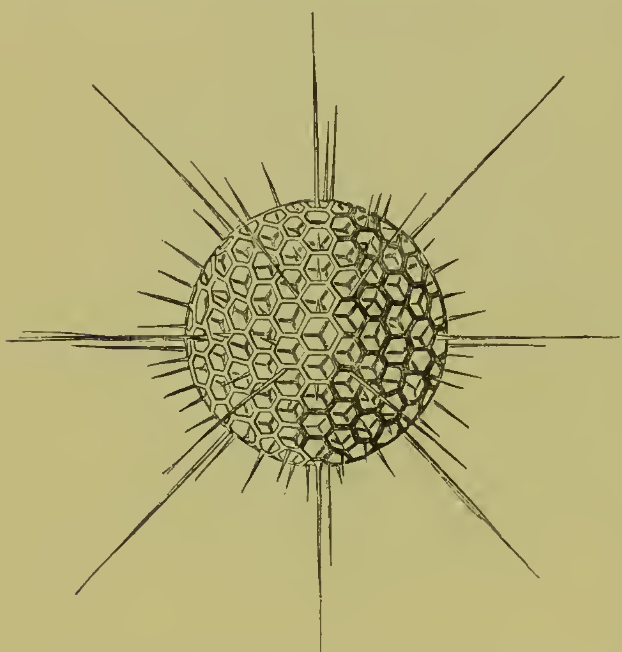


FIG. 131.—*Heliosphæra echinoides* (after E. Haeckel).

Fossil remains of Radiolaria have been made known in great numbers by Ehrenberg, *e.g.* from the chalky marl and polishing slate found at certain parts of the coast of the Mediterranean (Caltanisetta in Sicily, Zante and Ægina in Greece), and in particular from the rocks of Barbados and Nikobar, where the Radiolaria have given rise to widely extended rock formations. Samples of sand also from very considerable depths have shown themselves rich in Radiolarian shells.

I. *Radiolaria monozoa.* Radiolaria which remain solitary.

1. Fam. **Thalassicollidæ.** Skeleton absent or consisting of single spicules not joined together. *Thalassicolla* (without skeleton) *nucleata* Huxl., *Physematium Mülleri* Schn.

2. Fam. **Polycystinidæ.** The skeleton consists of a simple or divided latticed shell, the long axis of which is bounded by two poles of different structure. *Heliosphæra. Eucyrtidium galea* E. Haeck.

3. Fam. **Acanthometridæ.** The skeleton consists of several radial spicules which pass through the central capsule and unite in its centre, without forming

a latticed shell. The extra-capsular cells (yellow bodies) are wanting. *Acanthometra pellucida* Joh. Müll.

II. *Polycyttaria.* Radiolaria which form colonies with several central capsules Amongst the Sphærozoa a skeleton is wanting or consists of single pieces not joined together. *Collozoum inerme* E. Haeck. *Sphærozoum punctatum* Joh. Müll. In *Collosphæra* the skeleton consists of simple latticed spheres, each of which encloses a central capsule, *Collosphæra Huxleyi* Joh. Müll.

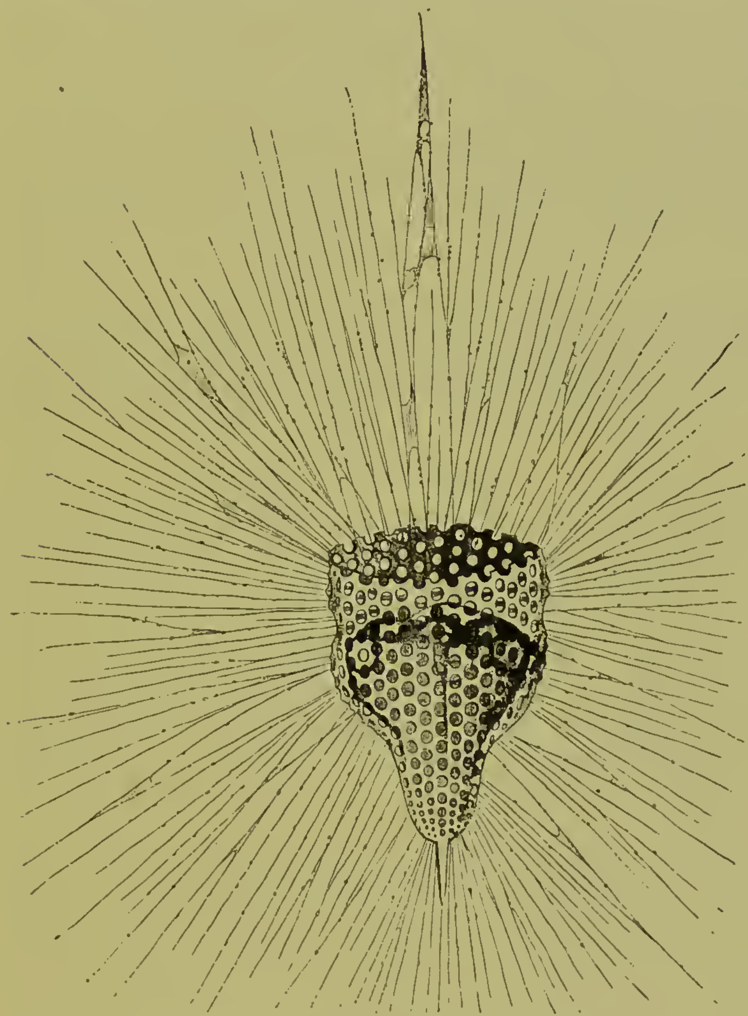


FIG. 132.—*Eucyrtidium cranoides* (after E. Haeckel)

## CLASS II.—INFUSORIA.*

*Protozoa with a definite form and provided with an external membrane, bearing either flagella or cilia. Mouth and anus usually, contractile vacuole and one or more nuclei always present.*

Infusoria were discovered towards the end of the 17th century

* Ehrenberg, "Die Infusionsthierchen als vollkommene Organismen." 1838. Balbiani, "Études sur la Reproduction des Protozoaires," *Journ. de la Phys.*, Tom. III. Balbiani, "Recherches sur les phénomènes sexuels des Infusoires,"

in a vessel of stagnant water by A. von Leeuwenhoek, who made use of a magnifying glass for the examination of small organisms. The name Infusoria, which was at first used to denote all animalculæ which appear in infusions and are only visible with the aid of a microscope, was first brought into use by Ledermüller and Wrisberg in the last century. Later on the Danish naturalist O. Fr. Müller made valuable additions to our knowledge of Infusoria. He observed their conjugation and their reproduction by fission and gemmation, and wrote the first systematic work on the subject. O Fr. Müller included a much larger number of forms than we do now-a-days, for he placed among the Infusoria all invertebrate water animalculæ without jointed organs of locomotion and of microscopical size.

The knowledge of Infusoria received a new impulse from the comprehensive researches of Ehrenberg. The principal work of this investigator, "Die Infusionsthierchen als vollkommene Organismen," discovered a kingdom of organisms hardly thought of. These were observed and portrayed under the highest microscopic powers. Many of Ehrenberg's drawings may even yet be taken as patterns, and are hardly surpassed by later representations, but the significance of the facts observed has been essentially corrected by more recent investigations. Ehrenberg also conceded too great an extent to the group of Infusoria, including not only the lowest plants such as *Diatomaceæ*, *Desmidiaceæ*, under the name of *Polygastrica anentera*, but also the much more highly organised *Rotifera*. As he chose the organization of the last-named for the basis of his explanations, he was led into numerous errors. Ehrenberg ascribed to the Infusoria mouth and anus, stomach and intestines, testis and ovary, kidneys, sense-organs, and a vascular system, without being able to give reliable statement of the nature of these organs. There very soon came a reaction in the way of regarding the Infusorian structure; for the discoverer of the *Rhizopoda*, Dujardin, as well as Von Siebold and Kölliker (the latter taking into consideration the so-called *Nucleus* and *Nucleolus*), referred the Infusorian body to the simple cell. In the subsequent works of Stein, Claparède, Lachmann, and Balbiani numerous differentiations were certainly shown to exist, which, however, can all be referred to differentiation of the body of the cell. This view is supported by

*Journ. de la Phys.*, Tom. IV. Claparède und Lachmann. "Études sur les Infusoires et les Rhizopodes," 2 vol. Génève, 1858—1861. E. Haeckel. "Zur Morphologie der Infusorien" *Jen Zeitschrift*, Tom. VII., 1873. O Bütschli. "Studien über die ersten Entwickelungvorgänge des Eizelle, die Zelltheilung und die Conjugation des Infusorien," Frankfurt. 1876.

the more recent work of Bütschli, who has shown that the reproduction of these animals is essentially similar to that of the cell.

The outer boundary of the body is usually formed by a cuticle, a delicate, transparent membrane, the surface of which is beset with vibratile and moving appendages of various kinds arranged in regular order. In the smallest Infusoria, the *Flagellata*, we find only one or two long whip-like cilia; while the more highly differentiated *Ciliata* are usually richly provided with cilia. According to the varying thickness of the external membrane, which cannot in all cases be isolated, and according to the different condition of the peripheral parenchyma of the body, we get forms which change their shape, forms which have a fixed shape and armoured forms. If the simply organized Flagellata, which present numerous affinities and transitional forms to the Algæ and Fungi, are not entirely removed from the region of the Infusoria, the two principal groups to be distinguished are the *Ciliata* and *Flagellata*.

### *Order* 1.—FLAGELLATA.*

*Infusoria of small size, characterised by possessing one or more long whip-like cilia, usually placed at one end of the oval body. A row of cilia sometimes and a nucleus always present.*

The Flagellata are Infusoria the locomotive organs of which consist of one or more whip-like cilia, rarely with an accessory row of cilia. They pass through an inactive stage, and in their development as well as in their mode of nourishment are allied to certain Fungi.

The reasons for regarding the Flagellata as Protozoa are—the perfect contractility of the body, which is not surpassed by Myxomycetes in the mastigopod stage; also the contractility of the cilia, the apparently purposed and voluntary movements, the occurrence of *contractile vacuoles*, and, as has been established in many cases, the reception of solid substances into the body through an opening at the base of the flagellum. Nevertheless these phenomena are by no means a test of animal organization.

The *Monadinæ* are a large group of Flagellata, found for the most part in putrefying infusions, and are hard to distinguish from the monads usually regarded as fungi. They reproduce themselves by

* Besides Ehrenberg, Claparède, and Lachmann, loc. cit., compare Stein, "Organismus der Infusionsthiere," Tom. III., 1878. Bütschli, "Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Flagellaten." *Zeitschr. für Wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXX. Dallinger and Drysdale. "Researches on the Life-history of the Monads," *Monthly Microscop. Journal*, Tom. X.—XIII.

transverse fission, and also by spore formation in an encysted condition; the latter method seems in many forms to be preceded by conjugation. The best known species are *Cercomonas* Duj. and *Trichomonas* Donné, of which the first is characterised by the possession of a caudal filament, while Trichomonas has an undulating row of cilia close to the flagella, which are usually two in number (fig. 133). They live principally in the intestines of Vertebrates, but are also found in Invertebrates. *Cercomonas intestinalis* Lambl. and *Trichomonas vaginalis* Donné, are found in Man.

The *Monads*,* which cannot be sharply separated from the *Monadinæ*, are simple cells free from chlorophyll, the swarm spores of which usually pass into an amœboid stage, and after receiving nourishment enter upon a motionless stage characterised by the possession of a firm cell-membrane. A number of them (*Monas*, *Pseudospora*, *Colpodella*), the so-called *Zoospores*, are mastigopods resembling the mastigopods (swarm spores) of Myxomycetes, and, with the exception of *Colpodella*, grow up to creeping Amœbæ which protrude pointed pseudopodia. In this stage they may also be simply regarded as small plasmodia, especially when, as in *Monas amyli*, several mastigopods fuse together to form the amœba. They then take—in *Colpodella* without first entering the amœba stage—a globular form, their surface develops a membrane, and in this cyst they break up by division of protoplasm into a number of segments which pass out as swarm spores and repeat the course of development (*Colpodella pugnax* to *Chlamydomonas*, *Pseudospora volvocis*).

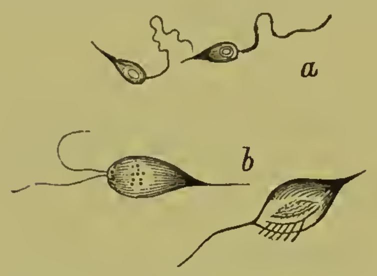



FIG. 133.—*a*, *Cercomonas intestinalis*. *b*, *Trichomonas vaginalis* after R. Leuckart).

Other Monads, the so-called *Tetraplasta* (*Vampyrella*, *Nuclearia*), do not pass through the mastigopod (swarm spore) stage. Their protoplasm during the inactive encysted stage gives rise by division into two or four, to the same number of Actinophrys-like Amœbæ, of which some, like *Colpodella*, suck their nourishment from alga cells (Spirogyra, Oedogonia Diatomacea, etc.), and some envelope extraneous bodies.

In mode of nourishment and locomotion the monads are allied to the Rhizopods, but also to lower fungus forms like *Chytridium*.

* L. Cienkowski, "Beiträge zur Kentniss der Monaden," *Archiv für Microsk. Anatomie*, Tom. I., 1865. L. Cienkowski, "Uber Palmellaceen und einige Flagellaten," Tom. VI., 1870.

In their whole developmental cycle they agree very closely with unicellular algæ and fungi; still the analogy to the developmental processes of many Infusoria, *Amphileptus*, is not to be passed over. *Spumella vulgaris* (*termo* Ehrbg.) of Cienkowski shows a somewhat different development and cyst formation; it receives solid food (by aid of the food vacuoles) and is fixed by a fibre, as also *Chromulina nebulosa* Cnk., and *Ochracea* Ehrbg.

A second group nearly allied to the Algæ (*Protococcacea*) is that of the *Volvocinidæ*. These organisms consist of colonies of cells united by a common gelatinous substance, and the following characteristics indicate their close relationship to the Algæ:—(1) in the inactive stage they possess a cellulose membrane; (2) they exhale oxygen; (3) they possess an abundance of chlorophyll and of vegetable red or brown coloured oils.

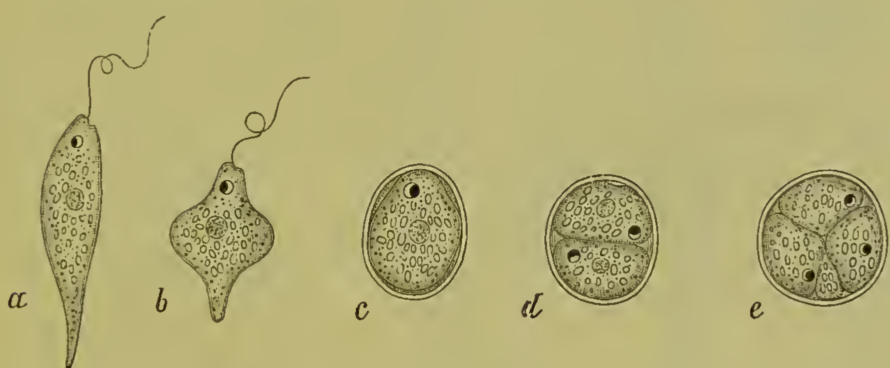



FIG. 134.—*Euglena viridis*. *a* and *b*, free swimming, in different states of contraction. *c*, *d*, *e*, encysted and in process of division.

During the motile stage they possess the power of reproduction, since the individual cells give rise to daughter colonies inside the mother colony. A sexual reproduction (conjugation) has also been shown. Certain of the mother cells increase in size and divide into numerous microgonidia corresponding to spermatozoa; others grow to large ovicells, which are impregnated by the former, and then surround themselves with a capsule, and sink to the ground as large star-shaped cells. They also reproduce themselves during their period of inactivity by fission within the cellulose capsule, while at the same time a change of colour takes place. Amongst the best known of the Volvocina are *Volvox globator*, *Gonium pectorale*, *Stephanosphæra pluvialis*.

The *Astasiadæ* are contractile unicellular *Flagellata*, which are allied to the *Volvocinidæ* in their life phenomena, but they take up solid nutriment. The best known genus is *Euglena*, which, according to Stein, has a mouth and gullet.

In their inactive stage they secrete a capsule and divide up into parts which pass out as mastigopods. *Euglena viridis* (fig. 134), *E. sanguinolenta*. Another genus, also with a mouth, is *Astasia* Ehrbg. *A. trichophora* Ehrbg., with rounded posterior end, a very long flagellum, and an abruptly terminated anterior end.

The genera *Salpingoeca* and *Codosiga* described by Clark were included by Bütschli under the name *Cylicomastiges*, on the ground that they possess a well-marked collar surrounding the basis of the flagellum, and corresponding to the collar on the entoderm cells of the Sponges (hence Clark regarded the Sponges as most nearly related to the Flagellata); *Codosiga Botrytis* Ehrbg, forming colonies, possessing food vacuoles which contain the solid bodies taken up as nutriment, with nucleus and contractile vacuole.

Fig. 135.—*Ceratium tripos* (after Nitzsch).

*Salpingoeca Clarkii* Bütsch. (the individuals of this species possess a shell).

Another group, the *Cilioflagellata*,* is characterised by the possession of a row of cilia, situated in a furrow of the hard cuticular exoskeleton (fig. 135), in addition to the flagellum. The *Peridiniœ*, some of which are of peculiar appearance, with large horned processes of the shell, belong to the group, and are allied, so far as their development is known, most nearly to the *Euglenœ*. The mouth lies in a depression; there is sometimes a kind of gullet, at the end of which the nourishing materials pass into a vacuole. In addition to the locomotive and armoured forms, there are also some without shell or organs of locomotion; and again there are encysted stages in the interior of which a number of small young forms are said to take their origin (*Ceratium cornutum* Perhg., *Peridinium tabulatum* Ehrbg).

Finally *Noctiluca* † is included in this group. It is an inhabitant

* R. S. Bergh, " Der Organismus der Cilioflagellaten," *Morph. Jahrb.* Tom. VII.

† L. Cienkowski, " Ueber *Noctiluca miliaris*," *Archiv. fur microsk. Anatomie*, 1871 and 1872.

of the sea, and possesses a peach-shaped body which is surrounded by a cuticular envelope, and bears a tentacle-like appendage. A furrow-like invagination is situate at the base of this appendage, at one end of which is the mouth close to a tooth-like prominence and a slender vibratile flagellum. The soft body consists of a central mass of contractile protoplasm, connected by fine and anastomosing threads with a layer of the same substance which lines the cuticular envelope of the body. In the central protoplasm lies a clear body, the nucleus, and the spaces between the radiating processes, which exhibit the phenomena of granule currents, are filled with fluid. The contractile substance extends into the appendage, and there assumes a cross-striped appearance (fig. 136).

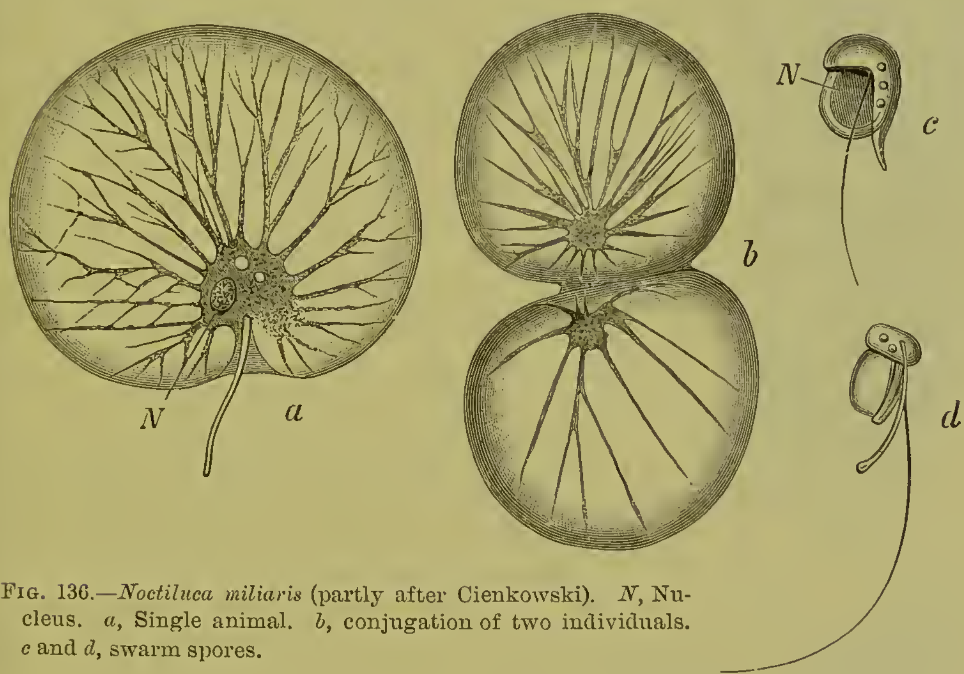



FIG. 136.—*Noctiluca miliaris* (partly after Cienkowski). *N*, Nucleus. *a*, Single animal. *b*, conjugation of two individuals. *c* and *d*, swarm spores.

The reproduction takes place by means of fission (Brightwell), preceded by division of the nucleus; or by spore formation (Zoospores). In the latter case, the flagellum is absorbed or thrown off, and the Noctiluca assumes a spheroidal shape. After the disappearance of the nucleus, the sarcode contents accumulate on the inner side of one region of the cuticle, divide into from two to four masses which are not sharply separated from one another, and the cuticular envelope is thrust out into a corresponding number of protuberances. These buds increase and form numerous wart-like prominences, the future spores. They arise, therefore, at the expense of the protoplasmic contents of the disc, which is gradually exhausted in their formation. The buds separate themselves from the membrane and become free as small spores, with nucleus and cylindrical appendage, to assume the Noctiluca form under circumstances which have as yet not been closely observed. According to Cienkowski, conjugation may take place between normal forms as well as between encysted forms.

The *Noctiluca* owe their name to their power of producing light, —a power which they share with numerous sea animals, such as Medusæ, Pyrosoma, etc. The light proceeds from the peripheral layer of protoplasm. Under certain conditions they rise from the depths of the sea to the surface in such enormous numbers as to cause wide tracts of the sea to give out a reddish light. It is after sunset, and especially in the evening, when the sky is overcast, that we get the beautiful phenomenon of the phosphorescent sea.

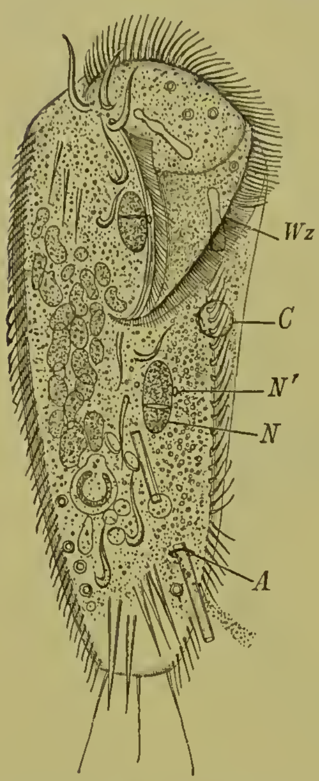


FIG. 137.—*Stylonychia mytilus* (after Stein), (seen from ventral side). *Wz*, Adoral zone of cilia; *C*, contractile vacuole; *N*, nucleus; *N′*, paranucleus; *A*, anus.

The species distributed in the North Sea and in the Atlantic Ocean is *Noctiluca miliaris*. Nearly allied is the Mediterranean *Leptodiscus medusoides* R. Hertwig.

### *Order* 2.—CILIATA.*

*Ciliated Infusoria with mouth and anus, sarcode body of complicated structure* (*with endoplasm and exoplasm*), *with nucleus and paranucleus* (*nucleolus*).

The locomotive cuticular appendages that we most frequently meet with are slender cilia, which often cover the whole surface of the body in close rows, and give it a striped appearance. The cilia are usually stronger in the region of the mouth, and are here grouped so as to form an *adoral zone* of large cilia, which, during swimming, causes a whirlpool, and conducts the matter which serves as nourishment into the mouth (fig. 137). This adoral zone is more highly developed in fixed Infusoria such as the *bell animalcule*, the surface of which has no regular arrangement of cilia. In these animals there are

* Besides Ehrenberg, Claparède, Lachmann, Bütschli, l. c., compare especially Fr. Stein, "Der Organismus der Infusionsthiere." I. and II., Leipzig, 1859 and 1867

one or more rings of large cilia round the edge of a raised lid-like flap which is capable of being shut down. There is also an inferior row of cilia upon this flap running to the mouth. The free-swimming Infusoria often possess in addition to these delicate cilia and zones of cilia, thicker hairs and stiff bristles, and more or less bent hooks, which are employed in locomotion and for attachment.

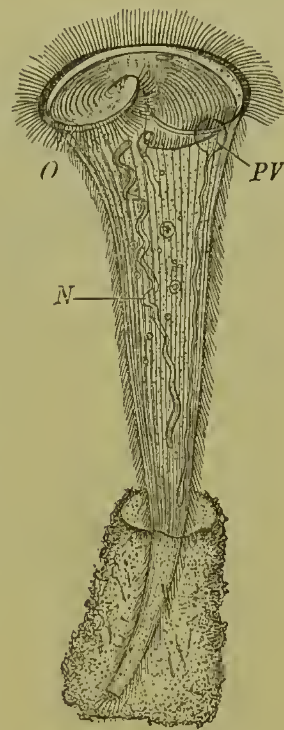



FIG. 138.—*Stentor Roselii* Ehrbg. (after Stein). *O*, oral aperture with gullet; *PV*, pulsating vacuole; *N*, nucleus.

Certain fixed Infusoria as *Stentor* (fig. 138) and *Cothurnia* secrete external coverings or shells, into which they retract themselves. Nourishment is taken in in a few cases by endosmosis through the whole surface of the body, *e.g.*, the parasitic *Opalina*. The *Acineta* feed themselves by sucking the body of their prey. They are without a mouth, and are incapable of taking in solid food. But they possess a number of long, narrow, contractile tentacles, which radiate from the surface of their bodies, and have the form of delicate tubes, presenting a structureless external wall and a semi-fluid granular axis. The Acineta applies one or more of these organs to the body of an extraneous organism, when the substance of the latter travels down the interior of the granular axis of the tentacle into the body of the Acineta (fig. 139).

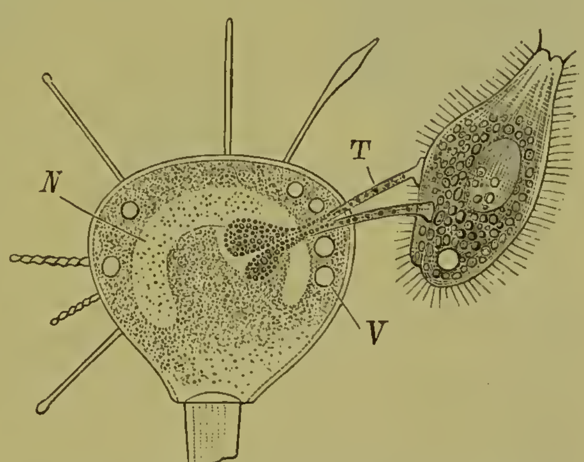



FIG. 139.—*Acineta ferrumequinum* Ehrbg., which is sucking the body of a small Infusorian (Enchelys) (after Lachmann). *T*, sucking tentacle; *V*, vacuole; *N*, nucleus.

By far the greatest number of Infusoria possess an oral aperture, usually near the anterior pole of the body, and a second aperture which acts as anus, and which can be seen in a definite part of the body as a slit during the exit of the excreta.

The body parenchyma, which is bounded by the external membrane, is divided into a viscid exoplasm and a more fluid endoplasm, into which a slender œsophagus, rarely supported by firm rods (*Chilodon*, *Nassula*), often projects (fig. 140). Through this the food stuff passes into the endoplasm, in which it gives rise to food vacuoles. The latter undergo a slow rotating movement round the body in the endoplasm, which is caused by the contractility of the sarcode. During this process the food is digested, and finally the solid, useless remainder is ejected through the anal aperture. A digestive canal, bounded by distinct walls, exists no more than do the numerous stomachs which Ehrenberg, who was deceived by the food vacuoles, ascribed to his *Infusoria polygastrica*. In all cases where a digestive canal has been described, we have to do with peculiar strings and trabeculæ of the internal parenchyma which enclose in their interstices spaces filled with a clear fluid.

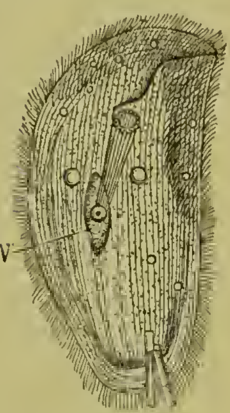



Fig. 140.—*Chilodon cucullus* (after Stein), with gullet resembling a fish-basket. *N*, nucleus with nucleolus, excreta are passing out of the anus.

The more viscid exoplasm is pre-eminently to be regarded as the motor and sensory layer of the body. In it we find differentiations resembling muscles (*Stentor*, the stalk of *Vorticella*). Sometimes small rod-shaped bodies are present (*e.g.*, *Bursaria leucas*, *Nassula*), which are comparable to the thread cells of *Turbellaria* and *Cœlenterata*. The contractile vacuoles appear as further differentiations of the external layer, structures which to the number of one or more are found in quite definite portions of the body. They are clear, mostly spherical spaces filled with a fluid; they diminish suddenly and then vanish, but gradually reappear and increase to their original size. These pulsating vacuoles are usually connected with one or more vessel-like lacunæ, which swell considerably during the contraction of the vacuole. These structures have been compared to the water vascular system of *Rotifera* and *Turbellaria*, and have been explained as excretory—an interpretation which has in its favour the fact that the contractile vacuoles in certain cases open to the exterior through a fine pore at the surface, through which granules pass to the exterior.

The *nucleus* and *nucleolus* lie in the exoplasm of the infusorian body. The *nucleus*, which ten years ago was compared to the nucleus of the simple cell, is a structure of variable shape but with a definite position in the body. One, or more than one, may be present. It is sometimes round or oval, sometimes elongated, being drawn out to the shape of a horse-shoe or a band, and may be broken up into a number of fragments. It contains a granular viscid substance, is bounded by a delicate membrane, and, according to the erroneous views of Stein and Balbiani, gives rise to ova or to germinal spores. The *nucleolus* or paranucleus also varies in form, position, and number in different species. It is always much smaller than the nucleus, and is strongly refractile; it usually lies close to the nucleus, or even sunk in a cavity of the latter. Both play an important part in the reproduction of the Infusoria.

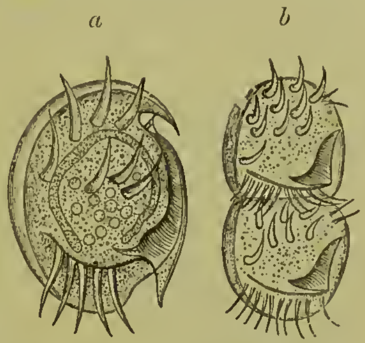



FIG. 141.—*a*, *Aspidisca lyncaster* (after Stein). *b*, *Aspidisca polystyla*, during fission (after Stein).

The most usual method of reproduction in the Infusoria is by fission. When the forms reproduced remain together and connected with the parent, a colony of Infusoria is formed, *e.g.*, the stocks of *Epistylis* and *Carchesium*. Fission usually takes place by a transverse division (at right angles to the long axis), as in the *Oxytrichidæ*,

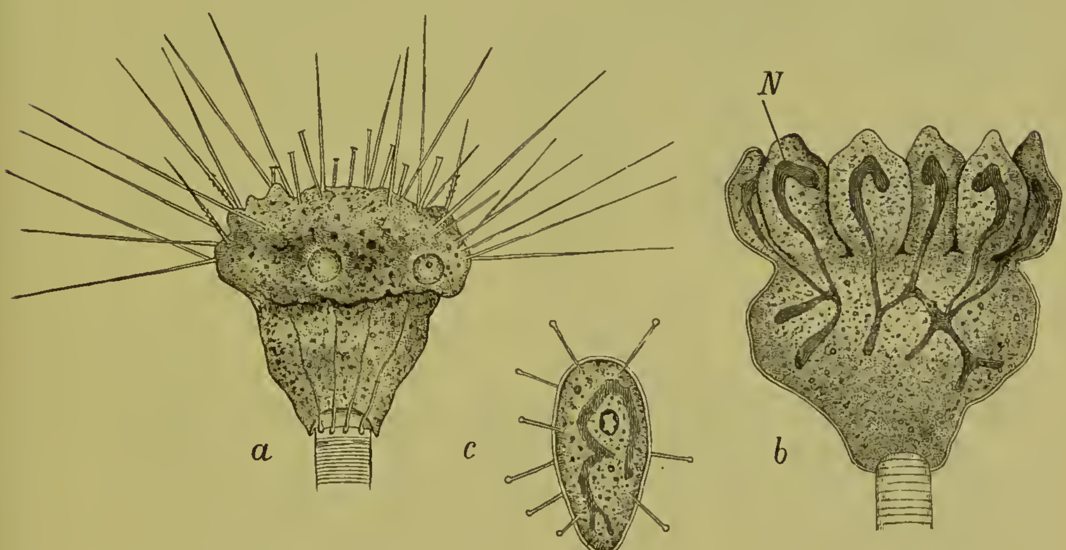



FIG. 142.—*Podophrya gemmipara* (after R. Hertwig). *a*, with extended suction-tubes and prehensile tentacles, with two contractile vacuoles. *b*, the same with ripe buds, in which processes of the branched nucleus *N* enter. *c*, free young form.

*Stentoridæ*, etc., and, obeying definite laws, follows conjugation and division on the one hand of the nuclei, and on the other of the nucleoli (fig. 141). Less frequently (*Vorticella*) the fission takes place through the long axis (fig. 143, *a*, *b*), and far more rarely in a diagonal direction. The asexual reproduction is often preceded by encystment, which appears to be of great importance for the preservation of the Infusoria from desiccation. The animal retracts its cilia, contracts its body to a globular mass, and then secretes a transparent cyst, which hardens and protects the animal, thus enabling it to survive in damp air. In the water, the contents of the cyst divide into a number of parts, which attain freedom by the bursting of the cyst, each one becoming a young animal.

Moreover, many Infusoria (*Acinetæ*) produce with participation of the nucleus a number of buds asexually, which separate themselves from the walls of the parent body (fig. 142). The broods of Sphærophrya make their way into the interior of other Infusoria, as Paramæcium and Stylonychia, nourish themselves at the cost of the enlarged nucleus, and form embryos by fission. These embryos swarm out, and were for a long time taken by Stein for the embryo broods of Stylonychia (fig. 144, *b*).

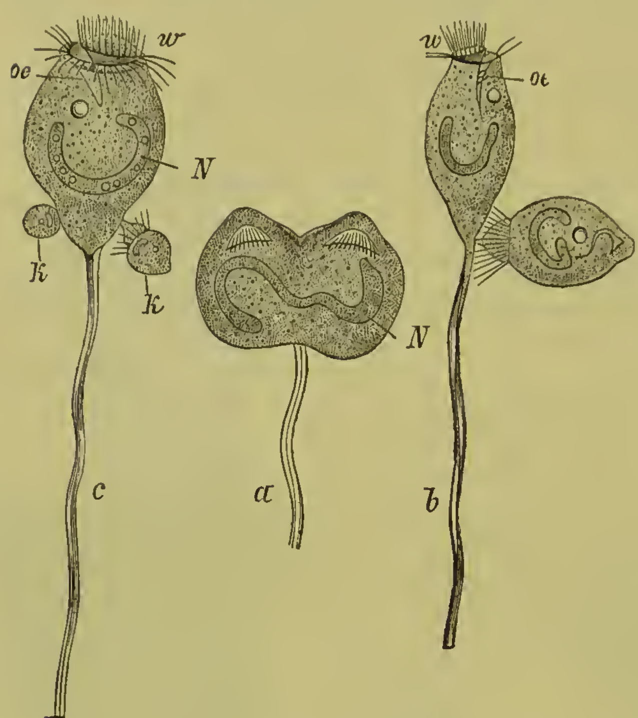



FIG. 143.—*Vorticella microstoma* (after Stein). *a*, In process of fission; *N*, nucleus; the mouth apparatus in each portion is formed afresh, *oe*, gullet. *b*, Fission is completed, the smaller product is set free after the formation of a posterior ring of cilia; *w*, adoral zone of cilia. *c*, Vorticella in process of bud-like conjugation; *K*, the bud-like individuals attached.

The process of conjugation observed by Leeuwenhoek and O. Fr. Müller is very general, and is connected with changes of the nucleus and nucleolus. These changes, which gave rise to the erroneous interpretation of the two structures as ovary and testis, are in reality simply preparatory to a process of regeneration of the nucleus by parts of the paranucleus, a process comparable to the phenomena of the fertilization of the ovum in sexual reproduction.

The conjugation of two Infusoria occurs in very different ways, and leads to a more or less complete fusion, which, after regeneration of the nucleus, is followed by an increase in the frequency of fission. *Paramæcium*, *Stentor*, *Spirostoma*, during conjugation, become connected by their ventral surfaces ; other Infusoria with a flat body like *Oxytrichina*, *Chilodon*, by their sides ; while *Enchelys*, *Halteria*, *Coleps*, join together the anterior extremities of their bodies, giving the appearance of transverse fission. A lateral conjugation also takes place not unfrequently in *Vorticella*, *Trichodina*, etc., between individuals of unequal size, the smaller one having the appearance of a bud (bud-like conjugation) (fig. 143, *c*).

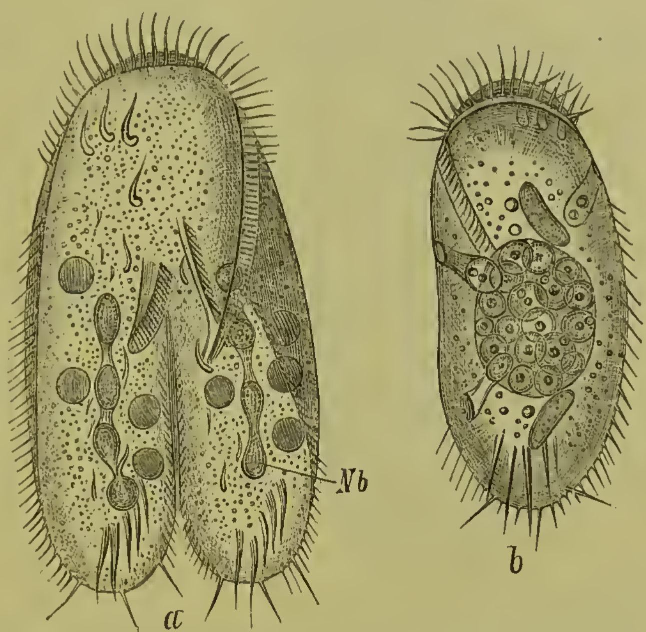



FIG. 144.—*a*, *Stylonychia mytilus*, in process of conjugation. The nucleus is depicted during division (Balbiani's so-called ova); the nucleoli have divided into four spheres (supposed spermcapsules). *b*, *Stylonychia* filled with parasitic *Sphærophrya* (after Balbiani).

The alterations which the *nucleus* and *paranucleus* undergo during and after conjugation have been especially worked out in *Paramœcium* and *Stylonychia* (fig 144 *a*, 145). When several nuclei are present they

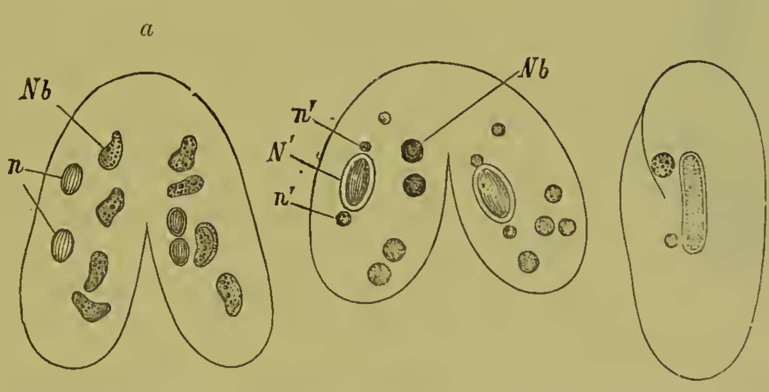



FIG. 145.—*Stylonychia mytilus* in process of conjugation, slightly magnified, (treated with acetic acid), (after Bütschli). *a*, Stage of conjugation with two nucleoli (paranuclei); *Nb*, the four pieces into which the nucleus has divided in each individual. *b*, Stage of conjugation with four nucleoli, of these *N'* becomes the nucleus, and *n'* the two nucleoli ; *Nb*, the four remaining pieces of the old nucleus. *c*, Stylonychia on the sixth day after conjugation with nucleus and two nucleoli.

fuse together to form a single oval body (Balbiani), the substance of which takes a finely fibrous structure previous to further fission, like the substance of a true cell nucleus, when undergoing division.

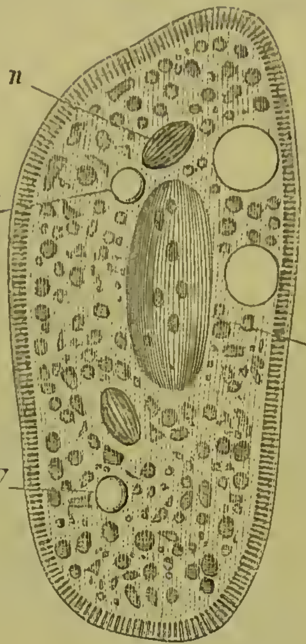



FIG. 146. — *Paramæcium Bursaria* about one hour after conjugation (after Bütschli). . *n*, nucleolus ; *N*, nucleus ; *PV*, contractile vacuole. Two of the nucleoli have become clear spheres.

The paranucleus too increases in size and becomes striated, and divides into a number of bodies by a single or repeated division. Some of these bodies produced by the division of the nucleus and paranucleus disappear or are cast out, and others are employed in the formation of the new nucleus and paranucleus. The processes of regeneration are for the most part not completed until the conjugating animals have separated. Conjugation is probably followed by a repeated division (fig. 146).

The mode of life of the Infusoria, which principally inhabit fresh water, is very various. Most of them lead an independent life, and take up larger or smaller bodies, even Rotifera, as nourishment. Some, as *Amphileptus*, select fixed Infusoria, as *Epistylis* and *Carchesium*, for their prey, and swallow them down as far as the origin of the stalk; they then, while fixed on the stalk, secrete a capsule, and divide up into two or more individuals, which pass out. Certain Infusoria, as the mouthless Opalina, and many Bursaridæ, are parasitic in the intestine and bladder of Vertebrates. To these belongs the *Balantidium coli* from the large intestine of Man (fig. 147).

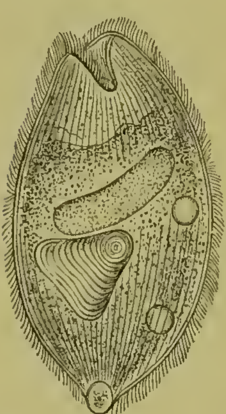


FIG. 147.—*Balantidium coli* with two pulsating vacuoles (after Stein). Under the nucleus lies a starch-granule that has been eaten, a ball of excrement is passing out of the anus at the posterior end.

1. Sub-order : **Holotricha.** — Body uniformly covered with cilia, which are arranged in longitudinal rows, and are shorter than the body. Longer cilia are sometimes found in the region of the mouth, but these do not form an adoral zone.

Besides the parasitic Opalinæ (*Opalinæ ranarum*), without mouth or anus, the following families belong to this group :—

Fam. **Trachelidæ.** Body of changeable shape prolonged into an anterior neck-like process. Mouth ventral, without longer cilia. *Trachelius ovum* Ehrbg., *Amphileptus fascicola* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Colpodidæ.** Form of body definite. Mouth ventral, in a depression, always furnished with long cilia or undulating membranes. *Paramæcium Aurelia* Fr. Müller, *P. Bursaria* Focke, *Colpoda cucullus* Ehrbg., *Glaucoma scintillans* Ehrbg.

2. Sub-order: **Heterotricha.**—Body uniformly covered with fine cilia, which are arranged in longitudinal rows, with a distinct adoral zone of cilia.

Fam. **Bursaridæ.** The adoral zone of ciliais on the edge usually of the left half of the body. *Bursaria truncatella* O. Fr. Mull., *Balantidium coli* Malmst., parasitic in the colon of man ; *Spirostomum ambiguum* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Stentoridæ.** At the anterior end of the body is a peristomial space with a funnel-shaped depression, without any distinct gullet. *Stentor polymorphus*, O. Fr. Müll., *St. cæruleus* Ehrbg.

3. Sub-order: **Hypotricha.**—Body with sharply defined dorsal and ventral surface. The convex dorsal surface is usually naked, the ventral covered with cilia and beset with styles and processes, mouth on the ventral surface.

Fam. **Oxytrichidæ.** Body elongated to an oval. On the left half of the ventral surface is a peristomial region, with an adoral zone of cilia. The ventral surface is beset at either edge by a marginal row of cilia, and also with bristles and hooks. *Stylongchia pustulata* Ehrbg., with eight anterior styles. five ventral, and five anal cilia. *Oxytricha gibba* O. Fr. Müller.

Fam. **Chilodontidæ.** Body usually armoured, with gullet in the form of a fish-basket. *Chilodon cucullus* Ehrbg.

4. Sub-order: **Peritricha.**—Infusoria with cylindrical or bell-shaped partially ciliated body. The cilia are placed on an adoral ciliated disc, and frequently on a ring-like zone.

Fam. **Vorticellidæ.** Peritricha with adoral spiral of cilia, without a shell, attached by a style, usually forms colonies. *Vorticella microstoma* Ehrbg., *Epistylis plicatilis* Ehrbg., *Zoothamnium arbuscula* Ehrbg., *Carchesium polypinum* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Trichodinidæ.** Peritricha with adoral spiral of cilia and circle of cilia as well as an apparatus for attachment at the posterior end. *Trichodina pediculus* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Halteriidæ.** Near the adoral spiral of cilia is an equatorial zone of longer cilia. *Halteria volvox* Clap. Lachm.

5. Sub-order: **Suctoria.**—Body usually without cilia, with knobbed tentacle-like processes which serve as sucking tubes.

Fam. **Acinetidæ.** *Acineta mystacina* Ehrbg.. *Podophrya cyclopum* Clap. Lachm., *Sphærophrya* Clap. Lachm.

---

As an appendix to the Protozoa we will now proceed to consider the *Schizomycetidæ*, which approach more nearly to the Fungi, and the *Gregarinidæ*.

1. The *Schizomycetidæ** (Bacteria) are small globular or rod-shaped bodies which are found in decaying matter, and are especially numerous on the surface of putrefying fluids, where they give rise to a slimy film (fig. 148). They are most nearly allied to the fungus of yeast, with which they also agree in their manner of nourishment, in that they make use of ammonia and organic compounds containing carbon. Like the yeast fungus they excite and maintain the fermentation or, as may happen, putrefaction of organic matter by withdrawing its oxygen or by attracting oxygen from the air (reduction or oxydation ferments). But they are clearly separated from the fungi by their development, for *they increase by dividing into two halves*, while the yeast fungus (*Saccharomyces*, *Hormiscium*) forms buds which separate off as spores. The transverse division takes place, after the cell has become elongated, by a constriction of the protoplasm and by the secretion of a cross partition wall. The daughter-cells either divide at once, or remain united and produce chains of Bacteria (filiform Bacteria) by a fresh fission. Sometimes the successive generations of cells remain connected by a gelatinous substance, and so produce irregular shaped gelatinous masses (*zoogloea*). Sometimes they become free and are dispersed in swarms. They may also settle on the bottom in the form of a

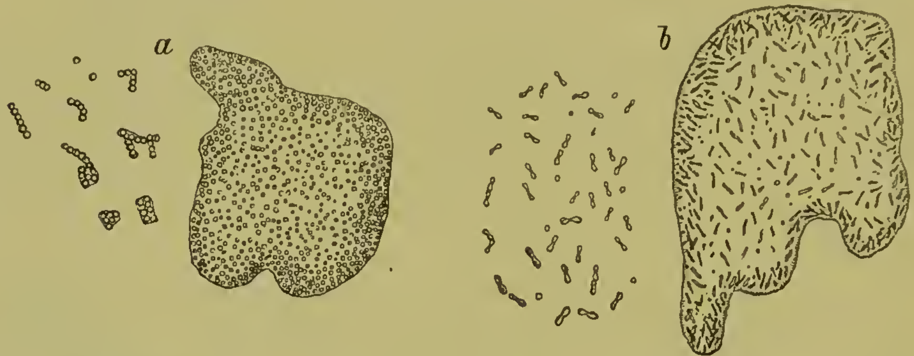



FIG. 148.—Schizomycetes (after F. Cohn). *a*, Micrococcus. *b*, Bacterium termo, bacteria of putrefying fluids, both in the motile and zoogloea form.

granular precipitate, as soon as the nourishment in the fluid is exhausted. The greater number have a motile and a motionless stage; in the first they rotate themselves about their long axis, but are also able to bend and extend, but never to serpentine. Their activity seems to be connected with the presence of oxygen.

Owing to the absence of sexual reproduction, the division of Bacteria into genera and species is beset with such difficulty that we must content ourselves with establishing, in an artificial fashion, form species and physiological species and varieties without always being able to demonstrate their independence. F. Cohn distinguishes four groups:—(1) Globular Bacteria, *Micrococcus* (*Monas* and *Mycoderma*); (2) Rod Bacteria (*Bacterium*); (3) Filiform Bacteria (*Bacillus* and *Vibrio*); (4) Spiral Bacteria (*Spirillum* and *Spirochæta*).

The Globular Bacteria are the smallest forms, and only exhibit molecular movements. They cause various forms of decomposition, but not putrefaction.

* F. Cohn, "Beiträge zur Biologie der Pflanzen." Heft 2 and 3, 1872 and 1875. "Untersuchungen über Bakterien," 1, 2, and 3 (Bacterium termo). Compare further the works of Eberth and Klebs.

They can only be divided, according to their various methods of development, into chromogenous (pigment), zymogenous (fermentation), and pathogenous (contagion) divisions. The first appear in coloured gelatinous masses and vegetate in the Zoogloeaform, *e.g.*, *M. prodigiosus* Ehbrg. in potatoes, etc., To the Zymogenous belong *M. ureæ*, urine ferment ; to the Pathogenous *M. vaccinæ*, the Pox Bacteria, *M. septicus* of pyæmia, *M. diphthericus* of diphtheritis.

The Rod Bacteria form small chains or threads, and exhibit spontaneous motions, especially in the presence of abundant nourishment and oxygen. Here belongs *Bacterium termo* Ehrbg. distributed in all animal and vegetable infusions and the necessary ferment in putrefaction, just as yeast is in alcohol fermentation ; also *B. Lineola* Ehrbg. of considerable size, which exists in spring water and in standing water, in which there are no products of putrefaction, and, as well as the former, has a zoogloea jelly. Another Bacterium form acts as ferment of lactic acid, according to Hoffman.

Of the Filiform Bacteria the motile *Bacillus* (*vibrio*) *subtilis* Ehrbg. occasions butyric acid fermentation, but is also found in infusions together with *B. termo*. Very nearly allied and hardly to be distinguished is the motionless *Bacillus anthracis* of inflammation of the spleen. *Vibrio rugula* and *serpens* are characterised by constant undulations of the chain. Finally these lead to the spiral forms of which *Spirochæta* resembles a long and flexible but closely wound, and *Spirillum*, a thick, short, and coarse screw. *Spirillum tenax*, *undula*, *volutans*, the last with a flagellum at each end.

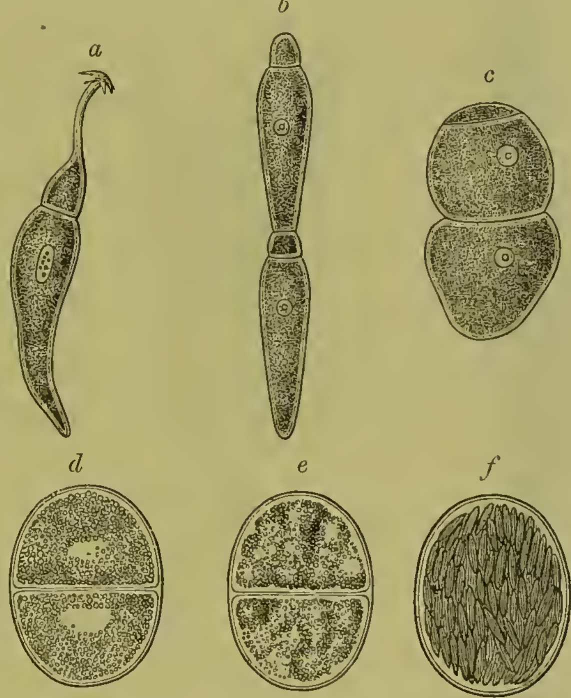



FIG. 149.—*Gregarina* (after Stein and Kölliker). *a*, *Stylorhynchus oligacanthus* out of the intestine of *Callopteryx*. *b*, *Gregarina* (*Clepsidrina*) *polymorpha* from intestine of the meal beetle, during conjugation. *c*, The same in process of encystment. *d*, Encysted Gregarina. *e*, Stage of formation of Pseudonavicellæ. *f*, Pseudonavicellacyst with ripe Pseudonavicellæ.

2. The *Gregarinidæ* * are unicellular organisms which live as parasites in the intestine, and in the internal organs of the lower animals. The body is frequently elongated like that of a worm, and consists of a granular viscid central mass surrounded by a delicate external membrane (sometimes with a subcuticular layer of muscle stripes). The nucleus, a round or oval clear body, is embedded in

* N. Lieberkühn, "Evolution des Grégarines," *Mém cour. de l'Acad. de Belg.* 1855. N. Lieberkühn, "Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Gregarinen." *Arch. für Anat. und Physiol.*, 1865. E van Beneden, "Recherches sur l'évolution des Grégarines." *Bulletin de l'Acad. roy. de Belgique*, 2 *Ser.* xxxi., 1871. Aimé Schneider, "Contributions à l'histoire des Grégarines des Invertebrés de Paris et de Roscoff." *Arch. de Zool. Experiment.*, Tom IV., 1875.

the central mass. The structure of the body may be complicated by the presence of a partition wall which parts off the anterior end from the main mass of the body. The anterior portion of the body gets in this way the appearance of a head, upon which there may be formed here and there prominences in the form of hooks and processes for the purpose of attachment. Nourishment is effected by endosmosis, through the external walls. Motion is confined to slow gliding forward of the feebly contractile body.

In their full-grown state the Gregarina are frequently seen fastened to one another two or more together. This connected state precedes reproduction (fig. 149). The two individuals lying with their long axes in the same straight line contract and surround themselves with a common cyst, and after undergoing a process resembling segmentation, divide into a number of small spore-like balls, which become spindle-shaped bodies (Pseudonavicellæ). The cyst secreted round the congregating individuals, or, as is often the case, round a single individual, becomes a Pseudonavicella cyst, and by its bursting the spindle-shaped bodies reach the exterior. The contents of each Pseudonavicella sometimes gives rise to a small amœboid body, as may be inferred from Lieberkühn's observations on the *Psorosperms* of the pike. In other cases (*Monocystis*, *Gonospora*, etc.) sickle-shaped bodies arise in the spores, which, without passing through an amœboid stage, give rise to young Gregarines. *Monocystis agilis* from the testis of the earth-worm. *Gregarina* L. Duf. (*Clepsidrina* Hammersch.) Body with flat partition wall and wart like head at anterior end. In the young stage the anterior end of *Gr. blattarum* v. Sieb. is fixed in the cells of the intestinal epithelium of Blatta. *Gr. polymorpha* Hammersch. in the meal-worm.

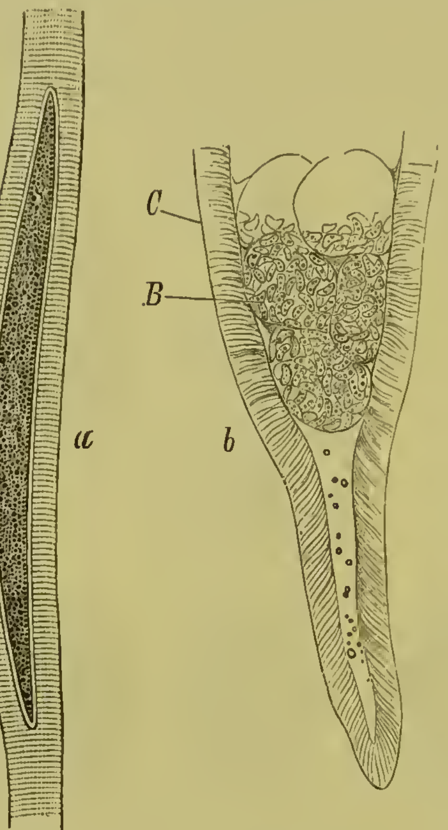



Fig. 150.—Rainey's corpuscles from the flesh of a pig. *a*, An animal inside a muscle fibre. *b*, Posterior end of the same, strongly magnified; *C*, cuticular layer; *B*, spores.

[The Gregarines are found mainly in Invertebrata. They may be divided into two main groups, the *Polycystidea* and the *Monocystidea*. In the former, which are found for the most part in Arthropods, there is a partition dividing the body into two parts; in the latter, which are found chiefly in Vermes, there is no such partition.]

The structures long known as *Psorosperms* from the liver of the rabbit, the slime of the intestine, the gills of fishes, and the muscles of many Mammalia, etc., present a great resemblance to the Pseudonavicellæ; but we are not yet fully enlightened as to their nature. The case is the same with the structures known as Rainey's or Mischer's corpuscles from the muscles of, *e.g.*, the pig; and the parasitic animals from various wood-lice and Crustacea, which were assigned by Cienkowski to the fungi, under the name of *Amœbidium parasiticum*, remind us by their reproduction no less of the Gregarinæ and their cysts.

The *Coccidia* which we meet with in the cells of the epithelium of the intestine as well as in the bile-ducts of Mammalia should also be regarded as *Gregarinæ* (fig. 151). They transform themselves into egg-shaped zoosperms by the formation of a capsule and the production of several spores from their granular contents. In Coccidium oviforme from the liver of man and of the rabbit there are only four spores formed, which become sickle-shaped rods.

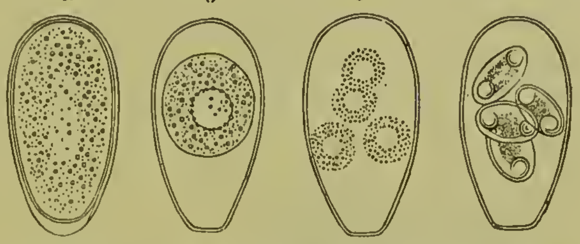



FIG. 151.—*Coccidum oviforme* from the liver of the rabbit, magnified 550 diam. (after R. Leuckart). *c, d,* Stages of spore formation which have only been observed outside the cells.

---

# CHAPTER VII.

## CŒLENTERATA (ZOOPHYTES).*

*Radially symmetrical animals with a body composed of cells. They have a body-cavity which serves alike for circulation and digestion (gastrovascular space).*

Amongst the *Cœlenterata* we meet for the first time with organs and tissues composed of cells. In addition to the external and internal epithelium, cuticular, calcareous, and silicious structures, as well as muscles, nerves, and sense-organs are very generally present. On the other hand, the internal surface of the body is not differentiated into organs of circulation and digestion distinct from each other. The vegetative processes are performed by the internal surface of the gastric cavity, the gastrovascular space, of which the central part functions as stomach and intestine, the peripheral as vascular system.

R. Leuckart was the first to recognise the importance of these characters, and made use of them to separate the *Polyps* and the *Medusæ* from the *Echinoderms*, thus resolving Cuvier's type of *Radiata* into the types of *Cœlenterata* and *Echinodermata*.

It is only in more recent years that Naturalists have been convinced of the close relationship between the *Porifera* and the *Polyps*

* R. Leuckart, "Ueber die Morphologie und Verwandschaftsverhältnisse niederer Thiere," Braunschweig, 1848.

and *Medusæ*, and have included the former in the group of the *Cœlenterata*. The *Porifera* were for a long time taken for plants, and more recently for Protozoon-stocks. While, however, the Polyps and Medusæ are distinguished as *Cnidaria* and are characterised by the possession of nematocysts and by the higher differentiation of their tissues, the *Porifera* or *Spongiaria* present more simple forms of tissue in the spongy structure of their body, and are without nematocysts. The entire structure of the body may, generally speaking, be described as radial, although the radial symmetry does not appear in most sponges, and among the *Cnidaria* transitions towards lateral symmetry are apparent. Similar organs are usually repeated round the body axis four or six times or in multiples of these numbers.

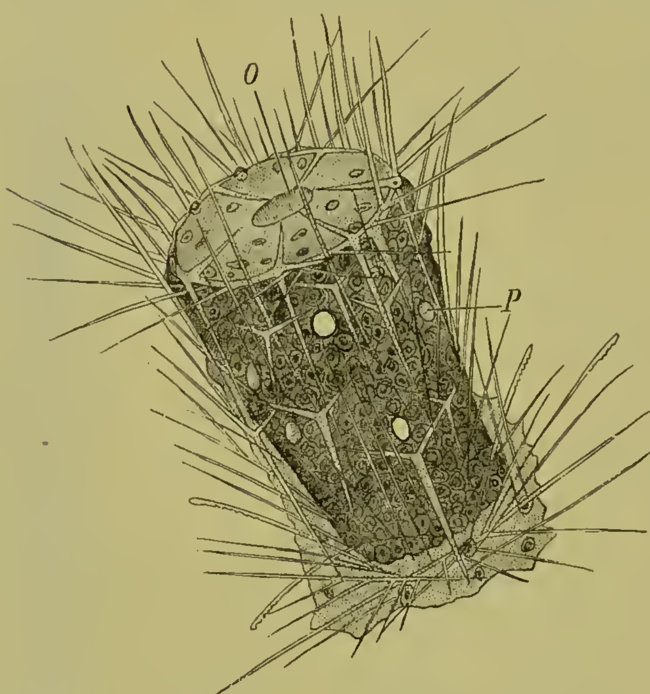



Fig. 152.—Young *Sycon* (after Fr. E. Schulze). *O*, Osculum or exhalent pore; *P*, pore in the wall.

Four distinct types of body form are met with in the group *Cœlenterata*, viz., that of the *Sponge*; of the *Polyp*; of the *Medusa*; and of the *Ctenophora*.

**The Sponge type.**—The simplest form of Sponge is represented by a fixed cylindrical tube, with an exhalent opening, the *Osculum*, at the free end (fig. 152). The contractile wall is supported by skeletal spicules, and is pierced by numerous inhalent pores, through which water and small food particles pass into the ciliated internal space. By the fusion of separate individuals, and by reproduction by gemmation, the latter being the more frequent mode, widely different Sponge stocks with complicated canal systems are formed. The polyzooid nature of these is made apparent by the presence of many oscula.

**The Polyp type.**—The Polyp has the form of a cylindrical or club-shaped tube, of which the posterior end is fixed and the opposed free pole pierced by an oral opening situated on a flat or conical prominence, the oral cone. The mouth is surrounded by one or more circles of tentacles, and leads into a simple cylindrical body cavity (*Hydroidpolyps*), or through an œsophageal tube into a complicated gastrovascular cavity (*Anthozoa*, fig. 153). The disappearance of the tentacles gives rise to the so-called *polypoid* form, which consists of a simple hollow tube furnished with a mouth.

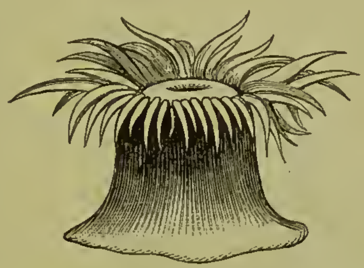


FIG. 153.—*Sagartia nivea* (after Gosse).

**The Medusa type.**—The free-swimming Medusa consists of a flattened disc or arched bell of gelatinous or cartilaginous consistence, from the under surface of which hangs a central stalk, the *manubrium*, bearing at its free end the mouth. This manubrium is frequently prolonged in the neighbourhood of the mouth into numerous lobes and tentacles, while from the edge of the disc arise a varying number of thread-like tentacles. The central cavity of the body, into which the hollow manubrium leads, is called the gastric cavity, and from it peripheral pouches or radial canals, the so-called vessels, run to the edge of the disc, where, as a rule, they are connected by a circular vessel.

The movements of the Medusa are effected by the alternate contraction and dilatation of the muscular under surface of the bell, *i.e.* of the subumbrella.

FIG. 154.—Medusa of the *Podocoryne carnea* with four tentacles at the edge of the disc, ovaries and manubrium, immediately after separation from the stock.

Rudimentary Medusæ, in which the manubrium and marginal tentacles are absent, are found. They are called Medusoids, and do not acquire individual independence, but remain attached to the body of the Medusa or Polyp from which they are budded.

The Medusæ and Polyps, in spite of the important differences between them, are but modifications of the same plan of structure. A Medusa may be compared to a free, flattened Polyp, possessing a large gastric cavity and a muscular and enlarged oral disc.

**The Ctenophor type** has fundamentally the form of a sphere, beset with eight meridional rows of vibratile plates, which, working like oars, serve for locomotion (fig. 155).

The body parenchyma in the Sponges consists principally of amœba-like cells, which frequently bear flagella, but which never produce stinging threads. In the *Cnidaria* (Polyps and Medusæ), in certain cells the peculiar structures known as *thread cells* (fig. 156) are developed. They consist of small capsules filled with fluid, and containing a sharp-pointed, spirally coiled thread; they are developed in cells which may be called cnidoblasts. Under certain mechanical conditions, *e.g.* under influence of the pressure produced by contact with a foreign body, these capsules burst, and the thread is suddenly protruded, and either fastens on to the cause of disturbance or pierces it, carrying into it a part of the fluid contents of the capsule. In many parts of the body, and especially on the tentacles, which serve for the capture of prey, these small microscopic weapons are collected in masses, and are often united in a peculiar arrangement to form batteries of thread cells.

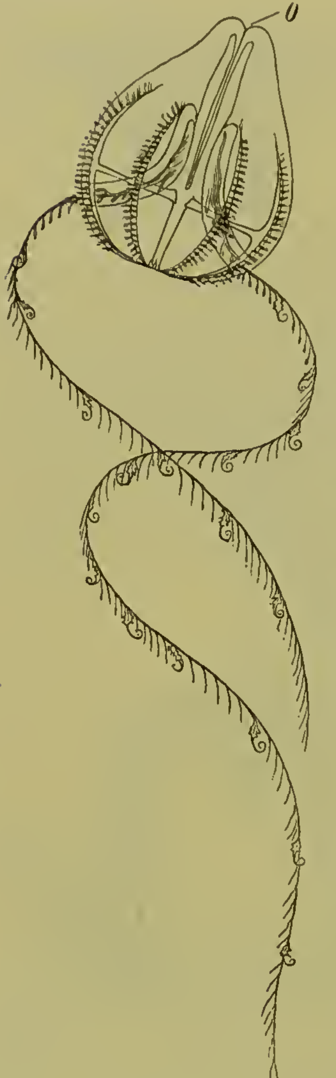



Fig. 155.—*Cydippe* (*Hormiphora*) *plumosa* (after Chun). *O*, mouth.


Fig. 156. — Nematocysts and cnidoblasts of *Siphonophora*. *a* and *b*, with the cnidocil of the cell. *c* to *e*, Nematocysts with evaginated thread.

The tissues (which are composed of cells) are generally arranged in two or three layers, of which the external layer is known as *ectoderm* and forms the outer skin, while the internal layer, *the endoderm,* lines the gastric cavity.

Between the two there is developed a delicate homogeneous supporting membrane or a stronger layer of connective tissue, in which the skeletal elements are developed. This intermediate layer is known as the *mesoderm.* The skeletal formations present great variations in structure and arrangement.

Muscles are formed in the deeper part of the ectoderm as cell-processes (the so-called neuromuscular fibres), but often penetrate within the mesoblast as independent cell structures. Sense epithelium, nerve fibrillæ, and ganglion cells also appear as differentiations of the ectoderm. The endoderm cells, on the other hand, often bear cilia, and are principally concerned in the processes of digestion and secretion.

Where the tissues are upon the whole of homogeneous structure, we find a preponderance of asexual reproduction by fission and gemmation. If the individual forms so produced remain united, they give rise to the colonies which are so widely distributed amongst the Polyps and Sponges, and which, by the continual multiplication of their individuals, may in course of time attain a very considerable size. But we also meet everywhere with the sexual reproduction, in that ova or spermatozoa are produced in the tissues, usually in the region of the gastrovascular cavity, in a definite portion of the body. As a rule, the ova come in contact with the spermatozoa away from the place where they are produced; either within the body cavity or outside the parent body, in the sea-water. In a few cases only do both the sexual elements originate in the body of the same individual, as, for example, in many of the *Spongiaria*, some *Anthozoa*, and in the hermaphrodite *Ctenophora.* As a rule, in the colonies of *Anthozoa* the monœcious arrangement of sexes obtains, the individuals of the same stock being partly male, partly female. Some are diœcious, *e.g. Veretillum, Diphyes, Apolemia.*

The development of the *Cœlenterata* for the most part consists of a metamorphosis. The just hatched young differ from the sexual animal in the form and structure of the body, and pass through larval stages. The greater number of them leave the egg as ciliated larvæ, which resemble somewhat an Infusorian in external appearance. They acquire a mouth, body cavity, and organs for obtaining food, either during their existence as free larvæ, or after attachment to solid surrounding objects in the sea. If the young forms, which differ from the sexual animal, gain the power of reproducing by budding, the development leads to various forms of alternation of generation.

---

## SUB-GROUPS.—I. SPONGIARIA * = PORIFERA.

*The body has a spongy consistence and is composed of masses of cells capable of amœboid movements and supported by a solid, calcareous, silicious, or horny skeleton. There are external pores, an internal canal system, and one or many exhalent openings (oscula).*

The sponges are at present universally regarded as *Cœlenterata*, and in this group they are distinguished from the *Cnidaria* (Polyps and Medusæ). They are composed of a contractile tissue, which is usually supported by a framework composed of spicules and fibres; the whole being arranged in such a manner that there exists on the external wall of the body larger and smaller openings; and in the interior a system of canals and spaces in which a continuous stream of water is maintained by the vibratile motion of cilia.

Amœba-like cells, net-like membranes of sarcode, flagellated cells, spindle cells, ova, spermatozoa, and tissues derived as excretions from cells are present as the histological elements of the Sponge body. The chief mass of the contractile parenchyma is composed of the amœba-like cells. These are granular cells, which, like Amœbæ, have no external membrane, can protrude and retract processes, and take into their interior foreign substances (fig. 157).

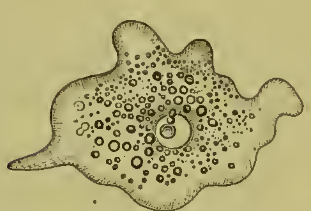


FIG. 157. — Amœba-like cell of Spongilla.

The framework or skeleton, which we find wanting only in the soft

* Literature: Nardo G. D., "System der Schwämme," Isis, 1833 and 1834. Grant, "Observations and Experiments on the Struct. and Funct. of Sponges." *Edin. Phil. Journal*, 1825—1827. Bowerbank, "On the Anatomy and Physiology of the Spongiadæ," *Philos. Trans.*, 1858 and 1862. Lieberkühn, "Beiträge zur Entwickelungsgeschichte der Spongillen," *Müller's Archiv.*, 1856. Lieberkühn, "Zur Anatomie der Spongien," *Müller's Archiv.*, 1857, 1859, 1863, 1865, 1867. O. Schmidt, "Die Spongien des adriatischen Meeres," Leipzig, W. Engelmann, 1862, as well as Supplement. Leipzig, W. Engelmann, 1864, 1866, 1868. E. Haeckel, "Die Kalkschwämme," 3 Bde, Berlin, 1872. Fr. E. Schulze, "Untersuchungen über den Bau und die Entwickelung der Spongien," *Zeitschrift, für wiss. Zool.*, 1876—1880.

gelatinous Sponges or *Myxospongia*, is composed of horny fibres or silicious or calcareous spicules.

The horny fibres form, without exception, anastomosing networks of varying degrees of thickness, and present a lamellated structure (fig. 158), which indicates that they are formed of a number of layers. They are formed by excretion as hardening portions of sarcode. The calcareous needles (fig. 159) are simple or three- and four-rayed spicules, and take their origin, as do the silicious structures, in the interior of cells. The silicious spicules present, however, an extraordinary variety of form: some of them constitute a connected framework of silicious fibres, and others are free silicious bodies with simple or branched central canals (fig. 160). The latter are found in the form of needles, spindles, cylinders, hooks, anchors, wheels, and crosses, and arise in nucleated cells, probably as deposits round a hardening of organic matter (central fibre).

Fig. 158.—Piece of network of horny fibres from *Euspongia equina*.

In order to understand the morphology of the *Spongiaria* we must begin by examining the structure of a young Sponge, which proceeds from the fixed larva. The young Sponge, after the formation of a ciliated gastric cavity and an exhalent opening or osculum, has the form of a simple hollow tube, the walls of which are pierced by pores for the passage of small food particles suspended in the water (fig. 152).

In this stage we can distinguish three layers — (1) an entoderm, formed of elongated flagellated cells; (2) a mesoderm, the skeletogenous cell layer, the structure of which recalls connective tissue; and (3) an ectoderm, which forms the outer layer of the Sponge, and consists of a flat epithelium. The cylindrical cells of the endoderm possess at their free ends surrounding the flagellum a delicate

Fig. 159.—Calcareous Spicules of *Sycon*.

hyaline marginal membrane, which, derived from a prolongation of the hyaline plasma, projects as a hollow cylinder resembling the protoplasmic collar of certain *Flagellata** (*Cylicomastiges*). [This

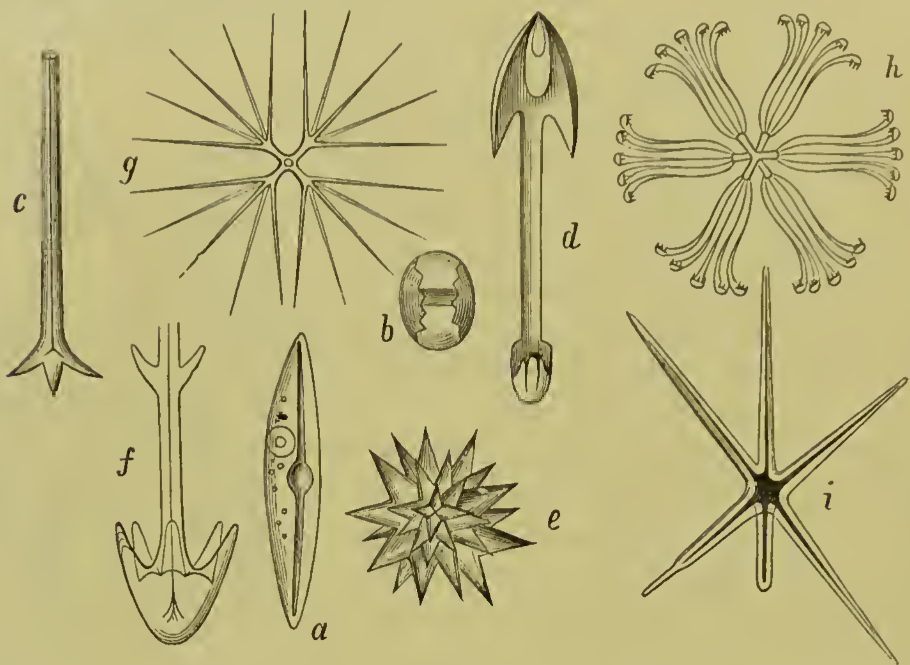



FIG. 160.—Silex bodies from different silicious Sponges. *a*, Silex needle from *Spongilla*, inside the cell. *b*, Amphidisc of a gemmule of *Spongilla*. *c*, Anchor from *Ancorina*. *d*, Hook from *Esperia*. *e*, Star from *Chondrilla*. *f*, Anchor from *Euplectella aspergillum*. *g*, *h*, needle rays from the same. *i*, Six-rayed needle from the same, with central canal.

structure is commonly known as the collar, and the cells as the collared cells.]


FIG. 161.—Portion of the external layer of *Spongilla* with the pores, *P* (after Luberkühn).

The thick layer in which the skeletal spicules are produced consists of a hyaline matrix, in which irregularly branched or spindle-shaped amœboid cells are embedded, and may be regarded, like the gelatinous substance of the *Acalepha*, as mesoderm, while the external, clearly defined, flat epithelium (also in the *Asconia*, *Leucosolenia*) is to be considered as ectoderm.

The pores or inhalent openings so characteristic of the Sponge body are in reality only intercellular spaces, and are able to close themselves, vanish and be replaced by new pores, which arise by the separation of one cell from another (fig. 161).

* Upon this ground Clark declared the Sponges to be nearly allied to the *Flagellata*, and regarded them as great colonies of the latter.

Amongst the calcareous Sponges, the simple Sponge with inhalent pores and terminal osculum (*Olynthus*-form) is represented by the stock-forming *Leucosolenia* (*Grantia*), which is composed of numerous hollow cylinders. The structure of this sponge has been described by Lieberkühn.

In the *Syconidæ* the body cavity has a more complicated form. The central space opens into secondary peripheral spaces or radial tubes, which are lined by ciliated cells, and open externally through the inhalent pores (fig. 162).

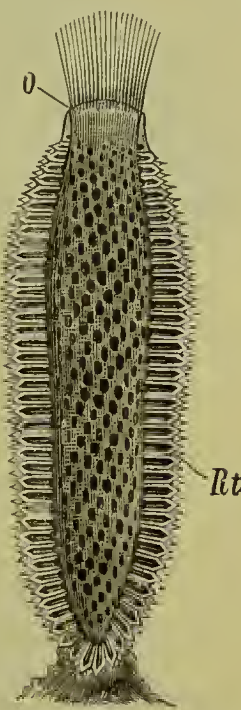



FIG. 162.—Longitudinal section through *Sycon raphanus*, slightly magnified. *O*, Osculum with collar of spicules; *Rt*, radial tubes which open into the central cavity.

In other calcareous Sponges (*Leuconidæ*) the radial canals have the form of irregular parietal canals, giving off branches to the periphery and possessing dilated, ciliated chambers. This form of internal canal system is also found in most of the stock-forming, silicious Sponges (fig. 163).

Sponge forms may become more complicated by the formation of stocks; the originally simple Sponge, which has developed from a single ciliated larva, gives rise by budding and incomplete fission to a polyzoid sponge body; or several originally separate individuals, each of which has originated from a single larva, fuse together to form a compound sponge stock. Both these methods of growth are repeated in a similar manner in the formation of the stocks of Polyps (fig. 164). In the same way that the fan-like nets of the Fan Coral (*Rhipidogorgia flabellum*) are formed by the repeated fusion of its branches, the gastrovascular cavities of which anastomose, so also in the case of the branching sponges, as a result of the same process, reticulate, or coiled or even massive stocks are formed (fig. 165).

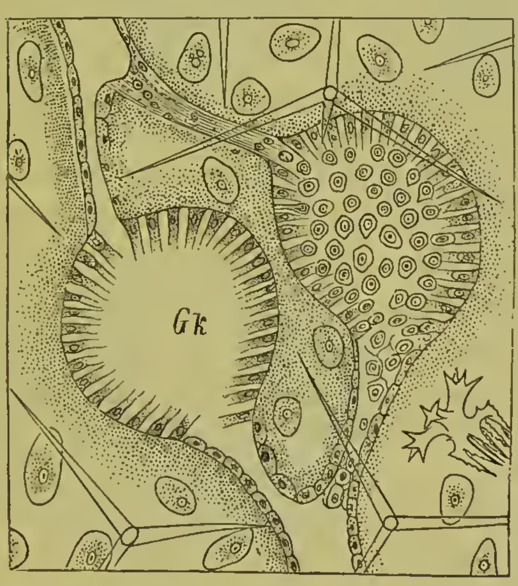



FIG. 163.—Section of *Corticium candelabrum* (after Fr. E. Schulze). *Gk*, Ciliated chamber of the parietal canal.

In this case the canal system, in which the modifications before described for each individual Sponge are repeated, becomes more complex, partly through the formation of anastomoses, and partly because irregular gaps and winding passages make their appearance between the fused branches of the stock and form spaces which lead into the ciliated cavities.

Reproduction takes place mainly asexually by fission and the production of germs or *gemmules*, but also by the formation of ova and sperm capsules. The gemmules are in the fresh-water *Spongilla* masses of cells which are surrounded by a firm shell composed of silicious structures (*amphidiscs*), and, like encysted Protozoa, pass through a long period of rest and inactivity. After the expiration of the cold and sterile season of the year, the contents pass out of the opening of the capsule and generally surround the latter, and with increasing growth become differentiated into amœboid cells and all the essential parts of a new small sponge body. Multiplication by means of gemmules is also common among the marine Sponges. The gemmules take their origin under certain conditions as small globules surrounded by a membrane. The contents are essentially formed of sponge cells and spicules, and, after a longer or shorter period of inactivity, reach the exterior by the rupture of the membrane.

FIG. 164.—*Axinella polypoides* (after O. Schmidt).

Sexual reproduction was first demonstrated with certainty by Lieberkühn for *Spongilla*, but more recently has been shown to exist in almost every group of Sponges. In most cases the ova and spermatozoa seem to reach maturity at different times in the same Sponge. The spermatozoa are needle-shaped, and lie in small spaces lined with cells. The ova, like the mother cells of the spermatozoa, are modified cells of the parenchyma, and are derived from cells of the same tissue layer (mesoderm) in which the needles and skeletal structures take their origin. The ova are naked amœboid cells, and pass into the canal system, while in the viviparous *Sycons* they remain in the mesoderm, and there undergo their development. It is only later that the ciliated embryos or larvæ fall into the canal system, pass out, and attach themselves, to develop into a young sponge.

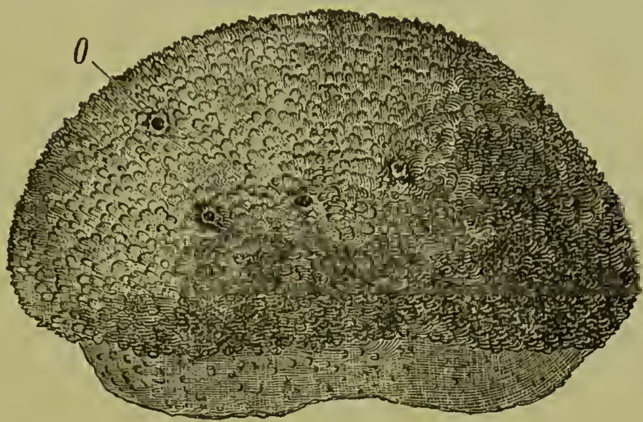



FIG. 165.—*Euspongia officinalis adriatica*, with a number of oscula, *O* (after Fr. E. Schulze).

The embryonic development among the calcareous sponges is most accurately known for the *Syconidæ* from the investigations of Fr. Schulze and Barrois.

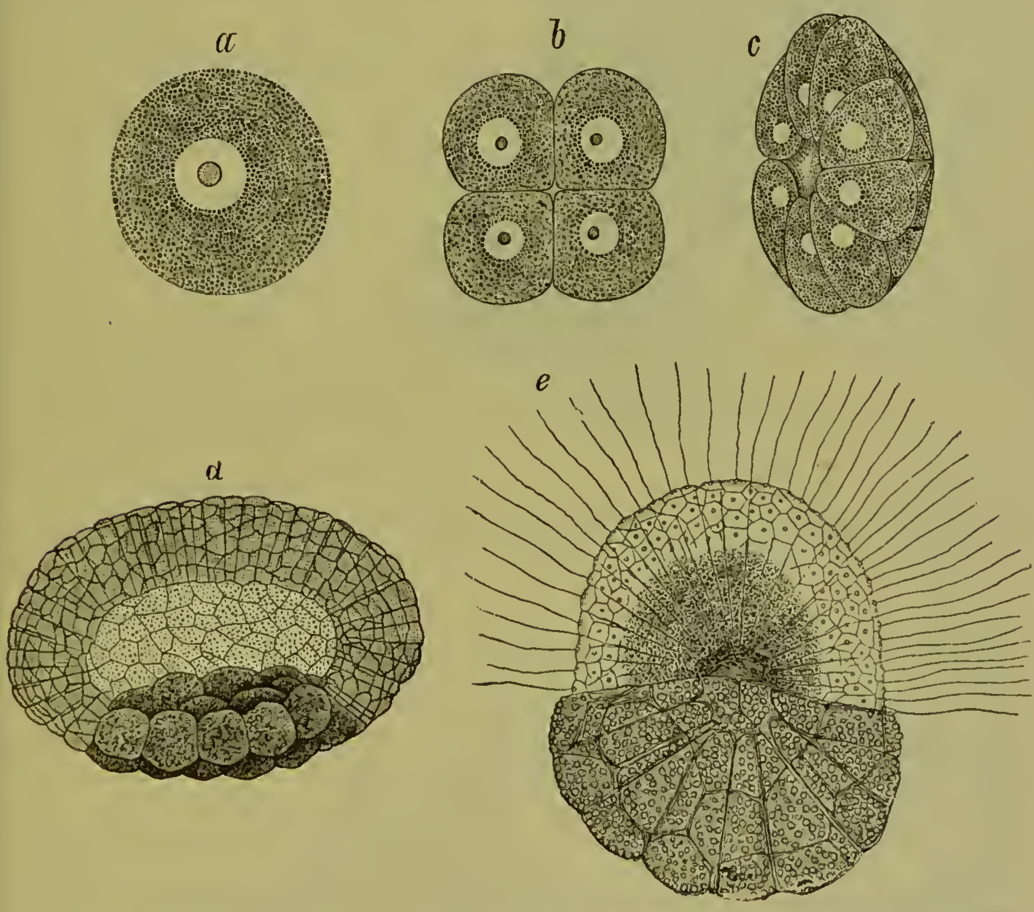



FIG. 166.—Development of *Sycon raphanus* (after Fr. E. Schulze). *a*, Ripe ovum. *b*, Stage with four segmentation cells. *c*, Stage of segmentation with sixteen cells. *d*, Blastosphere with large dark granular cells at the open pole. *e*, Free-swimming larva, one-half of the body (entodermal) being formed of long ciliated cells, the other (ectodermal) of large granular cells.

After the completion of the tolerably regular segmentation (fig. 166, *a—c*), *Sycon* (*Sycandra*) *raphanus* passes through a blastosphere stage, during which the greater half of the ovum consists of clear cylindrical cells, and the smaller half at the still open pole of large dark granular cells (fig. 166, *d*). The cylindrical cells of the larger half develop cilia, and the embyro passes out of the body cavity and becomes a free-swimming larva, which attaches itself and alters its shape in such a manner that the dark cells grow over the ciliated portion of the globe, which is meanwhile invaginating. The ectoderm and mesoderm are derived from the dark granular cells, and the ciliated cells give rise to the entoderm of the gastric cavity. Later on the body of the sponge becomes cylindrical, the osculum makes its appearance, and calcareous needles appear in the wall, which becomes pierced by pores (fig. 167).

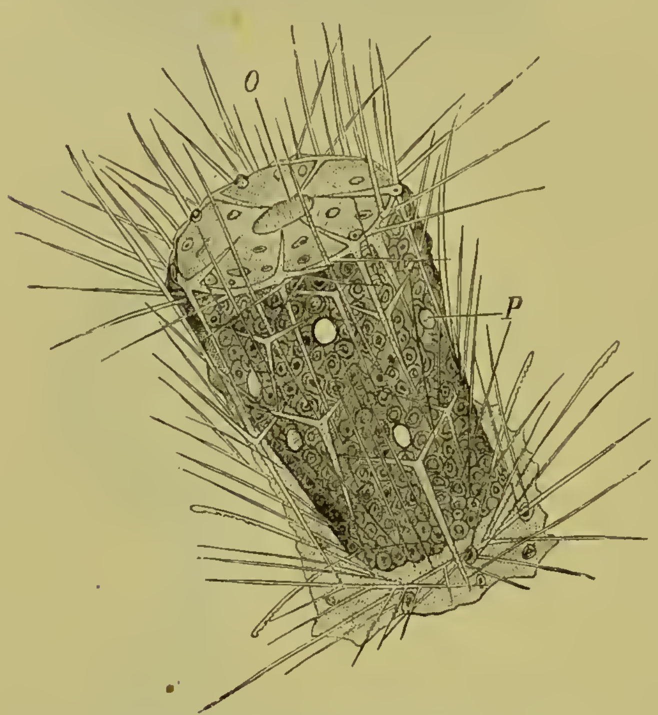


FIG. 167.—Young *Sycon* (after Fr. E. Schulze). *O*, Osculum or exhalent aperture; *P*, pores of the wall.

With the exception of *Spongilla*, the sponges are marine, and are met with under very different conditions, and covering a wide area of distribution. The horny sponges live in shallow seas, as also the *Myxospongiæ* and *Chalineæ*, or siliciceratous Sponges; while the *Hexactinellidæ* inhabit very considerable depths. Petrified remains of sponges are also found preserved in various formations, for instance in the chalk; and these remains differ much from the greater number of those living. On the other hand, the glassy sponges of the deep sea agree so fully with the ancient forms that they seem to be the direct descendants of the latter. Finally, many of the principal groups extend back into the palæozoic age, in which *Lithistidæ* and *Hexactinellidæ* especially are met with in the most ancient Silurian strata. Hence palæontology affords us no facts for determining the phylogenetic development of the *Porifera.*

## CLASS I.—SPONGIA.

(*With the characteristics of the Group*).

*Order* 1.—MYXOSPONGIA (gelatinous sponges). Soft, fleshy sponges, without any skeleton, with a hyaline gelatinous mesoderm, often containing fibrous cords. The ectoderm cells are fairly elongated, and bear flagella.

Fam. **Halisarcidæ.** *Halisarca* Duj. *H. lobularis* O. S., colour dark violet; encrusts stones; Sebenico. *H. Dujardinii* Johnst., forms a white encrustment on the Laminaria of the North Sea.

*Order* 2.—CERAOSPONGIA (horny sponges). For the most part branched or massive sponge stocks, with a framework of horny fibres, in which grains of silex and sand are present as foreign bodies.

Fam. **Spongiadæ.** *Euspongia* O. S., with very elastic fibrous framework, of equal strength throughout, mostly capable of being used for bath and washing sponges. *E. adriatica* O. S., *equina* O. S., *zimocca* O. S., in the Greek Archipelago, *molissima* O. S., Levantine sponge, cup-shaped. *Spongelia elegans* Nardo.

*Order* 3.—HALICHONDRIÆ (siliciceratous sponges). Sponges of very various shapes, with usually uniaxal silicious needles, simple silicious spicula, which are connected by delicate or firmer plasmatic structures, disposed in networks or enclosed in sponge fibres. Of the numerous families the following may be mentioned :—

Fam. **Chrondrosidæ.** (*Gumminea*), Coriaceous sponges. *Chrondrosia reniformis* Nardo.

Fam. **Suberitidæ.** Sponges of massive form, with knobbed silex spicules, which, as a rule, are arranged in network. *Suberites* Nardo. *S. domuncula* Nardo, Adriatic, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Spongillidæ.** Massive or branched with simple spicules, connected by investments of sarcode. *Spongilla fluviatilis* Lk., *Sp. lacustris* Lk.

*Order* 4.—HYALOSPONGIA. Sponges with a firm, often hyaline lattice-work of silex spicules, which present the most perfect form of six-rayed spicules (*Hexactinellidæ*), and may be cemented together by a stratified silicious substance.

Fam. **Hexactinellidæ** (glassy sponges). With connected silicious framework and network of stratified silicious fibres, which join the six-rayed silicious bodies, frequently with isolated spicules and tufts of silex hairs, which serve to attach the sponge. They live for the most part at considerable depths, and are allied to the fossil *Ventriculitidæ*. *Dactylocalyx* Bbk. *Euplectella* Owen

*E. aspergillum* Owen, Philippines. In the body cavity of the glassy sponge are found *Aega spongiphila*, and a small *Palæmon*. *Hyalonema Sieboldii* Gray, Japan. *H. boreale* Lovén, North Sea.

*Order* 5.— CALCISPONGIÆ, Calcareous sponges. Usually colourless, sometimes red-coloured sponges and sponge stocks, the skeletons of which consist of calcareous spicules. These are either simple needles (as they first appear in the embryonic form) or three or four-armed cross spicules. Very often, however, we meet with two or all three forms of spicules in the same sponge.

Fam. **Asconidæ** (*Leucosolenidæ*, Ascons). Calcareous sponges, the walls of which are pierced by simple canals. *Grantia* Lk. (*Leucosolenia* Bbk.), these are divided by E. Haeckel into seven genera, *Ascyssa*, *Ascetta*, *Ascilla*, *Ascortis*, *Asculmis*, *Ascaltis*, *Ascandra*, according to the form of the calcareous needles or spicula. *Gr. botryoides* Lk. (*Ascandra complicata* E. Haeck), Heligoland, nearly allied to *Gr. Lieberkühnii* O. S. from the Mediterranean and Adriatic.

Fam. **Leuconidæ** (*Grantiidæ*, Leucons), calcareous sponges, with thick wall, which is pierced by branched channels. *Leuconia* Grt., divided by E. Haeckel into seven genera, according to the form of the calcareous spicules—*Leucyssa*, *Leucetta*, *Leucilla*, *Leucortis*, *Leuculmis*, *Leucaltis*. *Leucandra*. L. (*Leucetta*) *primigenia* E. Haeck.

Fam. **Sycondiæ** (Sycons). Mostly solitary calcareous sponges, with thick walls, which are pierced by straight radial tubes. The latter project on the surface as conical prominences of the wall. *Sycon* Risso, divided by E. Haeckel into seven genera—*Sycyssa*, *Sycetta*, *Sycilla*. *Sycortis*, *Syculmis*, *Sycaltis*, *Sycandra*.

---

## SUB-GROUP II.—CNIDARIA (CŒLENTERATA, s. str.)

*Cœlenterata, with consistent tissues not pierced by a system of pores; the osculum is replaced by a mouth; with thread cells in the epithelial tissues.*

The Cnidaria represent the Cœlenterata in a more restricted sense; and in their structure the radial symmetry appears more strongly marked. In them the amœboid cell, as an independent tissue unit, loses its importance for the functions of locomotion and nourishment, although the entoderm cells often possess the power of absorbing solid particles, after the manner of the amœbæ. The gastrovascular apparatus, on the contrary, functions distinctly as a digestive and circulatory body cavity. Pore systems in the skin are not required for the introduction of nourishment, since the mouth, which corresponds to the osculum, provides for the reception of food. Nematocysts are very commonly found as productions of the epithelial cells, principally of the ectoderm, but also of the entoderm. Each *Cnidoblast*, from the contents of which a nematocyst is developed, possesses a fine superficial plasmatic process (*Cnidocil*), which is probably very sensitive to mechanical stimuli, and occasions the bursting of the capsule.

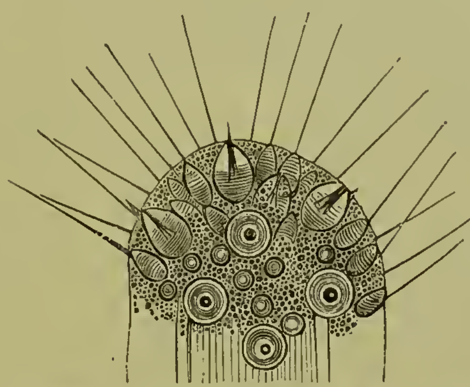


Fig. 168.—Group of nematocysts at the end of the tentacle of a *Scyphistoma*

Very frequently the Cnidoblasts are found thickly grouped together at certain places, and form wart-like swellings or batteries (fig. 168). The differentiation of tissues and organs also appears to have reached a higher stage in the *Cnidaria*, in comparison with the *Porifera*, in which cnidoblasts have not hitherto been discovered. Sense cells, in particular, are found in the ectoderm, and these are not seldom grouped together as specific sense organs. Nerve cells and fibres are also present; the latter often form a deeper layer of fibrous tracts beneath the superficial layer of the ectoderm, with which they stand in connection through processes of the sense cells. Amongst many Medusæ (*Craspedota* and *Charybdea*) we find a single or double nerve ring near the edge of the disc, while in the Polyps (*Actinia*), the nerve fibres have a more irregular distribution (fig. 169).

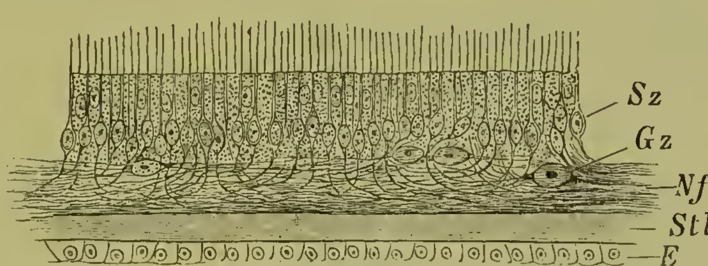



Fig. 169.—Longitudinal section through the nerve ring of *Charybdea*. *Sz*, Sense cells in the ectoderm; *Gz*, ganglion cells; *Nf*, nerve fibres; *Stl*, supporting lamella; *E*, entoderm cells.

## CLASS I.—ANTHOZOA* = ACTINOZOA (*Coral polyps*).

*Polyps with œsophageal tube and mesenteric folds, with internal generative organs (no medusoid sexual generation), usually with solid mesodermal calcareous skeleton.*

The polyps of the Actinozoa are distinguished from the polyps

* Ehrenberg, "Beiträge zur physiologischen Kenntniss der Korallenthiere im Allgemeinen und besonders des rothen Meeres." Ehrenberg, "Über die Natur und Bildung der Korallenbänke," *Abh. der Berl. Akad*, 1832. Ch. Darwin,

of the Hydromedusæ by their larger size and the more complicated structure of their gastrovascular cavity (fig. 43). The latter is not a simple cavity in the body, but is divided by numerous vertical partitions, the *mesenteric folds*, into a system of vertical pouches which communicate with one another at the bottom of the gastric cavity. In addition a system of capillary passages is also frequently present in the body wall. At their upper extremity the pouches are continuous with the canals leading into the hollow tentacles, since the edges of the mesenteries bounding them unite with the wall of the oral tube which hangs from the mouth. An opening may however persist in each mesentery underneath the oral disc, putting the neighbouring chambers in communication. The oral tube has the significance of an œsophagus, and possesses at its internal end, where the peripheral chambers open into the central cavity, an opening capable of being closed, by means of which its cavity stands in communication with the gastrovascular system. The mouth is used not only for the reception of food, but also for the rejection of excreta. The secretions of the coiled and twisted filaments (mesenteric filaments) at the edge of the mesenteries must be regarded as aiding in digestion (fig. 43).

The body of the polyp consists of an external coating of cells, an internal layer lining the gastric cavity, and an interposed connective tissue layer of very various thickness and structure (mesoderm). The latter appears rarely as gelatinous tissue, and more frequently as a tough homogeneous connective tissue containing spindle and star-shaped cells (*Alcyonidæ, Gorgonidæ*). This tissue can also assume the form of fibrous connective tissue, and become the seat of calcareous deposits. Muscle fibres, which take their origin from the entoderm cells, can also appear in the mesoderm; while the newly discovered ectodermal sense epithelium and nerve fibrillæ keep their superficial position in the region of the oral disc and on the tentacles. The generative products arise on the mesenteries near the mesenteric filaments as band-shaped or folded thickenings, and, according to Hertwig, are products of the entoderm. The sexes are for the most part separate, although hermaphrodite individuals

"The Structure and Distribution of Coral Reefs," London, 1842. J. D. Dana, "United States Expl. Expedition. Zoophytes." Philadelphia, 1846. M. Edwards et J. Haime, "Histoire naturelle des Corailliares," 3 Tom, Paris, 1857—1860. Lacaze Duthiers. "Histoire naturelle du Corail." Paris, 1864. Gosse, "Actinologia britannica," London, 1860. Kölliker. "Anatomisch-systematische Beschreibung der Alcyonarien," 1872. Moseley, "The Structure and Relations of the Alcyonarian Heliopora cœrulea, etc." *Philosoph. Transactions of the Roy. Soc.*, 1876.

are met with. In rare cases all the individuals are hermaphrodite, *e.g.*, *Cerianthus.*

The embryos produced from the fertilised ovum, which undergo a complete segmentation, are frequently born alive as cilated larvæ, and possess an internal gastric cavity, and an oral aperture situated at the pole, which is directed backwards during movement. They then fix themselves by the pole opposed to the oral aperture and protrude in the region of the mouth first two, then four, eight, twelve, etc., tentacles; in the Octactinia eight tentacles at once.

In the *Polyactinia,* the tentacles and mesenteric pouches of which are arranged in multiples of six, it was till recently erroneously believed with M. Edwards that six primary mesenteries were first developed, then six secondary between them; then twelve were formed, then twenty-four, etc., so that mesenteries of equal size were of equal age and belonged to a cycle formed at one time. Lacaze Duthiers however produced proofs that the increase of mesenteries and of tentacles follows an entirely different law of growth, and that these structures in the first phases of development show a bilateral symmetry; and it is only later that the six radial symmetry appears by the equalization of the alternating elements of unequal age. A remnant of the primitive bilateral symmetry is moreover often preserved in the elongated mouth slit, which falls in the plane of the two primary tentacles.

Amongst the *Polyactinia* the very young larvæ of the Actinia (*A. mesembryanthemum, Sagartia, Bunodes*) have been most accurately investigated. They are small ciliated planulæ, one pole of which is somewhat drawn out and bears a tuft of longer cilia. The opposite end of the body is flattened and pierced with a mouth. This leads by a short œsophageal tube, which arises by invagination, into the narrow gastric cavity. The first differentiation consists in the appearance of two folds placed opposite each other, which divide the gastric cavity into two unequal chambers. The mouth is drawn out in the form of a longitudinal slit symmetrical with and at right angles to these primary mesenteric folds; so that by means of them the position of the median plane can be determined. Two new folds soon arise in the larger chamber, which we will call the anterior; these lie opposite to one another and symmetrically with the median plane; so that four chambers are now present, an anterior, a posterior, and two smaller lateral ones. A third pair of folds are then developed in the posterior space, and a fourth pair follow quickly in the lateral chambers: the fourth pair are slightly smaller than the preceding ones. After an interval four new folds appear, one on each side of the two primary mesenteries (fig. 170). The twelve gastrovascular chambers thus formed gradually become equal in size, and can be separated into two unpaired chambers situated in the median plane, and into five pairs placed symmetrically on either side of it.

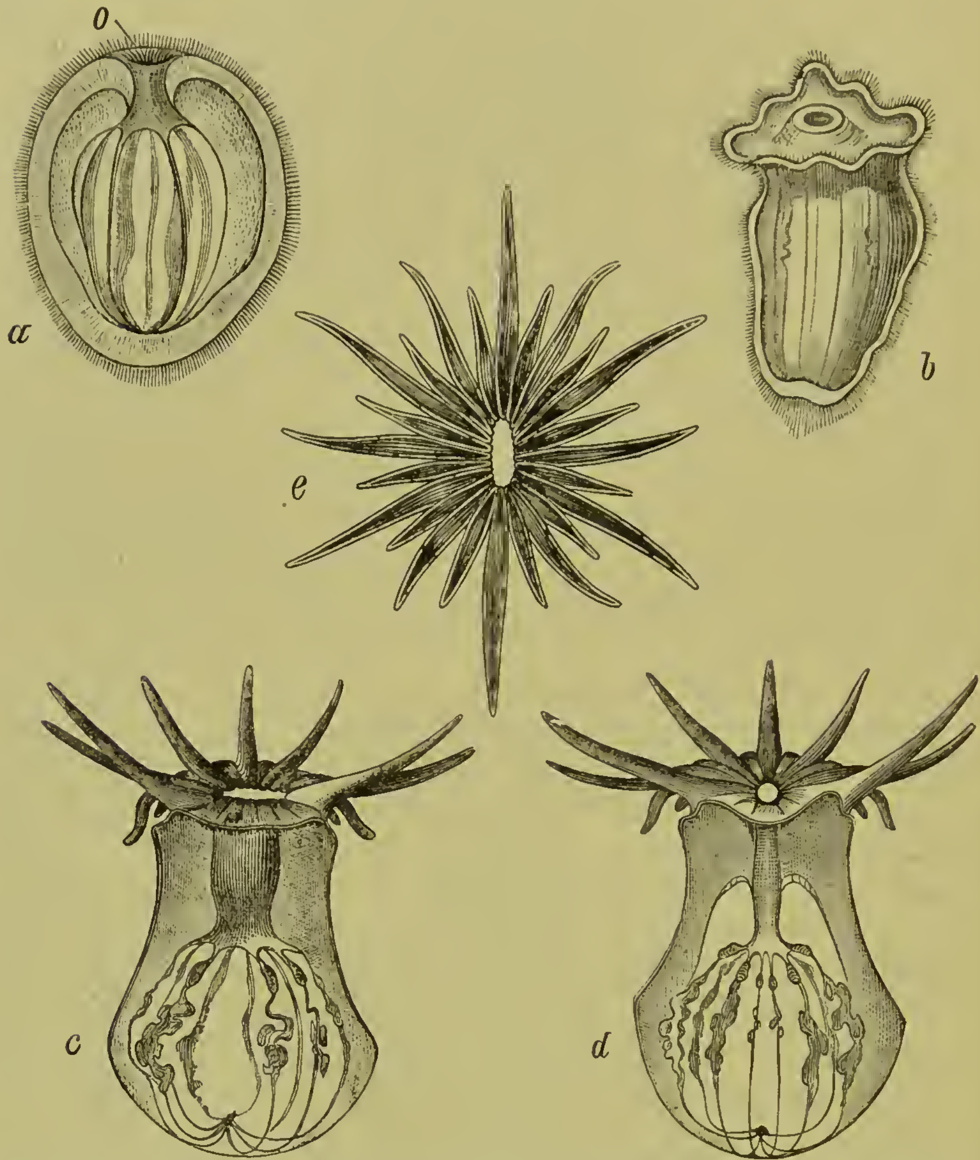



Fig. 170.—From the history of the development of *Actinia mesembryanthemum* (after Lacaze Duthiers). *a*, Larva with eight mesenteries and two coiled bands; *O*, mouth. *b*, Slightly more advanced larva with the commencement of eight tentacles. *c*, *d*, Young *Actinia* with twenty-four tentacles, two longitudinal sections at right angles to one another. *e*, Mouth and tentacles seen from the oral surface.

The tentacles begin to develop before the appearance of the fifth and sixth pairs of mesenteries. They appear at the oral end of the gastrovascular chambers, and the tentacle of the anterior unpaired chamber* appears first, surpassing in size those which follow it. The opposite (posterior) unpaired tentacle and the other paired tentacles then make their first appearance as small wart-like prominences. When the twelve tentacles have been formed, they become alternately equalised, so that six larger tentacles, amongst which are reckoned the unpaired tentacles of the long axis, alternate with the same number of smaller ones, and we have two circles of six tentacles of the first and the same number of the second order.

The asexual reproduction by gemmation and fission is of great significance. Buds can be formed in various positions, even at the oral end, in which case a strobila-like form appears. In *Blastotrochus* the buds appear at right angles to the axis of the parent animal (fig. 171).

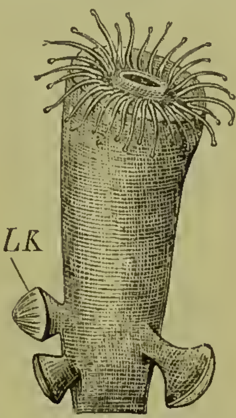


FIG. 171.—*Blastotrochus nutrix* (after C. Semper). *LK*, Lateral bud.

If the individuals so produced remain connected with one another, a polyp-stock is formed, which may attain very various forms and great size. As a rule the individuals are imbedded in a common body mass, the *cœnenchym*, and their gastric cavities communicate more or less directly, so that the juices acquired in the individual polyps penetrate into the collective stock. This stock affords us an excellent example of an animal community built up out of similar members. The formation of the generative products alone is distributed, as a rule, to different individuals, which, however, unite in discharging all animal and vegetative functions together (fig. 172).

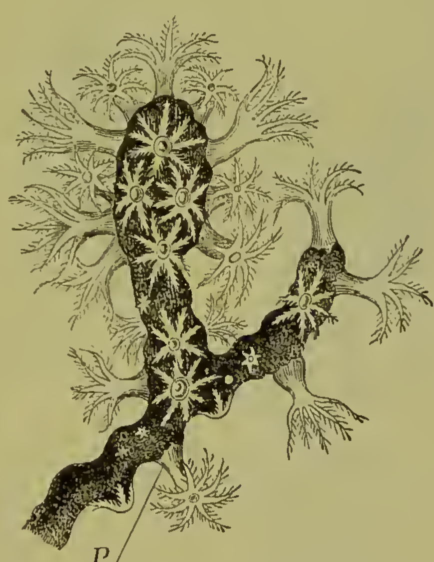


FIG. 172.—Branch of a Polyparium of *Corallium rubrum* (after Lacaze Duthiers). *P*, Polyp.

The skeletal formations of the polyps are specially worthy of remark (*Polyparia*). In almost every case, with the exception of *Actinia*, there is a deposit of solid calcareous matter in the mesoderm, and

* Like the first tentacle of the young Scyphistoma polyp among the *Hydro-Medusæ*.

according to the density of this deposit, there is produced a leathery, chalky, or even stony framework.

If isolated needles or toothed rods (fig. 173) of calcareous substance are distributed beneath the epidermis and the cœnenchyma, the polyp-stock has a fleshy, leathery nature (*Alcyonaria*); but if, on the contrary, the calcareous structures are fused together or are cemented together in a larger mass, a solid, more or less firm, often stony calcareous skeleton is developed (*Madreporaria*). In the individual animals the formation of this sub-epidermic skeleton begins on the foot surface, and advances thence in such a manner that near the calcareous foot-plate there is formed in the under part of the polyp body a more or less cup-shaped theca, from which numerous perpendicular plates, the *septa*, radiate inwards. In the cup-shaped calcareous framework of the individual polyp, the structure of the gastrovascular cavity is repeated, with the exception that the calcareous septa correspond to the interspaces of the mesenteries (fig 174). The number of the septa increases as does that of the mesenteries and tentacles with the age of the polyp according to the same laws. At the same time a great number of systematically important modifications of the skeleton are effected by further differentiation. A column-like, calcareous mass sometimes arises in the axis of the cup (*columella*), and in its neighbourhood a circle of calcareous rods (*pali*), which are separate from the septa (fig. 175). There may further be formed between the lateral surfaces of the septa processes of calcareous substance as interseptal rods or horizontal shelves (*dissepimenta*): also on the outer side of the wall of the theca ribs (*costæ*) projecting beyond its external surface, and similar dissepiments may be produced between these.

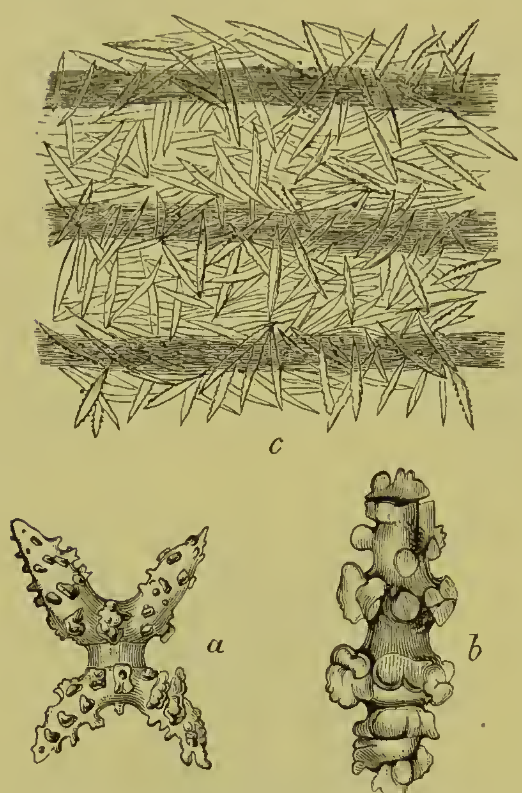



FIG. 173.—Calcareous bodies (*Sclerodermites*) of *Alcyonaria* (after Kölliker). *a*, of *Plexaurella*. *b*, of *Gorgonia*. *c*, of *Alcyonium*.

The important diversities of form in the polyp stocks are not only occasioned by the differences of structure of the skeleton of the

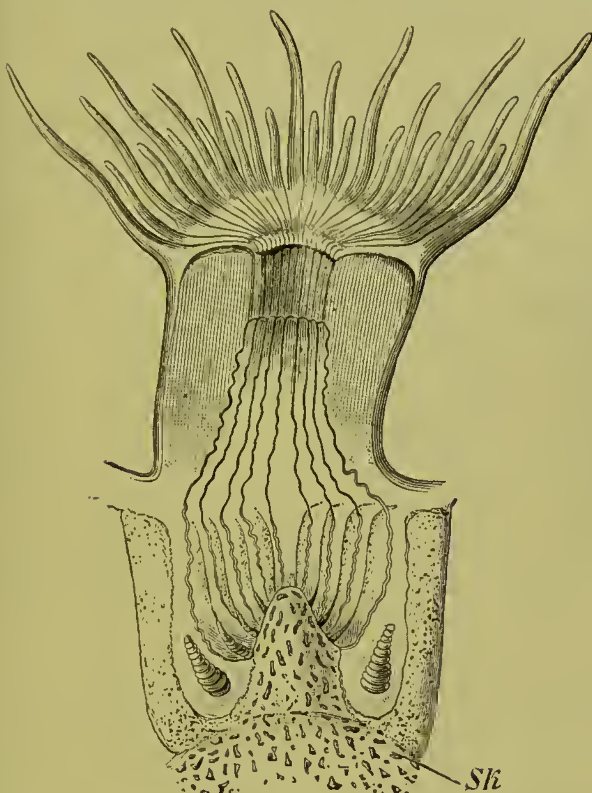



FIG. 174.—Vertical section through a polyp of *Astroides calycularis* (after Lacaze Duthiers). The mouth opening and œsophageal tube are seen as well as the mesenteries fastened to the same; also the calcareous septa between the mesenteries, and the columella of the skeleton, *Sk*.

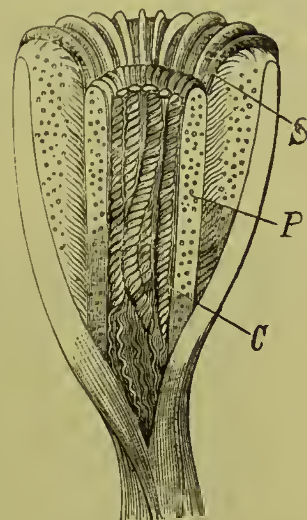



FIG. 175.—Vertical section through the cup of *Cyathina Cyathus* (after Milne Edwards). *S*, Septa; *P*, pali; *C*, columella.

polyp, but are also the resultant of varying methods of growth by gemmation and imperfect fission. According to the method, numerous modifications of branched stocks are distinguished, *e.g.*, *Madrepores* (fig. 176), *Oculinidæ* (fig. 177), and the lamellar and massive stocks as *Astræa* (fig. 178) and the *Mæandrinidæ* (fig. 179).

FIG. 176.—*Madrepora verrucosa* after Ed. H.

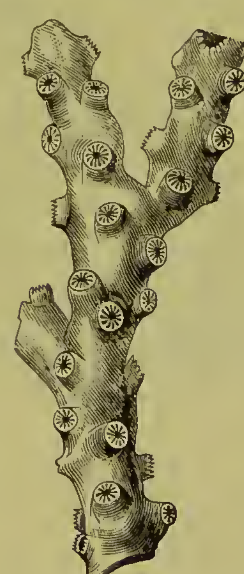


FIG. 177.—Branch of *Oculina speciosa* (after Ed. H).

The *Anthozoa* are all inhabitants of the sea, and live mostly in the warmer zones, but certain types of the fleshy

*Octactinia* and *Actinia* are distributed in all latitudes. The polyps which build banks and reefs are confined to a zone extending about 28 degrees on either side of the equator, and only here and there extend beyond these bounds. They live for the most part near the coast, and produce there in course of time rocky masses of colossal extent by the accumulations of their stony calcareous frameworks. These masses may form *coral reefs* (*atolls, barrier reefs, fringing reefs*), which are perilous to shipping, and may also become the foundations of islands. In both cases a gradual alteration of level, the raising of the bottom of the sea, assists the work of the coral animals. The presence of the coral banks in the deep sea is, on the other hand, due to a continual sinking of the sea-bottom.

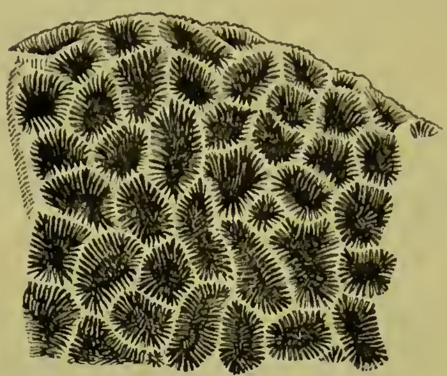


FIG. 178.—*Astræa (Goniastræa) pectinata* Ehrbg. (after Klunzinger).

The part which the *Anthozoa* take in the alteration of the earth's surface is considerable. In the present time they protect the coast from the consequences of the breaking of the waves and assist in the formation of islands and rocks by producing immense masses of calcareous matter. In earlier geological epochs they have played a still more important part judging from the great thickness of the coral formations of the Palæozoic period and of the Jurassic formation.

FIG. 179.—*Mæandrina (Cœloria) arabica* Klz. (after Klunzinger).

### *Order* 1.—RUGOSA = TETRACORALLA.

*Palæozoic Corals with numerous symmetrically arranged septa, grouped in multiples of four.*

To these belong the families of the *Cyathophyllidæ, Stauridæ, etc.*

### *Order* 2.—ALCYONARIA = OCTACTINIA.

*Polyps and polyp stocks with eight plumed tentacles and the same number of uncalcified mesenteric folds.*

The calcareous secretions of the so-called cutis lead to the formation of fleshy polyparia or of friable crusts surrounding an axial skeleton, which is sometimes horny, sometimes calcareous and stony, or of rigid calcareous tubes (*Tubipora*). In all cases definite calcareous bodies, the sclerodermites, form the foundation of the skeleton. The embryos are mostly born as ciliated larvæ, without mesenteries or tentacles. The separation of the sexes in different individuals is the rule (fig. 172).

1. Fam. **Alcyonidæ.** Fixed polyp stocks without axial skeleton, usually with a fleshy, leathery polyparium, with only a slight deposition of calcareous matter in the cutis. The colonies arise either through lateral gemmation, when they form lobed and ramified masses, *e.g. Alcyonium palmatum*, Pall., *digitatum* L., or the individual animals are connected by basal buds and root-like processes, *e.g.*, *Cornularia crassa* Edw.

2. Fam. **Pennatulidæ** (Sea feathers). Polyp stocks, the naked free basis of which is embedded in sand and mud, usually with horny, easily bent axial skeleton. There are small sterile polyps as well as the sexual animals. The presence of an opening in the stem for the ejection and reception of water is worthy of remark. The animals sometimes are placed on the side twigs of the stem, and the polyparium is feather-like, *e.g.*, *Pennatula rubra* Ellis; sometimes they are distributed on all sides of the simple stem, *e.g.*, the diœcious *Veretillum cynomorium* Pall. In other cases the polyparium appears flat and shaped like a kidney, with a bulbous root without an axis, *Renilla violacea* Quoy. Gaim., or a kind of umbel is formed by the aggregation of the polyps at the upper end of a long stem, *Umbellula Thomsonii* Köll.

3. Fam. **Gorgonidæ.** The fixed colonies possess a horny or calcareous tree-like branched axial skeleton, which is surrounded by a friable crust, or by a softer parenchyma containing calcareous particles. The body cavities of the individual animals communicate by branched vessel-like tubes which contain the common nutritive fluid. The axis is either horny, flexible, and unjointed, as, *e.g.*, *Gorgonia verrucosa* Pall., (*Rhipidogorgia*) *flabellum* L., or composed of alternating horny and calcareous segments, as, *e.g.*, *Isis hippuris* Lam., *Melithæa ochracea* Lam., or stony and formed of calcareous matter. The red coral, *Corallium rubrum* Lam., falls under the last head, and yields the coral stone which is used in jewellery. This species is found in the Mediterranean, on the rocky coasts of Algiers and Tunis, and there forms an important object of industry.

4. Fam. **Tubiporidæ**, organ coral. The poliparia resembling the pipes of an organ. The animals are placed in parallel calcareous tubes connected by horizontal plates. *Tubipora Hemprichtii* Ehrbg.

### *Order* 3.—ZOANTHARIA = HEXACTINIA.

*Polyps and polyp stocks, whose tentacles usually alternate in several circles, and are either six or some multiple of six in number.*

The body is seldom quite soft, or with a leathery framework; as a rule it has a calcareous stony polyparium with radial striations. Separated sexes are the rule, but hermaphrodite polyps (*Actinia*) are not seldom to be met with. The polyps very generally retain their embryos for a long time, so that they are born eight or twelve rayed, with rudimentary tentacles. Many give rise to coral reefs and islands (figs. 175—179).

1. ANTIPATHARIA. Mostly with only six tentacles, and horny skeletal axis.

Fam. **Antipathidæ.** Polyp stocks with soft non-calcareous body, but with simple or branched axial skeleton. Only six tentacles surround the mouth, *e.g.*, *Antipathes* Pall.

2. ACTINIARIA, with no hard structure.

Fam. **Actinidæ,** with soft body; sometimes single animals with several alternating circles of tentacles, *Actinia* L.; sometimes connected in stolons and aggregated to form stocks, *Zoanthus* Cuv. The former are able, by means of their contractile foot, to leave their place of attachment and to move freely. Many reach a relatively considerable size, and possess beautiful colours. Under the name of sea anemones they are the ornaments of salt water aquaria. *Actinia mesembryanthemum* L. The skin sometimes secretes a glutinous mass filled with nematocysts or a kind of membrane, *Cerianthus* Delle Ch.

3. MADREPORARIA with continuous hard calcareous skeleton.

(*a*) *Aporosa.*

Fam. **Turbinolidæ.** Mostly single polyps with compact calcareous framework, imperforate thecæ, and well developed septa, the spaces between which are open to the bottom. *Turbinolia* Lam., *Flabellum* Less., *Caryophyllia* Lam., *C. cyathus* Lam., *Blastotrochus* Ed. H.

Fam. **Oculinidæ.** Polyp stocks with hard usually branched polyparium, with coenenchyma rich in calcareous matter, and but few septa in the cup of the individual. *Oculina virginea* Less., Indian Ocean. *Amphihelia oculata* L., white corals of the Mediterranean.

Fam. **Astræïdæ,** Star corals, Mostly massive polyp stocks with fused thecæ, and without coenenchyma. The septa have sometimes cutting edges. sometimes toothed edges. The interseptal spaces are filled with horizontal partition walls. *Eusmilia* Edw. The single animals are produced by fission and remain connected only at their bases. They produce a cespitous polyparium, the septal edges of the cup being cutting. *Galaxea* Oken. The single cups arise by gemmation, are free at the upper edge; the septa have cutting edges. *Astræa* Lam., single cups fused throughout the entire wall. The septal edges of the cup are jagged. *Mæandrina* Lam., the neighbouring cups fused to form long valleys. *M. Crassa* Edw. H.

Fam. **Fungidæ.** Mushroom corals. Usually with large flat single cups, sometimes polyp stocks; without thecæ, with numerous strongly developed septa, toothed and connected by synapticulæ. *Fungia discus* Dana., *Halomitra* Dana., *Lophoseris* Edw. H.

(*b*) *Perforata.*

Fam. **Madreporidæ,** Madrepores. Polyps and polyp stocks with porous coenenchyma and perforated thecæ. Gastric cavity open at the bottom and communicating with the central canal in the axis of the branched polyparium.

Septa but slightly developed. *Madrepora cervicornis* Lam., *Dendrophyllia ramea* Edw., Mediterranean, *Astroides calycularis* Pall.

## CLASS II.—POLYPOMEDUSÆ.* [HYDROZOA.]

*Polyps without œsophageal tube, with simple gastrovascular cavity. The generative elements are developed in medusoid forms which may be either free-swimming, or permanently attached to hydroid forms.*

This class includes the small polyps and polyp stocks, and the *Medusæ* which form the sexual generation. The *Polypomedusæ* have always a simpler structure than the *Anthozoa* to which they are also usually inferior in size. They lack œsophagus, septa, and gastrovascular pouches. Only the polyps of the asexual generation of the Scyphomedusæ [Acraspeda], known as *Scyphistoma*, possess a remnant of the gastric folds as four gastric ridges from which filaments are developed. The polyp stocks develop in rare cases (*Milleporidæ*) a compact calcareous framework comparable to the polyparium. When skeletal formations are present they consist as a rule of more or less horny secretions of the ectoderm, which as delicate tubes surround the stem and its ramifications, and sometimes form small cup-like structures surrounding the polyp, and known as

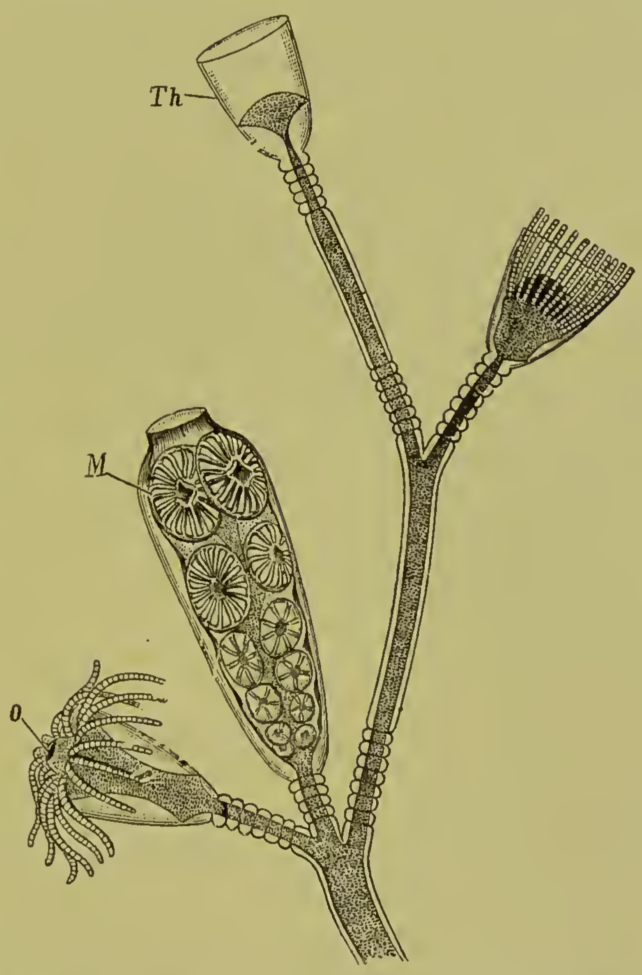



Fig. 180 *a*.—Branch of an Obelia-stock *(O, gelatinosa)*. *O*, Mouth of a nutritive polyp with extended tentacles. *M*, Medusa buds on the body of a proliferous polyp (blastostyle) ; *Th*, bell-shaped cup (theca) of a nutritive polyp.

* Escholtz, "System der Acalephen," Berlin, 1829. Th. Huxley, "Memoir on the Anatomy and Affinities of the Medusæ," *Phil. Trans.*, London, 1849.

hydrothecæ (fig. 180 *a*). A more or less stiff mesoderm lamella is also developed in the interior of the body wall, between the ectoderm and the endoderm. This serves to support the soft parts of the animal, and, in the *Medusæ*, is in part represented by the gelatinous connective tissue of the disc.

The Medusa (fig. 180 *b*) is without doubt morphologically higher than the Polyp, since it represents the mature sexual individual, while the Polyp performs the nutritive and vegetative functions. The Medusa, in correspondence with its power of free locomotion, possesses an ectodermal nervous system and sense organs. The nervous system consists of nerve fibres and ganglion cells, and is usually specially concentrated round the edge of the disc, where it forms a double ring of fibres running parallel to the circular vessel. The sense organs are the so-called marginal bodies. The generative products of the Medusæ either have their origin in the ectoderm, in which case they may be developed on the under surface of the disc (sub-umbrella) in the ectoderm immediately underlying the radial canals (*Eucopidæ*), or in the ectoderm of the manubrium (*Oceanidæ*); or they may arise from the endoderm of the under surface of the umbrella (*Scyphomedusæ*).

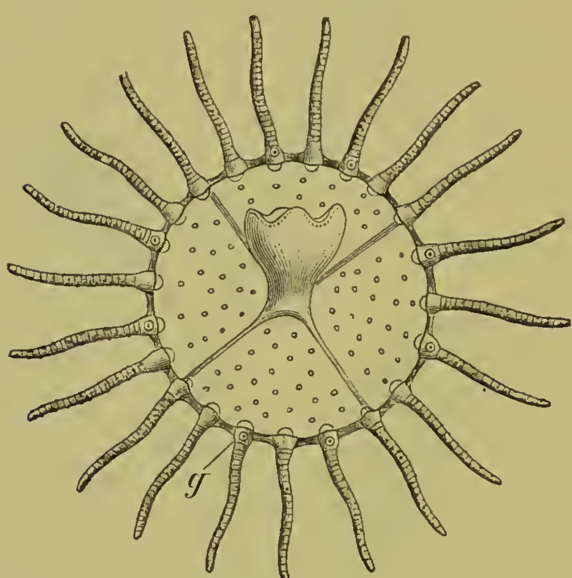



Fig. 180 *b*.—Free Medusa of Obelia gelatinosa, as yet without generative organs; *g*, auditory vesicles.

Both Polyps and Medusæ frequently remain at a lower grade of morphological differentiation, the former becoming polypoid appendages, the latter medusoid buds enclosing the generative products. In either case they are situated on the stem or on some part of the Polyp. The individuality of such appendages appears limited; the medusoid or polypoid animal sinks, physiologically speaking, to the value of a portion of the body or of an organ, while the entire stock

L. Agassiz, "Contribution to the Natural History of the United States, Acalephæ," vol. iii., 1860, vol. iv., 1862. E. Haeckel, "System der Medusen," Tom. I. and II., Jena, 1880 and 1881.

approaches more nearly to a single organism. The more completely polymorphism and division of labour are impressed upon the polypoid and medusoid appendages, so much higher becomes the unity of the whole which is morphologically a colony of animals. In these cases it is often difficult to distinguish between budding and simple growth.

For a long time it was considered as a remarkable circumstance, hardly admitting of a satisfactory explanation, that organisms which differed so widely as Polyps and Medusæ—they had, indeed, been systematically separated as different classes—should only form different stages in the life-history of a single cycle of development and thus be united in the closest genetic connection. The theory of "Alternation of Generations" contained only a description of the matter, and offered no explanation. The discovery of the mode of origin of the Medusa as a bud on the body of the Polyp first clearly demonstrated the direct relation of the two forms, for it proved that *the Medusa is a flattened, disc-shaped Polyp with a shallow but wide gastric cavity, the peripheral part of which has, by the fusion of its upper and lower walls along four, six, or eight radiating areas, become divided into the vascular pouches* (*gastric pouches*), *or, as they are called, radial canals,* which correspond to the gastrovascular pouches of the *Anthozoa*. The differences consist, in connection with the discoidal form, mainly in the position of the gastric tube as an external appendage, the manubrium, and in the great reduction in height of the radially extended septa (mesenteries), which are traversed by a layer of endoderm cells, the vascular or endoderm lamella. This layer is derived from the fusion mentioned above of the aboral with the oral layer of the endoderm of the peripheral part of the gastro-vascular cavity. At the same time the oral disc becomes enlarged and concave to form the cavity of the bell, the ectodermal lining of which gives rise to the muscles of the subumbrella. The supporting substance of the arched (after it is freed from its attachment) aboral surface of the disc becomes very much thickened and gives rise to the gelatinous substance (mesodermic), which sometimes contains cells; while that of the oral surface keeps the character of a thin but firm lamella, and serves as a support for the muscles on the under surface of the disc. The tentacles accordingly arise near the edge of the disc, and become the marginal tentacles of the *Medusa*. In addition to these, four simple or branched oral appendages appear as outgrowths from the manubrium.

In addition to the sexual reproduction, asexual multiplication is widely distributed, especially amongst the polypoid forms, in which it leads to the formation of polymorphous animal stocks. The two forms of reproduction alternate for the most part in regular order, so as to produce different generations. There are, however, *Medusæ* (*Aeginopsis, Pelagia*) which proceed without alternation of generations and develop directly from the ovum by continuous development with metamorphosis; but, as a general rule, the egg of the *Medusa* (phanero-codonic gonophore) or the medusoid generative bud (adelo-codonic gonophore) produces a Polyp, and this Polyp either at once, by transverse fission (*Scyphomedusæ*), or later, after a longer period of growth, in which a sessile or free-swimming polyp stock is produced, gives rise to a generation of free-swimming Medusæ, or of medusoid buds which never become separate from the polyp stock. The Hydromedusæ feed entirely on animal substances, and for the most part are inhabitants of the warmer seas. The free-moving *Medusæ* and *Siphonophora* are phosphorescent.

## *Order* 1.—Hydromedusæ.*

*Colonial forms, the individual Polyps of which are without œsophageal tube or mesenteric folds. The sexual generation has the form either of small free-swimming Medusæ provided with a velum (Craspedote Medusæ) or of medusoid generative buds (rudimentary Medusæ) which remain attached to the hydroid colony.*

The Polyps and polypoid forms are the asexual individuals. They form small moss- or tree-like stocks which are frequently surrounded by chitinous or horny tubes (cuticular skeleton). These exoskeletal structures may become extended into cup-like hydrothecæ surrounding the individual Polyps. The stem and ramified branches [cœnosark] contain a central canal which communicates with the gastric space of each individual Polyp and polypoid appendage and contains the common nourishing fluid.

The Polyps have no œsophageal tube, and the ciliated gastric cavity is undivided by mesenteries. As a rule, the ectoderm and entoderm remain simple, and are only separated by a thin interposed supporting lamella which does not contain cells. The presence of elongated muscle fibres as processes of the ectodermal epithelial cells is very general (*Hydra, Podocoryne*). These muscles may, however,

* L. Agassiz, "Contributions to the Natural History of the United States of America," vol. ii.—iv., 1860—1862. G. J. Allman, "A Monograph of the Gymnoblastic or Tubularian Hydroids," vol. i. and ii., London, 1871 and 1872. N. Kleinenberg, "Hydra," Leipzig, 1872. O. and R. Hertwig, "Das Nervensystem und die Sinnesorgane der Medusen," Leipzig, 1878.

be separated as an independent layer of nucleated fibre cells below the epithelium.

The Polyps are not invariably alike, proliferous Polyps (or Blastostyles) being frequently found as well as the nutritive ones. The proliferous Polyps develop generative buds on their walls. The sterile Polyps may differ from one another in the number of tentacles and in their entire form, so that different kinds of individuals may be found on a single stock. Thus we find the polymorphism of the *Siphonophora* foreshadowed amongst the *Hydroidea* (*Podocoryne*, *Plumularia*).

The generative products are only exceptionally developed in the Polyp body itself, in which case they are produced in the ectoderm (*Hydra*). This exception is probably to be looked upon as an extreme case of degeneration of a medusoid bud. As a rule the generative products are developed in special medusoid buds [gonophores] formed from both cell-layers.

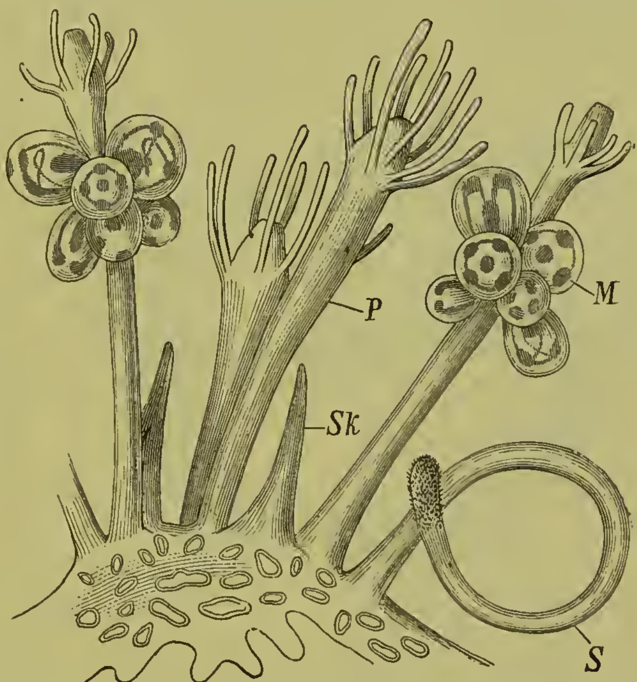



FIG. 181.—*Podocoryne carnea* (after C. Grobben). *P*, Polyp; *M*, Medusa bud on the proliferating polyp; *S*, spiral-zooid; *Sk*, skeleton Polyp (compare the free Medusa, fig. 154).

In the most simple cases the budding individuals of the sexual generation contain a diverticulum of the gastric cavity of the polyp-shaped parent or of the axial cavity of the hydroid stock. The generative products become accumulated around this diverticulum (*Hydractinia echinata*, *Clava squamata*). In a more advanced stage we find a mantle-like envelope enclosing the bud, and constituting the rudiment of the umbrella, with a continuous vascular lamella or with more or less developed radial vessels (*Tubularia coronata*, *Eudendrium ramosum*, Van Ben.) Finally, at the highest stage, the buds develop into small Medusæ (*Campanularia gelatinosa* van Ben., *Sarsia tubulosa*), which become free, and sooner or later, often only after a long period of free life, in which they become much larger and undergo a metamorphosis, reach sexual maturity.

The Medusæ belonging to the order Hydromedusæ are, with but few exceptions, distinguished from the *Acalephæ* (Scyphomedusæ) by their smaller size—although certain forms, for example *Aequorea*, may attain such a size as to have a diameter of more than a foot—and by their simpler organization. The number of their radial vessels is smaller (4, 6, or 8), their sense organs (marginal bodies) are not covered by folds of membrane (hence *Gymnophthalmata* Forbes), and they have a muscular velum (hence *Craspedota* Gegenbaur) (fig. 182). The generative products are always formed from the ectoderm, and originate on the walls of the radial canals or of the manubrium, but never, as in the *Acalepha*, in diverticula of the gastric cavity.

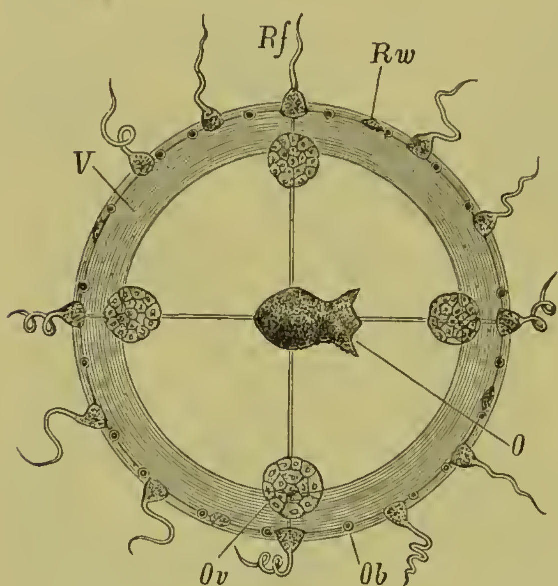


FIG. 182.—*Phialadium variabile* represented from the underside of the umbrella. *V*, Velum; *O*, mouth; *Ov*, ovary; *Ob*, auditory vesicle; *Rf*, tentacles on the margin of the disc; *Rw*, marginal swellings.

The hyaline gelatinous substance of our Medusæ is, as a rule, structureless, and contains no cellular elements; there may, however, be fibres running perpendicularly through it (*Liriope*). These fibres are probably derived from cell processes of the ectoderm and entoderm, and have arisen contemporaneously with the gelatinous disc, which is itself to be looked upon as an excretion product of the adjoining ectoderm and entoderm epithelium.

The nerve-ring is placed at the edge of the disc at the point of insertion of the velum. It is covered by a sense epithelium composed of small cells bearing sense hairs, and has the form of a double fibrous cord containing ganglion cells. The larger upper nerve-ring runs above the velum, while the weaker nerve-ring, on the other hand, is placed below it. The lower nerve-ring is composed of larger fibres and larger ganglion cells; bundles of fibrillæ pass off from it to supply the muscles of the velum and subumbrella, where they form a sub-epithelial plexus interspersed with ganglion cells, between the muscular epithelium and the fibrous layer. The ganglion cells in the upper nerve-ring are smaller, and the fibrillæ given off from it pass to the tentacles. The fibrillæ of the sense nerves may be derived from both rings. The *marginal bodies* have long been recognised as sense organs, and are either eye spots (ocelli) or auditory vesicles; hence the *Hydromedusæ* may be divided into two groups, the Ocellata or Vesiculata.

In the *Vesiculata* the auditory vesicles are situated at the edge of the under side of the umbrella, and contain one or more concretions (*otolith*) which are formed in the interior of cells. Peculiar sense cells surround each vesicle-like cell containing a concretion. The curved hairs of these sense cells (auditory hairs) are in contact with the concretion vesicle. A nerve fibrilla enters the basis of the auditory cells (fig. 183).

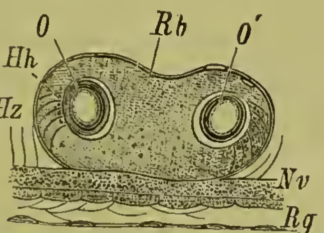



FIG. 183.—Sense organ on the nerve-ring and circular vessel of *Octorchis* (after O. and R. Hertwig). *Rb*, Sense organ; *O*, *O'*, two otoliths; *Hh*, auditory cilia; *Hz*, auditory cells; *Nv*, upper nerve-ring; *Rg*, circular vessel. (Type of the auditory organ of the *Vesiculata*.)

The auditory organs of the *Trachymedusæ* are placed above the velum, and are in connection with the upper nerve ring; they have the form of small projecting tentacles furnished with otoliths and auditory hairs. The tentacle may either project freely on the surface (*Trachynema*), or, as in *Geryonia*, it may be placed in a vesicle (fig. 184) which lies in the gelatinous substance of the disc and close to the edge of the latter.

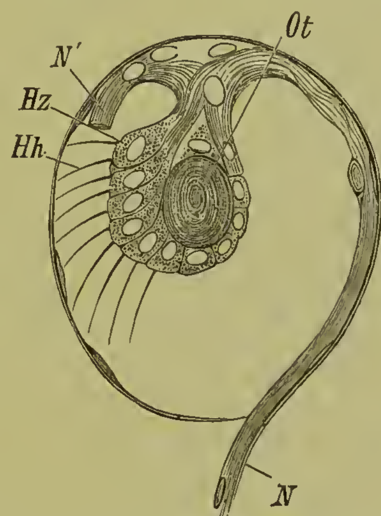



FIG. 184.—Auditory vesicle of *Geryonia (Carmarina)*, seen from the surface (after O. and R. Hertwig). *N* and *N'*, The auditory nerves; *Ot*, otolith; *Hz*, auditory cells; *Hh*, auditory cilia (type of the auditory organ of the *Trachymedusæ*).

Separate sexes are almost invariably the rule, but it is rare to find that the colonies are diœcious, *i.e.*, that male and female medusoids are developed in different colonies (Tubularia). Gemmation has occasionally been observed among the *Medusæ* (*Sarsia prolifera*) and division (*Stomobrachium mirabile*). The larvæ of *Cunina*, which are parasitic on the *Geryonidæ*, may also there give rise to a cluster of buds.

The development of the ovum, which is, as a rule, naked (*i.e.*, without a vitelline membrane), has hitherto only been completely followed out in a few cases. In every case the segmentation seems to be complete, and leads to the formation of a segmentation cavity and a single-layered blastoderm [a single-layered blastosphere]. The latter gives rise to a second endodermal layer of cells, which lines the segmentation cavity. The segmentation cavity thus becomes converted into the gastric cavity of the future polyp. The spherical or oval larva now either attaches itself and gives rise by budding to a small hydroid stock, or swims freely and develops directly into a small Medusa (*Trachymedusæ*).

The *Medusa*, after becoming free, usually undergoes a more or less fundamental change of form, which concerns not only the alteration caused by the enlargement of the umbrella and manubrium, but also the increase, according to definite laws, of the marginal tentacles, sense organs (*Tima*), and the radial canals (*Aequorea*). We must remark, however, that the sexually complete Medusæ exhibit very considerable variations in size, number of sense organs and tentacles (*Phyalidium variabile, Clythia volubilis*).

The difficulty of systematic arrangement is augmented by the fact that closely allied Polyp stocks can produce different sexual forms. Thus, for example, *Monocaulus* gives rise to sessile generative buds and *Corymorpha* to free *Medusæ* (*Steenstrupia*). Medusæ of identical structure also, which one would place in the same genus, may form the sexual generations of hydroid stocks belonging to different families (*isogonism*). There are also cases in which we find *Medusæ* of closely allied genera, some developed from hydroid stocks by an alternation of generations, and others developed directly. Hence it appears just as little satisfactory to found a classification entirely upon the sexual generations as to pay attention to the asexual generation alone.

(1) Sub-order: *Eleutheroblasteæ.* Simple hydroid Polyps without medusoid buds; both generative products are developed in the body-wall of the Polyp.

Fam. **Hydroidæ.** *Hydra*, the fresh-water Polyp. *H. viridis* L., *H. fusca* L., remarkable for great powers of reproduction.

(2) Sub-order: *Hydrocoralliæ.* Coral-like hydroid stocks with calcareous coenenchyma and tubular hydrothecæ opening to the exterior by pores. Some of these contain the larger nutritive animals, while others contain animals without a mouth and beset with tentacles.

The latter are arranged usually in the form of a circle round each of the nutritive animals. The polyparia are found in the fossil state.

Fam. **Milleporidæ.** *Millepora* L. *M. alcicornis L.*
Fam. **Stylasteridæ.**

(3) Sub-order: *Tubulariæ* (Ocellata). Polyp stocks which are either naked or clothed by a chitinous periderm without cup-shaped hydrothecæ surrounding the polyp head. The generative buds arise on the body of the Polyp or on the stock. The *Medusæ* which are set free belong to the genera *Oceania*, *Sarsia*, etc., and have ocelli.

Fam. **Clavidæ.** Polyp stocks with a chitinous periderm. Polyp club-shaped, with scattered, simple, filiform tentacles. The generative buds arise on the Polyp body and for the most part remain sessile. *Cordylophora* Allm. The stock is branched; there are stolons which grow over external objects. Oval gonophores covered by the perisare. The animals are diœcious. In fresh water—*C. lacustris* Allm. *Albicola* Kirchp., Elbe, Schleswig. The following are marine genera—*Clava* O. Fr. Müller. Allied are the *Eudendridæ* with *Eudendrium ramosum*. L.

Fam. **Hydractinidæ.** Polyp stocks with flat extended coenenchyma and firm encrusted skeletal excretions. The Polyps are club-shaped, with a circle of simple tentacles. In addition to the latter there are large tentacle-shaped Polypoids (Spiralzooids). *Hydractinia* van. Ben. The medusoid buds sessile on the proliferous animals. which are without tentacles. *H. Echinata* Flem. *Podocoryne* Sars. (fig. 181). The generative buds are freed as *Oceanidæ*. *P. carnea* Sars.

Fam. **Tubularidæ.** Polyp stocks clothed with a chitinous periderm. The polyps possess a circle of filiform tentacles on the proboscis inside the external circle of tentacles. The generative buds arise between the two circles of tentacles. *Tubularia* L. The hydroid stocks form creeping root-like branches at the bottom, from which arise simple or branched twigs with the terminal polyp heads; the generative buds are sessile. *T.* (*Thamnocnidia* Ag.) *coronata* Abilg. diœcious. *Corymorpha* Sars. The stalk of the solitary polyp is clothed with a gelatinous periderm, attaches itself by root-like processes, and contains radial canals which lead into the wide digestive cavity of the Polyp-head. The freed *Medusa* is bell-shaped, with one marginal tentacle, and bulbous swellings at the end of the other radial canals. *C. nutans* Sars., *C. nana* Alder.

(4) Sub-order: *Campanulariæ* (Vesiculata). The chitinous skeletal tubes widen out round the Polyp-head to form cup-like hydrothecæ. The Polyp-head, the oral cone (proboscis), and tentacles can be in most cases completely retracted into these hydrothecæ.

The generative buds arise almost regularly on the walls of the proliferous individuals, which have neither mouth nor tentacles. The buds are sometimes sessile, and sometimes become separated off

16

as small vesiculate *Medusæ*, with generative organs on the radial canals (*Eucopidæ*, *Geryonopsidæ*, *Aequoridæ*).

Fam. **Plumularidæ.** The hydrothecæ of the branched hydroid-stocks are arranged in single rows; those of the nutritive Polyp have small accessory calyces filled with nematocysts (nematocalyces). *Plumularia cristata* Lam., *Antennularia antennina* Lam.

Fam. **Sertularidæ.** Branched Polyp stocks, the Polyps of which project in flask-shaped hydrothecæ on opposite sides of the stem. *Dynamena pumila* L., *Sertularia abietina*, *cupressina* L.

Fam. **Campanularidæ – Eucopidæ.** The cup-shaped hydrothecæ are placed at the end of ringed stalks. The Polyps possess a circle of tentacles below their conical proboscis. *Campanularia* Lam. The proliferous individuals are situated on the branches and give rise to free *Medusæ*, bell-shaped, with a short manubrium with four lips, four radial canals, the same number of marginal tentacles, and eight inter-radial marginal vesicles. After separation the inter-radial tentacles are formed. *C.* (*Clythia*) *Johnstoni* = *volubilis* Johnst., probably with *Eucope variabilis* Cls. *Obelia* Pér. Les., is distinguished from *Campanularia* by its *Medusæ*. These are flat, disc-shaped *Medusæ* with numerous marginal tentacles, but with eight inter-radial vesicles. *O. dichotoma* L. = (*Campanularia gelatinosa* van Ben.), C. *geniculata* L., *Laomedea* Lamx. The generative buds remain sessile in the hydrotheca of the proliferous polyps. *L. caliculata* Hincks.

Fam. **Aequoridæ.** *Medusæ* with numerous radial vessels and marginal tentacles. *Aequorea* Forsk. The *Geryonopsidæ* are allied here. *Octorchis* E. Haeck. *Tima*.

(5) Sub-order: *Trachymedusæ.* *Medusæ* with firm, gelatinous umbrella, supported by cartilaginous ridges with stiff tentacles filled with solid rows of cells; these may be confined to the young stage (larvæ of *Geryonidæ*). Development by metamorphosis without hydroid asexual individual.

Fam. **Trachynemidæ**, with stiff marginal tentacles, which are scarcely capable of motion. The genital organs are developed on vesicle-like swellings of the eight radial canals. *Trachynema ciliatum* Ggbr. *Rhopalonema velatum* Ggbr., Messina.

Fam. **Aeginidæ.** The hard cartilaginous umbrella has a flat, discoid shape. The extended digestive cavity has pouch-like enlargements in place of the radial vessels. The circular vessel is usually reduced to a row of cells. *Cunina albescens* Ggbr., Naples. *Aegineta flavescens* Ggbr.

Fam. **Geryonidæ.** Umbrella with cartilaginous mantle ridges and four or six hollow tube-shaped marginal tentacles. The manubrium is long, cylindrical, or conical, with a proboscis-like oral portion, and four or six canals which lead into the radial canal. The generative organs lie on the radial canals; eight or twelve marginal vesicles. *Liriope* Less., with four radial canals, four or eight tentacles and eight vesicles. *L. tetraphylla* Cham., Indian Ocean. *Geryonia* Pér. Les., with six radial canals without lingual cone. *G. umbella* E. Haeck., *Carmarina* E. Haeck., with six radial canals and a lingual cone, E. Haeck. *C. hastata*, Nice.

## *Order* 2.—SIPHONOPHORA.*

*Free-swimming polymorphous hydroid-stocks with contractile stem, with polypoid nutritive individuals and medusoid buds, usually also with nectocalyces, hyrophyllia and dactylozooids.*

Morphologically the *Siphonophora* are directly allied to the hydroid-stocks; but they possess to a much greater extent than the latter the characters of individuals, in consequence of the highly developed polymorphism of their polypoid and medusoid appendages. The functions of the latter seem so intimately connected and are so essential for the preservation of the entire colony that we may regard each colony of Sipho-

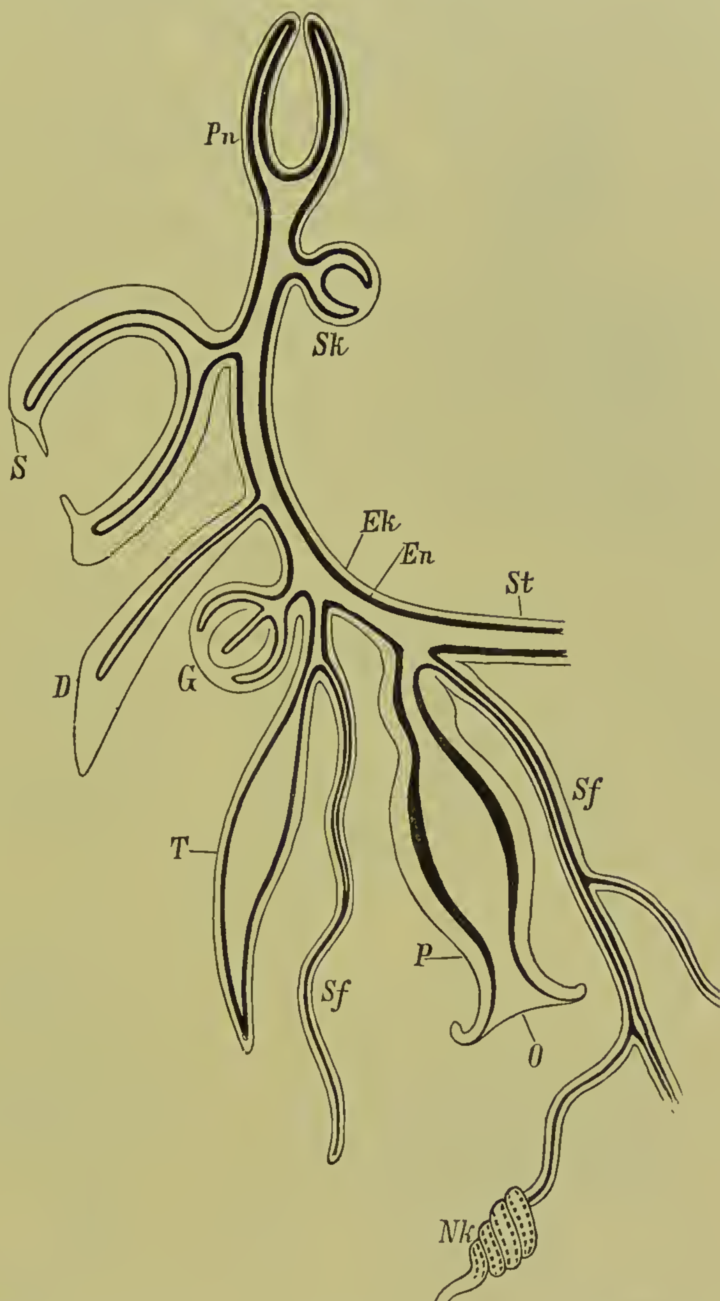



FIG. 185.—Diagram of a colony of *Physophorida*. *St*, Stem; *Ek*, ectoderm; *En*, entoderm; *Pn*, Pneumatophor; *Sk*, nectocalyx being budded off; *S*, nectocalyx; *D*, hydrophyllium; *G*, gonophore; *T*, dactylozooid; *Sf*, tentacle; *P*, polyp; *O*, mouth of the latter; *Nk*, battery of nematocysts.

* Besides Kölliker, C. Vogt, Huxley and others, compare C. Gegenbaur, "Beobachtungen über Siphonophoren," *Zeitschrift für wiss. Zool.*, 1853. C.

nophora physiologically as an organism and its appendages as organs. In this connection we may mention that the sexual medusoid generation is so little independent that it only exceptionally (*Velellidæ*) reaches the morphological grade of the free-swimming Medusa.

In place of the attached and ramified hydroid-stocks we find in the *Siphonophora* a free-swimming contractile unbranched stem (hydrosoma), which is rarely provided with simple lateral branches. The upper end of the hydrosoma is frequently dilated to the form of a flask (pneumatophore), and contains an air chamber [pneumatocyst] (fig. 185). In every case there is a central space in the axis of the stem in which the nutritive fluids are kept in constant motion by the contractility of the walls and by the movements of the cilia. The air sac or pneumatocyst at the apex of the hydrosoma is connected to the chamber which contains it by radial septa, and in many cases attains a considerable size (*Physalia*). It functions as a hydrostatic apparatus, and in those forms, which have a long spiral hydrosoma (*Physophoridæ*), serves to keep the body in an upright position. In some cases the gaseous contents can escape freely by one or more openings.

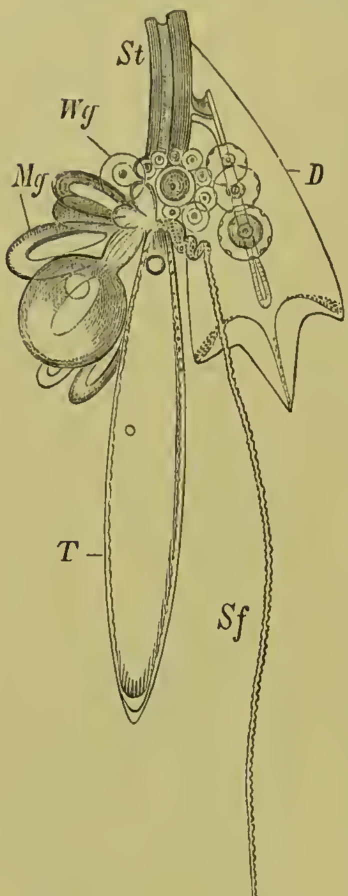



Fig. 186.—A portion of the stem and appendages of *Halistemma tergestinum*. *St*, Stem; *D*, hydrophyllium; *T*, dactylozooid; *Sf*, tentacle of the latter; *Wg*, female, *Mg*, male, gonophores.

The appendages which are attached to the spirally twisted bilaterally symmetrical stem and whose cavities communicate with that of the stem are of at least two kinds —(1) The polypoid nutritive animals with their tentacles; (2) the medusoid sexual buds. The nutritive Polyps (hydranths) are simple tubes provided with a mouth, and never

Gegenbaur, "Neue Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Siphonophoren." Nova Acta., Tom. XXVII., 1859. R. Leuckart, "Zoologische Untersuchungen." I., Giessen, 1853. R. Leuckart. "Zur näheren Kenntniss der Siphonophoren von Nizza." *Archiv. für Naturgesch.*, 1854. C. Claus. "Ueber Halistemma tergestinum n. s. nebst Bemerkungen über den feineren Bau der Physophoriden." *Arbeiten aus dem Zoologischen Institut. der Univ. Wien, etc.*, Tom. I., 1878. E. Metschnikoff, "Studien über die Entwickelung der Medusen und Siphonophoren." *Zeitsch. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXIV., 1874.

possess a circle of tentacles. They always, however, have a long tentacle arising from their base. This tentacle can be extended to a considerable length, and be retracted into a spiral coil. It rarely has a simple form, but, as a rule, it bears a number of unbranched lateral twigs, which are also very contractile. These tentacles are invariably beset with a great number of nematocysts, which in many places are closely packed and have a regular arrangement. These aggregations of thread-cells are especially found on the lateral branches of the tentacles, and give rise to large, brightly-coloured swellings, the batteries of nematocysts. The batteries show considerable variations

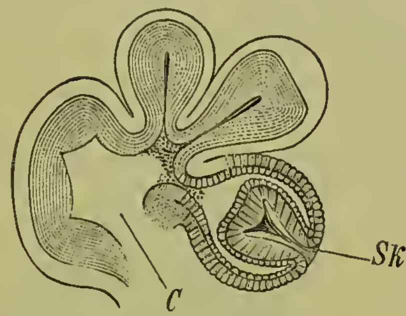



Fig. 187.—Group of buds of a *Physophor* at the bottom of the pneumatophore. *C*, Central cavity; *Sk*, nectocalyx bud with the ectodermal ingrowth.

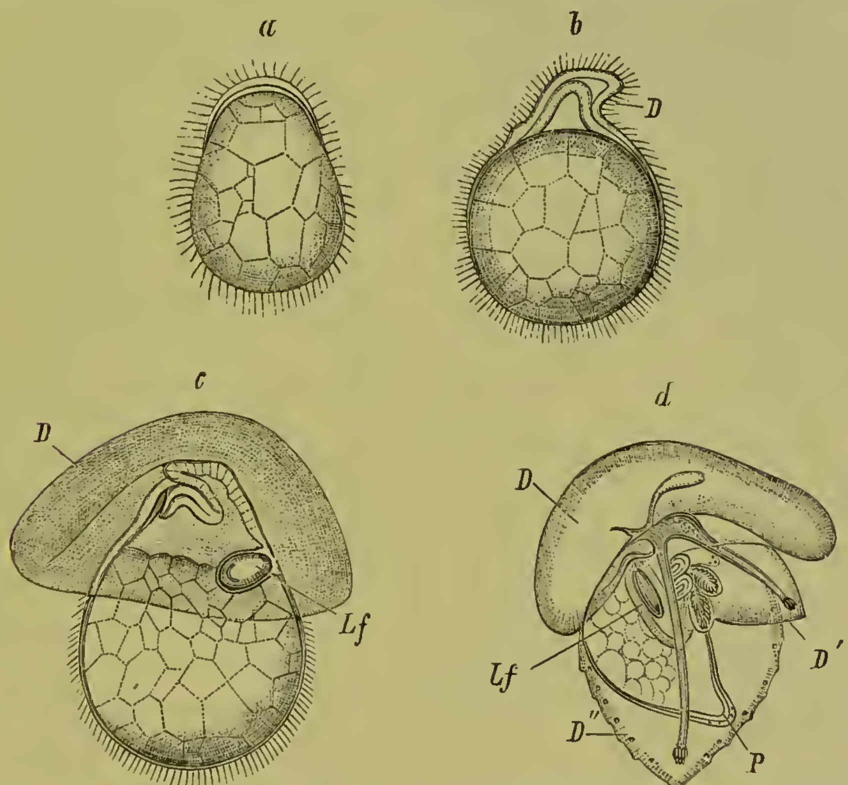



Fig. 188.—Development of *Agalmopsis Sarsii* (after Metschnikoff). *a*, Ciliated larva. *b*, Stage with developing hydrophyllium (*D*). *c*, Stage with cap-shaped hydrophyllium (*D*) and developing pneumatophore (*Lf*). *d*, Stage with three hydrophyllia, (*D*, *D′*, *D″*), polyp (*P*), and tentacle.

in form in the various species, genera, and families, and such variations afford valuable characters for systematic classification.

The second form of appendage, the *gonophores*, usually possess a bell-shaped mantle containing circular and radial vessels, and surrounding the central stalk or clapper (manubrium), which is filled with ova or spermatozoa. They usually arise in clusters at the base of the tentacles, more rarely from the nutritive Polyps themselves (*e.g.* in *Velella*). The male and female generative products always arise separately in differently shaped buds, but are usually found closely approximated on the same stock (fig. 186). There are, however, also diœcious *Siphonophora*, or if the medusoid buds or gonophores be regarded as generative organs, *Siphonophora* of distinct sexes, *e.g.*, *Apolemia uvaria* and *Diphyes acuminata*. The ripe sexual *Medusoids* frequently become separated from the stock, *i.e.* after the development of the generative products, and only rarely become liberated as small *Medusæ* (*Chrysomitra* in the *Velellidæ*), which produce generative products during their free life.


FIG. 189.—Small larval stock of *Agalmopsis* after the type of *Athorybia*. *Lf*, Pneumatophore; *D*, hydrophyllium; *Nk*, groups of nematocysts; *P*, polyp.

Besides the constant nutritive Polyps and medusoid gonophores, there are inconstant appendages, which are also modified Polypoids or Medusoids. These are the mouthless worm-like *dactylozoids* (fig. 186), which, like the Polyps, are provided with a tentacle, which is, however, shorter and simpler, and has no lateral branches or aggregations of nematocysts; also the leaf-shaped hard cartilaginous *hydrophyllia*, which serve to protect the polyps, dactylozoids, and gonophores; and finally the appendages known as *nectocalyces*, which are placed beneath the pneumatophore. The nectocalyces have a structure similar to that of the Medusæ, though their bilateral symmetry is apparent;

they are, however, without manubrium, mouth, tentacles, and sense organs.

The deeply concave sub-umbrella surface of the nectocalyx is largely developed and has a very powerful muscular covering in relation to its exclusively locomotive function. All the appendages are developed as buds formed of ectoderm, entoderm, and containing a central cavity which communicates with the central space of the stem. In the nectocalyces and gonophores an ectodermal ingrowth gives rise to the covering of the sub-umbrella and to the generative products respectively (fig. 187).

The ova, of which there is often only one in each female gonophore, are large, and have no vitelline membrane, and, after impregnation, undergo a complete and regular segmentation.

A nectocalyx (*Diphyes*) is the first structure formed in the free-swimming larva, or the upper part of the body of the larva gives rise to a cap-shaped protective cover or hydrophyllium as well as a pneumatophore, and the under part becomes the primary nutritive polyp (*Agalmopsis*, fig. 188). Since new buds give rise to leaf-shaped hydrophyllia, a small stock with

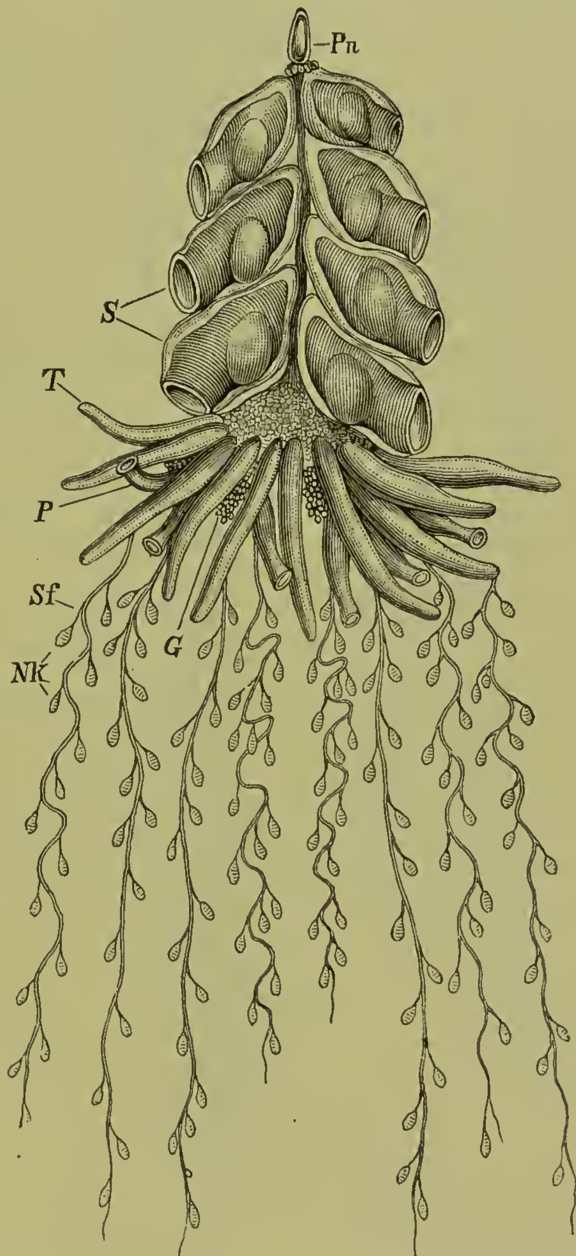



FIG. 190.—*Physophora hydrostatica*. *Pn*, Pneumatophore; *S*, nectocalyces arranged in double rows on the swimming column; *T*, dactylozoid; *P*, polyp (nutritive individual) with tentacles, *Sf*; *Nk*, groups of nematocysts on the latter; *G*, clusters of generative buds.


FIG. 191.—*Halistemma tergestinum.* *Pn*, pneumatophore; *S*. Nectocalyx; *P*, polyp; *D*, hydrophyllium; *Nk*, groups of nematocysts.

provisional appendages is formed which allows us to regard the development of the *Siphonophora* as a metamorphosis (fig. 188 and 189).

The crown of hydrophyllia, which is completed by the addition of fresh hydrophyllia after the appearance of a tentacle with provisional groups of nematocysts, persists only in *Athorybia*, where a swimming column with nectocalyces is never formed.

In *Agalmopsis* and *Physophora* the primary hydrophyllia of the larva fall off as the stem becomes larger, and are replaced by nectocalyces.

(1) Sub-order: *Physophoridæ.* Stem short, extended in the form of a sac (fig. 190), or elongated spirally (fig. 191), with a pneumatophore, usually nectocalyces, which are arranged in two or more rows on a swimming column below the pneumatophore. Hydrophyllia and dactylozooids are usually present, and alternate with the polyps and gonophores in regular order. The body of the larva usually develops

first a polyp with pneumatophore and tentacle beneath an apical hydrophyllium. The female gonophore has only one egg.

Fam. **Athorybiadæ.** With a bunch of hydrophyllia in place of the swimming column; resembling a persistent larval stage. *Athorybia rosacea* Esch., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Physophoridæ.** s. str. Stem short and enlarged to a spiral sac beneath the swimming column with its double row of nectocalyces. No hydrophyllia but instead two outer bunches of dactylozooids with gonoblastidia, nutritive polyps and tentacles lying beneath them. *Physophora* Forsk., *Ph. hydrostatica* Forsk., Mediterranean (fig. 190).

Fam. **Agalmidæ.** Stem unusually elongated and spirally twisted. Swimming column with two or more rows of nectocalyces. There are both hydrophyllia and tentacles. *Forskalia contorta* M. Edw., *Halistemma*. Dactylozooids and hydrophyllia directly connected with the stem. In the ciliated larva a pneumatophore is first developed at the upper pole. *H. rubrum* Vogt, Mediterranean. *H. tergestinum* Cls. (fig. 191). *Agalmopsis Sarsii* Köll., *Apolemia uvaria* Less., Mediterranean. Diœcious.

(2) Sub-order: *Physalidæ.*—Stem dilated to form a large chamber, the pneumatophore lying almost horizontally, containing a very large pneumatocyst opening to the exterior. Nectocalyces and hydrophyllia absent. On the ventral line of the sac are situated large and small nutritive polyps with strong and long tentacles. There are also clusters of gonophores attached to the tentacle-like polyps. The female buds seem to become free-swimming *Medusæ*.

Fam. **Physalidæ.** With the characteristics of the group *Physalia* Lam., *P. caravella* Esch. (*Arethusa* Til.), *pelagica*, *utriculus* Esch., Atlantic Ocean.

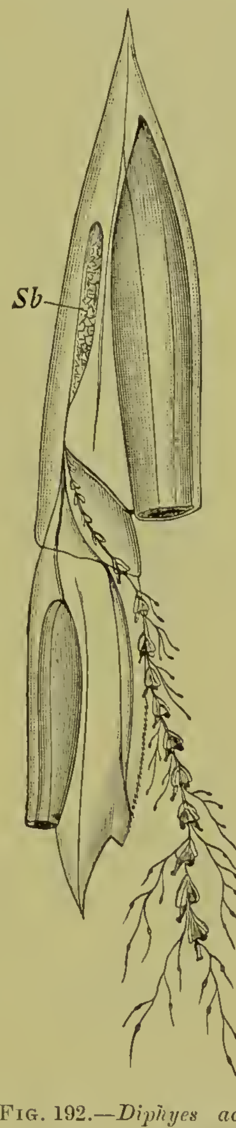



FIG. 192.—*Diphyes acuminata*, magnified about 8 times. *Sb*, Fluid reservoir in the upper nectocalyx (somatocyst).

(3) Sub-order: *Calycophoridæ.* Stem long and without pneumatophore. Swimming column with double row of nectocalyces (Hippopodidæ) or with two large opposed nectocalyces, more rarely with only one nectocalyx. There are no dactylozooids. The appendages arise in groups arranged regularly, and can be retracted into a cavity of the nectocalyx (fig. 192). Each group of individuals consists of a small nutritive polyp, a tentacle with naked kidney-shaped groups of nematocysts, and gonophores.

To these is usually added a funnel or umbrella-shaped hydrophyllium (fig. 192). These groups of individuals may in some Diphyids become free, and assume a separate existence as Eudoxia (fig. 193). The gonophores contain numerous ova in the manubrium, which often projects as a cone from the aperture of the bell. In the larva the upper nectocalyx is the first formed.

Fam. **Hippopodidæ.** The swimming column has two rows of nectocalyces, and is situate on an upper lateral branch of the stem. The male and female gonophores are grouped in clusters and are situate at the base of the nutritive polyp. *Gleba Hippopus* Forsk., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Diphyidæ.** With two very large nectocalyces at the upper end of the stem and opposite to each other. *Diphyes acuminata* Lkt., diœcious; with *Eudoxia campanulata*. *Abyla pentagona* Esch., with *Eudoxia cuboides*, Mediterranean. *Sphæronectes* Huxl. = *Monophyes* Cls., *Sp. gracilis* Cls. with *Diplophysa inermis*, Mediterranean.

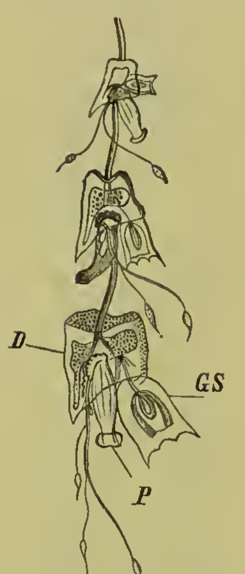



FIG. 193.—Part of a *Diphyid* (after R. Leuckart). *D*, Hydrophyllium; *GS*, genital nectocalyx; *P*, polyp with tentacles. The individual groups separate as *Eudoxia*.

(4) Sub-order: *Discoideæ.* Stem compressed to a flat disc, with a system of canal-like spaces (central cavity). Above lies the pneumatocyst in the form of a disc-shaped reservoir of cartilaginous consistence composed of concentric canals opening to the exterior. The polypoid and medusoid appendages are situate on the under side of the disc. In the centre is a large nutritive Polyp, around which are a number of smaller ones. To the base of these small Polyps are attached the gonophores. The dactylozooids are not far from the edge of the disc. The gonophores are set free as small *Medusæ* (*Chrysomitra*), which do not produce the generative material till long after separation.

Fam. **Velellidæ.** *Velella spirans* Esch., Mediterranean. *Porpita mediterranea* Esch.

## *Order* 3.—SCYPHOMEDUSÆ = ACALEPHA.*

*Medusæ of considerable size, with gastric filaments. The edge of the umbrella lobed. The sense organs covered. The embryonic stages are not hydroid stocks but Scyphistoma and Strobila forms.*

The *Medusæ* of this order are distinguished from those of the hydroid group by their considerable size and the great thickness of

* Besides the works of Brandt. L. Agassiz, Huxley, Eysenhardt, compare v. Siebold, "Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der wirbellosen Thiere." 1839. M.

their umbrella, the gelatinous connective tissue of which is richly developed and contains a quantity of strong fibrillæ and a network of elastic fibres, which structures confer upon it a greater firmness and rigidity.

Another characteristic of the group is derived from the structure of the edge of the umbrella. This is divided by a regular number

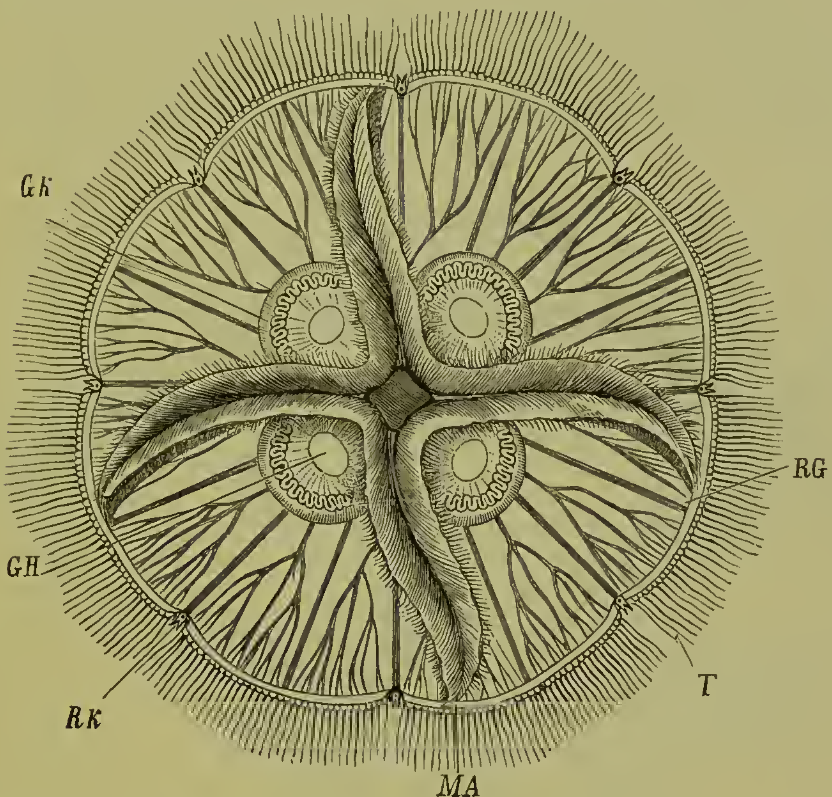



FIG. 194.—*Aurelia aurita*, from the oral surface. *MA*, The four oral tentacles with the mouth in the centre; *Gk*, generative organs; *GH*, aperture of genital pouch; *Rk*, sense organ (marginal body); *RG*, radial vessel; *T*, tentacle at edge of the disc.

of indentations usually into eight groups of lobes between which the sense organs are contained in special pits (fig. 194).

The marginal lobes of the Acalephæ, like the continuous velum of the *Hydromedusæ*, appear to be secondary formations at the edge of the disc. In the young stage known as *Ephyra*, which is common at least to all the *Discophora*, they are present as eight pairs of

Sars, "Ueber die Entwicklung der Medusa aurita und Cyanea capillata," *Archiv. für Naturgesch*, 1841. H. J. Clark, "Prodromus of the History, etc., of the Order *Lucernaria*," *Journ. of Bost. Soc. of Nat. Hist.*, 1863. C. Claus, "Studien über Polypen und Quallen der Adria," *Denkschriften der k. Akademie der Wissensch. Wien*, 1877. C. Claus, "Untersuchungen über Charybdea marsupialis," *Arbeiten aus dem Zool. Institut. Wien*, 1878. Also E. Haeckel, l. c.

relatively long tongue-like processes, and grow out from the disc-like segments of the *Strobila* as marginal cones. An undivided marginal membrane (the *velarium*), differing from the velum of the *Craspedota* [in containing prolongations of the canals of the gastro-vascular system], is present in the *Charybdeidæ* alone.

The *Acalepha* differ from the *Hydromedusæ* in possessing, as a rule, large oral tentacles at the free end of the wide manubrium. These may be regarded as being derived from an unequal growth of the edges of the mouth. They grow as four arm-like processes of the manubrium from the angles of the mouth, and are placed radially,

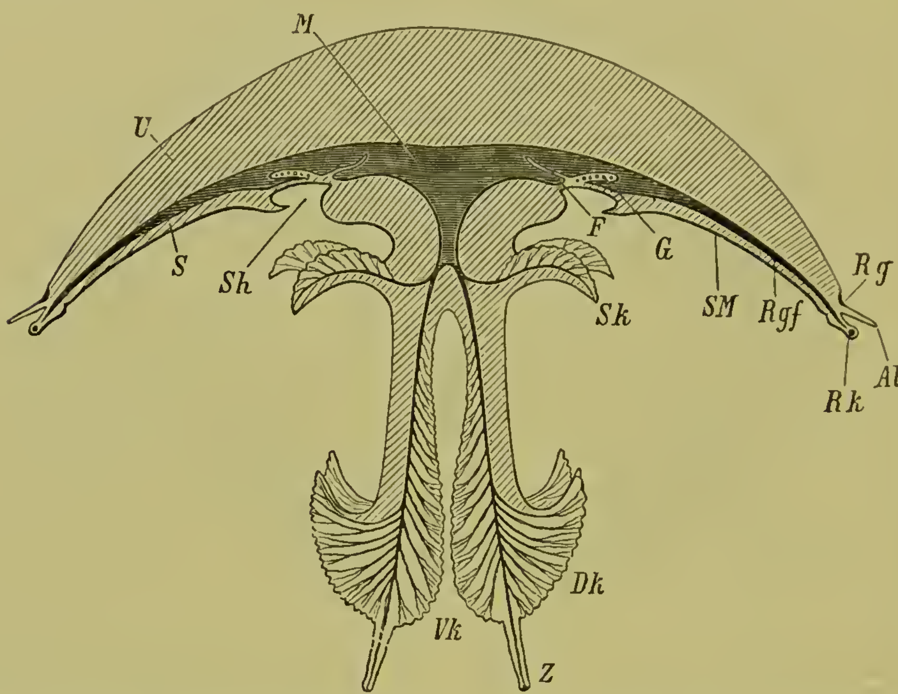



Fig. 195.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section through a *Rhizostoma*. *U*, Umbrella; *M*, gastric cavity; *S*, sub-umbrella; *G*, genital band; *Sh*, sub-genital pit; *F*, filament; *SM*, muscle system of the sub-umbrella; *Rgf*, radial vessels; *Rk*, sense organs; *Rg*, olfactory pits; *Al*, ocular lobe; *Sk*, shoulder tufts; *Dk*, dorsal tufts; *Vk*, ventral tufts of the eight arms; *Z*, terminal parts of the arms.

*i.e.* they alternate with the genital organs and gastric filaments. In some cases the arms become forked at an early period, and four pairs of arms are formed, the lobed tufted edges of which may again divide and sub-divide into many branches. In this case, the margins of the mouth and the opposed surfaces of each pair of arms fuse in early life in such a way that the original central mouth becomes obliterated, and in its place there are developed a number of small tufted orifices on the peripheral parts of the arms, through which nutriment is taken in (Rhizostomidæ, fig. 195).

The form of the gastrovascular apparatus exhibits considerable differences, which in the *Discophora* may be considered as modifications of the *Ephyra* type. The flat disc of the *Ephyra*, which is split into eight pairs of lobes, contains a central gastric cavity into which the canal of the short, wide, four-cornered manubrium leads. From this central cavity there diverge eight canal-like peripheral diverticula (radial pouches), between which there are formed sooner or later in the vascular lamella the same number of short intermediate canals (intermediate pouches). The radial and intermediate canals sometimes become enlarged, as in *Pelagia* and

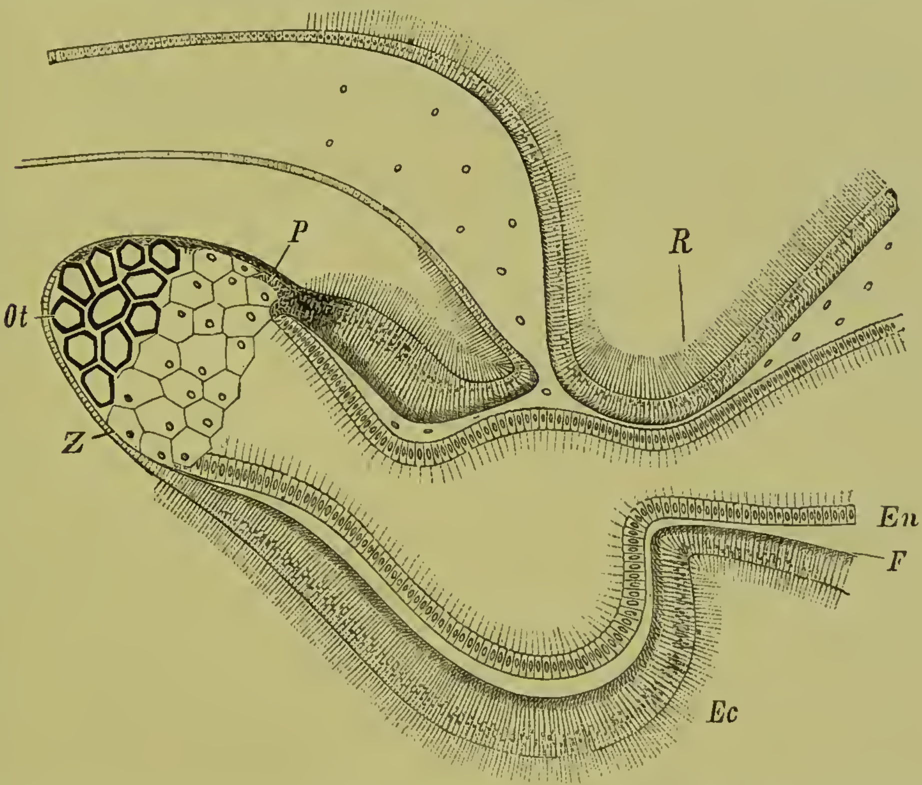



FIG. 196. Section through the olfactory pit, the sense-organ (marginal body) and its nerve centre, of *Aurelia aurita*. *R*, Olfactory pit; *L*, lobe of the umbrella covering the sense organ; *P*, eye spot; *Ot*, otolith of the auditory sac; *Z*, cells after solution of the otoliths; *En*, entoderm; *Ec*, ectoderm with the underlying layer of nerve fibrillæ, *F*.

*Chrysaora*, so as to form unusually broad gastric pouches separated by thin septa and without any communication with each other at the periphery. Sometimes, however, they become transformed into narrow vessels, between which, in the broad intervening septa, there is secondarily developed during the subsequent growth by a separation of the two layers of the vascular-lamella, a rich network of anastomosing canals, and near the edge of the disc a circular canal (*Aurelia*, *Rhizostoma*).

The gastrovascular apparatus of the cup- or bell-shaped *Calycozoa* and *Charybdeidæ* differs from the types above described, and resembles that of the more primitive Scyphistoma stage, in that the gastric cavity presents only four peripheral vascular pouches, which are very wide, and separated by extremely thin septa.

The worm-like movable tentacles of the gastric cavity, the gastric filaments, which are not found in any *Hydromedusæ* afford an important distinctive mark. They correspond to the so-called mesenteric filaments of the *Anthozoa*, and afford the same aid to digestion through the secretion of their glandular entodermal covering. In every case they are attached to the sub-umbrella wall of the stomach, and fall in the four radii of the generative organs (radii of the second order), which alternate with the radii of the angles of the mouth, or radii of the first order. They usually follow the inner edge of the generative organs in a simple or convoluted curved line.

The existence of the nervous system of the *Acalepha* has only recently been demonstrated with certainty. It has been proved that the centres of the nervous system are contained in the ectoderm of the stalk and base of the marginal bodies, and consist of a considerable layer of nerve fibrillæ deep in the ciliated ectodermal epithelium, the nerve cells of which are elongated in the form of a rod, and bend round at their basal extremities to be continued directly into the nerve fibrillæ (fig. 196). There is in addition a widely distributed and important peripheral nerve plexus in the muscles of the sub-umbrella.

Up to the present time no investigations have completely elucidated the manner in which this nerve plexus is related to the nerve centres of the marginal bodies, and how the latter are connected with one another. The existence of a nerve ring on the sub-umbrella surface has been proved only for the *Charybdeidæ*, in which the edge of the disc is not notched (fig. 169). The antimeres of the *Acalepha* show in all cases a great degree of individuality, and, when cut off, are able to live for a considerable time.

The marginal bodies, as well as the pit-like depressions on the dorsal side of the excavations in which the marginal bodies are placed (olfactory pits), must be considered as sense-organs.

The marginal bodies are morphologically the remnants of reduced tentacles. They may be seen on the under side of the umbrella in the stage of the *Ephyra*, and are overgrown by portions of the edge of the umbrella (*Steganophthalmata*). [They contain a central canal lined by endoderm and continuous with the gastro-vascular system of the disc, fig. 196]. They appear in all cases to unite the functions of ocular and auditory apparatus. The auditory function is provided for by a large sac containing crystals, which originates from the cells of the entoderm; while the eye consists of a mass of pigment lying on the dorsal or ventral face, and nearer the end of the stalk. In some exceptional cases (Nausithoë) it is provided with a refractile cuticular lens. But it is in the Charybdeidæ that the sense body reaches the highest development; for in them, in addition to the terminal sac of otoliths, there is also present, in the wall of the dilated vascular space of the papilla, an extremely complicated visual organ, formed of four small paired and two large unpaired eyes, in which lens, vitreous body, and retina can be distinguished.

The four generative organs of the Acalepha can be easily distinguished in consequence of their size and their bright colouring. In some cases, at any rate in the *Discophora*, they protrude as folded bands into special cavities in the umbrella, the so-called sub-genital pits (hence the term *Phanerocarpæ* Esch.) In all cases these bands lie on the lower (sub-umbrella) wall of the digestive cavity (figs. 194, 195), from which they originate as leaf-like prominences. The upper surface is covered with gastric epithelium; the under, which is turned towards the sub-umbrella, with germinal epithelium, the elements of which, in the process of development, pass into the gelatinous substance of the band.

The formation of the cavities in the sub-umbrella of the *Discophora* is due to a local growth of the gelatinous substance of the sub-umbrella; in some cases, however, they may be completely absent (*Discomedusa*, *Nausithoë*). The mature generative products are dehisced into the gastric cavity, and pass out through the mouth; but in many cases the ova undergo their embryonic development either in the ovary (*Chrysaora*) or in the oral tentacles (*Aurelia*). Separate sexes are the rule. Male and female individuals, however, apart from the colour of their generative organs, have only slight sexual differences, as, for instance, the form and length of the tentacles (*Aurelia*). *Chrysaora* is hermaphrodite.

In the Discophora the development is generally accompanied by an alternation of generations; the asexual generations being represented by the *Scyphistoma* and *Strobila*; but in exceptional cases it is direct (*Pelagia*). In all cases a complete segmentation leads to the formation of a ciliated larva, the so-called *planula*, which attaches itself by the pole which is directed forwards in swimming. This pole is, however, opposite to the gastrula mouth, which in the meantime becomes closed, while round the mouth, which is formed as a perforation at the free end, the tentacles appear. As in the embryo *Actinia*, two opposite tentacles first make their appearance; not, however, simultaneously, the one appearing after the other, so that the young larva about to develop into the Scyphistoma presents a bilaterally symmetrical structure. Subsequently the second pair appear in a plane at right angles to the plane of the first tentacles. These four tentacles mark the radii of the first order. Then alternating with these, but in a less regular succession, the third and fourth pairs appear; and soon after in the plane of these latter four longitudinal folds of the gastric cavity are developed (radii of the second order or of the gastric filaments and genital organs).

The eight-armed *Scyphistoma* soon produces eight fresh tentacles, which succeed one another in irregular succession, and alternate with the tentacles already present. Their position determines the intermediate radii of the future young *Discophor* or *Ephyra*. After the formation of the circle of tentacles and the secretion of a clear basal periderm (*Chrysaora*), the *Scyphistoma* is capable of reproduction by fission and gemmation. At first the *Scyphistoma* appears to multiply only by budding; the second mode of reproduction, the process of strobilization, begins later. This consists essentially in the fission and division of the anterior half of the body into a number of segments, thus changing the *Scyphistoma* to a *Strobila*. The separation of the segments progresses continuously from the anterior end to the base of the Strobila, so that after the disappearance of the tentacles, first the terminal segment, then the second, and so forth, attain independent existence. Each segment becomes an Ephyra, developing eight pairs of elongated marginal lobes, with a marginal body in the notch which separates the two lobes of the same pair. It is these marginal lobes which give to the edge of the umbrella of the Ephyra its characteristic appearance. The young Ephyra gradually acquires the special peculiarities of form and organization of the sexually mature animal (*vide* figs. 113 *a—h*).

The number of nematocysts accumulated on the upper surface of the disc and on the tentacles of many *Medusæ* enable them to cause a perceptible stinging sensation on contact. Many, *e.g. Pelagia*, are phosphorescent. According to Panceri, this phenomena originates in the fat-like contents of certain epithelial cells on the surface.

In spite of the delicacy of their tissues, certain large *Medusæ* have left impressions in the lithographic slate of Sohlenhofen (*Medusites circularis*, etc.)

(1) Sub-order: **Calycozoa** (Cylicozoa).

*Cup-shaped Acalepha attached by their aboral pole. They have four wide vascular pouches separated by narrow walls, and eight arm-like processes beset with tentacles on the edge of the umbrella.*

The *Calycozoa* are best considered in their relation to the *Scyphistoma.* They may be looked upon as Scyphistoma deprived of their tentacles, which indeed are only transitory structures, and elongated so as to assume the form of a cup, and changed in several particulars which are characteristic of the medusa stage. The four septa arise by the fusion of the four gastric folds with the wide oral disc, which becomes drawn in and concave like a sub-umbrella. These four septa separate the same number of gas-

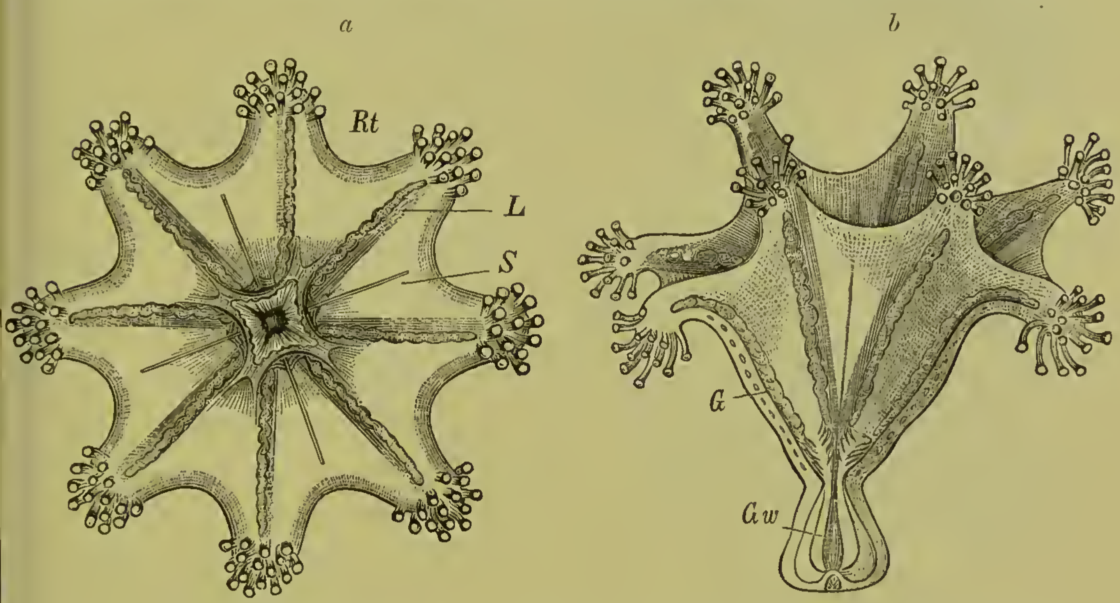



Fig. 197.—*a*, A *Calycozoon* (*Lucernaria*) from the oral surface magnified about 8 diameters. *S*, Septa of the four gastric pouches; *L*, longitudinal muscle fibres with the genital band; *Rt*, marginal tentacles. *b*, The *Calycozoon* seen from the side; *G*, Genital organs; *Gw*, gastric fold in the stalk; at the base is the foot gland.

trovascular pouches; while the margin of the cup is drawn out into eight arm-like processes, from which groups of short, knobbed tentacles arise (fig. 197).

The genital organs extend on the oral wall of the umbrella into the arms as eight band-shaped, plicated ridges. They run along in pairs at the lower part of each septum in the gastric cavity. The ovum, according to Fol, undergoes a complete segmentation, which results in a single-layered blastosphere. This becomes an oval, two-layered larva, which becomes ciliated, swims freely about, and finally attaches itself. The further development probably takes place directly without alternation of generations.

Fam. **Lucernaridæ.** *Lucernaria* O. Fr. Müller, Calycozoa with four radial chambers; without genital pouches, and without the accessory chambers of the digestive cavity alternating with these. *L. quadricornis* O. Fr. Müller. *campanulata* Lmx. *Craterolophus* Clark, with genital pouches and four chambers of the gastric cavity alternating with them. *Cr. Leuckarti* Tschb. =*helgolandica* Lkt., Heligoland.

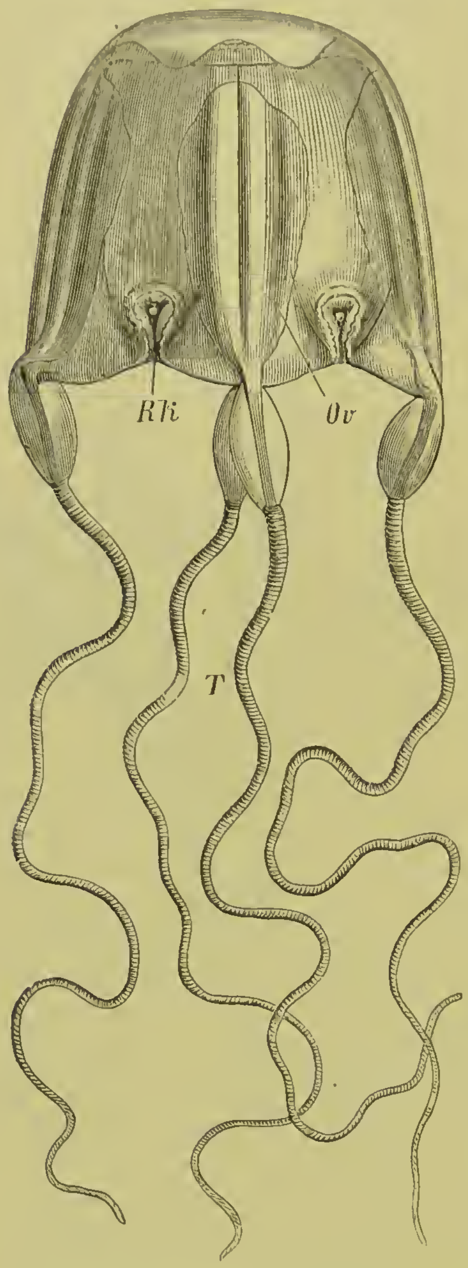



FIG. 198.—*Charybdea marsupialis*, natural size. *T*, Tentacles; *Rk*, marginal bodies (sense organs); *Ov*, ovaries.

The *Lucernaria* are without exception marine animals, and are remarkable for their great reproductive power. According to A. Meyer, if the stalk be cut off, the cup reproduces a new one, and injured individuals, and even excised pieces, can become perfect animals.

(2) Sub-order: **Marsupialida** (*Lobophora*).

*Tetra-radiate Acalepha having a four-sided pouch-like form. The velum has a smooth margin, and contains vessels [prolongations of the gastro-vascular system]. On the margin of the disc there are four vertically placed lobe-like appendages. There are four covered sense organs, and the same number of vascular pouches separated by narrow partition walls.*

The *Charybdeæ* are distinguished by the deep bell shape of their body, and were formerly reckoned as "Craspedota" among the *Hydromedusæ*, with which they certainly have some characteristics in common. Amongst these characteristics the most striking is the possession of a smooth-edged velum, which, however, contains vessels. On the other hand, the presence of the gastric filaments and of the large sense organs enclosed in niches points to a relationship with the *Acalepha;* and this view is supported by the character of their whole structure, in which the peculiarities of the *Lucernaridæ* are perceptible, though greatly modified. As in *Lucernaridæ*, the vascular spaces are wide pouches divided from each other by four narrow septa (figs. 198, 199).

The nervous system is allied to that of the *Hydromedusæ* by the presence of a sharply defined nerve-ring. This nerve-ring is placed on the sub-umbrella side of the bell, and, since at the bases of the four sense organs it lies further from the margin than it does at the corners of the bell, it has a sharply marked, zig-zag course. The nerve fibrillæ given off from it mostly supply the muscular system of the sub-umbrella, and there give rise to numerous reticula of fibrillæ connected with large ganglion cells. Large bundles of fibrillæ comparable to nerves have only been found in the four radii of the marginal bodies. The latter attain a high degree of development, since the knob-like swelling in which they terminate possesses, in addition to the lithocyst, a complicated visual apparatus consisting of two large unpaired median eyes and four small paired lateral eyes.

The generative organs have a very peculiar form. They are separated from the gastric filaments and as thin, rather broad plates attached in pairs to the four partition walls, reach the whole length of the vascular pouches. Unfortunately nothing is as yet known of the development.

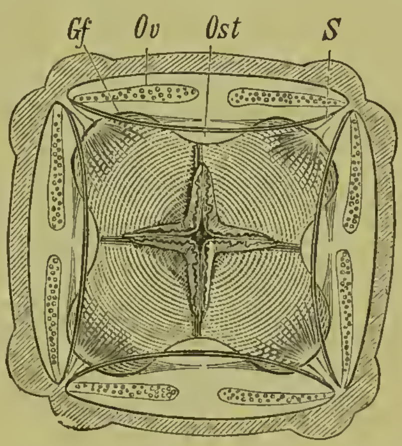



Fig. 199.—The apical half of a *Charybdea* divided transversely, seen from the sub-umbrella side. The four oral arms are visible. *Ov*, Ovaries on the four septa, *S*; *Ost*, ostia of the gastric pouches; *Gf*, gastric filaments.

Fam. **Charybdeidæ.** *Charybdea marsupialis* Pér. Les. (*Marsupialis Planci* Les.) Mediterranean.

(3) Sub-order: **Discophora** (*Acraspeda*), *Ephyra-medusæ*.

*Disc-shaped Acalepha, the margin of whose disc is divided into eight lobes. They have at least eight sub-marginal sense organs contained in niches, and with the same number of ocular lobes. As a rule there are four great cavities in the umbrella for the generative organs.*

The *Discophora*, which are generally known simply as *Acalepha*, can at once be distinguished from the *Calycozoa* and the *Charybdeidæ* by the disc-shaped lobed umbrella and usually by the large size of the oral tentacles. The lobes of the umbrella, however much they may differ in detail, can always be reduced to the eight pairs of lobes of the *Ephyra*, which, as the common starting-point of the Discophora, presents most clearly the eight-rayed symmetry characteristic of the group. The striped muscles of the sub-umbrella are strongly developed to correspond with the great size of the body; and beneath them the supporting lamella is usually thrown into a number of closely aggregated circular folds, thus causing a considerable increase in the surface on which the muscular epithelium with its circularly arranged fibres are placed.

The generative organs have the form of horse-shoe shaped frills which project into four widely open cavities in the sub-umbrella, the *sub-genital pits.* These cavities are not developed in some exceptional cases (*Nausithoë*, *Discomedusa*). The germinal epithelium,

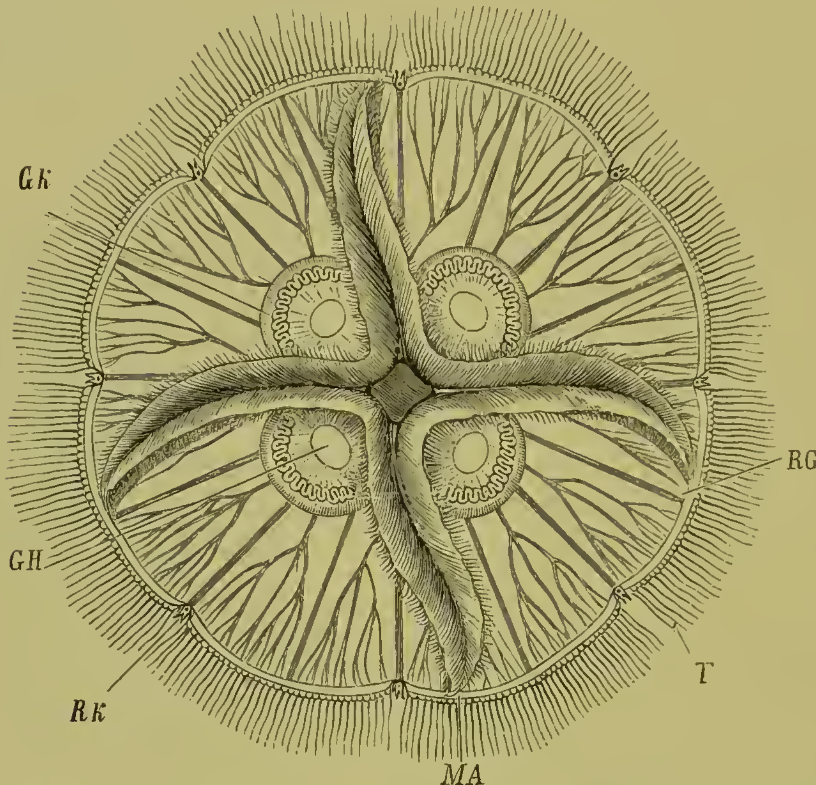



FIG. 200.—*Aurelia aurita*, seen from the oral surface. *MA*, The four oral arms with the mouth in the centre; *Gk*, The genital frills; *GH*, Openings of the sub-genital cavities; *Rk*, Marginal bodies; *RG*, Radial vessels; *T*, Tentacles on the margin of the disc.

which is always embedded in the gelatinous substance, is covered with an entodermal layer, and is probably itself an entodermal product (fig. 200). Development takes place by alternation of generations. In rare cases (*Pelagia*) the development is simplified, and the larva passes directly into the *Ephyra*, missing out the attached Scyphistoma and the Strobila stage (*Krohn*).

1. *Semæostomeæ.* Discophora with large central mouth surrounded by four large often multi-lobed oral arms. The form of the

umbrella edge, the number of lobes and marginal tentacles present great variations.

Fam. **Ephyropsidæ**, *Ephyropsis*, Ggbr. (*Nausithoë* Köll). Disc small and like that of *Ephyra*, with simple gastric sacs, without oral arms, but with eight marginal tentacles. The genital organs (in four pairs) do not lie in umbrella cavities. *E. pelagica* Köll., Mediterranean and Adriatic.

Fam. **Pelagidæ.** *Pelagia* Pér. Les. With wide gastric pouches and eight long marginal tentacles in the interradii. No alternation of generations. *P. noctiluca* Pér. Les., Mediterranean. *Chrysaora* Pér. Les., with twenty-four long marginal tentacles. The radial and intermediate gastric pouches are perceptibly different. *Chr. hysoscella* Esch. Hermaphrodite, North Sea and Adriatic.

Fam. **Cyaneidæ.** *Cyanea* Pér. Les. The tentacles are united in bundles on the under surface of the deeply lobed thick disc. There are sixteen (eight radial and eight intermediate) more or less wide gastric pouches, which break up near the end of the marginal lobes into small ramified vessels. *C. capillata* Esch.

Fam. **Aurelidæ.** *Discomedusa* Cls. With large oral arms, with branched vessels and two marginal tentacles. Subgenital pits present. *D. lobata* Cls., Adriatic. *Aurelia* Pér. Les., with branched radial vessels and edge of disc fringed with small tentacles. *A. aurita* L. (*Medusa aurita* L.), Baltic, North Sea, Adriatic, etc. *A. flavidula* Ag., coast of North America.

2. *Rhizostomeæ.* No central mouth, funnel-shaped slits in the eight oral arms and eight, rarely twelve, marginal bodies on the lobed margin of the disc. There are no marginal tentacles. The central mouth, which is at first present, becomes closed during the larval development by the fusion of the edges of the lips. Funnel-like splits are formed on the folded edges of the four pairs of arms, the so-called suctorial mouths, by means of which microscopic bodies are received into the canal system of the oral arms (fig. 195).

*Rhizostoma* Cuv. The arms end in simple tubular prolongations, and bear accessory tufts at their bases. *Rh. Cuvieri* Pér. Les., *Cephea* Pér. Les. The branched oral arms have groups of nematocysts and long filaments between the terminal tufts. *Cephea* Pér. Les. (*Cassiopea*) *borbonica* Delle Ch., Mediterranean and Adriatic.

## CLASS III.—CTENOPHORA.*

*Medusæ of spherical or cylindrical, rarely band-shaped form; with eight meridional rows of vibratile plates formed of fused cilia. They*

* C. Gegenbaur, "Studien über Organisation und Systematik der Ctenophoren," *Archiv. für Naturgesch.*, 1856. L. Agassiz, "Contributions to the Natural History of the United States of America," vol. iii., Boston, 1860. A. Kowalevski, "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Rippenquallen," Petersburg, 1866. H. Fol, "Ein Beitrag zur Anatomie und Entwicklungsgeschichte einiger Rippenquallen," Inaugural dissertation, Jena, 1869. A. Agassiz, "Embryology of the Ctenophoræ," Cambridge, U.S., 1874. C. Chun, "Die Ctenophoren des Golfes von Neapel," Leipzig, 1880.

*possess an œsophageal tube and a gastro-vascular canal system. Two lateral tentacles, which can be retracted into pouches, are often present.*

The *Ctenophora* possess a shape which can in all cases be reduced to a sphere. They are radially symmetrical free-swimming *Cœlenterata* of gelatinous consistence. The body is often bilaterally compressed, so that it is possible to distinguish two planes passing through the long axis at right angles to one another; these are the *sagittal* plane and the *transverse* plane, and are analogous to the median (longitudinal vertical), and lateral (longitudinal horizontal) planes of bilaterally symmetrical animals (fig. 201). The arrangement of the internal organs bears a relation to these two planes. All parts of the body which occur in pairs, as the two tentacles, the gastric canals, the hepatic bands of the stomach, and the vessels which give origin to the eight lateral canals, all lie in the transverse plane, while the sagittal plane coincides with the longer axis of the œsophageal (gastric) tube (whence also called the gastric plane), the two so-called polar-fields, and the terminal vessels of the infundibulum.

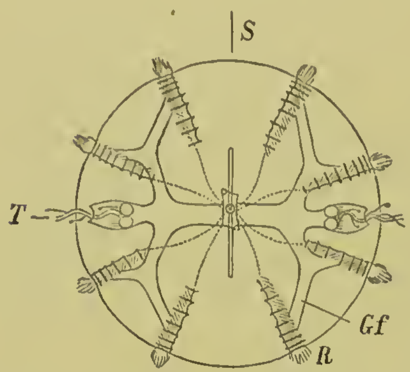



FIG. 201.—*Cydippe*, seen from the apical pole. *S*, Sagittal plane; *T*, transverse plane; *R*, swimming plates; *Gf*, gastro-vascular system.

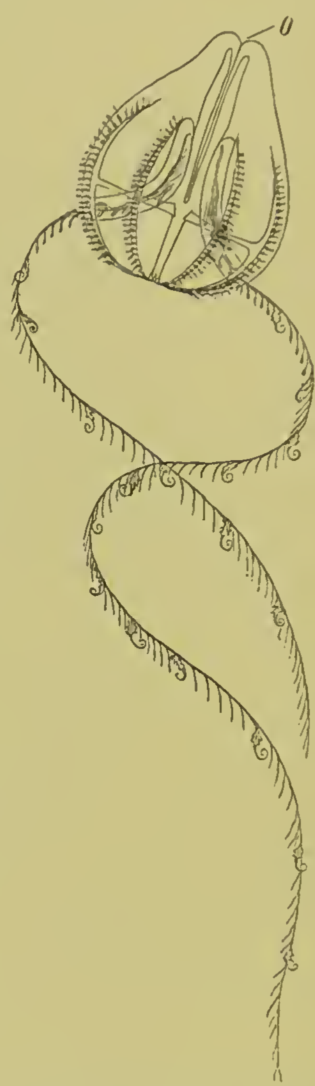



FIG. 202.—*Cydippe (Hormiphora) plumosa* (after Chun). *O*, Mouth.

The infundibulum is so compressed that its longest diameter falls in the lateral plane, which on this account is sometimes called the infundibular plane. Since these two planes divide the body into halves, which correspond with one another, and since there is no division into dorsal and ventral surfaces, the arrangement of the body may be said to be bi-radially symmetrical, but cannot be called bilaterally symmetrical, although each half possesses this property. The body is divided by these two perpendicular planes into four similar quadrants.

Locomotion is principally effected by the regular vibration of the hyaline swimming plates, which are disposed over the surface of the body in eight meridional rows, in such a way that each quadrant possesses two rows of plates, a transverse and a sagittal (fig. 202). Locomotion is also assisted by the contractility of the muscle fibres of the gelatinous tissue; this contractility in the band-shaped *Cestidæ* causes an undulating motion of the whole body.

The mouth, which is sometimes surrounded by umbrella-shaped lobed processes of the gelatinous tissue, leads into a wide (*Beroe*) or narrow œsophageal tube, which in the latter case soon becomes flattened and broad. The œsophageal tube is furnished with two hepatic bands, and communicates posteriorly, by an opening capable of being closed by muscles, with the gastric cavity, or, as it is commonly called, the *infundibulum.* The long œsophageal tube projects and opens freely into the infundibulum, and is completely surrounded by the gelatinous substance, as far as the level of the two longitudinal vessels which accompany the two lateral surfaces in the transverse plane.

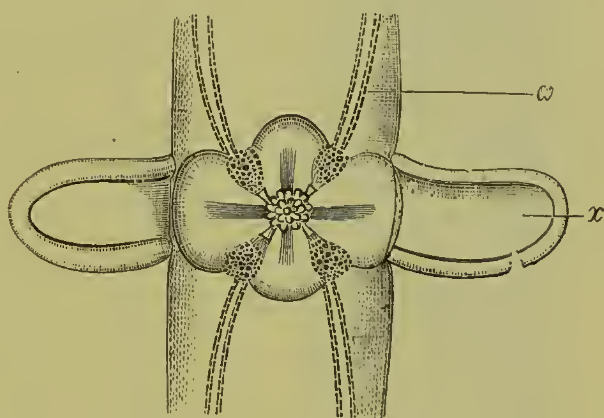



Fig. 203.—Aboral end of *Callianira bialata* (after R. Hertwig). *x*, The two polar spaces; *w*, the beginning of the eight rows of swimming plates, between which the otolith vesicle and the nerve plate are seen.

The infundibulum, which is in all cases compressed in a direction at right angles to the œsophageal tube, gives off eight vessels to the swimming-plates. These vessels have a bi-radial symmetry. It also gives off two vessels, which are dilated into two terminal sacs; the latter surround the sense-organ at the aboral pole, which is known as the otolith vesicle, and each of them opens to the exterior by an orifice which is placed in a diagonal plane and is capable of being closed. Two tentacular vessels may arise from the bottom of the infundibulum. The internal surface both of the œsophageal tube and of the infundibulum and its vessels seem to be completely clothed with cilia.

Up to the present time, the nervous system of the *Ctenophora* (fig. 203) is but imperfectly known. There is no doubt that the large vesicle found at the aboral pole, with its clear fluid and vibratile otoliths, is a sense-organ; it is also exceedingly probable, taking into consideration the organization of the Acalepha, that the central nervous system of the *Ctenophora* is contained in the thickened base of the vesicle, *the Otolith plate*, especially as the latter is also closely united with a second sense-organ, the sagittal *polar areas*, which have already been described by Fol as olfactory organs, and is also directly connected with the swimming plates by eight ciliated grooves.

True nematocysts are but seldom found in the ectoderm of the *Ctenophora*, but they are represented by peculiar *fixing* or *prehensile cells*, the base of which is prolonged into a spirally coiled thread, while the projecting and convex free end (fig. 204) is of a glutinous consistence, and becomes readily attached to any object which touches it.

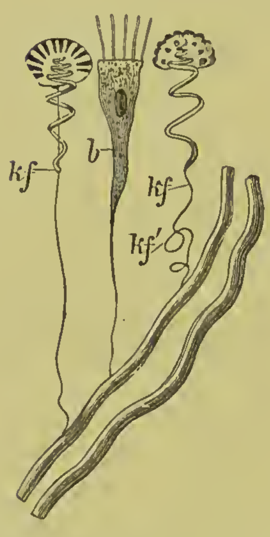


FIG. 204. — Smooth muscle fibres, prehensile cells (*kf*), and tactile cells (*b*), from the lateral filaments of the tentacle of *Euplocamis stationis* (after R. Hertwig). *kf'*, Prolongation of the contractile thread of a prehensile cell.

The *Ctenophora* are hermaphrodite. Both kinds of generative products arise on the wall of the vessels of the swimming plates or of blind sac-like diverticula of the same. Sometimes their production is localised (*Cestum*); sometimes they originate along the whole length of the canals, one side of the latter being beset with egg-follicles, the other with sperm-sacs (Beröe). The germ layers, which arise from the ectoderm, are covered by entodermal epithelium, and are separated from one another by a projecting fold. Ova and spermatozoa pass into the gastro-vascular cavity, and are ejected through the apertures of the same.

The fertilized ovum, which is enclosed by a loosely fitting membrane, consists, as in the case of many *Medusæ*, of a thin outer layer of finely granular protoplasm (exoplasm) and a central food yolk (endoplasm), containing vacuoles. The segmentation, which is complete, leads to the formation of two, four, eight segmentation spheres, each of which, like the original ovum, consists of a central mass, surrounded by a thin layer of finely granular protoplasm. In the stage with four segments, the segments are so disposed that two perpendicular planes placed between them would correspond to the two principal planes of the fully developed animal. Each of the four spheres gives rise to one of the four quadrants of the adult animal (Fol.) The whole mass of the finely granular exoplasm now becomes collected at the upper end of the segmentation spheres, where it is separated off and gives rise to eight new small spheres. These, by continued division, break up into a great number of small nucleated cells, which increase rapidly and grow round the eight large segmentation spheres or the cells produced from them.

The young *Ctenophora* sooner or later leave the egg membranes, and at this period differ more or less from the sexually mature animal in the simpler and usually more spherical form of the body, in the small size of the tentacles and swimming plates, and in the difference in the relative size of the œsophageal tube, infundibulum, and vascular canals. The differences are most striking in the lobed *Ctenophora* (with the exception of *Cestum*), the embryos of which have a great similarity to the young of *Cydippe*, and have no traces of bi-radial structure. It is only after a longer period of larval life that the completely mature form is attained by the unequal growth of the swimming plates and their canals, the outgrowth of the tentacle-like processes, and the formation of two lobe-like projections round the mouth from those halves of the body which correspond to the longer rows of swimming plates. The phenomenon remarked by Chun is worthy of notice, that the young of *Eucharis*, while still in the larval stage, become sexually mature during the hot period of the year.

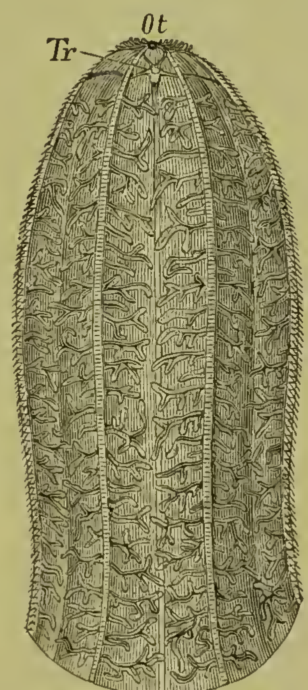



FIG. 205. — *Beröe ovatus.* *Ot*, Lithocyst, at its sides are the small tentacles of the polar areas; *Tr*, infundibulum.

The *Ctenophora* live in the warmer seas, and, under favourable conditions, often appear in great quantities at the surface. They feed on marine animals of various size, which they capture with their tentacles. Many, as the *Beroidæ*, which do not possess tentacles, are compensated for this deficiency by the possession of an unusually large mouth (fig. 205), by means of which they are able to receive relatively large bodies, even fishes, into the wide œsophageal tube, and to digest them. Although the average size is small, some of them, as *Cestum*, *Eucharis*, reach the length of a foot.

Fam. **Cydippidæ.** Body slightly compressed, spherical or cylindrical, with extremely regular development of the swimming plates. Their structure is therefore apparently octoradial. They possess two tentacles; the vessels of the stomach and swimming plates end blindly. *Cydippe hormiphora* Ggbr. = *Hormiphora plumosa* Ag., Mediterranean. *Eschscholtzia cordata* Köll., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Cestidæ.** Body elongated to the form of a band in the direction of the sagittal plane. Two tentacles. *Vexillum parallelum* Fol., Canary Isles. *Cestum Veneris* Less., Venus' Girdle, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Lobatæ.** The laterally compressed body possesses two umbrella-like lobes near the mouth, and has relatively small tentacles. *Eurhamphaea vexilligera* Ggbr., Mediterranean and Atlantic Ocean. *Chiaja papillosa*, M. Edw. (*Alcinöe papillosa* Delle Ch. = *Neapolitana* Less.), Mediterranean.

Fam. **Beroidæ.** Characterised by the laterally compressed body with fringe-like appendages on the periphery of the polar spaces; without tentacles. *Beröe Forskalii* M. Edw. (*albescens* and *rufescens* Forsk.), *Idyiopsis Clarki* Ag., *Pandora Flemmingii*, Esch.

# CHAPTER VIII.

## ECHINODERMATA.*

*Animals with a radial, usually pentamerous arrangement. They possess a skin bearing spicules and indurated by calcareous deposits, a digestive canal, a water-vascular apparatus, and a true vascular system.*

The radial arrangement of the Echinoderms was for a long time held to be a character of typical value, and was the principal reason why, since the time of Cuvier, the Echinoderms were included in one group, the *Radiata*, with the Medusæ and Polyps. It is only in recent times that R. Leuckart has effected the separation of the Echinoderms from the Cœlenterates.

The organization of the Echinoderms does in fact appear so different from that of the Cœlenterates, and seems to belong to a so much higher grade of development, that the combination of the two groups

* Fr. Tiedemann, "Anatomie der Röhrenholothurie, des pomeranzfarbenen Seesternes und des Stein-Seeigels," Heidelberg, 1820. Joh. Müller, "Über den Bau der Echinodermen," Abh. der Berl. Akad, 1853. Joh. Müller, "Sieben Abhandlungen über die Larven und die Entwickelung der Echinodermen." Abh. der Berl. Akad, 1846, 1848, 1849, 1850, 1851, 1852, 1854. A. Agassiz, "Embryology of the Starfish." Contributions, etc., Vol., V. 1864. E. Metschnikoff, "Studien über die Entwickelungsgeschichte der Echinodermen und Nemertinen," St. Petersburg, 1869. H. Ludwig, "Morphologische Studien an Echinodermen," Leipzig 1877 and 1878.

as *Radiata* is inadmissible, and so much the more so since the radial arrangement of the structure exhibits some transitions towards a bilateral symmetry. The *Echinodermata* are separated from the *Cœlenterata* by the possession of a separate alimentary canal and vascular system, and also by a number of peculiar features both of organization and of development.

The arrangement of the parts round the axis of the body is usually pentamerous. Nevertheless when the rays are more numerous, irregularities in the repetition of the similar organs are met with. If we take as the fundamental form of the Echinoderm type a spheroid with the principal axis somewhat shortened and the poles flattened and dissimilar, the long axis of the radial body will be this chief axis, and the mouth and anus the two poles (oral and anal poles). We can imagine five planes passing through the long axis of this spheriod, each of which will divide the body into two symmetrical halves. The perfect correspondence of these halves is, in the body of Echinoderms, disturbed by the different forms and significance of the two poles, so that our representation is not an exact one. The ten meridians, which are separated from one another by equal intervals and fall in these five planes, are differently related to one another, inasmuch as five alternate ones, which are called the *chief rays*, or *radii*, contain the most important organs, the nerves, the vascular trunks, the ambulacral feet, etc., while the other five meridians constitute the *intermediate rays* or *inter-radii*, and also contain certain organs (fig. 206). It is only in cases of complete equivalence of the radii and inter-radii that the echinoderm body presents a pentamerous radial arrangement (*regular Echinoderms*). It is, however, easy to show that this regular radial symmetry never occurs in its perfect form. Since one organ or another, *e.g.*, the madreporic plate, the stone canal, heart, etc., always remains single, and does not fall in the axis of the body, it will be only those planes, in the radius or inter-radius of which the unpaired organs fall, which can fulfil the

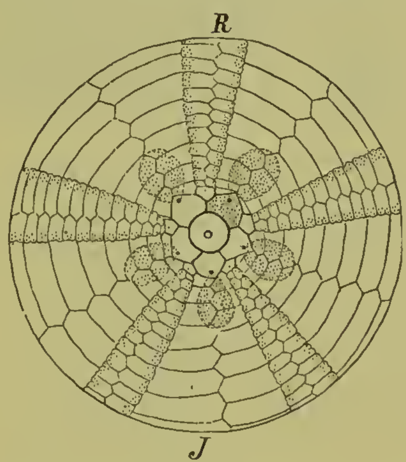



FIG. 206.—The shell of a regular Sea-urchin seen from above. *R*, Radius with double row of perforated plates; *J*, inter-radius with the genital organs and their pores. In the right anterior inter-radius is the madrepcric plate.

conditions which admit of the body being divided into two exactly symmetrical halves. Even these planes do not exactly fulfil these conditions, since the remaining organs are not strictly symmetrical in regard to such a plane.

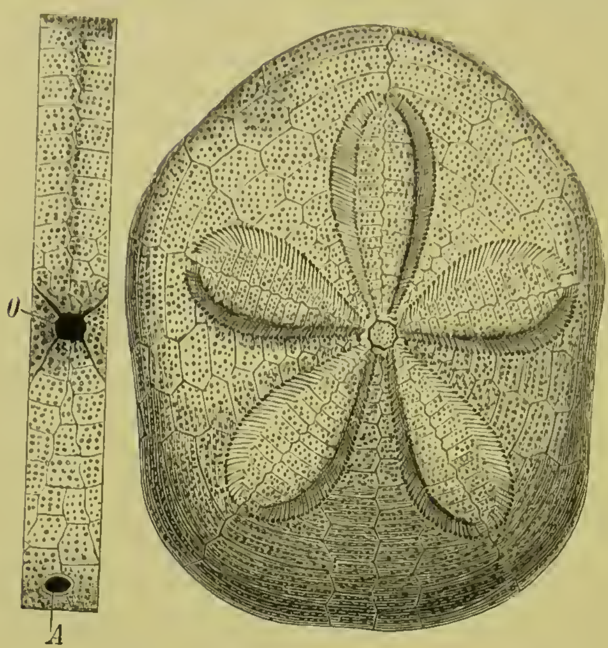



FIG. 207.—*Clypeaster rosaceus*, from the dorsal side. The madreporic plate is situate in the centre and is surrounded by five genital pores and by the five-leaved rosette. The unpaired radius is directed forwards. At the side is the median portion of the ventral surface. *O*, mouth; *A*, anus.

Very frequently one of the rays differs in size from the others, and then we have an *irregularity* in the external form of the Echinoderm, which renders the bilateral symmetry visible even from the exterior. The pentamerous body of the Echinoderm may become bilateral, the plane of the unpaired ray forming a median plane, on each side of which two pairs of equal rays are repeated. We can distinguish an upper surface (apical pole) and an under (oral pole), a right and left side (the two paired rays and their inter-radii), an anterior end (unpaired radius) and a posterior (unpaired inter-radius). In the *irregular* Sea-urchins, the bilaterally symmetrical form is still more strongly marked. Not only is the unpaired radius of abnormal size and form, and not only are the angles at which the principal ray and the accessory rays cut each other equal only in pairs, but also in the *Clypeastridea* (fig. 207), the anus is removed from the dorsal pole to the ventral half of the body in the unpaired inter-radius,

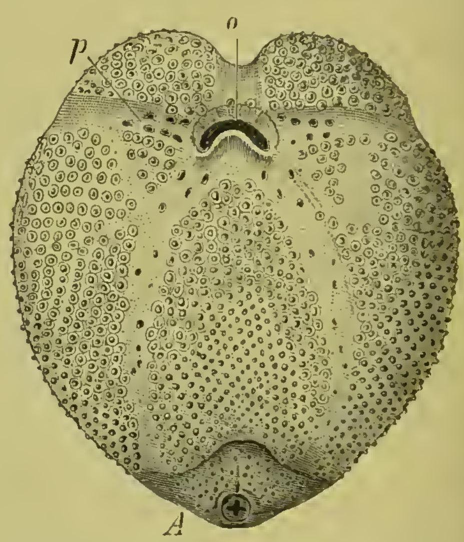



FIG. 208.—*Schizaster* (*Spatangidæ*), from the ventral side. *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *P*, pores of the ambulacral feet.

while, in *Spatangidæ*, both poles, or only the oral pole, are shifted in the direction of the unpaired radius, and become eccentric (fig. 208).

Only a few of the regular *Echinodermata* have the means of locomotion on all the five rays, and seldom then along the whole length of their meridians; far more frequently the area surrounding the oral pole becomes with regard to the position during movement the ventral surface; it is flattened and mainly or entirely possesses the organs of locomotion (*ambulacral surface*). These relations always obtain among the irregular *Echinodermata* which do not move indifferently in the direction of all five rays, but principally in that of the unpaired one. In these animals the mouth, and therewith the oral pole, being pushed towards the anterior edge, the two posterior radii (*bivium*) seem principally concerned in the formation of the ventral surface (*Spatangidæ*). It is otherwise in the case of the cylindrical *Holothurians*. Their mouth and anus preserve the normal position at the poles of the elongated axis, and the body is not unfrequently compressed in the direction of the axis in such a manner that three radii (*trivium*) with their organs of locomotion are placed on the foot-like ventral surface. On the body of these *Holothurians* one unpaired and two paired radii can be distinguished, only in this case the unpaired radius with its inter-radius marks, not the anterior and posterior, but the dorsal and ventral surfaces.

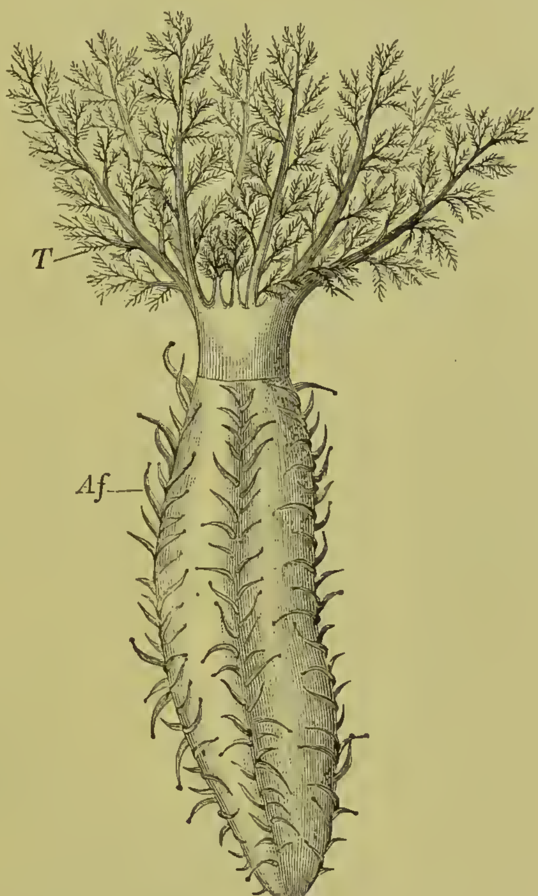



FIG. 209.—*Cucumaria* with extended dendritically branched tentacles (*T*). *Af*, ambulacral feet.

In many Echinoderms (*Echinoidea*) the oblate spheroidal form is the prevalent one. The principal axis appears shortened, the apical pole may be either pointed or flattened, and the ventral half is flattened out to form a more or less extended surface. The cylindrical form is obtained by an elongation of the axis (*Holothuroidea*) (fig. 209), the round form by a shortening of the same and the pentagonal disc by the latter process combined with a simultaneous elongation of the radii. If the radii are elongated till they are two or more times the length of the inter-radii, the form takes the shape of a star (*Asteroidea*), which may be either flat or arched. The arms of the star may be simple processes of the disc, and enclose a part of the body cavity (*Stelleridea, Star-fish*), or they may be more independent moveable organs sharply marked off from the disc, and as a rule simple (*Ophiuridæ*), but sometimes branched (*Euryalidæ*), or they may even bear simple jointed side twigs, the *pinnulæ* (*Crinoidea*).

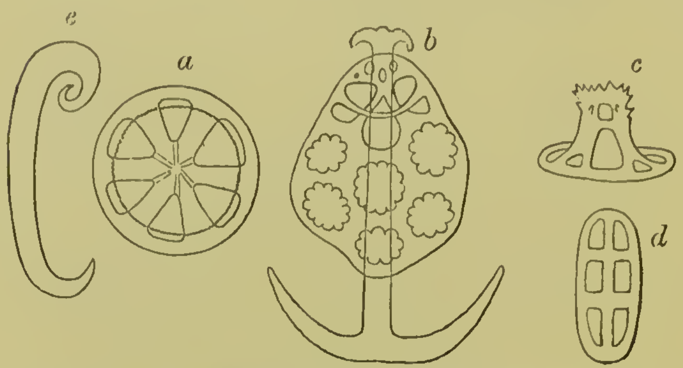



FIG. 210.—Calcareous bodies from the integument of Holothurians. *a*, calcareous wheels of *Chirodota*; *b*, anchor with supporting plate of *Synapta*; *c*, chair-like bodies; *d*, plates of *Holothuria impatiens*; *e*, hooks of *Chirodota*.

An important characteristic of the *Echinodermata* is the induration by calcareous deposits of the deeper layers of the integument (dermal connective tissue), so as to give rise to a solid more or less moveable or even immoveable armour. In the leathery *Holothuroidea* (fig. 210) alone these skeletal structures are confined to isolated calcareous bodies, which are embedded in the integument, and have a definite form of latticed plates, wheels, or anchors. In these

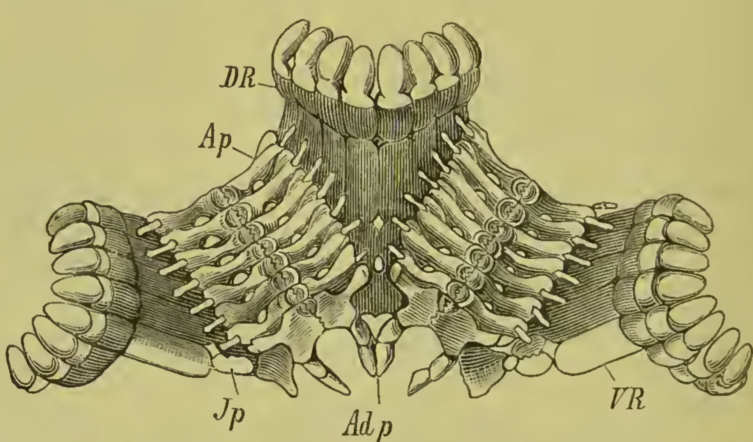



FIG. 211.—Skeletal plates of *Astropecten Hemprichtii* (after J. Müller). *DR*, dorsal marginal ossicles; *VR*, ventral marginal ossicles; *Ap*, ambulacral ossicles; *Jp*, intermediate interambulacral ossicles; *Adp*, anterior adambulacral ossicles projecting into the mouth.

cases the dermal muscular system is strongly developed, and has the form of five pairs of bundles of longitudinal muscles, external to which is a continuous layer of circular muscular fibres covering the internal surface of the integument. In the Star-fishes and Brittle-stars a moveable dermal skeleton is formed on the arms consisting of calcareous masses (*ambulacral ossicles*), connected together like vertebræ, while the integument of the dorsal surface is filled with calcareous plates, and bears projecting processes and spicules (fig. 211).

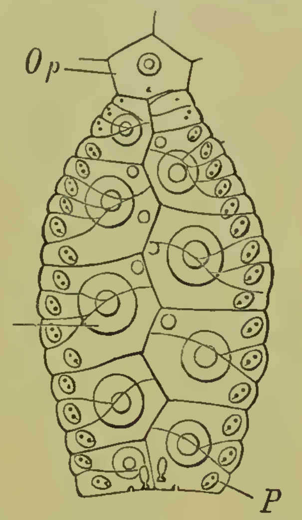



FIG. 212. — Third ambulacrum of a young *Toxopneustes droebachensis* of 3 mm (after Lovén). *Op*, Ocular plate; *P*, primary plates and tentacle pores. The sutures of the primary plates are visible on the plates; *Sw*, the tubercles to which the spines are articulated.

The exoskeleton in the Sea-urchins is immoveable. It consists of twenty meridional rows of solid calcareous plates immoveably connected together by their edges so as to form a firm shell, which is continuous except at the two poles, where it is interrupted by membranous structures. The rows of plates are arranged in two groups, each with five pairs; of which the one group is radial in position and consists of plates pierced by the pores for the exit of the ambulacral feet (*ambulacral plates*, fig. 212); the other belongs to the inter-radii, and the plates are unpierced (*the interambulacral plates*, fig. 206, *R*, *J*). Near the apical pole, which in the *Crinoidea* and the embryonic *Echinoidea* is occupied by a single plate (central plate), there is, in the Sea-urchins, a small area covered with minute calcareous plates and containing the anus. Around this area the five ambulacral and the five interambulacral rows terminate, each in a pentagonal plate; the former ending in the smaller radial ocular plates (fig. 206), the latter in the larger inter-radial genital plates. The *Crinoidea*, in addition to the dermal skeleton of the disc, possess a stalk, which is composed of pentagonal calcareous masses, arises from the dorsal side of the body, and becomes attached to firm surrounding objects.

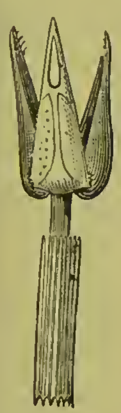


FIG. 213.— Pedicellaria of a *Leiocidaris* (after Perrier).

Amongst the appendages of the dermal armour, the numerous and variously shaped spines and the pedicellariæ must be mentioned.

The former are moveably articulated to the knobbed tubercles on the shell of the Sea-urchin, and are raised and moved laterally by special muscles developed in a soft superficial dermal layer. The pedicellariæ (fig. 213) are stalked, prehensile appendages furnished with two, three, or more rarely four jaws, which are continually snapping together. They are especially collected around the mouth of the Sea-urchin and on the dorsal surface of the Star-fish. Small transparent bodies, *sphæridia*, are found in the living Sea-urchins, and probably have the value of sense organs. In the *Spatangidæ*, knobbed and ciliated bristles (*clavulæ*) are found upon the so-called *fascioles*.

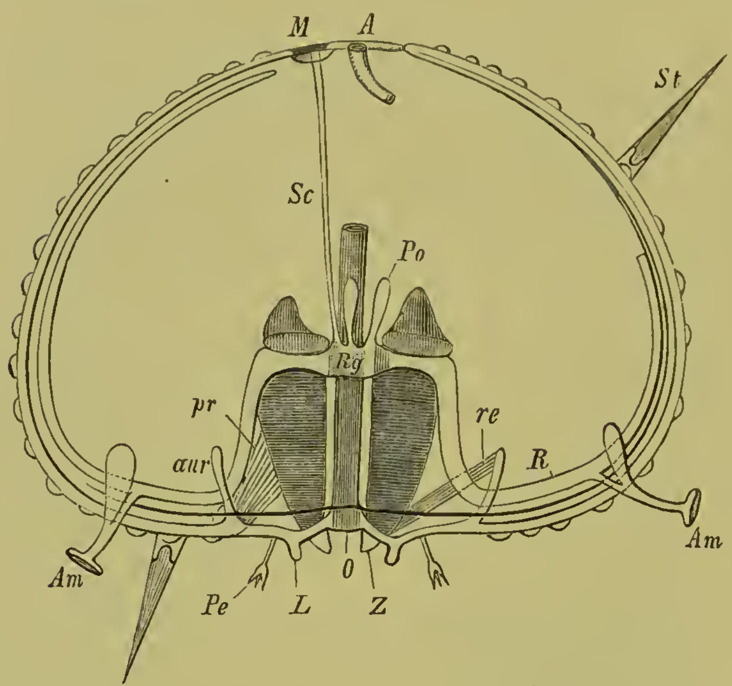



FIG. 214.—Diagram exhibiting the relations of the different systems of organs in an *Echinus* (after Huxley). *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *Z*, teeth; *L*, lips; *Aur*, auriculæ of the shell; *re*, retractor and protractor muscles of lantern; *Rg*, circular ambulacral vessel; *Po*, polian vesicle; *R*, radial vessel of the same, with side branches to the ambulacral feet *(Am)*; *Sc*, stone canal; *M*, madreporic plate; *St*, spine; *Pe*, pedicellariæ.

The *Echinodermata* are especially characterised by the possession of the peculiar water-vascular system and of the distensible ambulacral feet connected with it (figs. 214, 215). This ambulacral vascular system consists of a circular vessel surrounding the œsophagus, and of five radial vessels projecting into the rays. These vessels have ciliated internal walls, and contain a watery fluid. Very frequently a number of vesicles, the Polian vesicles, are connected with the circular vessel, also a number of racemose appendages, the significance of which is not fully understood. In connection with the circular vessel there is also a stone canal (in rare cases more than one are present), which permits of communication between the sea water and the fluid contents of the water vascular system. This canal, which is so called on account of the calcareous deposits in its walls, either hangs within the body cavity, whence it takes up fluid through the pores in its walls (*Holothurians*), or ends in a porous calcareous plate, the madreporic plate, which is inserted in the external covering of the body, and through the pores of which the sea water percolates into the lumen of the canal system. The position of the madreporic plate varies considerably. In the *Clypeastridea* it is at the apical pole; in the *Cidaridea* and *Spatangidea* it is interradial, and falls in the anterior right interradius near the apex; in the Asteridea it is also interradial and dorsal; in the *Euryalidæ* and the *Ophiuridæ* it lies on one of the five buccal plates. Some Echinoderms, *e.g.*, species of *Ophidiaster* and *Echinaster echinites*, possess several stone canals and madreporic plates.

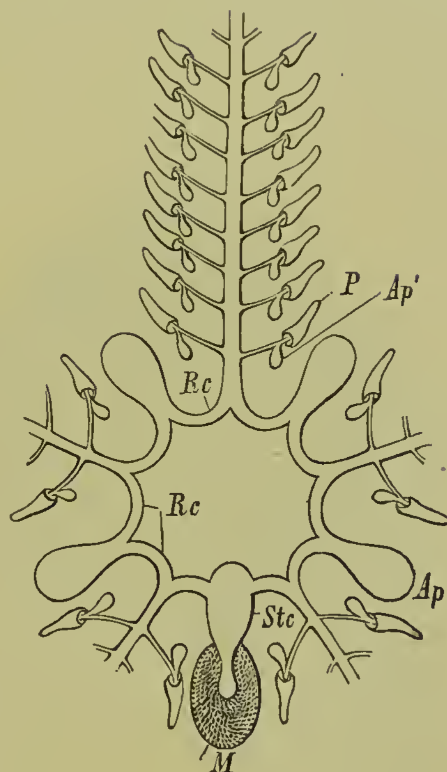



FIG. 215. — Diagramatic representation of the water-vascular system of a Star-fish. *Rc*, Circular vessel; *Ap*, ampullæ or Polian vesicles; *Stc*, stone canal; *M*, madreporic plate; *P*, ambulacral feet connected with the side twigs of the radial canals; *Ap'*, the ampullæ of the same.

On the lateral branches of the five or more radial trunks are found the appendages known as the *ambulacral feet* (fig. 216). These are extensible tubes or sacs, which pass through pores and openings in the dermal skeleton and project on the surface of the body. They are capable of being swollen out, and are frequently provided with a sucking disc at their free extremity. Contractile ampullæ are placed at the point of junction of the tube feet with the side branch of the radial vessel; they force the


FIG. 216.—Diagrammatic section through one of the arms of *Asteracanthion* (after W. Lange). *N*, Nervous system; *P*, ambulacralfect; *A*, calcarcous portions of integument; *T*, dermal branchia.

fluid into the feet and cause them to swell, and hence to project. A number of feet so distended affix themselves by means of their sucking discs; they then contract and draw the body slowly in the direction of the radii. The number and distribution of these appendages are subject to numerous modifications. Sometimes

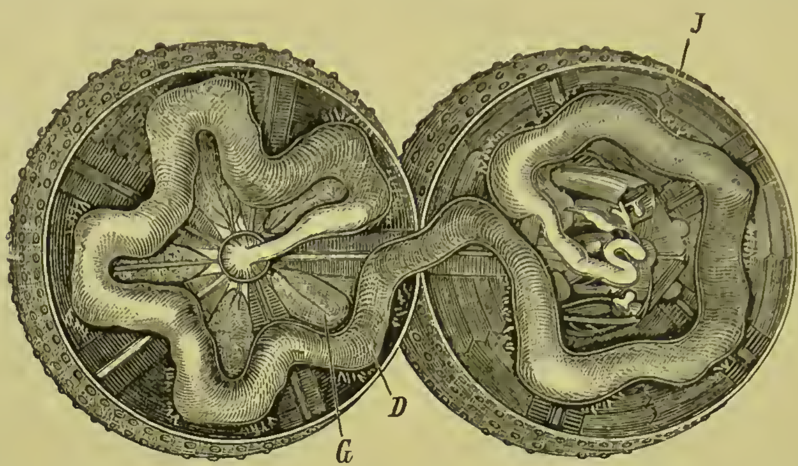



Fig. 217.—Sea-urchin divided along the equatorial line (after Tiedemann). *D*, Digestive canal fixed to the shell by mesentery; *G*, generative organs; *J*, inter-radial plates.

they are arranged in rows along the whole length of the meridian from the oral region to the periproct (*Cidaridea* and *Pentacta*). Sometimes they are scattered irregularly over the whole surface of the body, or only over the foot-like ventral surface, as in the

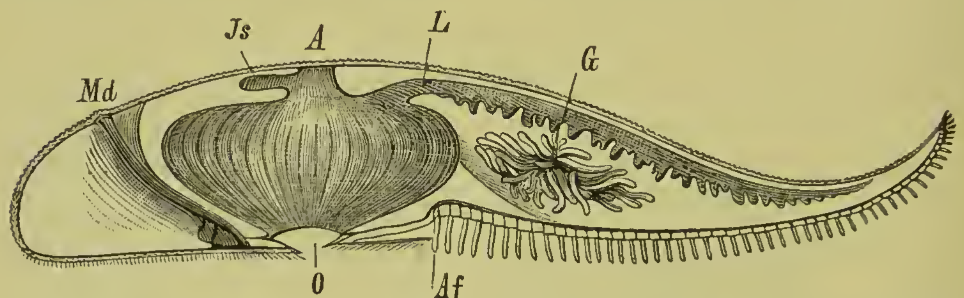



Fig. 218.—Longitudinal section through the arm and disc of *Solaster endeca* (somewhat altered after G. O. Sars). *O*, mouth leading into the wide stomach; *A*, anus; *L*, radia-hepatic diverticulum of the stomach; *G*, genital organs; *Md*, madreporic plate; *Js*, inter-radial diverticulum of the rectum; *Af*, ambulacral feet

*Holothurians*. In some cases they are confined to the oral surface, as in all the *Asteroidea*. We are able therefore to distinguish an ambulacral and an antambulacral zone—the first coinciding with the oral and ventral surfaces, the latter with the dorsal surface. Nevertheless the ambulacral feet are variously constructed, and do not in all cases serve for locomotion. In addition to the ambulacral feet, great tentacle-like tubes may be present as appendages of the water-vascular system; the circle of tentacles round the mouth of *Holothurians* (fig. 209) is composed of such appendages. We also find leaf-like appendages arranged over four or five-leaved rosette-shaped areas, forming the ambulacral gills of the *Spatangidea* and *Clypeastridea* (figs. 207 and 208). The irregular Sea-urchins all possess in addition ambulacral feet upon the ventral surface. These are in the *Clypeastridea* almost microscopic in size; they are very numerous, and are arranged in branched rows or are irregularly distributed over the surface.

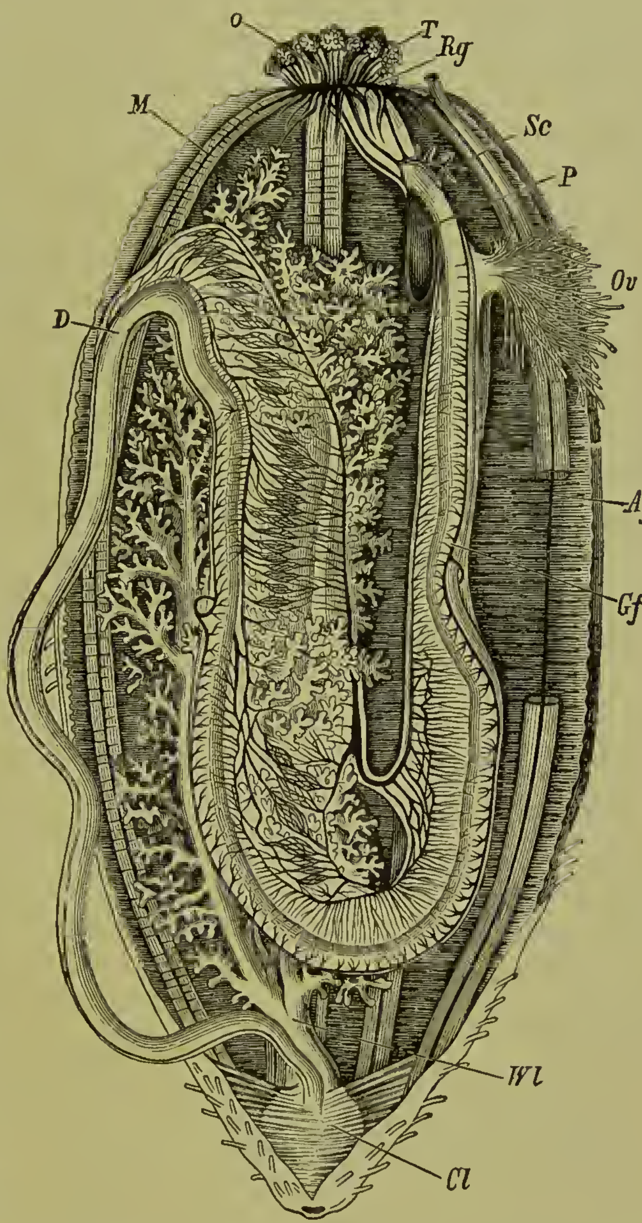



FIG. 219.—*Holothuria tubulosa*, opened longitudinally (after M. Edwards). *O*, Mouth in the midst of the tentacles *(T)*; *D*, digestive canal; *Sc*, stone canal; *P*, Polian vesicle; *Rg*, circular vessel of the water-vascular system; *Ov*, ovaries; *Ag*, ambulacral vessel; *M*, longitudinal muscles; *Gf*, vessel to the intestine; *Cl*, cloaca; *Wl*, respiratory trees.

The *Echinodermata* possess an alimentary canal distinct from the body cavity; it can be divided into three parts—œsophagus, stomach, and rectum. The anus is placed usually at the centre of the apical pole, rarely in an interradius on the ventral side. The intestine may, however, end blindly, as for example in all the *Ophiuridæ* and *Euryalidæ*, also in the genera *Asteropecten*, *Ctenodiscus*, and *Luidia*, which have no anus. The mouth is often surrounded by projecting skeletal plates armed with spicules. There may even be developed, as in the *Cidaridea* and *Clypeastridea*, pointed teeth covered with enamel, constituting a powerful masticatory apparatus, which again is supported around the œsophagus by a system of plates and rods. This apparatus is known as Aristotle's Lantern (fig. 214). In the *Holothurians*, on the other hand, there is a calcareous ring round the œsophagus. It is formed of ten pieces, and serves for the attachment of the longitudinal bundles of the dermal muscles.

In the Star-fishes the digestive canal is invariably short, sac-like, and beset with branched blind appendages, some of which lie in the disc, while some project a long way into the arms. In the *Asteroidea* we find five pairs of strongly developed multilobed diverticula of the middle division of the alimentary canal (fig. 218). The five diverticula of the short rectum which fall in the interradii are much shorter, and perhaps perform the function of kidneys, while the longer diverticula increase the digesting surface. In the other Echinoderms the narrow intestine is much increased in length, and is either, as in *Comatula*, coiled round a spindle in the axis of the disc, or, as in the Sea-urchins, describes some convolutions (fig. 217), and is attached to the inner surface of the shell by fibres and membranes. In the *Holothurians* also the intestine is, as a rule, much longer than the body, and is usually folded upon itself three times and attached by a sort of mesentery (fig. 219).

The true vascular system is very difficult to trace. It consists in most Echinoderms of a ring-like vascular plexus surrounding the œsophagus. From this circular vessel radial vessels pass off one to each ray, and these trunks again give off other branches. There is in addition on the dorsal surface a second circular vessel, which sends off branches to the stomach and generative organs. These two vascular rings are connected by a supposed heart, which, according to Ludwig, consists of a close plexus of contractile vessels. In the Holothurians, besides the vascular ring round the œsophagus, only two trunks with their branches to the intestine are known. The blood is a clear, slightly coloured fluid, in which numerous colourless blood corpuscles are suspended.

Special organs of respiration are by no means universally found. The entire surface of the external appendages, as well as the surface of the organs suspended in the body cavity, and especially of the intestine, appear to play a part in the exchange of the gases of the blood. The sea-water very likely enters by the pores in the madreporic plate into the body cavity, and is kept in active movement by the cilia which line the body cavity and the perihæmal canals; in this way the surface of the internal organs is continually bathed by water. The leaf-like and pinnate ambulacral appendages (*ambulacral branchiæ*) of the irregular Sea-urchins are regarded as special organs of respiration, as also are the cæcal tubes (dermal branchiæ), which project from the surface of the integument and communicate with the body cavity in some regular Sea-urchins and in the *Asteridea.* These dermal branchiæ are distributed in the *Asteridea* over the whole dorsal surface as simple tubes, and in the Echini they surround the mouth as five pairs of branched tubes. Lastly there are the so-called respiratory trees of *Holothurians;* these are two large tree-like branched tubes which open by a common stem into the cloaca. The water which is taken into these organs can be again ejected with great force (fig. 219).


Fig. 220.—Diagram of the nervous system of a Star-fish. *N*, The nerve ring connecting the five ambulacral centres.

The *nervous system* (fig. 220) consists of five principal nerves running down the five rays. These nerves in the *Asteridea* lie immediately beneath the epidermis of the ambulacral groove, external to the radial blood vessel and water vascular trunk: they send off numerous fibres to the ambulacral feet, the muscles of the spines, pedicellariæ, etc. These ectodermal bands may be looked upon as the central part of the nervous system ("*ambulacral brains*" of J. Müller). Near the mouth they divide into two parts, which unite with corresponding branches from the other radial trunks to form a nervous ring containing ganglion cells.


Fig. 221. — *Astropecten aurantiacus*, end of ray with the eye (*Oc*) surrounded by spicules (after E. Haeckel).

The tentacle-like ambulacral feet which in the *Asteridea* and *Ophiuridea* are present in simple number at the end of the arms are supposed to have the value of tactile organs. The same significance has been attributed to the tentacles of the Holothurids and to the pencil-like tactile feet of the *Spatangidæ.* Organs resembling eyes have been found in the *Echinoidea* and *Asteridea*. In the former (*Cidaridea*) there are, on special plates (*ocular plates*), at the apical pole, five tentacle-like prominences, in each of which a nerve ends. The eyes of the *Asteridea* are most accurately known. According to Ehrenberg's discovery, they have the form of red pigment spots, and lie on the ventral side of the rays at the distal end of the ambulacral groove. They are spherical pedunculated prominences, and the convex surface is covered by a simple membrane, which hides a number of conical simple eyes (fig. 221). The simple eyes appear to have their axes directed towards a common point. They each consist of a red mass of pigment surrounding a refractive body, and a nervous apparatus.

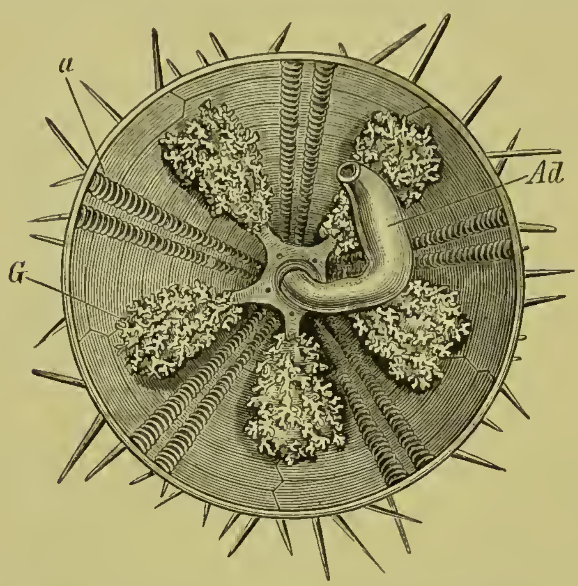



Fig. 222.—Genital organs of *Echinus*. *Ad*, Rectum; *G*, genital glands lying on the interambulacral plates; *a*, rows of ampullæ.

Reproduction is mainly sexual, and separate sexes are the rule. Only *Synapta* and *Amphiura* are hermaphrodite. The organs of reproduction of the two sexes are extremely alike, so that if it were not that the colour of the generative products is different,—the seminal fluid is mostly white and the ova red or yellow,—a microscopical examination of the contents of the generative glands would be the only means of distinguishing between them. Sexual differences of the external form or of definite parts of the body are only very rarely present, since as there is no copulation the sexual functions are usually confined to the secretion and preparation of the generative material. Ova and spermatozoa, with some rare exceptions, first come in contact in the sea water outside the body of the mother. Internal fertilization, which is very rare, occurs in several viviparous species of *Amphiura* and *Phyllophorus*. The number and position of the generative organs are generally in strict correspondence with the radial structure; nevertheless there are numerous exceptions to this. In the regular *Echinoidea*, five-lobed ovaries or testes, which are composed of branched blind tubes, lie in the interradii on the internal surface of the dorsal part of the shell (fig. 222). The ducts of these glands are five in number, and open to the exterior through five openings in the skeletal plates (genital plates) around the apical pole (figs. 206, 222). In the irregular *Spatangidæ* the generative organ of the posterior interradius is always absent, and the number of glands may be three or two. In the *Asteridea* the five pairs of genital glands have the same interradial arrangement: sometimes however, they project into the arms: the apertures for the exit of the generative products lie on the dorsal side, and in each interradius two places may be found, each of which is pierced in a sieve-like manner by a number of such openings (fig. 223). In the *Ophiuridæ* ten lobed generative glands composed of a number of blind tubes are developed around the stomach; their products pass through special passages into pouches, and from thence to the exterior through paired slits on the ventral side between the arms. The generative glands of the *Crinoidea* are concealed in the arms and pinnules. In the *Holothurians*, the generative organs are reduced to one branched gland, the duct of which opens to the exterior not far from the anterior pole of the body on the dorsal side (fig. 219).


Fig. 223.—Part of the inter-radius of a star-fish (*Solaster*) with the generative glands (*G*) and the groups of pores (sieve plates) on the dorsal skin (after J. Müller and Troschel).

The *development* of the *Echinodermata* presents as a rule a complicated metamorphosis, and is characterised by the possession of bilateral larval stages. Many *Holothurians* are developed without passing through these larval stages, as also are certain Sea-urchins, as *Anochanus*, *Hemiaster*, and some *Asteroidea*, which are either viviparous (*Amphiura squamata*) or lay only a small number of eggs, and protect them during their development in a brood pouch. In these cases also the first stage is a ciliated embryo, which is either developed directly or passes through a much simplified metamorphosis.

In the cases of a complicated metamorphosis, the ovum, after undergoing a nearly equal segmentation, gives rise to a spherical embryo, the cellular wall of which is ciliated and encloses a central gelatinous substance (fig. 103). A pitlike depression of the cellular wall gives rise to the first rudiment of the alimentary canal, and the opening of this depression (gastrula mouth) to the anus. The ciliated embryo becomes elongated and gradually takes the form of a long, oval, more or less pear-shaped larva, in which a slightly arched dorsal, two symmetrical lateral, and a saddle-shaped ventral surface can be distinguished. The cilia which are concentrated upon the raised edge of the ventral depression give rise to a continuous ciliated band which serves as a locomotive apparatus. [This band first appears as two separate ciliated ridges placed transversely, one in front of, and the other behind the mouth (fig. 224, 3). These soon become connected laterally.] The alimentary canal, which has now acquired an anterior opening, the mouth, consists of three portions,—the œsophagus, the stomach, and the intestine. The wide mouth leading into the œsophagus is situated within the band of cilia on the ventral surface; the anus is also ventral, but external to the ciliated band in the region of the posterior pole. Before the appearance

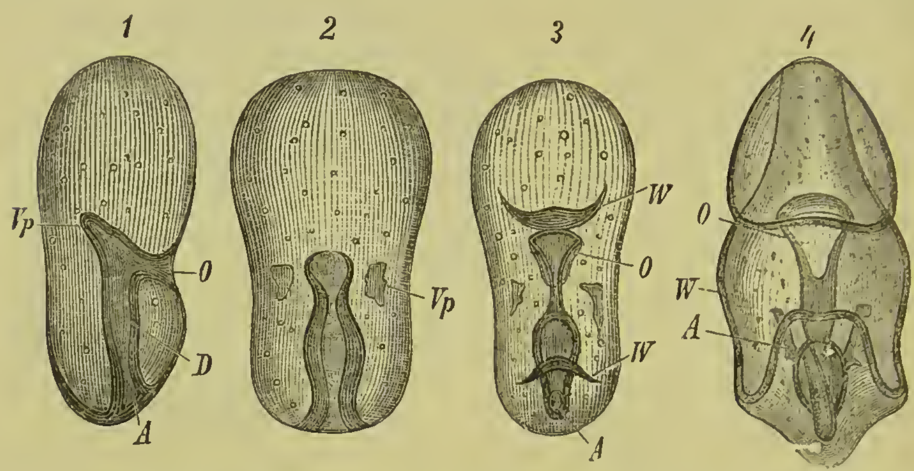



FIG. 224.—Larval development of *Asteracanthion berylinus* (after A. Agassiz) (for earlier stages see fig. 103). 1, stage where the mouth (*O*) has just appeared, represented in profile; *A*, blastopore (anus); *D*, intestine; *Vp*, vaso-peritoneal sac. 2, Somewhat older stage in surface view with two separated vaso-peritoneal sacs. 3, Later stage, from the ventral side, with two transverse ciliated ridges (*W*); the sac on the left side has an excretory pore. 4, Young Bipinnaria with double band of cilia (*W*).

of the mouth, another organ is separated from the alimentary canal: this is a sac-like ciliated tube, which opens to the exterior by a pore on the dorsal surface, and represents the first commencement of the ambulacral system. A second organ, which also has its origin from the rudimentary digestive canal, consists of the disc-shaped lateral sacs (fig. 224), from the walls of which the peritoneal lining of the body cavity is produced.

With their progressive development the larvæ of the *Sea-urchin*, the *Starfish*, and the *Holothurian* diverge more and more widely from one another. The raised edge of the depression just mentioned, with its band of cilia, becomes bent and prolonged into processes (fig.

225) of different form. These processes are arranged with a strict regard to bilateral symmetry, and their number, position, and size essentially determine the special shape of the body. An anterior and a posterior ventral region of the band of cilia can be distinguished from the lateral parts which form the dorsal portions; the latter curve round and pass into the former at the anterior and posterior ends of the body (fig. 225, *b*). The dorso-lateral parts may, however, unite anteriorly with one another without passing into the anterior ventral band; in this case the anterior continuations of the latter pass directly into one another so as to form an independent præoral ring, while the dorso-lateral and posterior ventral portions of the originally continuous band form a longitudinally directed post-oral ring. This arrangement is characteristic of the larvæ of the *Asteridea* (*Bipinnaria*, *Brachiolaria*). In all other forms a single longitudinal band of cilia only is present. In the larvæ of Holothurians, the *Auricularia* (fig. 225), the processes remain short and soft; they are found on the dorso-lateral edges and on the posterior dorso-ventral arch of the band of cilia; they also appear on the posterior ventral (umbrella) and the anterior ventral (oral shield) parts of the band. The processes have a similar disposition in *Bipinnaria*, where, however, they are often much longer, but are in this case also not provided with calcareous rods. The *Brachiolaria* are distinguished from the *Bipinnaria* by the possession of three anterior arms, which are placed between the anterior portions of the two rings of cilia, and serve as a fixing apparatus. The bilateral larvæ of the *Ophiurids* and *Sea-Urchins*, the so-called *Pluteus* forms, are distinguished by their large rod-shaped processes, which are supported by a system of calcareous rods.

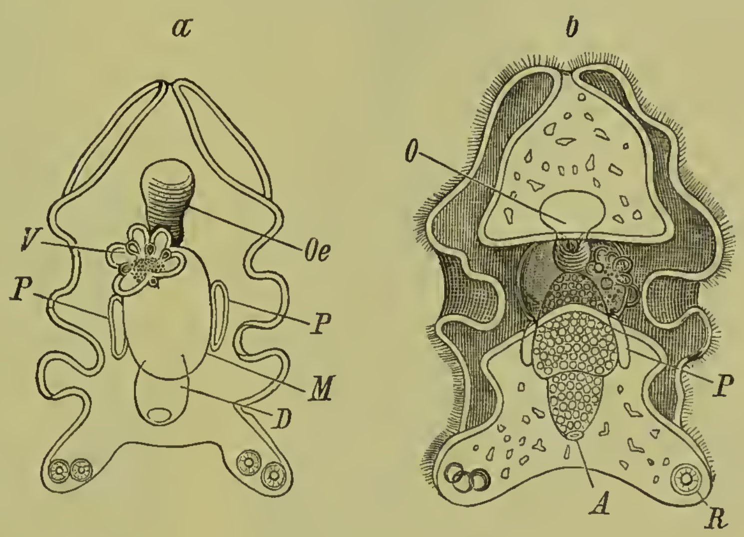



Fig. 225.—*Auricularia* larvæ (after J. Müller). *a*, from the dorsal side; *b*, from the ventral side. *O*, mouth beneath the oral shield; *Oe*, œsophagus; *M*, stomach; *D*, intestine with anus (*A*); *P*, peritoneal sac; *V*, Water-vascular rosette with pore; *R*, calcareous wheel-like bodies.

The *Pluteus* larvæ of the *Ophiurids* possess long lateral arms on the anterior dorso-ventral arch of the band, on the dorso-lateral edge, and on the edge of the posterior ventral hood. The Pluteus larva of the Sea-urchin has no lateral arms, but processes are developed on the edge of the anterior ventral hood (fig. 226). The larvæ of the *Spatangidæ* are characterised by an unpaired apical rod, and those of *Echinus* and *Echinocidaris* by the presence of ciliated epaulettes (fig. 227).

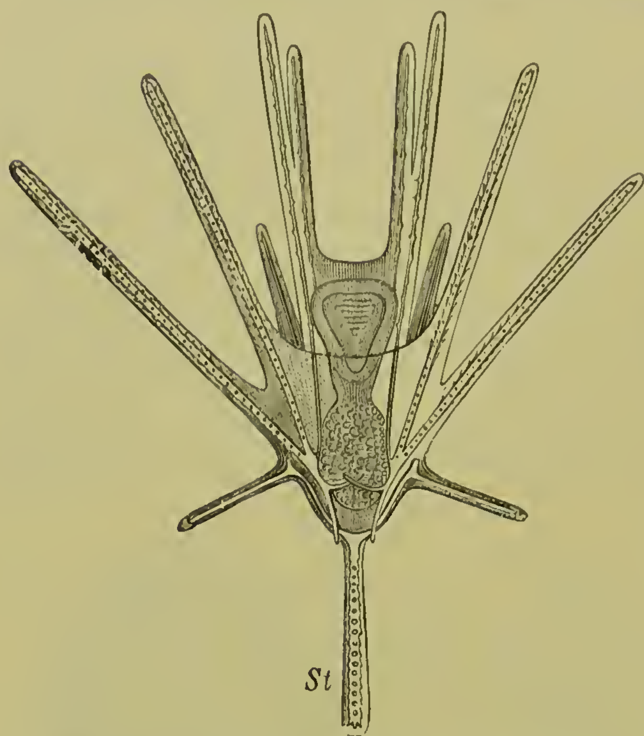



FIG. 226.—*Pluteus* of a *Spatangus* with so-called apical rod (*St*) (after J. Müller).

The transformation of the laterally symmetrical larva with its bilateral processes and complicated organization into the body of the adult Echinoderm is not in all cases effected in the same manner. In the Sea-urchins and Starfishes the young animal is developed by a process of new formation within the body of the larva, the stomach, intestine, and dorsal sac alone persisting; while the transformation of the *Auricularia* into *Synapta* takes place without the loss of so many parts of the larva, the young passing through a pupa-like intermediate stage. In the first case a mass of

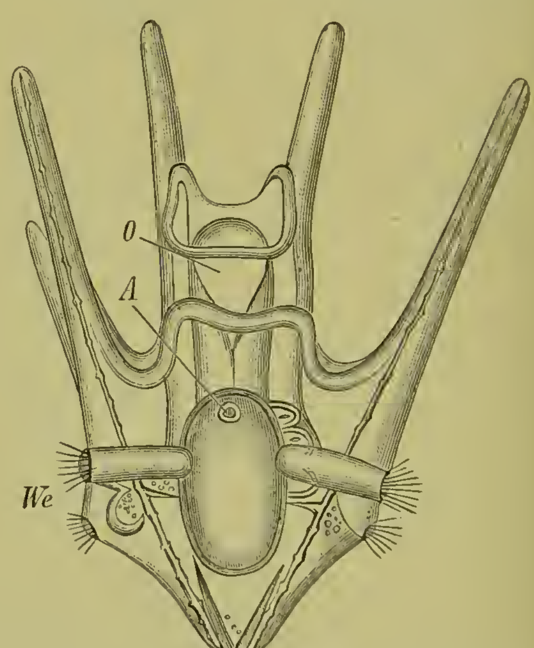



FIG 227.—*Pluteus* larva of *Echinus lividus* with four ciliated epaulettes (*We*) (after E. Metschnikoff) from the ventral side. *O*, Mouth; *A*, anus.

interstitial tissue filled with round cells is formed external to the lateral discs, and with participation of the thickening skin. This tissue becomes the seat of calcareous deposits, and forms the dermal skeleton of the adult Echinoderm (fig. 228 *a*, *b*). The canal of the dorsal pore has in the meantime changed its simple form and developed into the circular vessel with diverticula, which are destined to become the ambulacral trunks. As development progresses, the young animal appears as a more or less spherical or pentagonal body, or as a star with short arms, in propor-

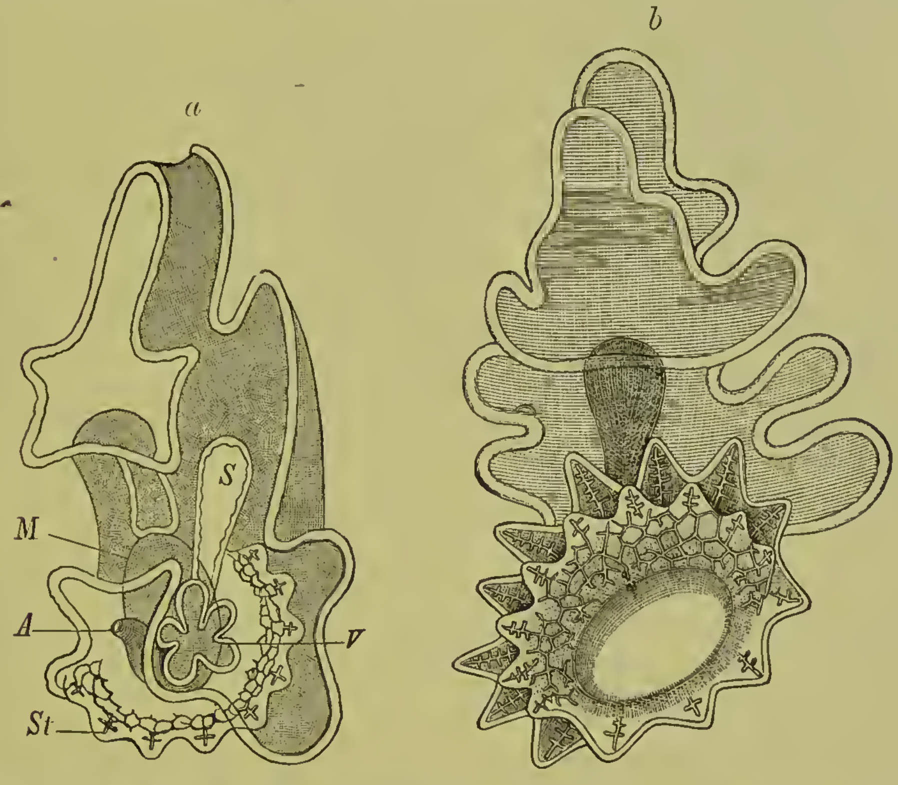



FIG. 228.—*Bipinnaria* from Triest forming a stage in the development of the Star-fish *(St)* (after J. Müller). *a*, Earlier stage. *M*, stomach; *A*, anus; *V*, ambulacral rosette with ciliated tube opening by the dorsal pore; *S*, stone canal. *b*, Older stage.

tion as it predominates over the larva. Finally, after the sprouting out of the ambulacral feet, the young Echinoderm becomes separated from the larval body, which not unfrequently remains attached to the former, like the remnants of a broken-down framework. The stomach, which is taken into the interior of the body of the Echinoderm, is torn from the œsophagus of the larva (*Bipinnaria*), and acquires a new œsophagus and mouth. The dorsal pore becomes the pore of the madreporic plate.

The *Synaptidæ*, on the contrary, are formed by the transformation of the entire body of the *Auricularia*. Five tentacles appear in front of the stomach and the circular vessel, which is formed from the dorsal tube. They are at first enclosed in a cavity, from which later on they penetrate to the exterior. The larva retracts its lateral lobes and transforms itself into a barrel-shaped body with five transverse rows of cilia, and loses the mouth and dorsal pore (fig. 229). The ambulacral system gradually develops further, the intestine becomes longer, the first five tentacles break through to the exterior, the mouth appears at the anterior pole, and the first suctorial foot with its ambulacral vessel is seen on the ventral surface (fig. 230). The animal gradually loses the bands of cilia, and as a young *Holothurian* creeps about by means of its tentacles and of the first ambulacral foot, which is soon followed by a second new one.

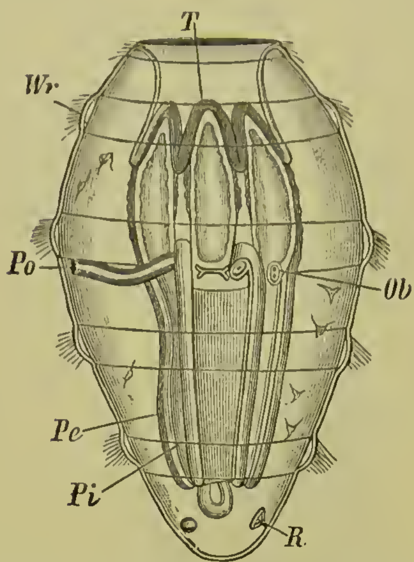



FIG. 229.—Auricularia pupa of *Synapta* seen in profile (after E. Metschnikoff). The mouth is already large, so that the tentacles (*T*) can be protruded. *Wr*, Ring of cilia; *Pe*, *Pi*, somatic and visceral layers of the peritoneal sacs; *Ob*, auditory vesicle; *Po*, pore of the water-vascular system; *R*, calcareous wheel-shaped body.

In the more direct development the bilateral larval form seems to be completely suppressed, and the time of free-swimming life shortened or altogether dispensed with. In these cases, protective arrangements, such as brood pouches, are always present in the mother. The brood pouch of *Pteraster militaris* is the most carefully protected. It lies above the anus and generative openings; its walls are highly charged with calcareous matter, and they are raised above the spicules on the back. From eight to twenty ova (1 mm. in diameter) pass into the interior of the brood pouch, and are there developed into oval embryos, which acquire several sucking feet and assume later the form of a star with five rays.

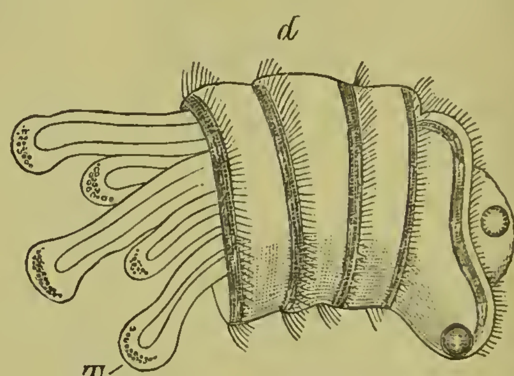



FIG. 230.—Young Holothurid with extended tentacles (*T*), swimming and creeping (after J. Müller).

The formation of the embryo takes place thus: four shield-like thickenings are formed upon one segment of the ovum, and beneath them several ambulacral feet make their appearance. The star is developed by the increase in size and number of these discs and ambulacral feet. At this period of development we can distinguish the circular ambulacral vessel surrounding a central hemispherical projection of the oral disc, also the five vascular trunks and 2—3 pairs of sucking feet in each ray. In other cases, the brood pouch is formed upon the ventral surface of the Star-fish, *e.g.*, *Echinaster Sarsii,* and the embryo, which is completely ciliated, is provided at the anterior end with a knobbed process. The latter is divided into several structures (Haftzäpfchen), which serve as organs to attach the body of the embryo to the wall of the brood pouch. Suctorial feet are now formed in each ray, two paired and one unpaired, the latter lying nearest to the angle of the pentagon. The five angles become more and more projecting, and acquire eye spots and ambulacral grooves. Spicules appear, and the mouth perforation is formed, the fixing organ aborts, and the embryos escape from the maternal brood pouch; and being at this time capable of creeping and of nourishing themselves independently, they gradually develop into small star-fishes. The mode of development is the same in *Asteracanthion Müllerii,* and some Ophiurids, as *Amphiura squamata.*

Amongst the Holothurids (*H. tremula*) the simple and more direct development was first observed by Danielssen and Koren, and later by Kowalevski, in *Phyllophorus urna,* and by Selenka, in *Cucumaria doliolum.* In the first case the embryo leaves the egg in the form of a ciliated larva, which soon assumes a pear shape, and develops the circular vessel of the water-vascular system, and five tentacles round the mouth. The alimentary canal and the dermal skeleton make their appearance before the five tentacles have assumed the function of locomotion in place of the cilia which have disappeared. Later on, with the progressive growth, the tentacles become branched, and two ventral feet appear, which put the bilateral symmetry of the larva beyond all doubt. In all cases, even in the cases of a more direct development, *the radial symmetry of the adult Echinoderm appears to be preceded by a bilateral symmetry of the larva.*

All the Echinoderms are inhabitants of the sea; they are capable of a slow, creeping movement, and feed on marine animals, especially on Mollusca, but also on Fuci and sea-weeds. Some are found near the coast at the bottom of the sea, others occur at considerable depths. Many possess a great reproductive power, and are able to replace lost parts, such as arms, with all their apparatus of nerves and sense organs.

## CLASS I.—CRINOIDEA.*

*Globular or cup-shaped Echinodermata with segmented arms furnished with pinnulæ. They are usually attached by a segmented calcareous stalk. The skin upon the aboral side is provided with plates, the ambulacral appendages have the form of tentacles, and are situated in the ambulacral furrows of the calyx and of the segmented arms.*

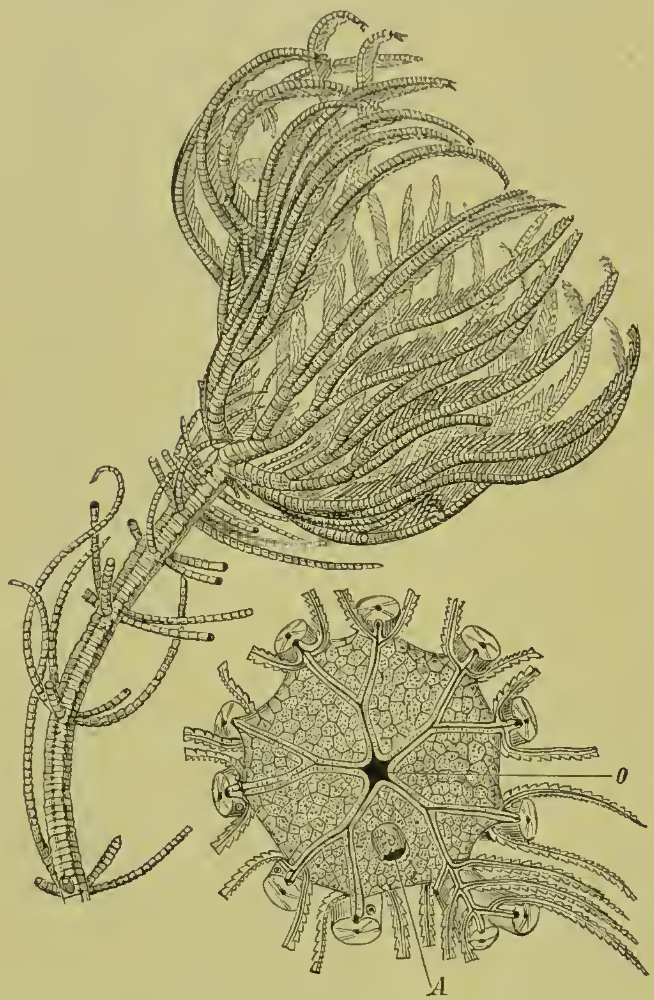



FIG. 231.—*Pentacrinus caput Medusæ* (after J. Müller). *O*, mouth; *A*, anus, of the disc, which is represented from the oral side.

The greater number of *Crinoidea* are characterised by the presence of a segmented stalk bearing cirri. This stalk arises from the apical (dorsal) pole of the calyx, and is attached at the inferior end to surrounding objects (fig. 231). In some few living genera, as *Comatula* (fig. 232) and *Actinometra*, this stalk is only present in the young form. The body with the contained viscera appears, therefore, as the calyx at the upper end of the stalk, and only in exceptional cases is directly

* J. S. Miller, "A Natural History of the Crinoidea or Lily-shaped Animals." Bristol, 1821. J. V. Thompson, "Sur le Pentacrinus Europæus, l'état de jeunesse du genre Comatula," L'institut, 1835. J. Müller, "Ueber den Bau von Pentacrinus caput Medusæ," *Abhandl. der Berl. Akad.*, 1841. J. Müller, "Ueber die Gattung Comatula und ihre Arten," *Abhandl. der Berl. Akad.*, 1847. Leop. v. Buch, "Ueber Cystideen," *Abhandl. der Berl. Akad.*, 1844. Ferd. Römer, "Monographie der fossilen Crinoideen familie der Blastoideen,"

attached by its dorsal apex. The segments of the stalk, which are mostly pentagonal, are connected by bands of tissue, and are pierced by a central canal, which serves for nutrition, and contains a central and five peripheral blood vessels; at certain distances they bear hollow and segmented cirri, which are arranged in whorls.

The dorsal surface of the calyx is covered externally by regularly arranged calcareous plates, while the upper (ventral) surface, on which the mouth and anus are situate, is clothed with a leathery


FIG. 232.—*Comatula mediterranea* represented from the ventral side. *O*, mouth; *A*, anus. The pinnulæ are filled with the generative products.

skin. At the margin of the cup there arise movable, simple or forked, and often branched arms, which are supported by a solid framework consisting of dorsally placed calcareous plates, which are movable upon one another by special muscles. In almost

*Arch. für Naturgesch*, 1851. W. Thompson, "On the Embryology of the Antedon rosaceus," *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc.*, Tom 155, 1865. W. B. Carpenter, "Researches on the Structure, Physiology and Development of Antedon rosaceus," *Ibid.*, Tom 156. A. Götte, "Vergl. Entwickelungsgeschichte der Comatula Mediterranea," *Archiv. für mickrosk. Anatomie*, Tom XII. H. Ludwig, "Morphol. Studien an Echinodermen," Leipzig, 1877.

every case the arms bear, either on their main stems or on their branches, lateral appendages, the *pinnules*, which have an alternate arrangement on each side, one being attached to each segment of the arms. Essentially the pinnules represent the ultimate ramifications of the arms.

The mouth, as a rule, lies in the centre of the cup. From it certain furrows, the *ambulacral grooves*, traverse the disc (fig. 231)

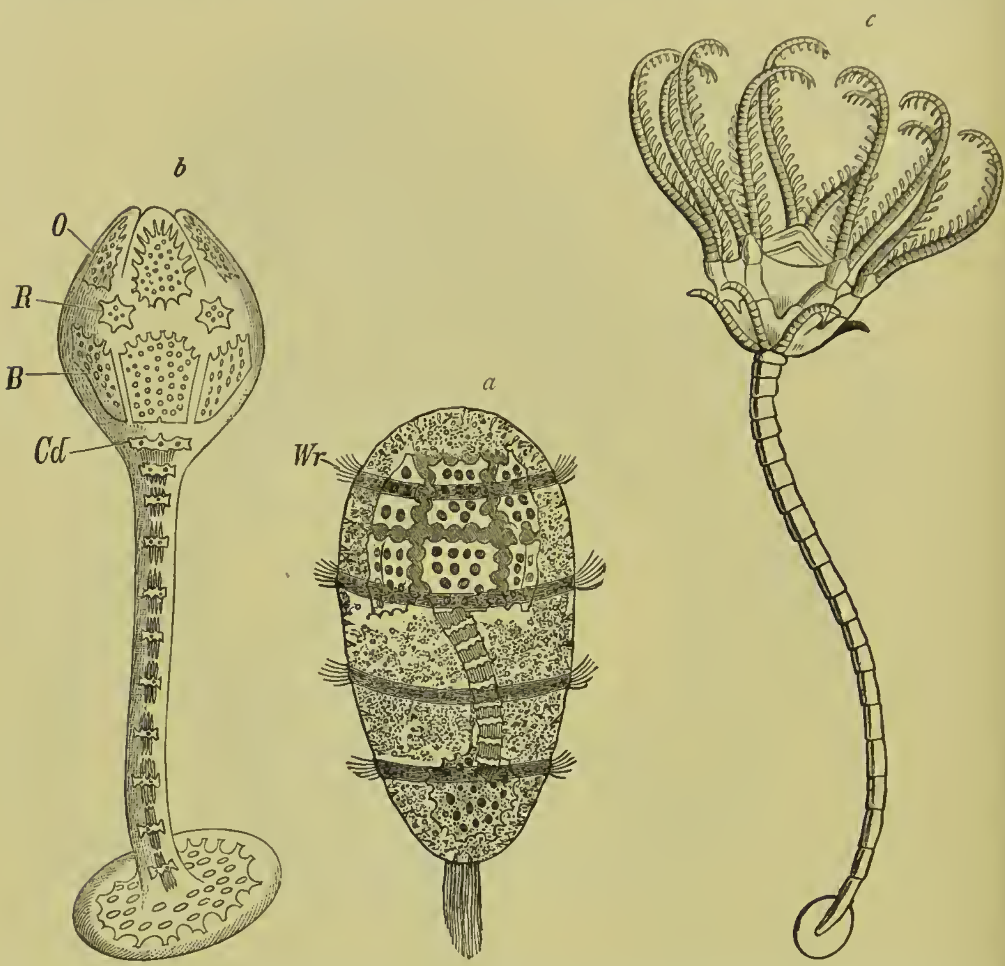



Fig. 233.—Developmental stages of *Comatula* (*Antedon*), much enlarged. *a*, free-swimming larva with tuft and rings of cilia (*Wr*), also with rudimentary calcareous plates. *b*, Attached *Pentacrinoid* form of the same animal. *O*, Oralia; *R*, Radialia; *B*, Basalia; *Cd*, Centrodorsal plate. *c*, Older stage described as *Pentacrinus europaeus* with arms and cirri (after Thomson).

and pass on to the arms, and their branches and pinnules; they are lined by soft skin, and carry the tentacle-like ambulacral appendages. The anus, when it is present, lies excentrically on the ambulacral (ventral) surface of the disc. The development of the living genus *Comatula*, which begins with a barrel-shaped larva with four bands of cilia and leads to the fixed stage of the Pentacrinus form (*P. Europæus*) (fig. 233), consists of a complicated metamorphosis.

The greater number of Crinoids belong to the oldest periods of the history of the earth (the Cambrian, Silurian, Devonian, and the Carboniferous formations). Existing forms live mostly at considerable depths.

We distinguish two orders, the *Tesselata* and the *Articulata*.

The latter is represented by numerous fossil forms, but by only a few living genera as *Pentacrinus, Holopus,* and *Comatula* (fig. 234). The cup is always less completely provided with plates than in the fossil *Tesselata*.

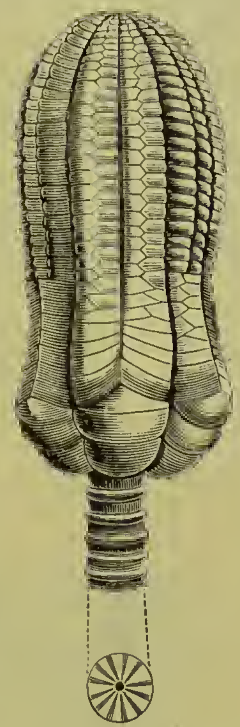


FIG. 234.—*Encrinus liliiformis* from the Muschelkalk.

### ARTICULATA.

Fam. **Pentacrinidæ.** Crinoids with ten arms, several times bifurcated. There is a pentagonal stalk with whorled cirri. *Pentacrinus caput Medusæ,* Mill. from the Antilles. *P. Mülleri* Oerst., West Indian Ocean. The fossil forms are: *Encrinus liliiformis* Schl. (fig. 234) from the Muschelkalk; also *Apiocrinus*, allied to the existing *Rhizocrinus lofotensis* Sars, and to *Bathycrinus gracilis,* and *aldrichianus* W. Th., from the deep sea. Allied to this group is the third existing genus *Holopus,* from the West Indies, with calyx attached by a short unjointed prolongation of its apex. *H. Rangii* d'Orb.

Fam. **Comatulidæ.** Stalked only in the young state. The adult animal is free. There are usually ten arms at the margin of the flattened body; mouth and anus are present. The *Comatulidæ* possess the power of striking their arms towards the ventral surface and so of propelling themselves amidst the sea-weeds. The vermiform larva, with its four ciliated girdles, makes its appearance within the egg-membranes. It acquires a mouth and anus, also a tuft of cilia at the posterior end of the body, and swims about freely. It passes later, by the formation of calcareous rings and rows of plates, into the stage of the stalked *Pentacrinus*, from which the *Comatula* is produced by the separation of the cup from the stalk. *Comatula mediterranea* Lam., *Antedon rosacea* Link., known in the young attached stage as *Pentacrinus Europaeus*. *Actinometra* J. Müll.

To the *Crinoids* are allied the fossil *Cystidea* and *Blastoidea*. The *Cystidea* were provided with short stalks and slightly developed arms. Their generative organs were enclosed in the calyx, whence their products escaped through a genital opening capable of being closed by movable valves. They are found as fossils in the Cambrian, Silurian, and Devonian formations and the Carboniferous limestone. To this group belong the genera *Sphaeronites*, *Caryocrinus*, *Apiocystites*.

The Blastoidea have no arms, and only possess ambulacral areas on the calyx, which is attached by a segmented column. *Pentatrematites*.

## CLASS II.—ASTEROIDEA (STARFISHES).*

*Echinoderms with dorso-ventrally compressed pentagonal or star-shaped body. The ambulacral feet are confined to the ventral surface. Internal skeletal pieces in the ambulacra articulated together like vertebræ.*

The Star-fishes are chiefly characterised by the predominating pentagonal or star-like discoidal shape of the body, to the ventral


FIG. 235. *Echinaster sentus*, from the oral surface (after A. Agassiz). *O*, mouth; *Af*, ambulacral feet.

surface of which the ambulacral feet are confined (fig. 235). The radii are long in comparison with the inter-radii, which are very short in consequence of the divergence of the interambulacral rows of plates; they constitute more or less projecting movable arms, with movable skeletal structures. These latter consist of transversely arranged, paired calcareous plates (ambulacral ossicles),

* J. Müller and Troschel, "System der Asteriden," Brunswick, 1841. Compare besides the numerous papers of Krohn, Sars, Lütken, L. Agassiz, etc.

which reach from the mouth to the end of the arms, and are articulated together like vertebræ. The skeleton of the *Asteroidea* is distinguished from the globular or flattened shell of the *Echinoidea* by the fact that the ambulacral and interambulacral plates are confined to the ventral surface, and that on the outer side of the former there is a deep *ambulacral groove*, which contains, outside the ossicles and beneath the soft skin (which in *Ophiurids* possesses special calcareous plates), the nerve trunks, the perihæmal canals with the blood-vessels and the ambulacral trunks. In the *Ophiuridea* the ambulacral groove is covered by the dermal plates so that the ambulacral feet project at the sides of the arms. Upon the dorsal surface the dermal skeleton appears leathery; it is, however, as a rule, filled with small calcareous plates, on which are placed spines, protuberances, and papillæ, constituting a covering of a most varied kind. At the margin in the dorsal integument there is usually a row of larger calcareous plates (*superior marginal plates*) (fig. 236). Upon the ventral surface we can distinguish, in addition to the internally placed ambulacral ossicles, *inferior marginal ossicles* (fig. 236, *VR*), also the *adambulacral plates* (*Adp*), and the *intermediate interambulacral plates* (*Jp*). The two last correspond to the interambulacral plates of the *Echinoidea*, where they occur as two or more rows, which are united along the whole length of the inter-radius: in the *Asteroidea*, however, they separate from one another at an angle, and are disposed along the opposed sides of adjacent arms. The ambulacral ossicles are calcareous bodies articulated together like vertebræ, with spaces between their lateral processes for the passage of the vessel connecting the ampullæ with the radial vessel and the tube feet. The right and left pieces of each double row are either (*Ophiuridea*) immovably connected by a suture, or are

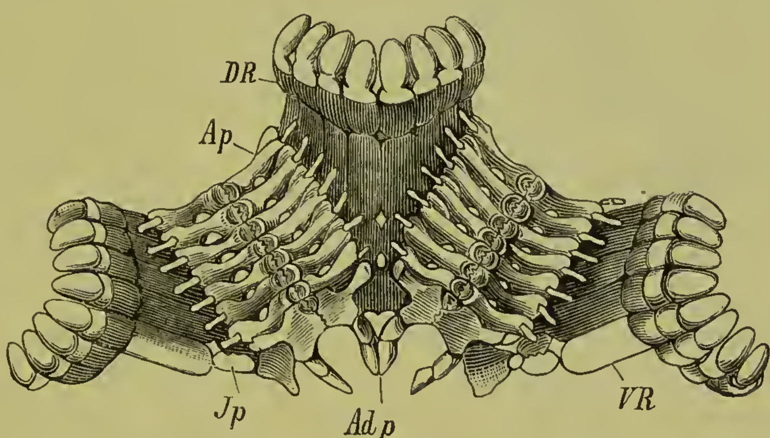



FIG. 236.—Skeletal plates of *Astropecten Hemprichtii* (after J. Müller). *DR*, Dorsal marginal plates; *VR*, ventral marginal plates, *Ap*, ambulacral ossicles; *Jp*, intermediate interambulacral plates; *Adp*, anterior adambulacral plates forming an angle of the mouth.

(*Stelleridea*) movably articulated by teeth, which fit into one another at the bottom of the ambulacral groove; the latter only (*Stelleridea*) possess transverse muscles on the ambulacral ossicles, and are able to bend their arms together towards the ventral surface. The *Ophiuridea* are provided with longitudinal muscles only, by means of which they are able to bend their arms to the right and left in a horizontal plane with a serpentine movement.

The mouth is always placed in the centre of the ventral surface in a pentagonal or star-shaped depression, the edges of which are usually beset with stiff papillæ. The inter-radial angles are marked by the junction of two adambulacral plates, and frequently function as organs of mastication. The anus may be wanting; when present, it invariably lies at the apical pole. The madreporic plate, of which there may be one or more, is situated inter-radially and dorsally (*Stelleridea*), or on the inner surface of one of the *buccal plates* (*Ophiuridea*), on the exterior of which a pore may be present. Development in certain cases takes place without the interposition of a bilateral larval phase with bands of cilia. When such larvæ are developed, they have the form of a *Pluteus* (Ophiurid) or *Bipinnaria* and *Brachiolaria* (Stellerid).

The great power of regeneration possessed by Starfishes is not confined to the reproduction of lost arms, but may lead to the new formation of portions of the disc, or even of the entire disc from a single separated arm. This process thus amounts to a species of asexual reproduction by fission, and has been especially observed in forms with six (*Ophiactis*) or more than six (*Linckia*) arms.

Fossil star-fishes are found as far back as the lower Silurian strata (*Palæaster*), where intermediate forms between *Stelleridea* and *Ophiuridea* (*Protaster*) make their appearance.

### *Sub-Class* 1.—STELLERIDEA (*Asteridea*) STARFISHES.

*Asteroidea whose arms are prolongations of the disc, and contain the hepatic appendages of the alimentary canal, and also the generative organs. They possess a deep, uncovered ambulacral groove running along the ventral surface, in which groove the ambulacral feet are disposed in rows.*

The *Stelleridea* usually possess broad arms, and are characterised by the fact that the ambulacral ossicles of the two sides are connected by transverse muscles and are movable upon one another. The anus lies at the aboral pole, but may be wanting in certain genera (*Astropecten*). The madreporic plate and the genital pores are situate inter-radially and upon the dorsal surface. The multilobed branched diverticula of the stomach extend into the cavities of the arms (fig. 218). On the ventral surface of the latter, two or four rows of ambulacral feet project from the deep ambulacral groove, the edge of which is beset with papillæ (fig. 235). *Pedicellariæ* are also found, and dermal gills projecting through the tentacular pores of the dorsal surface.

They feed principally upon *Mollusca*, and, by means of their ambulacral feet, crawl slowly upon the bottom of the sea. Some few of them are developed by a very simple process of metamorphosis within the brood-pouch of the mother; but the greater number of them pass through the free larval stages of *Bipinnaria* and *Brachiolaria* (figs. 224 and 228).

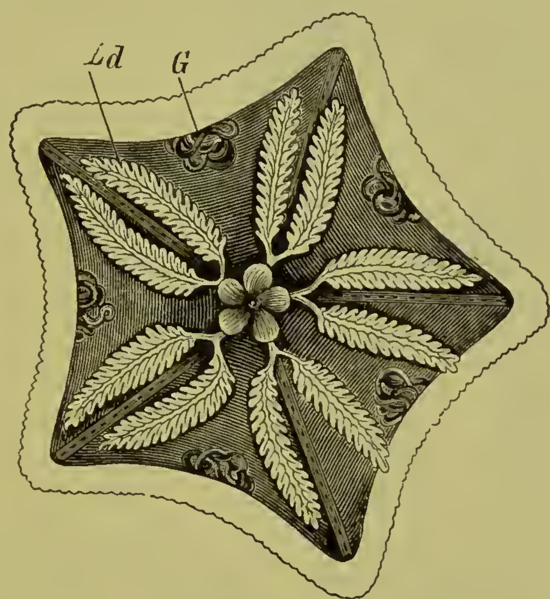


FIG. 237.—*Asteriscus verruculatus*, with the dorsal skin removed. *Ld*, Radial appendages or hepatic tubes of the stomach; *G*, generative glands.

Fam. **Asteriadæ**. The cylindrical ambulacral feet end in broad suctorial discs, and are usually arranged in four rows along each ambulacral groove. *Asterias* L. (*Asteracanthion*), *A. glacialis* O. F. Müller., *Heliaster helianthus* Gray.

Fam. **Solasteridæ**. The cylindrical ambulacral feet are disposed in two rows. Rays long, often more than five *Solaster papposus* Retz., *Echinaster sepositus* Retz., *Ophidiaster* Ag., *Linckia* Nardo.

Fam. **Astropectinidæ**. Ambulacral feet conical, and without suctorial disc, arranged in two rows. There is no anus. *Astropecten aurantiacus* Thil. *Luidia* Forb., *Ctenodiscus* Müll. Tr.

Fam. **Brisingidæ**. Body shaped like an Ophiurid. Rays distinct from the disc with only a narrow internal cavity. *Brisinga coronata* Sars.

### *Sub-Class* 2.—OPHIURIDEA (*Brittle Stars*).

*Asteroidea characterised by the absence of an anus, and by the possession of long cylindrical arms which are sharply distinct from the disc, and do not contain appendages of the alimentary canal. The ambulacral groove is covered by the dermal plates so that the ambulacral feet project at the sides of the arms.*

The *Ophiuridea* can be at once distinguished by the flexible cylindrical arms, which are sharply distinct from the disc, and enclose no diverticula of the alimentary canal. The movements of the arms are principally in the horizontal plane, and in many cases permit of a creeping locomotion amongst marine plants. The ambulacral groove is always covered by special dermal plates, and the ambulacral feet project laterally between the spicules and plates on the upper surface (fig. 238). In a few cases the arms are branched, and can be rolled up in the direction of the mouth. In such cases the ventral groove is closed by a soft skin (*Astrophyton*). The anus is always wanting, as are *pedicellariæ*. The generative products pass into genital pouches (bursæ), and from these directly to the exterior through inter-radial paired slits. The madreporic plate lies upon the ventral surface in one of the buccal plates. Some few Ophiurids are viviparous, *e.g.*, *Amphiura squamata;* these do not undergo metamorphosis. Most pass through the *Pluteus* larval stage, *e.g.*, *Ophioglypha* Lym., (*Ophiolepis*) *ciliata* with larval stage *Pluteus paradoxus.*

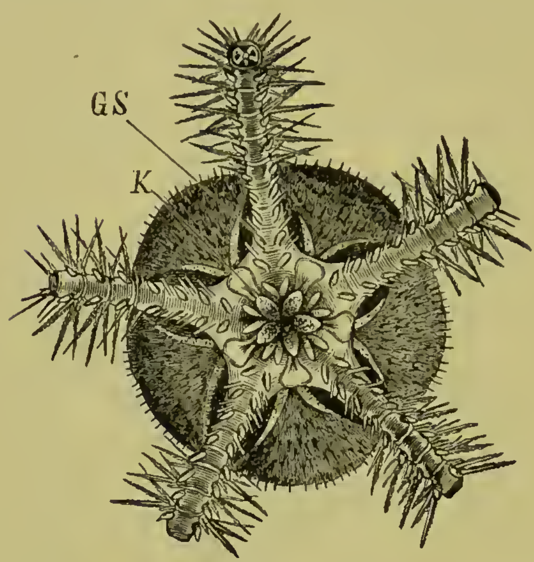



FIG. 238.—*Ophiothrix fragilis.* The ends of the rays have been removed. *GS*, Slits of the genital pouches; *K*, masticatory ossicles.

Fam. **Ophiuridæ.** With simple unbranched arms, and with ventral plates to the ambulacral groove. They are divided into special genera according to the peculiar character of the dermal covering and of the buccal armature. *Ophiothrix* Müll. Tr. The back is provided with granules, hairs, or spicules. The lateral plates of the arms bear spicules. *Oph. fragilis* O. Fr. Müller. *Ophiura* Lam. (*Ophioderma*). Two pairs of genital slits in each interbrachial space. *O. longicauda* Link., *Ophiolepis* Lütk., *Amphiura* Forb.

Fam. **Euryalidæ.** Mostly with branched arms which can be curved towards the mouth and are without plates; the ventral groove closed with soft skin. *Astrophyton verrucosum* Lam., Indian Ocean. *A. arborescens* Rond., Mediterranean. *Asteronyx Loveni* Müll. Tr.

## CLASS III.—ECHINOIDEA,* SEA-URCHINS.

*Spherical, heart-shaped, or disc-shaped Echinoderms with immovable skeleton composed of calcareous plates. The skeleton encloses the body*

* Besides the works of J. Th. Klein, compare E. Desor, "Synopsis des Échinides fossiles," 1854 to 1858. S. Lovén, "Études sur les Échinoidées." Stockholm 1874. Al. Agassiz, "Revision of the Echini," Cambridge, 1872-1874.

*after the manner of a shell, and carries movable spines. There is invariably a mouth and anus, and locomotive and often respiratory ambulacral appendages.*

The dermal skeletal plates are connected together so as to form a firm immovable shell, which has no arm-like prolongations in the direction of the rays, and is sometimes regularly radial, sometimes irregular or symmetrical. With some rare exceptions among the fossil *Perischœchinidœ*, as *Lepidocentrus*, the calcareous plates are firmly connected with one another by sutures, and are usually arranged in twenty meridional rows. These rows (fig. 206) are disposed in pairs, and correspond alternately with the radii and the inter-radii. The five radial pairs are the ambulacral plates, and are pierced by rows of fine pores for the exit of tube feet (fig. 212, *P*), and bear, as do the broad interambulacral plates, spherical prominences and tubercles to which the differently shaped spines are movably articulated. The body form of the Sea-urchins, as contrasted with that of the Star-fish, depends upon the meridional arrangement of the rows of plates, and, at the same time, on the continuity of the interambulacral rows.

The position of the nerves and ambulacral vascular trunks beneath the skeleton is the special characteristic of the internal organization. *Pedicellariœ* are found between the spicules, and are especially numerous in the region of the mouth. Some *Cidaridea* are provided with branched respiratory tubes. The *genital pores* are disposed inter-radially on the genital plates near the apical pole. One of these genital plates is, as a rule, also the madreporic plate. The ocular plates, which are radial in position, are also pierced (figs. 206, 212). The regular Sea-urchins are often symmetrical, one radius being longer or shorter than the others, which are equal to each other. So we find long oval forms which are laterally symmetrical, having the mouth and anus central, and an anterior unpaired radius (*Acrocladia*, *Echinometra*). In the irregular Sea-urchins the anus is thrust away from the apical pole into the unpaired radius (*Clypeastridœ*). The mouth also often has an eccentric position in front (*Spatangidœ*, fig. 208), in which case the masticatory apparatus is always wanting.

In many regular forms all the ambulacral feet have the same shape, and are provided with a suctorial disc supported by calcareous bodies; in others the dorsal feet are unprovided with a disc, and are pointed and often have an indented edge. In addition to the ambulacral feet, the irregular Sea-urchins almost all possess ambulacral branchiæ upon a rosette formed of large pores on the dorsal surface (fig. 239). The locomotive feet are very small in *Clypeastridæ*, and are distributed either over the whole surface of the ambulacra, or are confined to branching rows upon the ventral surface. In the *Spatangidæ* there are peculiar bands upon the upper surface, the *fascioles* or *semitæ* (fig. 239), upon which, in place of the spicules, knobbed bristles with active cilia (*clavulæ*) are distributed. Development takes place with a Pluteus larval stage, in which the larva is provided with ciliated epaulettes or with an apical rod.

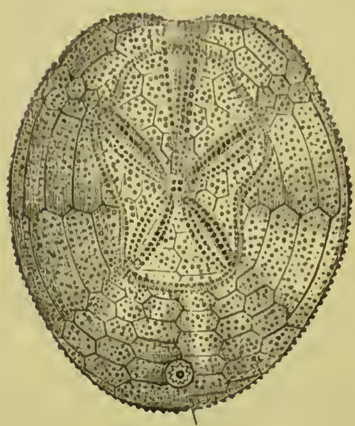



FIG. 239.—*Brissopsis lyrifera* with the fascioles or semites surrounding the rosette. *A*, anus.

The Sea-urchins live, as a rule, near the coast, and feed on molluscs, small marine animals, and Fuci. Some species of *Echinus* have the power of boring holes in the rocks in which they live. We find many fossil shells, especially in the chalk.

### *Order* 1.—CIDARIDEA = REGULAR SEA-URCHINS.

*Echinoidea with central mouth and equal band-like ambulacra; with teeth and masticatory apparatus; with sub-central anus in the apical space.*

Fam. **Cidaridæ.** With very narrow ambulacral and broad interambulacral areas, on both of which are large perforated tubercles and club-shaped spines. There are no oral branchiæ. *Cidaris metularia* Lam., *Phyllacanthus imperialis* Lam., East Indies.

Fam. **Echinidæ.** Sea-urchins. The pores are grouped in transverse rows; there is a round, thin shell, broad ambulacral spaces bearing tubercles and spines, which are mostly short and pear-shaped. Oral branchiæ are present. *Toxopneustes variegatus*, Lam.. *Echinus melo* Lam., *Strongylocentrotus lividus* Brit. *saxatilis* Lin., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Echinometridæ.** With long oval shell, imperforate tubercles and oral branchiæ. *Echinometra oblonga* Blainv., *Podophora atrata* Brdt.. *Acrocladia trigonaria* Ag., Pacific.

### *Order* 2.—CLYPEASTRIDEA.

*Irregular Echinoidea compressed into the form of a shield. Mouth central and furnished with masticatory apparatus. Very broad ambulacra, five-leaved ambulacral rosette round the apical pole, and very* *small tube feet. Five genital pores in the region of the madreporic plate.*

Fam. **Clypeastridæ.** The edge of the disc without indentations. *Clypeaster rosaceus* Lam. (fig. 207), *Echinocyamus pusillus* O. F. Müller, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Scutellidæ.** Flattened *Echinoidea* with a shell often lobed or perforated, with rows of pores for the ambulacral feet. *Lobophora bifora* Ag., *Rotula Rumphii* Klein, Africa.

### *Order* 3.—Spatangidea.

*Irregular Echinoidea of a more or less heart-shaped form, with eccentric mouth and anus. There are no teeth or masticatory apparatus, and there is usually a four-leaved ambulacral rosette and four genital plates.*

As a rule there are semitæ and four genital pores, but the number of the latter may be reduced to three and two.

Fam. **Spatangidæ.** *Spatangus purpureus* O. Fr. Müll., Mediterranean; *Schizaster canaliferus* Ag., *Brissus* Klein.

## CLASS IV.—HOLOTHUROIDEA.*

*Wormlike elongated Echinoderms with a leathery body wall, with contractile tentacles surrounding the mouth; anus terminal.*

The *Holothuria* approach the worms in possessing an elongated cylindrical shape and a bilateral symmetry, which is expressed in many ways. In particular they possess so striking a resemblance, so far as their exterior is concerned, to many *Gephyrea* that formerly they were included in the same group. The body-covering never consists of a firm calcareous shell like that which we find in other Echinoderms, but always remains soft and leathery, the calcareous matter being confined to a few isolated particles of definite form. In rare cases (*Cuvieria*), scales are present in the dorsal skin. These are arranged like the slates on a roof, and may even take the form of spicule-like appendages (*Echinocucumis*).

The bilateral symmetry results not only from the existence of unpaired organs, but from the contrast which is often very distinctly expressed between the dorsal and ventral surfaces. The ambulacral feet are not in all cases regularly arranged in the five meridional

* G. J. Jaeger, "De Holothuriis," Dissert. inaug. Turici, 1833. J. F. Brandt, "Prodromus descriptionis animalium ab H. Mertensio in orbis terrarum circumnavigatione observatorum," Fasc. I. Petropoli, 1835. J. Müller, "Ueber Synapta digitata und über die Erzeugung von Schnecken in Holothurien," Berlin, 1852. A. Baur, "Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der Synapta digitata," Dresden, 1864. C. Semper, "Reisen im Archipel der Philippinen," Tom I., Leipzig, 1868.

rows from the oral to the anal pole, but may be principally or altogether confined to the three rays of the so-called trivium. In this latter case the Holothurid moves upon a more or less foot-like ventral surface. The ambulacral feet may also be distributed uniformly over the surface of the body, especially on the ventral side. As a rule, the tube-feet have a cylindrical shape, and terminate with a suctorial disc: in other cases they are conical, and the suctorial disc is absent. The tentacles, which are in communication with the water-vascular system, and represent specially modified ambulacral appendages, are simple or pennate, or even dendritic (*Dendrochirota*) or shield-shaped (*Aspidochirota*), that is, provided with a disc, which is often divided into many parts. In certain genera (*Synapta*), the ambulacral feet are altogether wanting, and the tentacles remain as the sole appendages of the ambulacral system (fig. 240). Locomotion is effected by the strongly developed dermal muscular system, the longitudinal fibres of which are attached to the calcareous ring surrounding the œsophagus. It is characteristic of the water-vascular system that the stone canal, which is usually simple, hangs freely in the body cavity, ending in a calcareous framework comparable to the madreporic plate. The respiratory trees at the end of the intestine perform the function of *respiration*, while certain glandular appendages (organs of Cuvier), which open into the rectum, may be regarded as *excretory organs*: these, as well as the respiratory trees, may be wanting. The *generative organs* consist of a bundle of branched tubes, the duct of which opens on the dorsal surface in the region of the mouth. The genus *Synapta* is hermaphrodite. The development is in many *Holothurians* direct (as *e.g.* in *Holothuria tremula* according to Koren and Danielssen); where there is a complicated metamorphosis, the larvæ have the *Auricularia* form, and pass through a barrel-shaped pupa stage.

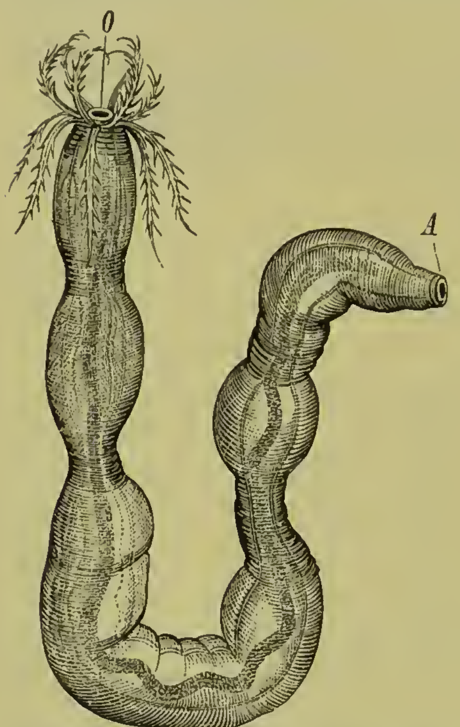



FIG. 240.—*Synapta inhærens* (after Quatrefages). *O*, Mouth; *A*, anus: the intestine can be seen through the skin.

The *Holothurians* are partly nocturnal in their habits, and live at the bottom of the sea, for the most part in shallow places near the coast, where they crawl slowly upon the bottom. The *Synaptidæ*, which have no feet, burrow in the sand. They feed on the smaller marine animals, which, in the *Dendrochirota*, are carried to the mouth by means of the branched, tree-like tentacles. The *Aspidochirota* fill their intestine with sand, which they eject from the anus by means of the current of water from the respiratory trees. It is worthy of notice that they (especially the *Aspidochirota*) can eject through the anal opening the intestine, which breaks off easily behind the vascular ring, and are able to renew it. The *Synapta*, when irritated, are able to break their body into several pieces by violent muscular contractions.

### *Order* 1.—Pedata.

*Numerous ambulacral feet, which are sometimes arranged regularly in the meridians, and sometimes distributed over the whole surface.*

Fam. **Aspidochirotæ.** With shield-shaped tentacles. *Holothuria L.* With scattered ambulacral feet, which are conical on the dorsal side, and are without suckers. *H. tubulosa* Gmel., Adriatic and Mediterranean; *H. edulis* Less., the edible Trepang of the East Indian seas.

Fam. **Dendrochirotæ.** With tree-like branched tentacles. *Cucumaria* Blainv. Ambulacral feet arranged in regular rows. *C. frondosa* Gr. *Psolus* Oken. Ambulacral feet confined to the foot-like ventral surface of the trivium. *Ps. phantapus.* Gr.

### *Order* 2.—Apoda.

*No ambulacral feet; as a rule without respiratory trees; the tentacles are usually branched or pinnate.*

Fam. **Synaptidæ.** Hermaphrodite and without respiratory trees. In the skin there are wheel-shaped calcareous bodies or projecting masses shaped like anchors, and affixed to calcareous plates. *Synapta digitata* Mntg. with anchor-shaped calcareous bodies. J. Müller discovered in their bodies parasitic cylindrical animals with spermatozoa and ova, which latter develop into small shell-bearing Gastropods (*Entoconcha mirabilis*). *Chirodota* Esch. Skin beset with rows of small tubercles bearing calcareous wheel-shaped bodies. The genus *Molpadia* Cuv. is furnished with respiratory trees.

---

## ENTEROPNEUSTA.

The remarkable genus *Balanoglossus* must be placed here. It is the representative of a class, *Enteropneusta* Gegenb.,* allied to the *Echinodermata*, but usually classed with the *Vermes*, and presenting

* A. Kowalevski, "Anatomie des *Balanoglossus* Delle Chiaje," *Mémoires de l'Acad. impér. des Sciences de St. Petersbourg*, Tom X., No. 3, 1866. L. Agassiz,

an affinity to the *Tunicata* by the mode of respiration. This interesting worm was discovered by Delle Chiaje, and its organization and development have been recently investigated by Al. Agassiz and Kowalevski [more recently by Bateson, *Q. J. Mic. Sci.* 1884] (fig. 241).

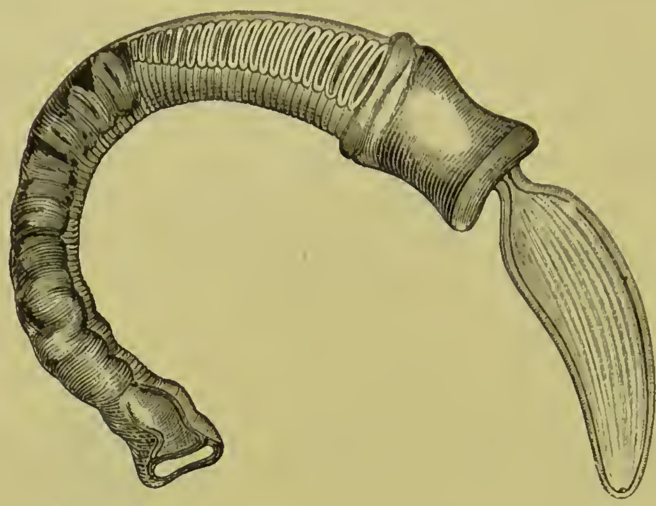


FIG. 241.—Young *Balanoglossus*, strongly magnified. *Pr*, Proboscis, the numerous branchial slits are visible.

The most interesting point about this form is the structure of its larva, which renders its relationship to the *Echinodermata* probable. The larva was described by J. Müller as *Tornaria*, and was regarded by him as an Echinoderm larva. It does, in fact, possess a double band of cilia, like *Bipinnaria*. Of these two rows of cilia, one, the præoral, forms a ring round the præ-oral lobe, while the other is larger and runs in a more longitudinal direction so as almost to join the former near the apical pole. There is also a transverse præ-anal ring of cilia (fig. 242, *a*, *b*). Internally a diverticulum of the archenteron gives rise to an independent sac forming the water-vascular system, while two pairs of diverticula furnish the first rudiments of the body cavity. A pulsating heart is developed from a thickening of

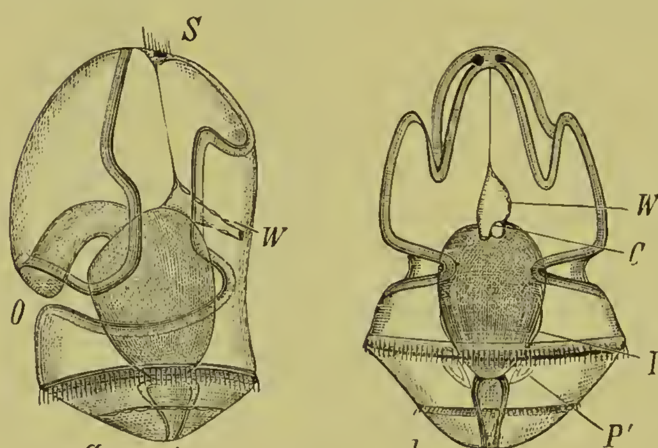



FIG. 242, *a*, *b*.—*Tornaria* larva (after E. Metschnikoff). *a*, Seen from the side; *b*. from the dorsal surface. *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *S*, apex, *W*, rudiment of water vascular system; *C*, heart; *P*, *P′*, peritoneal sacs.

[1] "The History of Balanoglossus and Tornaria." *Memoirs of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences*, Vol. IX., 1873. E. Metschnikoff. *Zeitschr. f. wissensch. Zool.*, Tom XX., 1870.

the ectoderm, and sinks into a depression of the water vascular vesicle. At the apical pole there is a thickening of the ectoderm resembling the apical plate of the larval Worms and containing two eye-spots.

The development of the larva into the adult *Balanoglossus* was first traced by E. Metschnikoff and then by A. Agassiz. The band of cilia gradually disappears, the præ-oral part of the larva becomes the proboscis, while the oral portion gives rise to the collar. The trunk is formed from the posterior elongated portion on which the posterior transverse ciliated band still persists. The anterior portion of the alimentary canal becomes pierced by paired branchial slits (figs. 243, 244).

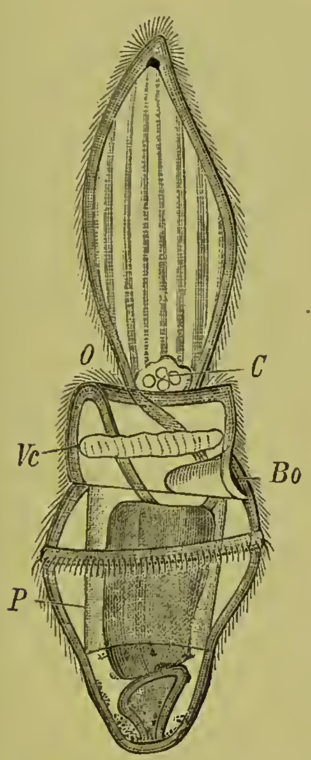



FIG. 243.—Stage in the conversion of *Tornaria* into *Balanoglossus*, with one pair of branchial slits (after E. Metschnikoff), seen from the side. *Bo*, external branchial opening; *P*, peritoneal sac; *Vc*, circular vessel; *O*, mouth; *C*, heart.

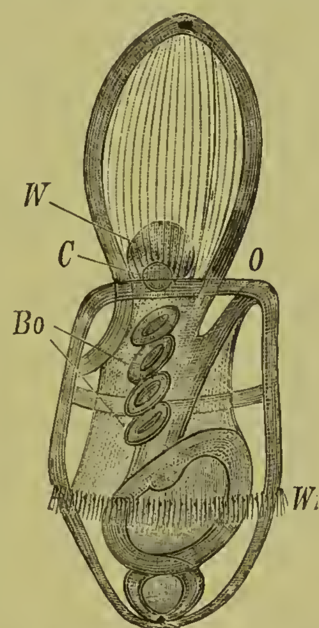



FIG. 244.—Stage in the conversion of *Tornaria* into *Balanoglossus*, with four pairs of branchial slits (after Al. Agassiz). Letters as in figs. 242, 243.

The body of the adult animal is worm-like and completely ciliated; it can be divided by the external features into a number of different regions. The anterior end of the body is indicated by a proboscis well marked off and projecting like a head. This is followed by a muscular collar. Posterior to the collar there is a longer portion of the body, the branchial region, which may be divided into a median distinctly ringed part (branchiæ) and two lobed lateral portions usually filled with yellow glands. At the boundary, between the median portion and the two lateral lobes, there are on either side rows of openings which serve for the exit of the water from the branchial chamber. Then follows a third division of the body, the gastric region, upon the upper side of which there are four rows of yellow glands (*generative glands*).

Between these, brownish-green prominences are visible (the hepatic appendages of the intestine), which, towards the posterior extremity where the yellow glands disappear, are larger and more closely aggregated. Finally there follows a distinctly ringed caudal region, at the hind end of which is the anus.

The contractile proboscis serves not only as a siphon to maintain respiration, but also as a locomotory organ. It projects above the level of the mud in which the animal is buried, and is said to take in water by a terminal aperture (the existence of this opening has been recently disputed) [and to pass it out into the mouth through a pore at its base].

The mouth lies behind the anterior margin of the so-called collar, and leads into a buccal cavity, the walls of which contain a great number of unicellular mucous glands. The portion of the alimentary canal which follows the buccal cavity bears the branchial framework, and is divided into a dorsal and ventral part by two longitudinal folds, so that it almost presents in transverse section the appearance of a figure of 8. The intestine does not hang freely in the body cavity, but, except in the region of the tail, is fastened to the body wall by connective tissue; it is, however, always very closely attached in the two median lines. Beneath the dorsal and ventral median lines, where the two principal vascular trunks are visible through the skin, two grooves, beset with strong cilia, run along the whole length of the intestine. From these grooves secondary grooves are given off, and as it were divide the whole surface of the intestine into islands. Some distance behind the branchial region, on the upper side of the intestine, the peculiar cell masses begin, which gradually assume the form of sac-like diverticula with ciliated internal walls. These "hepatic appendages" are either disposed in a simple row along each side (*B. minutus* Kow.), or densely aggregated together (*B. clavigerus* Delle Ch.)

The branchial basket-work which is placed at the commencement of the alimentary canal projects on the anterior flattened part of the body in the form of a transversely ringed longitudinal fold, and contains a system of chitinous plates, which constitute its framework and are connected in a peculiar manner by transverse rods. The water taken in through the mouth passes through special openings in the wall of the anterior portion of the alimentary canal into the ciliated branchial spaces, to issue thence through the two rows of lateral pores on the dorsal surface of the branchial region.

The vascular system consists of two median longitudinal trunks;

which give off numerous transverse branches to the walls of the intestine and body, and of two lateral trunks. The branchiæ receive their rich vascular supply entirely from the lower trunk. The upper trunk, in which the blood flows from behind forwards, divides at the posterior end of the branchiæ into four branches, of which the two lateral ones pass to the lateral portions of the anterior part of the body.

Certain fibrous cords, running directly beneath the epidermis in the dorsal and ventral median lines and branching into a net-work of fine fibrillæ, have lately been interpreted as *nervous centres.* These cords are described as being connected at the posterior end of the collar by a ring-like commissure.

The *generative organs* are arranged in single rows in the branchial region, but posterior to this in double rows. During the breeding season they are extraordinarily developed, and the male and female can be easily distinguished by the difference in their colour. Each ovum is contained in a capsule, which is provided with nuclei, but is otherwise homogeneous. The eggs are probably laid in strings like those of Nemertines.

These animals live in fine sand. They saturate the sand in their immediate vicinity with mucous. They fill their alimentary canal with sand, and move themselves by means of their proboscis, which, alternately elongating and retracting, draws the body after it. Both the species named were found in the Gulf of Naples. A third northern species of *Balanoglossus* was discovered by Willemoes-Suhm, and described as *B. Kupfferi.*

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### Vermes.

*Bilateral animals with unsegmented or uniformly (homonomous) segmented body. There are no segmented lateral appendages. A dermal muscular system and paired excretory canals (water-vascular system) are present.*

Since the time of Cuvier, a number of groups of animals all characterised by the possession of an elongated laterally symmetrical body and by the absence of articulated limbs have been classed together as *Vermes.* This group includes such a variety of forms that attempts have already been made to break it up, and it will perhaps be necessary at some future time to separate the unsegmented from the segmented forms, under the respective heads of *Vermes* and *Annelida.*

The form of the body, which is soft and adapted to live in damp media, is usually elongated, flat, or cylindrical, sometimes without rings, sometimes ringed, and sometimes divided into segments (metameres). In every case we can distinguish a ventral and a dorsal surface. It is on the first that the animal moves or attaches itself to foreign objects. The mouth is usually placed ventrally at the end of the body which is directed forward in locomotion. The contrast between the flat, shorter form of body and the cylindrical and elongated seems, especially in the case of the non-segmented worms (*Vermes* s. str.), to be of importance, so that on this ground we can establish the classes of *Platyhelminthes* or flat worms, and of *Nemathelminthes* or round worms. The segmented worms (*Annelida*) possess a ventral chain of ganglia in addition to the brain, and a segmentation of the organs which corresponds more or less with the external segmentation. The portions of the body which are primitively alike and are known as segments or metameres do not by any means always remain homonomous. In the most highly developed segmented worms, the two anterior segments unite to form a division of the body which foreshadows the head of the *Arthropoda*, and, like the latter, is pierced by the mouth, contains the brain, and bears the sense organs (fig. 245).

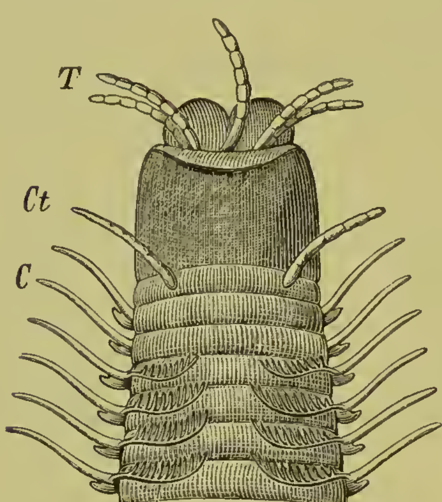



FIG. 245.- Head and anterior segments of *Eunice* seen from the dorsal surface. *T*, Tentacles or antennæ of the præstomium; *Ct*, tentacular cirri; *C*, cirri of the parapodia; *Br*, branchial appendages of the parapodia.

In the succeeding metameres there are also frequently variations of form which disturb the homonomy.

The skin of worms presents very different degrees of consistence, and covers a strongly developed muscular system. In the skin we can distinguish a layer of cells (*hypodermis*) or, at any rate, a nucleated layer of protoplasm which functions as a matrix, and a superficial homogeneous cuticular layer which is secreted by the first-named layer or matrix and in the lower worms is extremely thin and delicate. In the *Nemathelminthes* it is often laminated, and can even be separated into several layers. It is of considerable thickness in many *Annelida* (*Chætopoda*), and may be perforated by pores. Cilia are found principally in the larval stages of *Platyhelminthes* and *Annelida.* Where there are no cilia, the superficial cuticular membrane, which may project in the form of tubercles or spines, consists of a substance allied to the chitin of the Arthropod skin, like which it may bear cuticular formations of many kinds, such as hairs, bristles, hooks, etc. In many *Nemathelminthes*, as well as in segmented worms, this thick cuticula gives rise to a kind of exo-skeleton, which opposes the contractions of the dermal muscular envelope. In the *Chætopoda* among the *Annelida*, but also in the Rotifera, the tough integument is divided into a number of sections lying one behind the other. These, like the segments of Arthropoda, are connected by soft portions of skin and moved by the dermal muscles, which are divided into corresponding groups. The cutaneous segments of the *Rotifera* are not true metameres, since there is no segmentation of the internal organs.

Cutaneous glands are very widely distributed; they are sometimes unicellular, sometimes polycellular, and are sometimes situated directly beneath the epidermis, sometimes in the deeper tissues of the body.

The tissue which lies beneath the hypodermis, and which we may call the cutis, contains in all cases longitudinal and in some cases also circular muscles, and so constitutes a *muscular cutaneous envelope*, the principal locomotory organ of worms. Taking into consideration the importance of this dermal muscular system in the locomotion of worms, we must attribute a certain systematic value to the special forms which it assumes, a value which, however, we must be careful not to exaggerate. The stratification and the direction of the fibres of this dermal muscular system is most complicated in the Platyhelminthes and in the *Hirudinea* amongst the *Chætopoda*, for here we find the circular and longitudinal muscles, which are embedded in a basis of connective tissue, crossed by muscle fibres, which run in a dorso-ventral direction (sometimes also by fibres running obliquely). To these may be added groups of muscular fibres, which serve to attach the internal organs to the integument. The suckers of the parasitic worms, the pits and the parapodia with their setæ of *Chætopoda*, must be looked upon as special differentiations of the dermo-muscular envelope. These aids to locomotion are mostly developed upon the ventral surface. The suckers and their accessory hooks, etc., are situated either near the two ends or in the middle of the body; the parapodia are distributed in pairs on the individual segments along the whole length of the body, and belong to the dorsal as well as to the ventral surface, so that each segment bears a dorsal and a ventral pair of parapodia.

The internal organization of Worms is extraordinarily various. In those flat and round worms which live in the chyme or the other organic juices of the higher animals, as, for instance, the *Cestoda* and the *Acanthocephala*, the whole of the digestive apparatus, including the mouth and anus, may be wanting; the nutrition in such cases taking place by osmosis through the body-wall. When the alimentary canal is present, the mouth is usually situated ventrally in the anterior region of the body, while the anus is placed either terminally at the posterior end of the body, or near it on the dorsal surface. The alimentary canal is generally simple, and is only exceptionally divided into numerous portions corresponding to the special functions. A muscular pharynx can most often be distinguished, also a well developed stomach and a short rectum opening at the anus.

The *nervous system* appears in its most simple form as an unpaired ganglion or, when the two parts of which it is composed are separated, as a pair of ganglia (fig. 76), which are placed near the anterior pole of the body above the œsophagus and genetically may be referred to the apical plate of Lovén's Chætopod larva. The nervous system has more rarely the form of a nerve ring surrounding the œsophagus and connected with groups of ganglion cells (*Nematoda*). The nerves given off from the supra-œsophageal ganglion are distributed symmetrically forwards and laterally; they supply the sense organs, and form two strong lateral nervous trunks, which run backwards. In still higher types two larger ganglia appear, which are connected by an inferior commissure (*Nemertinea*). In the *Annelids* with degenerated metameres (*Gephyrea*) there is in addition to the supra-œsophageal ganglion (the brain) a ventral nerve cord connected with the supra-œsophageal ganglion by an œsophageal ring. This nerve cord is in all other Annelids divided into a series of paired ganglia, which, in most cases, correspond to the segmentation. The lateral nerve trunks approach each other in the middle line below the alimentary canal, and constitute, together with their ganglia, which are connected together by transverse commissures, a ventral chain of ganglia, which is connected with the brain by the circum-œsophageal commissures, and is continued to the hind end of the body, giving off in its course paired nerves to the right and left.

The *sense organs* are represented by eyes, auditory apparatus, and tactile organs. The latter are joined to nervous expansions and special integumentary appendages (tactile hairs), and are present even in the parasitic Worms as papillæ of the outer skin connected with nerves. In the free-living worms, these tactile organs frequently take the form of filiform, tentacle-like appendages on the head and segments (cirri). *Auditory organs* are not so generally present, and are represented by *auditory vesicles* (otocysts) either lying on the brain (some *Turbellaria* and *Nemertinea*), or on the œsophageal ring (certain branchiate Worms among the *Annelida*). The organs of sight are simple pigment spots in connection with nerves (*eye-spots*), and may be provided with refractive bodies. The ciliated pits of the *Nemertinea* have been regarded as organs of smell. The cup-shaped organs of the *Hirudinea* and *Gephyrea* are also sense organs.

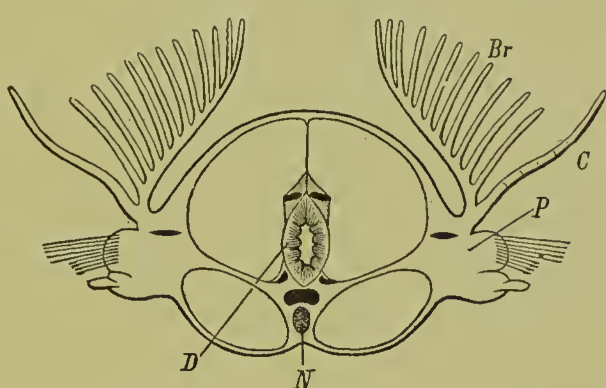



Fig. 246.—Section through a body segment of *Eunice*. *Br*, branchial appendages; *C*, cirri; *P*, parapodia with tuft of bristles; *D*, intestine; *N*, nervous system.

A *blood vascular system* is wanting in the *Nemathelminthes*, the *Rotifera*, and the *Platyhelminthes* with the exception of the *Nemertinea*. In these cases, the nutritive fluid passes endosmotically into the body parenchyma or into the body cavity, and penetrates the tissues as a clear chyle, sometimes containing cellular elements. In the *Nemertinea* a blood vascular system is present, as also in the *Gephyrea* and *Annelida*. In the latter it obtains the highest development, and may have the form of a completely closed vascular system provided with pulsating trunks. In most cases a dorsal contractile longitudinal trunk and a ventral vessel can be distinguished; the two being connected in each segment by arched transverse vessels, which are sometimes pulsatile. Where a vascular system is present, the blood does not always appear clear and colourless like the fluids of the body cavity, but sometimes has a yellow, greenish, or more frequently red colour, which is in some cases connected with the presence of blood corpuscles.

The function of *respiration* is usually performed by the general external surface of the body. Among the *Annelida*, however, we find in the large marine *Chætopoda* filiform or branched gills, which are usually appendages of the parapodia (fig. 246). A respiratory function may also be attributed to the tentacles of the *Gephyrea.*

The *excretory organs* are represented by the so-called water-vascular system, which consists of canals of different sizes, symmetrically arranged and filled with a watery fluid in which granules are suspended; they communicate with the exterior through one or more openings. The canals begin either as small passages in the tissues of the body, or free funnel-shaped openings in the body cavity. In the last case, they may subserve other functions; for example, they may conduct the generative products out of the body cavity. In the segmented *Vermes* they are paired, and are repeated in each segment as *nephridia* or *segmental organs* (fig. 70). A different arrangement is presented by the two lateral canals of the *Nematoda*, which lie in the so-called lateral lines or areas, and open by a common excretory pore in the region of the pharynx.

In addition to sexual reproduction an asexual multiplication by means of gemmation and fission (rarely by formation of germinal cells) is widely distributed, especially among the lower forms. This asexual reproduction is, however, frequently confined to the larvæ, which differ from the sexually mature animal in form and habitation, and play the part of an asexual generation in the cycle of development. Almost all the *Platyhelminthes* and numerous *Annelida* are hermaphrodite; the *Nemathelminthes*, the *Gephyrea*, and *Rotifera*, and also the branchiate Annelids are of separate sexes. Many Worms pass through a metamorphosis; the larvæ are characterised by the possession of a præoral ring of cilia (Lovén's larva), or of several rings of cilia. In the *Cestoda* and *Trematoda*, which possess in their embryonic stage the capability of asexual reproduction, the metamorphosis assumes the form of a more or less complicated alternation of generations which is often characterised by the difference in the habitat of the two successive stages of development and by the alternation of a parasitic and free life.

The vital activity of the Worms is in general of a low order, corresponding with their habitat. Many of them (Entozoa) live as parasites in the interior of the organs of other animals, some as ectoparasites on the external surface of the body, and feed on the juices of their hosts. Others live free in damp earth, or in mud; others, and these are the most highly organized forms, inhabit fresh and salt water.

## CLASS I.—PLATYHELMINTHES.

*Vermes with a flat, more or less elongated body, with cerebral ganglion. They are often provided with suckers and hooks, and are usually hermaphrodite.*

The series of forms included under this class are mostly *Entozoa*, or else live in the mud and beneath stones in the water. In their organization they occupy the lowest place among the worms. Their body is more or less flattened, and is either unsegmented or is divided by transverse constrictions into a number of successive divisions, which, although forming parts of one animal, yet have a strong tendency towards individualisation, and frequently attain to separation and lead an independent life. These segments are products of growth in the direction of the long axis of the body, and stand in a special relation to reproduction. They are by no means to be considered as necessarily indicating a high grade of organization, as does the segmentation of the *Annelida*. The *alimentary canal* may be altogether wanting (*Cestoda*), or, if present, may be without an anus (*Trematoda, Turbellaria*). The *nervous system* is usually composed of a double ganglion above the œsophagus, giving off small nerves anteriorly and laterally, and two stems backwards. In many *Platyhelminthes* simple eye-spots occur, either with or without refractive bodies, and more rarely there is an auditory vesicle. Blood-vessels and organs of respiration are found only in the *Nemertinea*. The excretory (water vascular) system is everywhere developed. With the exception of the *Microstomidæ* and *Nemertinea*, hermaphroditism is the rule. The female generative glands consist of distinct yolk-glands and ovaries. The development very frequently takes place by a very complicated process of metamorphosis connected with alternation of generations.

### *Order* 1.—TURBELLARIA.*

*Free living Platyhelminthes with oval or leaf-shaped body, with soft skin covered with cilia. They possess a mouth and aproctous*

* Dugès, "Recherehes sur l'organisation et les mœurs de Planaires." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, Ser. I., Tom XV. A. S. Oerstedt, "Entwurf einer systematisehen Eintheilung und speeiellen Beschreibung der Plattwürmern." Copenhagen, 1844. De Quatrefages, "Mémoire sur quelques Planariées marines," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, 1845. M. Schultze, "Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der Turbellarien." Greifswald, 1851. L. Graff, "Zur Kenntniss der Turbellarien," *Zeitschrift für Wiss. Zool.*, Tom XXIV. L. Graff, "Neue Mittheilungen über Turbellarien." *Zeitsch. f. wiss. Zool.*, xxv., 1875. P. Hallez, "Contributions á l'histoire naturelle des Turbellariés," Lille, 1879.

*alimentary canal. Hooks and suckers are absent. A cerebral ganglion is present.*

The *Turbellaria* usually possess an oval flattened body, and reach only a small size. The uniform ciliation of the body is connected with their existence in fresh and salt water, beneath stones, in mud, and even in damp earth. Only in exceptional cases do we meet with apparatuses for adhering, viz., small hooks and suckers.

The skin consists of a single layer of cells, or of a finely granular layer containing nuclei, which is supported by a stratified basal membrane, and covered externally by a special homogeneous membrane bearing cilia and comparable to a cuticula. Peculiar integumentary structures, which have the form of rods or spindles, and, like the nematocysts in *Cœlenterata*, take their origin in cells, are not unfrequently present. Various pigments are also often found embedded in the epidermis, and of these pigments the green-coloured vesicles, in *Vortex viridis* for example, which are identical with chlorophyl corpuscles, are specially worthy of remark. Pear-shaped mucous glands are also present. Beneath the conspicuous basement membrane which supports the epidermis lies the dermis. It contains the strongly developed dermal muscular system embedded in a connective tissue layer formed of round, often branched cells. A body cavity between the body wall and the alimentary canal, is, as a rule, absent; it may, however, in many cases be recognised as a system of lacunæ, or as a continuous cavity surrounding the alimentary canal.

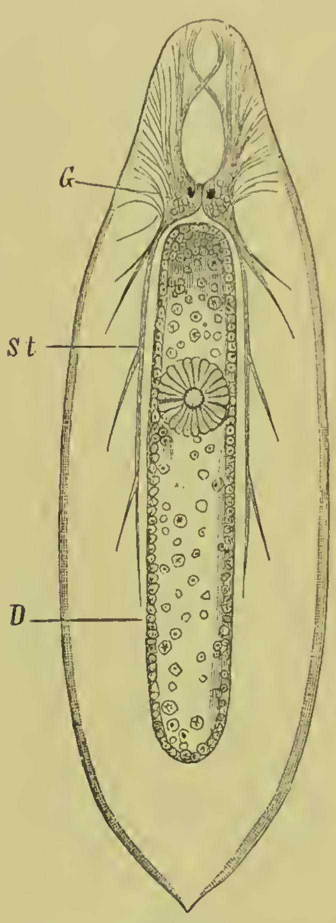



FIG. 247.—Alimentary canal and nervous system of *Mesostomum Ehrenbergii* (after Graff). *G*, the two cerebral ganglia with two eye spots; *St*, the two lateral nerve trunks; *D*, alimentary canal with mouth and pharynx.

The *nervous system* consists of two ganglia connected by a commissure, and giving off nerve fibres in various directions; of these two especially large lateral trunks run backwards, one on either side (fig. 247). The latter are connected at regular intervals by delicate transverse trunks. In a number of dendrocœlous Turbellarians a diverticulum of the stomach runs forward above the transverse commissure in a groove between the two cerebral lobes (*Leptoplana*). In some genera of *Planarians*, a ring-shaped double commissure] has been shown to exist in the brain (*Polycelis*), and ganglion-like swellings, from which nerves are given off, have been observed on the lateral nerve-trunks (*Sphyrocephalus*, *Polycladus*).

With regard to sense organs, *eye spots* are tolerably widely distributed among the *Turbellaria*. They either lie in pairs upon the cerebral ganglia or are connected with short nerves given off from the latter. More frequently two larger eyes with refractive structures are developed. Otocysts are but rarely present, *e.g.*, in *Monocelis* among the *Rhabdocœla* a single one is present lying upon the cerebral ganglion. The integument is without doubt endowed with a highly developed tactile sense; the large hairs and stiff bristles which project between the cilia may possibly be of importance in this relation. Lateral ciliated pits, which may also be explained as sense organs, are in rare cases present at the anterior end of the body (compare the *Nemertinea*).

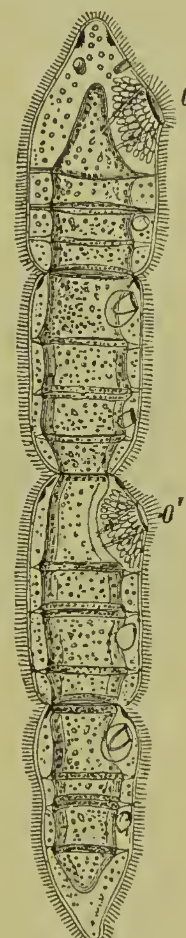


Fig. 248.—*Microstomum lineare*, after Graff. *O*, Chain produced by fission; *O'*, mouth openings.

Mouth and digestive apparatus are never wanting, but the former is frequently removed from the ventral surface of the anterior end of the body to the middle or, indeed, even to the posterior region. According to Metschnikoff and Ulianin, a stomach may in some cases be absent (*Convoluta*, *Schizoprora*), and be replaced, as in *Infusoria*, by a soft internal parenchyma. The mouth leads into a muscular pharynx, which can usually be protruded after the manner of a proboscis. The alimentary canal, of which the internal wall is frequently ciliated, is either forked and then simple or branched (*Dendrocœla*), or rod-shaped (*Rhabdocœla*). An anus is never present. A peculiar tube capable of being evaginated as a proboscis, and without connection with the pharynx is sometimes also present (*Prostomum*).

The *excretory* (water-vascular) *system* consists of two transparent lateral trunks and innumerable side branches, which begin with closed ciliated funnels, and are furnished with vibratile cilia, which project here and there freely into the vessels. As a rule, several openings occur on the main trunk of this excretory apparatus.

Reproduction may take place asexually by transverse fission, *e.g.*, *Derostomea* (*Catenula*) and *Microstomea* (fig. 248). With the exception of the *Microstomea*, the *Turbellaria* are hermaphrodite; but steps intermediate between the hermaphrodite and the diœcious condition seem by no means to be wanting, for, according to Metschnikoff, in *Prostomum lineare* the male generative organs are sometimes developed, while the female's remain rudimentary; and sometimes, on the other hand, the reverse holds. In *Acmostomum diœcum* also the sexes are separate. In the hermaphrodite forms the male sexual organs consist of testes, which mostly lie as paired tubes at the sides of the body, also of vesiculæ seminales, and of a protrusible copulatory organ beset with hooks. The female organs consist of ovaries, yolk glands (vitellarium), a receptaculum seminis, a vagina, and a uterus (fig. 249). The male copulatory organ and the vagina open as a rule by a common orifice upon the ventral surface. Sometimes, as in the Rhabdocœle genus *Macrostomum*, the vitellarium (yolk gland) and ovary are united; the ova being produced at the upper blind end of the ovary, and the yolk at the lower end of the same gland. In the marine Dendrocœla, on the other hand, the vitellarium is generally absent. After fertilization, a hard, usually reddish-brown shell begins to be formed round the ovum. In such cases, the hard-shelled eggs are laid; but among the Rhabdocœla, in *Schizostomum* and certain *Mesostomea* (*M. Ehrenbergii*), transparent eggs furnished with thin, colourless capsules, and undergoing development in the body of the parent, are often produced. According to Schneider, the production of these thin-

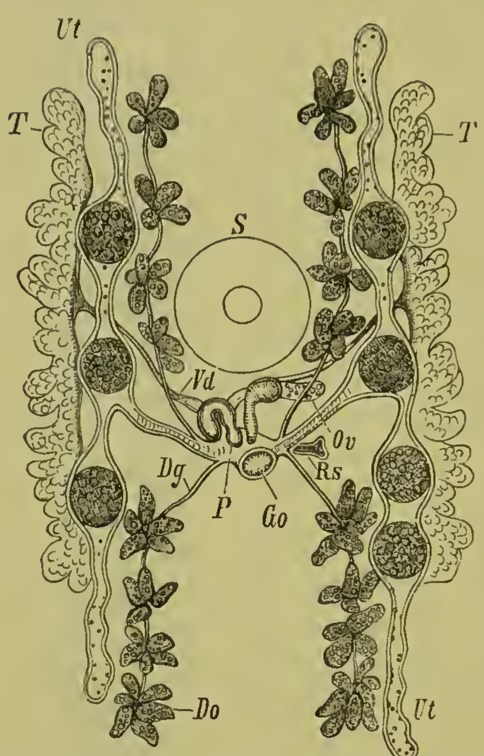



FIG. 249.—Generative apparatus of *Mesostomum Ehrenbergii* (combined from Graff and Schneider). *S*, Pharynx; *Go*, sexual openings; *Ov*, ovary; *Ut*, uterus, with winter eggs; *Do*, yolk gland; *Dg*, duct of yolk gland; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *P*, penis; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis.

shelled or *summer eggs* invariably precedes that of the hard-shelled or *winter eggs*, and the summer eggs are normally self-fertilized.

In rare cases the hemaphrodite generative organs present a segmentation recalling that of the *Cestoda* (*Alaurina composita*).

The freshwater *Turbellaria*, as well as many of the marine forms, undergo a simple direct development, and in the young state are often difficult to distinguish from *Infusoria*. Other marine *Dendrocœla* undergo a metamorphosis, the larvæ being characterised by the possession of finger-shaped ciliated lobes (fig. 251).

(1) Sub-order: **Rhabdocœla.** The body is round and more or less flat. The intestine is cylindrical, and there is usually a protrusible pharynx. They are usually hermaphrodite.

The Rhabdocœlous Turbellarians are the smallest and most simply organised forms. The intestine is cylindrical and elongated, and is sometimes provided with lateral diverticula. The position of the mouth varies exceedingly, and has been employed as a principal characteristic for distinguishing the various families. Sometimes salivary glands are present, opening into the pharynx. According to Ulianin's discovery, which has been several times confirmed, the alimentary canal may be wanting in many forms, and be replaced by a central cavity, filled with a substance containing numerous vacuoles and rich in oil globules (*Convoluta, Schizoprora, Nadina*). In those *Rhabdocœla* which possess an alimentary canal, interstices and spaces in the connective tissue parenchyma are often present: these must be related to a body cavity. In some cases (in *Prostomum*) the body cavity may be recognised as a continuous space filled with fluid and surrounding the alimentary canal. The *Rhabdocœla* live on the juices of small worms and of the larvæ of *Entomostraca* and *Insecta*, which they envelop with a cutaneous secretion containing small rods, and afterwards suck. They are mostly inhabitants of fresh water, and only a few of them are to be met with in the sea or upon the land (*Geocentrophora sphyrocephala*).

Fam. **Opisthomidæ.** The mouth is placed at the posterior end of the body and leads into a tubular pharynx, which can be protruded like a proboscis. *Monocelis agilis* M. Sch., *Opisthomum pallidum* O. S.

Fam. **Derostomidæ.** Mouth placed slightly behind the anterior margin; pharynx barrel-shaped. *Derostomum Schmidtianum* M. Sch., *Vortex viridis*, M. Sch., *Catenula lemnæ* Dug.

Fam. **Mesostomidæ.** Mouth placed nearly in the middle of the body, pharynx ringlike, cylindrical or resembling a sucker. *Mesostomum Ehrenbergii* Oerst., with two eyes.

Fam. **Convolutidæ.** (*Acœla*). Without alimentary canal. The ovaries and yolk glands are not separate. *Convoluta* Oerst. *C. paradoxa* Oerst., North Sea, Baltic. *Schizoprora* O. S.

Fam. **Prostomidæ.** The mouth, which is situate on the ventral surface, leads into a muscular pharynx. At the anterior end there is a protrusible tactile proboscis furnished with papillæ. *Prostomum* Oerst. (*Gyrator* Ehrbg.). *P. lineare* Oerst. With pointed penial spine at the posterior end, imperfectly hermaphrodite, living principally in fresh water. *Pr. helgolandicum*, Kef., completely hermaphrodite.

Fam. **Microstomidæ.** *Rhabdocœla* with separate sexes. The small but very extensible mouth lies near the anterior end of the body. There are laterally placed ciliated pits near the anterior end of the body. Formation of metameres and transverse fission frequently occur. *Microstomum lineare* Oerst. (fig. 248).

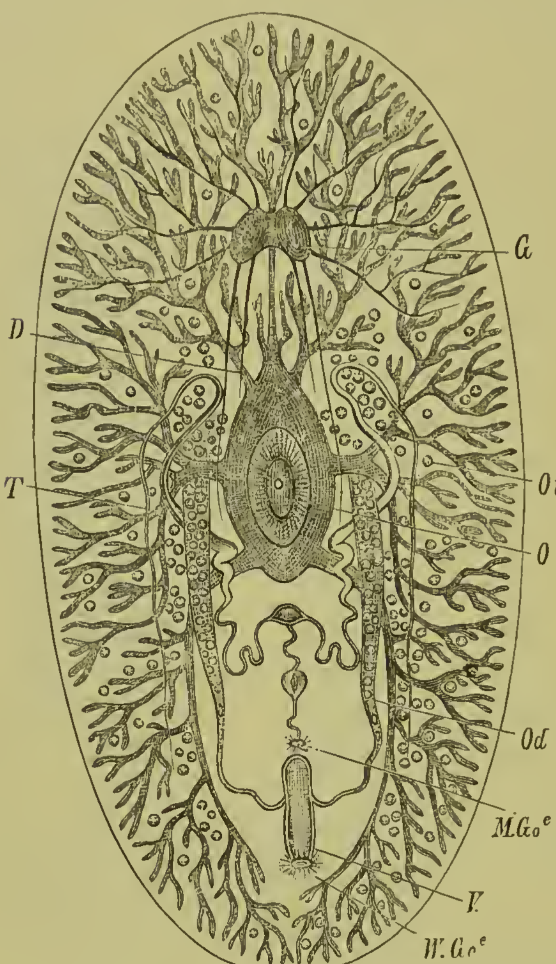



FIG. 250.—Anatomy of *Polycelis pallida* (after Quatrefages). *G*, Cerebral ganglion with the nerves given off from it; *O*, mouth; *D*, branches of intestine; *Ov*, ova; *Od*, oviduct; *V*, vagina; *W.Goe*, female generative opening; *T*, testes; *M.Goe*, male generative opening.

(2) Sub-order: **Dendrocœla.** The body is broad and flat, and the lateral margins are often plicated. There are tentacle-like processes at the anterior end. There is a branched alimentary canal and a muscular pharynx which is usually protrusible. They are, as a rule, hermaphrodite.

The *Dendrocœla* are mostly marine, but also live in fresh water and on land. In their external appearance they resemble the Trematodes, and the branching of their straight or forked intestine is a character common to the larger species of the latter. Compared with the *Rhabdocœla*, they are distinguished by the greater development of their bi-lobed cerebral ganglion, as well as by the greater number of their eyes (fig. 250). The rows of papillæ, or the tentacle-like processes at the anterior end of the body have probably the function of tactile organs. The mouth usually lies in the middle of the body, and leads into a wide and protrusible pharynx. The skin is often provided with glands, the secretion of which in certain land *Planaria* (*Bipalium*, *Rhynchodesmus*) hardens to a fibrous web. They are almost always hermaphrodite. The fresh-water forms possess a common generative opening, while in the marine forms the generative openings are usually separate (fig. 250). In the latter case a separate vitellarium is absent. In some marine forms development takes place with metamorphosis, as is shown by the larva discovered by J. Müller, which possessed six provisional finger-like ciliated lobes (fig. 251). In the fresh-water Planarians development is direct. The cocoon, when laid, contains four to six small eggs. At the close of segmentation there is developed a layer of cells, which is said to split into two layers, an upper or animal layer, from which are derived the body wall and muscular system, and a lower or vegetative, from which the alimentary canal is formed. The marine *Dendrocœla* frequently deposit their eggs in the form of broad bands.

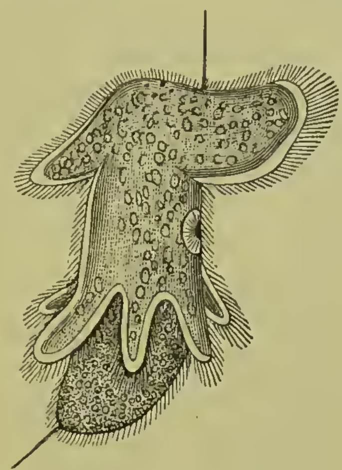


Fig. 251.—Larva of *Eurylepta auriculata*, after Hallez.

1. **Monogonopora** Stimps. *Dendrocœla* with single sexual opening. The land and fresh-water Planaria belong to this group.


Fig. 252.—*Planaria polychroa* (*a*), *lugubris* (*b*), *torva* (*c*), about twice the natural size (after O. Schmidt).

Fam. **Planariadæ.** The body is of a long, oval, flattened shape, and is often provided with lobed processes, more rarely with tentacles, and, as a rule, with two eyes, which are provided with lenses. *Planaria* O. Fr. Müller, two eyes, no tentacles. *Pl. torva.* M. Sch. (divided by O. Schmidt into *lugubris*, *polychroa*, and *torva*) (fig. 252). *Pl. dioica* Clap., with separate sexes. *Dendrocœlum* Oerst. Distinguished by the possession of lobed processes on the head, also by the presence of a copulatory organ placed in a special sheath. *D. lacteum* Oerst., *Polycelis nigra*, *brunnea* O. Fr. Müll.

Fam. **Geoplanidæ.*** Land Planarians. They are characterised by their

* Besides M. Schultze, Stimpson, Metschnikoff, Grube, etc., compare H. N.

elongated and flattened body, which is provided with a foot-like ventral surface. *Geoplana lapidicola* Stimps., *Rhynchodesmus terrestris* Gm. (*Fasciola terrestris*, O. Fr. Müller), Europe. *Geodesmus bilineatus*, Metschn., with thread cells in the integument, found in potter's earth.

2. **Digonopora.** *Dendrocœla* with double sexual opening. Almost all are marine. The proboscis is often folded and lies within a special pouch. When protruded, it spreads out like a lobe.

Fam. **Stylochidæ.** The body is flat and rather thick, and is provided with two short tentacles on the head. There are usually numerous eyes on the tentacles or on the head. The genital openings are posterior. *Stylochus maculatus* Quatr.

Fam. **Leptoplanidæ.** Body flat and broad, usually very delicate. Cephalic region not distinct, without tentacles. The eyes are more or less numerous. The mouth is usually placed in front of the middle of the body. The genital openings lie behind it. *Leptoplana tremellaris* O. Fr. Müll., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Euryleptidæ.** Body broad, and either smooth or furnished with papillæ. There are two tentacle-like lobes on the anterior region of the head. The mouth is placed in front of the middle of the body. Numerous eyes are disposed near the anterior margin. Marine. *Thysanozoon Diesingii* Gr. Mediterranean. *Eurylepta auriculata* O. Fr. Müller, North Sea.

## *Order* 2.—Trematoda.*

*Parasitic Platyhelminthes with unsegmented, usually leaf-shaped, rarely cylindrical body. They possess a mouth and ventrally placed organ for attachment: the intestine is forked and without an anus.*

The Trematodes are with great probability to be derived from the *Turbellaria*, with which group, both in form and organization, they show a close relationship. In connection with their parasitic mode of life they develop special organs for adhering, such as suckers and hooks. Cilia are present only in larval life.

The mouth is invariably placed at the anterior end of the body, usually in the middle of a small sucker (fig. 253). It leads into a muscular pharynx with a more or less elongated œsophagus, which is prolonged into a forked intestine ending blindly.

Moseley, "Notes on the Structure of Several Forms of Land Planarians," etc. *Journal of Micr. Science*, vol. xvii.

* A. v. Nordmann, "Mikrographische Beiträge zur Kenntniss der wirbellosen Thiere," Berlin, 1832. G. G. Carus, "Beobachtung über Leucochloridium paradoxum, etc.," *Nov. Act.*, vol. xvii., 1835. Wagener, "Ueber Gyrodactylus elegans," *Müller's Archiv.*, 1860. Van Beneden, "Mémoire sur les vers intestinaux," Paris, 1861. E. Zeller, "Untersuchungen über die Entwickelung und den Bau von Polystoma integerrimum. *Zeitschr. f. wiss. Zool.*, vol. xxii., 1872. E. Zeller, "Untersuchungen über die Entwickelung von Diplozoum paradoxum," *Ibid.*, vol. xxiii., 1873. E. Zeller, "Ueber Leucochloridium paradoxum und die weitere Entwickelung seiner Distomumbrut," *Ibid.*, Tom XXIV. E. Zeller, "Weiterer Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Polystomeen," *Ibid.*, xxvii., 1876. Compare also the works of G. Wagener and De Filippi.

The *excretory* apparatus consists of two large lateral trunks and a network of fine vessels permeating the tissues and beginning with small ciliated lobules. The two large trunks open into a common contractile vesicle, which opens to the exterior at the posterior end of the body (fig. 253, *Ep*). The excretory system contains a watery fluid with granular concretions. This fluid is probably an excretory product, corresponding to the urine of higher animals.

The *nervous system* consists of a double ganglion lying above the œsophagus, and from it several small nerves and two posteriorly directed lateral trunks are said to be given off. *Eye spots* with refractive bodies are sometimes present in the larvæ during their migrations. Locomotion is effected by the dermal muscular system and the organs of attachment, viz., the suckers and hooks, which present numerous modifications in number, form, and arrangement. In general, the size and development of these organs are related to the endo-parasitic or ecto-parasitic mode of life. In the endo-parasitic Trematodes they are less developed, and usually consist of the oral sucker and a second larger sucker on the ventral surface, either near the mouth, as in *Distomum*, or at the opposite pole of the body (*Amphistomum*). This large sucker may, however, be absent (*Monostomum*). The ecto-parasitic *Polystomea*, on the other hand, are distinguished by a much more powerful armature, for besides two smaller suckers at the sides of the mouth, they possess one or more large suckers at the posterior end of the body (fig. 258), which, moreover, may be supported by rods of chitin. There are often in addition chitinous hooks, and very frequently two larger hooks among the posterior suckers in the middle line (*H*).

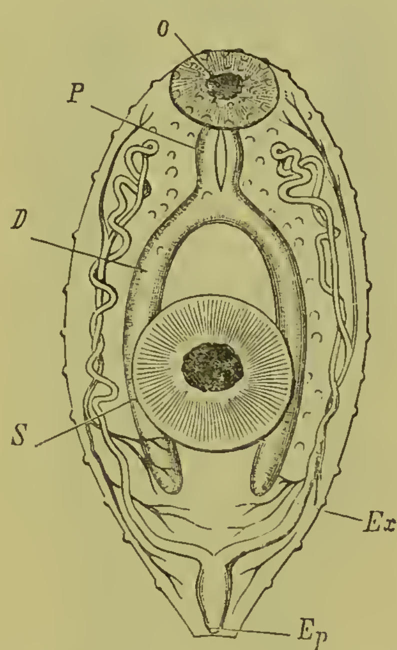



FIG. 253.—Young *Distomum* (after La Valette). *Ex*, trunk of the excretory (water vascular) system; *Ep*, excretory pore; *O*, mouth with sucker; *S*, sucker in the middle of the ventral surface; *P*, pharynx; *D*, forked intestine.

The *Trematoda* are mostly hermaphrodite. As a rule, the male and female generative openings lie side by side, or one behind the other, not far from the middle line of the ventral surface, near the anterior end of the body (fig. 254). The male opening leads into a sac, the *cirrus sac*, which encloses the protrusible terminal part (cirrus) of the vas deferens. The vas deferens soon divides into two, which lead back to the two large simple or multilobed testes. The supposed third vas deferens, which, according to v. Siebold, runs from one testis to the female sexual apparatus, so as to permit of direct fertilization without copulation, has been recognized as a vagina opening to the exterior on the dorsal surface (canal of Laurer). The female organs consist of a convoluted uterus and of the glands concerned in the preparation of the egg, viz., an ovary and two yolk glands. There is sometimes in addition a special shell gland. The true ovary which produces the primary ova is a round body, and is usually placed in front of the testes. The yolk glands which secrete the yolk are much ramified tubular glands, and fill the sides of the body (fig. 254). The yolk particles come in contact with the primary ova in the first portion of the uterus, and surround them in greater or less quantities. Subsequently each ovum, with its investment of yolk, is surrounded by a strong shell. The ova in their passage along the uterus become packed together, often in great numbers, and undergo the stages of embryonic development in the body of the parent. Most Trematodes lay their eggs; only a few are viviparous.

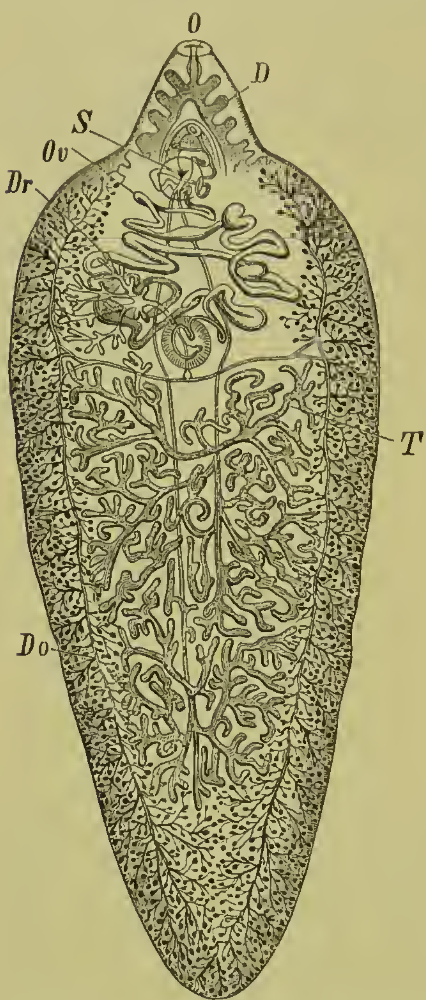



FIG. 254.—*Distomum hepaticum* (after Sommer). *O*, Mouth; *D*, limb of intestine; *S*, sucker; *T*, testes; *Do*, vitellarium; *Ov* (uterus), oviduct; *Dr*, accessory glands.

The just-hatched young either possess (in most *Polystomea*) the form and organization of the parent; or they present the phenomenon of a complicated alternation of generations (heterogamy) connected with a metamorphosis (*Distomea*). In the first case, the large eggs become attached in the place where the mother lives; in the last case, the relatively small eggs are deposited in a damp place, usually in the water. After the completion of the segmentation and the embryonic development, the contractile, usually ciliated embryos* (fig. 255, *a*), which already possess the first rudiments of an excretory system and more rarely a sucker with a mouth and alimentary canal, leave the egg and wander about independently in search of a new host. The latter is, as a rule, a snail, into the interior of which they penetrate and there become transformed into simple or branched *Sporocysts* (without mouth and alimentary canal, fig. 255, *c*), or into *Rediæ* (with mouth and alimentary canal, fig. 255, *d*). These give rise, by means of the so-called germs [cells lying in the body cavity of the


FIG. 255.—Developmental history of *Distomum* (partly after R. Leuckart). *a*, free swimming ciliated embryo of the liver fluke. *b*, the same in a state of contraction with rudimentary alimentary canal (*D*) and cell mass (*Ov*) (rudiments of the genital glands). *Ex*, ciliated apparatus of the rudimentary excretory system. *c*, sporocyst developed from a Distomum embryo, filled with Cercariæ (*C*) ; *B*, Boring spine of a Cercaria. *d* Redia with pharynx, (*Ph*), and alimentary canal (*D*) ; *O*, mouth ; *Ex*, Excretory organ ; *C*, Cercaria inside Redia. *e*, Free Cercaria ; *S*, sucker ; *D*, alimentary canal.

sporocyst or redia], which probably correspond to the germinal cells (primitive ova) of the rudimentary ovary, to the generation of the

* As R. Leuckart has rightly observed, the *Dicyemidæ*, which were regarded as *Mesozoa* by Ed. v. Beneden, as well as the *Orthonectidæ*, which have recently been especially investigated by Giard and E. Metschnikoff, and which in the reproductive stage do not rise above a form corresponding to the embryos of Trematodes, recall these Distomum larvæ.

tailed *Cercariæ*, or to another generation of *Sporocysts* or *Rediæ*,* which then produce the Cercariæ.

The *Cercariæ* are nothing else than Distomum larvæ, which eventually reach (often only after two migrations, an active and a passive one) the final host, where they become sexually mature. They are furnished with an exceedingly motile caudal appendage, frequently with a buccal spine, and occasionally with eyes, and they present in the rest of their organization great resemblances to the adult *Distomum*, excepting that the generative organs are not developed. In this form they leave independently the body of the *Redia* or *Sporocyst* and of the host of the latter, and move about in the water, partly creeping and partly swimming. Here they soon find a new host (Snail, Worm, Insect larva, Crustacean, Fish, Batrachian), into which they penetrate, aided by the powerful vibrations of their tail; they then lose the latter and encyst.

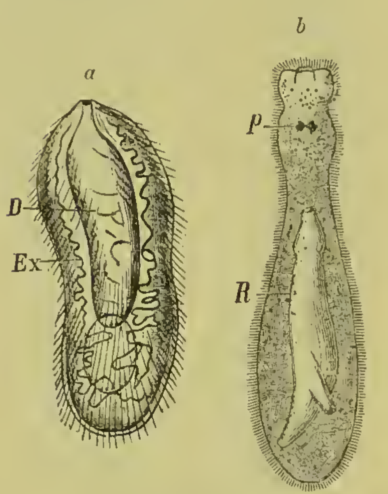


FIG. 256.—*a*, Embryo of *Diplodiscus subclavatus* (after G. Wagener). *D*, Alimentary canal; *Ex*, excretory system. *b*, Embryo of *Monostomum mutabile* (after v. Siebold). *P*, Pigment spots; *R*, redia in the interior of the embryo.

The *Cercariæ* from the interior of the snail thus become distributed amongst a number of hosts, and each of them gives rise to an encyste young *Distomum* without generative organs. This young *Distomum* migrates passively with the flesh of its host into the stomach of another animal, and thence, freed from its cyst, into the organ (intestine, bladder etc.), in which it becomes sexually mature.

There are, then, as a rule, three different hosts in the organs of which the different developmental stages (*Redia* or *Sporocyst*, encysted form, sexually mature animal) of the Distomum bury themselves. The transitions from one host to another are effected partly by independent migration (embryos, Cercariæ), partly by passive migration (encysted young *Distomum*).

Modifications of the ordinary course of development may, however, take place; these may be either complications or simplifications. The embryo at hatching may contain a single *Redia* (as in *Monostomum*

* In *Cercaria cystophora* from *Planorbis marginatus*; according to G. Wagener, the primary asexual individual is a *Sporocyst*, the secondary a *Redia*.

*flavum* and *mutabile*), which it carries about until it enters the first host (fig. 256, *b*). In other cases the course of development is simplified by the omission of the second intermediate host, viz., that which contains the encysted immature *Distomum* (*Cercaria macrocerca* of *Distomum cygnoides*, also *Leucochloridium* in the tentacles of *Helix succinea*).

(1) Sub-order: **Distomea.** Trematodes with at most two suckers, without hooks. They develop with a complicated alternation of generations. The asexual individuals and the larvæ live principally in *Mollusca*, the sexually mature animals in the alimentary canal of Vertebrates.

The sexes are completely separated in *Distomum hæmatobium* (from the veins of man); individuals of the two sexes being united in pairs (fig. 257). Dimorphic forms are found in certain species of the genera Monostomum and Distomum in connection with the division of labour of the sexual functions; one individual develops only male sexual organs, and the other only female, the former producing spermatozoa and the latter ova. The rudiment of the functionless generative gland undergoes in these cases a more or less complete degeneration. Such *Distomea* are morphologically hermaphrodite, but practically of separate sexes.

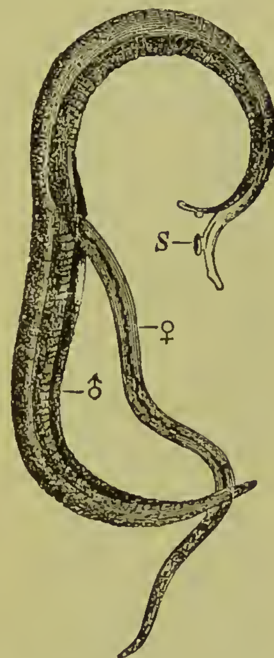


FIG. 257—*Distomum hæmatobium.* Male and female, the latter being in the canalis gynæcophorus of the former. *S*, sucker.

The complete biology and developmental history is unfortunately only satisfactorily known for a few species which can be followed through all the stages of development.

Fam. **Monostomidæ.** Of an oval, elongated, more or less rounded form, with only one sucker, which surrounds the mouth. *Monostomum* Zeder. Sucker surrounding the mouth; pharynx powerful. Sexual openings but slightly removed from the anterior end. *M. mutabile* Zeder, in the body cavity and in the orbit of various water-birds; viviparous. *M. flavum* Mehlis, in water-birds, develops from *Cercaria ephemera* of *Planorbis*. *M. lentis* v. Nordm., the young form without generative organs is found in the lens of the human eye. *M. bipartitum* Wedl., living in pairs enclosed in a common cyst, the one individual surrounded by the lobed posterior end of the other; branchiæ of Tunny-fish.

Fam. **Distomidæ.** Body lancet-shaped, frequently spread out, more rarely elongated and rounded with a large median sucker; in front of which lie the genital openings, usually close together.

*Distomum.* Median sucker approached to the anterior one. *D. hepaticum* L. Liver fluke. With conical anterior end, and numerous spine-like prominences on the surface of the broad leaf-shaped body, which is about 30 mm. long. Lives in the bile-ducts of sheep and other domestic animals, and produces the liver disease of the sheep. It is occasionally found in Man, and bores its way into the portal vein and into the system of the vena cava. The elongated embryo only develops after the egg has remained a long time in water : it has a continuous ciliated envelope with an X-shaped eye-spot. R. Leuckart's researches have rendered it probable that the development is passed through in the young *Limnæus pereger* and *truncatulus*, that here the embryo becomes a *Sporocyst*, and that this produces *Rediæ*, in which it is supposed that tailless *Distomea* arise.

[The life-history of the liver-fluke has been completely worked out by A. P. Thomas (*Quart. Journal of Microscopical Sci.* 1883, pp. 99—133). He has shown that the ciliated embryo passes into *Limnæus truncatulus*, and there gives rise to a *sporocyst* which produces rediæ. The *rediæ* produce more *rediæ* or *Cercariæ*. The *Cercariæ*, which are provided with long tails, leave the host (*Limnæus truncatulus*), swim about for a short time in the water, and encyst on foreign objects, *e.g.* blades of grass. In this condition they are eaten by the sheep.]

*D. crassum* Busk., in the alimentary canal of the Chinese, one to two inches in length, and half-inch broad, without spinous prominences, with a simple forked intestine. *D. lanceolatum* Mehlis. Body elongated into the form of a lancet, 8—9 m.m. long, lives in the same place with *D. hepaticum.* The embryo develops at first in water, is pear-shaped, and only ciliated on the anterior half of the body, bears a styliform spine on the projecting apex. *D. ophthalmobium* Dies. A doubtful species of which only four specimens have been observed in the lens capsule of a nine-months' child. *D. heterophyes* Bilh. v Sieb. 1—1·5 mm. long, in the alimentary canal of man in Egypt. *D. goliath* van Ben., 80 mm. long, in *Pterobalæna.* Numerous species live in the alimentary canal, lungs, and bladder of the frog. *Distomun filicolle* Rud. (*D. Okeni* Köll) in pairs in the mucous sacs in the branchial cavity of *Brama Raji.* The one individual is cylindrical and narrow, and produces spermatozoa ; the other is swollen in the middle and posterior region of the body, and is filled with eggs. The dissimilar development of the two individuals is probably due to the fact that copulation only leads to the fertilization of one of them, which alone is able to perform the female sexual functions. *D. hæmatobium.* Bilh. v. Sieb. (*Gynæcophorus* Dies) (fig. 257). Body elongated ; sexes separate. The female is slender and cylindrical. The male has powerful suckers, and the lateral margins of the body are bent round so as to form a groove, the canalis gynæcophorus, for the reception of the female. They live in pairs in the portal vein, and in the veins of the intestine and of the bladder of man in Abyssinia. According to Cobbold, the embryos are ciliated, and possess a tolerably well developed excretory system. By the deposition of masses of their eggs in the vessels of the mucous membrane of the ureter, bladder, and great intestine, inflammation is set up, which may cause hæmaturia.

(2) Sub-order: **Polystomea.**—Trematodes with two small lateral suckers at the anterior end, and one or more posterior suckers, to which two large chitinous hooks are often added. In exceptional

cases (*Tristomum coccineum*) transverse rows of bristles are found. Paired eyes are frequently present. In some species the elongated body presents a kind of external segmentation. They are for the most part ectoparasitic, to a certain extent like the *Hirudinea*, and they develop directly without alternation of generations from eggs which are usually hatched in the locality inhabited by the mother. Sometimes the development is a metamorphosis (*Polystomum*), and the young larvæ live in another place.

The development of *Polystomum integerrimum* from the bladder of the frog is the best known, owing to the researches of E. Zeller (figs. 258, 259). The production of eggs begins in the spring, when the frog awakes from hibernation and proceeds to pair. It lasts from three to four weeks. It is easy then to observe the *Polystomea* in the process of reciprocal copulation. When the eggs are being laid, the parasite forces the anterior end of the body with the genital opening through the mouth of the bladder nearly as far as the anus. The development of the embryo takes place in water and occupies a period of many weeks, so that the young larvæ are only hatched when the tadpoles have already acquired internal gills. The larvæ resemble *Gyrodactylus*, and possess four eyes, a pharynx and alimentary canal, as well as a posterior disc (for attachment), which is surrounded by sixteen hooks. They possess five transverse rows of cilia; three are ventral and anterior, two dorsal and posterior. There is also a ciliated cell upon the anterior extremity. The larvæ now migrate

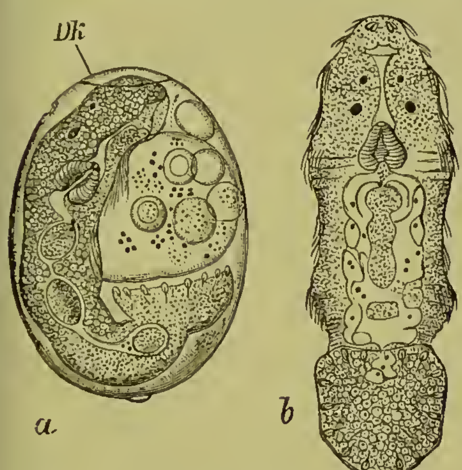


Fig. 259.—Egg with embryo (*a*, and hatched larva (*b*) of *Polystomum integerrimum*; *Dk*, operculum (after E. Zeller).

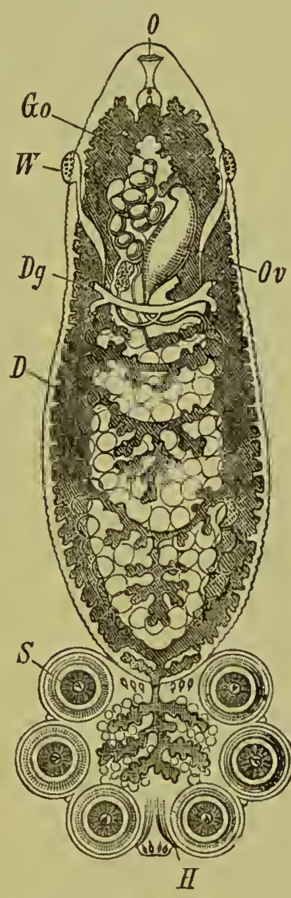


Fig. 258.—*Polystomum integerrimum* (after E. Zeller). *O*, mouth; *Go*, genital opening; *D*, intestine; *W*, copulatory opening (lateral pads); *Dg*, yolk gland duct; *S*, sucker; *Ov*, ovary; *H*, hooks.

into the branchial cavity of the tadpole, lose their cilia, and are transformed into young *Polystomea* by the formation of the two median hooks and of the three pairs of suckers upon the posterior disc. The young *Polystomum*, eight weeks after the migration into the branchial cavity, at the time when the latter begins to abort, passes through the stomach and intestine into the bladder, and there

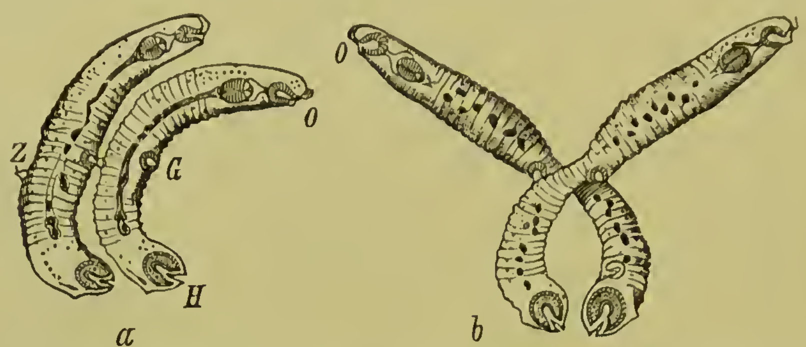



FIG. 260.—Young *Diplozoon* (after E. Zeller). *a*, Two young *Diporpa* beginning to attach themselves together. *b*, After both individuals have attached themselves. *O*, mouth; *H*, fixing apparatus; *Z*, papillæ; *G*, sucker.

only becomes sexually mature after three and more years. In some exceptional cases, and always when the larva has passed on to the gills of a very young tadpole, it becomes sexually mature in the branchial cavity of the latter. The forms then remain very small, are without the copulatory canals and uterus, and die after the production of a single egg, without ever getting to the bladder.

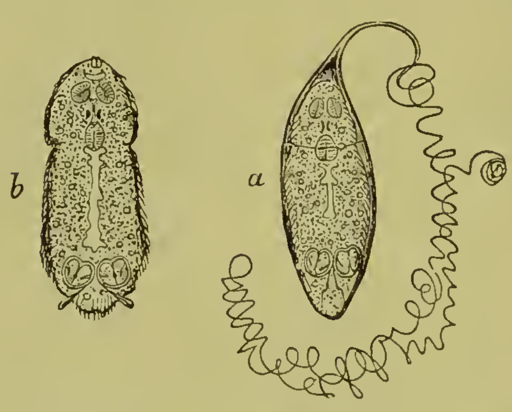



FIG. 261.—Egg (*a*) and larva (*b*) of *Diplozoon* (after E. Zeller).

Fam. **Polystomidæ.** With several posterior suckers, which are usually paired and arranged in two lateral rows, and are reinforced by an armature of hooks. The genital openings are frequently surrounded by hooks. Many species have a length of only a few lines.

*Polystomum* Zed., with four eyes; with no lateral suckers at the anterior end, but with oral sucker; with six suckers, two large median hooks and sixteen small hooks at the posterior end. *P. integerrimum* Rud., in the bladder of *Rana temporaria*. *P. ocellatum* in the pharyngeal cavity of *Emys*. In the formation of the testis and the absence of the uterus it resembles the adult form of P. integerrimum from the branchial cavity of the tadpole. *Octobothrium lanceolatum* Duj. *Onchocotyle appendiculata* Kuhn, on the gills of Elasmobranchs.

*Diplozoon* v. Nordm. The animal is double, two individuals being fused to form an X-shaped double animal, the posterior ends of which are provided with two large suckers divided into four pits. In the young state they live solitarily as *Diporpa*; they then possess a ventral sucker and a dorsal papilla (260 *a*, *G* and *Z*). In the double animals the formation of ova is confined to a definite period of the year, usually the spring. The eggs are laid singly after the formation of the thread by which they are attached, and two weeks later the embryo (fig. 261, *b*), which only differs from *Diporpa* in the possession of two eye-spots and a ciliated apparatus upon the sides and on the posterior extremity of the body, is hatched. When an opportunity of fixing itself on the gills of a fresh-water fish occurs, the young animal loses its cilia and becomes a *Diporpa*, which possesses, besides the characteristic apparatus for attachment, the alimentary canal, and the two excretory canals with their openings at the anterior part of the body (at the level of the pharynx), and sucks the branchial blood. The junction of the two *Diporpa* soon follows; and this does not take place, as was formerly believed, by the fusion of the two ventral suckers, but in such a manner that the ventral sucker of each animal affixes itself to the dorsal papilla of the other, and fuses with it (fig. 260, *b*). *D. paradoxum* v. Nordm., on the gills of many fresh-water fish.

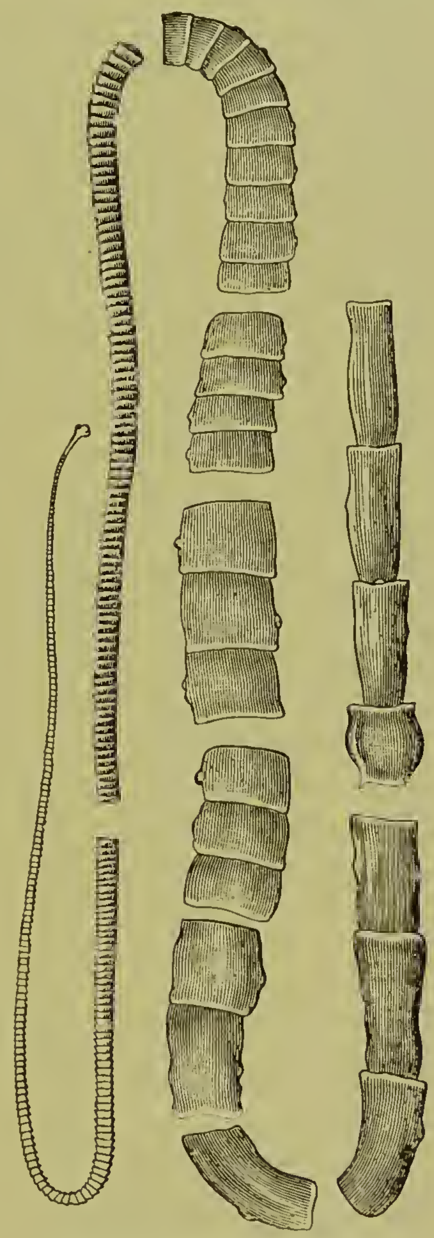


Fig. 262.—*Tænia saginata* (*mediocanellata*), natural size (after R. Leuckart).

Fam. **Gyrodactylidæ**. Very small Trematodes with large terminal caudal disc and powerful hooks. They are viviparous, producing a single young one (first generation) at a time, within which, while still in the body of the parent, another young one (second generation) may be present, and in this yet another (third generation). V. Siebold believed that he had observed a young animal developing from a germ cell of *Gyrodactylus*, and that this became pregnant during its development. He regarded the *Gyrodactylus* as an asexual form, since he failed to find organs for the production of sperm. G. Wagener, however, showed that the reproduction is sexual, and conceived the idea that the germs from which the second and third generations are formed are derived from the remains of the fertilized ovum from which the first generation is formed. Metschnikoff, too, is of the opinion that the individuals of the first and second generations are formed at the same time from a common mass of similar embryonic cells. *Gyrodactylus* v. Nordm., *G. elegans* v. Nordm., from the gills of Cyprinoids and fresh-water fish.

## *Order* 3.—Cestoda.*

*Elongated and usually segmented Platyhelminthes without mouth or alimentary canal, with organs for attachment at the anterior extremity.*

The tape-worms, which may easily be recognised by their band-shaped usually segmented bodies, are parasitic in the alimentary canal of Vertebrata, and were formerly taken for single animals. Steenstrupp was the first to introduce a different view, according to which the tape-worm is a colonial animal, a chain of single animals, each segment or *proglottis* being an individual. There are, however, *Cestoda*, like *Caryophyllæus*, which are destitute both of external segmentation and of segmentation of the generative organs; while in other cases the segments of the body are clearly differentiated, and each is provided with a set of generative organs, but they do not attain individual independence. The *proglottides*, however, usually become separated off, and in some cases (*Echineibothrium*) after their separation from the body of the tape-worm continue to live for a long time independently, and even increase considerably in size; so that although the individuality of the tape-worm may be justly insisted on, yet the subordinate and morphologically more restricted degree of individuality of the *proglottis* must also be admitted. This is the only satisfactory mode of regarding the *Cestoda*; especially as the entire tape-worm, and not the proglottis alone, corresponds to the Trematode, and is to be derived from the latter by a simplification of organization and loss of the alimentary canal.

The anterior part of the tape-worm is narrow, and presents a terminal swelling by which it attaches itself. This anterior swollen part is distinguished as the head of the tape-worm, but it is only its external form which entitles it to this name. In *Caryophyllæus*

* Besides the older works and papers of Pallas, Zeder, Bremser, Rudolphi, Diesing, and others, compare van Beneden, "Les vers cestoïdes ou acotyles," Brussels, 1850. Küchenmeister, "Ueber Cestoden im Allgemeinen und die des Menschen insbesondere," Dresden, 1853. V. Siebold. "Ueber die Band- und Blasen-würmer," Leipzig, 1854. G. Wagener, "Die Entwickelung, der Cestoden," *Nov. Act. Leop.-Car.*, Tom XXIV., Suppl., 1854. G. Wagener, "Beitrag zur Entwickelungsgeschichte der Eingeweidewürmer," Haarlem, 1857. R. Leuckart, "Die Blasenbandwürmer und ihre Entwickelung," Giessen, 1856. R. Leuckart, "Die menschlichen Parasiten," Bd. I., Leipzig, 1862. F. Sommer and L. Landois, "Ueber den Bau der geschlechtsreifen Glieder von Bothriocephalus latus," *Zeitschr. f. wiss. Zool.*, 1872. F. Sommer, "Ueber den Bau und die Entwickelungsgeschichte der Geschlechtsorgane von Taenia mediocanellata und Taenia solium," *Ibid.*, Tom XXIV., 1874.

the head armature is very weak, and consists of a lobed fringed expansion. The apex of the head often ends in a conical projection, the *rostellum*, which is armed with a double circle of hooks, while the lateral surfaces of the head are furnished with four suckers (*Tænia*, fig. 263). In other cases only two suckers are present (*Bothriocephalus*); or we find suckers of more complicated structure and beset with hooks (*Acanthobothrium*), or four protrusible probosces beset with recurved hooks (*Tetrarhyncus*); while in other genera the head armature presents various special forms.

That portion of the animal which follows the head and is distinguished as the neck shows, as a rule, the first traces of commencing segmentation. The rings, which are at first faintly marked and very narrow, become more and more distinct and gradually larger the further they are removed from the head. At the posterior extremity the segments or proglottides are largest, and have the power of becoming detached. After separation they live independently for a long time, and sometimes even in the same medium.

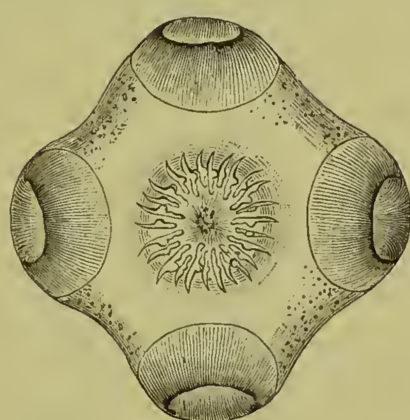


Fig. 263.—Head of *Tænia solium*, viewed from the front (apical surface), with rostellum and double circle of hooks. The four suckers are visible.

The simplicity of the internal organization corresponds with the simple appearance of the external structure. Beneath the delicate external cuticle is a matrix consisting of small cells, in which are scattered glandular cells. Beneath the matrix there is a delicate superficial layer of longitudinal muscular fibres, and next a parenchyma of connective tissue, in which strongly-developed bundles of longitudinal muscular fibres, as well as an inner layer of circular muscles, are embedded; both these muscular layers are traversed, principally at the sides of the body, by groups of dorso-ventral muscular fibres. The power which the proglottis possesses of altering its form is due to the interaction of all these muscles. By means of them it is able to shorten itself considerably, at the same time becoming much broader and thicker, or to elongate to double its normal length, becoming much thinner. In the connective tissue parenchyma of the body, not only the muscles, but all the other organs are embedded. In its peripheral portion, especially in the neighbourhood of the head, we find small densely packed calcareous concrements, which are generally regarded as calcified connective tissue cells.

The *nervous system* consists of two lateral longitudinal cords passing externally to the main trunks of the excretory system. They are somewhat swollen in the head, where they are connected by a transverse commissure; these anterior swellings and the commissure may represent a cephalic ganglion. Distinct sense organs are wanting, but the tactile sense may be ascribed to the skin, especially to that of the head and the suckers. An alimentary canal is also wanting. The nutritive fluid, already prepared for absorption, passes endosmotically through the body wall into the parenchyma.

The *excretory apparatus*, on the contrary, attains a considerable development as a system of much ramified canals which are distributed throughout the whole body.* It consists primarily of two longitudinal canals (a dorsal and a ventral), running along each side of the body and connected in the head and in each segment by transverse trunks. According to the state of contraction of the muscular system, these longitudinal trunks and cross branches appear sometimes straight and sometimes bent in a wavy or zigzag manner: their breadth also presents considerable variation, so that the power of contraction has been ascribed to their walls. The longitudinal trunks only serve as the efferent ducts of a system of very fine vessels which ramify throughout the whole parenchyma and receive numerous long tubes: the latter begin in the parenchyma with closed funnels, which contain a vibratile ciliated lappet (fig. 264). In many cases, as in the *Ligulidæ* and *Caryophyllæus*, these longitudinal trunks are broken up into numerous longitudinal vessels, which are connected by transverse anastomoses. In other cases, on the other hand, the two ventral vessels are enlarged at the cost of the two dorsal, which may entirely atrophy. The external opening of the excretory system is, as a rule, placed at the


FIG. 264.—A portion of the excretory system of *Caryophyllæus mutabilis* (after Pintner). *Wb*, Ciliated funnels with the nucleus of the cell belonging to them.

* Compare Th. Pintner, "Untersuchungen über den Bau des Bandwurmkörpers," Wien, 1880.

posterior end of the body, *i.e.*, at the hind end of the last segment, in which a small vesicle with an external opening receives the longitudinal trunks. According to the observations of Leuckart on *Tænia cucumerina*, the posterior transverse canals in the segments immediately preceding the last become, by their gradual shortening and the approach of the longitudinal trunks, transformed into the vesicle, which acquires an external opening when the segment behind it is detached. In rare cases the excretory system possesses additional openings in the anterior part of the body behind the suckers.

The *generative apparatus* is also divided into segments which correspond to the proglottides. Each proglottis possesses its own

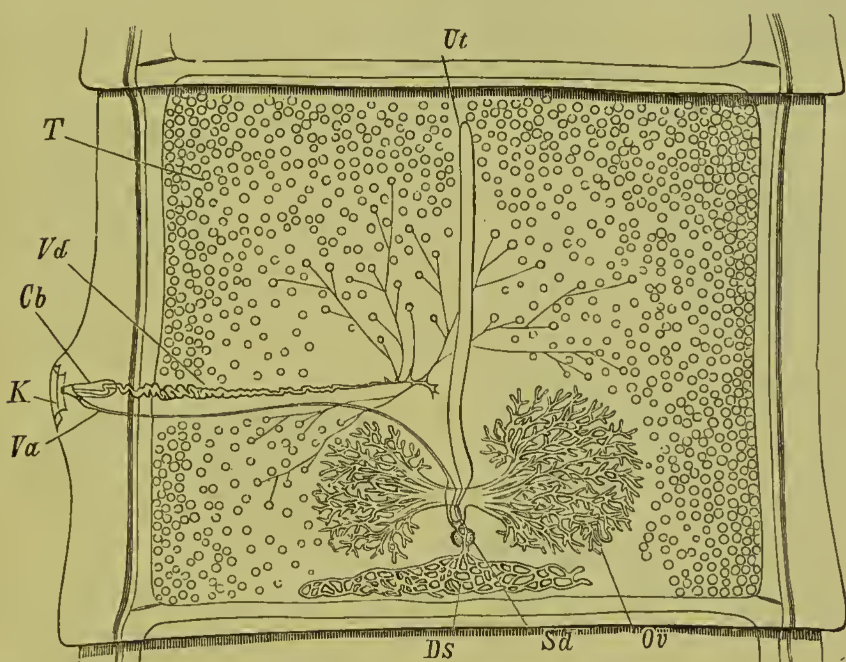



FIG. 265.—Proglottis of *Tænia mediocanellata*, with male and female organs (after Sommer). *Ov*, ovary; *DS*, yolk gland (vitellarium); *Sd*, shell gland; *Ut*, uterus; *T*, testes; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Cb*, pouch of the cirrus; *K*, generative cloaca; *Va*, vagina.

male and female generative organs, and can therefore, when separated, be considered as a sexual individual of a lower order. The male apparatus consists of numerous pear-shaped vesicles, the testes (fig. 265, *T*), which are situated upon the dorsal side, and their vasa efferentia open into a common efferent duct (*vas deferens*). The coiled end of this duct lies in a muscular pouch (*cirrus sheath*), whence it can be protruded through the genital opening as the so-called cirrus. This cirrus is frequently beset with spines which are directed backwards, and serves as a copulatory organ. The female generative organs consist of *ovary*, *yolk gland*, *shell gland*, *uterus*, *receptaculum*, and *vagina*. The vagina and vas deferens usually open into a common genital cloaca, which lies either on the ventral surface of the segment (*Bothriocepalus*), or on the lateral margin (*Tænia*) (fig. 265). In the last case it is placed alternately on the right and on the left side. Nevertheless it may happen that the two genital openings are widely separate, the male opening being placed at the side, the female on the surface of the segment. As the segments increase in size and become further removed from the head, the contained generative organs gradually reach maturity in such a way that the male generative organs arrive at maturity rather earlier than the female.

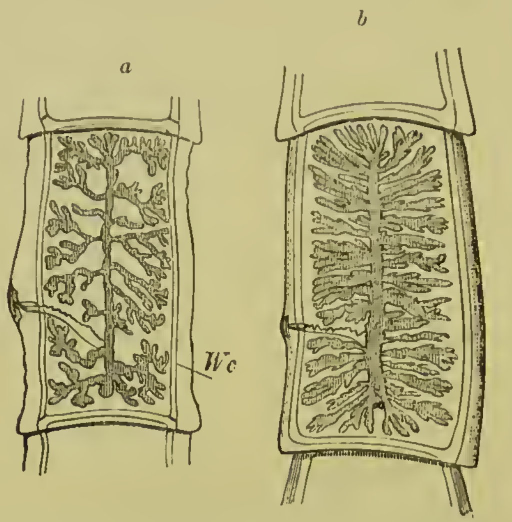


FIG. 266.—Ripe proglottides ready to separate. *a*, of *Tænia solium*; *b*, of *Tænia mediocanellata*; *Wc*, watervascular (excretory) canal.

As soon as the male elements are mature, copulation takes place, and the receptaculum seminis is filled with sperm, and then only do the female generative organs reach maturity. The ova are fertilized and pass into the uterus, which then assumes its characteristic form and size. As the uterus becomes distended, the testes and then the ovaries and vitellaria are more or less completely absorbed (fig. 266). The posterior proglottides, viz., those which are ready for separation, have alone undergone full development, and the eggs in their uterus often contain completely developed embryos. Accordingly we can recognize in a continuous series of the segments the course of development passed through by the sexual organs and products in their origin and gradual progress towards maturity. The number of segments between that with the first trace of the generative organs

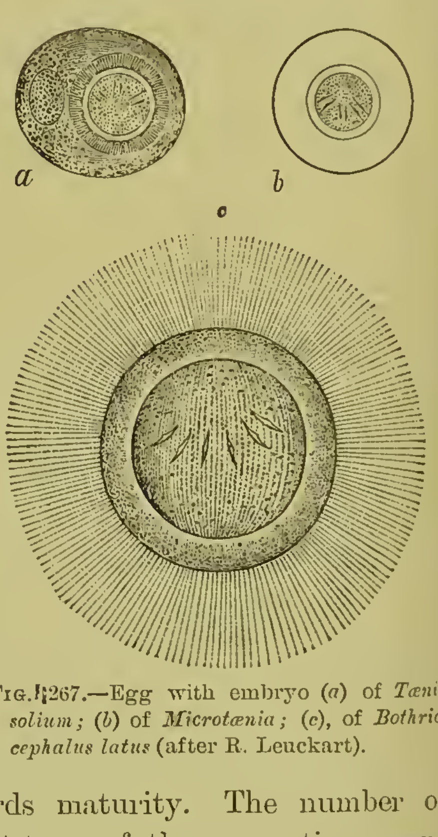


FIG. 267.—Egg with embryo (*a*) of *Tænia solium*; (*b*) of *Microtænia*; (*c*), of *Bothriocephalus latus* (after R. Leuckart).

and the first proglottis with fully developed organs gives us an expression for the number of stages through which each segment has to pass. The tape-worms are oviparous; either the embryo develops within the egg-shell in the body of the mother, or the development takes place outside the proglottis, for example in water (*Bothriocephalus*).

The eggs of the *Cestoda* are round or oval in shape and of small size. Their envelope is either simple or composed of numerous thin membranes, or else forms a thick and strong capsule, which in *Tænia* is formed of densely packed rods united by a connecting substance, and presents in consequence a granular appearance. In many cases the development of the embryo coincides with that of the egg-shell, so that the egg at the moment that it is laid contains a

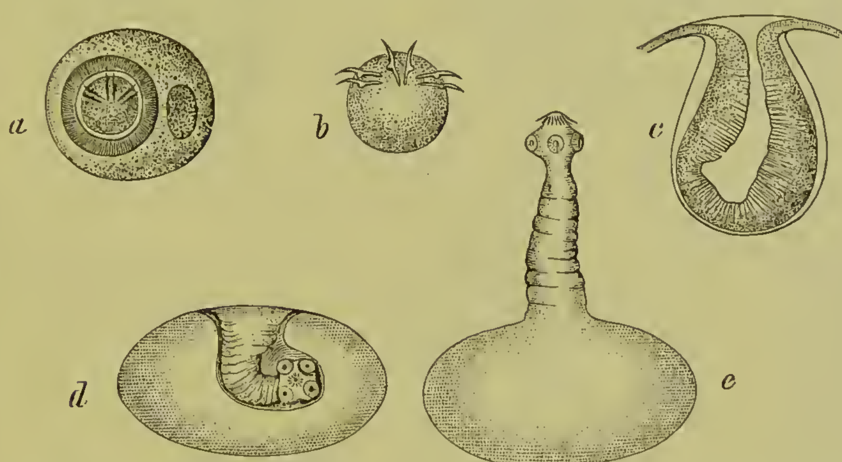



FIG. 268.—Stages in the development of *Tænia solium* to the *Cysticercus* stage (partly after R. Leuckart). *a*, Egg with embryo. *b*, Tree embryo. *c*, Rudiment of the head as a hollow papilla on the wall of the vesicle. *d*, Bladder-worm with retracted head. *e*, The same with protruded head, magnified about four times.

complete embryo with six, or more rarely, four hooks. In *Bothriocephalus* the development takes place outside the proglottis during the long period that the egg passes in water, and the embryo leaves the egg as a ciliated larva (fig. 267, *c*). The development of the embryo into the tape-worm probably never takes place directly in the same medium in the intestine of the original host. As a rule there is a complicated metamorphosis, which is sometimes (*Echinococcus*, *Cœnurus*) connected with alternation of generations; the successive stages live in different localities, and usually find the conditions necessary to their development in different species of animals, between which they migrate, partly actively and partly passively. The eggs usually leave the intestine of the host with the proglottis, and are deposited on dunghills, on plants, or in the water, and thence pass in the food into the stomach usually of herbivorous or omnivorous animals. As soon as the egg membranes are digested or burst by the action of the juices of the stomach of the new host, the embryos which have been thus set free bore their way into the gastric or intestinal vessels by means of their six (rarely four) hooks, the points of which can be approached and removed from one another over the periphery of the small globular embryonic body. When they are once within the vascular system,

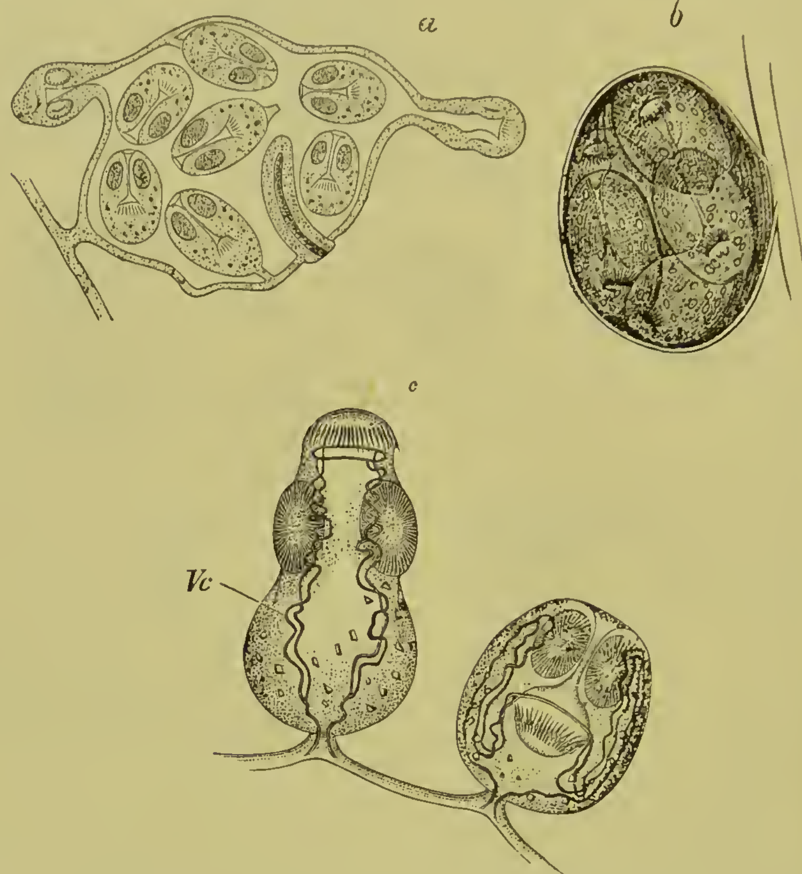



FIG. 269.—*a*, Brood-capsule of *Echinococcus* with developing heads (after R. Leuckart). *b*, Brood-capsule of *Echinococcus* (after G. Wagener). *c*, Heads of *Echinococcus* still connected with the wall of the brood-capsule—one is evaginated; *Vc*, excretory canals.

they are no doubt carried along passively by the current of blood, and transported by a longer or shorter route into the capillaries of the different organs, as the liver, lungs, muscles, brain, etc. After losing their hooks, they usually become enveloped by a cyst of connective tissue, and grow into large vesicles with liquid contents and a contractile wall (fig. 268). The vesicle gradually becomes a *cystic* or *bladder worm* by the formation of one (*Cysticercus**) or

* Exceptionally two or more heads are found in some Cysticercus forms.

several (*Cœnurus*) hollow buds, which are developed from the walls and project into the interior of the vesicle (fig. 268, *c*). The armature of the tape-worm head (suckers and double circle of hooks) is formed on the inside and at the bottom of this invagination of the wall of the vesicle (fig. 268, *d*). When these hollow buds are evaginated so as to form external appendages of the vesicle, they present the form and armature of the Cestode head, as well as a more or less developed neck, which presents even at this stage traces of segments (fig. 268, *e*). In some cases (*Echinococcus*) the irregularly shaped maternal vesicle produces from its internal walls one or two generations* of secondary vesicles which project into it; and the Cestode heads originate in special small brood-capsules on these secondary vesicles (fig. 269, *a*). In such cases the number of tape-worms which arise from one embryo is naturally enormous, and the parent vesicle may reach a very considerable size, being sometimes as large as a man's head. In consequence of this enormous growth the vesicles frequently obtain an irregular shape; while on the other hand, the tape-worms which are developed from them remain very small, and carry, as a rule, only one ripe proglottis (fig. 270).

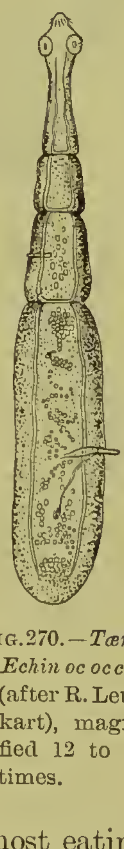


FIG. 270.—*Tænia Echinococcus* (after R. Leuckart), magnified 12 to 15 times.

So long as the tape-worm head (*scolex*) remains attached to the body of the bladder-worm and in the host of the latter, it never develops into a sexually mature tape-worm; although in many cases it grows to a considerable length (*Cysticercus fasciolaris* of the house-mouse). The bladder-worm must enter the alimentary canal of another animal before the head (*scolex*) can, after separation from the body of the bladder-worm, develop into the sexually mature tape-worm. This transportation is effected passively, the new host eating the flesh or organs of the animal infected with Cysticerci. The tape-worms, therefore, are principally found in the *Carnivora*, the *Insectivora*, and the *Omnivora*, which receive the bladder-worms in the flesh of the animals on which they feed. The vesicles are digested in the stomach, and the cestode head becomes free as a *scolex*. The latter is protected from the too intense action of the gastric juice by its calcareous concretions, and at once enters the small intestine, fastens

* In *Cysticerci* (*C. longicollis*, *tenuicollis*) also sterile daughter vesicles are sometimes budded off.

itself to the intestinal wall, and grows by gradual segmentation into a tape-worm. From the *Scolex* the chain of proglottides proceeds as the result of a growth in length accompanied by segmentation, a process which is to be looked upon as a form of asexual reproduction (budding in the direction of the long axis). Since, however, it is the body of the *Scolex* which undergoes growth and segmentation, it seems most natural to assume the individuality of the entire chain, and to subordinate to this the individuality of the proglottides. The development of the tape-worm is then to be explained as a metamorphosis, characterised by the individualization of certain stages of the development. It is only in those cases in which the young form produces a number of heads that the development can be explained as a case of alternation of generations.

FIG. 271.—*Cysticercoid* of *Tænia cucumerina*, magnified 60 times (after R. Leuckart).

The development of some tape-worms presents considerable simplifications. In the cysticercus stage the vesicle frequently diminishes to an excessively small appendage, and the Cysticercus becomes a cysticercoid form, in which one portion bearing the embryonic hooks is distinct from a larger part which represents the scolex (figs. 271, 272). In other cases the embryo becomes a Scolex directly without passing through a cystic stage, so that the Scolex stage is merely a late stage of the embryo (*Bothriocephalus*). The segments produced from the Scolex also show very different degrees of individuality, and finally are sometimes not developed at all. In the latter case (*Caryophyllæus*) the head and body cannot be sharply distinguished from one another, and represent only one single individual comparable to a Trematode and characterised by its single generative apparatus. Its development is to be looked upon as a metamorphosis completing itself in one individual.

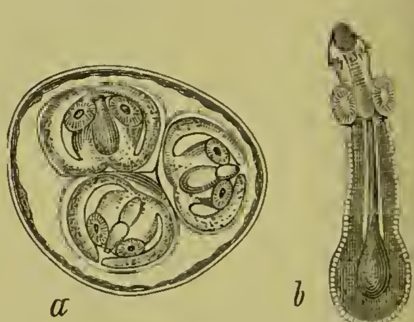



FIG. 272.—*Echinococcus*-like *Cysticercoid* from the body cavity of the Earthworm (after E. Metschnikoff). *a*, Brood-capsules with three Cysticercoids. *b*, Cysticercoid with evaginated head.

Fam. **Tæniadæ.** The armature of the head consists of four muscular suckers, to which is frequently added a single or double circle of hooks on the *rostellum*.

The proglottides have a marginal sexual opening. The vagina is usually long, separated from the uterus, and enlarged at the end to form a receptaculum seminis (fig. 265). The young stages are Cysticerci or Cysticercoids, rarely quite without caudal vesicle ; parasitic in warm and cold-blooded animals.

*Tænia* L. (*Cystotænia* R. Lkt). Development takes place with large vesicles. The heads arise from the embryonic vesicle itself.

*T. solium.* L. 2—3 metres long. The double circle of hooks is composed of 26 hooks. The ripe proglottides are 8—10 mm. long and 6—7 mm. broad ; the uterus has 7—10 dendritic branches. It lives in the human intestine. The Bladder-worms belonging to it (*Cysticercus cellulosæ*) live principally in the dermal cellular tissue and in the muscles of pigs, but also in the human body (muscles, eyes, brain), in which self-infection with them is possible if a *Tænia* is present in the digestive canal ; more rarely in the muscles of the Roe-deer, the Dog, and the Cat. In the human brain the *Cysticercus* acquires an elongated form, and sometimes does not produce a head.

*T. saginata* Goeze=*mediocanellata* Küchenm., in the intestine of Man, distinguished by the older helminthologists as a variety of *T. solium.* Head without circle of hooks or rostellum, but with four more powerful suckers. The Tapeworm reaches a length of four metres, and becomes much stronger and thicker. The mature proglottides are about 18 mm. long and 7—9 mm. broad. The uterus forms 20—35 dichotomous side branches. The *Cysticercus* lives in the muscles of the ox (fig. 273). It appears to be principally distributed in the warmer parts of the Old World, but is often found in great numbers in many places in the north.

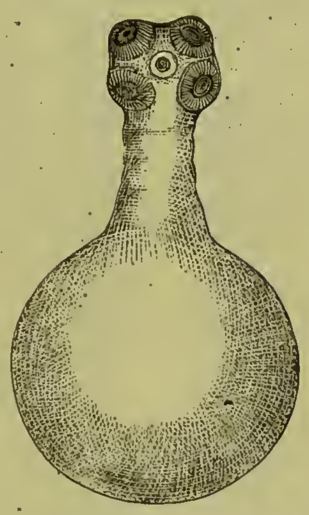


Fig. 273.—*Cysticercus* of *Tænia mediocanellata*, magnified about eight times. The head is protruded.

*T. serrata* Goeze, in the intestinal canal of the dog. The Cysticercus is known as *Cysticercus pisciformis* in the liver of the Hare and Rabbit. *T. crassicollis* Rud. in the Cat, with *Cysticercus fasciolaris* of the common mouse. *T. marginata* Batsch. of the Dog (butcher's dog) and Wolf with *Cysticercus tenuicollis* from Ruminants and Pigs, and occasionally in Man (*Cyst. visceralis*). *T. crassiceps* Rud. in the Fox with *Cysticercus longicollis* from the thoracic cavity of the Fieldmouse. *T. cœnurus* v. Sieb. in the intestine of the sheep-dog, with *Cœnurus cerebralis* in the brain of one year old sheep. The presence of *Cœnurus* in other places has been stated, as for instance in the body cavity of the Rabbit. *T. tenuicollis* Rud. in the intestine of the Weasel and the Pole-cat, with a *Cysticercus* which, according to Küchenmeister, lives in the hepatic ducts of the Field-mouse.

*Echinococcifer* Weinl. The heads bud on special brood-capsules, in such a way that their invagination is turned towards the lumen of the vesicle (fig. 269). *T. echinococcus* v. Sieb. (fig. 270) in the intestine of the dog, 3—4 mm. long, forming but few proglottides. The hooks on the head are numerous but small. Its Bladder-worm is distinguished by the great thickness of the stratified cuticula. It lives as *Echinococcus* principally in the liver and the lungs of Man (*E. hominis*) and of domestic animals (*E. veterinorum*). The first form is also distinguished as *E. altricipariens* on account of the frequent production of primary and secondary vesicles ; it usually reaches a very considerable size and has a very irregular shape; while that form which inhabits domestic animals, *E. scolicipariens*, more frequently retains the form of the simple vesicle. Finally these echinococcus cysts frequently remain sterile, in which case they are called *Acephalocysts*. Another and indeed pathological form is the so-called multilocular *Echinococcus*, which was for a long time taken for a colloid cancer. It is also found in Mammalia (in cattle), and here presents a confusing resemblance to a mass of tubercles. The echinococcus disease (*hydatid plague*) was widely spread in Iceland. This disease likewise seems endemic in many places in Australia.

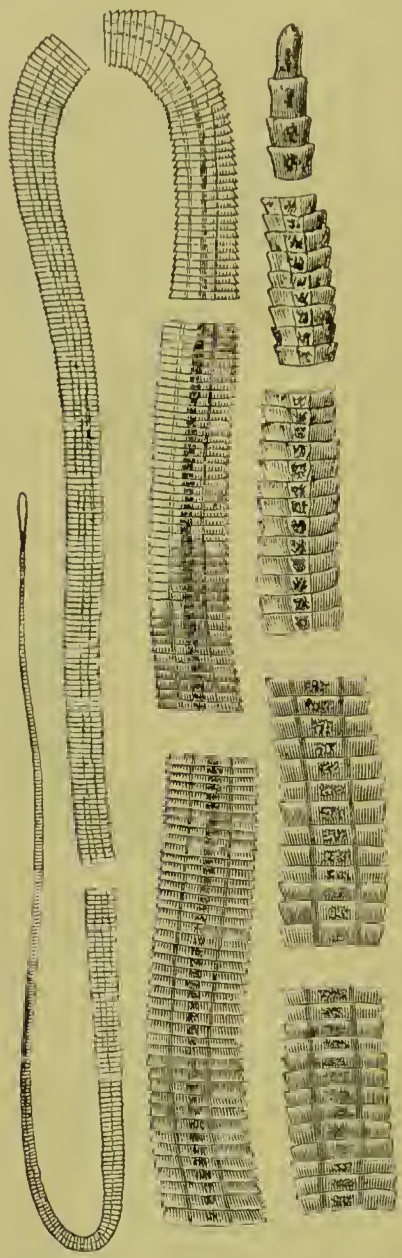


FIG. 274 *a.*—*Bothriocephalus latus* (after R. Leuckart).

*T.* (*Microtænia*). The *Cysticercoid* form is small, and has but little fluid in the small portion which corresponds to the vesicle. The head is small, but has a small club-shaped or proboscis-like rostellum, and is furnished with weak hooks. The eggs are provided with several membranes. The embryo is usually furnished with large hooks. The Cysticercoid stages live principally in Invertebrates (in Slugs, Insects, etc.), and more rarely in cold-blooded Vertebrates (the Tench). *T. cucumerina* Bloch, in the intestine of dogs (house dogs). The Cysticercoid is entirely without the caudal vesicle, and lives (according to Melnikoff and R. Leuckart) in the body cavity of the Dog-louse (*Trichodectes canis*). The infection with the Cysticercoids takes place when the dog swallows the parasites which are annoying him, while the parasites swallow the eggs contained in fæces adherent to the hair of the dog. Nearly allied is *T. elliptica* Batsch. in the intestine of the Cat, occasionally in that of Man. *T. nana* Bilh. v. Sieb. in the intestine of the Abyssinians, hardly an inch long. *T. flavopunctata* Weinl. in the human intestine (North America). The Cysticercoids of the Meal-worm are probably developed into tape-worms in the intestines of Mice and Rats.

In other partially unarmed *Tænias* the generative organs and development are as yet not accurately known; such are—*T. perfoliata* Goeze, and *T. plicata* Rud. in the horse; *T. pectinata* Goeze, in the hare; *T. dispar* Rud. in the frog; *T. expansa* Rud. in the ox.

Fam. **Bothriocephalidæ.** With only two suckers, which are weak and flat. The generative organs, as a rule, open upon the surface of the proglottis. The proglottides do not become detached singly. Hydatid stage represented by an encysted Scolex.

*Bothriocephalus* Brems. Segmented body. Head with two pits, without hooks. The genital openings are on the middle of the ventral surface. The young stage usually in fishes. *B. latus* Brems., the largest of the tape-worms parasitic in man, twenty-four to thirty feet in length, principally found in Russia, Poland, Switzerland, and South France. The sexually mature segments are broader than they are long (about 10—12 mm. broad and 3—5 mm. long). They do not become detached singly, but in groups (fig. 274). The segments of the hindermost portion of the body are, however, narrower and longer. The head is club-shaped, and is provided with two slit-like pits. The cortical parts of the lateral regions of the body contain a number of round masses of granules, the *yolk-glands* (fig. 275, *Dst*), the contents of which are poured into the shell glands (coiled glands) through the so-called yellow ducts.

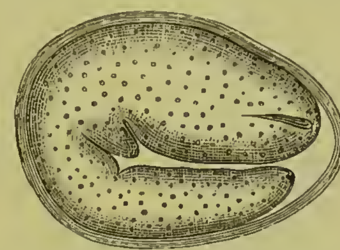


Fig. 274 *b*.—Larva of a Bothriocephalus from the Smelt (after R. Leuckart).

The genital openings lie close together, one behind the other, in the midst of the segment (fig. 275, *a*). The anterior and larger belongs to the male generative apparatus, and leads into the muscular terminal portion of the vas deferens, which is enclosed in the cirrus sheath and can be evaginated as the cirrus (fig. 275, *Cb*). The vas deferens just before its entrance into the cirrus pouch is dilated (fig. 275 *b*) to form a large muscular swelling (the vesicula seminalis?). It then becomes coiled, and passes in the direction

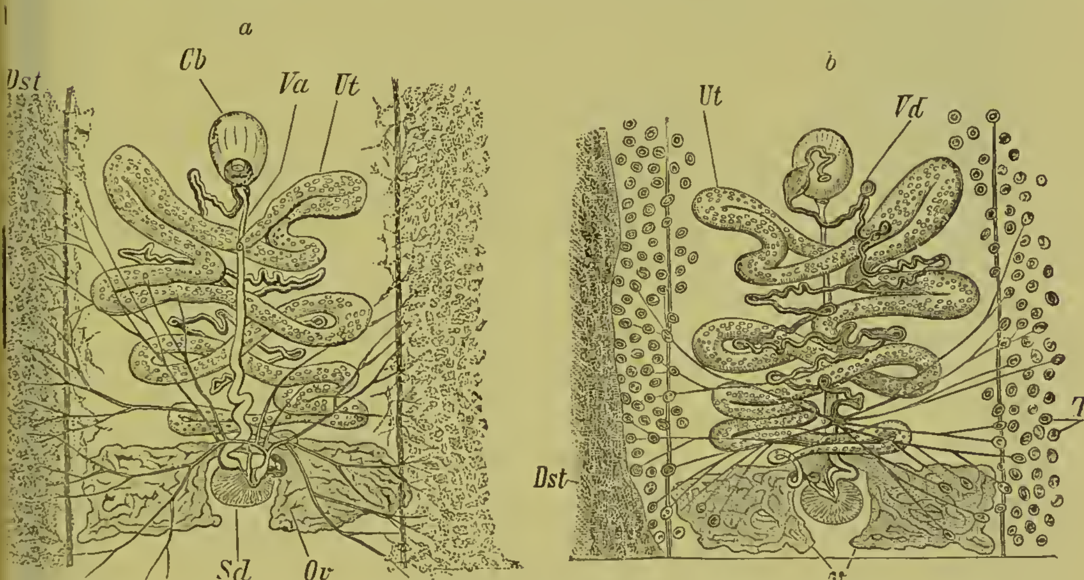



Fig. 275.—Generative organs of a sexually mature proglottis of *Bothriocephalus latus* (after Sommer and R. Leuckart); *a*, from the ventral surface, *b*, from the dorsal surface. *Ov* and *v*, ovary; *Ut*, uterus; *Sd*, shell gland; *Dst*, vitellarium (yolk gland); *Va*, vagina with opening; *T*, testis; *Cb*, pouch of the cirrus; *Vd*, vas deferens.

of the long axis of the segment on the dorsal surface and divides into two side branches. These receive the efferent canals of the delicate testicular sacs, which occupy the lateral parts of the middle layer (*T*). The female genital opening (fig. 275 *a*) leads into a vagina (*Va*) situated behind the pouch of the cirrus, and frequently filled with semen. This vagina runs as a tolerably straight median canal on the ventral surface, and opens by a short, narrow tube into the oviduct. The vagina also functions as a *receptaculum seminis*. There is yet a third opening (fig. 275, *a*), situated at some distance behind the other two; this is the opening of the tubular uterus (*Ut*), the convolutions of which give rise to a peculiar rosette-shaped figure in the midst of the segment (*Wappenlilie* Pallas). Close to the hind end of the segment the ducts of the yolk-glands (*Dst*) and of the ovaries (*Ov*) unite with each other and open into the uterus; the cells of the shell-gland (*Sd*) surround and open into the point of junction of these structures. Behind the uterus, and partly among its posterior lateral horns, lie the so-called coiled glands; and at its sides are the so-called lateral glands (Eschricht). The latter are, according to Eschricht, the ovaries or germaria (formerly held by Leuckart to be the vitellaria). The coiled glands (Leuckart's ovaries), an aggregation of pear-shaped cells, were considered by Stieda, with whom Landois and Sommer are in accord, to be a shell gland (fig. 275).

The ova are for the most part developed in water, and escape from the upper pole of the egg-shell through a lid-like valve. The escaped embryo is covered with cilia, by means of which it swims about for a long time. Hence it is probable that the later stages of development take place in an aquatic animal. It is unknown how and in what host the embryo with six hooks becomes a Scolex; and the question how this tape-worm gets into the human body—in spite of the researches of Knoch, who maintained that they appeared there directly and without the intervention of an intermediate host—is still undecided. *B. cordatus* Lkt. With large, heart-shaped head, without a filiform neck; with numerous deposits of calcareous bodies in the parenchyma. It attains a length of about three feet and lives in the intestines of man and of the dog in Greenland.

*Schistocephalus* Crepl. Head split, with a sucker on each side. The body of the cestoid form is segmented. *S. solidus* Crepl. Lives in the body cavity of the stickleback, escapes into the water, and becomes sexually adult in the intestine of water-birds. *Triænophorus* Rud. Head not distinct, with two weak suckers and with two pairs of tridentate hooks. The body has no external segmentation. The generative openings are marginal. *T. nodulosus* Rud. In the intestine of the pike. Asexual encysted form in the liver of *Cyprinus*.

Fam. **Ligulidæ** (*Pseudophyllidæ*). Without real suckers. Hooks are either present or absent. The Cestoid has no segmentation, but the generative organs are repeated. They live in the body cavity of Teleosteans and in the intestine of birds. *Ligula* Bloch. Body band-shaped and unsegmented. *L. simplicissima* Rud., in the body cavity of fishes and in the intestine of aquatic birds. *L. tuba* v. Sieb., in the intestine of the Tench.

The families of the **Tetrarhynchidæ** (*Tetrarhynchus lingualis*, Cuv., passes its young stages in Soles, and is matured in the intestine of Rays and Dog-fish), and **Tetraphyllidæ** (*Echineibothrium minimum* van Ben.) are allied here.

Fam. **Caryophyllæidæ.** Body elongated and unsegmented. The anterior margin is plicated. There are no hooks, and there are eight sinuous longitudinal canals of the excretory system. Generative organs single. The development is a simplified metamorphosis. *Caryophyllæus mutabilis* Rud., in the intestine of *Cyprinoids*. The young form possibly lives in *Tubifex rivulorum*, if the Helminth observed by d'Udekem was the same. In this worm, however, there lives another parasite, which was observed by Ratzel and has recently been more closely investigated by R. Leuckart, who has shown that it is a sexually mature Cestoid still fixed by an appendage bearing the embryonic hooks. *Archigetes Sieboldii* Lkt. With two weak suckers and a caudal appendage.

Order 4.—NEMERTINI* = RHYNCHOCŒLA.

*Elongated, frequently band-shaped Platyhelminthes, with straight alimentary canal opening by an anus, and with a separate protrusible proboscis. Usually with two ciliated pits in the cephalic region. The sexes are separate.*

The *Nemertines* are distinguished not only by their elongated form, but also by their considerable size and high organization. Thick layers of muscles, traversed by connective tissue, are spread beneath the integument, which contains pigment as well as flask-shaped mucous glands. The external layer of longitudinal muscles, strongly developed in the *Anopla*, is wanting in the *Enopla* (Nemertines, the proboscis of which is armed with stylets), in which group there is only an outer layer of circular muscles and an inner layer of longitudinal muscles. A long tubular protrusible proboscis, which is sometimes armed with stylet-shaped rods, is always found at the anterior end of the body above the buccal cavity, and projects through a special præoral opening (fig. 276), and can be retracted into a special muscular sheath separate from the body cavity. At the bottom of the principal portion of the proboscis, there is in many *Nemertines* (Enopla) a large spine, which is directed forwards, and at its sides numerous small secondary spines in pouches. The posterior glandular portion of the proboscis, to which retractor muscles are attached, is, according to Claparède, to be regarded as a poison apparatus. When the proboscis is pro-

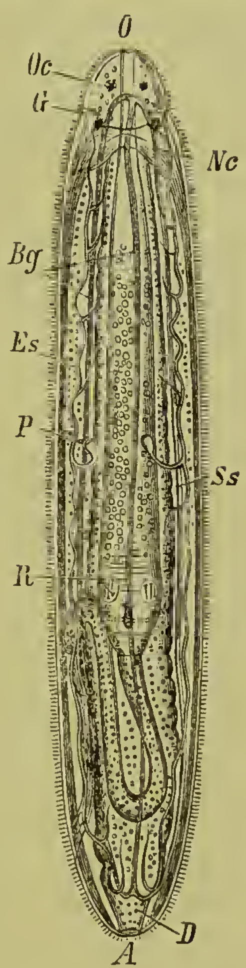



FIG. 276. — *Tetrastemma obscurum* (after M. Schultze). Young specimen about 3 lines in length; *O*, mouth; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus; *Bg*, blood vessels; *R*, proboscis armed with stylet; *Ex*, lateral trunks of the excretory system; *P*, excretory pore; *G*, ciliated pit; *Nc*, nerve centre; *Ss*, lateral nerve trunks; *Oc*, eyes.

* A. de Quatrefages, "Mémoire sur la famille des Némertines," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*. Ser. 3, Tom. VI., 1846. McIntosh, "On the Structure of the British Nemerteans," *Transact. Edinb. Royal Soc.*, Tom XXV., 1 & 2. Barrois, "Mémoire sur l'Embryologie des Némertes," Paris, 1877. Hubrecht, "Untersuchungen über Nemertinen, etc.," *Niederl. Archiv.*, Tom. II.

truded, it is inverted like the finger of a glove, so that the blind end at which the spines are placed becomes the extreme front end of the protruded proboscis.

The *brain* attains a considerable development. Its two halves are connected by a double commissure which embraces the proboscis, and in them several lobes, usually a dorsal and ventral, may be distinguished. The two ventral lobes are produced into the two lateral nerve trunks, which in certain cases (*Oerstedtia*) may approach each other on the ventral surface. The nerve trunks contain not only fibres but also a superficial layer of ganglion cells, which may give rise to ganglion-like enlargements at the points of exit of the nerve branches. In the embryos of *Prosorochmus Claparèdii* the nerve trunks are said to end in an enlargement. In the cephalic region there are two strongly ciliated depressions known as the cephalic slits, beneath which special lateral organs, supplied with nerves from the brain or it may be posterior lobes of the brain itself, are placed. These structures are probably sense organs. The cephalic slits were formerly erroneously taken for the openings of respiratory organs. Eyes are widely distributed, and usually consist of simple pigment spots which rarely contain refractive bodies. Exceptionally, as in *Oerstedtia pallida*, two otolithic vesicles are found on the brain.

The *Nemertines*, unlike all other *Platyhelminthes*, possess a blood-vascular system. This consists of two sinuous lateral vessels in which the blood flows from before backwards, and a straight dorsal vessel in which the blood flows in the reverse direction. This latter is connected with the ventral vessel at the posterior end of the body and in the region of the brain by wide loops, and in the rest of its course by numerous narrower transverse anastomoses. These vessels lie in the body cavity and have contractile walls. The blood is usually colourless, but in some species it is red. In *Amphiporus splendens*, *Borlasia splendida*, the red colour (hæmoglobin) is contained in the oval disc-shaped blood corpuscles.

The Nemertines are, with some few exceptions (*Borlasia hermaphroditica*), diœcious. The two kinds of generative organs have the same structure, and are sacs filled with ova or spermatozoa lying in the lateral portions of the body between the pouches of the intestine, and opening to the exterior by paired openings in the body wall. The ova, when laid, frequently remain connected by a gelatinous substance, and are deposited in irregular masses or in strings, from the middle of which the animal creeps out, like the leech out of its cocoon. Some forms, as *Prosorochmus Claparèdii* and *Tetrastemma obscurum*, are viviparous.

Some of the Anopla develop with a metamorphosis. The larva is ciliated and may pass through a free-swimming stage, in which case it is known as the *Pilidium*, or it may be without such a stage (*Type of Desor*). In both cases the perfect worm is developed within the skin of the ciliated larva.

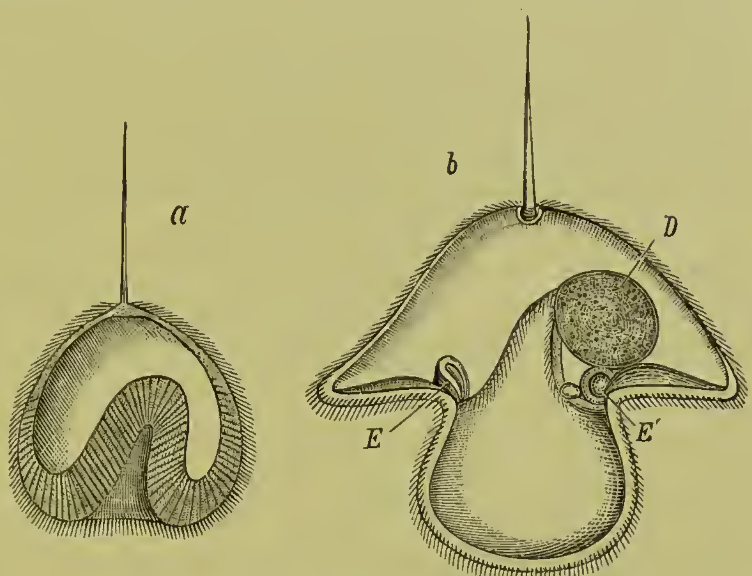


Fig. 277.—*Pilidium* (after E. Metschnikoff). *a*, free swimming larva with invaginated cavity; *b*, later stage, helmet-shaped; *E*, *E′* the two pairs of ectodermal invaginations; *D*, alimentary canal.

The Pilidium larva is helmet-shaped, and was formerly described as the species of a supposed independent genus, Pilidium, and presents many analogies to the Echinoderm larva. In the case of the Pilidium, the segmentation is regular, and results in the formation of a spherical ciliated embryo, which is hatched and becomes a free-swimming larva; the archenteron is then formed by invagination; and at the side of the embryo, opposite the blastopore, a long flagellum is developed (fig. 277, *a*). On each side of the mouth a broad lobe grows out, the edges of which are fringed with cilia (fig. 277, *b*).

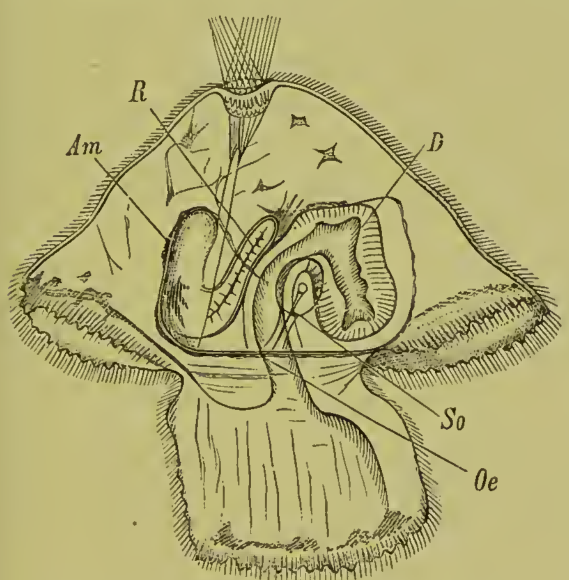


Fig. 278.—Later stage of *Pilidium*, with tuft of cilia and enclosed Nemertine (after Bütschli); *Oe*, œsophagus; *D*, alimentary canal; *Am*, amnion; *R*, rudimentary proboscis of the Nemertine; *So*, lateral pit.

Two pairs of invaginations of the ectoderm now make their appearance, forming the first rudiment of the Nemertine body. The four discs so formed fuse together and give rise to a ventral germinal plate, which gradually grows round the alimentary canal of the Pilidium to form the skin of the future Nemertine. The proboscis arises as an invagination of the anterior end of the germinal plate (fig. 278). The young Nemertine subsequently breaks through the larval skin.

The Nemertines live principally in the sea, under stones in the mud, but the smaller species swim about freely. There are also forms which live on the land, as well as pelagic forms. Certain species form tubes and passages, which are lined with a slimy secretion. The food of the larger species principally consists of tubicolous worms, which they extract from their habitations by means of the proboscis. There are, however, parasitic Nemertines which infest *Crustacea* or live on the mantle and gills of *Mollusca*. In this case they are, like the *Hirudinea*, furnished with a posterior sucker (*Malacobdella*). The Nemertines are distinguished by their reproductive capacity and by their tenacity of life. Mutilated parts are quickly regenerated, and the parts into which certain species readily break are said to have the capacity, under favourable conditions, of developing into new animals.

1. Sub-order: **Enopla.**—The proboscis is armed with stylets. The short, often funnel-shaped cephalic slits are connected with lateral organs, which correspond to the posterior cerebral lobes of the *Anopla*. In the brain the upper lobes are slightly elongated posteriorly leaving the ventral lobes, from which the lateral nerves arise, quite free. Development takes place without metamorphosis.

Fam. **Amphiporidæ.** The ganglia are more rounded, the lateral nerve trunks are placed inside the dermal muscles. The mouth is on the ventral surface near the anterior end of the body, in front of the commissures between the ganglia. The lateral organs are separated from the brain and connected with it by fibres; they contain a narrow water canal. *Amphiporus lactifloreus* Johnst. Lives under stones, and is distributed from the North Seas to the Mediterranean, 3—4 in. long. *A. spectabilis* Quatr. *Borlasia splendida* Kef., Mediterranean, and Adriatic. *Tetrastemma obscurum* M. Sch. Viviparous: Baltic. *T. agricola* Will. Suhm., terrestrial. *Nemertes gracilis* Johnst.

2. Sub-order: **Anopla.**—The proboscis is unarmed. The long cephalic slits occupy the whole side, or the anterior part of the head, and lead into the lateral organs, which are direct processes of the upper lobes of the brain. Development frequently by means of ciliated larvæ.

Fam. **Lineidæ.** Ganglion elongated. The head has deep slits on either side. *Lineus marinus* Mont., *L. longissimus* Sim. (sea long-worm, *Borlasia anglica* Oerst., *Nemertes Borlasii* Cuv.), grows to a length of 15 feet and more. English coast. *Cerebratulus marginatus* = *Meckelia somatotomus* F.S. Lkt., Adriatic and Mediterranean. *Micrura fasciolata* Ehrbg., North Seas to the Adriatic.

Fam. **Cephalotrichidæ.** Cephalic slits and lateral organs are wanting. Head not distinct, very long and pointed. *Cephalothrix bioculata* Oerst. Sund.

*Malacobdella grossa* O. Fr. Müll. Body broad and flat, with posterior sucker. Is parasitic in the mantle cavity of various Mollusca, as *Mya*, *Cyprina*, etc.

## CLASS II.—NEMATHELMINTHES.

*Round worms with tubular or filiform bodies. The cuticle is frequently ringed. The anterior pole is either armed with hooks or provided with papillæ. The sexes are separate.*

The unsegmented body is rounded, more or less elongated, tubular or filiform, and both ends are, as a rule, tapered off. Appendages are always wanting, as are, with few exceptions, movable bristles. On the other hand, special organs for attack and attachment, such as teeth and hooks, are not unfrequently present on the anterior end of the body; and in some cases small suckers, which serve for attachment during copulation, may be developed on the ventral surface. As a rule, the integument possesses a cuticular layer of relatively considerable thickness, and a well developed muscular layer, which permits not only of the body being knotted, curved, and bent, but, in the thin filiform *Nematoda*, of undulatory movements. The body cavity is enclosed by the muscular body wall, and contains the blood fluid and the digestive and generative organs. *Blood vessels* and *respiratory organs* are wanting. A *nervous system* is, however, always present. Of *sense organs* simple eyes are not unfrequently present in the free living forms. The sense of touch is probably distributed all over the surface of the body, particularly on the anterior end, especially when papillæ and lip-like prominences or bristles are found on it. While in the *Acanthocephala* mouth and alimentary canal are completely absent, the *Nematoda* possess a mouth placed at the anterior pole of the body, an œsophagus, and an elongated straight digestive canal, which usually opens by the anus on the ventral surface near the posterior end of the body. The *excretory organs* have various forms, and always differ considerably from those of the *Platodes*. In the *Nematoda* they consist of paired canals, which open by a common pore and lie in the so-called lateral lines. In the *Acanthoce-*

*phala* they are branching subcutaneous canals. With a few exceptions the *Nemathelminthes* have separated sexes, and develop directly without metamorphosis. The larvæ and sexual animals are not unfrequently distributed in two different hosts.

The majority of the *Nemathelminthes* are parasites either during the whole period of their life or at different stages. There are, however, also free living forms which often show the closest relationship to the parasitic members of the group.

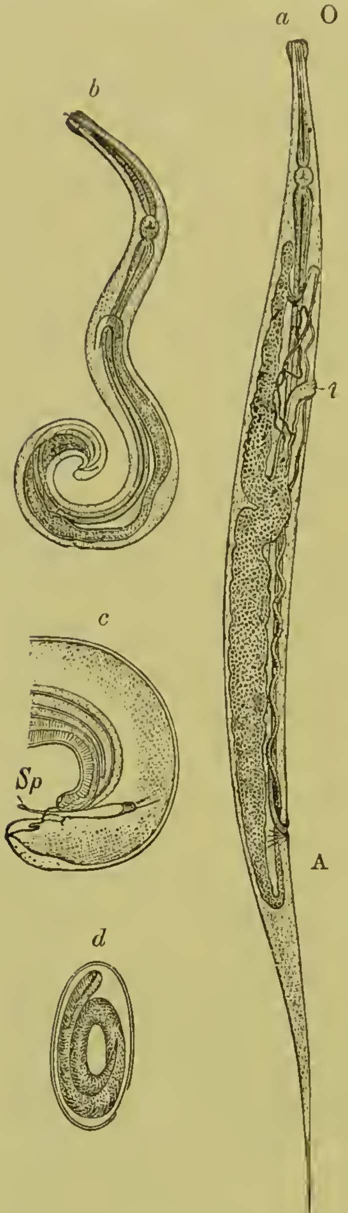



FIG. 279.—*Oxyuris vermicularis* (after R. Leuckart). *a*, female; *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *V*, genital opening; *b*, male with curved posterior end; *c*, the latter enlarged; *Sp*, spiculum; *d*, egg with enclosed embryo.

*Order* 1.—NEMATODA (THREAD-WORMS).*

*Nemathelminthes, with mouth and alimentary canal. They are principally parasites.*

The Nematodes possess an extremely elongated thread-like body, which may be provided with papillæ at the anterior pole in the region of the mouth, or with hooks and spines within the oral cavity. The mouth leads into a narrow œsophagus, which usually has thick muscular walls, a chitinous lining, and a triangular lumen, and is frequently dilated behind to a muscular bulb (pharynx). In certain genera (*Rhabditis, Oxyuris*), the chitinous lining of the pharynx is raised into ridges or tooth-like prominences, to which the

* Besides the older writings of Rudolphi. Bremser, Cloquet, Dujardin, compare Diesing, "Systema helminthum," 2 Bde Wien, 1850-51. Diesing, "Revision der Nematoden," *Wiener Sitzungsberichte*, 1860. Claparède, "De la formation et de la fécondation des œufs chez les vers Nematodes," Genève, 1856. A. Schneider. "Monographie der Nematoden," Berlin. 1866. R. Leuckart, "Untersuchungen über Trichina spiralis," Leipzig and Heidelberg, 1866, 2nd edition; also "Die menschlichen Parasiten," etc., Tom. II., Leipzig and Heidelberg, 1876. C. Claus. "Ueber Leptodera appendiculata," Marburg. 1868. O. Bütschli, "Untersuchungen über die beiden Nematoden der Periplaneta orientalis," *Zeitschr. für Wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXI., 1871. And "Beiträge zur Kenntniss des Nervensystems der Nematoden," *Archiv. für Mikr Anatomie*, Tom X.

radial muscles converge in the form of conical bundles. According to its function, the œsophagus is essentially a suctorial tube, which pumps in fluids, and by peristaltic action passes them on to the intestine. The intestine follows the pharynx, and opens by the anus not far from the hind end of the body on the ventral surface (fig. 279). Its walls are formed of cells and are non-muscular, except behind, where they have a special investment of muscular fibres which render the terminal portion contractile. Muscular fibres passing from the body wall to the wall of the rectum are also frequently present. In certain Nematodes the anus may be wanting (*Mermis*); and in *Gordius* even the alimentary canal undergoes degeneration.

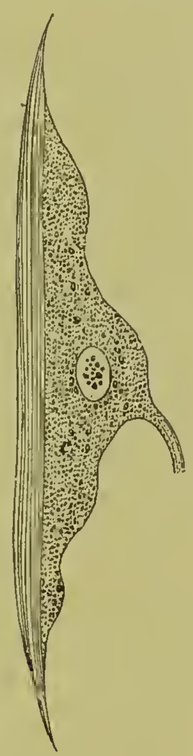


Fig. 280.—Muscle-cell of a *Nematode*.

Beneath the stiff cuticle, which is often transversely ringed, and is composed of several layers, lies a soft granular nucleated sub-cuticular layer (*hypodermis*), which is to be regarded as the matrix of the former. Beneath this lies the highly developed muscular layer, in which band-shaped or fusiform longitudinal muscles predominate. The surface of the body may present markings, as for instance polyhedric spaces and longitudinal ribs, also processes in the form of tubercles, spines,* and hairs. Ecdyses, *i.e.*, shedding the cuticular layer, seem only to occur in the young forms. The muscles are each composed of a single cell, in which two parts are distinguishable,—a clear, sometimes a granular protoplasmic portion (medullary substance), which projects into the body cavity and is often prolonged into processes; and an external fibrillated layer (fig. 280). The Nematodes may be distinguished as *Meromyaria* or *Polymyaria*, according to the arrangement of their muscular system. In the Meromyaria the number of muscle cells (which are arranged according to definite laws) in the cross section is small (eight), while in the Polymyaria their number is considerable. In the latter the muscle cells are often connected together by transverse processes of the medullary substance, which unite on the so-called median lines to form a longitudinal cord.

* There may also be prominences of various kinds, and even in some cases a complete covering of spines (*Cheiracanthus* Dies = *Gnathostoma* Ow., *Ch. hispidum* Fedsch.)

In almost every case, with the exception of *Gordius*, two lateral regions remain free from muscle and form the so-called *lateral lines* or *regions*, which may equal in breadth the neighbouring muscular regions. These lateral regions are formed of a finely granular nucleated substance, and enclose a clear vessel containing granules. This vessel is connected with that of the opposite side in the anterior part of the body, and the two open by a common transverse slit, the *vascular pore*, on the ventral surface in the median line. The lateral lines have the value, both as regards position and structure, of *excretory organs*. Median lines (*dorsal* and *ventral*), accessory median lines (sub-median lines), the latter being placed between the principal median line and the lateral line, are also to be distinguished. The so-called ventral cord of *Gordius*, which may be compared to the median line and has perhaps the significance of an elastic rod, is very large. Cutaneous glands, in the form of unicellular glands, have been observed principally in the region of the œsophagus and in the tail.

The **nervous system**, owing to the difficulty which its investigation offers, has only been satisfactorily recognised in a few forms. It consists of a nerve ring surrounding the œsophagus, and sending off posteriorly two and anteriorly six nerve trunks (*Ascaris megalocephala*). The posterior trunks run in the dorsal and ventral lines (*N. dorsalis, ventralis*), to the extremity of the tail; while of the six anterior nerves, two run in the lateral lines (*N. laterales*), four in the interspaces between the lateral and median lines (*N. submediani*), and supply the papillæ around the mouth. The ganglion cells lie partly near, in front of and behind the nerve ring, partly on the fibrous cords themselves, and are arranged in groups which can be distinguished as ventral, dorsal, and lateral ganglia. There are in addition groups of ganglion cells in the median lines and in the lateral lines in the caudal region.

As **sense organs** we must mention the eyes found in the free-living *Nematoda*, and the papillæ and tactile hairs found principally in the neighbourhood of the mouth. Each papilla is supplied by one nerve fibre, which is swollen to a knob and forms the axis of the papilla.

[The Nematoda possess a body cavity, but are without any trace of a vascular system.]

**Generative organs.** The Nematodes are diœcious (with exception of the hermaphrodite *Pelodytes*, and of the *Rhabdonema*

(*Ascaris*) *nigrovenosum*, which produces first spermatozoa and later ova). The males are characterised by their smaller size, and by the posterior end of the body being generally curved. Both kinds of generative organs consist of single or paired and often much coiled tubes, at the upper end of which the generative products are developed, the lower ends representing the efferent ducts and receptacula of the generative products. The usually paired ovarian tubes, at the upper ends of which the ova arise, terminate in a short vagina, which opens on the ventral surface, rarely near the posterior end of the body. The male generative apparatus, which contains hat-shaped spermatozoa, is almost invariably represented by an unpaired tube, and usually opens on the ventral surface near the posterior end of the body in a common opening with the intestine. As a rule, the common cloacal portion contains two pointed chitinous rods, the so-called *spicula*, in a pouch-like invagination. These spicula can be protruded and retracted by a special muscular apparatus, and serve to fasten the male body to the female during copulation. In many cases (*Strongylidæ*) an umbrella-like bursa is added, or the terminal portion of the cloaca can be protruded like a penis (*Trichina*); in this case the cloacal aperture lies almost at the extreme end but is still ventral (*Acrophalli*). In the male papillæ are almost always present in the region of the posterior end of the body, and their number and arrangement afford important specific characters.

**Development.** The *Nematoda* for the most part lays eggs; it is only in rare cases that they bear living young. The eggs usually possess a hard shell and may be laid at different stages of the embryonic development or before it has begun. In the viviparous Nematodes the eggs lose their delicate membranes in the uterus of the mother (*Trichina*, *Filaria*). Fertilization takes place by the entry of a spermatozoon into the ovum, which is still without a membrane. The segmentation is equal, and leads to the formation of a kind of invaginate gastrula. From the two cell layers are developed the body wall and the alimentary canal. The embryo gradually assumes an elongated cylindrical form, and comes to lie rolled up in several coils within the shell. The excretory pore and the rudiments of generative organs, as well as a nerve ring, are present in the embryo, which is also provided with mouth and anus. The free development is a metamorphosis, usually complicated by the circumstance that it is not undergone in the habitat of the mother. The young stages or larvæ, probably of most Nematodes, have a different habitat to that of the sexual animal; the young and the adult Nematode being contained in different organs of the same or even of different animals. The larvæ live for the most part in parenchymatous organs, either free or encysted in a connective tissue capsule; the adults, on the contrary, live principally in the alimentary canal.

The embryo is almost invariably characterised by the special form of the oral and caudal extremities, but sometimes also by the possession of a boring tooth, or of a circle of spines (*Gordius*). Sooner or later the skin is shed, and the animal enters its second stage, which may often still be considered as a larval stage; repeated ecdyses precede the sexually adult stage.

The post-embryonic development of the Nematodes presents numerous modifications. In the simplest cases the embryo, while still enveloped in the egg membranes, is transported passively in the food (*Oxyuris vermicularis* and *Trichocephalus*). In many *Ascaridæ*—to judge by the species parasitic in the Cat—the embryos, which are provided with a boring tooth, first make their way into an intermediate host, by which they are transported into the intestine of the second host with the food or water.

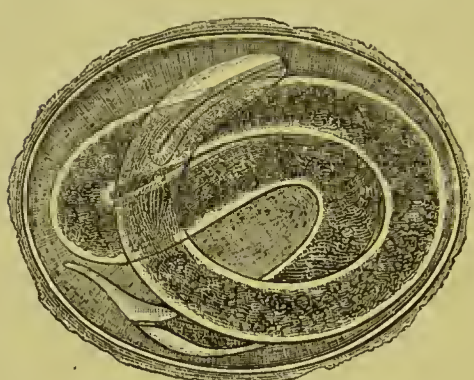


FIG. 281.—*Sclerostomum tetracanthum*, encysted (after R. Leuckart).

More frequently the young forms encyst within the intermediate host, and, enclosed in the cyst, are transferred into the stomach and intestine of the permanent host (fig. 281). For example, the embryos of *Spiroptera obtusa* of the Mouse, while still in the egg membranes, are taken with the food by the Meal-worm, in the body cavity of which they encyst. In the viviparous *Trichina spiralis* there is a modification of this mode of development inasmuch as the migration of the embryos and their development to the encysted form found in the muscles (muscle-trichina) take place in the same animal which contains the sexually mature intestinal *Trichinas*.

The development of the Nematode larvæ often makes a considerable advance within the intermediate host into which they have migrated. Thus, for instance, in *Cucullanus elegans*, the embryos migrate into the *Cyclops*, and in the body cavity of these small *Crustacea* undergo two ecdyses and essential alterations of form, obtaining at this early stage the characteristic oral capsule of the sexually adult stage, to which they only develop in the intestine of the Perch. According to Fedschenko,* a similar mode of development occurs in *Filaria medinensis.* The embryos pass into puddles of water, and migrate thence into the body cavity of the *Cyclopidæ*; and after casting their skin assume a form which, except for the absence of the oral capsule, resembles that of the larva of *Cucullanus.* After the expiration of two weeks there is another ecdysis, with which is connected the loss of the long tail. The later history is unknown. It has not yet

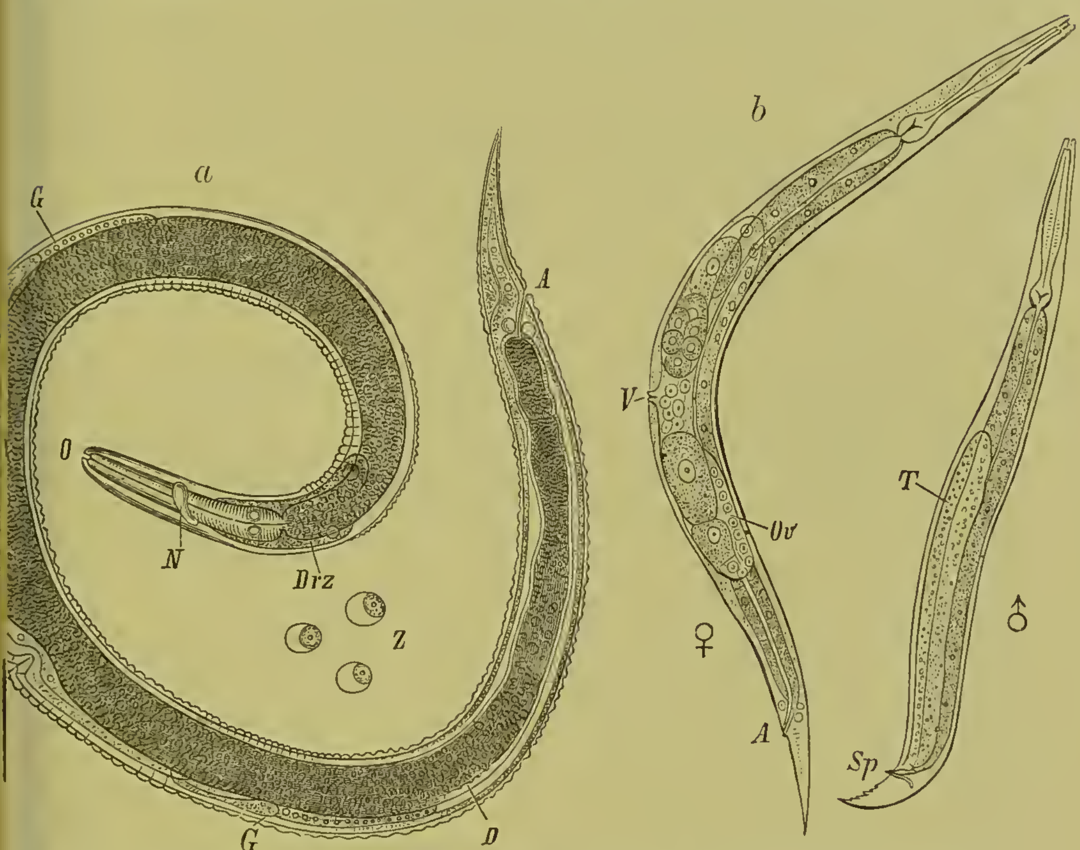



FIG. 282.—*a*, *Rhabdonema* (*Ascaris*) *nigrovenosum* of about 3·5 mm. in length in the stage of maturity of the male products; *G*, genital glands; *O*, mouth; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus; *N*, nerve-ring; *Drz*, glandular cells; *Z*, isolated spermatozoa. *b*, Male and female *Rhabditis* forms from about 1·5 mm. to 2 mm. long; *Ov*, ovary; *T*, testis; *V*, female genital opening; *Sp*, spicula.

been discovered whether the migration of the Filarian larva into the permanent host (Man, see p. 356) takes place with the body of the Cyclops, or independently after copulating in the free state.

The embryos of some *Nematoda* develop in damp muddy earth, after casting their skin, to small so-called *Rhabditis* forms with a double

* Compare Fedschenko, "Ueber den Bau und Entwicklung der Filaria medinensis," in the *Berichten der Freunde der Naturwissenschaften in Moskau*, Tom VIII. and X.

enlargement of the œsophagus and with a pharynx armed with three teeth. They lead an independent life in this habitat, and finally migrate to lead a parasitic life within the permanent host, where, after several ecdyses and alterations of form, they attain the sexually mature condition. This mode of development occurs in *Dochmius trigonocephalus* from the intestine of the dog, and very probably in the nearly allied *D.* (*Ancylostomum*) *duodenalis* of man, and also in *Sclerostomum*.

The offspring of parasitic Nematodes may, however, attain sexual maturity in damp earth, as free *Rhabditis* forms, and represent a special generation of forms whose offspring again migrate and become parasites. Such a life history is a case of heterogamy. It occurs in *Rhabdonema nigrovenosum*, a parasite in the lungs of Batrachians. These parasites, which are about half to three-quarters of an inch long, all have the structure of females, but contain spermatozoa, which are produced (as in the viviparous *Pelodytes*) in the ovarian tubes, but earlier than the ova. They are viviparous. The embryos make their way into the intestine of their host, and accumulate in the rectum, but finally pass to the exterior in the fæces, and so reach the damp earth or muddy water, where they develop in a short time into the *Rhabditis*-like forms, which have separate sexes and are barely 1 mm. in length (fig. 282, *a* and *b*). The impregnated females of the latter produce only from two to four embryos, which become free inside the body of the mother, pass into her body cavity, and there feed on her organs, which disintegrate to form a granular detritus. They finally migrate as slender, already tolerably large Nematodes into the lungs of the *Batrachia*, passing through the buccal cavity and glottis. The *Leptodera appendiculata*, which lives in the slug *Arion empiricorum*, also presents in its development a like alternation of heteromorphic generations, which, however, are not strictly alternating, inasmuch as numerous generations of the *Rhabditis* form may succeed one another.

The *Leptodera* are peculiar in that the form parasitic in the snail is a larva characterised by the absence of a mouth, and by the possession of two long band-shaped caudal appendages; it quickly attains maturity, but only after a migration into damp earth and after losing the caudal appendages and casting the skin.

The *Nematoda* feed on organic juices, some of them also on blood, and are enabled by their armed mouth to inflict wounds and to gnaw tissues. They move by bending their body with a rapid undulatory movement towards the ventral and dorsal surfaces, which thus seem to be the lateral surfaces of the moving animal. Most *Nematoda* are parasitic, but lead an independent life in certain stages of their life history. Numerous small *Nematoda*, however, are never parasitic, but live freely in fresh and salt water and in the earth. Some Nematodes are parasitic in plants, for example, *Anguillula tritici*, *dipsaci*, etc.; some live in decaying vegetable matter, *e.g.*, the vinegar worm in fermenting vinegar and paste. Nevertheless very similar forms occur in the contents of the intestine and in the fæces of different animals and of man (*A. intestinalis, stercoralis*). The power possessed by small Nematoda of resisting the effects of prolonged desiccation and of coming to life again on being moistened is very remarkable.

Fam. **Ascaridæ.** Body tolerably stout. With three lips furnished with papillæ. One of these lips is directed towards the dorsal surface, while the two others meet together in the ventral line. The posterior end of the male is ventrally curved, and usually furnished with two horny spicula.

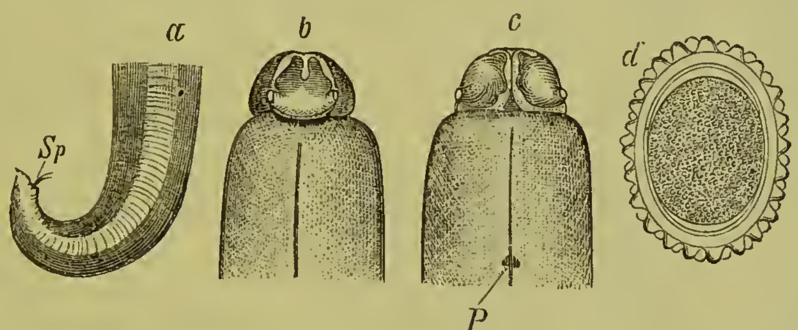



FIG. 283.—*Ascaris lumbricoides* (after R. Leuckart). *a*, Posterior end of a male with the two spicula (*Sp*). *b*, Anterior end from the dorsal side, with the dorsal lip furnished with two papillæ. *c*, The same from the ventral side with the two lateral ventral lips and the excretory pore (*P*). *d*, Egg with the external membrane formed of small clear spherules.

*Ascaris* L. Polymyarian, with three strongly developed lips, the edges of which are in the larger species provided with teeth. The pharynx is not separated as a distinct bulb. The caudal extremity is usually short and conical, and in the male sex invariably provided with two spicula (fig. 283, *a*). *A. lumbricoides* Cloquet, the human round worm, a smaller variety in the pig (*A. suilla* Duj.) The eggs pass into water or damp earth and remain there some months, until the embryonic development is completed; they are probably carried into the alimentary canal of their later host by means of an intermediate host. *A. megalocephala* Cloquet (horse and ox); *A. mystax* Zed. (cat and dog), sometimes parasitic in man.

*Oxyuris* Rud. Meromyarian; usually with three lips, which bear small papillæ. The posterior end of the œsophagus is enlarged to a spherical bulb provided with a masticatory apparatus. The posterior end of the body of the female is thin and pointed, while that of the male has only two præanal and few postanal papillæ, and a single spiculum (fig. 279). *O. vermicularis* L., in the large intestine of man, distributed in all countries. The female is about ten mm. long. *O. curvula* Rud., in the cæcum of the Horse.

Fam. **Strongylidæ**. The male genital opening is placed at the hinder end of the body, at the bottom of an umbrella- or bell-shaped bursa, the margin of which is furnished with a varying number of papillæ.

*Eustrongylus* Dies. With six projecting oral papillæ, and a row of papillæ on either lateral line. The bursa is bell-shaped and completely closed, with regular muscular walls and numerous marginal papillæ. There is only one spiculum. The female genital opening is far forward. The larvæ live encysted in fishes. (*Filaria cystica* from *Symbranchus*). *E. gigas* Rud., the body of the female is three feet in length, and only twelve mm. thick. It lives singly in the pelvis of the kidney of the Seal and Otter, and very rarely in Man.

*Strongylus* Rud. With six oral papillæ and small mouth. Two conical cervical papillæ upon the lateral lines. The posterior end of the male has an umbrella-like incompletely closed bursa. Two equal spicula, usually with unpaired supporting organ. The female sexual opening is sometimes approached to the posterior end of the body. They live for the most part in the lungs and bronchial tubes. *St. longevaginatus* Dies. Body 26 mm. long, 5 to 7 mm. thick. The female sexual opening lies directly in front of the anus, and leads into a simple ovarian tube. Only once found in the lung of a six-year old boy, in Klausenburg. *St. paradoxus* Mehlis, in the bronchial tubes of the pig. *St. filaria* Rud., in the bronchial tubes of the sheep. *St. commutatus* Dies., in the trachea and bronchial tubes of the hare and rabbit. *St. auricularis* Rud., in the small intestine of *Batrachia.*

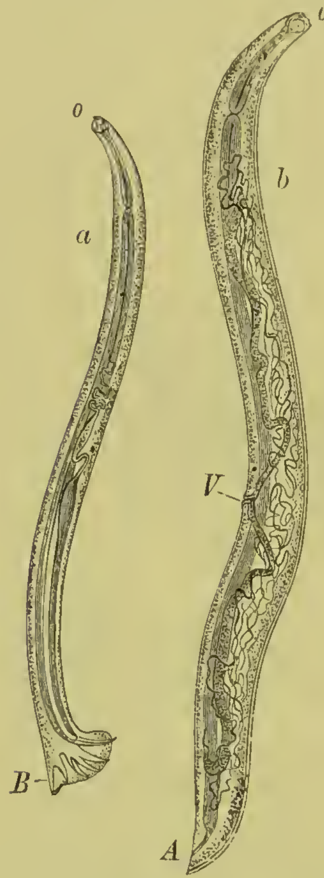


Fig. 284.—*Douchmius dodenalis* (after R. Leuckart). *a*, male; *O*, mouth; *B*, bursa. *b*, Female; *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *V*, vulna.

*Dochmius* Duj. With wide mouth and horny oral capsule, the edge of which is strongly toothed. Two ventrally placed teeth project at the bottom of the oral capsule, while on the dorsal wall a conical spine projects obliquely forwards. *D. duodenalis* Dub. (*Ancylostomun duodenale* Dub.), 10 to 18 mm. long, in the small intestine of Man, discovered in Italy; very widely distributed in the countries of the Nile (Bilharz and Griesinger). By aid of its strongly armed mouth it wounds the intestinal mucous membrane, and sucks the blood from the vessels. The frequent hæmorrhages occasioned by these *Dochmia* are the cause of the illness known by the name of Egyptian chlorosis (fig. 284). It has lately been established that this worm occurs in Brazil, and that, like *D. trigonocephalus*, it develops in puddles of water (Wucherer). *D. trigonocephalus* Rud., in the Dog. *Sclerostomum* Rud. With characters of Dochmius, but with a different oral capsule, into which two long glanular sacs open. *Sc. equinum* Duj. = *armatum* Dies. In the intestine and the mesenteric arteries of the horse. Bollinger* has shown that the phenomena of colic in the horse may be referred to embolic processes proceeding from aneurism of the intestinal artery. Each aneurism contains about nine worms.

* Bollinger, "Die Kolik der Pferde und das Wurmaneurysma der Eingeweidearterien," München, 1870.

*Sc. tetracanthum* Mehlis, also in the intestine of the horse. The embryos, after migrating into the intestine, become encysted in the walls of the rectum and cæcum, assume within the cyst their definite form, break out from the cyst, and escape again into the intestine. *Cucullanus elegans* Zed., in the Perch.

Fam. **Trichotrachelidæ**, with long neck-like thin anterior portion of the body. Mouth small, without papillæ. Œsophagus very long, traversing a peculiar cord of cells.

*Trichocephalus* Goeze. Anterior part (fig. 285) of the body elongated and whip-shaped: posterior part cylindrical and sharply distinct, enclosing the generative organs, in the male it is coiled up. Lateral lines absent. Main median lines present. The penis is slender and furnished with a sheath, which is turned inside out when the former is protruded. The hard-shelled, citron-shaped eggs undergo the first part of their development in water. *Tr. dispar* Rud. In the human colon : these worms do not live free in the intestine, but bury their filiform anterior extremity in the mucous membrane (fig. 285). The eggs pass out of the host with the fæces, as yet without a sign of beginning development, which only takes place after a prolonged sojourn in the water or in a damp place. According to the experiments of Leuckart performed with *Tr. affinis* of the sheep and *Tr. crenatus* of the pig, embryos with the egg membranes, if introduced into the intestine, develop into the adult *Tricocephalus* ; and we may therefore conclude that the human *Tr. dispar* is introduced directly, and without an intermediate host either in the drinking water or in uncleaned food. The young *Tr. dispar* is at first hair-like, and resembles a *Trichina*, and only gradually acquires the considerable thickness of the hind end of the body.

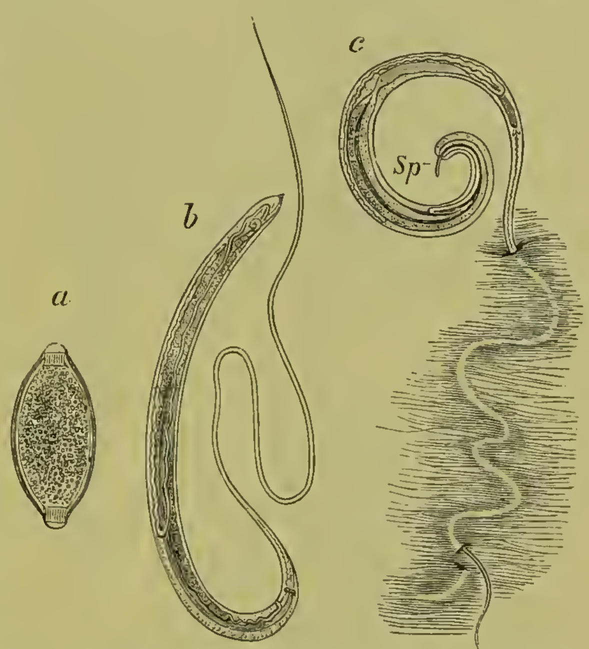


FIG. 285.—*Trichocephalus dispar* (after R. Leuckart). *a*, Egg ; *b*, female ; *c*, male with the anterior part of the body buried in the mucous membrane ; *Sp*, spiculum.

*Trichosomum* Rud. Body thin, hair-like, but the posterior end of the body in the female is swollen. Lateral lines and the principal median lines are present. The male caudal extremity has a cutaneous fold and a simple penis (spiculum) and sheath. *Tr. muris* Creplin., in the large intestine of the house-mouse. *Tr. crassicauda* Bellingh., in the bladder of the rat. According to Leuckart, the dwarfed male lives in the uterus of the female. There are usually two or three, more rarely four or five males in a single female. There is also a second species of *Trichosomum* found in the bladder of the rat. *Tr. Schmidtii* v. Linst., the larger male of which was formerly taken for that of *Tr. crassicauda*.

*Trichina* Owen.* Body thin, hair-like. Principal median lines and lateral

* Compare the writings of R. Leuckart, Zenker, R. Virchow, Pagenstecher, etc.

lines are present. The female generative opening well forward. The posterior end of the body of the male has two terminal cones between which the cloaca is

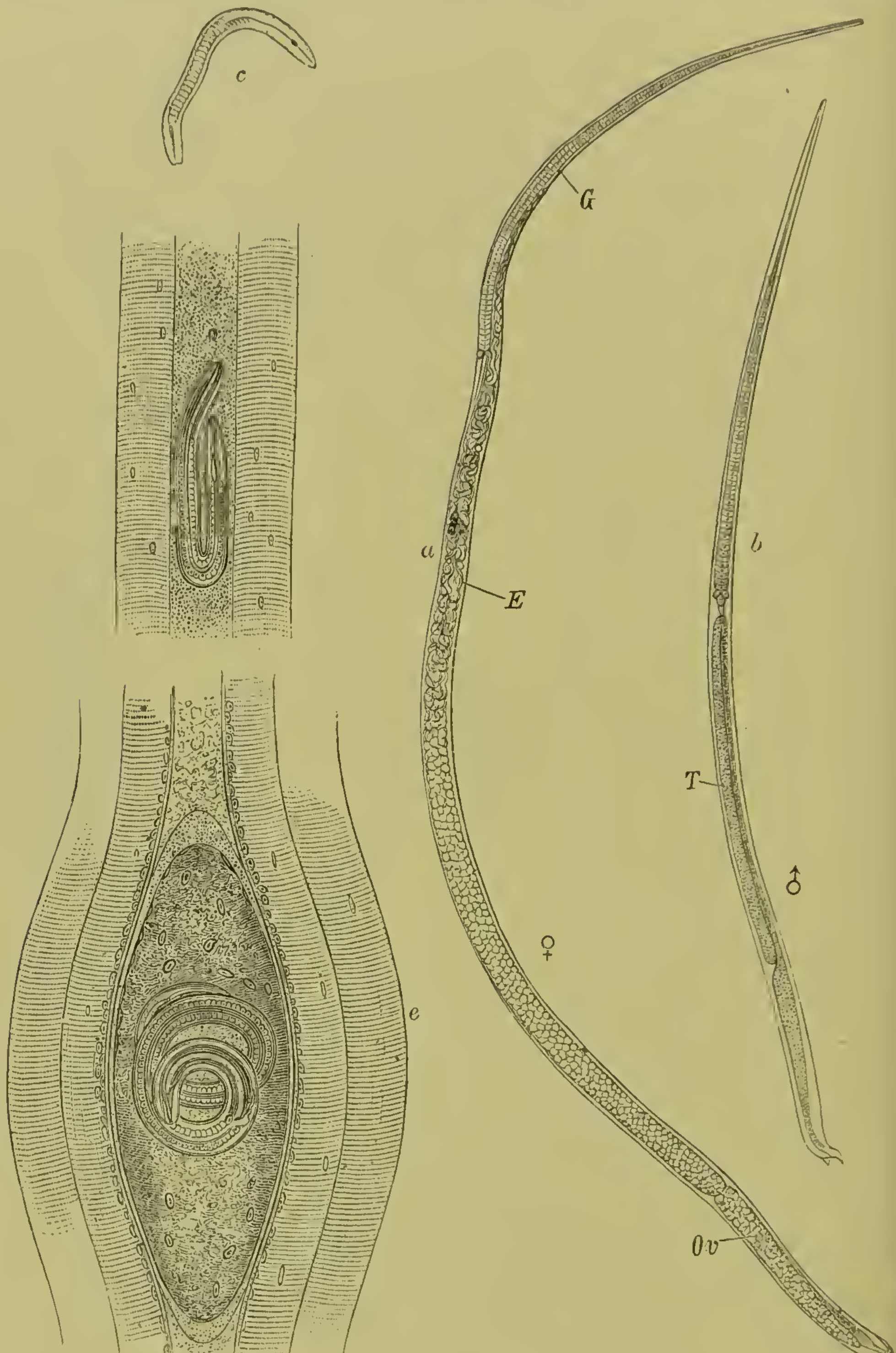



FIG. 286.—*Trichina spiralis.* *a*, Mature female Trichina from the alimentary canal; *G*, genital opening; *E*, embryos; *Ov*, ovary. *b*, Male; *T*, testis. *c*, Embryo. *d*, Embryo which has migrated into a muscle fibre, already considerably enlarged. *e*, The same developed into a coiled Muscle Trichina, and encysted.

projected. *Tr. spiralis* Owen, in the alimentary canal of Man and numerous, principally carnivorous, Mammalia; hardly two lines in length. The viviparous females begin to bring forth embryos about eight days after their migration into the alimentary canal. These embryos traverse the intestinal walls and body cavity of the host, and migrate, partly by their own movements in the bundles of connective tissue, partly with the aid of the currents of blood into the striped muscles of the body. They pierce the sarcolemma and penetrate into the primitive bundles, the substance of which degenerates, the degeneration being accompanied by an active multiplication of the nuclei. In a space of fourteen days they develop, within a sac-like swelling of the muscle fibres, into spirally coiled worms, around which and within the sarcolemma and its connective tissue investment a clear citron-shaped capsule is excreted from the degenerated muscle substance. The young Muscle-Trichina can remain living for years within this capsule, which at first very delicate, gradually becomes thickened and hard by the formation of other layers and by the gradual deposition of calcareons matter. If the encysted animal is transferred into the intestine of some warm-blooded animal in the flesh of its first host, it is freed from its cyst by the action of the gastric juice. and the rudimentary generative organs, which are already tolerably far developed, quickly attain maturity. In from three to four days after their introduction the asexual Muscle-Trichinas become sexual Trichinas. These copulate and produce a brood of embryos which migrate into the tissues of the host (one female may produce as many as 1000 embryos) (fig. 286). The house rat is especially to be mentioned as the natural host of the *Trichina*. This animal does not hesitate to eat the carcase of its own species, and so the Trichina infection is passed on from generation to generation. Carcases infected with Trichinas are sometimes eaten by the omnivorous pig, in whose flesh the encysted *Trichinas* are introduced into the intestine of man, and occasion the well-known disease, Trichinosis, which when the migration takes place in number, often has a fatal result.

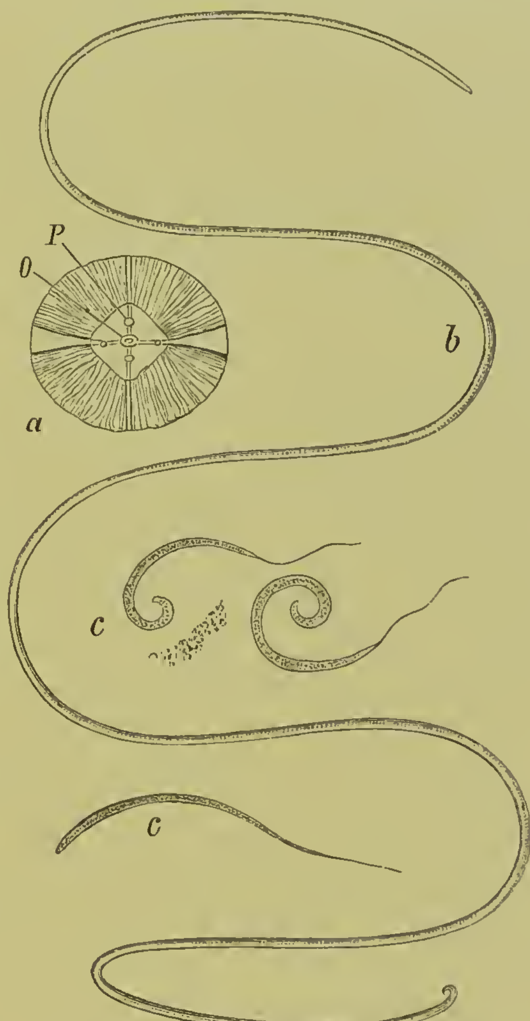


FIG. 287.—*Filaria medinensis* (after Bastian and Leuckart). *a*, Anterior end seen from the oral surface; *O*, mouth; *P*, papilla. *b*, Pregnant female (size reduced more than half). *c*, Embryos strongly magnified.

Fam. **Filariidæ.** Body filiform, clongated, often with six oral papillæ, sometimes with a horny oral capsule, with four præanal pairs of papillæ, to which an unpaired papilla may be added, with two unequal spicula or with simple spiculum.

*Filaria* O. Fr. Müll. With small mouth and narrow œsophagus. This species, which is sometimes destitute of papillæ, lives outside the viscera, usually in connective tissue, frequently beneath the skin (divided by Diesing into numerous genera). *F.* (*Dracunculus*) *medinensis** Gmel. the Guinea worm, in the subcutaneous cellular tissue of Man in the Tropics of the Old World, reaches a length of two feet or more. The head is provided with two small and two larger papillæ. The female is viviparous, and without sexual opening. The male form is unknown. The worm lives in the connective tissue between the muscles and beneath the skin, and after reaching sexual maturity, occasions the formation of an abscess, with the contents of which the embryos escape to the exterior (fig. 287). It has lately been proved (Fedschenko) that the embryos of *Filaria* migrate into a Cyclops and there undergo an ecdysis. Whether they are then (in the body of the Cyclops) introduced into man in his drinking water, or whether they first escape and copulate in a free state, is not known. *F. immitis* lives in the right ventricle of the dog, and is very abundant in East Asia. It is viviparous. The embryos pass directly into the blood, where, however, they do not undergo their further development. Similar young Hæmatozoa are also found in the blood of man in the Tropics of the New and Old Worlds (*F. sanguinis hominis*, *F. Bancrofti*). Since these animals are also found in the urine, their appearance seems to have an ætiological connection with hæmaturia. In the East Indies, young Filaria also live in the blood of the street dog, and would seem to be related to the brood of *Filaria sanguinolenta*, since, according to Lewis, knotty swellings on the aorta and œsophagus are invariably found with these *Filaria*. *F. papillosa* Rud. in the peritoneum of the horse. *F. loa* Guyot.. in the conjuntiva of negroes on the Congo. *F. labialis* Pane. Only once observed at Naples. An immature *Filaria* described as *Filaria lentis* (*oculi humani*) has been found in the human capsula lentis.

Fam. **Mermithidæ.** Aproctous Nematodes, with very long filiform body, and six oral papillæ. The male caudal region is broad, and is provided with two spicula and three rows of numerous papillæ. They live in the body cavity of insects, and escape into the damp earth, where they attain sexual maturity and copulate. *Mermis nigrescens* Duj., was the occasion of the fable of the rain worm. *M. albicans* v. Sieb. v. Siebold established by experiment the migration of the embryos into the caterpillars of *Tinea evonymella*. *Sphærularia bombi* Léon Duf.

Fam. **Gordiidæ.** Body elongated and filiform. Without oral papillæ and lateral lines, with a ventral cord. The mouth and anterior region of the alimentary canal is obliterated in the adult state. The testes and ovaries are paired and open to the exterior with the anus near the hind end of the body. Uterus unpaired, with receptaculum seminis. The male caudal region is forked. and is destitute of spicula. In the young stage they live in the body cavity of predatory insects, and are provided with a mouth. At the pairing time they pass into the water, where they become sexually mature. The embryos, which are provided with a circle of spines, bore through the egg-membranes and migrate into Insect larvæ (*Chironomus-larvæ, Ephemeridæ*). and there encyst. Water

* Compare H. C. Bastian, "On the Structure and Nature of the Dracunculus," *Trans. Linn. Society*, vol. xxiv., 1863. Fedschenko *l. c.*

beetles and other aquatic predatory insects eat with the flesh of the *Ephemerid larvæ* the encysted young forms, which then develop in the body cavity of their new and larger host to young *Gordiidæ*. *Gordius aquaticus Duj.*

Fam. **Anguillulidæ.*** Free living Nematodes of small size. Caudal glands are sometimes present. The lateral canals are often replaced by the so-called ventral glands. Some species either live on or are parasitic in plants; others live in fermenting or decaying matter. The greater number, however, live free in earth or water. *Tylenchus* Bast. Buccal cavity small, and containing a small spine. The female genital opening lies far back. *T. scandens* Schn. = *tritici* Needham, in mildewed wheat grains. When the grains of wheat fall the dried embryos grow in the damp earth, bore through the softened membranes, and make their way on to the growing wheat plant. Here they remain some time, perhaps a whole winter without alteration, until the ears begin to be formed. They then pass into the latter, grow, and become sexually mature, while the ear is ripening. They copulate and deposit their eggs, from which the embryos creep out, and at length constitute the sole contents of the wheat grains. *T. dipsaci* Kuhn, in heads of thistles (Cardius) *T. Davainii* Bast, on roots of moss and grass. *Heterodera Schachtii* Schmidt., roots of the beet-root, also of the cabbage, of wheat, barley, etc. *Rhabditis* Duj., divided by Schneider into *Leptodera* Duj. and *Pelodera* Schn. *Rh. flexilis* Duj., head very sharply pointed, mouth with two lips, in the salivary glands of *Limax cinereus*. *Rh. angiostoma* Duj. *Rh. appendiculata* Schn., in damp earth, 3 mm. long. The larva, which is without a mouth, and has two caudal bands, is found in *Arion empiricorum*. *Anguillula aceti = glutinis* O. Fr. Müll.. known as the vinegar worm and pasteworm, 1 to 2 mm. long.

Of the many marine *Anguillulidæ* (*Enoplidæ*), we must mention *Dorylaimus maximus* Bütschli, *D. stagnalis* Duj., found in mud everywhere in Europe. *Enchelidium marinum* Ehrbg., *Enoplus tridentatus* Duj.

The abberant families *Desmoscolecidæ* and *Chætosomidæ* are allied to the *Nematoda*.

## THE CHÆTOGNATHA.

The *Chætognatha*, † containing only the genus *Sagitta*, are allied to the Nematodes. They are elongated round worms, with a peculiarly armed mouth and laterally placed horizontal fins, the membranous edges of which are supported by rays. The anterior portion of the body is sharply separated off as a head, and bears in

* Davaine, "Recherches sur l'Anguillule du blé niellé," Paris, 1857. Kühn. "Ueber das Vorkommen von Anguillulen in erkrankten Blüthenköpfen von Dipsacus fullonum," *Zeitschr. für wiss Zool.*, Tom IX., 1859. Bastian, "Monograph of the Anguillulidæ or free Nematoids, marine, land, and fresh water," London, 1864. O. Bütschli, "Beiträge zur Kentniss der freilebenden Nematoden," *Nov. Acta*, Tom XXXVI., 1873. Lad. Oerley, "Monographie der Anguilluliden," Buda-Pest., 1880.

† Compare A. Krohn, "Anatomisch-physiologische Beobachtungen über die Sagitta bipunctata," Hamburg. 1844. R. Wilms, "De Sagitta mare germanicum circa insulam Helgoland incolente," Berolini, 1846. Kowalevski, "Embryologische Studien an Würmern und Arthropoden," *Mem. de l'Acad. St. Pétersbourg*, Tom XVI. O. Hertwig, "Die Chætognatha, eine Monographie," Jena, 1880.

the region of the mouth two lateral groups of hooks which function as jaws.

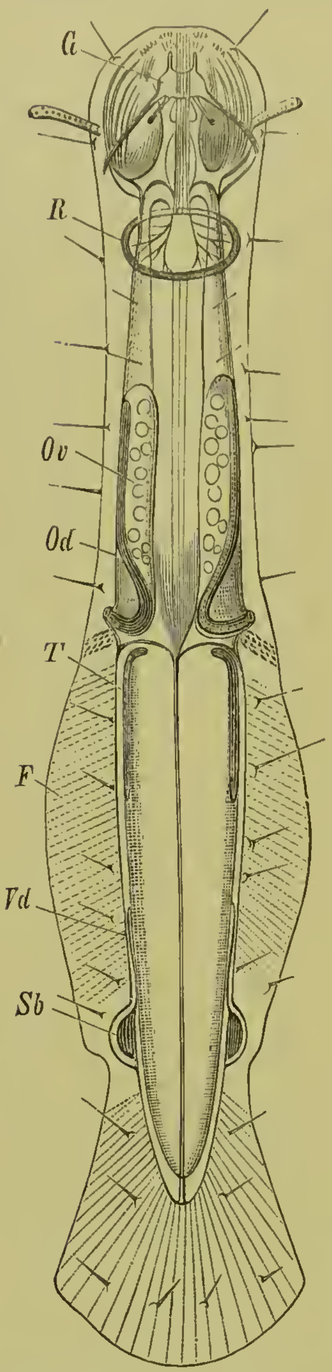



FIG. 288.—*Sagitta* (*Spadella*) *cephaloptera*, magnified 30 times, viewed from the dorsal side (after O. Hertwig). *F*, posterior fin; *G*, supra-œsophageal ganglion; *Te*, tentacles; R, olfactory organs; *Ov*, ovary; *Od*, oviduct; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Sb*, vesicula seminalis.

The **nervous system** consists, according to Krohn, of a cerebral ganglion on which the eyes are situated, and a ventral ganglion placed in about the middle of the body length. There are in addition two ganglia near the mouth, which may be considered as the subœsophageal ganglia, and are connected with each other and with the cephalic ganglion by œsophageal commissures.

[The common view now is that the large ventral ganglion of the middle of the body. which is connected with the cerebral by commissures, is homologous with the subœsophageal ganglia of other types.]

The straight **alimentary canal** is attached to the body wall by a dorsal and ventral mesentery from the œsophagus backwards, and opens to the exterior at the base of the long tail, which terminates in a horizontal fin (fig. 288).

[The **body cavity** is well developed, and divided by the dorsal and ventral mesenteries into two parts, and again by two transverse vertical septa into a cephalic section, a section in the body, and finally a caudal section. Vascular and excretory organs are absent.]

**Reproduction.** The *Chætognatha* are hermaphrodite, and possess paired ovaries, which open by two apertures at the base of the tail and are connected with seminal pouches. The testes also are paired, and situated posteriorly to the ovaries in the tail; their products pass to the exterior by openings at the sides of the tail. Segmentation is complete, and leads to the formation of a blastosphere. One side of this becomes invaginated so that the segmentation cavity is obliterated and a gastrula is formed, in the entoderm of which two cells may already be recognised as primitive generative cells. As soon as these make their appearance in the entoderm, the latter becomes folded in such a way that the archenteron is divided into a median and two lateral cavities. The layer of cells lining the lateral cavities becomes the mesoderm, and the contained cavities the two lateral compartments of the body cavity, while that of the middle cavity gives rise to the wall of the mesenteron or alimentary canal. The permanent mouth is formed at the end opposite to that at which the blastopore, which is now closed, was situated.

There is but one genus, *Sagitta* Slab., of which several species, *e.g.*, *Sagitta bipunctata* Krohn, *S. germanica* Lkt. Pag. from the European seas have been more accurately described.

### *Order* 2.—Acanthocephala.*

*Elongated round worms with protrusible proboscis furnished with hooks; without mouth and alimentary canal.*

The saccular, often transversely wrinkled body begins with a proboscis, which is furnished with recurved hooks and can be retracted into a tube projecting into the body cavity (sheath of the proboscis) (fig. 289, *R* and *Rs*). The posterior end of this sheath is fastened to the body wall by a ligament, and by retractor muscles. The **nervous system** (fig. 289, *G*) is placed at the base of the proboscis, and consists of a simple ganglion formed of large cells. Nerves are given off from the ganglion anteriorly to the proboscis, and through the lateral retractors (*retinacula*) to the body wall (fig. 289, *R*). The latter supply partly the muscular system of the body, and partly the genital apparatus, in which there are, principally in the male animal, special nerve centres consisting of ganglionic enlargements.

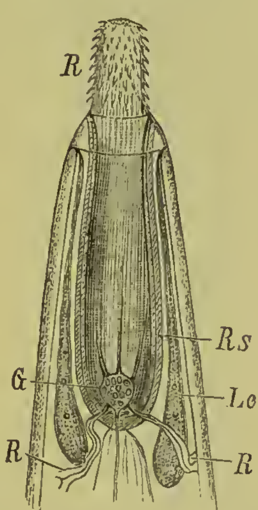



Fig. 289—Anterior part of an *Echinorhynchus*. *R*, Proboscis; *Rs*, sheath of proboscis; *G*, ganglion; *Le*, lemnisci; *R*, retinacula.

**Sense organs** are entirely wanting, as also are mouth, alimentary canal, and anus.

The nutritive juices are taken in through the whole outer surface of the body. In the soft granular subcuticular

* Besides Dujardin, Diesing, l. c., compare: R. Leuckart, "Parasiten des Menschen," Tom II., 1876. Greeff. "Untersuchungen über Echinorhynchus miliaris," *Arch. für Naturgesch*, 1864. A Schneider. "Ueber den Bau der Acanthocephalen," *Müller's Archiv.*, 1868. Also the *Sitzungsberichte der Oberhessischen Gesellschaft für Natur- und Heilkunde*, 1871.

layer of the integument lies a complicated system of canals, filled with a clear fluid containing granules. Beneath the internal layer of the integument, which layer is often very extensive and of a yellow colour, is placed the powerful muscular tunic; it is composed of external transverse and internal longitudinal fibres, and bounds the body cavity. The complicated ramified system of dermal canals, of which two principal longitudinal trunks may be recognised, is filled with juices, and probably functions as a nutritive apparatus. The portion of this system which extends into two bodies (the *lemnisci*, fig. 289, *Le*) projecting behind the proboscis through the muscular tunic into the body cavity, probably acts as an **excretory organ**, since the contents of the frequently anastomising canals of these lemnisci is usually of a brown colour, and consists of a cellular mass rich in concretions. According to Schneider, the vessels of the lemnisci open into a circular vessel in the integument, and only communicate with the network of canals in the cephalic region, while the other dermal vessels (nutritive apparatus), the contents of which differs from that of the vessels of the lemnisci, are completely shut off from the latter.

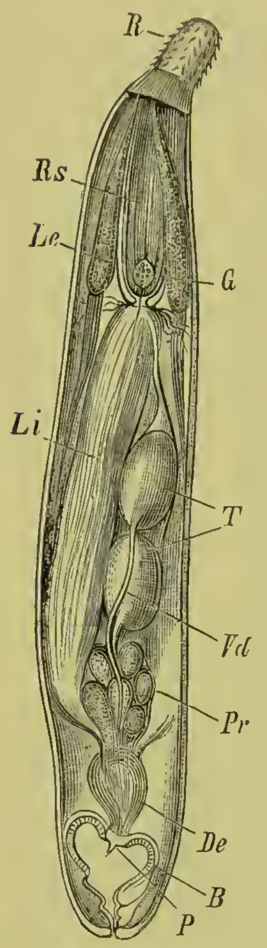



Fig. 290.—Male of *Echinorhyncus angustatus* (after R. Leuckart). *R*, proboscis; *Rs*, sheath of the proboscis; *Li*, ligament; *G*, ganglion; *Le*, lemnisci; *T*, testes; *Vd*, vasa deferentia; *Pr*, prostatic sacs; *De*, ductus ejaculatorius; *P*, penis; *B*, retracted bursa.

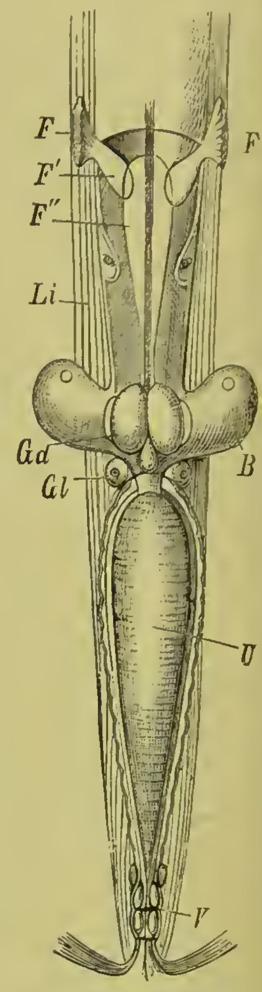



Fig. 291. — Generative ducts of a female *Echinorhynchus gigas* (after A. Andres). *Li*, ligament; *F*, disc-shaped flocculi; *F'*, *F''*, appendages of the same; *U*, uterus; *V*, vagina; *B*, lateral pouches of the bell; *Gd*, dorsal cells at the base of the bell; *Gl*, lateral cells.

**Generative organs.** The body cavity through which fluids circulate encloses the greatly developed generative organs, which are attached to the end of the sheath of the proboscis by a ligament (figs. 290

and 291, *Li*). The sexes are separate. The male (fig. 290) has two testes (*T*), and the same number of efferent ducts (*Vd*). The latter unite behind to form a ductus ejaculatorius (*De*), which is often furnished with six or eight glandular sacs (*Pr*), and a conical penis (*P*), at the bottom of a bell-shaped protrusible bursa (*B*), situated at the posterior pole of the body (fig. 290). The generative organs of the larger females (fig. 291) consist of the ovary developed in the ligament; of a complicated uterine bell, beginning with a free opening into the body cavity; of the oviduct and the short vagina, which is divided into several portions and opens at the posterior end of the body (fig. 291). It is only in the young stage that the ovary is a simple body enclosed by the membrane of the above-mentioned ligament. As the animal increases in size, the ovary grows, and becomes divided into numerous spherical masses of eggs, the pressure of which bursts the membrane of the ligament; the masses of ova as well as the ripe elliptical eggs, which gradually become free from them, fall into the body cavity. The egg membranes are not formed till after segmentation, and ought perhaps to be interpreted as embryonic membranes. The eggs, which already contain embryos, pass out of the body cavity into the uterine bell, which is continually dilating and contracting, thence into the oviduct, and through the genital opening to the exterior.

FIG. 292.—Embryo of *Echinorhynchus gigas* enclosed in the egg membranes (after Leuckart).

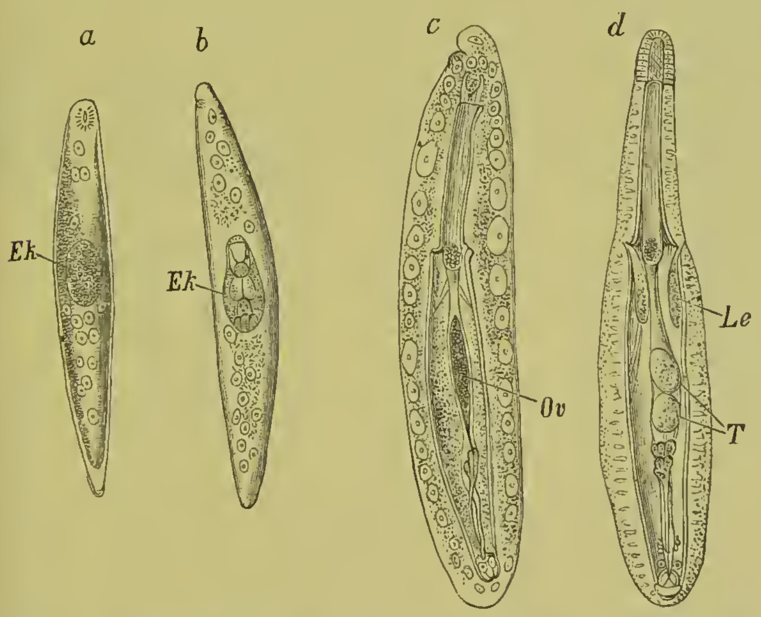



FIG. 293.—Larvæ of *Echinorhynchus proteus* from *Gammarus* (after Leuckart). *a*, Free embryo; *Ek*, embryonic nucleus. *b*, Older stage, with more differentiated embryonic nucleus. *c*, Young female worm; *Ov*, ovary. *d*, A young male worm; *T*, testes; *Le*, lemnisci.

**Development.** Segmentation is irregular and complete, and results in the formation of an embryo, which is enclosed in three egg-membranes. The embryo has a small, somewhat long body, armed with small spines at the anterior pole, and containing a central granular mass (embryonic nucleus) (fig. 292). It passes into the intestine of Amphipods (*Ech. proteus, polymorphus*), or of Isopods (*Ech. angustatus*), and there becomes free, bores through the wall of the intestine, and after losing the embryonic spines, develops to a small elongated larva, which, like a pupa, lies in the body cavity of the small Crustacean with its proboscis retracted and surrounded by its firm external skin as by a cyst (fig. 293). The skin of the larva gives rise only to the integument, the vessels and the lemnisci of the adult; while all the other organs enclosed within the dermal muscular envelope, viz., the nervous system, the sheath of the proboscis, and the generative organs, are developed from the so-called embryonic nucleus. It is only after their introduction into the intestine of fishes (*Ech. proteus*) or of aquatic birds (*Ech. polymorphus*), which feed on these *Crustacea*, that the larvæ attain to sexual maturity, copulate, and reach their full size.

The numerous species of the genus *Echinorhynchus* O. F. Müller live principally in the alimentary canal of different Vertebrata; the gut wall may be as it were sown with these animals. *Ech. polymorphus* Brems., in the intestine of the duck and other birds, also in the crayfish. *Ech. proteus* Westrumb., *Ech. angustatus* Rud., in fresh-water fish. *Ech. gigas* Goeze, as large as an *Ascaris lumbricoides*, in the small intestine of the pig. According to A. Schneider, the embryo completes its development in the maggot. Lambl found a small sexually immature Echinorhynchus in the small intestine of a child which died of leukæmia.

## CLASS III.—ANNELIDA.

*Segmented Vermes with brain, circum-œsophageal ring, ventral nerve cord, and vascular system.*

The larva of Lovén and its development seems to throw light upon the organization of the *Annelida* and their relations to the lower worms and to the *Rotifera;* and further makes evident the relationship of the *Annelida* to the *Gephyrea*, a group of worms which possess an elongated body devoid alike of external and internal segmentation, and, as an equivalent of the ganglionic chain, a ventral nerve trunk, which is usually uniformly covered with ganglion cells.

The body of Lovén's larva, from which we must derive the body of Annelids, is unsegmented, and represents mainly the Annelid head.

Behind it is continued into an indifferent terminal portion equivalent to the whole body of the adult.

At the apical region of the larva (fig. 294, *Sp*) there is a thickening of the ectoderm, which is called the apical plate. This represents the rudiment of the cerebral ganglion (apical ganglion), and gives off nerves to either side. The wide mouth (*O*) has a

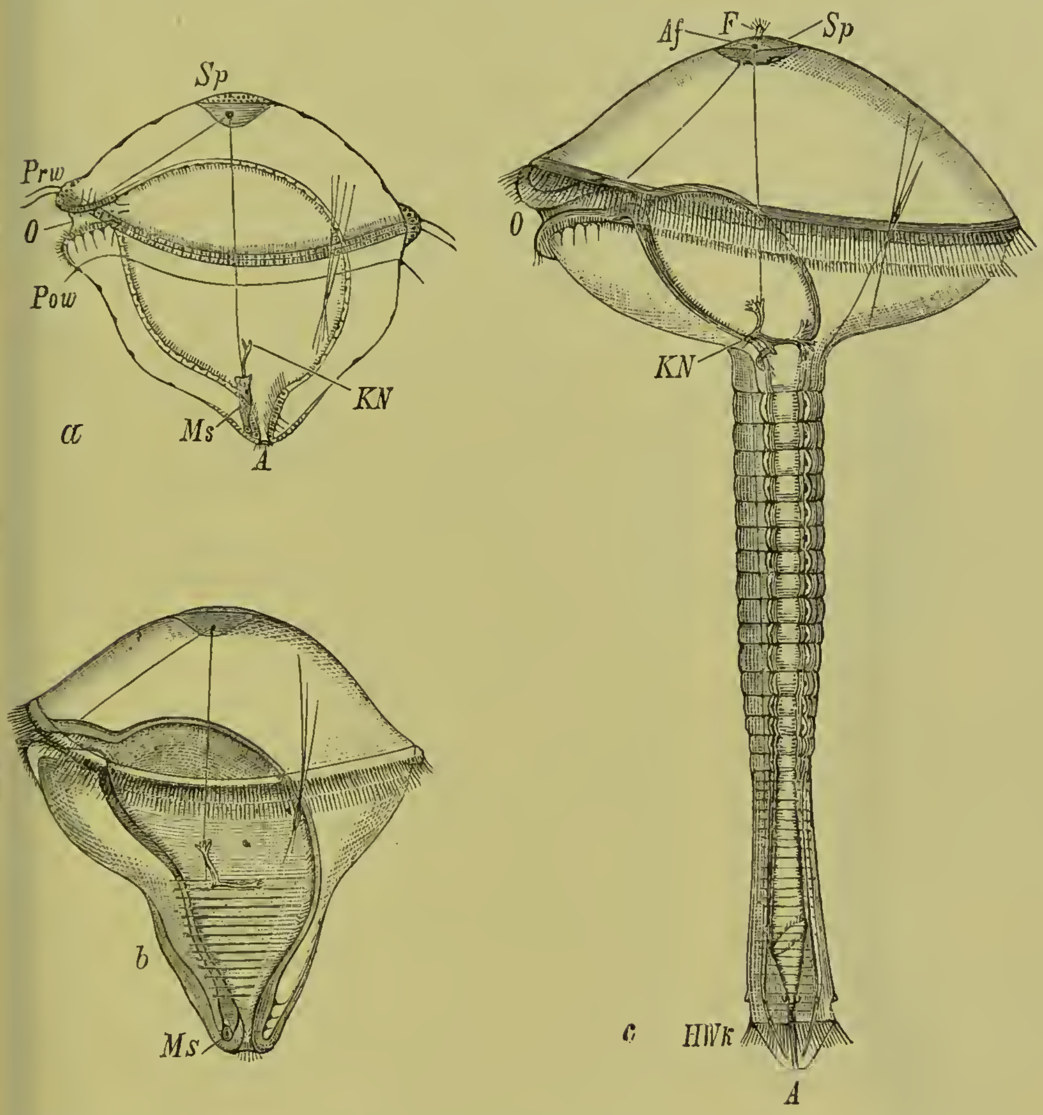



FIG. 294.—Development of *Polygordius* (after B. Hatschek). *a*, Young larva; *Sp*, apical plate with pigment spot; *Prw*, præ-oral circle of cilia; *O*, mouth; *Pow*, post-oral circle of cilia; *A*, anus; *Ms*, mesoderm; *KN*, head kidney. *b*, Older larva with commencing segmentation of the body, a second limb is developed in the head kidney. *c*, Older stage. The body is elongated to the form of a worm, and divided into a number of metameres; *HWk*, posterior circle of cilia; *Af*, eye spot; *F*, tentacle.

ventral position, and leads into an alimentary canal, which opens at the posterior end of the body (*A*). In front of the mouth there is a strongly developed circle (præoral) of cilia (*Prw*); and behind the mouth a weaker (postoral) circle (*Pow*); to the right and left there is an excretory canal (head kidney), which begins with a ciliated funnel. By the differentiation of the cephalic region of the larva into præstomial lobe and oral segment, and by the gradual growth in length of the posterior part of the body and the segmentation of the latter into a number of successive metameres, the originally unsegmented larva is transformed into an Annelid (fig. 294, *a*—*d*). There is, therefore, between the segmented adult and the larva a morphological relation similar to that between the cestoid and the simple scolex, from the posterior end of which the proglottides are developed.

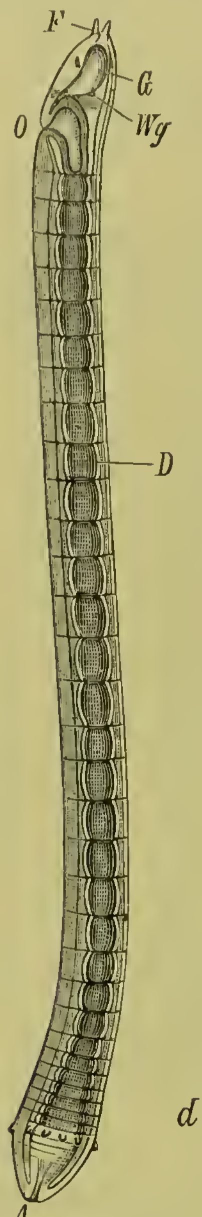


Fig. 294, *d.*—The young Polygordius; *G*, cerebral ganglion; *Wg*, ciliated pit; *D*, alimentary canal.

The body of the Annelida is sometimes flattened, sometimes completely rounded and cylindrical. It is composed of a number of successive segments, which are usually separated from each other externally by transverse constrictions. The segmentation is generally homonomous, in that the segments following the head resemble each other not only in external appearance, but also in internal structure, *i.e.*, they repeat similar sections of the internal organization. The terminal segment with the anus, however, has a special structure inasmuch as it retains the primitive, more indifferent character of the posterior end of the body of the larva, and during the development of the worm gives origin to new segments anterior to itself. The homonomy of the preceding segments of the body is, however, never complete, since certain organs are confined to definite segments. The internal segments, which are separated by *dissepiments*, either correspond with the external segmentation as marked by the annular constrictions of the integument (*Chætopoda*), or each internal segment corresponds to a definite number (3, 4, 5, etc.) of the external rings (*Hirudinea*).

**Organs of locomotion.** Special organs of locomotion may either have the form of bristle-bearing unjointed appendages (parapodia) on each ring of the body (*Chætopoda*), or of terminal suckers (*Hirudinea*). In the first case each segment may possess a dorsal and ventral pair of appendages (the *neuropodia* and *notopodia*), which, however, are sometimes replaced by simple setæ embedded in dermal pits.

**Alimentary canal.** The mouth is placed on the ventral surface at the anterior end of the body, and leads into a muscular pharynx, which is often provided with a powerful armature and can be protruded like a proboscis. This is followed by the gastric region of the gut, which occupies the greatest portion of the length of the body, and is either regularly constricted in correspondence with the segments, or possesses lateral diverticula; it is only coiled in exceptional cases. The anus is usually dorsal at the hinder end of the body.

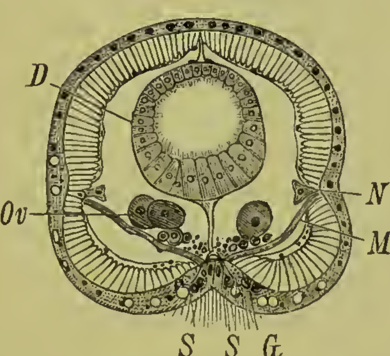


FIG. 295.—Transverse section through the body of *Protodrilus* (after B. Hatschek). *S S*, The two lateral trunks of the nervous system; *G*, ganglionic layer of the same; *D*, alimentary canal; *N*, nephridium; *M*, muscles; *Ov*, ova.

The **nervous system** consists of a cerebral or supra-œsophageal ganglion, which is derived from the apical plate of the larval præ-oral lobe, of an œsophageal ring, and of a ventral cord or ganglionic chain, the two halves of which lie more or less approached to each other in the median line. The ventral cord arises from two lateral nerve cords, which probably correspond to the lateral nerve trunks of the Nemertines. These two cords are continuous with the œsophageal commissures, and, like the latter, are uniformly covered with ganglionic cells. This form of the nervous system may persist, as may also its ectodermal position (**Archiannelida, Protodrilus**) (fig. 295). In most *Annelida*, however, this is only a transitory condition; for at a later stage the lateral cords become separated from the ectoderm, come together in the median line, and acquire a segmentation corresponding to the metameres of the body. The nerves of the sense organs arise from the cerebral ganglion; the other nerves pass out from the parts of the ventral cord or, as the case may be, from the ganglia of the ventral chain and from the longitudinal commissures between the latter. There is in almost all cases a visceral nervous system (*sympathetic*). The following *sense organs* are found: *paired eye spots* with refractive structures, or larger more complicated eyes; also *auditory vesicles* upon the œsophageal ring (branchiate worms), and *tactile organs*. The latter have, in the *Chætopoda*, the form of tentacles and tentacular cirri on the head and of cirri on the parapodia. When tentacles and cirri are absent, the anterior end of the body and the region of the mouth seem to function as tactile organs.

**Vascular system.** A blood vascular system is very commonly present; in many cases, however, it seems not to be completely closed, but to communicate with the body cavity, which contains blood. Two main vascular trunks, a dorsal and a ventral, connected with one another by numerous transverse anastomoses, are generally present. The blood is usually coloured (green or red), and its circulation is effected by the contractility of the walls of certain vessels; sometimes the dorsal vessel, sometimes the ventral, and sometimes the transverse connecting vessels are contractile. Lateral longitudinal vessels are often present in addition to the above. In the Hirudinea these, as well as the median contractile blood sinus, are probably to be regarded as isolated parts of the body cavity.

Special **respiratory organs** are found amongst the *Chætopoda* in the branchiate worms.

The **excretory organs**, corresponding to the water-vascular or excretory system of the Platyhelminthes, have the form of coiled canals (segmental organs or nephridia), which are repeated in pairs in each segment. Each nephridium usually begins with a ciliated, funnel-shaped opening into the body cavity, and opens to the exterior by a lateral pore (fig. 70). These may assume in certain segments the function of generative ducts, *e.g.*, the nephridia of the *Gephyrea*, which, however, are much reduced in number. In the cephalic segment or head there is also a segmental organ (head kidney), which in the larva functions as a kidney and later disappears.

**Reproduction.**—Considering the independence of the segments, to which we ascribe the value of a subordinate (morphological) individuality, the occurrence of asexual reproduction by fission and gemmation in the long axis (*Chætopoda*) is not surprising. Numerous *Annelida* (*Oligochæta*, *Hirudinea*) are hermaphrodite; the marine *Chætopoda*, on the contrary, are for the most part of separate sexes. Many lay their eggs in special sacs and cocoons, in which case development is direct, without metamorphosis. The marine worms, on the contrary, undergo a more or less complicated metamorphosis. The *Annelida* comprise terrestrial and aquatic animals, and they eat, for the most part, animal food. Many of them (*Hirudinea*) are occasionally parasitic.

In the group of the *Annelida* three principal divisions may be distinguished,—the *Chætopoda*, the unsegmented *Gephyrea*, and the *Hirudinea* which are adapted for parasitism. The *Hirudinea* are not in any degree to be regarded as *Annelida* of a lower grade of organization, but they rather present, at least in the case of some organs, as alimentary canal, circulatory and generative organs, a more complicated structure, and agree most closely with the Oligochæta, from which they may be derived.

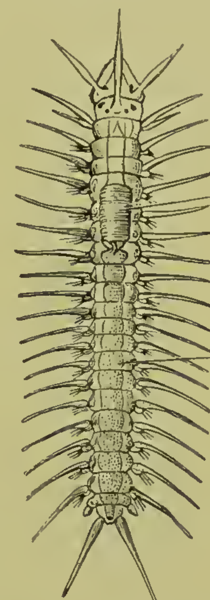



FIG. 296.—*Grubea fusifera* (after Quatrefages). *Ph.* pharynx *D*, alimentary canal; *C*, cirri; *F*, tentacles.

### *Sub-class* 1.—CHÆTOPODA.*

*Free living Annelida, with paired tufts of setæ on the segments, frequently with distinct head, also with tentacles, cirri, and branchiæ.*

The Chætopoda are divided externally into segments, which correspond with the metameres of the internal organs, and are, with the exception of the anterior region, which is distinguished as the head, usually tolerably alike (fig. 296). Parapodia provided with setæ are very frequently present on the segments; their principal function is that of locomotion, but their various appendages, the *branchiæ* and *cirri*, also discharge tactile and respiratory functions (fig. 297).

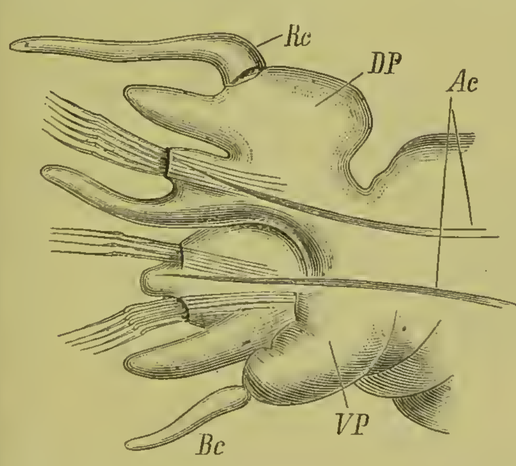



FIG. 297.—Dorsal (*DP*) and ventral (*VP*) Parapodium with bundles of setæ of *Nereis* (after Quatrefages). *Ac*, Aciculum; *Rc*, dorsal cirrus; *Bc*, ventral cirrus.

* Besides the older works of Savigny, Audouin et Milne Edwards, and Quatrefages, compare E. Grube, "Die Familien der Anneliden," *Archiv für Naturgesch*, 1850 and 1851. E. Claparède, "Recherches anatomique sur les Annélides, etc.," Genève, 1861. E. Claparède, "Les Annélides chétopodes du golfe de Naples," Genève et Bâle, 1868, also Supplement, 1870, and "Recherches sur la structure des Annélides sédentaires," Genève, 1873. Fr. Leydig, l. c., also "Tafeln zur vergl. Anatomie," 1864.

The form of the movable setæ varies extremely, and affords a good character for the classification of families and genera. According to the strength, form, and mode of ending (fig. 298), the following

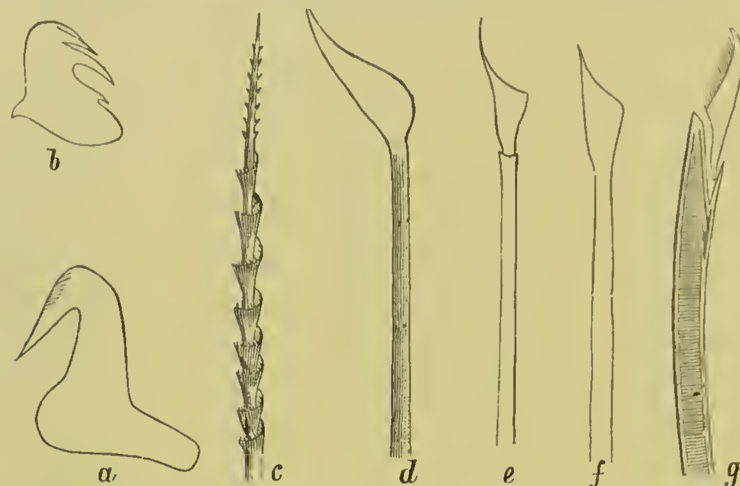



FIG 298.—Setæ of different *Polychæta* (after Malmgren and Claparède). *a*, Hooked seta of *Sabella crassicornis*; *b*, of *Terebella Danielsseni*; *c*, seta with piral ridge from *Sthenelais*; *d*, lanee-shaped seta of *Phyllochætopterus*; *e*, of *Sabella crassicornis*; *f*, of *Sabella paconis*; *g*, Composite sickle-shaped seta of *Nereis cultrifera*.

forms can be distinguished: hair-setæ, hooked-setæ, flat-setæ (*paleæ*), lance-setæ, sickle-shaped setæ, etc. When the parapodia and their appendages are completely wanting, the setæ are embedded in pits in the integument, and are arranged either in one or two rows on either side, that is, in a lateral ventral row on either side, or in a ventral row and a dorsal row on either side. In such cases the number of setæ is small (*Oligochæta*). The setæ may, on the contrary, be present in great number, so that the integument on either side seems to be covered with long hairs and setæ, and a thick felt of hairs shining with a metallic lustre is distributed over the whole dorsal

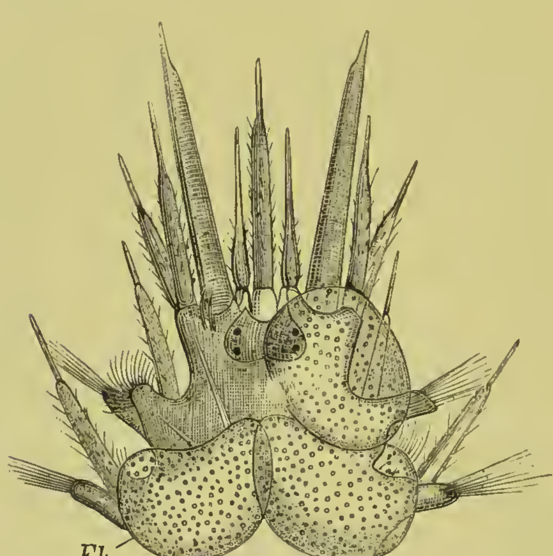



FIG. 299.—Anterior end of *Polynoë extenuata*, the first elytron on the left hand being removed (after Claparède). The two setæ of the oral segment are visible; *El*, Elytra.

surface (*Aphrodite*). The appendages of the parapodia present an equally great variety of form and not unfrequently vary in the different parts of the body. They are either simple or ringed tentacle-like processes, the *cirri*, which are distinguishable into dorsal and ventral cirri. The cirri are for the most part filiform, and sometimes jointed or conical, and then are often provided with a special basal joint. In some cases the dorsal cirri are flattened out as broad scales and leaves, the *elytra*, which constitute a protective covering (*Aphrodite*) (fig. 299). In addition to the cirri, branchiæ which may be filiform or branched and antler-like, comb-shaped or in the form of tufts, are frequently present; sometimes they are confined to the middle region of the body, or are extended over almost the whole dorsal surface; sometimes they are confined to the head or to the anterior segments immediately following the oral segment (cephalic branchiæ).

The two anterior segments may be regarded as forming the head; they are fused together, and are, with regard to their appendages, different from the following segments (fig. 245). The anterior segment projects beyond the mouth as the frontal lobe, and bears the *tentacles* and *palps* [*palps* are tentacular structures arising from the ventro-lateral sides of the head, *vide* p. 379] and also the eyes; the posterior cephalic segment or oral segment bears the tentacular cirri. The last segment (anal segment) bears the *anal cirri.*

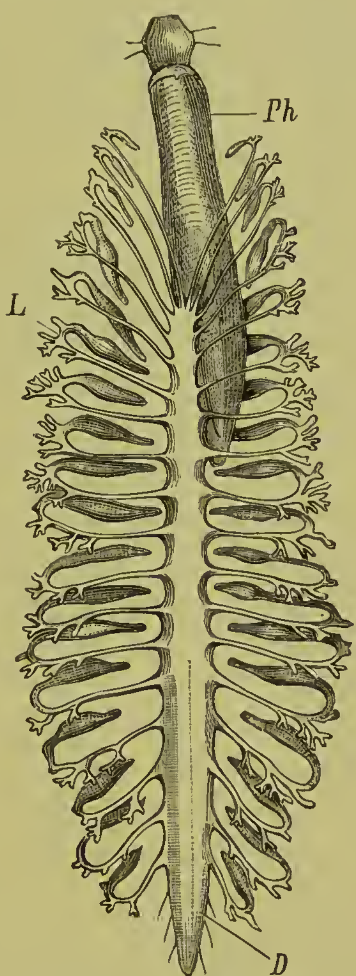



Fig. 300. — Alimentary canal of *Aphrodite aculeata* (after M. Edwards). *Ph*, pharynx; *D*, intestine; *L*, hepatic appendages.

The **alimentary canal** is usually straight, and extends from the mouth to the anus, which is terminal and rarely dorsal; it is divided into œsophagus, intestine, and rectum (fig. 300). There is in most cases a dilated muscular pharyngeal bulb which is armed with papillæ or with movable teeth and can be protruded as a *proboscis.* The intestine usually preserves the same structure in its entire length and is divided by regular constrictions into a number of divisions or chambers, which correspond to the segments and dilate again into lateral diverticula and cæca. The constrictions are due to filamentous or membranous septa (dissepimenta), which divide the body cavity into the same number of chambers lying one behind another.

The **vascular system** appears to be closed, so that the clear nutritive fluid found in the body cavity, which, like the blood, contains amœboid corpuscles, does not communicate with the usually coloured contents of the vessels. The dorsal and ventral vessels are not only connected at each end by lateral loops, but also in each segment; and from these connecting vessels proceed peripheral networks, which extend into the integument, the wall of the alimentary canal, and the *branchiæ.*

Special **organs of respiration** are wanting in almost all the *Oligochæta.* In the marine Worms, on the contrary, branchiæ are very generally present, usually as appendages of the parapodia. These branchiæ are either simple cirri which have delicate ciliated walls and contain blood-vessels, or are branched (*Amphinome*) or in some cases are pectinate structures (*Eunice*) which co-exist with special cirri on the notopodia (fig. 246). The branchiæ are sometimes confined to the middle segments (*Arenicola*), and are sometimes developed on almost all the segments on the dorsal surface, being simplified towards the posterior end of the body (*Dorsibranchiata*). In the *Tubicolæ* the branchiæ are confined to the two (*Pectinaria Sabellidæ*) or three (*Terebella*) anterior segments. The respiratory function is, however, also shared (*Capitibranchiata*) by a number of elongated tentacles which are grouped in tufts on the head. These are, in the *Sabellidæ*, supported by a special cartilaginous skeleton, and may have secondary twigs developed upon them. They are either simply arranged in a circle round the mouth, or in two fan-like lateral groups (*Serpulidæ*), the base of which is not unfrequently drawn out into a spiral plate. Such branchial structures, however, also function as organs of touch, as organs for procuring nutriment, and even for building the tubes and shells.

**Excretory organs.**—There are usually in all the segments paired segmental organs, which serve as excretory organs. They begin, as a rule, with a ciliated funnel in the body cavity; they possess a glandular wall, are several times coiled upon themselves, and open to the exterior in each segment by a lateral pore. These glandular passages serve in general for the removal of matters from the body cavity, and *in the marine Chætopoda are used during the* *breeding season as oviducts. or vasa deferentia, and permit of the passage outwards of the generative products, which have been set free in the body cavity.*

Amongst the special glands in the body of the *Chætopoda*, those cutaneous glands of the *Oligochæta* which give rise to the thickening (extending over several segments) known as the clitellus or girdle, are especially worthy of remark. The secretion of these glands perhaps assists the intimate connection of the Worms during copulation. In the *Serpulidæ* there are present two large glands, which open upon the dorsal surface of the anterior portion of the body and furnish a secretion used in the formation of the tubes in which the animals live.

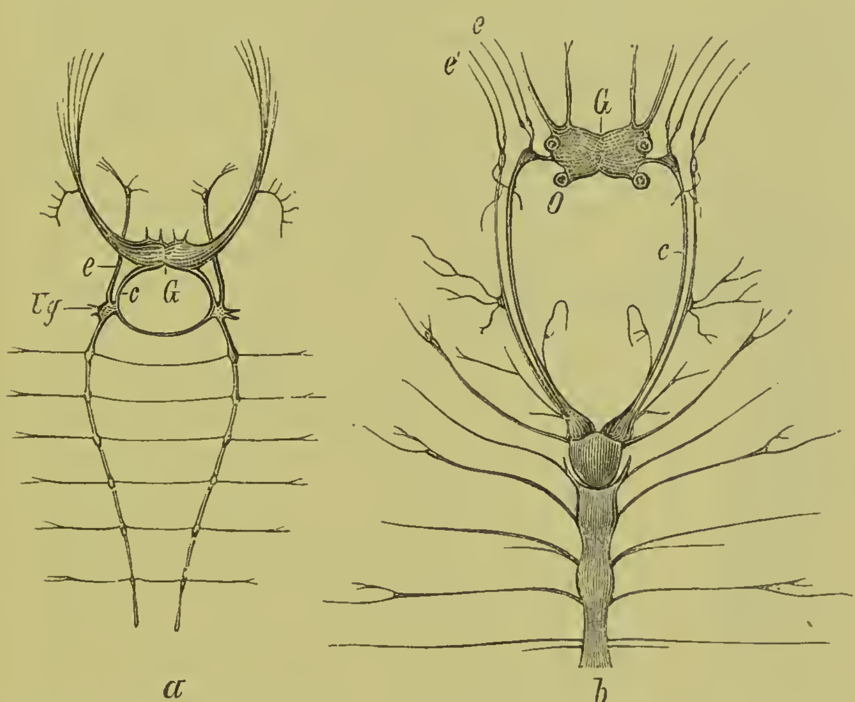



FIG. 301.—Brain and anterior portion of the ganglionic chain, *a*, of *Serpula*; *b*, of *Nereis*, (after Quatrefages); *O*, eyes; *G*, cerebral ganglion; *c*, œsophageal commissure; *Ug*, subœsophageal ganglion; *e é*, nerves to the tentacular cirri and the mouth segment.

**Nervous system.**—The longitudinal trunks of the ventral cord are often so closely approached that they seem to form a single cord (*Oligochæta*). In the *Tubicolæ* (fig. 301), on the contrary, they are very widely separated from one another, especially in the anterior part of the ganglionic chain (*Serpula*). The visceral nervous system consists of paired and unpaired ganglia, which supply the oral region and especially the protrusible proboscis.

**Sense organs.**—Paired eyes upon the surface of the frontal (*i.e.*

præoral or cephalic) lobe are widely distributed. Eye-spots may also be present upon the posterior end of the body (*Fabricia*), or may be regularly repeated upon the sides of each segment (*Polyophthalmus*). In species of *Sabella*, pigment-spots with refractive bodies are found even upon the branchial filaments. The large cephalic eyes of the genus *Alciope* * are the most highly developed, being provided with a large lens and a complicated retina. The presence of auditory organs seems less frequent. They appear as paired otolithic vesicles upon the œsophageal ring of *Arenicola*, *Fabricia*, some *Sabellidæ* and young *Terebellidæ*, etc. Besides the tentacles, cirri and elytra, other portions of the surface of the body may be sensitive to tactile sensations. On such parts there are either stiff hairs and tactile setæ, or, as in *Sphærodorum*, special tactile warts with nerve terminations.

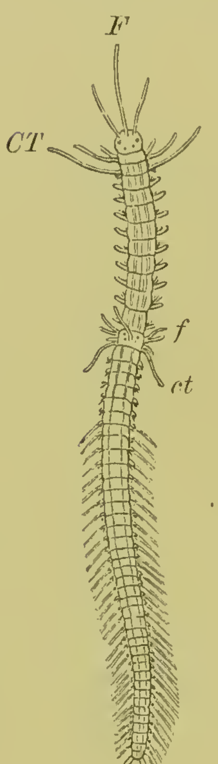



FIG. 302.—*Autolytus cornutus*, with the male animal *Polybostrichus* (after A. Agassiz). *F*, Tentacles; *CT*, tentacular cirri: *f*, tentacles; *ct*, tentacular cirri of the male.

**Reproduction.**—In the smaller *Chætopoda* asexual generation by fission and gemmation may occur. Either (fissiparous reproduction) a large number of segments of the parent become separate and give rise to the body of the new worm, as for example in *Syllis prolifera*, where a series of the posterior segments, which are filled with ova, become separated by a simple transverse fission, after the formation of a head provided with eyes; or (gemmiparous reproduction) a single segment only, usually the last, becomes the starting-point for the formation of a new individual. In this way *Autolytus prolifer*, one of the *Syllidæ*, asexually reproduces itself, giving rise to a male and female sexual form, known respectively as *Polybostrichus Mülleri* † (male) and *Sacconereis helgolandica* (female). This is a case of alternation of generations, for the asexual form, *Autolytus*, gives rise by budding in the long axis to the sexual forms (fig. 302). In this case a whole series of segments are developed

* Greeff, "Ueber das Auge der Aleiopiden. etc.," Marburg. 1876; and "Untersuchungen über die Aleiopiden," *Nov. Act. der K. Leop. Akad., etc.*, Tom XXXIX., Nro. 2.

† Compare besides the works of O. Fr. Müller, Quatrefages, Leuckart, and Krohn, especially A. Agassiz, "On alternate Generation of Annelids and the embryology of Autolytus cornutus," *Boston Journ. Nat. Hist.*, vol. iii., 1863.

in front of the last segment of the asexual form, and these segments, after the formation of a head, constitute a new individual. As this process is repeated, a chain of connected individuals is formed, and these, as soon as they are separated, represent the sexual individuals. Among the freshwater *Naidæ*, in *Chætogaster*, a regular and continued budding in the long axis leads to the formation of chains, consisting of not less than 12 to 16 zooids, each having only four segments, while the sexual individuals consist of a greater number of segments. A similar process occurs in the mode of reproduction observed by O. Fr. Müller in *Nais proboscidea*, from the last segment of which a new zooid is produced. Both generations of *Nais*, however, become sexually mature.

[For a more complete account of the asexual reproduction of Chætopoda, *vide* Balfour, "Comparative Embryology," vol. i., pp. 283, 284.]

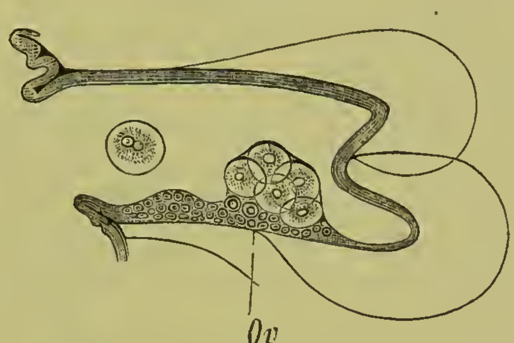



FIG. 303.—A parapodium of *Tomopteris* with a mass of ova and one free ovum (after C. Gegenbaur).

The *Chætopoda* are, with the exception of the hermaphrodite *Oligochæta* and certain *Serpulidæ* (*e.g.*, *Spirorbis spirillum*, *Protula Dysteri*) of separate sexes. Male and female individuals seem occasionally so strikingly different in the structure of their organs of sense and locomotion that they have even been taken for species of distinct genera. Besides the above-mentioned *Sacconereis* and *Polybostrichus*, the asexual generation of which is *Autolytus*, a similar sexual dimorphism has been shown by Malmgren for *Heteronereis*, a genus of the *Lycoridæ*, in which the males and females differ both in external form and in the number of their segments. A remarkable case of heterogamy is also afforded by this genus, in that a generation of smaller animals swimming upon the surface alternates with a generation of larger forms living upon the bottom.

The generative apparatus of the *Oligochæta* is very highly developed. The ovaries and testes lie in definite segments, and empty their contents by dehiscence of their walls into the body cavity. Special generative ducts often co-exist with segmental organs in the same segment (*O. terricolæ*), while in other cases the segmental organs are wanting in the generative segments (*O. limicolæ*). In the marine *Chætopoda*, the ova or spermatozoa originate on the body wall (fig. 303) from cells of the peritoneal membrane, either in the anterior segments alone or along the whole length of the body. The generative products then become free in the body cavity, attain maturity, and pass through the segmental organs to the exterior. Only a few *Chætopoda*, as *Eunice* and *Syllis vivipara*, are viviparous, all the rest are oviparous; many lay their eggs in connected groups, and carry them about with them, while the *Oligochæta* lay theirs in cocoons.

**Development.**—The segmentation is unequal. A primitive streak is very generally developed, though sometimes not until the embryo has left the egg. It arises on the ventral side in consequence of the development of a middle layer and from neutral plates of the upper layer.

Excepting in the *Oligochæta*, the young forms undergo a metamorphosis and after leaving the egg appear as ciliated larvæ, which are provided with mouth and alimentary canal, and essentially resemble, with some modifications, Lovén's larva.

The capability of renewing lost portions of the body, more especially the posterior part of the body and different appendages, seems to be generally distributed. The *Lumbricinæ* and certain marine Worms (*Diopatra*, *Lycaretus*) are even able to replace the head and the anterior segments, with the brain, œsophageal ring, and sense apparatus.

Fossil remains of *Chætopoda* are found from the Silurian onwards in the most different formations.

### *Order* 1.—POLYCHÆTA.*

*Marine Chætopoda, with numerous setæ embedded in the parapodia, usually with distinct head, tentacles, cirri, and branchiæ. They are for the most part diœcious, and develop with metamorphosis.*

The marine *Chætopoda* must be considered as belonging to a higher grade of life, on account of the sharp distinction of the head which is composed of the præstomium (præoral lobe) and oral segment (in the *Amphinomidæ* several succeeding segments are also included), and of the presence of the tentacles, tentacular cirri and

* Audouin et Milne Edwards, "Classification des Annélides et description des celles qui habitent les côtes de la France," *Annales des Sc. Nat.*. Tom XXVII. to XXX., 1832-33. Delle Chiaje, "Descrizioni e notomia degli animali senza vertebre della Sicilia citeriore," Napoli, 1841. Quatrefages. "Histoire naturelle des Annelés," Tom. I. and II., 1865. Also the numerous writings of E. Grube and E. Claparède.

gills, and also of the setæ embedded in prominent parapodia, which serve as aids to swimming. The internal organization, however, is in no way more complicated than that of the *Oligochæta*. Nevertheless all these distinctive characters may be less and less marked, and, indeed, so completely vanish that it is difficult to draw a sharp line between the *Oligochæta* and the *Polychæta*. The parapodia (*Capitellidæ*) and also the setæ (*Tomopteridæ*) may be wanting.

In rare cases, bundles of setæ are present on all the segments behind the head; they are however arranged in a single row and embedded in a single pair of ventral retractile parapodia in each segment.

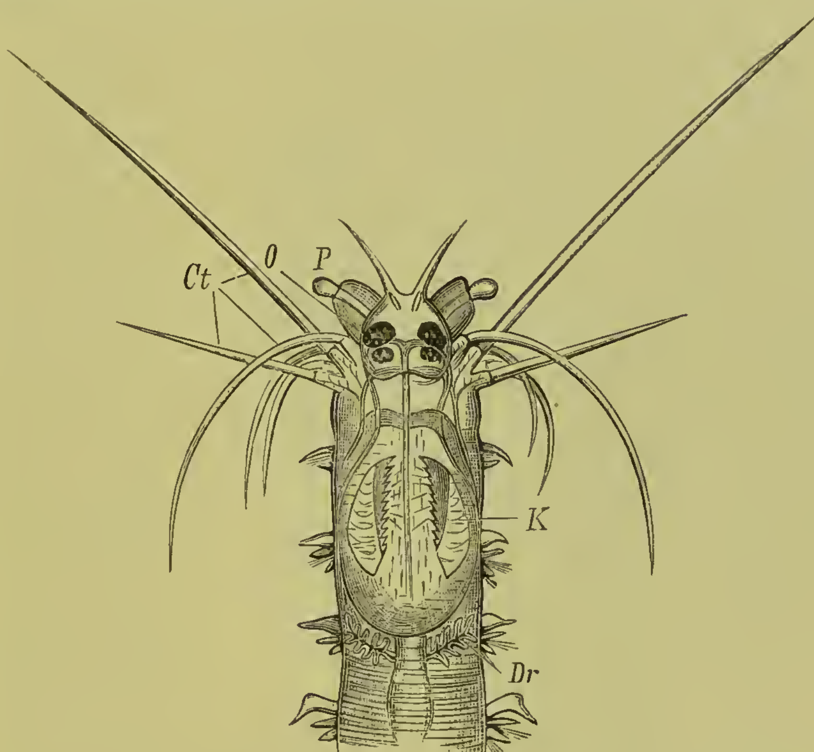



FIG. 301. — Head and anterior body segments of *Nereis Dumerilii* (after E. Claparède). *O*, Eyes; *P*, palps; *Ct*, tentacular cirri; *K*, pharyngeal jaws.

This arrangement, which is found in *Saccocirrus* and its allies, probably represents the primitive state, especially as in these animals the character of the nervous system, which lies in the ectoderm external to the dermal muscular envelope, and of the sense organs, which are reduced to two simple tentacles upon the cephalic lobe and to ciliated pits, indicates lower and more primitive conditions.

In another and very remarkable type, *Polygordius* Schn. and *Protodrilus* Hatsch., not only parapodia and setæ but also the external segmentation are wanting. The segmentation of this achætous and externally unsegmented worm is entirely confined to the internal organization and is, as compared with that of all other Annelida, to a certain extent *completely homonomous*, inasmuch as the œsophagus is confined to the cephalic segment and does not extend into the anterior segments of the body. Further, the nervous system is connected with the ectoderm along its whole length, and the cerebral ganglion maintains its primitive position at the anterior end, corresponding to the apical plate of the larva; and the ventral cord is without ganglionic swellings. In all the above points these forms seem to have preserved the primitive Annelidan structure, and they have therefore been united by Hatschek into a special class, the *Archiannelida.*


Fig. 305.—*Terebella nebulosa*, opened from the dorsal side (after M. Edwards). *T*, Tentacles; *K*, Branchiæ; *Dg*, dorsal vessel or heart.

In the *Polychæta* the **vascular system** is complicated by the appearance of branchiæ, which are provided with blood-vessels. In the forms with dorsal branchiæ the branchial blood is derived from the dorsal trunk and returned to the ventral by special vessels. When, on the other hand, as in the tubicolous capito-branchiate forms, the respiratory apparatus is concentrated on a few segments, the vascular system of that part undergoes greater modifications. In the *Terebellidæ* (fig. 305), the dorsal trunk dilates above the pharynx to a branchial heart from which lateral branches are given off to the branchiæ. In the same region the transverse loops connecting the dorsal and ventral trunks may perform the function of hearts, as is also frequently the case in the *Oligochæta*. Finally the vascular system is in many cases considerably reduced, and, according to Claparède, is entirely wanting in *Glycera* and *Capitella*, in which the blood is represented by the perivisceral fluid.

The **generative organs**, unlike those of the hermaphrodite *Oligochæta*, are usually placed in different individuals; and the males and females are sometimes of very different forms. A number of hermaphrodite *Polychæta* are, however, known; such principally belong to genera of the *Serpulidæ*, *e.g.*, *Spirorbis*, *Protula*.

The development, unlike that of the *Oligochæta*, is invariably connected with a metamorphosis. Segmentation is, as in the *Hirudinea*, usually unequal, and even the first two segmentation spheres are of unequal size. The smaller (animal) half, which segments more quickly, gives rise to smaller segments, which grow round and envelope the larger segments proceeding from the segmentation of the larger half. In the subsequent development a primitive streak makes its appearance in all embryos of *Polychæta*, sometimes, however, not until the embryo has begun to lead a free life as larva. The ganglia become differentiated later into the ventral chain.

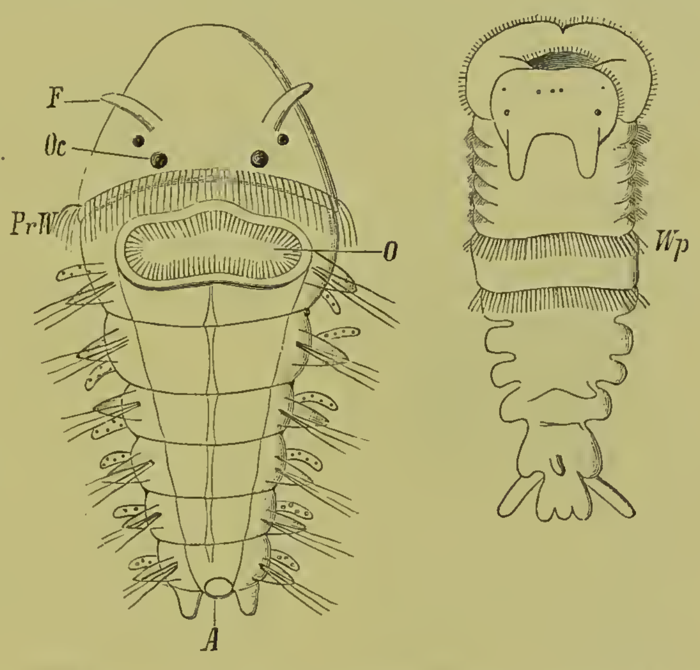



Fig. 306.—Larvæ of *Polychæta* (after Busch). *a*, Larva of *Nereis* *F*, tentacle; *Oc*, eyes; *PrW*, præoral circle of cilia: *O*, mouth; *A*, anus. *b*, Mesotrochal, larva of *Chætopterus*; *Wp*, circle of cilia.

In the free-swimming larvæ the cilia are rarely distributed over the whole surface of the body (*Atrocha* *). They are usually confined to special rows (ciliated rings); sometimes, as in Lovén's larva, there is one row placed in front of the mouth at some distance from the

* Compare E. Claparède and E. Metschnikoff, "Beiträge zur Entwickelungsgeschichte der Chætopoden," Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool., Tom. XIX., 1869.

anterior end of the body (*Cephalotrocha, e.g.*, larva of *Polynoë*). Sometimes there are two rows, one at each end of the body, constituting a præoral and perianal ring (*Telotrocha, e.g., Spio-Nephthys-larva*). In addition to these two rings of cilia, incomplete rings may also be present on the ventral surface (*Gastrotrocha*), or both ventrally and dorsally (*Amphitrocha*). In other cases one or more rows of cilia surround the middle of the body (*Mesotrocha*), while the terminal rings (præoral and perianal) are absent (*Telepsavus-Chætopterus larva*) (fig. 306). Many larvæ are provided with long provisional setæ, which are later replaced by the permanent structures (*Metachæta*). In spite of their great diversity of form the Chætopod larvæ can in their later development also be reduced to the type of the larva of Lovén.

Relatively few forms, as for instance the transparent *Alciopidæ*, live at the surface (pelagic animals); most of them live near the coast. Numerous forms descend into the deep sea. Many have the power of emitting an intense light, especially species of the genus *Chætopterus* which emit light from their antennæ and appendages. The elytra of *Polynoë*, the tentacles of *Polycirrus*, and the integument of certain *Syllidæ*, are also phosphorescent. Panceri* has shown that the seat of the phosphorescence is in unicellular cutaneous glands, which, in *Polynoë*, were proved to be in communication with nerves.

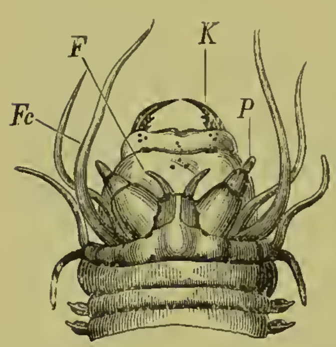


FIG. 307.—*Nereis margaritacea*. Head with protruded jaw apparatus of the pharynx, from the dorsal surface (after M. Edwards). *K*, Jaws; *F*, tentacles; *P*, palps; *Fc*, tentacular cirri.

Sub-order 1. **Errantia**. Free-swimming, predacious *Polychæta*. The præstomium always remains independent and forms, with the oral segment, a well-marked head which bears eyes, tentacles, and usually tentacular cirri. The parapodia are much more developed than in the *Tubicolæ*, and, together with their very variously shaped setæ, serve as oars. The anterior portion of the pharynx can be protruded as a proboscis and is divided into several portions; it is either beset with papillæ or contains a powerful masticatory apparatus, which appears at its extremity when protruded (fig. 307). *Branchiæ* may be wanting: when present, they usually appear as comb-shaped or dendritic

* Panceri, "La luce c gli organi lúminosi di alcuni annclidi," Atti della R. Acad. sciensz fi. e mat. di Napoli, 1875.

tubes on the parapodia (*Dorsibranchiata*). The *Errantia* are predatory in their habits (*Rapacia*) and swim freely in the sea; but they may also inhabit temporarily thin membranous tubes.

Fam. **Aphroditidæ.** Broad scales (*elytra*) on the notopodia. These are usually placed on alternate segments, often only on the anterior part of the body. Præstomium, with eyes, with one unpaired and usually two lateral tentacles, to which may be added two stronger lateral ventrally placed tentacles (palps). Proboscis cylindrical, protrusible, with two upper and two under jaws. *Aphrodite aculeata* Lin. (*Hystrix marina* Redi.) The back has a thick felt of hairs. Eyes sessile. Numerous setæ on the neuropodia. *Polynoë scolopendrina* Sav. Ocean and Mediterranean.

Fam. **Eunicidæ.** Body very long, composed of numerous segments. Præstomium with several tentacles. Parapodia usually uniramous, rarely biramous, usually with ventral and dorsal cirri as well as branchiæ. One upper jaw composed of several pieces, and a lower consisting of two plates; both lie in a sac, the jaw-sack, on the dorsal surface of which runs the pharyngeal tube. *Staurocephalus vittatus* Gr., *Halla* (*Lysidice*) *parthenopeia* Delle Ch., Naples. *Diopatra neapolitana* Delle Ch., Naples. *Eunice Harassii* Aud. Edw.

Fam. **Nereidæ** = *Lycoridæ*.* The elongated body is composed of numerous segments. The præstomium has two tentacles, two palps, and four eyes. The parapodia are either uni- or bi-ramous, and are furnished with dorsal and ventral cirri and with composite setæ. Proboscis usually possesses spines, and always two jaws. *Nereis Dumerilii* Aud. Edw., French and English coasts, to which belongs *Heteronereis fucicola* Oerst. *N. cultrifera* Gr., Mediterranean *N. fucata* Sav., North Sea. The form formerly distinguished as *Heteronereis* Oerst. differs from *Nereis* in the great size of the præstomium and of the eyes, also in the extraordinary development of the parapodia, and in the abnormal formation of the hinder end of the body. It belongs, however, to the same cycle of development as *Nereis* and *Nereilepas*.

Fam. **Glyceridæ.** Body slender, composed of numerous ringed segments. The præstomium is conical and ringed, with four small tentacles at its point and two palps at its base. The proboscis can be protruded to a great length, and is provided with four strong teeth. The hæmal fluid, coloured by red corpuscles, is contained in the body cavity and the branchial sinuses. There is no special vascular system. *Glycera capitata* Oerst., North Sea.

Fam. **Syllidæ.** Body elongated and flattened, head usually with three tentacles and two to four tentacular cirri. The protrusible proboscis consists of a short proboscis tube, a pharyngeal tube lined by stiff cuticular formations, and a portion characterised by annular rows of points. Sexual and asexual individuals, differing in form, are sometimes found in the same species. Many carry their eggs about with them until the young are hatched. *Syllis vittata* Gr., Mediterranean. *Odontosyllis gibba* Clap., Normandy, *Autolytus prolifer* O. Fr. Müll., asexual form. The male has been described as *Polybostrichus Mülleri* Kef., the female as *Saccoonereis helgolandica* Müll. *Sphærodorum peripatus* Gr., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Alciopidæ** (Alciopea). With two large hemispherical projecting eyes. Ventral and dorsal cirri leaf-like. The proboscis is protrusible, the tube of the proboscis being thin walled and its terminal portion thick walled. At

* Compare E. Grube, "Die Familie der Lycorideen," *Jahresber. der Schlesischen Gesellschaft*, 1873.

its aperture are two hook-shaped papillæ. The larvæ are in part parasitic in the *Cydippidæ*. *Alciopa Cantrainii* Delle Ch., Naples.

Fam. **Tomopteridæ** (*Gymnocopa*). Head well marked, two eyes, bifid prostomium, and four tentacles, of which two in many species are only present in the young. The mouth segment has two long tentacular cirri which are supported by a strong internal seta. The mouth is without proboscis and jaws. The segments are provided with large bi-lobed parapodia without setæ. *Tomopteris scolopendra* Kef., Mediterranean. *T. onisciformis* Esch., northern seas, Heligoland.

The genus **Myzostoma** F. S. Lkt., a small group of hermaphrodite worms whose affinities are doubtful and disputed, may be placed here. They are small, disc-shaped animals, parasitic on *Comatula*. They possess a soft and ciliated skin, four pairs of laterally placed suckers on the ventral surface, and a protrusible proboscis furnished with papillæ at their anterior end, also a branched alimentary canal which opens at the posterior end of the body. On the sides of the body are five pairs of short parapodia, of which each one bears a hook (with one to three supplementary hooks) as well as supporting setæ. As a rule, double as many cirri or short wart-like protuberances are found on the margin of the body. *M. glabrum*, *cirriferum* F. S. Lkt.

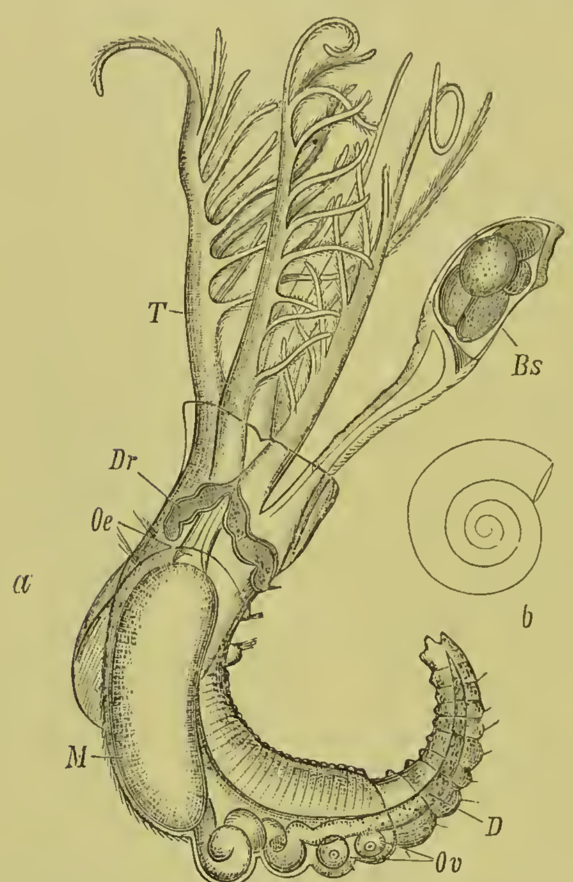



FIG. 308.—*Spirorbis lævis* (after Claparède). *a*, The animal removed from its tube, strongly magnified; *b*, tube; *T*, tentacles; *Bs*, brood-pouch with operculum; *Dr*, glands, *Ov*, ova; *Oe*, œsophagus; *M*, stomach; *D*, intestine.

Sub-order 2. **Sedentaria** = **Tubicolæ**.* With indistinctly separated head and short, usually not protrusible proboscis, without jaws. The branchiæ may be entirely absent and in many cases are confined to the two or three anterior segments following the head. In exceptional cases they are placed on the dorsal part of the middle of the body (*Arenicolidæ*). As a rule, however, they are represented by numerous filiform tentacles and ten-

* E. Claparède, "Recherches sur la structure des Annélides sédentaires," Genève, 1873.

tacular cirri upon the head (*Capitibranchiata*), of which one or more may bear an operculum at its apex to close the tube (fig. 308). The parapodia are short, and are never used in swimming; the notopodia usually carry hair-like setæ; the neuropodia are transverse ridges with hooked setæ or plates. Eyes are very frequently absent; in other cases they are present in pairs upon the head or on the terminal segment, sometimes even on the branchial tentacles; in the latter case they are very numerous. The body is often divided into two (thorax and abdomen) or three regions, the segments of which are distinguished by their unequal size. The *Tubicolæ* live in more or less firm tubes which they construct for themselves, and feed on vegetable matter which they procure by means of their tentacular apparatus. In the construction of their tubes the animals are assisted in various ways by the long tentacles or branchial filaments of the head; thus, for example, the *Sabellidæ* are said to accumulate fine ooze at the funnel-shaped base of the branchial apparatus by means of the cilia of their tentacles, to mix it with a cement secreted by large glands, and then to transfer it to the edge of the tube; while the *Terebellidæ* procure the grains of sand for the construction of their tubes by their long and very extensible tentacles. There are also boring Annelids, which pierce limestone and mussel shells, like the horny Molluscs; *e.g.*, *Sabella saxicola*, etc.

The development is simplest when the mother possesses a kind of brood-pouch for the development of the young, *e.g.*, *Spirorbis spirillum* Pag., the eggs and larvæ of which remain within a dilatation of the opercular stalk until the young animals are able to construct a tube for themselves. The free-swimming larvæ of most *Tubicolæ*, on assuming the form of the worm, lose the ciliary apparatus, while tentacles and parapodia make their appearance. In this condition and sometimes surrounded by delicate membranes, they swim about for some time longer, and, having lost their eyes and auditory vesicles, gradually assume the structure and mode of life of the sexual animal (*Terebella*).

Fam. **Saccocirridæ.** With two tentacles on the præstomium, two eyes and the same number of ciliated pits. A single row of retractile parapodia, furnished with simple setæ, on either side of the segments of the body. *Saccocirrus papillocercus* Bobr.. Black Sea and Mediterranean (Marseilles).

Fam. **Arenicolidæ.** Præstomium small and without tentacles. The proboscis is beset with papillæ. There are branched gills on the median and posterior segments. The animals burrow in sand. *Arenicola marina* Lin. (*A. piscatorum* Lam.), North Sea and Mediterranean.

Fam. **Spionidæ** (*Spiodeæ*). The small præstomium sometimes with tentacular processes, usually with small eyes. The oral segment mostly with two long tentacular cirri, which are usually grooved. Cirriform branchiæ are present. *Polydora antennata* Clap., Naples. *Spio seticornis* Fabr., north seas.

Fam. **Chætopteridæ.** Body elongated and separated into several dissimilar regions. Usually two or four very long tentacular cirri. Dorsal appendages of the middle segments have the shape of wings and are often lobed. They live in parchment-like tubes. *Telepsavus Costarum* Clap., Naples. *Chætopterus pergamentaceus* Cuv., West Indies.

Fam. **Terebellidæ.** Body vermiform and thicker anteriorly. The thinner posterior portion is sometimes distinctly marked off as an appendage destitute of setæ. The præstomium is indistinctly separate from the mouth segment. There is frequently a lip above the mouth. Numerous filiform tentacles usually arranged in two tufts. There are pectinate or branched, rarely filamentous, gills on a few of the anterior segments. Dorsal prominences (notopodia) furnished with simple setæ, and ventral transverse ridges (neuropodia) with hooked setæ. *Terebella conchilega* Pall., English coast, Mediterranean. *Amphareto Grubei* Malmgr., Greenland and Spitzbergen. *Pectinaria auricoma* O. Fr. Müll., North Seas, Mediterranean. *Sabellaria* (*Hermella*) *spinulosa* R. Lkt., Heligoland.

Fam. **Serpulidæ.** Body usually distinctly divided into two regions (thorax, abdomen). Præstomium fused with the mouth segment, which as a rule is provided with a collar. The mouth is situated between two semicircular or spirally coiled plates, from the anterior margin of which spring the branchial filaments. These have secondary filaments arranged in single or double rows, and may be supported by a cartilaginous skeleton, and have their bases connected by a membrane. *Spirographis Spallanzanii*, Naples. *Sabella penicillus* Lin., North Seas. *S. Köllikeri* Clap., Mediterranean. *Protula Rudolphi* Risso, Mediterranean. *Filigrana implexa* Berk., Norwegian and English coasts. *Serpula norvegica* Gunn., North Sea and Mediterranean. *Spirorbis spirillum* Lin., Ocean.

## *Order* 2.—OLIGOCHÆTA.*

*Hermaphrodite Chætopoda without pharyngeal armature and parapodia. There are no tentacles, cirri, or branchiæ. The development is direct.*

The cephalic region is composed of the præstomium, which projects as an upper lip, and the mouth segment. It does not essentially differ from the following segments so as to form a special region (fig. 309). Tentacles, palps, and tentacular cirri are never found on it, but tactile papillæ are present in great number, as are also peculiar sense organs which resemble taste buds. Eyes either fail or are present as simple pigment spots. Besides the small gland cells of the

* Besides the works of W. Hoffmeister, D'Udekem, and others, compare: E. Claparède, "Recherches anatomiques sur les Annélides, etc., observés dans les Hébrides," Genève, 1860. E. Claparède, "Recherches anatomiques sur les Oligochætes," Genève, 1862. A. Kowalevski, "Embryologische Studien an Würmern und Arthropoden (*Lumbricus, Euaxes*)," Petersburg, 1871. B. Hatschek, "Studien über Entwicklungsgeschichte der Anneliden," Wien, 1878. Fr. Vejdovsky, "Beiträge zur vergleichenden Morphologie der Anneliden. I. Monographie der Enchytræiden," 1879.

hypodermis there is present in the clitellus a deeper glandular layer (*Säulenschicht* Clap.), which consists of finely granular cells embedded in a framework of pigmented and vascular connective tissue and situated between the hypodermis and the external muscular layer. There are but few setæ present, and they are never disposed on special parapodia, but always in simple pits in the integument, by the cells of which they are secreted. There are small secondary bristles which serve as a reserve. The blood is usually red, as in the *Hirudinea*.

The **alimentary canal** is often divided into several regions, the relations of which are most complicated in the *Lumbricidæ*. In *Lumbricus*, the buccal cavity leads into a muscular pharynx, which is probably used for sucking. This is followed by a long œsophagus extending to the 13th segment, and furnished with a thick layer of glandular cells and several glandular dilated appendages (calcareous sacs). The œsophagus is succeeded by a crop, a muscular gizzard, and finally by the intestine itself, the dorsal wall of which is pushed inwards so as to form a longitudinal fold, the *typhlosole* (comparable to a spiral valve). In the *Limicolæ* the alimentary canal is simpler by the absence of a muscular stomach; a pharynx and œsophagus are, however, always present.

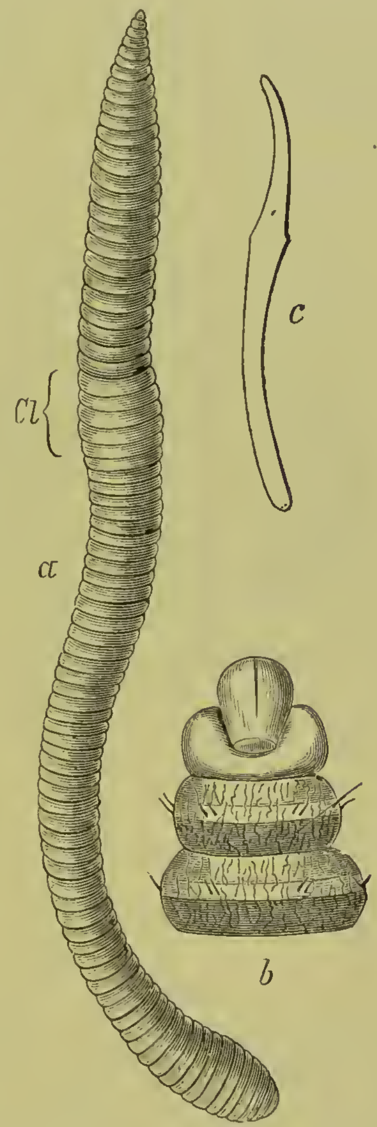



Fig. 309.—*Lumbricus rubellus* (after G. Eisen). *a*, The whole worm; *Cl*, Clitellus. *b*, Anterior end of the body from the ventral side. *c*, Isolated seta.

**Reproduction.**—The *Oligochæta* are hermaphrodite; they lay their eggs either singly or united in greater number in a capsule; and they develop without a metamorphosis. The testes and ovaries are paired and placed in definite segments, usually near the anterior end of the body; they dehisce their products into the body cavity. The generative ducts possess funnel-shaped openings into the body cavity through which the generative products pass, and may co-exist in the same segment with segmental organs (*Lumbricidæ*). In the earth-worm, whose generative organs were first accurately described by E. Hering, the female apparatus consists of two ovaries in the 13th segment,* and two oviducts, which begin with trumpet-shaped openings into the body cavity, contain several eggs in a dilatation and open to the exterior on either side on the ventral surface of the 14th segment. There are in addition in the 9th and 10th segments two pairs of receptacula seminis, which open at the junction of the 9th and 10th and 10th and 11th segment respectively. They are filled with sperm in copulation (fig. 310).

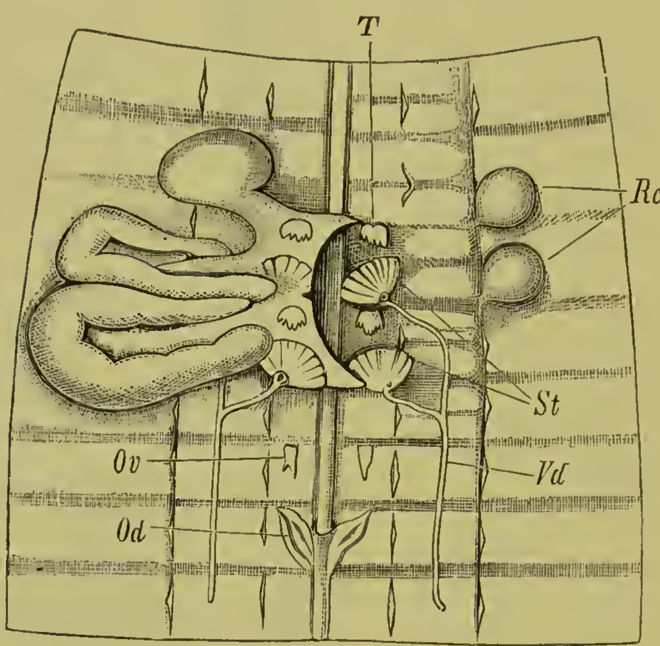



FIG. 310.—Generative organs of *Lumbricus* in segments VIII. to XV. (after E. Hering). *T*, Testes; *St*, the two funnels of the vas deferens on either side; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Ov*, ovary; *Od*, oviduct; *Rc*, receptacula seminis.

The male genital organs consist of two pairs of testes in the 10th and 11th segments, and two vasa deferentia, each of which opens internally by two funnels and to the exterior in the 15th segment. Copulation takes place in June and July on the surface of the earth at night. The worms apply their ventral surfaces to one another and lie in opposite directions, in such a manner that the openings of the receptacula seminis of one worm are opposite the clitellus of the other. During copulation sperm flows out from the openings of the sperm duct and passes backwards in a longitudinal groove to the clitellus, and thence into the receptaculum seminis of the other worm. In *Tubifex* and *Enchytræus* the ovaries may break up into groups of ova which float free in the body cavity. Special albumen glands and also glands which secrete the substance of the shell of the cocoon are often present. In the breeding season the above-mentioned

* The head (præstomium and buccal region) being reckoned as the first segment.

girdle or clitellus, which is formed of a thick glandular layer, is almost always present.

The embryonic development of the *Oligochæta* presents many relations to that of the *Hirudinea*. The unequal segmentation, which is very much alike in the two groups, and the similarity in the method of origin of the mesoderm, from two large cells near the blastopore at the posterior end of the embryo, point to a close relationship between these two groups of Annelids.

A few *Oligochæta*, as for example *Chætogaster*, are parasitic on aquatic animals; the rest of them live, some free in the earth, some in fresh water, and some in the sea.

Sub-order 1. **Terricolæ.** Oligochæta which live principally in the earth. They have segmental organs in the genital segments.

Fam. **Lumbricidæ.** Large earthworms with compact skin and red blood. Without eyes. Tufts of vessels surround the segmental organs. Their activity in boring into the earth is of the greatest importance, loosening and exposing the soil to the action of the weather. *Lumbricus* L., Earthworm. Præstomium distinct from the mouth segment. The clitellus includes a series of segments, and is situated nearly at the end of the anterior quarter of the body *far behind the genital openings.* Setæ elongated, hook-shaped, arranged in four groups in each segment, each group containing two setæ. The earthworm lays its eggs in capsules, into each of which several small ova, with sperm from the receptacula seminis, are emptied; as a rule, however, only one or but a few embryos are developed. The developing embryo takes up with its large ciliated mouth not only the common mass of albumen, but also the other eggs. *L. agricola* Hoffm. = *terrestris* Lin., *L. fœtidus* Sav., *L. americanus* E. Perr. *Criodrilus lacuum* Hoffm.

Sub-order 2. **Limicolæ.** Oligochæta which live principally in water. Without segmental organs in the genital segments.

Fam. **Phreoryctidæ.** Long filiform worms, with thick skin and two rows of slightly curved setæ on each side. *Phreoryctes Menkeanus* Hoffm. Found in deep springs and wells; they seem to feed on the roots of plants.

Fam. **Tubificidæ.** Aquatic worms, provided with four rows of simple or divided, hooked setæ. Hair-like setæ may also be present. The receptacula are in the 9th, 10th, or 11th segment. They live in mud tubes, from which they protrude the posterior end of the body. *Tubifex rivulorum* Lam. The heart is in the 7th, the receptacula in the 9th segment. *T. Bonneti* Clap. (*Sænuris variegata* Hoffm.) The heart in the 8th, receptacula in the 10th segment; both species live in fresh water. *Limnodrilus Hoffmeisteri* Clap., *L. D'Udekemianus* Clap. Is distinguished from *Tubifex* by the presence of hair-like setæ in the upper row of setæ. *Lumbriculus variegatus* O. Fr. Müll. Every segment is provided with a contractile vascular loop and saccular contractile appendages of the dorsal vessel.

Fam. **Naideæ.** Small *Limicolæ* with delicate thin skin and clear, almost colourless, blood. The præstomium is often elongated like a proboscis and fused with the mouth segment. *Nais (Stylaria) proboscidea* O. Fr. Müll. *N. parasita* Schm. Both species have filiform præstomium. *Chætogaster vermicularis* O. Fr. Müll.

## *Sub-class* 2.—GEPHYREA.*

*Worms with cylindrical body, without external segmentation, with terminal or ventral mouth; with cerebral ganglion, œsophageal ring and ventral cord. Setæ are sometimes present.*

The *Gephyrea* possess an elongated cylindrical body and live, as do the *Holothuria*, in sand and ooze in the sea. The characters which distinguish them as Annelids are the possession of an œsophageal ring connected with a cerebral ganglion and of a ventral cord partially surrounded by ganglion cells. The larvæ of the *Chætifera* present traces of segmentation (see below, p. 391), while in the *Achæta* the body cavity remains simple. Of *sense organs*, eye spots have been observed; these in certain *Sipunculidæ* lie directly upon the brain; there are also dermal papillæ, into which nerves enter.

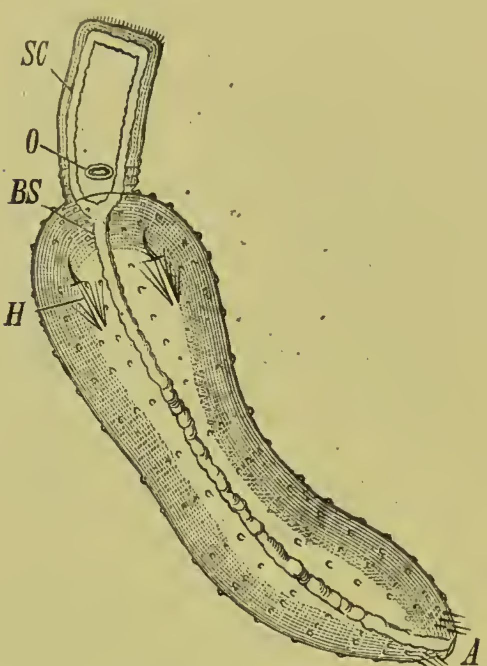



FIG. 311.—Young *Echiurus* from the ventral side (after Hatschek). *O*, Mouth at the base of the proboscis; *SC*, œsophageal commissure; *BS*, ventral cord; *A*, anus; *H*, hooks.

The structure of the integument is similar to that of the *Annelida;* the thick upper cuticular layer rests upon a cellular matrix, and is not unfrequently wrinkled. There is no external segmentation. The connective tissue dermis is of considerable thickness and encloses numerous glandular tubes, which open to the exterior by pores in the epidermis. Below this is the strongly developed dermal muscular tunic, which is regularly composed of an outer layer of circular fibres

* Quatrefages, "Mémoire sur l'Echiure," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*. 3 Sér.. Tom VII. Lacaze-Duthiers, "Recherches sur le Bonellia," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*. 1858. W. Keferstein, "Beiträge zur anatomischen und systematischen Kenntniss der Sipunculiden," *Zeitschr für wiss. Zoologie*, Tom XV., 1865. B. Hatschek, "Ueber Entwickelungsgeschichte des Echiurus," etc. Wien, 1880. J. W. Spengel, "Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Gephyreen. I. *Mittheil. aus der zoologischen station zu Neapel*, 1879; II. *Zeitschr. fur wiss. Zool.*, Tom XIV., 1881.

and an inner layer of longitudinal fibres. The latter are connected with the former and also amongst themselves by net-like anastomoses. These dermal muscles cause the folds of the cuticle. Internally to the longitudinal muscles there is another layer of circular muscles. In the *Chætifera* two hooked setæ are present near the genital opening (fig. 311); these assist locomotion. There may also be present one or two circles of setæ at the posterior end of the body (*Echiurus*).

In the *Chætifera* (fig. 311), the anterior part of the body is elongated to form a kind of proboscis, which projects immovably and corresponds to the præoral lobe (præstomium) of the *Annelida*. The mouth is placed ventrally at the base of the proboscis. In the *Achæta* (*Sipunculidæ*) this proboscis is wanting; the mouth is placed at the extremity of the anterior region of the body, which is surrounded with ciliated tentacles, and can be retracted by means of retractor muscles (fig. 312).

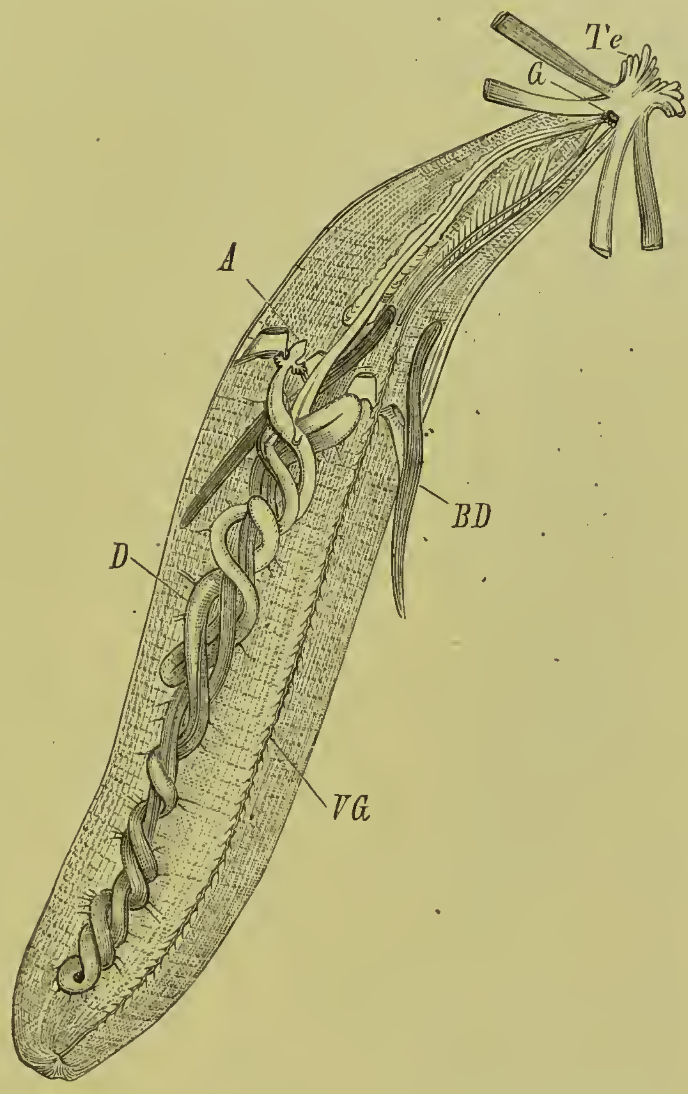



FIG. 312.—*Sipunculus nudus*, laid open from the side (after W. Keferstein). *Te.* Tentacles; *G*, cerebral ganglion; *VG*, ventral nerve cord; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus; *BD* brown tubes (ventral glands).

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth opens into a pharynx, which is sometimes furnished with teeth; this is followed by a ciliated intestinal canal, which is usually longer than the body and disposed in coils in the body cavity. The terminal portion of the intestine is muscular and opens to the exterior by a terminal or dorsally placed anus (fig. 312).

The **vascular system** is probably in communication with the body cavity; it consists of a dorsal vessel, which, as in the *Annelida*, accompanies the alimentary canal, and of a ventral vessel running along the body wall. There are also branches on the alimentary canal and in the tentacles. The blood is either colourless or red, and moves in the same direction as in the Annelids, the current being maintained both by the contraction of certain parts of the vessels and by the cilia which line the walls of the vessels. The corpusculated fluid of the body cavity differs from this vascular blood.

**Excretory organs.**—There are two sets of organs, both of which may be interpreted as segmental organs. One kind, the *anal vesicles* (fig. 314*c*, *Ab*), are only present in the *Chætifera;* they have the form of a pair of tufted tubes, which open, on the one hand, into the body cavity by numerous ciliated funnels and, on the other, into the rectum. The other kind, known as the *brown tubes* (fig. 312, *Bd*) or ventral glands, are placed (one or more pairs) in the anterior part of the body; they also open into the body cavity by a ciliated funnel, and to the exterior on the ventral surface. The latter, like the segmental organs of Annelids, assume the function of seminal vesicles and of oviducts.

**Generative organs.**—The *Gephyrea* are of separate sexes. There are, however, remarkable variations both in the generative glands and their ducts. In *Phascolosoma* amongst the *Achæta* (according to Théel) the generative glands lie at the root of the ventral retractor muscles of the proboscis, and form a ridge from which the generative products are set free. Spermatozoa or ova in various stages of development are found in the body cavity, and thence are carried to the exterior through the two brown tubes (segmental organs) which open on the ventral side.

In *Bonellia* among the *Chætifera* the ovary, which has the form of a thin cord (fold of the body wall) in the posterior half of the body, is attached by a short mesentery to the nerve cord. From the ovary the ova fall into the body cavity, and thence pass into the neighbouring single uterus (fig. 314, *b*, U), which is provided at its base with a trumpet-shaped opening (*Tr*) and opens to the exterior on the ventral surface behind the mouth. This uterus ought probably to be considered morphologically as a segmental organ, which has only been developed on one side. The generative organs of the small Turbellarian-like males which are met with in the uterus of the female of *Bonellia* have the same relations (fig. 313). These rudimentary males are furnished (in many species) with two ventral hooks, in front of which in the anterior region is placed the external opening of the vas deferens. The vas deferens corresponds to the uterus of the female, and is in like manner provided with an internal opening into the body cavity. In *Echiurus* there are two pairs of brown tubes, which function as generative ducts and reservoirs. In *Thalassema* there are, according to Kowalevski, three pairs of such tubes.

The **development** shows many points of similarity with that of the *Annelida*. Between the *Achæta* and *Chætifera*, however, there are considerable differences. In both cases a metamorphosis follows the embryonic development. The larvæ resemble Lovén's larva (larva of Polygordius); but in the *Achæta* they are characterised by a great degeneration of the apical region (præoral lobe) and the absence of a præoral band of cilia.

The remarkable larva known as *Actinotrocha*, which is the young stage of the tubicolous genus *Phoronis*,* is distinguished by the possession of a contractile præoral lobe, behind which there is a circle of ciliated tentacles forming a collar.

The *Gephyrea* are all marine. Some of them live in sand and ooze at considerable depths, also in holes in the rocks and in crevices between stones and corals, and in the shells of snails. Their food is similar to that of Holothurians and many tubicolous Annelids.

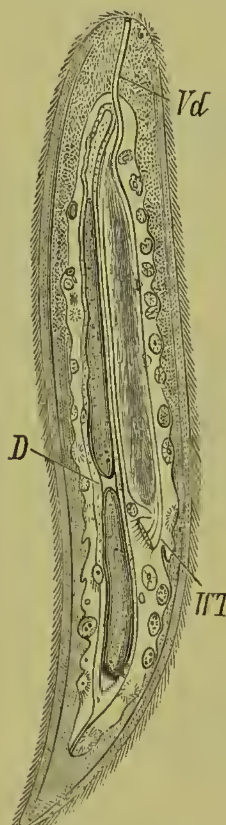



FIG. 313.—Planarian-like male of *Bonellia* (after Spengel). *D.* Intestine; *WT*, ciliated funnel of the vas deferens (*Vd*), which is filled with sperm.

### *Order* 1.—CHÆTIFERA = ECHIUROIDEA.

*Gephyrea characterised by the presence of two strong hooked setæ on the ventral side and by a terminal anus. The mouth is placed at the base of the præoral lobe, which is developed into a proboscis.*

The *Echiuroidea* or chætiferous *Gephyrea* present no external segmentation of their elongated and contractile body; they have, however, in the young state the rudiments of 15 metameres. This

* There should be a third order of *Gephyrea* for these animals.

fact, as well as the formation of the præoral lobe and the development of the ventral hooked setæ, points to a close relationship with the *Chætopoda*. In the adult animal, however, the internal segmentation is very little marked. The dissepiments, with the exception of the first, which forms a partition between the head and the body, are lost, and the segmentation of the ventral cord is only indicated by the distribution of the nerves. The supra-œsophageal ganglion remains at the apical region of the præoral lobe (proboscis); hence the œsophageal commissures are extraordinarily long.

The strongly developed præoral lobe forms a proboscis-like

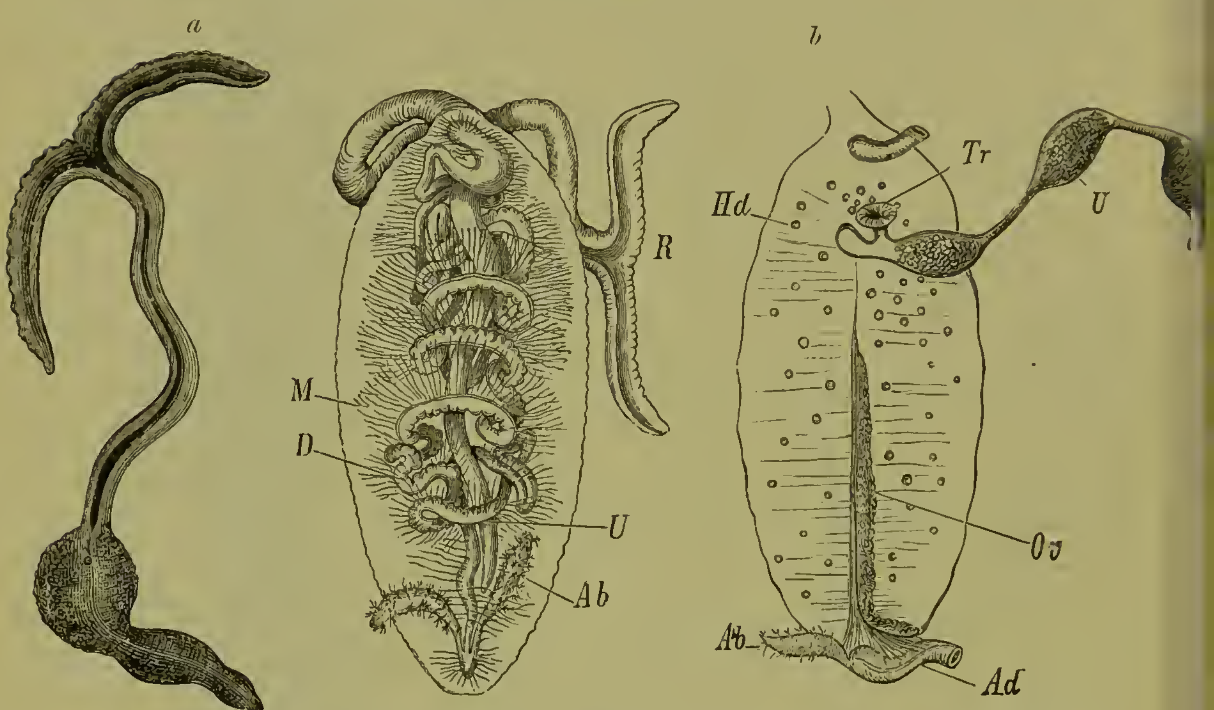



FIG. 314.—*a*, female of *Bonellia viridis* (after Lacaze-Duthiers). *b*, Integument and generative organs after the intestine has been removed. *Hd*, Cutaneous glands; *Ab*, anal vesicle; *Ad*, rectum; *Ov*, ovary; *Tr*, ciliated funnel of the uterus (*U*). *c*, Anatomy of *Bonellia viridis* (after Lacaze-Duthiers). *D*, alimentary canal with anal vesicles (*Ab*); *M*, mesentery; *U*, uterus; *R*, proboscis.

appendage which may develop to a considerable length and become forked (*Bonellia*) (fig. 314 *a*).

A pair of hooked setæ (with reserve setæ in the sheath of each seta) are always present on the first segment of the body. In *Echiurus* there are also one or two circles of setæ at the posterior end of the body. There are from one to three pairs of anterior segmental organs (so-called brown tubes or ventral glands), which open on the ventral surface and are used for the passage outwards of the generative products. Besides these there is also a pair of posterior segmental organs (anal vesicles, fig. 314, *Ab*) in the terminal segment, each of which has a number of peritoneal funnels and opens into the rectum. In *Bonellia* the segmental organ which performs the function of uterus is, like the ovary, single (fig. 314 *b*).

**Development.**—The development of the ovum begins with an unequal segmentation. In *Bonellia* the small cells of the animal pole grow round the four large yolk spheres, which give rise to the entoderm, leaving a small aperture, the blastopore (fig. 110). The *Echiurus* larvæ (fig. 315) are the most accurately known. They present the type of Lovén's larva and possess a strongly developed

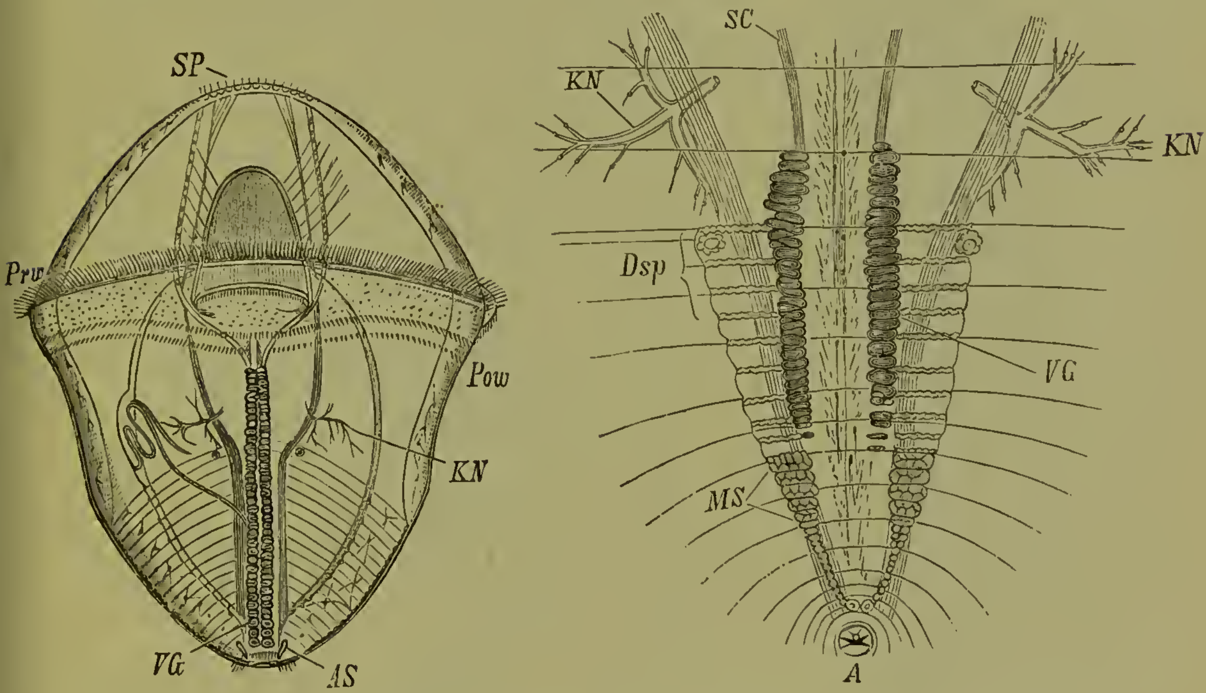



FIG. 315.—*a*, Larva of *Echiurus* from the ventral side (after Hatschek). *SP*, apical plate; *Prw*, præoral circle of cilia; *Pow*, postoral circle of cilia; *Kn*, head-kidney; *Vg*, ventral ganglionic cord connected with the apical plate by the long œsophageal commissures; *AS*, anal vesicle. *b*, Ventral region of the *Echiurus* larva with segmented mesodermal bands; *SC*, œsophageal commissure; *Dsp*, dissepiments of the anterior body segments; *MS*, mesodermal bands; *A*, anus.

præoral circle of cilia (*Prw*), in addition to which there is also a delicate post-oral circle of cilia (*Pow*). Early in larval life a segmental organ, the head kidney or pronephros (*KN*), is developed, one on either side; and behind it a pair of mesoblastic bands makes its appearance and gives rise in the subsequent development to the rudiments of 15 segments (fig. 315 *b*). In the terminal segment, which is surrounded by a circle of cilia, there appear segmental organs, which give rise to the anal vesicles (fig. 315 *a*, *AS*). The rudiments both of the cerebral ganglion and of the ventral cord are derived from growths of the ectoderm,—the former from the apical plate, the latter as a paired thickening of the ventral ectoderm. The two are connected by the œsophageal ring, which is also provided with ganglion cells. In older stages, after the disappearance of the segments, the ciliary apparatus begins to degenerate and finally vanishes; after which two strong hooked setæ make their appearance at the sides of the nerve cord not far from the mouth, and two circles of shorter setæ are formed at the hind end of the body (fig. 316). The præoral lobe of the larva becomes the proboscis of the young *Echiurus* (fig. 311).

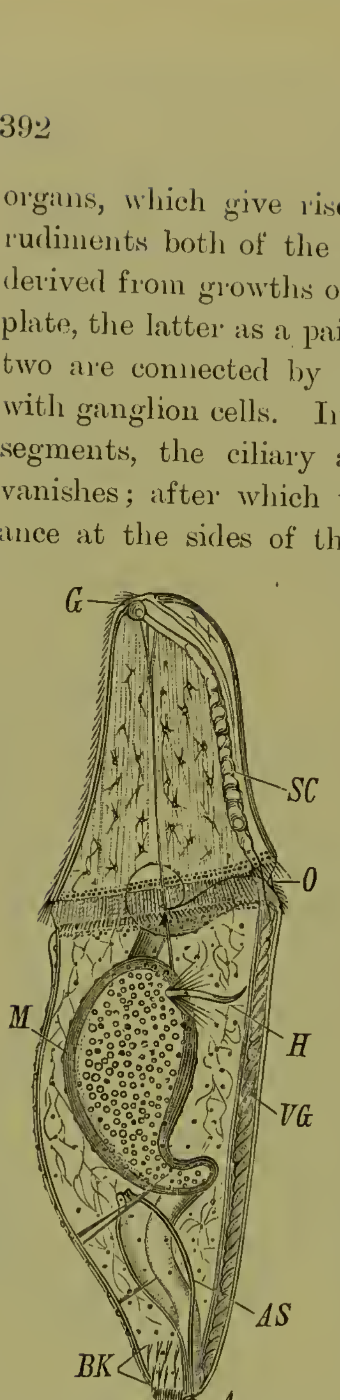



FIG. 316.—Older *Echiurus* larva seen from the side. The head kidney is atrophied. *O*, mouth; *M*, stomach; *A*, anus; *BK*, circles of setæ; *SC*, œsophageal commissure; *AS*, anal vesicles; *G*, cerebral ganglion, developed from the apical plate; *Vg*, ventral nerve cord; *H*, ventral hooks.

Fam. **Echiuridæ.** The anterior end of the body above the mouth is elongated into a proboscis, the under surface of which is grooved. The long œsophageal commissures lie in the proboscis, and meet in front without any cerebral enlargement. Anteriorly and on the ventral side are two setæ for attachment, and on the posterior end of the body there are sometimes circles of setæ. The anus is terminal. *Echiurus Pallasii* Guérin (*Gaertneri* Quatref., St. Vaast), coast of Belgium and England. *Thalassema gigas* M. Müll., Italian coast. *Bonellia viridis* Rolando, Mediterranean. The males are small and rudimentary, and resemble Planarians. They live in the efferent ducts of the female generative organs.

## *Order* 2.—ACHÆTA = SIPUNCULOIDEA.

*Gephyrea with terminal mouth, dorsally placed anus, and without setæ. The anterior region of the body is retractile.*

The *Sipunculoidea* differ from the chætiferous *Gephyrea* in their entire want of all traces of metameric segmentation, in the degeneration of the præoral lobe and in the position of the mouth and anus. The elongated body is destitute of a projecting præoral lobe, so that the mouth, which is frequently surrounded by a circle of tentacles, The cerebral ganglion, œsophageal ring and ventral cord run inside the dermal muscular tunic. Only one pair of segmental organs, known as brown tubes or ventral glands, is present. The blood vascular system is well developed.

**Development.**—The segmentation is complete and is followed by the formation of a gastrula by invagination. The blastopore marks the ventral side. The two posterior marginal cells* of the entoderm move inwards as primitive mesoderm cells, and give rise to the mesoblastic bands which do not undergo segmentation. Invaginations of the ectoderm of the animal pole and ventral surface of the embryo give rise to cephalic and ventral plates respectively, while the remainder of the ectoderm cells grow round these and form an external envelope for the embryo of the nature of a serous membrane (serosa). Cilia project from the latter through the pores of the vitelline membrane and are employed by the embryo in swimming.

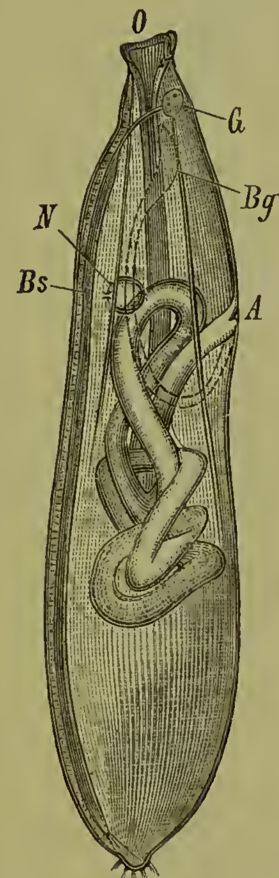



FIG. 317.—Quite young *Sipunculus* still without tentacles (after B. Hatschek). *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *BS*, ventral cord; *N*, nephridium (brown tube); *G*, cerebral ganglion; *Bg*, blood vessel.

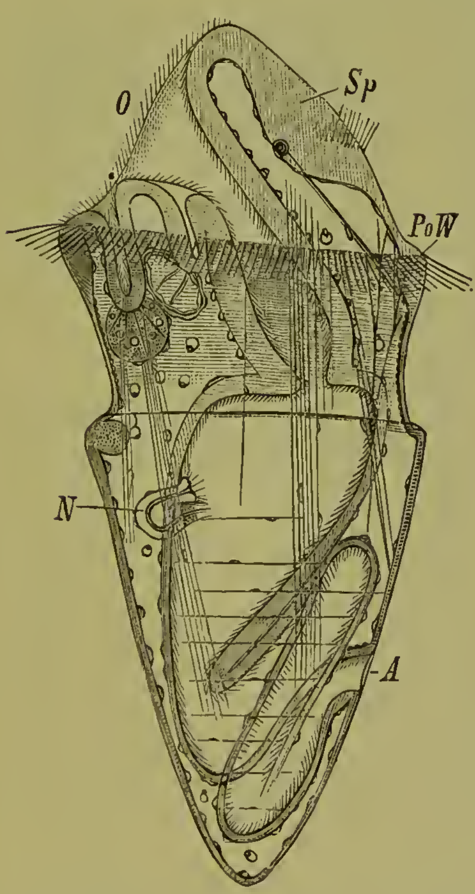



FIG. 318.—Larva of *Sipunculus* (after Hatschek). *O*, Mouth; *Sp*, apical plate; *A*, anus; *PoW*, postoral circle of cilia; *N*, kidney.

splanchnic layers, and give rise to the rudiments of the two segmental organs; while the œsophagus arises as an invagination of the ectoderm, and a postoral circle of cilia is formed around its opening (fig. 318). The serous membrane is cast off with the egg membrane, and the larva then contains all the essential organs of the adult *Sipunculus* except the ventral cord and the blood-vessels. At a later stage, during the growth of the larva, the ventral cord is developed from the ectoderm, the circle of cilia disappears, the first tentacles sprout out at the edge of the mouth, and the metamorphosis of the free-swimming larva into the creeping young *Sipunculus* is completed.

Fam. **Sipunculidæ.** Body elongated and cylindrical, the anterior part retractile. The mouth is surrounded with tentacles, and the anus is dorsal. The intestine is coiled spirally. *Sipunculus nudus* L., Mediterranean. *Phascolosoma læve* Kef., Mediterranean. *Ph. elongatum* Kef. St. Vaast.

Fam. **Priapulidæ.** Anterior part of the body without circle of tentacles. Pharynx armed with papillæ and rows of teeth. Anus at the posterior end of the body and slightly dorsal, above it there usually projects a caudal appendage which bears papilla-like tubes (branchiæ). The intestine is straight. *Priapulus caudatus* O. Fr. Müller. *Halicryptus spinulosus* v. Sieb., Baltic, Spitzbergen.

## *Sub-class* 3.—HIRUDINEA* = DISCOPHORA, LEECHES.

*Body either with short rings or not ringed, without parapodia, with terminal ventral sucker, hermaphrodite.*

The body of the *Hirudinea*, so far as its external form is concerned, recalls that of the *Trematoda*, with which group the *Hirudinea* have often been incorrectly connected.

Externally the body is marked by a number of transverse rings, which are short and may be more or less indistinct or even entirely absent. These rings correspond in no way with the internal segments, which are separated by transverse partitions or dissepiments; but they constitute much shorter portions of the body, four or five of them corresponding to one internal segment. The large sucker at the posterior end of the body serves as an organ of adhesion; and there may be in addition a second smaller sucker, either in front of or

* Brandt and Ratzeburg. "Medicinische Zoologie." 1829. Moquin-Tandon. "Monographie de la famille des Hirudinées." 2nd. édit., Paris. 1846. Fr. Leydig, "Zur Anatomie von Piscicola geometrica," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. I., 1849. H. Rathke. "Beiträge zur Entwickelungsgeschichte des Hirudineen." edited by R. Leuckart, Leipzig. 1862. R. Leuckart. "Parasiten des Menschen." Bd. I., Leipzig, 1863. Van Beneden et Hesse. "Recherches sur les Bdelloides ou Hirudinées et les Trématodes marins," 1863. Robin. "Mémoire sur le développement embryogénique des Hirudinées." Paris, 1875.

surrounding the mouth. There are no parapodia; and setæ, with a few exceptions, are absent. A sharply distinct head is never developed, since the first rings are not essentially different from those following and are never furnished with tentacles or cirri.

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth is situated near the anterior end of the body, sometimes at the bottom of a small anterior sucker (*Rhynchobdellidæ*), sometimes at the base of a projecting spoon-shaped hood, which resembles a sucker (*Gnathobdellidæ*) (fig. 319). The mouth leads into a muscular pharynx provided with glands. The anterior part of the pharynx, which may be distinguished as the buccal cavity, is armed (*Gnathobdellidæ*) with three serrated chitinous plates (fig. 319, *a*, *b*), or more rarely with a dorsal and ventral plate (*Branchiobdellidæ*), or it is provided with a protrusible proboscis, which lies free in its anterior part (*Rhynchobdellidæ*). The pharynx leads into a stomach, which forms a straight tube in the axis of the body and sometimes shows constrictions, which correspond with the segments; sometimes it is produced into a larger or smaller number of lateral cæca. From the stomach a short rectum, which is sometimes also provided with cæca, leads to the anus. The anus is placed at the posterior pole of the body, dorsal to the sucker.

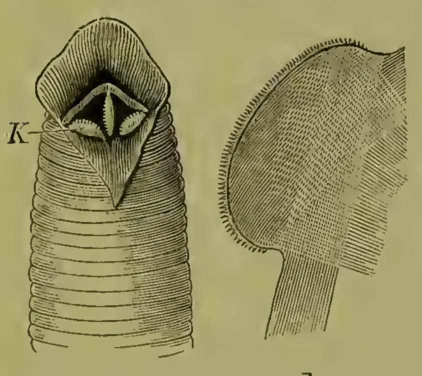



FIG. 319.—*a* Cephalic region of the Medicinal Leech. The three jaws are visible. *b*, One of the jaws isolated with the finely serrated free edge.

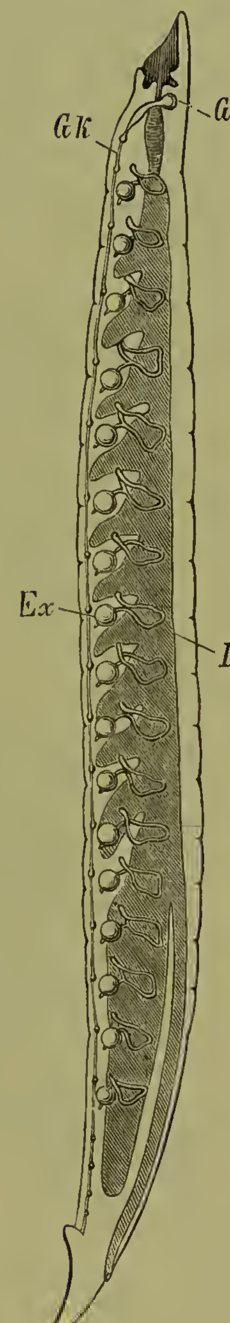



FIG. 320.—Longitudinal section through the Medicinal Leech (after R. Leuckart). *D*, intestinal canal; *G*, cerebral ganglion; *Gk*, ganglionic chain; *Ex*, excretory canals or segmental organs (water vascular system).

**Excretory organs.**—Segmental organs are present, one pair to each segment in the middle region of the body. Their number, however, varies very considerably, since, for instance, *Branchiobdella astaci*, parasitic on the gills of the cray-fish, has but two pairs, while the *Gnathobdellidæ* usually possess seventeen pairs.

Unicellular glands are present in the Hirudinea in great numbers in the skin and in the deeper layers of the connective tissue. The former secrete a finely granular mucous fluid, which covers the skin; while the more deeply situated glands, which lie beneath the dermal muscular tunic, secrete a clear viscid substance, which quickly hardens outside the body and is used to form the cocoons when the eggs are laid. These glands are especially numerous in the region of the genital openings.

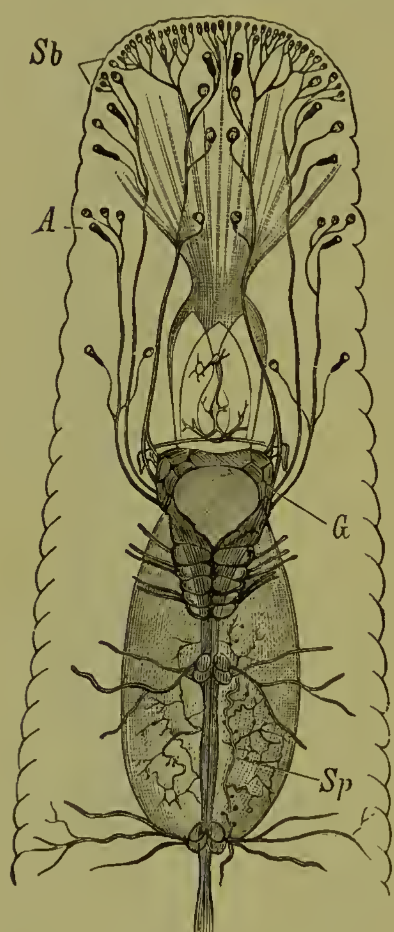



FIG. 321.—Anterior end of *Hirudo* (after Leydig). *G*, Cerebral ganglion with subœsophageal ganglionic mass; *Sp*, sympathetic; *A*, eyes; *Sb*, sense organs.

A **blood-vascular** system is always present, but in different degrees of development. Portions of the body cavity are transformed into vessel-like trunks, and as a result of this organs which lie in the body cavity seem to be enclosed in blood sinuses. The two lateral vessels and the median blood sinus, which always encloses the ventral ganglionic chain and sometimes also the alimentary canal (*Clepsine*, *Piscicola*), may be interpreted in this manner. In most of the *Gnathobdellidæ* the blood is red, the colour being due to the fluid part of the blood and not to the corpuscles.

Special **respiratory organs** are wanting, excepting in *Branchellion* and some allied leeches, which possess leaf-like branchial appendages.

The **nervous system** * in all cases is highly developed. The cerebral ganglia are characterized by a peculiar arrangement of the nerve cells which give rise to swellings on the surface of the ganglia (described by Leydig as a follicular arrangement) (fig. 321).

* Hermann, "Das Centralnervensystem von Hirudo medicinalis." München. 1875.

This is also the case with the ganglia of the ventral cord, and especially with the sub-œsophageal ganglia, on which there are often four longitudinal series of such ganglionic swellings, two median and ventral, and two lateral projecting dorsally. The two longitudinal trunks of the ventral ganglionic chain are invariably closely approached to one another in the middle line, and their ganglia are connected together in pairs by transverse commissures. In the *Gnathobdellidæ* two nerve trunks are given off to the right and left from each pair of ganglia, while from the brain and the last ganglion, which may be called the caudal ganglion and is formed of several ganglia fused together, a much greater number of nerves pass off. The nerves passing off from the brain supply the sense organs and the muscles and skin of the cephalic disc (anterior sucker); the nerves of the ventral chain are distributed in their proper segments, and those of the terminal ganglion supply the ventral sucker. An unpaired median longitudinal cord (Faivre, Leydig), which passes from ganglion to ganglion between the two halves of the ventral cord, most probably corresponds to the unpaired nerve which Newport discovered in insects. A *system of visceral nerves* was discovered by Brandt. It consists of an intestinal nerve, which arises from the brain and runs close to and above the ganglionic chain and sends branches to supply the cæca of the intestine. Three ganglia, which in the common leech lie in front of the brain and send their nerve plexuses to the jaws and pharynx, are considered by Leydig as enlargements of cerebral nerves and very likely control the movements which occur in swallowing.

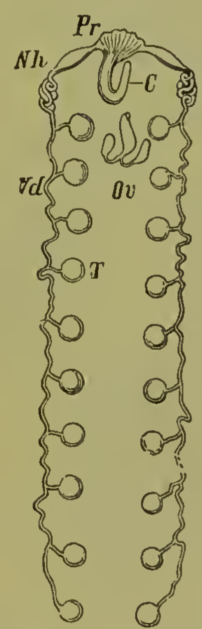



FIG. 322. — Generative apparatus of the Medicinal Leech. *T*, Testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Nh*, epididymis; *Pr*, prostate; *C*, cirrus; *Ov*, ovaries with vagina and female genital opening.

Almost all leeches possess simple eyes on the dorsal surface of the anterior ring. In addition there are cup-shaped organs (in *Hirudo medicinalis* about sixty) on the cephalic rings. These probably give rise to a sense perception comparable to the sensation of taste.

**Generative organs.**—The *Hirudinea* are hermaphrodite. As in many marine *Planaria*, the openings of the male and female generative organs are placed one behind the other in the middle line of the anterior region of the body. The male generative opening lies in front of the female and is usually provided with a protrusible cirrus. The testes lie in pairs in several successive segments and are usually present in considerable numbers (fig. 322). In *Hirudo* there are nine or ten pairs of testicular vesicles, which are connected with a sinuous vas deferens on either side. Each vas deferens is coiled in front to form a kind of epididymis (fig. 322, *Nh*) and is then prolonged into a muscular portion, the ductus ejaculatorius, which unites with that of the other side to form an unpaired copulatory apparatus. This is in connection with a well-developed prostatic gland (*Pr*), and can be protruded either as a two-horned sac (*Rhyncobdellidæ*) or as a long filament (*Gnathobdellidæ*). The female generative apparatus consists either of two long tubular ovaries with a common opening to the exterior (*Rhyncobdellidæ*), or of two short saccular ovaries, two oviducts, a common duct surrounded by an albumin gland, and a dilated vagina with the genital opening (*Gnathobellidæ*) (fig. 323). In copulation a *spermatophore* passes out of the male genital organs, and is either received into the vagina of the other animal or at least becomes attached within the generative opening. In any case the fertilization of the ovum takes place within the body of the mother. The egg is laid soon after. For this purpose the animals seek suitable places on stones or plants, or leave the water and, as *Hirudo medicinalis*, burrow in damp earth. At this period the genital rings are swollen out into the form of a saddle, partly by the turgescence of the generative organs and partly by the great development of the cutaneous glands, the secretion of which is of special importance to the fate of the eggs which are about to be laid. When the eggs are about to be laid, the leech attaches itself firmly by its ventral sucker and, twisting itself about, envelops the anterior part of its body with a viscid mass, which covers especially the genital rings like a girdle and gradually hardens to form a firmer membrane. A number of small eggs and a considerable quantity of albuminous matter then pass out, and the animal with-

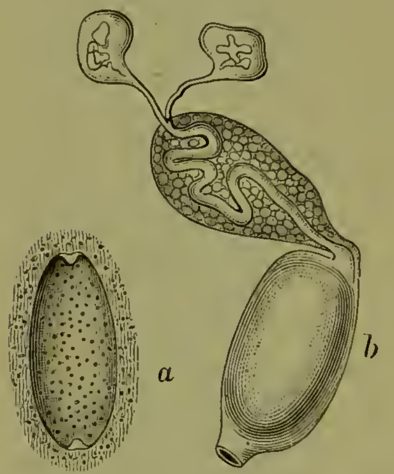



Fig. 323.—*a*, Cocoon, *b*, female generative apparatus of *Hirudo medicinalis* (after R. Leuckart).

draws its anterior end from this barrel-shaped membrane, which is now filled and which, after the animal has left it, becomes in consequence of the narrowing of the terminal openings a tolerably completely closed cocoon. The number of eggs contained in a cocoon varies but is never large. The eggs are small, yet the young leeches when hatched are of considerable size, those of the *Hirudo medicinalis*, for example, are about 17 mm. long, and, excepting the fact that they are not sexually mature, have essentially the organization of the adult animal. The young of *Clepsine* alone are hatched at a very early stage, and differ essentially from the sexual animal both as regards the shape of the body and the internal organisation. They have a simple intestine, are without the posterior sucker, and live a long time attached to the ventral surface of the mother; and it is not until they have received a considerable quantity of newly secreted albuminous matter that they obtain an organization which fits them to lead a free life.

The **development** of the embyro of *Clepsine* among the *Rhyncobdellidæ* and *Nephelis* and *Hirudo* amongst the *Gnathobdellidæ* is better known. The segmentation is always unequal. The mouth is formed early, and through it, after the formation of the pharynx and intestinal canal, the albumen contained in the cocoon is taken into the intestine of the growing embryo by means of swallowing movements of the pharynx.

The Leeches live for the most part in water or temporarily in damp earth. They move partly by "looping" with the help of their suckers, and partly by swimming with active undulations of the usually flattened body. Many of them are parasitic on the skin or the gills of aquatic animals, *e.g.*, on fishes and the cray-fish; most of them, however, are only occasional parasites on the outer skin of warm-blooded animals. Certain forms are predaceous and, as for example *Aulastomum gulo*, eat snails and earthworms, or, like *Clepsine*, suck snails. They do not feed exclusively on any special genus of animals, and their diet is not always the same in the different periods of their existence. *Hirudo medicinalis* in its young stage lives on the blood of insects, then on that of frogs, and only when it has attained sexual maturity is a diet of warm blood necessary to it.

Fam. **Rhyncobdellidæ.** Leeches with proboscis. Body elongated, cylindrical, or broad and flat: with an anterior and posterior sucker, and a powerful protrusible proboscis in the buccal cavity; with paired eyes on the anterior sucker. Organs concerned in the formation of blood corpuscles occur (so-called valves) in the dorsal contractile vessel. *Piscicola* Blainv. (*Ichthyobdellidæ*). *P. geometra* L., on fresh water fish. *P. respirans* Tr., with lateral vesicles which dilate as the blood enters. *Pontobdella muricata* L., on Rays. *Branchellion torpedinis* Sav., *Clepsine* Sav., (*Clepsinidæ*), *Cl. bioculata* Sav., *Cl. complanata* Sav., *Cl. marginata* O. Fr. Müll. *Hæmentaria mexicana* de Fil., *H. officinalis* de Fil., both in the Lagunes of Mexico, the latter used for medicinal purposes. *H. Ghilanii* de Fil., in the river Amazon.

Fam. **Gnathobdellidæ.** Leeches with jaws. Pharynx armed with three frequently serrated jaws, and folded longitudinally. In front of the mouth there is a ringed, spoon-shaped process, which forms a kind of oral sucker. The cocoon has a spongy shell. *Hirudo* L. Usually with 95 distinct rings, of which four are upon the spoon-shaped upper lip. The three anterior rings, the fifth and the eighth, bear the five pairs of eyes. The male genital opening lies between the 24th and 25th, the female between the 29th and 30th rings. The three jaws are finely serrated and can be moved like a circular saw in a manner well adapted to inflict a wound, which readily heals, in the external skin of man. The stomach has eleven pairs of lateral cæca, of which the last pair is very long. The cocoons are deposited in damp earth. *H. medicinalis* L., with the variety distinguished as *officinalis*, possesses 80 to 90 fine teeth on the free edge of the jaws and attains a length of about six inches. They were formerly common in Germany and are still frequently to be found in Hungary and France. They are cultivated in special ponds and take three years to attain sexual maturity. *Hæmopsis vorax* Moq. Tand, the horse-leech. 30 coarse teeth on the edge of the jaws, which enable it to inflict wounds on soft mucous membranes. The horse-leech is indigenous in Europe, and especially North Africa. It attaches itself to the interior of the pharynx of horses, cattle and men. *Aulastomum gulo* Moq. Tand. Also known as the horse-leech, feeds on Mollusca. *Nephelis* Sav., *N. vulgaris* Moq. Tand.

Fam. **Branchiobdellidæ.** The body in the extended condition is nearly cylindrical and is composed of few unequally ringed segments. There is a bilobed cephalic lobe without eyes, with a well-developed sucker at the posterior end of the body. Pharynx without proboscis, with two flat jaws lying one above the other. *Branchiobdella parasita* Henle, *B. astaci* Odier.

## CLASS IV.—ROTATORIA * = ROTIFERA.

*With a retractile ciliated apparatus at the anterior end of the body, with cerebral ganglion and excretory canals; without heart or true vascular system. The sexes are separate.*

The *Rotifera* are Worms which can be derived from Lovén's larva and have nothing to do with the *Arthropoda*, since they are without limbs and do not develop metameres. The body of the *Rotifera* is certainly externally segmented and divided into more or less sharply

* Ehrenberg, "Die Infusionsthierchen als vollkommene Organismen," Leipzig. 1838. Dujardin, "Histoire naturelle des Infusoires," Paris. 1841. Dalrymple, *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc.* 1844. Fr. Leydig, "Ueber den Bau und die systematische Stellung der Räderthiere," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Bd. VI., 1854. F. Cohn, "Ueber Räderthiere," *Zetschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Bd. VII., 1856. Bd. IX., 1858. Bd. XII., 1862. Gosse, "On the Structure, Functions and Homologies of the Manducatory Organs of the class Rotifera," *Phil. Trans.*, 1856. W. Salensky, "Beiträge zur Entwickelungsgeschichte des Brachionus urceolaris," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXII., 1872.

defined and very dissimilar regions, but the internal organs show no trace of any corresponding segmentation. There is therefore no true segmentation, *i.e.*, division of the body into metameres. It is usually possible to distinguish an anterior region of the body, in which the whole of the viscera are situated, and a posterior movable foot-like region, which terminates in two opposed pincer-like styles and is used both in locomotion and for attachment. The broad anterior portion of the body, as well as the narrow posterior region, is often divided by transverse constrictions into several rings, which can be drawn into one another like the rings of a telescope and can be bent more or less freely upon one another.

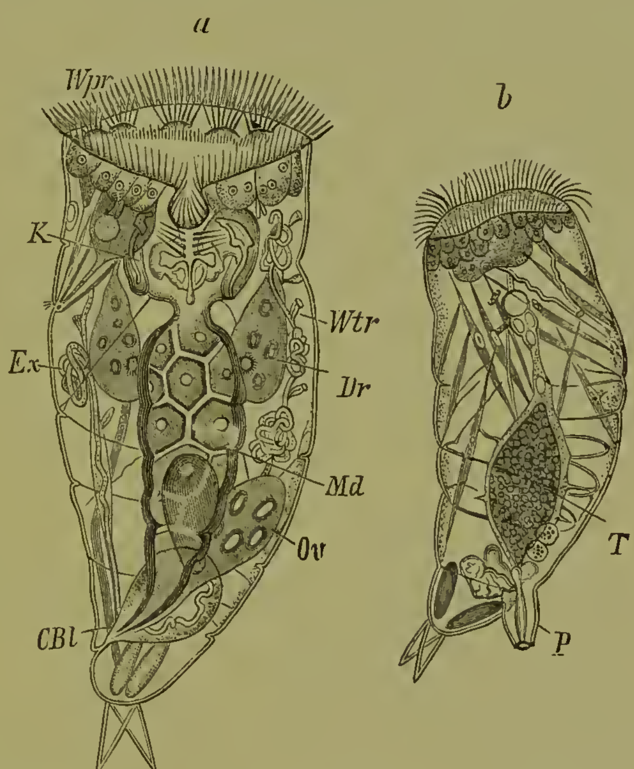



Fig 324.—*Hydatina senta* (after F. Cohn). *a*, Female; *b*, male. *Ror*, Trochal disc; *CBl*; contractile vesicle; *Wtr*, ciliated funnel of the excretory apparatus (*Ex*); *K*, jaws; *Dr*, salvary glands; *Md*, stomach, *Ov*, ovary; *T*, testis; *P*, penis.

The anterior ciliated and usually retractile apparatus which projects at the anterior end, and is termed the *trochal disc*, or from its likeness to a rotating wheel, the *wheel organ*, is an important characteristic of the *Rotifera*. Very frequently, especially in the parasitic forms, this trochal disc is reduced, and in certain cases entirely aborted (*Apsilus*). In *Notommata tardigrada* the trochal disc is reduced to a small ciliated lip round the mouth; in *Hydatina* (fig. 324) to the margin of the head, the whole circumference of which is ciliated. In other cases the ciliated edge projects over the head and forms the so-called double wheel, *e.g.*, *Philodina*, *Brachionus*, or becomes a ciliated cephalic shield, *e.g.*, *Megalotrocha*, *Tubicolaria*. Finally, it may be produced into ciliated processes of various form (*Floscularia*, *Stephanoceros*). As a rule, the cilia form a continuous border, starting from the mouth and returning to it. The cilia are chiefly concerned in locomotion, but in addition they play an important part in attracting small particles of food. There is also a second row of delicate vibratile cilia, extending on either side from the dorsal edge of the trochal disc to the mouth [parts of the continuous border of cilia just mentioned as starting from the mouth], which is placed on the ventral side of the trochal disc. These cilia serve to guide the small food particles which are captured by the trochal disc into the mouth.

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth leads into a dilated pharynx (fig. 324), provided with a special armature. The parts of the armature are in continual movement, and serve for mastication. Following the pharynx there is a short œsophageal tube; this leads into the digestive sac, which is lined with large ciliated cells. The anterior or gastric part of this cavity is wide, and receives two large glandular tubes, which may sometimes be resolved into unicellular glands. They may be explained from their function as salivary or pancreatic glands. The posterior narrow intestinal part usually opens into a cloacal chamber, which is likewise ciliated and opens on the dorsal surface at the point where the foot-like posterior region joins the anterior part of the body. In some *Rotifera*, as for example *Ascomorpha*, *Asplanchna*, the intestine ends blindly.

A **blood-vascular system** is always wanting, and the body cavity is filled with a clear vascular fluid. The structures, erroneously described by Ehrenberg as vessels, are in reality the transversely striped muscles and muscular networks beneath the integument.

**Respiration** is carried on by the general surface of the body; special organs of respiration are wanting.

**Excretory organs.**—The so-called respiratory canals are excretory, and correspond to segmental organs. They consist of two sinuous longitudinal canals with cellular walls and with fluid contents, and they communicate with the body cavity by ciliated funnel-shaped openings placed at the end of short ciliated lateral branches (vibratile organs). They open into the cloaca either directly or by means of a contractile vesicle (respiratory vesicle).

The **nervous system** is allied to that of the Platyhelminthes. The central part of it consists of a simple or bi-lobed cerebral ganglion placed above the œsophagus, and giving off nerves to peculiar cutaneous sense organs and to the muscles. Eyes are often present, and lie upon the brain either as an x-shaped unpaired pigment body or as paired pigment spots provided with refractile spheres. The above-mentioned cutaneous sense organs, which are probably tactile, have the form of prominences beset with hairs and setæ, or even of tubular elongated processes of the skin (respiratory organs of the neck), beneath which the sensory nerves end in ganglionic swellings.

**Generative organs.**—The sexes are separate, and are distinguished by a strongly marked dimorphism. The very small males have neither œsophagus nor intestinal canal, which are reduced to a string-like rudiment; and they leave the egg completely developed. Their generative organs are reduced to a testicular sac filled with spermatozoa, the muscular duct of which opens at the hinder end of the body, sometimes on a papilliform protuberance. The generative organs of the females, which are far larger than the males, consist of a roundish ovary filled with developing ova, and of a short oviduct which contains one or but few ripe ova, and usually opens into the cloaca. Almost all *Rotifera* are oviparous; and their eggs are distinguishable into thin-shelled *summer eggs* and thick-shelled *winter eggs*. They carry both kinds of eggs about on their body, but the summer eggs not unfrequently undergo their embryonic development in the oviduct. The summer eggs probably develop parthogenetically, since at the season of the year when they appear the males are not to be found. The thick-shelled winter eggs, which are often dark coloured, are produced in the autumn and fertilized.

**Development.**—As far as the embryonic development is known, it shows a great agreement with that of many *Gasteropoda* (*Calyptræa*). The ova undergo an irregular segmentation. The cells proceeding from the smaller segmentation spheres become accumulated at one pole, and finally enclose the darker coloured yolk cells completely, so that a two-layered embryo is formed. The cells of the outer layer are much poorer in granules than are those of the central entoderm layer, and form the ectoderm. A depression of the ectoderm is formed on the (later) ventral surface, from the side walls of which the two lobes of the trochal disc grow out (like the oral lobes of mollusc embryos). The hinder portion of the depression becomes the posterior part of the body, at the base of which a pit forming the first rudiment of the cloaca makes its appearance. The mouth and the anterior part of the alimentary canal are developed anteriorly at the bottom of the depression. The ganglion arises from the ectoderm in the cephalic region. There are no reliable observations on the formation of the mesoblast. In the male embryo the development takes a different course, the alimentary canal not being completely developed. The free development takes place either without or with an inconsiderable and sometimes retrogressive metamorphosis. This latter is most striking in the *Floscularidæ*, which are fixed in the adult state.

The *Rotifera* principally inhabit fresh water, in which they swim about by means of the trochal disc, and sometimes they attach themselves to foreign objects by means of the forked glandular foot. When thus attached, they extend the anterior part of the body, and the cilia begin to move. The currents set up by the latter convey to the mouth food material, such as small Infusoria, Algæ, Diatoms. Some species live in gelatinous sheaths and delicate tubes, others (*Conochilus*) are fixed by their foot in a common gelatinous mass, and are united to form a free-swimming colony. A relatively small number are parasitic. It seems that many species are able to endure drying, if it be not too prolonged.

Fam. **Floscularidæ.** Fixed *Rotifera* with a long transversely ringed foot, usually surrounded by gelatinous coverings and tubes. The margin of the head has a lobed or deeply cleft wheel-organ. *Floscularia proboscidea* Ehrbg., *Stephanoceros Eichhornii* Ehrbg., *Tubicolaria najas* Ehrbg., *Melicerta ringens* L., *Conochilus volvox*, Ehrbg.

Fam. **Philodinidæ.** Free, often creeping (in a looping manner) *Rotifera*; with double-wheeled rotatory organ, and jointed, telescopically retractile foot, without gelatinous investment. *Callidina elegans* Ehrbg., *Rotifer vulgaris* Oken (*R. redivivus* Cuv.), *Philodina erythrophthalma* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Brachionidæ.** *Rotifera* with bifid or multifid wheel-organ; with broad, shield-shaped armoured body; and foot ringed, or with short segments. *Brachionus Bakeri* O. Fr. Müll., *B. militaris* Ehrbg., *Euchlanis triquetra* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Hydatinidæ.** Edge of wheel-organ prolonged into numerous processes (multifid) or only sinuous; skin delicate, often ringed; foot short, usually forked, with two setæ or pincer-shaped. *Hydatina* Ehrbg., *H. senta* O. Fr. Müll. with *Enteroplea hydatinæ* Ehrbg., as male. *Notommata tardigrada* Ldg., *N. Brachionus* Ehrbg., *N. parasita* Ehrbg.

Fam. **Asplanchnidæ.** The sac-like unarmoured body is destitute of rectum and anus. *Asplanchna Sieboldii* Ldg., *A. myrmeleo* Ehrbg., *Ascomorpha germanica* Ldg.

Two groups of small animals are allied to the Rotifera:—(1) the **Echinoderidæ** which Dujardin and Greef regarded as connecting links between *Vermes* and *Arthropoda* (*Echinoderes Dujardinii* Clap., *E. setigera* Greef); and (2) the **Gastrotricha** * or **Ichthydina** (*Chætonotus*).

* Compare *E. Metschnikoff*, "Ueber einige wenig bekannte niedere Thierformen." *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XV., 1865. Also the works of H. Ludwig and O. Bütschli.

# CHAPTER X.

## ARTHROPODA.

*Laterally symmetrical animals with heteronomously segmented body and jointed segmental appendages; with brain (supraœsophageal ganglia) and ventral nerve cord (ganglionic chain).*

The most important characteristic which distinguishes the *Arthropoda* from the closely allied segmented worms, and is an essential condition of a higher organization and grade of life, is the possession of jointed segmental appendages which serve as organs of locomotion. In place of the unjointed parapodia of the *Chætopoda*, jointed appendages more adapted for locomotion and confined to the ventral surface, are present. Every segment may possess a ventral pair of appendages which, in the simplest case, are short and consist of only a few joints (*Peripatus*) (fig. 325). While in the *Annelida* loco-

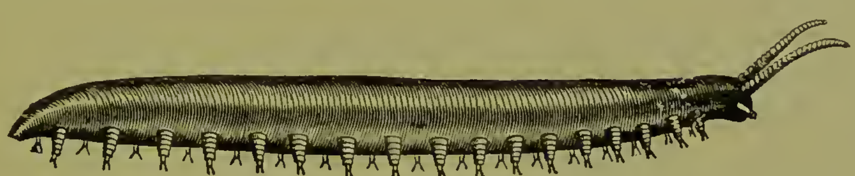


FIG. 325.—*Peripatus capensis* (after Moseley).

motion is effected by the movements of the segments and undulatory movements of the whole body, in the *Arthropoda* the function of locomotion is removed from the chief axis of the body to the secondary axes, *i.e.*, to the paired appendages, with the result of the possibility of a much more efficient discharge of the function. The appendages enable the *Arthropoda* not only to swim and creep with much greater ease and speed, but also to execute various kinds of more complicated movement, *e.g.*, running, climbing, springing, and flying. The Arthropoda are, therefore, true terrestrial and aërial animals.

The high development of the organs of locomotion as paired appendages leads of necessity to a second essential property, viz., to the *heteronomy* of the segmentation, and in connection with this to the hardening of the outer layer of the skin to form a firm exo-skeleton. If the function of the limbs is to be perfectly discharged, there will be need of a considerable mass of muscle, the points of attachment of which can only be furnished by the integument of the body. The insertions of the appendages and their muscles, therefore, require rigid surfaces, which are obtained partly by the development of internal chitinous tendons and plates, and partly by the hardening of the integument and the fusion of several segments to form larger armoured regions. It is only when the movements are simpler and resemble those of Annelids, that all the segments remain independent and bear similar appendages along the whole length of the body (larvæ, *Myriapoda*). In general, three regions of the body can be distinguished, the *head*, the *thorax*, and the *abdomen*, the appendages of which possess respectively a different structure and function (fig. 326).


FIG. 326.—Head, thorax and abdomen of an *Acridium*, seen from the side. *St*, Stigmata; *T*, tympanum.

The **head** constitutes the short and compact anterior region of the body, is covered by a hard integument, encloses the brain and bears the sense organs and mouth-parts (jaws). The appendages of this region are modified to form the *antennæ* and *jaws*. The head of Arthropods, as compared with that of Annelids, contains, besides the frontal (præoral) or antennal segment and the oral segment, in

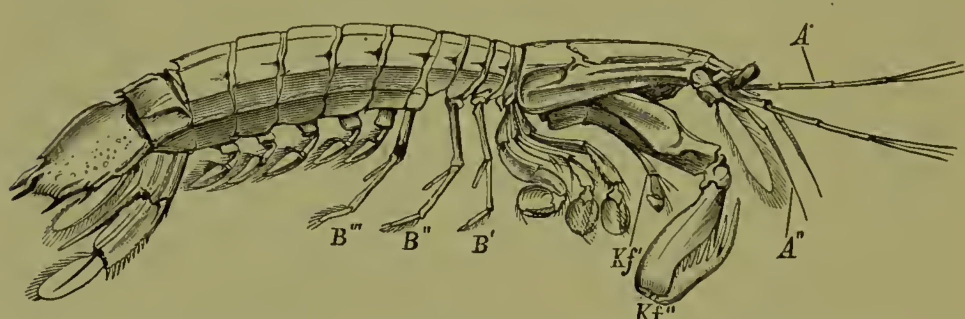



FIG. 327.—*Squilla mantis*. *A′*, *A″* Antennæ; *Kf′*, *Kf″* the anterior maxillipeds on the cephalo-thorax; *B′*, *B″*, *B‴*, the three pairs of biramous feet.

addition at least one jaw segment, the appendages of which may, in larval life (*Nauplius*), still function as legs. Usually, however, several of the succeeding segments whose appendages function as jaws form part of the head.

The middle portion of the body, or **thorax**, is likewise distinguished by a relatively intimate fusion of some or all of its segments, as well as by the hardness of its integument. It is sometimes sharply marked off from the head, sometimes fused with the head to form a region of the body called the *cephalothorax* (fig. 327). The thorax bears the appendages which are of most importance in locomotion.

The posterior portion of the body, or **abdomen**, is composed of distinctly separate rings, and is, as a rule, without appendages. When the latter are present, they serve partly as aids to locomotion (abdominal feet), partly for respiration, or for carrying the eggs and for copulation. More rarely, as for example in the scorpions, the abdomen is divided into a broad anterior region, the *præabdomen*, and a narrow movable posterior region, the *postabdomen*.

The skin, as in the *Annelida*, consists of two different layers,—an external firm, usually homogeneous chitinous layer, and an internal soft layer, which is composed of polygonal cells (*matrix*, *hypodermis*) and secretes in layers the at first soft chitinous cuticle (fig. 22). The latter usually becomes hardened by the deposition of calcareous salts in the chitinous basis, so as to form the firm exoskeletal armour, which, however, is interrupted between each segment by thin connecting membranes. The various cuticular appendages of the skin (fig. 22, *a*, *b*, *c*), which may have the form of simple or pennate hairs, of filaments, setæ, spines and hooks, originate as processes and outgrowths of the cellular matrix. The chitinous cuticle together with its appendages is from time to time, principally in the young stage during the period of growth, renewed, the old cuticle being cast off as a continuous membrane (ecdysis, or moult).

The muscular system never constitutes a continuous envelope but the muscles are usually broken up into segments which correspond with the segmentation of the animal. The muscles of the body are arranged in longitudinal and transverse bundles in the different segments, and are frequently interrupted. There are in addition large groups of muscles, which move the appendages. The muscular fibres are always cross-striped.

The internal organization is allied to that of the *Annelida*, but does not present such a well-marked internal segmentation.

The **nervous system** consists of brain, œsophageal commissures and a ventral cord. The latter usually has the form of a ganglionic chain (fig. 328), and is placed beneath the alimentary canal. Sometimes, however, it exhibits great concentration, and may have the form of an unsegmented ganglionic mass beneath the œsophagus. The segmentation of the ventral ganglionic chain presents in details the greatest variations; in general, however, it corresponds to the heteronomous segmentation of the animal, in that in the larger regions of the body, which have arisen by fusion of several segments, an approximation or fusion of the corresponding ganglia has taken place. In one case only, viz., in the *Pentastomidæ*, which in form and grade of life resemble the intestinal worms, the dorsal part of the œsophageal commissure is not swollen out to form a cerebral ganglion, and the central parts of the nervous system are compressed together into a common ganglionic mass beneath the œsophagus. In all other cases the brain is a large ganglionic mass lying above the œsophagus, and connected by means of the œsophageal ring with the anterior ganglion of the ventral chain, which is usually placed in the head and is known as the subœsophageal ganglion (fig. 328). The sense nerves arise from the brain, while the ganglia of the ventral chain send nerves to the muscles, organs of locomotion and the body covering.

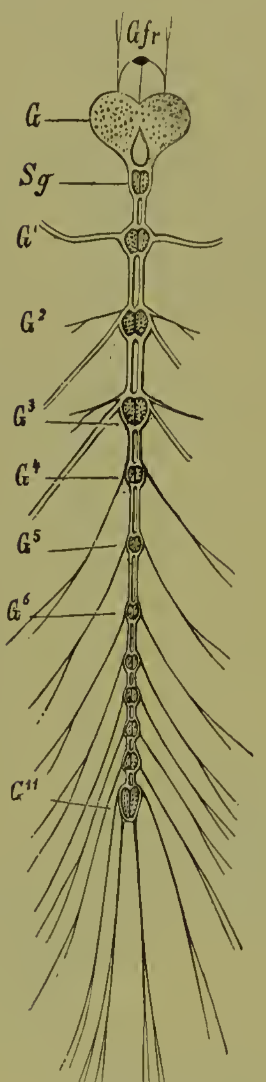



FIG. 328.—Nervous system of the larva of Coccinella (after Ed. Brandt). *Gfr*, Frontal ganglion; *G*, brain; *Sg*, subœsophageal ganglion; *G'* to *G''*, ganglia of the ventral chain in the thorax and abdomen.

**Visceral nervous system.**—In addition to the brain and ventral ganglionic chain, which are comparable to the cerebro-spinal system of *Vertebrata*, we can distinguish in the larger and more highly organised *Arthropoda* a visceral nervous system (*sympathetic*), which consists of special ganglia and plexuses connected with the other system and specially distributed to the alimentary canal. In the higher *Arthropoda*, paired and unpaired *visceral* nerves are very generally present, both of which have their origin in the brain.

**Sense organs.**—Eyes are most generally distributed, and are only absent in a few parasitic forms. In their simplest form they are paired or unpaired structures placed upon the brain, provided with refractive bodies, and with or without a simple lens (stemmata, or simple eyes). The compound eyes, which are always paired, are much more complicated. They are distinguished by the presence of nervous rods and crystalline cones, and may be divided into faceted eyes and eyes with smooth cornea (*Cladocera*). The former possess numerous lenses, and are sometimes placed on movable stalks (*Decapoda*). Occasionally accessory eyes are found on other parts of the body, on the jaws and between the legs of the abdomen (*Euphausia*).

*Auditory organs* are found most frequently in the Crustacea as auditory vesicles with otoliths in the basal joint of the anterior antennæ, or rarely in the appendage of the abdomen known as the fan (tail of Mysis). In *Insecta*, auditory organs of a very different structure have been discovered.

*Olfactory organs* are also widely distributed. They are situated on the surface of the antennæ, and consist of delicate tubes or peculiar conical projections, beneath which the sense nerves end in ganglionic swellings.

*Tactile organs.* The antennæ and palps of the oral appendages and the ends of the limbs have a tactile function. These parts are provided with peculiar hairs and setæ, beneath which nerves end in ganglionic swellings.

**Alimentary canal.**—An independent digestive apparatus is always present, but its structure and degree of development are very various. The alimentary canal is only exceptionally degenerated and absent (*Rhizocephala*). The mouth is placed on the ventral surface of the head. It is furnished with a projecting upper lip, and usually with paired appendages, which are used either for masticating or for piercing and sucking. A narrow or wide œsophagus leads into the intestine, which either simply traverses the axis of the body or is disposed in several coils. The œsophagus and midgut (chyle stomach) may even be divided into several regions, and may possess salivary glands and hepatic appendages of various size.

**Excretory organs.**—Urinary organs are widely distributed. In the simplest form they appear as cells on the surface of the intestine (lower Crustacea), in a more highly developed state as tubular filiform diverticula of the hindgut (*Malpighian tubes*) (fig. 329). In the *Crustacea*, glands are present in the shell (*shell glands*) and in the base of the posterior antennæ; they are regarded as the morphological equivalents of segmental organs.

The **circulatory** and **respiratory organs** present the greatest differences in the various groups of the Arthropoda. In the simplest case the clear, more rarely coloured blood fluid, which is often corpusculated, fills the body cavity and the interstices of all the organs, and is circulated in an irregular manner by the movements of the different parts of the body. Not unfrequently (*Achtheres* and *Cyclops*) the circulation is effected by the regularly repeated movements of certain organs (intestine, vibratile plates, etc.); in other cases, a short saccular heart is present dorsally above the intestine; or a long vascular tube (the *dorsal vessel*), divided into chambers, serves as a propelling organ. From this, vessels (*arteries*) may arise, which conduct the blood in definite directions. Vessels for returning the blood (*veins*) may also be present. These either begin in the body cavity, or are connected with the ends of the arteries by capillary vessels. The vascular system seems never to be completely closed, since even when the circulation is most complete, lacunar spaces of the body cavity are found inserted in the course of the vessels.

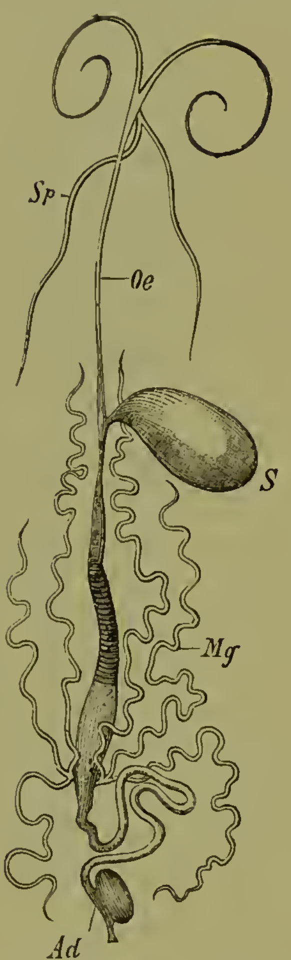



FIG. 329.—Alimentary canal of *Pontia brassicæ* (after Newport). *R*, Proboscis (Maxillæ); *Sp*, salivary glands; *Oe*, œsophagus; S, sucking stomach; *Mg*, Malpighian tubes; *Ad*, rectum.

Respiration is very frequently effected, especially in the smaller and more delicate species of *Arthropoda*, by means of the entire surface of the body. In the larger aquatic forms, the function of respiration is assumed by special tubular, usually branched appendages of the limbs (*branchiæ*); while in the air-breathing *Insects*, *Centipedes*, *Scorpions*, and *Spiders*, respiration is performed by means of internal branched tubes filled with air (*tracheæ*) or by pulmonary sacs (*fan tracheæ*).

The **reproduction** of the *Arthropoda* is usually sexual, but sometimes takes place by the development of unfertilized ova (*parthenogenesis*). Ovaries and testes are in their origin paired, as are also the generative ducts, which often have a common terminal portion and open by a median generative aperture (*Insecta*, *Arachnoidea*). With a few exceptions (*Cirripedia*, *Tardigrada*), the sexes are separate. Males and females frequently differ essentially in their entire form and organization. In rare cases, for example in the parasitic

*Crustacea*, there is such a marked sexual dimorphism that the males remain small and dwarfed, and are attached like parasites to the body of the female. During the act of copulation, which is often limited to the external union of the two sexes, the spermatophores are fastened to the female genital segment or thrust into the vagina by the organ of copulation, whence they sometimes pass into a special receptaculum seminis. Most *Arthropoda* are oviparous, but in almost every group there are viviparous forms. The eggs are frequently carried about by the mother, or deposited in protected places where food may easily be obtained. The embryonic development (*i.e.*, development within the egg) is characterised, except in the case of the small stout embryos of the *Cyclopidæ*, *Pentastomidæ* and *Acarina*, by the presence of a ventrally placed primitive streak, from which especially the ganglionic chain and the ventral parts of the segments proceed. The more or less complex embryonic development is usually followed by a complicated metamorphosis, during which the young form as larva undergoes several ecdyses. Numerous segments and parts present in the adult are not unfrequently wanting in the just-hatched larva; in other cases, all the segments of the adult are indeed present, but are not as yet fused together to form regions. In such cases, the larvæ resemble the *Annelida* in their homonomous segmentation, and in their locomotion and mode of life. The metamorphosis may however be retrogressive; the larvæ are hatched with sense organs and appendages, but in the further course of development they become parasitic, lose their eyes and organs of locomotion, and develop into strange unsegmented (*Lernææ*) or entozoon-like (*Pentastomidæ*) forms.

The Arthropoda are no exception to the general rule that the aquatic forms which breathe by gills are lower and, from a genetic point of view, older than the air-breathing members of the same group, inasmuch as the *Branchiata* or *Crustacea* are the older, the *Tracheata* the younger types.

## CLASS I.—CRUSTACEA.*

*Aquatic Arthropoda, which breathe by means of gills. They have two pairs of antennæ; numerous paired legs on the thorax, and usually also on the abdomen.*

* Milne Edwards, "Histoire naturelle des Crustacés," 3 vol. and atlas, 1838-1840. C. Claus, "Untersuchungen zur Erforschung der genealogischen Grundlage des Crustaceensystems." Wien, 1876.

The *Crustacea*, whose name is derived from the body covering (which is often hardened), are principally aquatic animals. Some forms, however, can live on land, and possess respiratory organs adapted for breathing air. An important character of the group is the great number of paired appendages. The appendages of all the segments, even those of the head, may be used in locomotion (fig. 330). As a rule, the head fuses with the thorax, or at any rate with one or more of the thoracic segments, to form a *cephalothorax*; which is followed by the remaining free thoracic segments. Sometimes, however, these two regions of the body remain distinct. The head and thorax are seldom so sharply marked off from one another as, for example, in the Insecta: usually certain appendages, the so-called maxillipeds, occupy an intermediate position between legs and jaws, and being placed at the boundary between the two regions may be reckoned either as belonging to the head or the thorax. The fusion of the segments may be very extensive; not only may the head and thorax be united, but the boundary between thorax and abdomen may vanish, and the segmentation may even disappear. As a general rule, the form of the body presents extraordinary differences in the various groups. A reduplicature of the skin arching over the thorax and covering the body as a shell is frequently present. This fold of the integument constitutes, in extreme cases, a mantle-like investment, which may develop calcareous plates and occasion a certain resemblance to Lamellibranchs (*Cirripedia*). In other cases the body has quite lost its segmentation, and the animal resembles a worm (*Lernææ*, *Sacculina*).

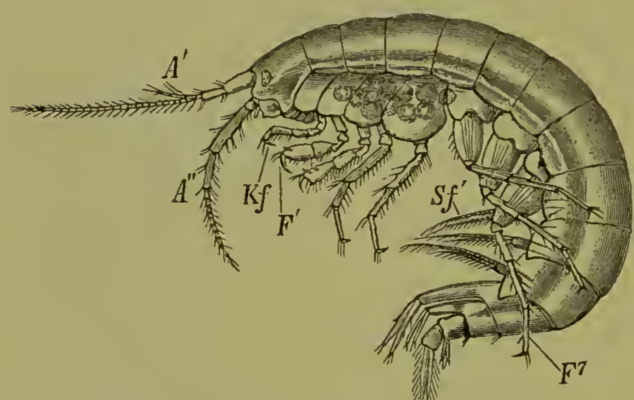



FIG. 330.—*Gammarus neglectus* (after G. O. Sars). *A'*, *A''*, The two antennæ; *Kf*, maxilliped; *F'* *F⁷*, first to seventh thoracic feet; *Sf*, anterior swimming feet.

On the head there are usually two pairs of antennæ, which function as sense organs and sometimes also as organs of locomotion or of prehension. There is a pair of large jaws (the *mandibles*), one on each side of the mouth, over which a small plate, known as the *upper lip*, often projects. The mandibles are simple but very rigid and hard masticating plates, which are usually toothed and correspond morphologically to the coxal joint of a limb, the following joints developing into a palp-like appendage (*mandibular palp*). Then follow one or more pairs of weaker jaws (*maxillæ*), and one or more pairs of maxillipeds, which more or less resemble the legs and, in parasitic forms, are often used for adhering (fig. 331). In parasitic forms, the upper and under lips not unfrequently give rise to a suctorial proboscis, in which the styliform mandibles are placed. The appendages of the thorax, of which at least three pairs are present (*Ostracoda*), present an extremely various structure, in accordance with the mode of life and the use made of them. They are either broad leaf-shaped swimming feet (*Phyllopoda*), or biramous appendages (*Copepoda*); they may serve to produce currents in the water like the feet of the *Cirripedia*, or they may be used for crawling, walking, and running (*Isopoda*, *Decapoda*). In the latter case, some of them end with hooks or chelæ. Finally the appendages of the abdomen, which frequently itself moves *in toto* and assists in locomotion, are either exclusively locomotory as jumping or swimming feet (*Amphipoda*), in which case they usually differ from the appendages of the thorax; or they serve with their appendages for respiration, as well as for carrying the eggs, and for copulation (*Decapoda*).

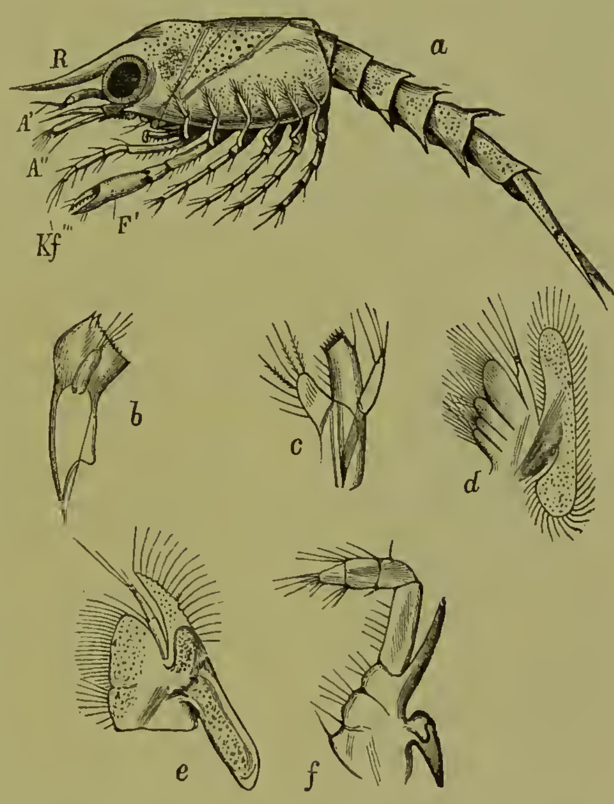



Fig. 331.—Young stage (larva) of the Lobster (after G. O. Sars). *a*, The larva seen from the side; *R*, rostrum; *A'*, *A''*, antennæ; *Kf'''* third maxilliped; *F'*, anterior ambulatory leg. *b*, mandible with palp; *c*, anterior maxilla with two blades and palp; *d*, posterior maxilla with vibratile plate (scaphognathite); *e*, first, *f*, second maxilliped.

The internal organization is not less varied than is the external form.

In the lower forms, the **nervous system** often consists of a ganglionic mass, which surrounds the œsophagus and is not further segmented. This ganglionic mass corresponds to the brain and ventral cord and gives off all the nerves. In the higher *Crustacea*, a distinct brain and ventral ganglionic chain, which is usually elongated and of very varied form, as well as a rich plexus of visceral nerves and ganglia of the sympathetic system are always present.

Of **sense organs**, eyes are the most widely distributed. They may have the form either of simple eyes (paired or unpaired), or compound eyes with smooth or faceted cornea; in the latter case they are often placed on movable stalks, which are attached to the lateral regions of the head. *Auditory organs* are also present usually in the basal joint of the anterior antenna, rarely in the caudal plate at the posterior end of the body (*Mysis*). The delicate hairs and filaments of the anterior antenna are probably *olfactory organs.*

The **digestive canal** is, as a rule, straight, extending from the mouth to the anus at the posterior end of the body. In the higher forms the œsophagus is usually dilated in front of the mesenteron (midgut) into a stomach or crop, which is armed with chitinous plates. The mesenteron is provided with simple or ramified hepatic cæca.

**Excretory organs.**—The so-called shell glands of the lower *Crustacea* are regarded as urinary organs, as are also the glands opening at the base of the posterior antenna in the *Malacostraca.* In the *Entomostraca* the latter are only preserved during larval life. Short tubes, which correspond to the Malpighian tubes of the Tracheata, may also be present on the rectum (*Amphipoda*).

The **circulatory organs** present every possible degree of perfection, from the greatest simplicity to the highest complication of an almost closed system of arterial and venous vessels. The blood is usually colourless, but is sometimes green or even red, and as a rule contains cellular blood corpuscles.

**Respiratory organs** are either entirely wanting, or are represented by branchial tubes on the thoracic or abdominal appendages. In the first case they are often contained in a special branchial cavity at the sides of the cephalothorax.

**Generative organs.**—With the exception of the *Cirripedia* and certain *Isopoda*, all *Crustacea* are of separate sexes. The male and female generative organs usually open on the boundary of the thorax and abdomen, either on the last or the antepenultimate thoracic ring, or on the first abdominal segment. The two sexes are very often distinguished by a number of external characteristics.

The males are smaller, sometimes even dwarfed, and then attached to the females like parasites. They almost always possess apparatuses for holding the females and for transferring the spermatophores during copulation. The larger females, on the other hand, frequently carry the eggs about with them in sacs, the membranes of which are secreted by the so-called cement glands.

**Development** takes place either directly or by metamorphosis. The metamorphosis is sometimes retrogressive. When the development is direct, the young animals, on leaving the egg, already have the body form of the adult. The larva known as the *Nauplius* (fig. 332) is of great importance as a point of departure. This larva possesses an oval body, on the ventral side of which are present three pairs of appendages for the sense of taste, the prehension of food, and for locomotion. These appendages correspond to the two pairs of antennæ and mandibles respectively. Parthenogenesis is said to occur in certain groups (*Phyllopoda*).

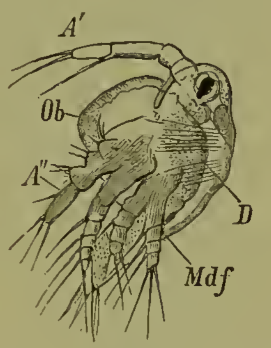



FIG. 332.—Nauplius larva of *Balanus*, seen from the side. *A'* First appendage (first antenna); *A''*, second appendage (second antenna); *Mdf*, third appendage (mandible); *Ob*, upper lip; *D*, intestine.

Almost all *Crustacea* are carnivorous. Some of them suck the juices of living animals on which they are parasitic.

For the systematic review of this heterogeneous group, it is convenient to divide the numerous orders into two series.

1. The small simply organized *Crustacea*, the number and form of whose appendages is very various, will be included as **Entomostraca** (O. Fr. Müller). To this group belong the orders *Phyllopoda*, *Ostracoda*, *Copepoda*, and *Cirripedia*.

2. The higher *Crustacea*, characterised by a definite number of segments and appendages, may be grouped together as **Malacostraca** (Aristotle). In this group are included the orders of **Arthrostraca** (*Amphipoda and Isopoda*), and **Thoracostraca** (*Cumacea Stomatopoda*, *Schizopoda*, and *Decapoda*).

In addition there is the genus *Nebalia*, which has been hitherto erroneously placed with the *Phyllopoda*, but which is to be regarded as the representative of an ancient group connecting the *Phyllopoda* with the *Malacostraca*, and may be opposed to the latter as **Leptostraca**.

Finally, in addition to these chief divisions, there is a number of Crustacean orders, for the most part fossil and belonging to the oldest formations, which present in their development no certain trace of the Nauplius form so characteristic of the true Crustacea, and are in all probability related to the *Arachnoidea*. These orders, which may be grouped together as the **Gigantostraca**, are the *Merostomata* and *Xiphosura*, to which the *Trilobita* are possibly allied.

---

## 1.—ENTOMOSTRACA.

### *Order* 1.—Phyllopoda.*

*Crustacea with elongated and often distinctly segmented body; usually with a flat, shield-like carapace, or laterally compressed bivalve shell, formed by a reduplicature of the skin. There are, at least, four pairs of leaf-like lobed swimming feet.*

The animals belonging to this order differ very considerably in form and size, in the number of their segments and appendages, as well as in their internal structure. They all, however, agree in the structure of their lobed, leaf-like feet. In their form, internal organization and development they appear to be the most primitive of Crustacea, and may be regarded as the least modified descendants of ancient types.

The body is either cylindrical, elongated and clearly segmented, without free reduplicature of the skin, *e.g. Branchipus* (fig. 333), or it may be covered by a broad and flattened shield, which only allows the posterior part of the body to project uncovered, *e.g. Apus*. In other cases the body is laterally compressed and is enclosed by a bivalve shell, from which the anterior part of the head projects (*Cladocera*); or finally the laterally compressed body is completely covered by a bivalve shell (*Estheridæ*). Sometimes the head is more sharply distinct, while the thorax and abdomen are not so clearly distinguishable from each other. As a rule, the posterior segments only are without appendages. The hind end of the abdomen is very often curved ventralwards and forwards, and bears two rows of posteriorly directed claws, the two last of which arise at the point of the caudal appendage, and are by far the

* Besides the works of O. Fr. Müller, Jurine, M. Edwards, Dana, compare Zaddach, "De Apodis cancriformis anatome et historia evolutionis." Bonnæ, 1841. E. Grube, "Bemerkungen über die Phyllopoden." *Archiv für Naturgesch.* 1853 and 1855. Fr. Leydig, "Monographie der Daphniden." Tübingen, 1860.

strongest. In other cases a pair of fin-like appendages are present constituting the caudal fork (*Branchipus*).

**Appendages.**—On the head there are two pairs of antennæ, which however, in the adult animal, may be rudimentary or peculiarly modified. The anterior antennæ are small, and bear the delicate olfactory hairs. The posterior antennæ frequently have the form of large biramous swimming appendages, but in the male may also have a prehensile function, *e.g.*, *Branchipus*. In other cases (*Apus*) they are rudimentary and may even be entirely absent.

Two large mandibles are always present beneath the well developed upper lip; they possess a toothed, biting edge, and in the fully developed condition are *invariably destitute of palps*. The mandibles are followed by one or two pairs of slightly developed maxillæ. A kind of underlip is in many cases present, in the form of two prominences behind the mandibles.

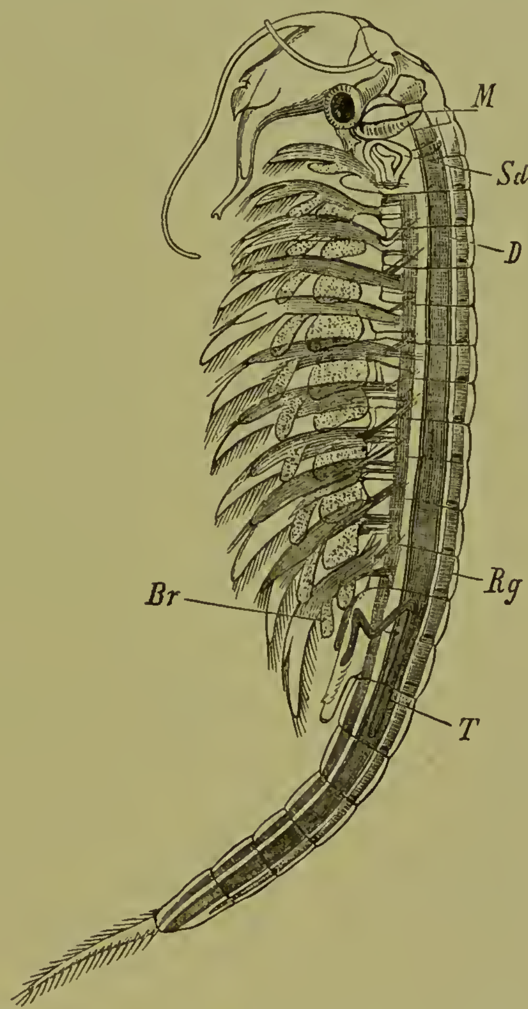


Fig. 333.—Male of *Branchipus stagnalis*. *Rg*, Heart or dorsal vessel with a pair of slit-like openings in each segment; *D*, intestine; *M*, mandible; *Sd*, shell gland; *Br*, branchial appendages of the eleven pairs of legs; *T*, testis.

The *legs*, which are placed on the thorax, are usually very numerous, and are smaller towards the posterior end of the body. They are lobed, leaf-like, biramous structures, and function as swimming feet; they also assist in procuring food. They consist of the following parts: a short basal portion, which is usually provided with a masticatory process and is followed by a long foliaceous stem with setæ on its inner edge; this is continued into the multilobed internal branch [endopodite] of the biramous limb, while it bears on its outer side the external ramus [exopodite] with marginal setæ, and nearer its base a vesicular branchial appendage. The anterior, or even all the legs (*Leptodora*) may have the form of prehensile feet, and be destitute of branchial appendages.

The Phyllopods possess a large pair of **eyes**, which are sometimes fused together in the median line. In addition a small median simple eye (Entomostracan eye) may persist. They have a saccular or chambered **heart**, which controls the regular circulation. Coiled **excretory organs**, known as *shell glands*, are sometimes present; they open to the exterior by a special aperture on the posterior maxilla. The function of **respiration** is performed by the entire surface of the body, the area of which is much increased by the reduplicature of the skin forming the carapace; also by the foliaceous swimming feet, and especially by the surface of the branchial appendages.

**Reproduction.**—The *Phyllopoda* are of separate sexes. The males are distinguished from the females by the structure of the first pair of antennæ which are larger and more richly provided with olfactory hairs, and also by their anterior swimming feet which are armed with prehensile hooks. In general the males are less frequently met with than are the females, and, as a rule, only at definite seasons of the year. The females of the smaller *Phyllopoda* (*Cladocera*) are able to produce eggs without copulation and fertilization; and these eggs, the so-called summer eggs, develop spontaneously and produce generations containing no males. In certain genera of the *Branchiopoda, e.g., Artemia* and *Apus*, parthenogenesis is the rule; the males, indeed, have only been known a few years. The females usually carry the eggs about with them on special appendages, or in a brood pouch beneath the shell on the dorsal surface. The just hatched young either possess the form of the sexually mature animal (*Cladocera*), or undergo a complicated metamorphosis, leaving the egg membranes as a nauplius larva with three pairs of appendages (*Branchiopoda*).

A few of the *Phyllopoda* live in the sea, the greater number inhabit stagnant freshwater; some of them are found in brine pools.

Sub-order 1. **Branchiopoda.*** *Phyllopoda*, with clearly segmented body, often enclosed in a flat, shield-shaped, or laterally compressed bivalved shell, with from ten to about thirty or more pairs of foliaceous swimming feet.

* Schäffer, "Der krebsartige Kieferfuss," etc. Regensburg, 1756. A. Kozubowski, "Ueber den männlichen Apus cancriformis." *Archiv für Naturgesch.* Tom XXIII., 1857. C. Claus, "Zur Kenntniss des Baues und der Entwickelung von Branchipus und Apus," etc., Göttingen, 1873.

The **alimentary canal** is provided with two lateral hepatic appendages, which are, as a rule, branched and racemose and only exceptionally short and simple. The **heart** appears as an extended dorsal vessel with numerous paired lateral slits, and may extend throughout the whole length of the thorax and abdomen (*Branchipus*). The **genital organs**, which are always paired, are placed by the side of the alimentary canal, and open at the boundary between the thorax and abdomen. In the females the genital openings are small slits; in the male there may be protrusible copulatory organs at the openings (*Branchipus*).

The males are distinguished from the females principally by the fact that the anterior, or two anterior pairs of legs, are armed with hooks (*Estheridæ*), or by the modification of the posterior antennæ to form a prehensile apparatus (*Branchipus*). Remarkable is the rare occurrence of the males; they seem only to appear under certain conditions and in definite generations, which alternate with parthenogenetic generations. The eggs during development are generally protected within the body of the mother, and are carried about either in a saccular brood-pouch of the abdomen or between the valves of the shell on filiform (*Estheria*, *Branchipus*), or in vesicular (*Apus*) appendages of different pairs of legs (9th to 11th). The eggs, so far as is known, undergo a complete segmentation. When hatched, the young animal has the form of a Nauplius larva with three pairs of appendages, of which the anterior (which become the anterior antennæ) are in the *Estheridæ* only represented by slightly developed setigerous prominences. On the other hand, in *Apus* the third pair is small and rudimentary.

Almost all the *Branchiopoda* belong to inland waters, and principally inhabit shallow fresh-water pools. When the latter dry up, the eggs, preserved in dry mud, remain capable of development. Some species, as *Artemia salina*, are found in brine pools.

*Branchipus pisciformis* Schäff = *B. stagnalis* L., without a shell, found in the lakes of Germany, together with *Apus cancriformis*. *B. diaphanus* Prév., France. *Artemia salina* L., in salt pools, near Trieste, Montpellier. They sometimes lay eggs with a hard shell, sometimes they are viviparous. *Apus cancriformis* Schäff, with shield-shaped shell, Germany. The males, which are rare, can be recognized by the normal formation of the eleventh pair of appendages. They live in puddles and fresh-water lakes, together with *Branchipus*. *Estheria cycladoides* Joly L., with perfect shell.

Sub-order 2. **Cladocera.*** Water-fleas. Small laterally com-

* Besides the works already quoted, compare H. E. Strauss, "Mémoire sur les Daphnia de la classe des Crustacés," *Mem. du Mus. d'hist nat.*, Tom V. and

pressed *Phyllopoda*, whose body, with the exception of the head, which projects freely, is usually enclosed in a bivalve shell. They have two large antennæ, which are used in swimming, and four to six pairs of swimming feet.

The *Cladocera* are small simply organized Phyllopods, whose resemblance to the larvæ of the shelled Branchiopoda, particularly to the larva of *Estheria* with its six pairs of legs, gives the best indication of the probable origin of the group. Unlike the anterior antennæ, which are short, the posterior are modified to form biramous swimming appendages beset with numerous long setæ. The four to six pairs of legs are not always foliaceous swimming feet, but in many cases have the form of cylindrical ambulatory or prehensile appendages. The abdomen, which is ventrally flexed, develops on its dorsal side several prominences, which serve to close the brood pouch. It usually consists of three free segments, as well as the terminal anal portion, which is beset with rows of hooks. The anal portion begins with two dorsal tactile setæ and ends with two hooks or styles, representing the caudal fork (fig. 334).

The internal organization is simple in correspondence with the small size of the body. The compound **eyes** fuse together in the middle line to form a large, continually trembling, frontal eye, beneath which the unpaired simple eye usually remains. A special sense apparatus, whose function is not quite clear, appears in the region of the neck, in the form of an aggregation of ganglion cells.

The **heart** has the form of an oval sac, with two transverse lateral venous ostia and an anterior arterial opening. Its pulsations are rhythmic, and succeed one another quickly. In spite of the want of arteries and veins, the circulation of the blood, which contains amœboid cells, is completed in definite tracts marked out by lacunæ and spaces in the body. The looped and coiled **shell gland** is always present. The cervical gland, which functions as an organ of attachment, is less widely distributed. The **sexual glands** lie in the thorax as paired

VI, 1819 and 1820. Leydig. "Naturgeschichte der Daphniden." Tübingen. 1860. P. E. Müller. "Bidrag til Cladocerernes Fortplantings historie." Kjöbenhavn. 1868. G. O. Sars, "Om en dimorph Udvikling samt Generations-vexel hos Leptodora." *Vidensk. Selsk. Forh.*. 1873. A Weismann. "Beiträge zur Kenntiss der Daphnoiden." I—IV.. Leipzig. 1876 and 1877. C. Claus. "Zur Kenntiss der Organisation und des feineren Baues der Daphniden. *Zeit. f. wiss. zool.*, Tom XXVII. 1876. C. Claus. "Zur Kenntniss des Baues und der Organisaton der Polyphemiden." Wien. 1877. C. Grobben, "Die Embryonalentwicklung von Moina rectirostris." *Arbeiten aus dem zool. vergl. anatom. Institut.* II Band. Wien, 1879.

tubes by the side of the alimentary canal. In the ovaries groups of four cells are separated; one cell of each group becomes an ovum, while the rest are employed as nutritive cells for the nourishment of the ovum, which increases in size and absorbs fat globules. The ovary is directly continuous with the oviduct, which opens dorsally beneath the shell into the brood-pouch. The testes, like the ovaries, lie at the sides of the intestine and are continuous with the vasa deferentia,

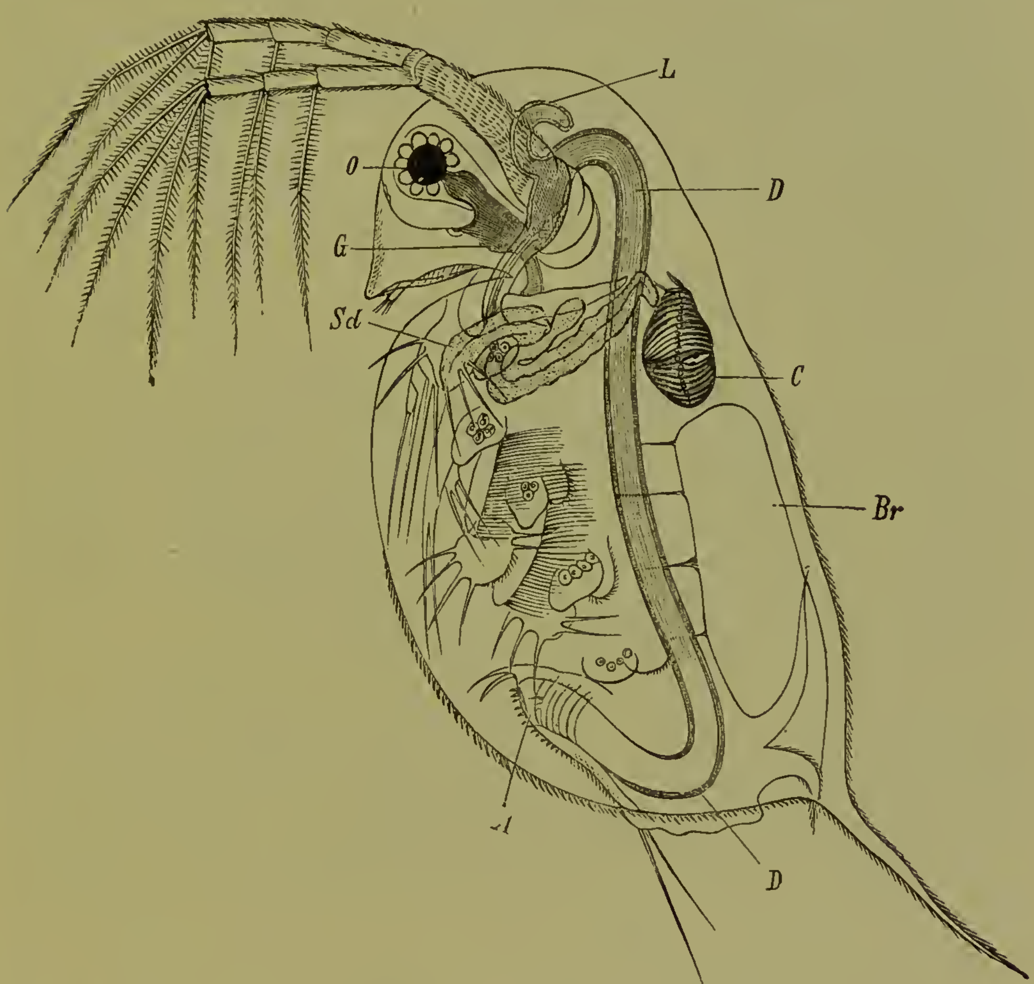



FIG. 334.—*Daphnia*. *C*, Heart—the slit-like opening of one side is visible; *D*, alimentary canal; *L*, hepatic diverticulum; *A*, anus; *G*, cerebral ganglion; *O*, eye; *Sd*, shell gland; *Br*, brood-pouch beneath the dorsal reduplicature of the shell.

which open to the exterior ventrally behind the last pair of appendages or at the extreme end of the body, the openings being sometimes situated on small slightly protrusible prominences.

The smaller males usually appear in the autumn; they may, however, also be present at any other time of the year, and, as recent investigations have proved in a tolerably satisfactory manner, always when the conditions of life and nourishment are unfavourable. Before the appearance of the males, hermaphrodite forms * sometimes make their appearance with an organization which is half male and half female.

At the season when males are not present, normally in the spring and summer, the females produce the so-called summer eggs, which contain a large quantity of oil globules and are surrounded by a delicate vitelline membrane. They develop rapidly within the brood-pouch between the shell and the dorsal surface of the mother, and after the space of only a few days give rise to a fresh generation of young *Cladocera*, which escape from the brood-pouch. The embryonic development takes place accordingly under extremely favourable conditions, which depend upon the rich supply of food yolk in the large eggs, and are sometimes favoured by the secretion of additional food material within the brood-pouch.

At the season when the males appear, the females, under the like influence of unfavourable nourishment and independently of copulation, begin to produce so-called winter eggs, which are incapable of developing without fertilization. The number of these hard-shelled winter eggs is always relatively small. They are, therefore, distinguished from the summer eggs by their larger size and the greater quantity of food yolk; and their origin in the ovary is accompanied by much more extensive processes of absorption.

The *Daphnidæ* live for the most part in fresh water. Certain species inhabit deep inland lakes, brackish water, and the sea. They swim quickly, and usually with a jumping movement. Some of them attach themselves to solid surrounding objects by means of a dorsally placed organ of attachment, the cervical gland. When the body is thus fixed, the swimming feet seem to be able by their vibrations to set up currents in which small food particles are swept towards the animal.

*Sida crystallina* O. Fr. Müller. The six pairs of lamellar legs beset with long swimming setæ. The rami of the swimming antennæ two- to three-jointed. *Daphnia pulex* De Geer. *D. sima* Liev. Five pairs of legs, of which the anterior are more or less adapted for prehension. One ramus of the swimming antennæ is three-jointed, the other four-jointed. *Polyphemus pediculus* De Geer. In the lakes of Switzerland, Austria, and Scandinavia. *Evadne Nordmanni* Lovén, North Sea and Mediterranean. *Leptodora hyalina* Lillj., in lakes.

* Compare especially W. Kurz, "Ueber androgyne Missbildung bei Cladoceren," *Sitzungsber der Akad. der Wissensch. Wien.* 1874. Also Schmankewitsch.

## *Order* 2.—OSTRACODA.*

*Small, usually laterally compressed Entomostraca, with a bivalve shell and seven pairs of appendages, which function as antennæ, jaws, creeping and swimming legs. There is a pediform mandibular palp, and a short abdomen.*

The body of these small *Crustacea* is unsegmented and is completely enclosed in a bivalve shell, which gives the animal a resemblance to a mussel. The two valves of the shell join together in the middle line, and are fastened together by an elastic ligament along the middle third of the back. The action of this ligament is opposed by a two-headed adductor muscle, which passes from one valve of the shell to the other and causes impressions discernible from without. The common tendon of the two heads of this muscle lies nearly in the

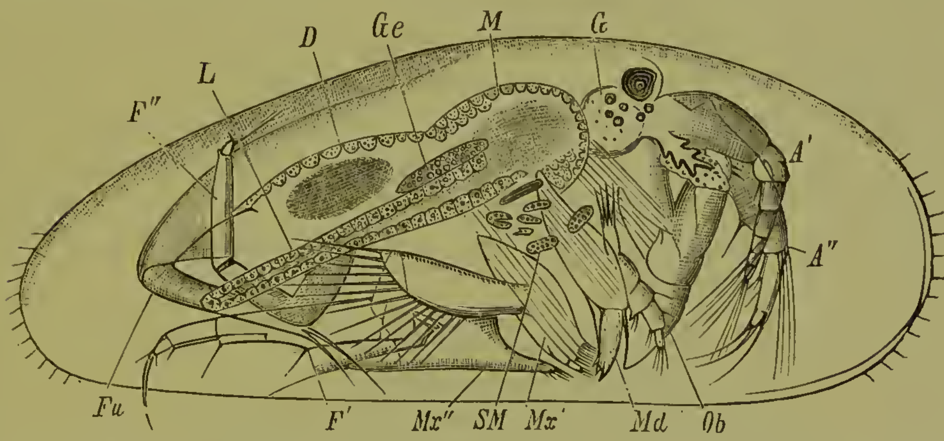



FIG. 335.—Female *Cypris* before sexual maturity; the right valve of the shell has been removed, *A'*, *A''*, first and second pair of antennæ; *Ob*, upper lip; *Md*, mandible with pediform palp; *G*, cerebral ganglion with unpaired eye; *SM*, adductor muscle; *Mx'*, *Mx''*, first and second pair of maxillæ; *F'*, *F''*, first and second pair of feet; *Fu*, caudal fork; *M*, stomach; *D*, intestine; *L*, hepatic tube; *Ge*, rudimentary genital organs.

middle of the body. The edges of the valves are free at both ends and along the ventral side. In the marine *Cypridinidæ* there is a deep indentation in the edges of the valves, to allow the antennæ to pass out. When the valves of the shell are open, several pediform appendages can be protruded on the ventral side, which enable the animal to move in the water either by crawling or by swimming.

* H. E. Strauss-Dürkheim, "Mémoire sur les Cypris de la classe des Crustacés," *Mém. du Mus d'hist. nat.*, Tom VII., 1821. W. Zenker, "Monographie der Ostracoden," *Archiv. für Naturgesch.*, Tom. XX., 1854. C. Claus, "Beiträge zur Kentniss der Ostracoden. Entwickelungsgeschichte von Cypris." Marburg, 1868. C. Claus, "Neue Beobachtungen über Cypridinen," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom XXIII. C. Claus, "Die Familie der Halocypriden." *Schriften zoologischen Inhalts.* Wien, 1874. G. S. Brady, "A Monograph of the Recent British Ostracoda," *Transact. of the Lin. Soc.*, Vol. XXVI.

The abdomen can also be protruded; it either ends in a caudal fork (*Cypris* and *Cythere*), or has the form of a plate armed with spines and hooks on its posterior margin (*Cypridina*).

**Appendages.**—The two pairs of antennæ are placed on the anterior region of the body (fig. 336, A′, A″), and are used as creeping and swimming legs. In *Cypridina*, however, the anterior pair is provided with olfactory hairs. The antennæ of the second pair in *Cypris* and *Cythere* resemble legs, and end with strong hooked bristles, by help of which the animal can attach itself to surrounding objects. In the exclusively marine *Cypridinidæ* and *Halocypridæ* this pair of appendages has the form of biramous swimming feet, which consist of a broad triangular basal plate, a many-jointed endopodite beset with long swimming setæ, and a rudimentary exopodite, which, however, is stronger in the male and furnished with hooks of a considerable size.

In the region of the mouth beneath and to the side of a tolerably large upper lip there are two powerful mandibles with a broad and strongly toothed biting edge. The mandibular palps, which are leg-like and elongated, are usually three-jointed and can be used as legs (*Mdf*). In exceptional cases (*Paradoxostoma*), the mandibles are styliform and are enclosed in a suctorial proboscis formed from the upper and under lips.

The mandibles are followed by the first pair of maxillæ, which are in all cases distinguished by the great development of their basal portion and by the reduction of the palp. In the *Cypridæ* and *Cytheridæ* the basal joint of the first maxilla bears a large comb-like setose plate, which by its swinging movements aids the function of respiration, but does not itself function as a gill. A similar branchial plate may also occur on the two following appendages (the 5th and 6th pair), which sometimes have the form of jaws, sometimes of legs. The anterior of these appendages (maxilla of the second pair or better maxilliped, fig. 336, *Mx″*) functions, in *Cypris*, chiefly as a jaw, but bears, besides the rudimentary branchial appendage, a short, backwardly directed, usually two-jointed palp, which, however, in certain genera and in *Halocypris* becomes a short, three-jointed or even four-jointed leg. In *Cythere* it acts exclusively as a leg, and represents the first of the three pairs of legs present in this animal. In the *Cypridina*, however, it has completely the form of a jaw, and is provided with an enormously developed branchial plate (fig. 336 *a*, *Mx″*). The appendage of the sixth pair is usually modified to an elongated, many-jointed, creeping and adhering foot. The appendage of the seventh pair is always elongated to the form of a leg; in *Cythera* it is formed like the preceding one,

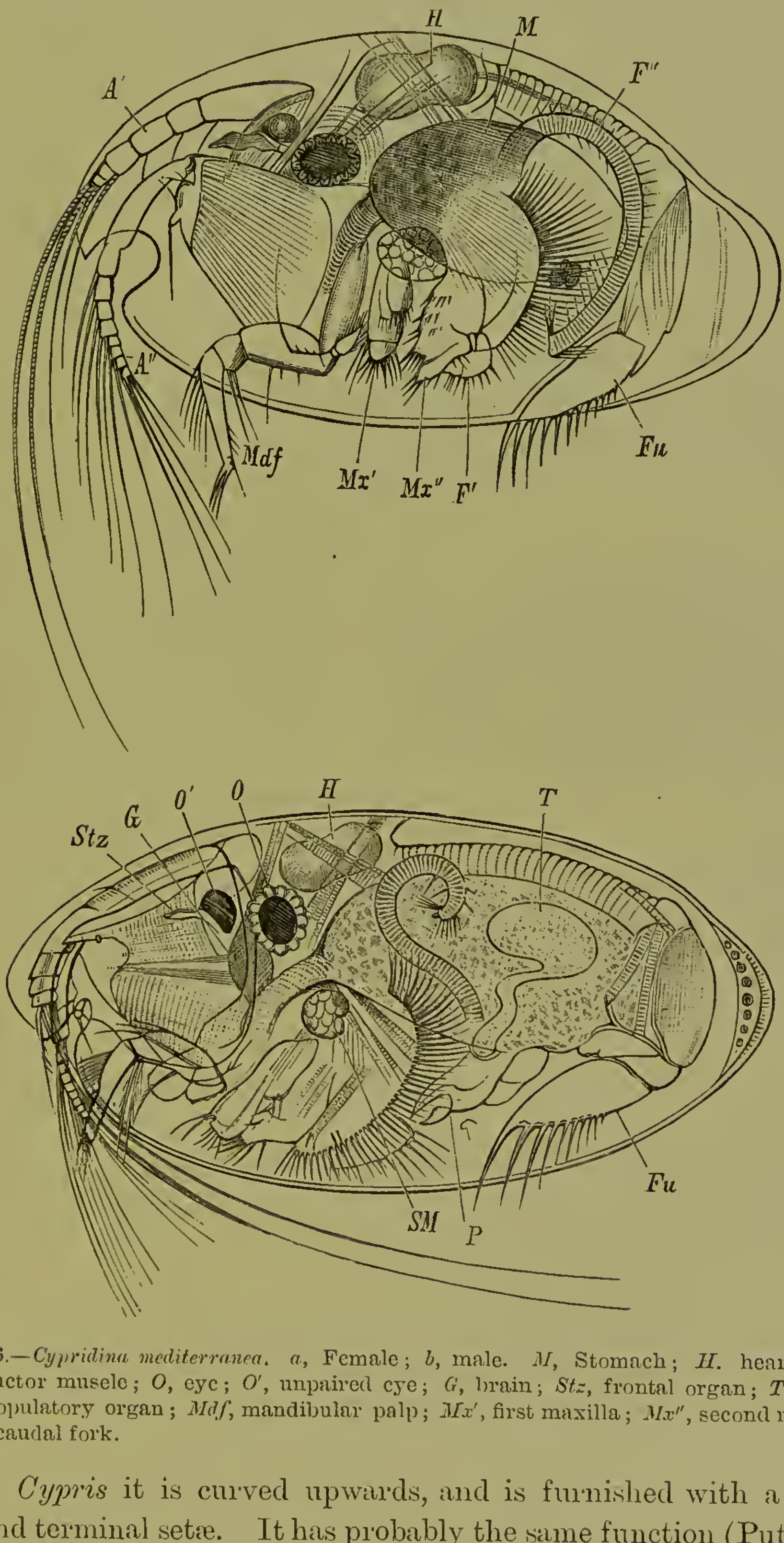



FIG. 336.—*Cypridina mediterranea.* *a*, Female; *b*, male. *M*, Stomach; *H.* heart; *SM*, adductor muscle; *O*, eye; *O'*, unpaired eye; *G*, brain; *Stz*, frontal organ; *T*, testis; *P*, copulatory organ; *Mdf*, mandibular palp; *Mx'*, first maxilla; *Mx''*, second maxilla; *Fu*, caudal fork.

but in *Cypris* it is curved upwards, and is furnished with a short claw and terminal setæ. It has probably the same function (Putzfuss) as the long cylindrical appendage of *Cypridina*, which arises in place of the seventh pair of legs, almost on the back of this animal.

The **nervous system** consists of a bilobed cerebral ganglion and a ventral chain with closely approximated pairs of ganglia, which may unite to form a single ganglionic mass.

**Sense organs.**—In addition to the already mentioned olfactory hairs there is a median eye (*Cypris*, *Cythere*), composed of two (often separated) halves; or there are, in addition to a small unpaired eye, two larger compound and movable lateral eyes (*Cypridina*). In *Halocypris* and *Cypridina* there is a frontal appendage, which probably functions as a sense organ.

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth, which is frequently (*Cypris*) armed with toothed lateral bands, leads through a narrow œsophagus into a dilated crop-like portion of the alimentary canal. This is followed by a broad and long stomach, provided with two long lateral hepatic tubes, which project into the lamellæ of the shell. The anus opens at the base of the abdomen (fig. 337). Of special glands a club-shaped, dilated glandular tube (poison-glands?) found in *Cythere* must be mentioned, the duct of which opens to the exterior through a spinous appendage of the posterior antennæ.

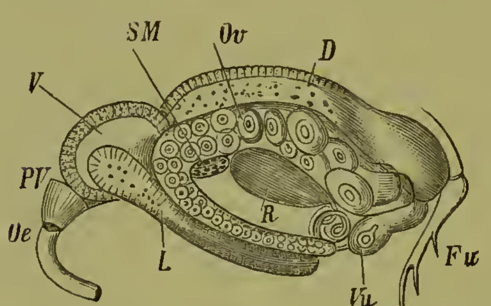



Fig. 337.—Alimentary canal and generative organs of a female *Cypris* (after W. Zenker). *Oe*, œsophagus; *PV*, crop; *V*, stomach; *D*, intestine; *L*, liver; *Ov*, ovary; *SM*, adductor muscle; *R* receptaculum; *Vu*, vulva; *Fu*, caudal fork.

A **heart** is present in *Cypridina* and *Halocypris* on the dorsal surface, where the shell is connected to the animal. The function of **respiration** is performed by the whole surface of the body, over which an uninterrupted current of water is maintained by the swinging movements of the leaf-shaped setose branchial appendages. In many *Cypridinidæ* (*Asterope*) there is a double row of branchial tubes on the back, near the last pair of appendages.

**Generative organs.**—The sexes are always separate and are distinguished by well marked differences in their entire structure. The males, in addition to the greater development of the organs of sense, possess apparatuses on different appendages—in *Cypridina* on the second antennæ, in *Cypris* on the maxilliped—for holding the females; or a pair of legs may be completely modified for this purpose. In addition a large copulatory organ, which may be derived from a modified pair of appendages and often possesses a very complicated structure, is always present. The male genital organs consist on either side of several elongated or globular testes, of a vas deferens and the copulatory organ ; the presence in *Cypris* of a very peculiar paired mucous gland and the size and form of the spermatozoa seem to be worthy of notice (Zenker). The female of *Cypris* possesses two ovarian tubes which project into the reduplicature of the carapace, two receptacula seminis, and the same number of genital openings at the base of the abdomen.

**Development.**—The greater number of *Ostracoda* lays eggs, which they either attach to water-plants (*Cypris*), or, as in *Cypridina*, carry about with them between the shell valves until the young are hatched. The free development of *Cypris* consists of a complicated metamorphosis. The larvæ, when hatched, possess, like the Nauplius form, only three pairs of appendages, but are strongly compressed laterally, and are already enclosed in a thin bivalve shell (fig. 338). In the marine *Ostracoda* the development is simplified, so that the metamorphosis is entirely absent.

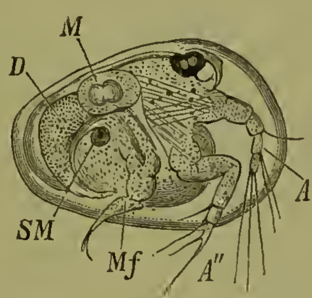



FIG. 338.—Very young larva of *Cypris*. Nauplius stage, with three pairs of appendages. *M*, stomach ; *D*, intestine ; *SM*, shell muscle ; *A'*, *A''*, first and second antennæ ; *Mdf*, mandible.

The *Ostracoda* feed altogether on animal matter, as it seems especially on the carcasses of different aquatic animals.

Numerous fossil forms are known from almost all formations, but, unfortunately, only the remains of their shells are preserved.

*Cypridina*. With heart and large movable paired eye. With deep excavation in the edges of the shell for the passage of the antennæ. The anterior antennæ are bent, furnished with strong setæ, and have olfactory hairs at their extremity. The posterior antennæ are biramous swimming feet. The biting part of the mandible is weak or entirely aborted ; palp is five-jointed, pediform, and of considerable length. The seventh pair of appendages is represented by a cylindrical ringed appendage (Putzfuss). *Cypridina mediterranea* Costa. *Asterope oblonga* Gr., Trieste. *Halocypris* Dana.

*Cythere* O. Fr. Müll. Without heart. The anterior antennæ are bent at their base and beset with short setæ. The posterior antennæ are strongly developed, with hooks on the terminal joint. Three pairs of legs, of which the last is the most strongly developed. The abdomen has only the caudal fork, of which the two branches are small and lobe-like. The testes and ovaries do not project between the lamellæ of the carapace. The male genital apparatus has no mucous gland. They are all marine animals. The females often carry the eggs and embryos about between the valves of the shell. *Cythere lutea* O. Fr. Müller, North Seas and Mediterranean. *C. viridis* O. Fr. Müll., North Seas.

*Cypris* O. Fr. Müll. With median eye, but no heart. The shell valves are light but strong, the anterior antennæ have usually seven joints and are beset with long setæ. The antenna of the second pair is simple and pediform, with usually six joints. There are two pairs of legs, of which the posterior smaller pair is bent upwards towards the dorsal surface. The caudal fork is very narrow and elongated, and is provided with hooked setæ at the point. The testes and ovaries project between the lamellæ of the shell. The male genital apparatus has a peculiar mucous gland. Most of them inhabit fresh water. *Cypris fusca* Str., *C. pubera* O. Fr. Müll., *C. fuscata* Jur., and others. *Notodromus monachus* O. Fr. Müll.

## *Order* 3.—Copepoda.*

*Entomostraca with elongated, usually well segmented body, without shell-forming reduplicature of the skin, with biramous swimming feet; the abdomen is without appendages.*

The group of the *Copepoda* includes a number of very different forms. The non-parasitic members of the groups are distinguished by a constant number of segments and paired appendages. The numerous parasitic forms differ in various degrees from those which lead an independent life; in extreme cases some of them are so modified, that without a knowledge of their development and the peculiarities of their structure, they would rather be taken for parasitic Worms than for Arthropods. The characteristic swimming feet are, however, usually retained, though often reduced in number, as rudimentary or modified appendages. When they are absent, the developmental history gives a certain indication of the Copepod nature.

**Appendages.**—The head seems as a rule to fuse with the first thoracic segment; and the cephalothorax so formed bears two pairs of antennæ, a pair of mandibles, the same number of maxillæ, and four maxillipeds, which last are only the external and internal branches of a single pair of appendages (fig. 341); and finally the first pair of swimming feet, which are not unfrequently modified in form. Then come four free thoracic segments, each with a pair of swimming feet, of which the last pair is frequently reduced and in the male may be modified to assist in copulation. Finally, the fifth pair of feet and

* O. Fr. Müller, "Entomostraca seu Insecta testacea, quæ in aquis Daniæ et Norvegiæ reperit, descripsit," Lipsiæ, 1785. Jurine, "Histoire des Monocles," Genève, 1820. W. Lilljeborg, "Crustacea ex ordinibus tribus: Cladocera, Ostracoda et Copepoda, in Scania occurrentibus," Lund., 1853. C. Claus, "Zur Morphologie der Copepoden," *Würzb. naturwiss. Zeitschr.*, 1860. C. Claus, "Die freilebenden Copepoden," Leipzig, 1863.

the corresponding thoracic segment may be entirely absent. The abdomen as well as the thorax consists of five segments, but is without appendages and ends in a caudal fork, the branches of which are furnished at their points with several long caudal setæ (fig. 339). In the female, the two first abdominal segments usually unite to form a double genital segment, on which the genital openings are placed. The abdomen, especially in the parasitic forms, very frequently undergoes a considerable reduction.

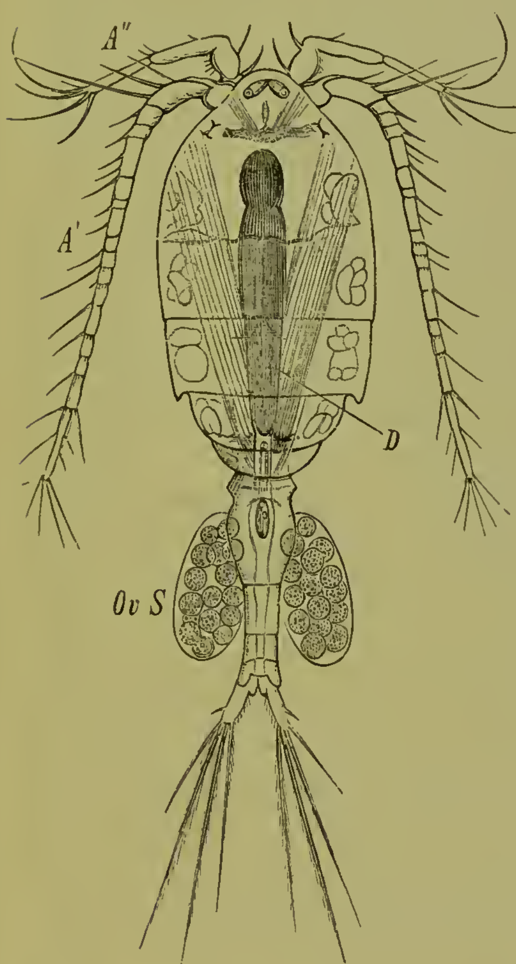



Fig. 339.—Female of *Cyclops coronatus*, seen from the dorsal surface. *D*, intestine; *OvS*, ovisacs; *A'*, *A''*, antennæ.

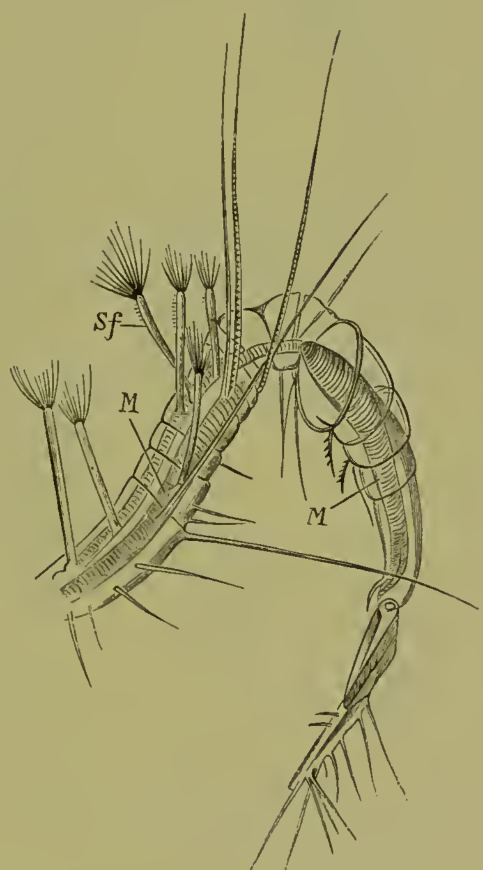



Fig. 340.—An antenna of the male of *Cyclops serrulatus*. *Sp*, olfactory hairs; *M*, muscles.

The anterior antennæ, which are usually many-jointed, bear olfactory hairs, but serve in the free-swimming forms for locomotion, and in the male as prehensile arms for catching and holding the female during copulation (fig. 340). The posterior antennæ are always shorter, and not unfrequently bifurcated and adapted for clinging to surrounding objects. With regard to the oral appendages (fig. 341), two toothed, usually palped mandibles are placed beneath the upper lip. These function in the free-living *Copepoda* as masticatory organs, but in the parasitic forms are usually transformed into pointed styliform rods, which are used for piercing. In this case they are frequently placed in a suctorial tube formed by the junction of the upper and under lips. The two jaws which follow the mandibles are weaker biting plates, and in the parasitic *Copepoda* are reduced to small palp-like protuberances. The maxillipeds, on the contrary, are much longer; they are used to procure food and, especially in the parasitic forms, to attach the body. The thoracic swimming feet consist of a two-jointed basal portion, and two three-jointed setigerous swimming rami, which are comparable to broad swimming plates. In the *Argulidæ* these rami are much elongated, and by their numerous joints approximate to the legs of the *Cirripedia*.


Fig. 341. — Mouth parts of *Cyclops*. *M*, Mandibles; *Mx*, maxilla; *Kf'*, internal; *Kf''*, external maxilliped.

**Nervous System.**—In all cases there is a brain giving off sensory nerves, and also a ventral cord, which either develops some ganglia in its course or is concentrated to a common subœsophageal ganglionic mass. Of *sense organs* the median frontal eye, divided into three parts (*Cyclops eye*), is pretty generally present. The *tactile* sense is specially localized in the setæ of the anterior antennæ, but is probably also present in many other parts of the body. Olfactory hairs are present as delicate appendages of the anterior antennæ, principally in the male sex.

The **alimentary canal** is divided into a short narrow œsophagus, a wide stomach which often has two blind diverticula near its commencement, and a narrow rectum which opens on the dorsal surface of the last abdominal segment. The surface of the intestine often seems to perform the function of a urinary organ. We find, however, at the same time a shell gland in the cephalo-thorax at the sides of the maxillipeds. In all cases the whole surface of the body performs the *respiratory* function. **Circulatory organs** are either replaced by the regular oscillations of the intestinal canal (*Cyclops, Achtheres*), or there is present in the anterior part of the thorax above the intestine (*Calanidæ*) a short saccular heart, which may even be continued into a cephalic artery (*Calanella*) (fig. 53).

**Generative organs.**—The *Copepoda* are of separate sexes. Both kinds of genital organs lie in the cephalothorax and in the thoracic segments, and open right and left on the basal segment of the abdomen. Sexual differences in the form and structure of the different parts of the body are almost uniformly found. These lead

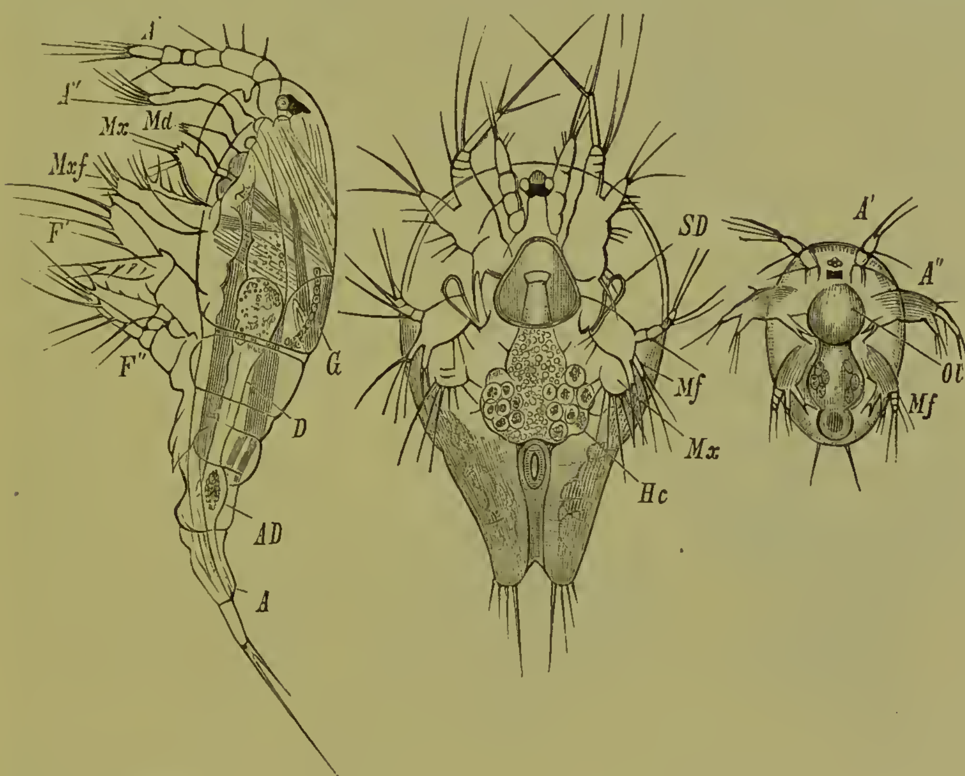



FIG. 342.—Metamorphosis of *Cyclops*. *a*, Nauplius larva of *Cyclops serrulatus* after hatching. *b*, Older stage strongly magnified. *c*, Very young Cyclops form. *AD*, antennal glands; *Ol*, upper lip; *Mf*, mandibular foot; *Md*, mandible; *Mx*, maxilla, *Mxf*, maxilliped; *F'*, *F''*, first and second swimming feet; *Hc*, urinary concretions; *D*, intestine; *Ad*, rectum; *A*, anus; *G*, rudimentary genital organs.

in certain parasitic *Copepoda* (*Chondracanthidæ, Lernæopodidæ*) to an extremely striking dimorphism. The males are smaller and move with greater facility; the anterior antennæ and the last pair of feet become accessory copulatory organs, the former serving to hold the female, the latter to affix the spermatophores. The spermatophores are formed in the vas deferens by a mucous secretion which surrounds the seminal mass and hardens to a tough membrane. The females are larger than the males and often move more clumsily; they carry the eggs about with them in sacs, placed to the right and left on the abdomen. Many of them possess a cement gland at the end of the oviduct; the secretion of this gland passes out with the eggs and gives rise to the stiff covering of the ovisacs. During copulation, which is only an external approximation of the two sexes, the male fastens one or more spermatophores on to the genital segment of the female, and, indeed, on to special openings through which the spermatozoa pass into the receptaculum seminis, and fertilize the ova either within the body of the mother, or as they pass out into the developing ovisacs.

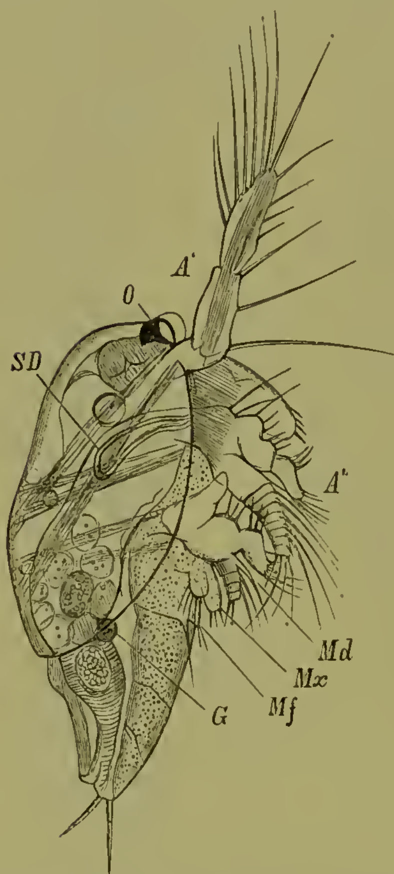



FIG. 343.—Metanauplius of *Cyclopsine*. *O*, eye; *G*, rudimentary genital organs; *SD*, antennal gland; *A'*, *A''*, antennæ; *Md*, mandible; *Mx*, maxilla; *Mf*, maxilliped.

**Development** takes place by means of a complicated metamorphosis, which, in many parasitic forms, is a retrograde one. The larvæ, when hatched, have the Nauplius form, with an unpaired frontal eye and three pairs of appendages. Hooked setæ on the second and third pairs of appendages serve to conduct the food into the mouth, which is covered by a large upper lip (fig. 342, *a*). The posterior region of the body is destitute of appendages, and terminates with two setæ at the sides of the anus; it corresponds to the thorax and abdomen, which are as yet undifferentiated.

The alterations undergone by the young larvæ in the course of their further growth are connected with a number of successive moults, and consist principally in an elongation of the body and the appearance of fresh appendages. Even in the next larval stage (fig 342, *b*), a fourth pair of appendages, the future maxillæ, makes its appearance behind the three original pairs, which develop into the antennæ and mandibles. In a later stage three fresh pairs of appendages are formed. Of these the first corresponds to the maxillipeds, while the two last pairs represent the first rudiments of the anterior swimming feet. In this stage (*Metanauplius*) (fig.

343), the larva still resembles a Nauplius, and it is only after another moult that it is transformed into the first *Cyclops*-like form. It then resembles the adult animal in the structure of the antennæ and mouth parts, although the number of the appendages and the body rings is smaller (fig. 342, *c*). The two last pairs of appendages already have the form of short biramous swimming feet, and the rudiments of the third and fouth pairs of swimming feet have made their appearance as projections beset with setæ. The body consists in this stage of the oval cephalothorax; the second, third and fourth thoracic segments; and an elongated terminal portion, which gives rise to the last thoracic segment, and to all the abdominal segments by a progressive segmentation, and already terminates in the caudal fork.

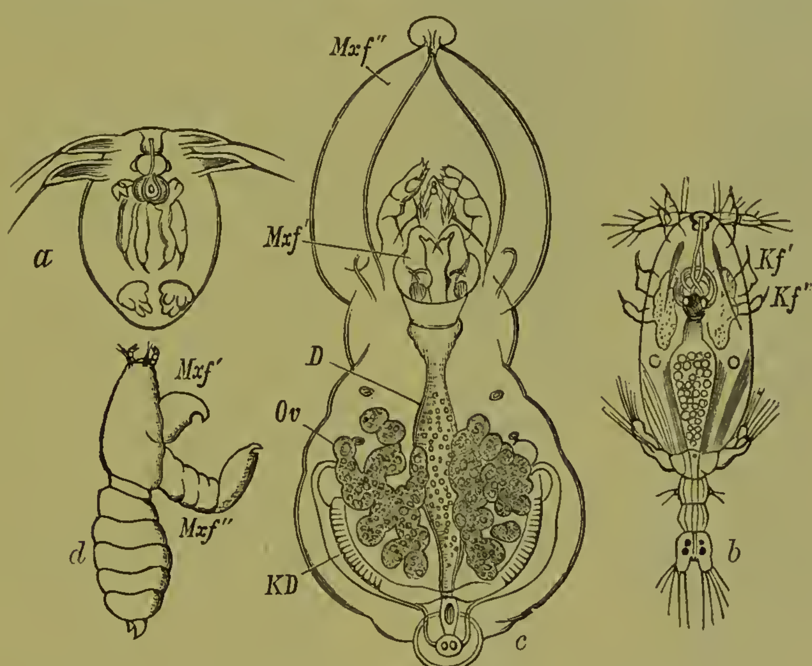



FIG. 344.—*Actheres percarum*.—*a*, Nauplius form. *b*, Larva in the youngest Cyclops stage; *Kf'*, *Kf''*, maxillipeds. *c*, Female seen from the ventral side. *Ov*, Ovaries; *KD*, cement glands. *d*, The smaller male seen from the side; *Mxf'*, *Mxf''*, maxillipeds.

Many forms of parasitic *Copepoda*, for example *Lernanthropus* and *Chondracanthus*, do not get beyond this stage of body segmentation, and obtain neither the swimming feet of the third and fourth pairs, nor a fifth thoracic segment separate from the stump-like abdomen; others, for example *Achtheres*, by the loss of the two anterior pairs of swimming feet, sink back to a still lower stage (fig. 344).

All the non-parasitic and many of the parasitic *Copepoda* pass in the successive moults through a larger or smaller number of developmental stages, in which the still undeveloped segments and appendages make their appearance, and the appendages already present undergo further segmentation. Many parasitic *Copepoda*, however, pass over the series of Nauplius forms, and the larva, as soon as hatched, undergoes a moult, and appears at once in the youngest Cyclops form, with antennæ adapted for adhering and mouth parts for piercing (fig. 344). From this stage they undergo a retrogressive metamorphosis, in which they become attached to a host, lose more or less completely the segmentation of the body which grows irregular in shape, cast off their swimming feet, and even lose the eye, which was originally present (*Lernæopoda*). The males, however, in such cases often remain small and dwarfed, and adhere (frequently more than one) firmly to the body of the female in the region of the genital opening (fig. 345).

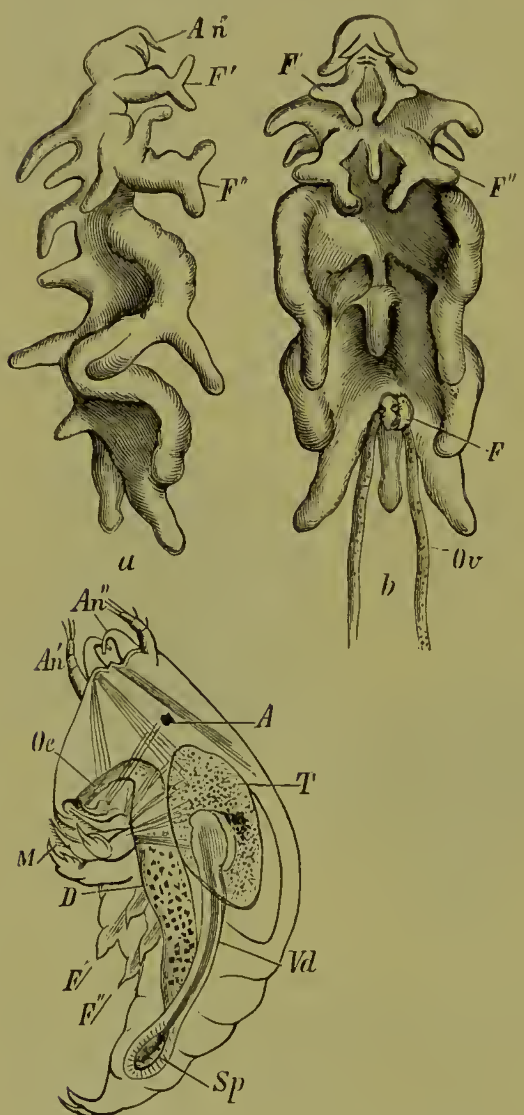



FIG. 345.—The two sexual animals of *Chondracanthus gibbosus* magnified about six diameters. *a*, Female seen from the side; *b*, from the ventral surface with adhering male; *c*, male strongly magnified. *An'*, Anterior antennæ; *An''*, antennæ for attachment; *F'*, *F''*, the two pairs of feet; *A*, eye; *Ov*, egg-tubes; *Oe*, œsophagus; *D*, intestine; *M*, mouth parts; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Sp*, spermatophore.

In the *Lernæa* (fig. 346) such pigmy males were for a long time vainly sought for upon the very peculiarly shaped body of the large female (fig. 346, *c*, *d*) which carries egg tubes. At last it was discovered that the small cyclops-like males (fig. 346, *a*), lead an independent life, and swim about freely by means of their four pairs of swimming feet; and that the females (fig. 436, *b*), in the copulatory stage resemble the males, and that it is only after copulation that they (the females) become parasitic and undergo the considerable increase in size and modification of form which characterises the female with egg-tubes.

## 1. Sub-order: **Eucopepoda.**

*Copepoda* with swimming feet, the rami of which are two or three jointed. They have biting or piercing and sucking mouth parts.

1. **Gnathostomata.** For the most part non-parasitic; oral apparatus adapted for mastication; fully segmented body.

Fam. **Cyclopidæ.** Mostly fresh-water animals, without a heart, and with a simple eye. The second pair of antennæ are four-jointed and never biramous. The feet of the fifth pair are rudimentary in both sexes. The male employs the anterior antennæ for prehension. *Cyclops coronatus* Cls., *Canthocamptus minutus* Cls., *Harpacticus chelifer* O. Fr. Müll., North Sea.

Fam. **Calanidæ.** The anterior antennæ are very long, only one of them is modified for prehension. The posterior antennæ are biramous. Heart always present. The feet of the fifth pair are, in the male, modified to assist in copulation. *Cetochilus septentrionalis* Goods., *Diaptomus castor* Jur. *Irenæus Patersonii* Templ.

Fam. **Notodelphyidæ.** Structure of body like that of the *Cyclopidæ*. The posterior antennæ modified for attachment. The two last thoracic segments are fused in the female and form a brood cavity for the reception of the eggs. They live in the branchial cavity of Ascidians. *Notodelphys agilis* Thor.

2. **Parasita* (Siphonostomata).** Mouth parts adapted for piercing and sucking, usually with incomplete segmentation of the body and reduced abdomen.

The posterior antennæ and maxillipeds end with hooks for attachment. Some of

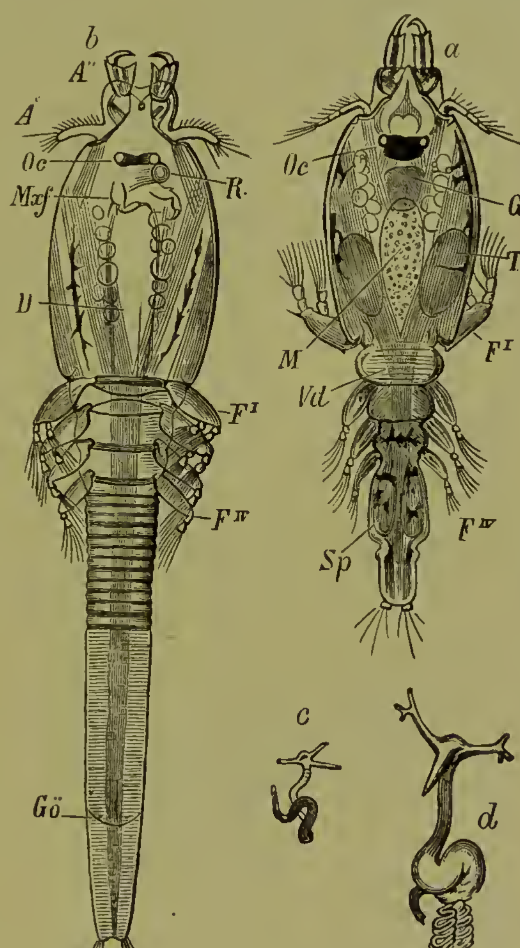



FIG. 346.—*Lernæa branchialis.* *a*, Male (about 2 to 3 mm. long). *Oc*, Eye; *G*, brain; *T*, testis; *M*, stomach; $F^{I}$ to $F^{IV}$, the four pairs of swimming feet; *Sp*, spermatophore sac. *b*, Female (5 to 6 mm. long at the time of copulation). *A'*, *A''*, the two pairs of antennæ; *D*, intestine; *R*, proboscis; *Mxf*, maxilliped. *c*, Female of *Lernæa branchialis* after copulation undergoing metamorphosis; *d*, the same with egg sacs, natural size.

* Besides Steenstrup and Lütken l.c. compare A. v. Nordmann. "Mikrographische Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der wirbellosen Thiere," Berlin, 1832. H. Burmeister, "Beschreibung einiger neuen und wenig bekannten Schmarot-

them still swim freely, but most of them live on the gills, in the pharynx, and on the outer skin of fishes. Some live within the tissues of their host (*Penella*), and nourish themselves on the blood and juices of the latter.

Fam. **Corycæidæ.** Anterior antennæ short, few jointed, and similar in both sexes. The posterior antennæ unbranched, with clasping hooks, usually different according to the sex. Mouth parts often arranged for piercing. Median eye and lateral eyes often present. They live partly as temporary parasites. *Corycæus elongatus* Cls., *Sapphirina fulgens* Thomps.

Fam. **Chondracanthidæ.** Body elongated, often without distinct segmentation, and furnished with pointed outgrowths. Abdomen stump-like. The two anterior pair of swimming feet are represented by bifid lobes, the others are wanting. There is no suctorial proboscis, the mandibles are sickle-shaped. The pear-shaped males are small and dwarfed, and attached, often in pairs, to the body of the female. *Chondracanthus gibbosus* Kr. (on Lophius). *Ch. cornutus* O. Fr. Müll., on flat fish (*Pleuronectidæ*) (fig. 345).

Fam. **Caligidæ.** Body flat, with shield-like *cephalothorax*, and very large genital segment which in the female is especially swollen. Abdomen, on the contrary, is small and more or less reduced. There is a suctorial tube and styliform mandibles. Four paired biramous swimming feet enable the animal to swim rapidly. They live on the gills and the skin of marine fish, and the females have long string-like egg tubes. *Caligus rapax* Edw., *Cecrops Latreillii* Leach.

Fam. **Lernæidæ.** The body of the female vermiform or rod-shaped; unsegmented, with outgrowths and processes on the head. Mouth parts piercing with suctorial tube. There are four pairs of small swimming feet. The females become attached to fishes, in which the anterior part of their body is buried. *Lernæocera cyprinacea* L., *Penella sagitta* L., *Lernæa branchialis* L. (fig. 346).

Fam. **Lernæopodidæ.** Body separated into head and thorax, abdomen rudimentary. Mouth parts piercing with suctorial tube. The external maxillipeds attain a considerable size, and in the female unite at their points so as to form a single organ of attachment, by means of which the animal adheres permanently. Swimming feet completely absent. The males, which are more or less dwarfed, have large free clasping feet, and are, like the females, without swimming feet. *Achtheres percarum* Nordm. (fig. 344). *Anchorella uncinata* O. Fr. Müll. (on species of *Gadus*).

## 2. Sub-order: **Branchiura.***

Carp-lice. With large compound eyes, and long protrusible spine in front of the suctorial tube of the mouth; with four pairs of elongated biramous swimming feet.

zerkrebse," *Nova acta Ac. Cæs. Leop.*, Tom XVII., 1835. C. Claus, "Ueber den Bau und die Entwickelung von Achtheres percarum," *Zeitschr für wiss. Zool.*, 1861. C. Claus, "Beobachtungen über Lernæocera, etc., Marburg, 1868.

* Jurine, "Mémoire sur l'Argule foliacé," *Annales du Muséum d'hist. nat.*, Tom. VII., 1806. Fr. Leydig, "Ueber Argulus foliaceus," *Zeitschr für wiss. Zool.*, Tom II., 1850. E. Cornalia, "Sopra una nuova specie di crostacei sifonostomi," Milano, 1860. C. Claus, "Ueber die Entwickelung, Organization und systematische Stellung der Arguliden," *Zeitschr für wiss. Zool.*, Tom XXV., 1875.

The *Branchiura* are often placed near the *Caligidæ*, but they differ from them and from the true *Copepoda* in several essential particulars. In the general body form they certainly resemble the *Caligidæ* except in the abdomen, which is split into two plates (caudal fins). Their internal structure, however, and the structure of the appendages distinguish them from the above-mentioned parasitic *Crustacea*. A large suctorial tube projects above the mouth, and in it are concealed finely serrated mandibles and styliform maxillæ. A little above this proboscis there is inserted a long cylindrical tube, which terminates in a retractile styliform spine, and contains the ducts of a pair of glandular tubes said to be poison glands. Powerful organs of attachment are placed on each side of and beneath the mouth; they consist of two parts—(1) of an anterior pair of appendages which correspond to the anterior maxillipeds and are in *Argulus* modified into large sucking discs, the hook-bearing terminal portion being reduced; and (2) of a posterior pair, which corresponds to the second pair of maxillipeds, and is provided with numerous spines on its broad basal portion, a tactile protuberance and two curved terminal claws at its extremity.

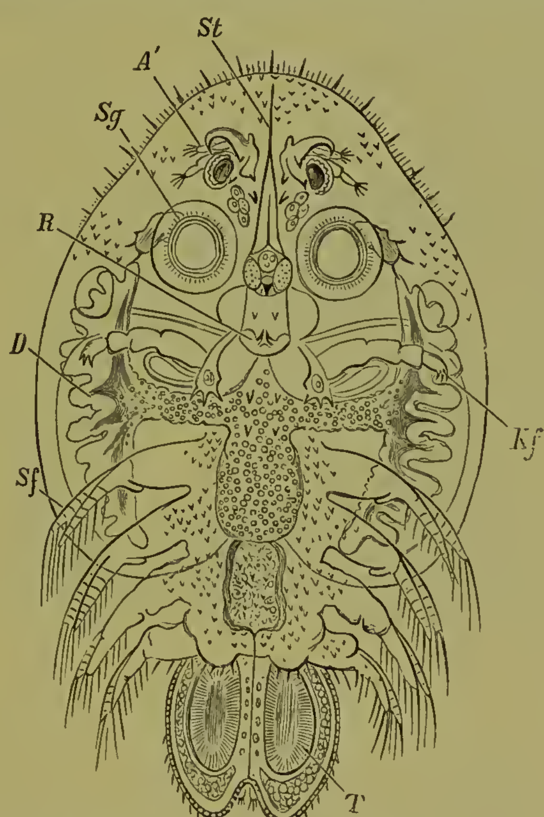



Fig. 347.—Young male of *Argulus foliaceus*. *A'*, Anterior antennæ; *Sg*, sucker (anterior maxilliped); *Kf''*, maxilliped; *Sf*, swimming feet, *R*, rostrum; *St*, spine; *D*, intestine; *T*, testes.

Next to these come the four paired swimming feet of the thoracic region, which, with the exception of the last, are, as a rule, covered by the sides of the cephalo-thoracic shield. Each of these consists of a large many-jointed basal portion, and two much narrower rami, which are beset with long swimming setæ and in their form and setigerous investment are not unlike the biramous appendages of the *Cirripedia*, being like them derived from the Copepod-like feet of the larva (fig. 347).

The internal organization recalls that of the *Phyllopoda.* The **nervous system** is distinguished by the great size of the cerebral ganglion, and by the ventral chain composed of six closely approximated ganglia. In addition to two large compound lateral **eyes,** there is present an unpaired tri-lobed median eye. The **alimentary canal** consists of a short arched ascending œsophagus, a wide stomach with two lateral ramified appendages, and a rectum which runs directly backwards and opens to the exterior in the median indentation of the caudal fin above the two plates, which correspond to the caudal fork. There are two lateral slit-like apertures in the **heart,** and a long aorta. The entire surface of the cephalothorax functions as a **respiratory** organ. There seems, however, always to be a specially strong current of blood in the caudal fin, so that this part of the body may be regarded as a sort of gill.

**Reproduction.**—The small, more agile male possesses peculiar copulatory appendages on the posterior swimming feet. The females do not carry their eggs about in sacs in the typical Copepod manner, but fasten them to surrounding objects. The vitelline membrane of the deposited eggs acquires a vesicular consistence. The young are hatched as larvæ, and undergo a metamorphosis.

Fam. **Argulidæ**, Carp-lice. *Argulus* O. Fr. Müll. The anterior pair of maxillipeds modified into large suckers. There is a styliform spine apparatus. *A. foliaceus* L. (Pou de poissons, Baldner) parasitic on Carps and Sticklebacks. *A. coregoni* Thor., *A giganteus* Luc., *Gyropeltis* Hell. The maxillipeds end in a claw; styliform spine absent. *G. Kollari* Hell, parasitic on the branchiæ of *Hydrocyon*, Brazil. *G. Doradis* Corn.

## *Order* 4.—CIRRIPEDIA.*

*Fixed, and for the most part hermaphrodite Crustacea with indistinctly segmented body enclosed by a reduplication of the skin, and a calcareous valved shell. As a rule, there are six pairs of biramous thoracic appendages.*

On account of the resemblance of their shell to that of the mussels, the *Cirripedia* were held to be Molluscs until Thompson and Burmeister, by the discovery of their larvæ, satisfactorily proved that they belong to the *Entomostraca.* They are enclosed in a mussel-

* Compare S. V. Thompson, "Zoological researches," Tom. I., 1829. H. Burmeister, "Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der Rankenfüssler." 1832. Ch. Darwin, "A monograph of the Sub-Class Cirripedia," 2 vol., London, 1851-1854. A Krohn, "Beobachtungen über die Entwiekelung der Cirripedien," *Archiv für Naturgesch.* 1860. C. Claus. "Die Cypris-ähnliche Larve der Cirripedien, etc," Marburg, 1869. R. Kossmann, "Suctoria und Lepadina," Würzburg, 1873.

like shell composed of several (4, 5 or more) pieces. These pieces, which originate by the deposition of calcareous matter in the chitinous covering of a large reduplicature of the skin (mantle), are distinguished as *scuta*, *terga*, and *carina*. The animal is invariably fixed by the anterior end of the head, which in the *Lepadidæ* (fig. 348, *a*) may be drawn out into a long stalk projecting freely from the shell. In the *Balanidæ*, which are without the stalk (fig. 348, *b*), the body is surrounded by an external calcareous tube, usually composed of six pieces; the aperture of the tube is closed by a sort of operculum formed of calcareous plates lying inside (fig. 348, *b*). In

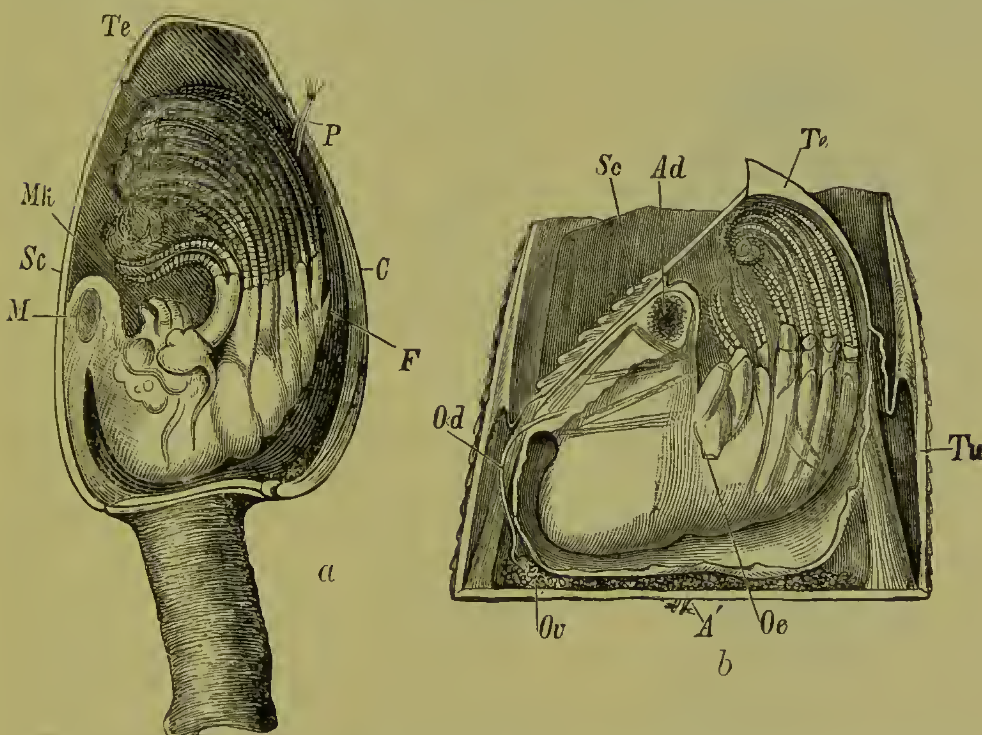



FIG. 348.—*a*, *Lepas* after removal of the right shell. *A'*, Anterior antennæ at the end of the stalk; *C*, carina; *Te*, tergum; *Sc*, scutum; *Mk*, oral cone; *F*, caudal fork; *P*, cirrus or penis; *M*, muscle. *b*, *Balanus tintinnabulum* (after Ch. Darwin), one-half of the shell has been removed; *Tu*, Section of the outer shell; *Ov*, ovary; *Od*, oviduct; *Oe*, opening of oviduct; *Ad*, adductor muscle; *Sc*, scutum; *Te*, tergum; *A'*, anterior antennæ.

both cases the attachment is effected principally by the hardening of the secretion of the so-called cement gland, which opens on the penultimate joint of the small and delicate anterior antennæ; this joint being dilated to form a sort of sucker. The body, which is surrounded by the mantle and its shell-plates, lies with its hinder region stretched upwards so that the appendages, which are used to cause currents in the water, may be protruded from the slit-like space left on the ventral side between the paired scuta and terga.

**Appendages and external features.**—A head with antennæ and jaws can be distinguished from the region of the body (thorax) bearing the biramous appendages, but there is no distinct boundary between these two regions. The anus is situated at the extremity of the small stump-like abdomen, which succeeds the thorax and is often only indicated by two caudal appendages. Posterior antennæ are invariably absent, while the anterior pair persists, even in the adult, as small organs of attachment. The oral apparatus is situated on a ventral prominence of the cephalic region, and consists of an upper lip with palps, two mandibles and four maxillæ, of which the two last unite to form a sort of under lip. On the thorax there are usually six pairs of many-jointed biramous appendages, the elongated cirriform rami of which are richly beset with hairs and setæ and serve to set up currents in the water in which the particles of food are brought to the animal. The stump-shaped abdomen bears an elongated cirrus, which is bent towards the ventral surface between the thoracic appendages, and constitutes the male copulatory organ. There are numerous and very peculiar variations in the shape of the whole body. Not only may the deposition of calcareous matter in the mantle be wanting, and the biramous thoracic appendages be reduced in number or even absent, but the mouth parts and the appendages may also be lost (*Peltogastridæ*), and the body may be reduced to the form of an unsegmented tube, sac, or lobed disc.

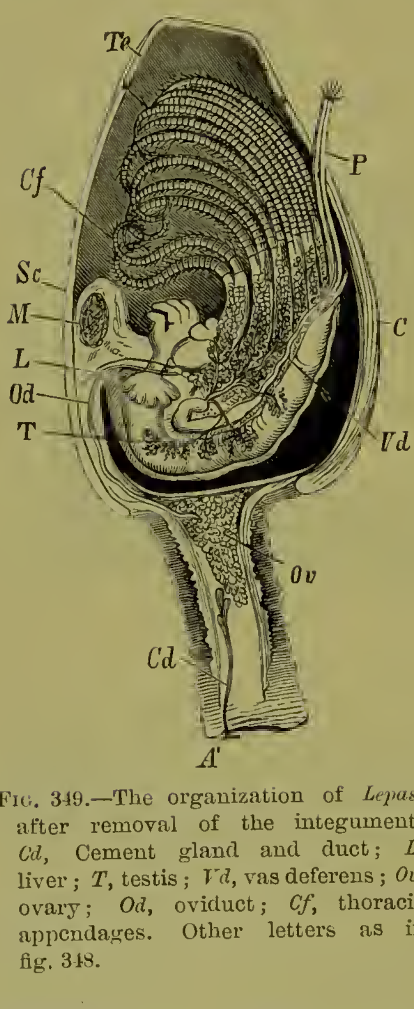


FIG. 349.—The organization of *Lepas*, after removal of the integument. *Cd*, Cement gland and duct; *L*, liver; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Ov*, ovary; *Od*, oviduct; *Cf*, thoracic appendages. Other letters as in fig. 348.

**Nervous system and sense organs.**—The Cirripedia possess a paired cerebral ganglion and a ventral chain of ganglia, of which there are usually five pairs, but which are sometimes fused to a common ganglion mass (*Balanidæ*). There is a double eye, which, although rudimentary, corresponds to the unpaired Nauplius eye.

An **alimentary canal** is absent only in the *Rhizocephala*. In the

*Lepadidæ* and the *Balanidæ*, the alimentary canal consists of a narrow œsophagus, a saccular dilated stomach provided with several cæcal (hepatic) diverticula, an elongated chyle-forming intestine, and a short rectum, which is only sometimes clearly marked off from the intestine (fig. 349). The *Rhizocephala* (fig. 354, *a*), which are without an alimentary canal, possess root-like processes of the parenchyma, which ramify in the viscera, especially the liver of Decapods, and absorb from them endosmotically the nutritive juices (as in *Anelasma*).

Special glandular organs, the so-called cement glands (peculiar to the *Cirripedia*), open on the sucker of the persistent (anterior) antennæ; the animal is fixed by their secretion, and the *Rhizocephala* alone seem to be entirely without them.

A **heart and vascular system** seem to be wanting in all cases. The tubes which are present on several thoracic appendages of many *Lepadidæ* are regarded as **branchiæ**, as are also two plicated lamellæ on the interior of the mantle of the *Balanidæ*.

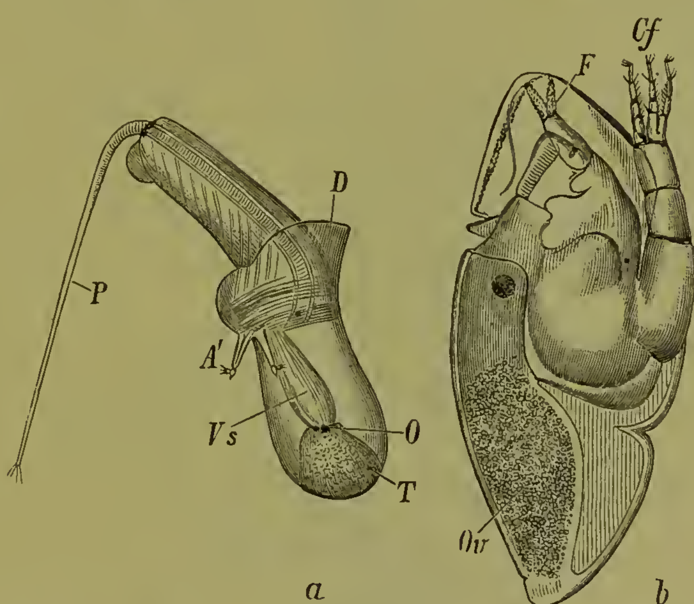



FIG. 350.—*Alcippe lampas* (after Ch. Darwin.) *a*, Male, very strongly magnified; *A'*, antennæ; *T*, testis; *Vs*, seminal vesicle; *D*, reduplicature of the skin; *O*, eye; *P*, penis. *b*, Longitudinal section through female; *F*, maxilliped; *Cf*, the three pairs of legs; *Ov*, ovary.

**Generative organs.**—The Cirripedia are, with a few exceptions, hermaphrodite. The testes are branched glandular tubes, and lie at the sides of the alimentary canal (fig. 349, *T*). The vasa deferentia which dilate into vesiculæ seminales reach to the base of the cirriform penis, in which they unite to form a common ductus ejaculatorius opening at the point of the penis (*Vd*). The ovaries in the *Balanidæ* lie in the basal part of the body cavity (fig. 348, *Ov*); in the *Lepadidæ* (fig. 349) they are moved into the prolongation of the head, which is known as the stalk. The oviducts, according to

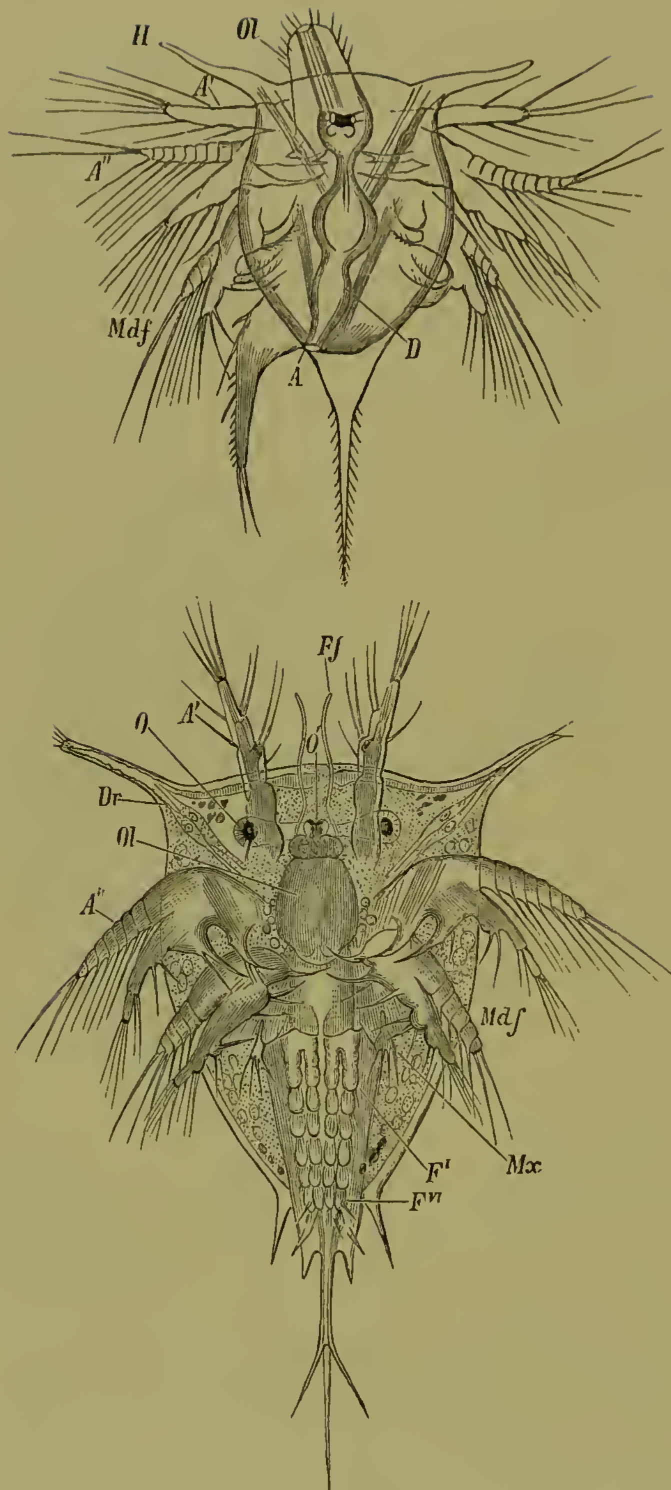



FIG. 351.—*a* Later Nauplius larva. *A*, anus; *Ol*, proboscis with mouth; *II*, frontal horns; *D*, intestine; *A'*, *A''*, 1st and 2nd antennæ; *Mdf*, mandibular foot (third pair of appendages). *b*, Metanauplius larva of *Balanus* before the moult. Beneath the skin are the rudiments of the lateral eyes (*O*) and all the appendages $F^{I}$ to $F^{IV}$ of the Cypris stage; *Ff*, frontal filament; *O'*, unpaired eye; *Dr*, gland cells of the anterior horns; *A'*, the antennæ with suctorial disc; *Mx* rudiment of maxilla.

Krohn, open on a prominence on the basal joint of the anterior pair of thoracic appendages. The eggs accumulate in the cavity between the mantle and the body in large thin-walled flattened sacs, which, in the *Lepadidæ*, are attached to a fold of the mantle and are packed together on the dorsal surface of the animal.

In spite of the hermaphroditism, there are, according to Darwin, in certain genera (*Ibla*, *Scalpellum*) very simply organised dwarfed males of peculiar form, the so-called *complemental males*, which are attached like parasites to the body of the hermaphrodite. There are also diœcious Cirripedes with a strongly marked dimorphism of the sexes. This is the case with *Scalpel-*

*lum ornatum* and *Ibla Cumingii;* also with the remarkable genera *Cryptophialus* and *Alcippe* (fig. 350). The males of these forms are not only small and dwarfed, but also, according to Darwin, have neither mouth, digestive canal, nor thoracic appendages. As a rule, two or sometimes more attach themselves to the body of the female.

**Development.**—The eggs, while still within the brood-pouch, undergo an irregular segmentation. The clear cells arrange themselves around the food yolk in the form of a blastoderm, the ventral side of which soon becomes considerably thickened in consequence of the appearance of the mesodermic layer. The larvæ leave the egg as Nauplii (fig. 351, *a, b*), of oval or pear-shaped form, with unpaired frontal eye, lateral frontal horns, and three pairs of appendages, of which the anterior is simple, the two next biramous and closely beset with swimming setæ.

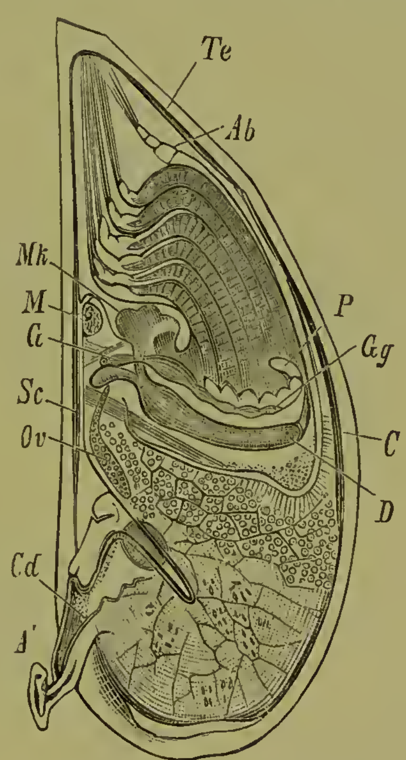



Fig. 352.—Median section through a pupa of *Lepas*. *A'* Attaching antenna; *C*, carina; *Te*, tergum; *Sc*, scutum; *Ov*, ovary; *G*, cerebral ganglion; *Gg*, ganglionic chain; *D*, alimentary canal; *Cd*, cement gland; *Mk*, oral cone; *Ab*, abdomen; *P*, rudiment of the penis; *M*, muscle.

After several moults, the larva, which has grown to a considerable size, enters on a new stage of development, the so-called Cypris stage (pupa) (fig. 352). The reduplicature of the skin has the form of a bivalve mussel-like shell, through the gaping ventral edges of which the appendages can be protruded. While the form of the shell recalls that of the *Ostracoda*, the structure of the body, so far as the segmentation and form of the appendages are concerned, approximates to that of the *Copepoda*. The anterior appendage of the Nauplius larva has given rise to a four-jointed antenna, the penultimate joint of which has become large and disc-shaped and contains the opening of the cement gland, while the terminal joint bears in addition to tactile setæ one or two delicate lancet-shaped olfactory hairs. The frontal horns are transformed into two conical prominences near the anterior margin. Of the two pairs of biramous appendages, those which correspond to the second pair of antennæ are cast off, while the posterior pair becomes the rudiment of the anterior jaws (mandibles) of the oral cone, which is still closed and on which the first rudiments of the maxillæ and under lip are already visible. The oral cone is followed by the thoracic region with six pairs of biramous Copepod-like swimming feet, and a minute three-jointed abdomen, which terminates in two caudal appendages and caudal setæ. The pupa has a large pair of compound eyes at the sides of the unpaired eye-spot, and swims about by means of its swimming feet. It appears not to take in food. The material necessary for its further changes is stored up principally in the cephalic and dorsal regions in the form of a largely-developed fat body.

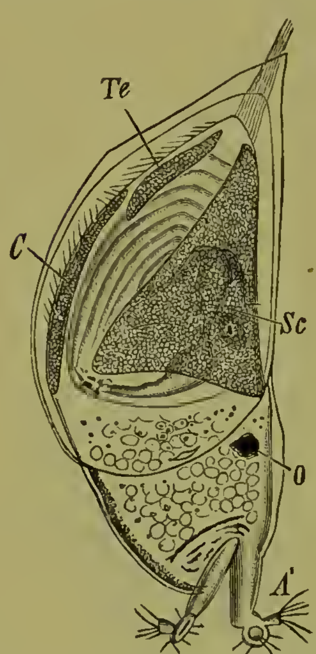



Fig. 353.—Young *Lepas* after disappearance of the two horny valves of the shell and the straightening of the anterior part of the head (stalk), which in the pupa stage is bent.

After swimming about for a longer or shorter time, the pupa fixes itself by the suctorial disc of its bent antennæ to some foreign body. The parts of the adult Cirripede are now visible beneath the skin, and the cement gland begins to secrete a cement, which hardens and so brings about the permanent attachment of the young animal. In the *Lepadidæ* the region of the head above and between the antennæ grows so much that it projects from the pupal integument, beneath which the calcareous pieces of the shell of the Cirripede can be seen, and after the moulting of the chitinous skin of the pupa constitutes the fleshy peduncle by which the animal is attached, and into which the rudiments of the ovaries project (fig. 353). The paired eyes of the free-swimming Cypris larva disappear, while the unpaired pigment spot remains. The mouth parts become fully differentiated, and the biramous swimming feet become short, many-jointed cirriform appendages.

The Cirripedia are marine animals. They attach themselves to various foreign objects. They are found fixed, usually in groups, to logs of wood, rocks, mussel shells, Crustacea, the skin of whales, etc. Some, as *Lithotrya*, *Alcippe*, and the *Cryptophialidæ*, are able to bore into Lammellibranch shells and Corals, while the *Rhizocephala* are parasitic on *Crustacea*. In the *Rhizocephala* the body is saccular, and the animal loses all its appendages and its alimentary canal, and extracts the juices of its host (*Decapoda*) by means of root-like processes (fig. 354).

1. **Pedunculata.** There is a peduncle and six pairs of biramous feet; the mantle has usually carina, scuta, and terga.

Fam. **Lepadidæ.** Peduncle well marked, and not provided with calcareous plates. There is a membranous mantle, which, as a rule, is provided with five shell plates, of which the scuta and terga lie behind one another (fig. 348, *a*). *Lepas* L. (*Anatifa* Brug.), *L. fascicularis* Ellis. (*vitrea* Lam.) Found from the Northern Seas to the South Sea. *L. anatifera* L., cosmopolitan. *Conchoderma*

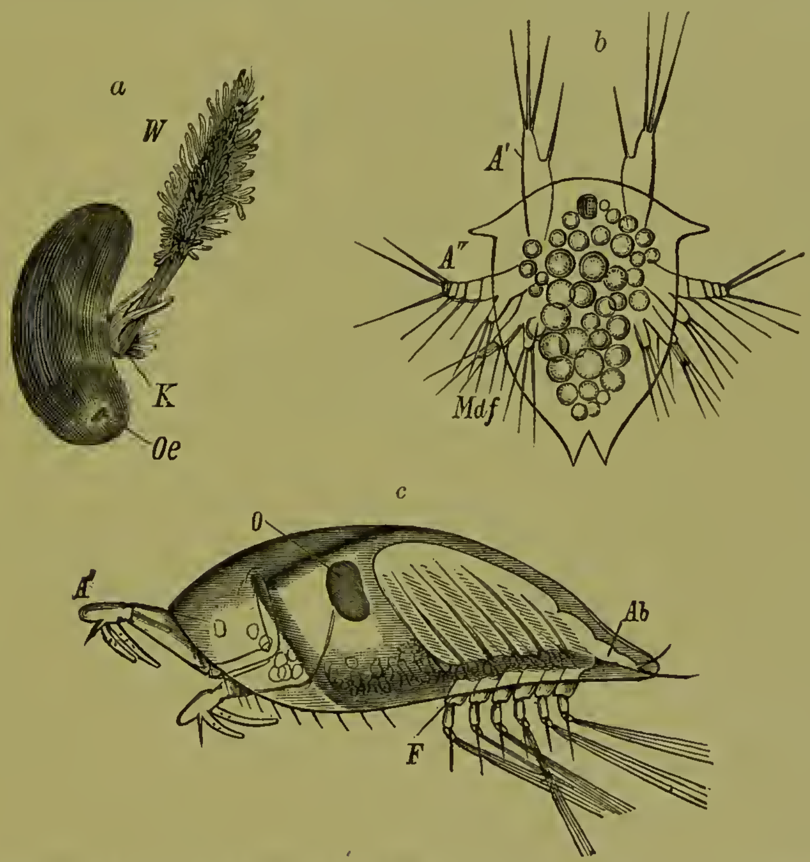



FIG. 354.—*a*, *Sacculina purpurea* (after Fr. Müller). *Oe*, Aperture of the mantle sac; *W*, root-like processes; *K*, genital aperture. *b*, Nauplius larva of *Sacculina*. *A'*, *A''*, *Mdf*, appendages. *c*, Pupa of *Lernæodiscus porcellanæ* (after Fr. Müller). *F*, The six pairs of legs; *Ab*, abdomen; *A'*, attaching antennæ; *O*, eye.

Olf. (*Otion*, *Cineras* Leach.), *C. virgata* Spengl., frequently attached to ships. *C. aurita* L., *Anelasma* Darwin. The stalk is provided with root-like processes, which grow into the skin of *Squalidæ*. *A. squalicola* Lovén.

Fam. **Pollicipedidæ.** Peduncle not sharply distinct, scaly or hairy. The shell plates very strong, numerous. The scuta and terga lie close to one another. There are sometimes complemental males. *Pollicipes cornucopia* Leach., Ocean and Mediterranean. *Scalpellum vulgare* Leach., North Sea and Mediterranean. *Sc. ornatum* Gray, South Africa. *Ibla quadrivalvis* Cuv., South Australia. *I. Cumingii* Darw., Philippines.

2. **Operculata.** The peduncle is absent or rudimentary. The body is surrounded by an external ring of plates at the extremity of which the scuta and terga form an operculum, which is usually freely movable and provided with depressor muscles (fig. 348, *b*).

Fam. **Balanidæ.** Scuta and terga freely movable and articulating with one another. The gills are formed each of a fold. *Balanus tintinnabulum* L. Widely distributed and found in a fossil form. *B. improvisus* Darw. Found in brackish water.

Fam. **Coronulidæ.** Scuta and terga freely movable, but not articulating with one another. The two gills formed each of two folds. *Tubicinella trachealis* Shaw., South Sea. *Coronula balænaris* L., Antarctic Ocean. *C. diadema* L., Arctic Ocean.

3. **Abdominalia.** The irregularly segmented body is enclosed in a flask-shaped mantle, and bears on its terminal portion three pairs of cirriform feet. Mouth parts and alimentary canal completely developed. The sexes are separate. They live as parasites buried in the calcareous shell of *Cirripedia* and *Mollusca*.

Fam. **Alcippidæ.** With four pairs of feet, of which the first pair is palpiform, and the two last are uniramous and composed of few elongated joints. The sexes are separate. The female bores into Mollusc shells. The male is dwarfed, and is without mouth, stomach, or feet. *Alcippe lampas* Hanc., bores into the columella of the shells of *Fusus* and *Buccinum*. Found on the coast of England.

Fam. **Cryptophialidæ.** They have three pairs of feet at the posterior end of the body. *Cryptophialus* Darw., sexes separate. *Cr. minutus* Darw., in the shell of *Concholepas Peruviana*, found on the west coast of South America. *Kochlorine hamata* Noll, lives in excavations in the shell of *Haliotis*.

4. **Apoda.** The body is segmented, and is composed of eleven rings. There is no special reduplicature of the mantle. The shape resembles that of a maggot. The attaching antennæ are elongated to the form of a band. The mouth is adapted for sucking, and has mandibles and maxillæ. Feet absent. The digestive canal is rudimentary. They live parasitically in the mantle of other Cirripedia. They are hermaphrodite.

Fam. **Proteolepadidæ** with the single genus *Proteolepas* Darw., *Pr. bivincta* Darw., West Indies.

5. **Rhizocephala*** (**Suctoria**). Body tubular or saccular, without segmentation or appendages; with narrow, short peduncle for attachment, from which branched, root-like filaments arise. The

* W. Lilljeborg, "Les genres Liriope et Peltogaster," *Nova acta reg. soc. scien. Upsal.*, Ser. 3, vol. iii., 1860. Fr. Müller, "Die Rhizocephalen." *Archiv fur Naturgesch.*, 1862 and 1863. R. Kossmann, "Beiträge zur Anatomie der schmarotzenden Rankenfüssler," *Verh. der med.-phys. Gesellsch*, Wurzburg. Neue Folge, Tom. IV.

latter pierce the body of the host, and carry nourishment to the parasite. Mantle saccular, and without calcareous plates, with narrow aperture which can be closed. Mouth and alimentary canal absent. The testes are usually paired, lie between the ovaries, and open into the brood-pouch. The *Rhizocephala* live principally as parasites on the abdomen of the *Decapoda*, and wind their root-like filaments around the viscera of the latter.

Fam. **Peltogastridæ.** *Peltogaster paguri* Rathke. *Sacculina carcini* Thomps., *Lernæodiscus porcellanæ* Fr. Müll., Brazil.

---

## II.—MALACOSTRACA.

The *Malacostraca* differ from the *Entomostraca* in possessing a constant number of segments and paired appendages. The boundary between the head and thorax cannot be absolutely fixed on account of the varying number of anterior pairs of legs which are modified to form jaws. These regions are composed of thirteen segments altogether, and bear the same number of pairs of appendages, while the abdomen, which is always distinct, includes six segments and the same number of paired limbs and terminates with an anal plate (*telson*) derived from the terminal portion of the body.

Amongst the living *Malacostraca* there is, however, a single group of forms (**Nebalia**) (fig. 355, *a*, *b*), which differ in having a larger number of abdominal segments. They have, in addition to the six abdominal segments with appendages, two segments without appendages, and an elongated Phyllopod-like caudal fork. This remarkable form was for a long time regarded as a Phyllopod, and in many of its characters represents a connecting link between the *Phyllopoda* and the *Malacostraca*. The structure and segmentation of the head and thorax resembles that of the *Malacostraca*, but the terminal region of the abdomen does not present the special form of a caudal plate or telson. In Nebalia we probably have to do with an offshoot of the Phyllopod-like ancestors of the Malacostraca, which has persisted to the present time.

The head includes in all cases, behind the mandibular segment on which two paragnathi form a kind of underlip, the segments of two pairs of maxillæ. The latter preserve more or less the characters of Phyllopod feet. The head, therefore, consists of five segments, each with its pair of appendages, viz., two pairs of antennæ, one pair of mandibles, and two pairs of maxillæ. It is followed by the thorax, which is composed of eight segments. The eight pairs of thoracic appendages may have an exactly similar shape, and possess two separate and many-jointed rami. This form of thoracic appendage is characteristic of the Schizopoda; in Nebalia* the thoracic appen-

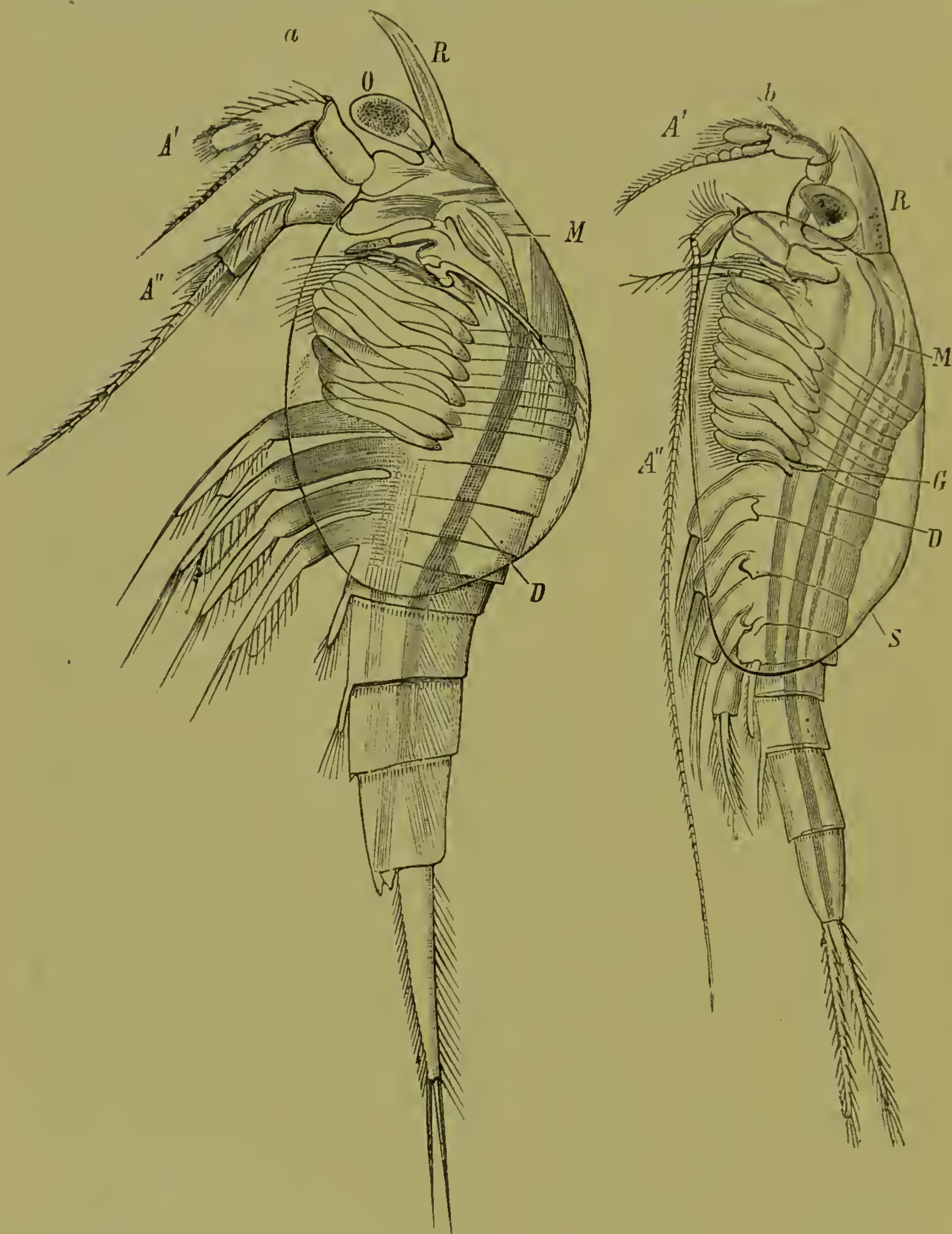



Fig. 355.—*Nebalia Geoffroyi*, strongly magnified. *a*, Female; *b*, male; *R*, rostrum; *O*, stalked eye; *M*, crop; *D*, intestine; *S*, shell *G*, vas deferens.

* *Nebalia* is best placed in a special group, *Leptostraca*, between the *Entomostraca* and *Malacostraca*. The palæozoic fossil genera *Hymenocaris*, *Peltocaris*, etc., would have to be placed in such a group.

dages closely resemble the typical Phyllopod limb. As a rule, however, some of the anterior thoracic legs take part in preparing the food and have a form intermediate between maxillæ and thoracic legs. Such are called *foot-jaws* or *maxillipeds.* In the *Arthrostraca* the anterior pair of thoracic appendages only are so modified, and the segment bearing them joins the head; the thorax is, therefore, in this group composed of seven segments, each with its pair of appendages. In other groups of *Malacostraca* the next or two next pairs of thoracic legs have the form of maxillipeds, so that there is no sharp division between the head and thorax. The latter is, at least partially, covered by a shield-like reduplicature of the skin, which morphologically corresponds to the Phyllopod shell and forms a more or less extensive carapace, which fuses with the back of the thorax, and under which the posterior, rarely all the thoracic segments may remain separate as free rings.

## *Order* 1.—ARTHROSTRACA.*

*Malacostraca with lateral sessile eyes, usually with seven, more rarely with six or fewer separate thoracic segments, and the same number of pairs of legs. Without a reduplicature of the skin.*

The head bears four antennæ, the two mandibles, four maxillæ, and a pair of maxillipeds; in all six pairs of appendages. A small bilobed plate, distinguished as the under-lip, behind the pair of mandibles, marks the boundary of the *primary* region of the head. The two pairs of maxillæ as well as the maxillipeds are secondary cephalic appendages derived from the thoracic region of the body.

Behind the head there are usually seven free thoracic rings with the same number of pairs of appendages, which are adapted for creeping or swimming. The number of distinct thoracic segments is in rare cases reduced to six (*Tanais*) or five (*Anceus*), the anterior or the two anterior segments of the thorax becoming intimately connected with the head. In the latter case a more or less extensive cephalothoracic carapace is formed. The abdomen which follows the thorax includes, as a rule, six segments bearing limbs, and a simple or split plate without appendages and representing the terminal segment. The number of the abdominal segments and appendages may, however, be reduced (*Isopoda*), and the entire abdomen may

* Besides the works of Latreille, M. Edwards, Dana, and others, compare Spence Bate and J. O. Westwood. "A History of the British sessile-eyed Crustacea." Tom. I. and II., London, 1863-1868. G. O. Sars, "Histoire naturelle des Crustacés d'eau douce de Norvège." Christiania, 1867.

even be reduced to an unsegmented stump-shaped appendage (*Læmodipoda*).

The **nervous system** consists of a cerebral ganglion and a ventral ganglionic chain, which is most distinctly composed of two lateral halves. In the *Isopoda* there is also an unpaired visceral nerve. The two **eyes** are always sessile, compound eyes, with smooth or facetted cornea; they are never stalked. Delicate olfactory fibres are often present on the anterior antennæ, and are especially numerous in the male sex.

The **alimentary canal** begins with a short œsophagus, which passes upwards to open into a wide crop, supported by firm horny bands and often armed with strong chitinous plates. The crop leads into a long intestine provided with two or three pairs of tubular hepatic glands. The rectum, which may possess one or two tubular appendages (probably urinary), opens at the posterior end of the body.

The **antennal gland** opens on the basal segment of the posterior antenna, often upon a conical protuberance.

**Vascular system.**—A heart is always present as the central organ of the circulation. It may either have the form of a tube extending along the whole length of the thorax (*Amphipoda*); or it may be saccular and placed in the abdomen (*Isopoda*). In the first case the gills are placed on the thoracic feet as tubular appendages: in the latter, on the other hand, they are placed on the abdomen. From the heart the blood passes through an anterior and posterior aorta, and usually through lateral arteries. The vessels conduct the blood into the body cavity, whence it returns in regular streams to the lateral paired slits of the heart.

**Generative organs.**—The *Arthrostraca* are of separate sexes. The males are frequently distinguished from the females by the modification of certain parts of the appendages to form prehensile organs, by a greater development of olfactory hairs on the anterior antennæ, and by the position of the sexual and copulatory organs. It is rare to find a strongly marked dimorphism of the sexes (*Bopyrus*, *Praniza*). The generative organs open either at the posterior part of the thorax or at the base of the abdomen; the female always on the ante-penultimate pair, the male on the last pair of the thoracic appendages or between the first of the abdomen (*Isopoda*). The ovaries are two simple or branched tubes with the same number of oviducts. The testes similarly seem to be composed of one (*Amphipoda*) or more (3) pairs of tubes (*Isopoda*), the efferent ducts of which (vasa deferentia) either remain separate or unite to form a copulatory organ. Appendages of the legs may also be present as additional aids to copulation. The mature ova are, as a rule, carried about by the female in brood pouches formed by the lamellar appendages of the thoracic feet (*oostegites*). **Development** as a rule takes place without metamorphosis, but the form and appendages of the young animal not unfrequently differ from those of the adult animal (*Phronima*). The segments and the appendages may even be incomplete in number after birth (*Isopoda*).

Fossil *Arthrostraca* are found in the Oolite (*Archæoniscus*). *Prosoponiscus* occurs in the Permian, *Amphipeltis* in the Devonian.

## 1. Sub-order.—**Amphipoda.***

*Arthrostraca with laterally compressed body, with gills on the thoracic feet and an elongated abdomen, of which the three anterior segments bear the swimming feet, while the three posterior bear posteriorly directed feet adapted for springing* (fig. 356).

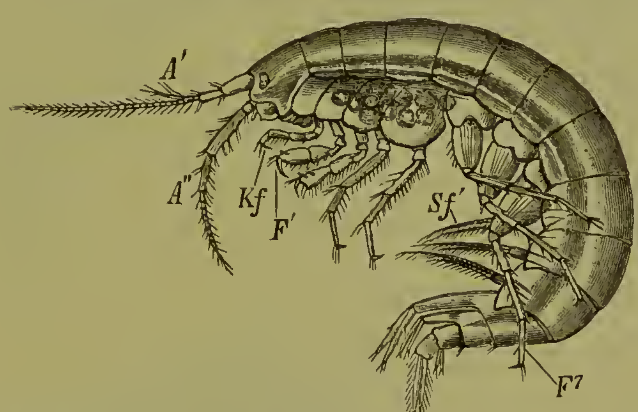


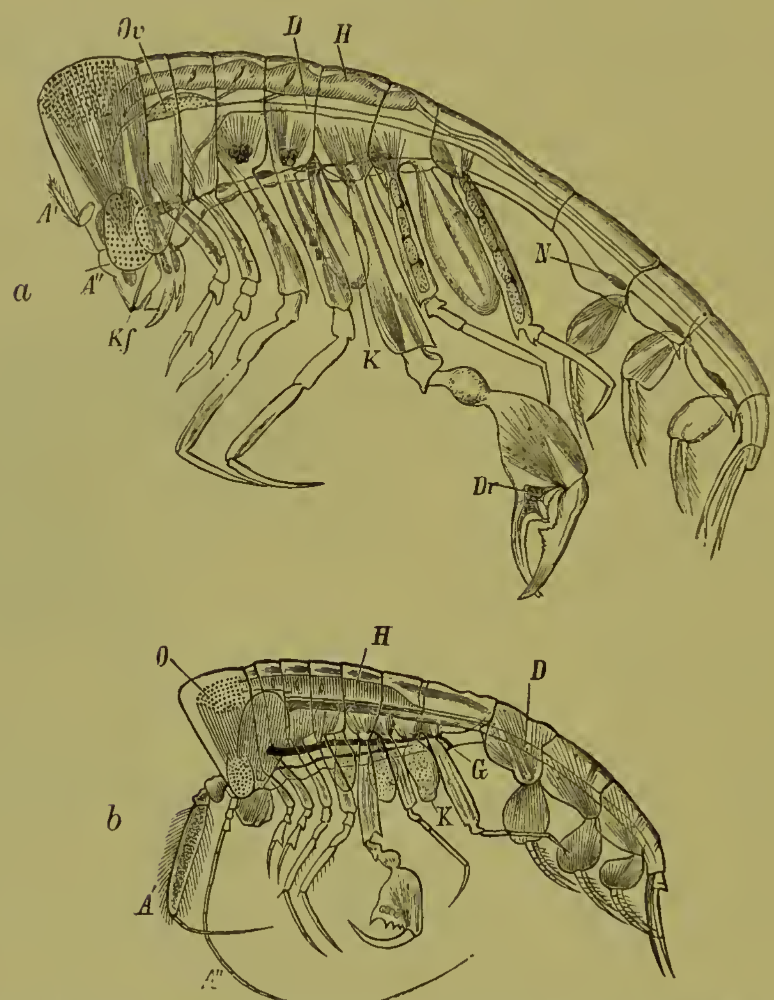

FIG. 356.—*Gammarus neglectus* (after G. O. Sars), with eggs between the brood lamellæ (oostegites) on the thorax. $A'$, $A''$, the two antennæ; $Kf$, maxilliped; $F^1$ to $F^7$, the seven pairs of thoracic appendages; $Sf'$, the first swimming foot of the abdomen.

The *Amphipoda* are small animals, being only in rare cases several inches long (*Lysianassa magellanica*). They move in the water principally by springing and by swimming. The head, which is sometimes small (*Crevettina*, fig. 356), sometimes large and then much swollen (*Hyperina*, fig. 357), is sharply distinct from the thorax and is fused with the first of the seven thoracic segments only in the aberrant group of the *Læmodipoda*.

The two pairs of antennæ usually consist of a short strong shaft

* Besides the older works of De Geer, Rösel. M. Edwards, etc., compare C. Spence Bate, "On the Morphology of some Amphipoda of the Division Hyperina," *Ann. of Nat. Hist.*, Ser. 2. vol. xix., 1857. C. Spence Bate, "On the nidification of Crustacea," *Ann. of Nat. Hist.*, Ser. 3. vol. i. C. Spence Bate, "Catalogue of the specimens of Amphipodous Crustacea in the collection of the British Museum," London, 1862. E. van Beneden et Em Bessels, "Mémoire sur la formation du Blastoderme chez les Amphipodes, etc," Bruxelles, 1868. C. Claus, "Der Organismus der Phronimiden, *Arbeiten auz dem Zool. Institut. der Universität Wien*, Tom II., 1879.

and a long multiarticulate flagellum, which, however, may be more or less rudimentary. The anterior antennæ, which are always longer in the male, often bear a short accessory flagellum and present numerous modifications in their special form. In the *Hyperina* they are very short in the female; while in the male they are of considerable length and are closely beset with olfactory hairs. The posterior antennæ are frequently longer than the anterior: in the male *Typhidæ* they are folded in a zigzag fashion, and in the *Corophiidæ*




G. 357.—*Phronima sedentaria*, *a*, female; *b*, male. *O*, eyes; *A'*, *A''*, the two pairs of antennæ; *Kf*, jaws; *D*, intestine; *H*, heart and aorta; *K*, gills; *Ov*, ovary; *N*, nervous system; *Dr*, glands in the chela of the fifth pair of legs; *G*, genital opening.

are modified to form strong pediform appendages. In the female, on the contrary, they may be degenerated and represented only by the basal joint (*Phronima*) (fig. 357, *a* and *b*).

The mandibles are powerful biting plates with a sharp, usually toothed edge and a lower masticating process. They usually possess a three-jointed palp, which is occasionally reduced. The anterior bilobed maxillæ also have as a rule a short, two-jointed palp, while the maxillæ of the second pair are reduced to two lamellæ of considerable size attached to a common base. The maxillipeds fuse to form a sort of underlip, which is either tri-lobed (*Hyperina*) or bears upon a common basal portion an internal and external pair of lamellæ, of which the latter may be considered as the basal joint of a large multiarticulate and frequently pediform palp (*Crevettina* and *Læmodipoda*).

Delicate lamellæ or tubes, which are attached to the coxal joints of the thoracic legs, function as gills; the active movements of the abdominal swimming feet cause a constant renewal of the water around them. In the female there are in addition to the gills lamellar plates (*oostegites*), which are applied together under the thorax to form a brood-pouch.

The males are distinguished from the females not only by the absence of the oostegites, but chiefly by the stronger development of the prehensile hooks on the anterior thoracic feet and the different formation of the antennæ.

The eggs pass into the brood-pouch and there develop. The yolk sometimes (*G. locusta* and other marine species) undergoes a complete segmentation. Sometimes (*G. pulex*), after a superficial segmentation, a peripheral cell layer is separated, which develops into a delicate blastoderm beneath the egg membrane. A ventral primitive streak is then formed, and on the dorsal side, beneath a differentiation which has been erroneously taken for a micropyle, a peculiar globular organ makes its appearance; this is the first rudiment of the cervical gland (*dorsal organ*), which is confined to embryonic life. The appendages are developed from before backwards on the ventrally flexed body of the embryo. The young animals usually possess at hatching all their appendages and in all essential points have the structure of the adult animal, but the number of joints of the antennæ and the special form of the legs still present differences. In the *Hyperina* alone the just hatched young may be without abdominal feet and differ so much in their form from the adult that they may be said to undergo a metamorphosis.

The *Amphipoda* for the most part live in fresh and salt water and lead an independent life (the presence of Arctic species in the Swedish and Norwegian seas is very interesting). Some, however, live in tubes (*Cerapus*), others in holes gnawed in wood (*Chelura*). The large size of the deep-sea forms is of special interest; amongst these a *Gammarid*, allied to the genus *Iphimedia*, and *Cystosoma Neptuni* (*Hyperidæ*) become several inches in length. The *Hyperina* live principally in transparent marine animals, especially in *Medusæ*, and may, as the female *Phronima sedentaria*, take up their abode with their entire brood in transparent *Pyrosoma*, whose internal parts they eat up. The *Cyamidæ* among the *Læmodipoda* are parasitic on the skin of whales.

### *Tribe* 1.—Læmodipoda.

*Amphipoda with cervically placed anterior legs and rudimentary apodal abdomen.*

The anterior thoracic segment is more or less closely fused with the head and the anterior pair of legs shifted on to the neck. The maxillipeds are modified to form a quadripartite under-lip with long palps. The branchiæ are usually confined to the third and fourth thoracic segments, the legs of which are often rudimentary or are altogether wanting. The feet end with hooks for attachment. The abdomen is small and reduced to a short protuberance destitute of appendages.

*Caprella linearis* L. Body elongated and thin. They are parasitic on Hydroids and colonies of Bryozoa. *Cyamus ceti* L. Body broad and flat; abdomen quite rudimentary; parasitic on the skin of Cetacea.

### *Tribe* 2.—Crevettina.

*Amphipoda with small head, small eyes, and multiarticulate pediform maxillipeds.*

Both pairs of antennæ are long and multiarticulate; in the male they are larger than in the female. The upper or anterior antennæ are usually, as in *Gammarus*, the longer; their shaft is composed of several joints and bears a small accessory flagellum as well as the principal one. The contrary may, however, occur, as in *Corophium*, where the posterior antennæ are elongated and pediform. The maxillipeds in all cases fuse together at their base and form a large under-lip, usually with four lamellæ and two jointed pediform palps. The coxal joints of the thoracic legs have the form of broad and large *epimeral* plates. The abdomen has always the full number of segments. The three posterior pairs of abdominal feet (*uropoda*) are well developed and often much elongated. This group, which includes an astonishing variety of forms, is principally distributed in the colder seas.

Fam. **Corophiidæ**. The body is not laterally compressed. The posterior antennæ are more or less pediform. The coxal joints of the legs are frequently very small. They move rather by walking. *Corophium longicorne* Fabr., dig passages in mud. *Cerapus tubularis* Say., lives in tubes. *Podocerus variegatus* Leach., English coast. *Chelura terebrans* Phil. is allied here, gnaws, with *Limnoria lignorum*, wood-work in the sea. North Sea and Mediterranean.

Fam. **Orchestiidæ.** Anterior antennæ usually short, always without accessory ramus. The posterior pair of uropoda are unbranched and are shorter than the preceding pairs. They live on the shore, especially on sandy beaches, and move by springing. *Talitrus saltator* Mont. = *T. locusta* Latr. On the sandy coasts of Europe. *Orchestia littorea* Mont., North Sea.

Fam. **Gammaridæ.** The anterior antennæ often have a second ramus, which is always longer than the shaft of the posterior. The coxal plates of the four anterior pairs of legs are very broad. They move more by swimming than by springing. *Gammarus pulex* L., *G. fluviatilis* Rös., *G. marinus* Leach. In the blind *Niphargus* Schiödte the crystalline cones and eye pigment are wanting. *N. puteanus* Koch., in deep springs and lakes (Lake of Geneva). *Lysianassa Costæ* Edw., Mediterranean. *L. atlantica* Edw. *L. magellanica* Lillj.

## *Tribe* 3.—Hyperina.

*Amphipoda with large swollen head and large eyes, usually divided into frontal and lateral eyes. They have a pair of rudimentary maxillipeds functioning as underlip.*

The antennæ are sometimes short and rudimentary, sometimes of considerable size, and in the male are elongated into a multiarticulate flagellum (*Hyperidæ*). The posterior antennæ may in the female be reduced to the basal joint enclosing the glandular tube (*Phromina*); in the male, on the contrary, they are folded in a zigzag, after the manner of a carpenter's rule (*Platyscelinæ*). A paired auditory vesicle may be present above the brain (*Oxycephalus, Rhabdosoma*). The maxillipeds form a small bi- or tri-lobed under-lip. The paired legs end in some cases in a powerful chela. The caudal styles are sometimes lamellar and fin-like, sometimes styliform. Development takes place by metamorphosis. They live principally in jelly-fish, and swim very rapidly.

Fam. **Hyperidæ.** Head globular, almost entirely occupied by the eyes. The two pairs of antennæ have a multiarticulate shaft; the flagellum longer in the male. The mandible has a three-jointed palp. The fifth pair of feet is generally formed like the sixth and seventh, with claw-like terminal joint. *Hyperia* (*Lestrigonus* Edw.) *medusarum* O. Fr. Müll. (*H. galba* Mont. = *H. Latreilli* Edw.) with *Lestrigonus exulans* Kr. as male, North Seas.

Fam. **Phronimidæ.** Head large, with projecting rostrum and large divided eye. The anterior antennæ are short in the female, with only two or three joints, in the male with long multiarticulate flagellum and a shaft closely beset with olfactory hairs. The thoracic limbs have in some cases powerful chelæ. *Phrosina nicæensis* Edw., *Phronima sedentaria* Forsk. The female lives with its offspring in *Pyrosoma* and *Diphyidæ*, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Platyscelidæ.** Both pairs of antennæ hidden beneath the head; the anterior are small; in the male with much swollen bushy shaft, and short, slender flagellum composed of few joints. The posterior antennæ are in the male very long and folded three to four times together in a zigzag fashion; in the female they are short and straight, sometimes quite reduced. The basal joints of the fifth and sixth pairs of legs are usually enlarged into great lamellæ, which cover the thorax. The seventh pair is generally rudimentary. *Eutyphis* (*Typhis* Risso) *ovoides* Risso (*Platyscelus serratus* Sp. Bate), Mediterranean. *Oxycephalus piscator* Edw., Indian Ocean.

## 2. Sub-order:—**Isopoda.***

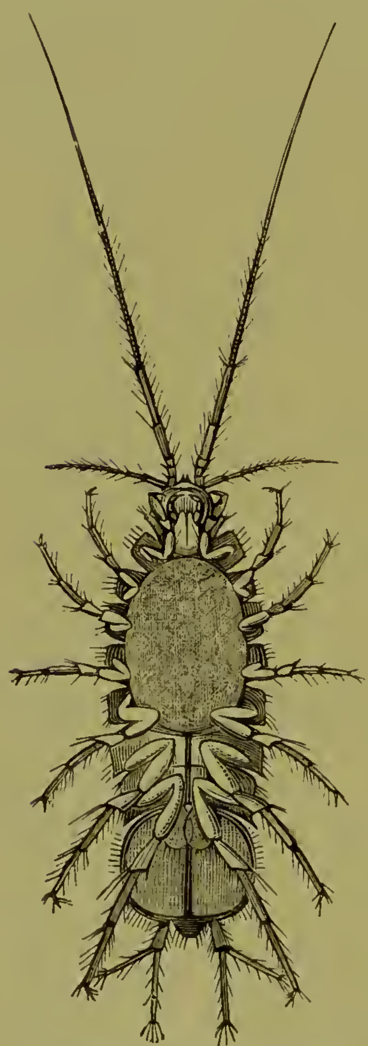


FIG. 358.—*Asellus aquaticus* (after G. O. Sars). Female with brood pouch, seen from the ventral side.

*Arthrostraca with usually broad, more or less arched body, with seven free thoracic rings, with lamellar legs functioning as branchiæ on the short-ringed, often reduced abdomen.*

The structure of the body, which is flat in shape and covered by a hard, usually encrusted integument, presents a great agreement with that of the *Amphipoda*, to which the in many respects peculiar *Tanaidæ* are most nearly allied. The abdomen of the Isopods is, however, usually much shortened and composed of six short segments, which are often fused with one another; it terminates with a large caudal lamella. The abdominal legs are only exceptionally (*Tanaidæ*) swimming feet; as a rule they have the form of branchial lamellæ. The sixth pair may be fin-like or styliform. The anterior antennæ are, with a few exceptions, shorter than the posterior and external antennæ; in rare cases (*Oniscidæ*) they become so much reduced that they are hidden beneath the cephalic carapace. In exceptional cases only (*Apseudes*)

* H. Rathke, "Untersuchungen über die Bildung und Entwickelung der Wasserassel," Leipzig, 1832. Lereboullet, "Sur les Crustacés de la famille des Cloportides, etc," *Mém. du Museum d'hist. nat. de Strasbourg*, Tom. IV., 1850. N. Wagner, "Recherches sur le système circulatoire et les organes de la respiration chez le Porcellion élargi," *Ann. des sc. nat.*, Ser. 5, Tom. IV., 1865. A. Dohrn, "Die Embryonalentwickelung des Asellus aquaticus," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XVII., 1867. N. Bobretzky, "Zur Embryologie des Oniscus murarius," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXIV., 1874.

they bear two flagella. As in the *Amphipoda*, pale, plumous setæ and olfactory cones are present on the antennæ. The mouth parts are in some parasitic *Isopoda* modified for piercing and sucking. The mandibles (except in *Bopyridæ* and *Oniscidæ*) often bear a three-jointed palp. On the other hand, the two pairs of maxillæ, which are usually bi- or tri-lobed, are in general without the palpiform appendage. The maxillipeds form a sort of underlip, but present great differences in the arrangement of their parts (fig. 358).

As a rule the seven pairs of thoracic legs are adapted for walking or attachment, and in the female some of them are provided with delicate membranous plates (oostegites) which form a brood pouch. They never bear gills. The branchial function is discharged by the delicate internal rami or endopodites of the abdominal limbs (pleopods), the anterior pair of which is frequently modified to form a large operculum overlying the following pairs. In certain of the terrestrial Isopods (*Porcellio* and *Armadillo*) the opercular plates of the two anterior pairs of abdominal limbs contain a system of air spaces which appear to assist respiration. The **heart**, unlike that in Amphipods, lies (except in *Tanäidæ*) in the posterior thoracic segments or in the abdomen.

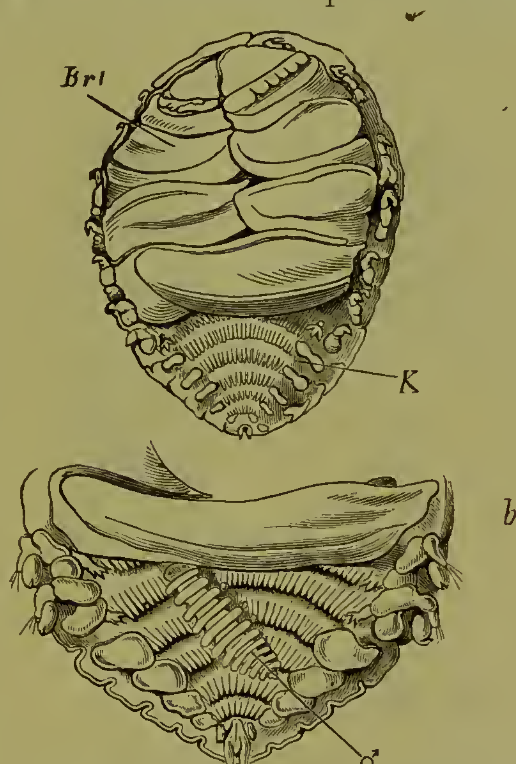



FIG. 359.—*Gyge branchialis* (after Cornalia and Panceri). *a*, Female seen from the ventral side; *Brl*, oostegite; *K*, branchiæ. *b*, Abdomen of the same strongly magnified, with adhering male.

The **sexes** are (except in *Cymothoidæ*) separate, and the position and arrangement of the generative organs correspond in general with those of the *Amphipoda*. The sexes are distinguished by external sexual characters, which in some cases (*Bopyridæ*) may lead to a strongly-marked dimorphism (fig. 359, *a*, *b*). In the male three tubular testes unite on either side to form a dilated seminal vesicle, from which the vasa deferentia are given off. The latter are frequently separate along their whole length and, at the end of the last thoracic segment, each of them enters a cylindrical appendage

(*Asellus*) or they unite together into a common median penis which lies at the base of the abdomen (*Oniscidæ*). A pair of styliform or complicated, hook-bearing appendages of the anterior abdominal feet are to be looked upon as accessory copulatory organs; in addition to these a pair of outwardly turned chitinous rods on the inner side of the second pair of feet may also be present (*Oniscidæ*). The *Cymothoidæ* are hermaphrodite * (Bullar), but the sexual organs become ripe at different times. In the young stage these animals function as males, and possess three pairs of testes, two rudimentary ovaries internal to the testes, and a paired copulatory organ into which the two vasa deferentia open (fig. 360). After a subsequent ecdysis and after the female glands have developed at the expense of the gradually diminishing male glands, the oostegites, which in the meantime have been developed, become free on the thoracic legs and the copulatory organs are thrown off. Henceforward the animal functions only as a female.

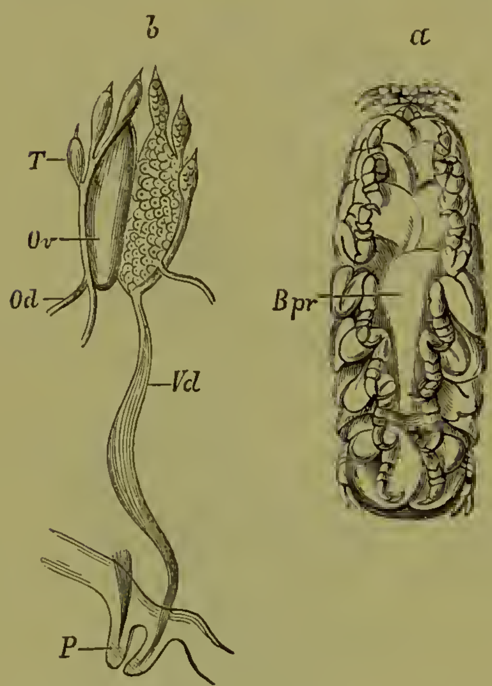



FIG. 360.—Female of *Cymothoa Banksi* (after M. Edwards). *Brl*, oostegite. *b*, Sexual organs from a *Cymothoa æstrides*, 13 mm. in length (after P. Mayer). *T*, The three testes; *Ov*, ovary; *Od*, oviduct; *Vd*, vas deferens; *P*, penis.

The **embryonic development** begins after the entry of the eggs into the brood pouch and is introduced by a centro-lecithal segmentation, the central part of the egg (food yolk) remaining at first unsegmented. The blastoderm soon consists of a peripheral layer of naked nucleated cells and produces by a rapid growth of its constituent cells the ventrally placed germinal bands, at the anterior end of which the cephalic lobes are first marked off. The rudiments of the trifoliate appendages (dorsal organ) of the Isopod embryos are next formed as two prominences on the cephalic lobes. The physiological and morphological meaning of these structures has not yet been explained. Of the appendages the two pairs of antennæ

* J. Bullar. "The generative organs of the Parasitic Isopoda." *Journ. Anat. Physiol.*, 1876. P. Mayer, "Ueber den Hermaphroditismus einiger Isopoden." *Mittheil. aus der Zool. Stat. Neapel*, 1879.

are the first formed. After these have made their appearance, a new cuticle, the larval skin corresponding to the Nauplius stage, is formed (as also is the case in *Ligia* according to Fr. Müller). While the other appendages are successively developed, the caudal region of the embryo becomes bent towards the dorsal surface. Of the embryonic membranes the chorion is the first to disappear, then the cuticle of the blastoderm, and finally, when the embryo is fully developed, the Nauplius skin.

The young animals, when they become free in the brood-chamber (fig. 361), are still without the last pair of thoracic legs; in the *Tanäidæ* the abdominal feet are also wanting. They undergo not inconsiderable changes in the form of the appendages until the attainment of sexual maturity. The *Isopoda* may therefore be said to undergo a metamorphosis which is most complete in *Tanais*, *Praniza* (*Anceus*) and the *Bopyridæ*.

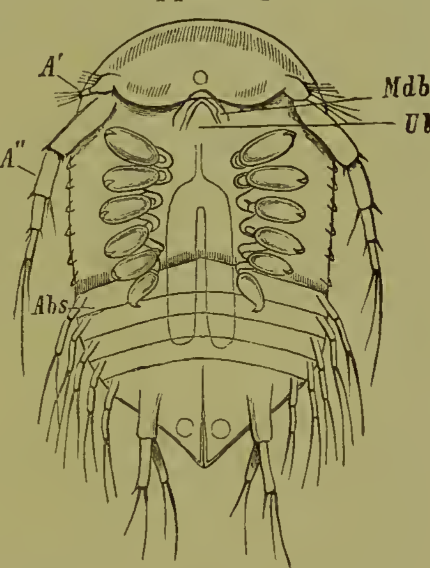



FIG. 361.—Larva of *Bopyrus virbii*, with six pairs of thoracic legs (after R. Walz). *Ul*, Under lip; *Abs*, first abdominal segment; *A'*, *A''*, two pairs of antennæ; *Mdb*, mandible.

The *Isopoda* live some in the sea, some in fresh waters, and some on land (*Oniscidæ*). They nourish themselves on animal matters; many of them are parasitic (seldom complete endoparasites, *Entoniscus*) principally on the skin and in the buccal and branchial cavities of fishes (*Cymothoidæ*) or in the branchial cavity of prawns (*Bopyridæ*).

### *Tribe* 1.—Anisopoda.*

*Body more or less resembling that of an Amphipod. The abdomen with biramous swimming feet* (**Tanais**), *which do not function as gills, or with fin-like feet* (**Anceus**).

Fam. **Tanaidæ**. *Tanais dubius* Kr., Brazil. Two kinds of males, "smellers and claspers." *T. gracilis* Kr., Spitzbergen.

Fam. **Pranizidæ**, Anceidæ. *Anceus maxillaris* Mont. (*Pr. cœruleata* Desm.), North and West coasts of Europe.

* Compare Spence Bate, "On Praniza and Anceus, etc." *Ann. of Nat. Hist.*, Ser. 3, Vol. II., 1858. Hesse, "Mémoire sur les Pranizes et les Ancées." *Ann. d. Scien. Nat.*, Ser. IV., Tom IX., 1864. Fr. Müller, "Ueber den Bau der Scheerenasseln," *Archiv. für Naturgesch*, Tom XXX., 1864. A. Dohrn, "Entwickelung und Organisation von Praniza maxillaris sowie zur Kenntniss des Baues von Paranthura costana" *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XX., 1870.

### *Tribe* 2.—Euispoda.

*Body with seven free thoracic segments and as many pairs of appendages. Abdomen relatively short and broad, with abdominal feet modified to form branchial lamellæ.*

Fam. **Cymothoidæ.** With biting and sucking mouth parts, broad abdomen with short segments and shield-like caudal plate. The last maxillipeds in the form of an operculum. They live partly as parasites on fish, and partly as free-living animals. *Cymothoa æstrum* Leach., *C. æstroides* Risso, Mediterranean. *Anilocra mediterranea* Leach., *Æga bicarinata* Leach., *Serolis paradoxa* Fabr.

Fam. **Sphæromidæ.** Free-living *Isopoda* with broad head and short, very convex body, which can often be rolled up in a ball towards the ventral side. *Sphæroma fossarum* Mont., in the Pontine marshes; nearly allied is the *S. granulatum* of the Mediterranean. *S. serratum* Fabr., Ocean and Mediterranean. It also lives in brackish water.

Fam. **Idoteidæ.** Free-living *Isopoda* with elongated body, biting mouth parts, and a long caudal shield formed of several segments fused together. The last pair of abdominal feet is modified to form a wing-shaped operculum for the protection of the preceding branchial feet. *Idotea entomon* L., Baltic.

Fam. **Asellidæ.** Body flattened ; the last pair of abdominal feet (pleopods) are styliform (not shaped like an operculum). *Jæra albifrons* Mont., British seas. *Asellus aquaticus* L., fresh water form. *A. cavaticus* Schiödte, in deep springs. *Limnoria terebrans* Leach. *L. lignorum*, gnaws wood-work in the sea.

Fam. **Bopyridæ.** Parasitic in the branchial chamber of prawns ; the body of the female is disc-shaped, unsymmetrical, and without eyes. The males are very small and elongated, with distinctly separated segments and eyes. *Bopyrus squillarum* Batr., on *Palæmon squilla.*

Here are allied the *Entoniscidæ*, which are parasitic in the body cavity of other *Crustacea* (*Cirripedia*, *Paguridæ*, and Crabs), *Cryptoniscus planarioides* Fr. Müll., parasitic on *Sacculina purpurea* of a *Pagurus*, Brazil. *Cr. pygmæus* Rathke, parasitic on *Peltogaster*. *Entoniscus Porcellanæ* Fr. Müll., lives between the heart and the intestine of a species of *Porcellana* in Brazil.

Fam. **Oniscidæ.** Land Isopods. Only the internal lamellæ (endopodites) of the abdominal feet are modified to form delicate branchiæ. the exopodites constituting firm opercula. The two anterior abdominal feet are sometimes provided with air chambers. The mandibles are without palps. They live mostly in damp places on land. *Ligia oceanica* L., on stones and rocks on the sea coast. *Oniscus murarius* Cuv., *Porcellio scaber* Leach., *Armadillo vulgaris* Latr., A. *officinarum* Brdt.

### *Order* 2.—THORACOSTRACA.*

*Malacostraca with compound eyes which are usually placed on movable stalks, with a dorsal shield which connects all or at least the anterior thoracic segments with the head.*

* Besides the larger works of Herbst, M. Edwards, Dana, and the essays of Duvernoy, Audouin and M. Edwards, Joly, Couch, etc. compare Leach,

The *Thoracostraca*, like the Arthrostraca, possess a cephalo-thorax composed of thirteen segments and an abdomen composed of six segments, as well as a caudal plate (telson); but the body is stouter and adapted to a more perfect locomotion and a higher grade of life. The thorax, instead of being composed of seven distinctly separate segments, is covered by a dorsal carapace which effects a firm and intimate fusion between the head and thorax. The degrees of development of this dorsal carapace are various. When most highly developed, it forms the dorsal integument of the anterior or of almost all the thoracic segments; and its lateral portions only, which have the form of wings and are bent towards the ventral surface, consist of a free reduplicature.

The application of the **appendages** differs from that in the Arthrostraca, and, indeed, varies in the different groups of the Thoracostraca. The cephalothorax has thirteen pairs, and the abdomen seven. The facetted eyes are born on two movably separated stalks. These were for a long time considered as the anterior pair of appendages, while in fact they are merely lateral portions of the head which have become jointed. Both pairs of antennæ belong to the anterior region of the head. The anterior antennæ or antennules as a rule bear on a common shaft two or three *flagella*—as the peripheral multiarticulate filaments are called—and are pre-eminently sense organs. In the *Decapoda* the auditory vesicles are placed in the basal joint, and on one of the flagella there are delicate hairs and fibres, which are in connection with nerves and are to be looked on as olfactory organs. The second antennæ are attached externally to and somewhat beneath the antennules. They bear a long flagellum and in the macrurous *Decapoda* are often provided with a more or less considerable scale. A gland (the green or antennal gland) usually opens on a conical process of their basal joint.

The following three pairs of appendages function as jaws; the powerful mandibles, which are furnished with palps, lie at the side of the upper lip; further backwards are the two pairs of lobed maxillæ, in front of which and behind the mouth is the small bilobed underlip. The following eight pairs of appendages present a very

"Malacostraca podophthalma Britanniæ," London, 1817—1821. V. Thompson, "On the metamorphosis of Decapodous Crustacea." *Zool. Journ.*, vol. ii., 1831, *also Isis*, 1834, 1836, 1838. H. Rathke, "Untersuchungen über die Bildung und die Entwickelung des Flusskrebses," Leipzig, 1829. Th. Bell, "A history of the British stalk-eyed Crustacea," London, 1853. Lereboullet, "Recherches d'embryologie comparée sur le développement du Brochet, de la Perche et de l'Ecrevisse," Paris. 1862. V. Hensen, "Studien über das Gehörorgan der Decapoden," Leipzig, 1863.

different form and adaptation in the various groups. As a rule, the anterior pairs are modified to assist in taking up food and are moved nearer the mouth; these are the maxillipeds, which, with regard to their structure, hold an intermediate position between jaws and feet. In the *Decapoda* (fig. 362) three pairs of appendages have the form

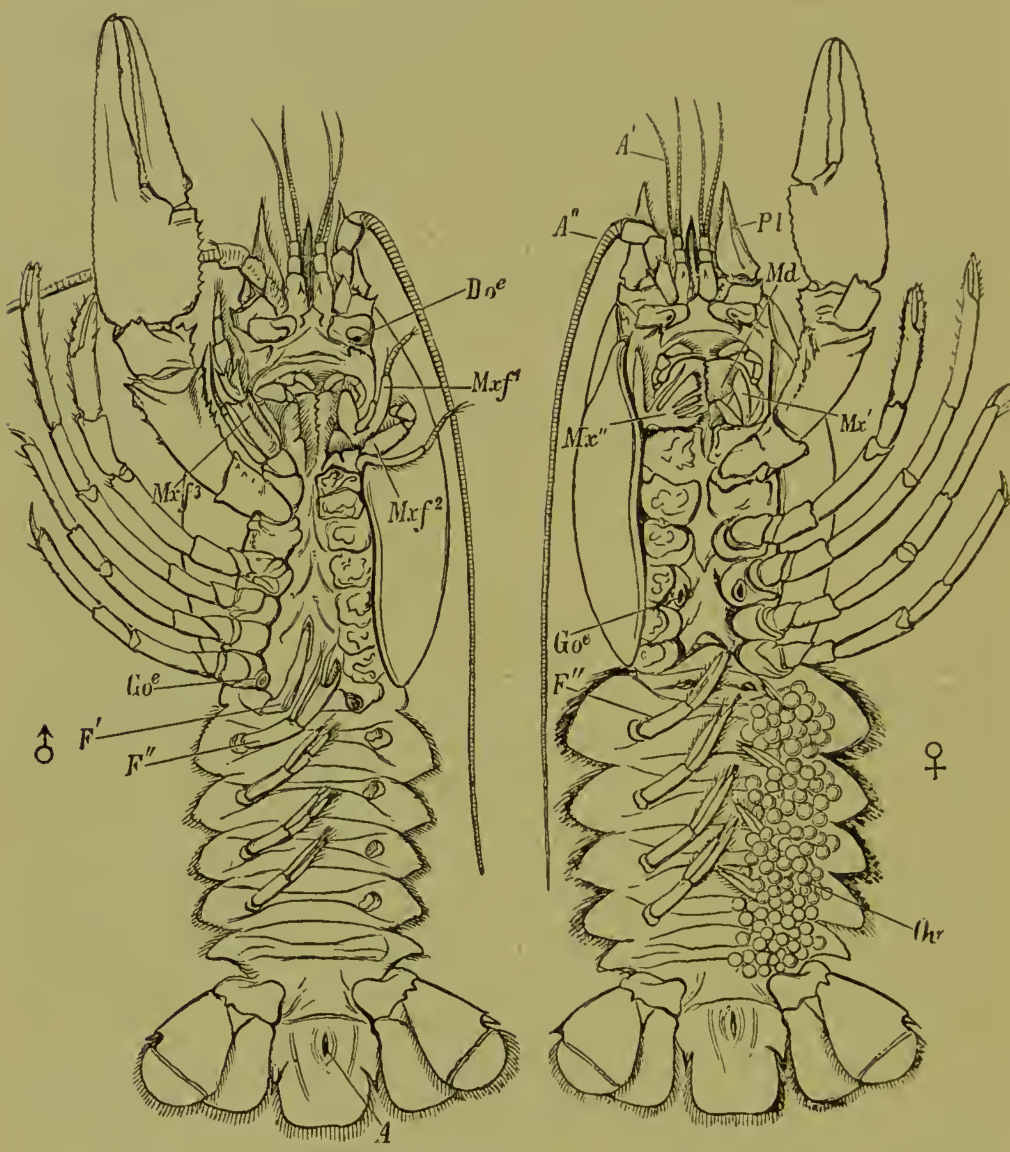



FIG. 362.—Male and female of *Astacus fluviatilis* seen from the ventral side. In the male the ambulatory and abdominal feet of the left side have been removed; in the female the ambulatory feet of the right side and the maxillipeds of both sides. *A'* antennules; *A''*, antennæ; *Pl*, scale of antenna; *Md*, mandible with palp; *Mx'*, *Mx''*, first and second maxillæ *Mxf*¹ to *Mxf*³, the three pairs of maxillipeds; *Goe*, genital opening; *Doe*, opening of the green gland; *F'*, *F''*, first and second abdominal foot; *Ov*, eggs; *A*, anus.

of maxillipeds, so that there are only five pairs of legs left on the thorax. In the *Stomatopoda* the first five pairs of thoracic appendages are modified to form maxillipeds and there are only three pairs of biramous swimming feet, which arise from the three posterior free segments of the thorax. The thoracic legs are either, at least in part, biramous (with swimming ramus), or as in the Decapods the exopodite is absent and the legs have the form of ambulatory appendages. They then terminate with simple claws; the anterior frequently with large chelæ. The terminal joints may however be broad plates, in which case they can be used as swimming feet. The biramous legs of the sixth abdominal segment are, as a rule, broad and fin-like and form, together with the last abdominal segment which is transformed into a large plate (telson), the *caudal fin.* The feet of the five anterior abdominal segments, on the other hand, are sometimes swimming feet (*Stomatopoda*), sometimes serve to carry the eggs, or the anterior may assist in copulation (in the male). They may however be more or less rudimentary and some of them absent.

With rare exceptions (*Mysidæ*) all the *Thoracostraca* possess gills, which are either tufted or composed of regular lancet-shaped leaves. The gills are appendages of the limbs: in the *Stomatopoda* they are attached to the abdominal feet, in the *Schizopoda* and *Decapoda* to the maxillipeds and ambulatory feet. The *Cumacea* are without gills, except for a single pair on the second pair of maxillipeds. In the Decapods they are contained in a special branchial chamber beneath lateral expansions of the carapace (branchiostegite) (fig. 363).

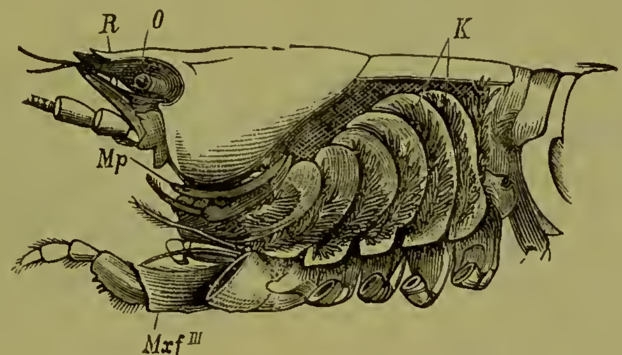



FIG. 363.—Cephalothorax of *Astacus fluviatilis*, after removal of the branchiostegite (after Huxley). *K*, Gills; *R*, rostrum; *O*, stalked eye; *Mp*, scaphognathite (of the second maxilla); *Mxf'''*, third maxilliped.

The **organs of circulation** also attain a high degree of development, the highest not only among the *Crustacea*, but in general amongst all Arthropods. A heart and vessels are always present. In the *Stomatopoda* the heart has the form of an elongated tube, which extends through the thorax and abdomen, possesses numerous paired slits, and in addition to an anterior and a posterior aorta gives off to the right and left several branching arterial trunks. In the *Cumacea*, *Schizopoda* and *Decapoda* the heart has a saccular form and lies in the posterior region of the cephalo-thorax. More rarely, as in the youngest larvæ of the *Decapoda*, only one pair of slits is present and the arterial system has but few branches. In the fully-developed *Decapoda* the number of paired slits is increased by the addition of a dorsal and a ventral pair, and the vascular system is considerably perfected. An anterior cephalic aorta supplies the brain, the antennæ and eyes. Two lateral pairs of arteries send branches to the stomach, liver and generative organs. The posterior abdominal aorta usually divides into a dorsal and a ventral artery, of which the first supplies the muscles of the tail, the latter (known as *sternal artery*) sends branches to the appendages of the thorax and abdomen (fig. 364). From the ramifications (often capillary-like) the blood flows into larger or smaller canals with connective tissue walls which may be regarded as veins, and from thence into a wide blood space situated at the base of the gills. It thence passes through

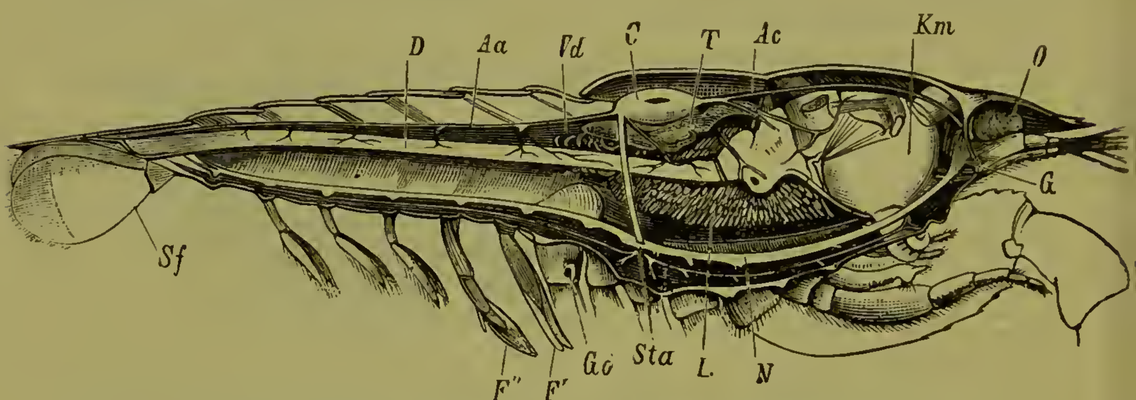



FIG. 364.—Longitudinal section through *Astacus fluviatilis* (after Huxley). *C*, Heart; *Ac*, cephalic aorta; *Aa*, abdominal aorta, the sternal artery (*Sta*) is given off close to its origin; *Km*, masticatory stomach; *D*, intestine; *L*, liver; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Gö*, genital opening; *G*, brain; *N*, ganglionic cord; *Sf*, lateral plate of the caudal fin.

the gills and, having become arterial, passes into other vascular tracts (branchial veins containing arterial blood), which conduct it to a receptacle surrounding the heart, the pericardial sinus: from the latter the blood enters the heart through the slits which are provided with valves.

The **alimentary canal** consists of a short œsophagus, a wide saccular crop and an elongated intestine which opens by the anus beneath the median plate (telson) of the caudal fin. The wide crop or masticatory stomach is supported by a firm chitinous framework, to which are affixed several pairs of masticatory plates (derived from thickenings of the chitinous lining). In the *Decapoda* two round concretions of carbonate of lime (Cray-fish) may be deposited in the walls of the masticatory stomach beneath the chitinous lining; these are the so-called "*eyes*," and are found in the spring and summer.

The ducts of the very numerous, multilobed hepatic cæca open into the anterior part of the elongated intestine.

A simple or looped glandular tube (the *green gland*) opens on the basal joint of the posterior antenna. A shell gland is not developed.

The **nervous system** is distinguished by the size of the brain, which is placed far forwards and gives off nerves to the eyes and antennæ. The ventral cord, which is connected with the supra-œsophageal ganglion (brain) by very long commissures, presents very different degrees of concentration. In the brachyurous Decapods this concentration reaches its highest point, all the ganglia being fused together to form one great thoracic ganglionic mass. The system of *visceral nerves* is also very highly developed.

**Sense organs.**—The eyes are large and facetted. Except in the

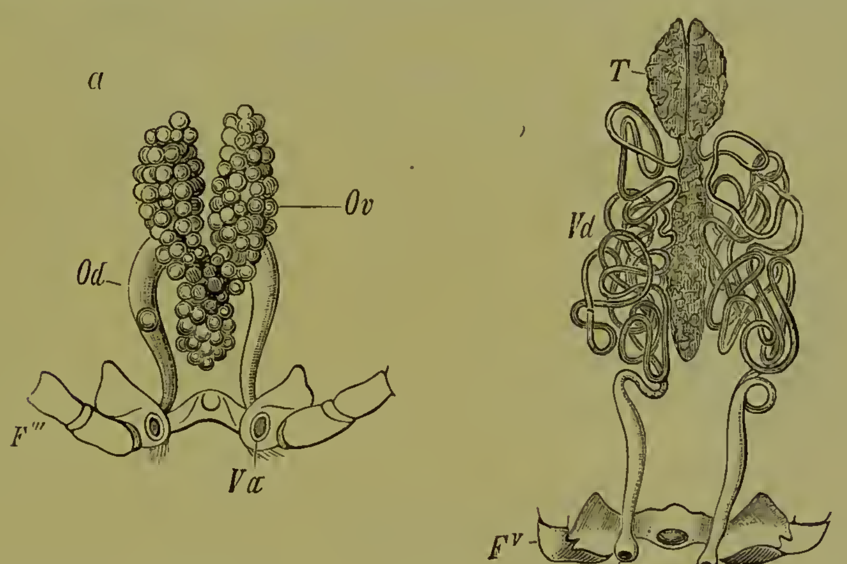



FIG. 365.—Generative organs of *Astacus*. *a*, Female; *b*, male. *Ov*, ovaries; *Od*, oviduct; *Va*, vulva on the basal joint of the third pair of ambulatory legs ($F'''$); *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Oe*, genital openings on the basal joint of the fifth pair of ambulatory legs ($F^{v}$).

Cumacea, in which the eyes are sessile, they are borne on movable stalks, which morphologically are to be regarded as the lateral parts of the anterior region of the head which have been segmented off. In the larva a median simple eye, equivalent to the unpaired Entomostracan eye, may appear between the stalked facetted eyes. In exceptional cases the adult animal may have paired eyes at the sides of the thoracic appendages, and unpaired eyes between the abdominal feet (*Euphausia*). *Auditory organs* are wanting in the *Cumacea* and *Stomatopoda*. In the *Decapoda* they are present as vesicles containing otoliths in the basal joint of the anterior antenna, and in many *Schizopoda* in the lamellæ of the caudal fin. The delicate filaments and hairs on the surface of the anterior antennæ have the value of *olfactory organs;* the antennæ function as *tactile organs,* as do also the palps of the jaws, the maxillipeds and the legs.

The **generative organs** are paired and lie in the thorax or in the abdomen (*Stomatopoda*), and, as a rule, are connected across the middle line by a median portion. The female organs consist of two ovaries and two oviducts, which open on the basal joint of the antepenultimate pair of ambulatory legs or on the sternal region between these appendages (fig. 365, *a*). The testes (fig. 365, *b*) are composed of numerous sacs and blind tubes, and, like the ovaries, are connected by a median portion; there are two vasa deferentia, often much coiled, which open on the basal joint of the last pair of ambulatory legs, more rarely on the sternum, and occasionally on a special copulatory organ (*Schizopoda*). The first, or the first and second, pair of abdominal feet act as intromittent organs. The eggs either pass into a brood-pouch formed by lamellar appendages of the thoracic legs (*Cumacea, Schizopoda*), or become attached by means of the cementing secretion of special glands to the hairy abdominal feet of the female, where they remain until they are hatched (*Decapoda*).

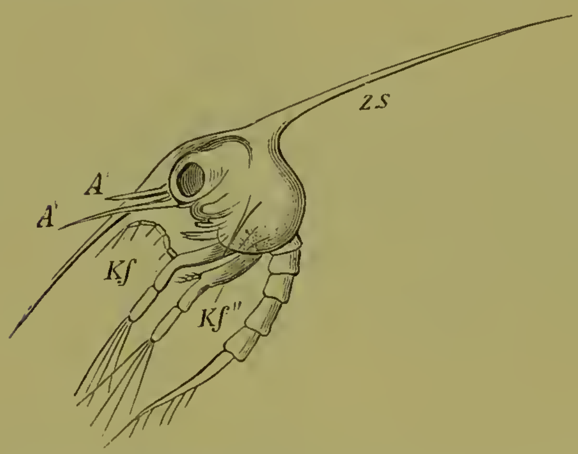



FIG. 366.—Crab zoæa (*Thia*), after the first moult. *ZS*, Zoæa spine on the back; *Kf'*, *Kf''*, the two pairs of biramous appendages corresponding to the first and second pairs of maxillipeds.

**Development.**—Most of the *Thoracostraca* undergo a metamorphosis which may be more or less complicated. The *Cumacea*, some *Schizopoda* (*Mysidea*) and the fresh-water *Decapoda* (*Astacus*) leave the egg membranes with the full number of segments and appendages. All the *Stomatopoda*, on the contrary, as well as most of the *Decapoda*, are hatched as larvæ; the latter in the so-called *Zoæa* form with only seven pairs of appendages in the anterior region of the body (there are two pairs of antennæ, mandibles, two pairs of maxillæ, and two pairs of maxillipeds), without the last six thoracic segments and with a long abdomen destitute of appendages (fig. 366). The two pairs of antennæ of the *Zoæa* are short and destitute of flagella. The mandibles are without a palp; the maxillæ are already lobed and used as jaws; the four anterior maxillipeds are biramous and act as biramous swimming feet; and behind them, in the macrurous Decapods, the maxilliped of the third pair also appears as a biramous swimming foot. Gills are as yet wanting, being repre-


FIG. 367.—Larva of *Penaeus* (after Fr. Müller). *a*, Nauplius form seen from the dorsal surface. *b*, Metanauplius stage seen from the left side; *Mx'*, anterior maxillæ; *Mx''*, posterior maxillæ; *Gl*, sixth and seventh pairs of appendages or first and second maxillipeds. *c*, Zoæa stage; *O*, eyes.

sented by the thin surfaces of the sides of the cephalo-thoracic shield, beneath which a continual current of water flowing from behind forwards is kept up. A short heart with one or two pairs of slits is present. The facetted eyes are of considerable size, but are not stalked. Between the facetted eyes there is in addition an unpaired simple eye, the *Entomostracan eye.* The *Zoæa* larvæ of the short-tailed *Decapoda* (Crabs) are, as a rule, armed with spinous processes. They usually have one frontal spine, a long, curved dorsal spine, and two lateral spinous processes of the cephalo-thoracic shield.

The Zoæa, however, is not by any means always the earliest larval stage. Passing over those cases in which the larva has the Zoæa form but is without the middle maxillipeds, there are *Podophthalmata* (*Penæus*), which leave the egg as Nauplii (fig. 367). Thus

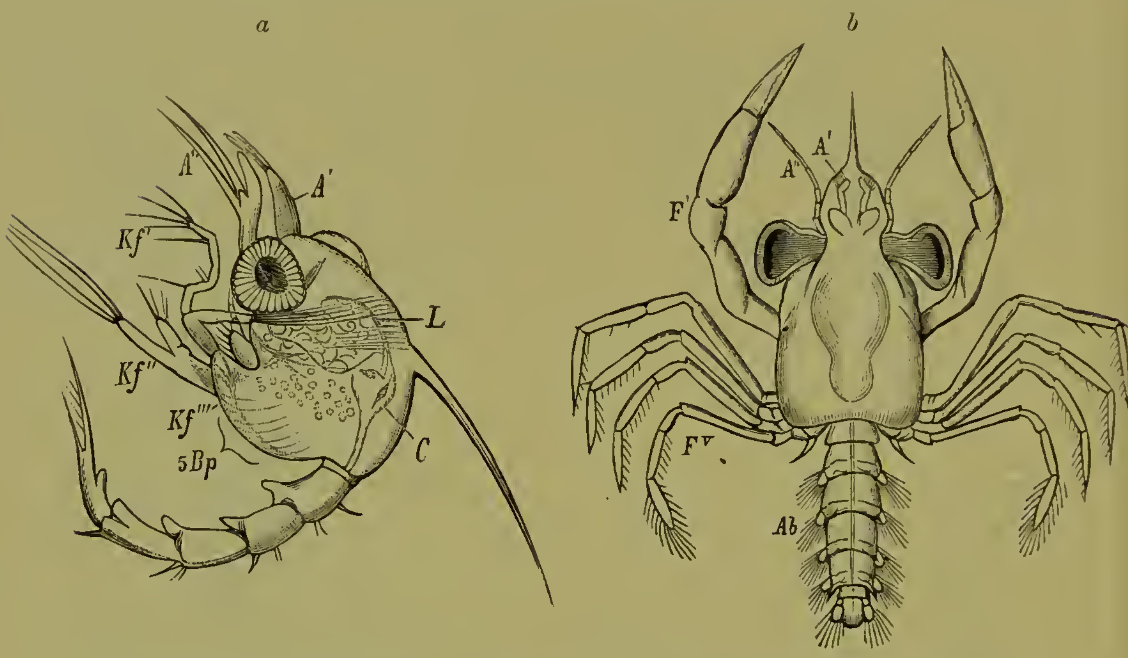



FIG. 368.—*Zoæa* of *Inachus* in advanced stage with rudiments of the third maxilliped ($Kf''$) and the five pairs of ambulatory feet ($5Bp$); *C*, heart; *L*, liver. *b*, *Megalopa* stage of *Portunus*; *Ab*, abdomen. $F'$ to $F^v$ first to fifth ambulatory legs.

the developmental history proves that the series of forms of *Entomostraca* and *Malacostraca* are continuous.

During the growth of the Zoæa, the subsequent metamorphosis of which is quite gradual and always different, the six (five) pairs of thoracic legs, which are as yet absent, sprout out beneath the cephalo-thoracic shield. The abdominal feet also make their appearance on the abdomen, and the larvæ finally enter the Schizopod-like stage, from which the adult form proceeds. The Crab *Zoæa*, however, after a later ecdysis, enters upon a new larval stage, that of the *Megalopa* (fig. 368, *b*); in this stage it already presents the characters of the *Brachyura*, but still possesses a large abdomen, which is indeed ventrally flexed, but provided with a caudal fin.

The *Thoracostraca* are for the most part marine, and feed on dead animal matter or capture living prey. Most of them are good swimmers; others, *e.g.* numerous species of crabs, walk and run and sometimes move sideways or backwards with great agility. The chelæ of the first pair of ambulatory legs (fourth thoracic appendages) constitute powerful weapons of defence. Besides the frequent ecdyses of the larval stages, the sexually adult animals cast their shell once or several times in the year (*Decapoda*). They then live with the new and still soft skin for some time in protected hiding-places. Some *Brachyura* are able to live for a long time in holes in the earth away from the sea. These land crabs undertake, usually at the breeding season, common migrations to the sea and return later to the land with their fully developed offspring (*Gecarcinus ruricola*). The most ancient fossil *Podophthalmia* hitherto known are the macrurous *Decapoda* and *Schizopoda*, from the carboniferous formations (*Palæocrangon, Palæocarabus, Pygocephalus*).

## (1) Sub-order: **Cumacea.***

*Thoracostraca with a small cephalo-thoracic shield, (four to) five free thoracic segments, two pairs of maxillipeds, and six pairs of legs, of which at least the two anterior pairs have the biramous Schizopod form. The abdomen is elongated and composed of six segments, and bears, in the male, two, three or five pairs of swimming feet in addition to the caudal appendages.*

The *Cumacea*, the systematic position of which was formerly very differently estimated, have a superficial resemblance to Decapod larvæ, which they also recall in the simplicity of their organization; while in many of their characters, such as the formation of the brood-pouch and their embyronic development, they approach the *Arthrostraca*. A cephalo-thoracic shield is always present and includes, besides the segments of the head, the anterior thoracic segments and their appendages; the four or five posterior thoracic segments, however, remain free.

The anterior antennæ are small and consist of a three-jointed basal portion, to the end of which, especially in the male, tufts of olfactory hairs are attached, and of a short flagellum and secondary flagellum.

* H. Kröyer, "Fire nye Arter af slægten Cuma," *Naturh. Tidsskr.*, Tom III., 1841. H. Kröyer, "Om Cumaceernes Familie," *Naturh. Tidsskr.* N. R., Tom III., 1846. G. O. Sars, "Beskrivelse af de paa Fregatten Josephines Exped. fundne Cumaceer," Stockholm, 1871. A. Dohrn, "Ueber den Bau und die Entwickelung der Cumaceen," *Jen. naturwiss. Zeitschr.* Tom V., 1870.

In the female the posterior antennæ are short and rudimentary, while in the adult male they, together with their multiarticulate flagellum, may be as long as the body (as in *Nebalia*). The upper-lip is usually small, while the deeply cleft under-lip is of considerable size. The mandibles are without palps, and possess a comb of bristles and a powerful masticatory process below their strongly toothed extremity. The anterior maxillæ consist of two toothed blades and a cylindrical, flagellate appendage directed backwards. The unpalped maxilla of the second pair is composed of several pairs of masticatory plates lying one above another. The two following pairs of appendages may be distinguished as maxillipeds. The anterior, which corresponds to the palped under-lip of the *Isopoda*, is five-jointed and may be recognised by the process of the basal joint; the posterior, which is also usually five-jointed, is of considerable length and the basal joint is cylindrical and elongated. They also bear the large pinnate gill and a peculiar plate. Of the remaining six pairs of thoracic appendages, the two anterior are always formed like the feet of the *Schizopoda*; they consist of a six-jointed leg, the basal joint being strongly developed and lamellar, and of a multiarticulate accessory ramus (exopodite) beset with long swimming setæ. The four last pairs of appendages are also six-jointed, but are shorter; they bear in many cases, with the invariable exception of the last pair, a larger or smaller swimming appendage as exopodite. The very narrow and elongated abdomen is, in the female, entirely without swimming feet, but bears on the large sixth segment at the sides of the caudal plate long-stalked biramous caudal styles; while in the male two, three or five pairs of swimming feet may in addition be present on the preceding segments.

Fam. **Diastylidæ.** *Diastylis Rathkii* Kr., North Sea. *D. Edwardsii* Kr. *Leucon nasicus* Kr., Norway.

## (2) Sub-order: **Stomatopoda.***

*Elongated Thoracostraca with short cephalo-thoracic shield which does not cover the thoracic segments. There are five pair of maxillipeds and three pair of biramous thoracic feet. The swimming feet on the strongly developed abdomen bear branchial tufts.*

* Besides Dana, M. Edwards and others, compare O. Fr. Müller. "Bruchstück aus der Entwickelungsgeschichte der Maulfüsser," I. and II., *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, Tom XXVIII., 1862, and Tom XXIX., 1863. C. Claus. "Die Metamorphose der Squilliden," *Abhandl. der Göttinger Societät.* 1872. C. Grobben, "Die Geschlechtsorgane von Squilla mantis," *Sitzungsber. der k. Akad. der Wissenssh.*, Wien, 1876.

The sub-order *Stomatopoda,* with which formerly the Schizopoda, the genus *Leucifer* and the *Phyllosomata* (which are now known to be the larvæ of *Scyllarus* and *Palinurus*) were united, is confined at the present day to the small and well-defined group of forms included in the *Squillidæ.*

They are *Thoracostraca* of considerable size and of elongated shape, with a broad, well-developed abdomen, which is much more extensive than the anterior part of the body and terminates in an extraordinarily large caudal fin. The cephalo-thoracic shield, which is formed of comparatively soft integument, is short and leaves at least the three large posterior thoracic segments to which the biramous swimming feet belong quite uncovered. The short segments of the maxillipeds also are not fused with the carapace.

**Appendages.**—The anterior part of the head with the eyes and antennæ is movable, and the ventral portions of the following segments covered by the cephalo-thoracic shield are capable of limited movements upon one another (fig. 369). The anterior

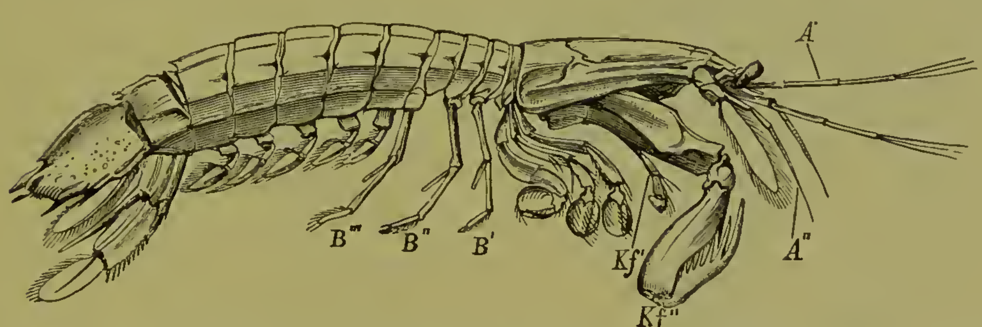



FIG. 369.—*Squilla mantis.* $A'$, $A''$, antennæ; $Kf'$, $Kf''$, the anterior maxillipeds on the cephalothorax; $B'$, $B''$, $B'''$, the three pairs of biramous legs.

internal antennæ consist of a long three-jointed shaft, bearing three multiarticulate flagella. The second pair of antennæ has a large scale on the outer side of the multiarticulate flagellum (fig. 369). The mandibles, which are placed far back, are provided with a slender three-jointed palp. The maxillæ are relatively small and weak. The five following pairs of pediform appendages are crowded together close to the mouth, and on this account have been appropriately described as oral feet. They all bear at their base a discoidal plate, which, in the case of the two anterior pairs, attains a considerable size. The anterior pair alone (first maxilliped) is slender and palpiform; it ends, however, in a small chela, which serves to seize the prey. The chela in this and all the other maxillipeds of the Stomatopoda is formed by the terminal joint turning back and biting on the penultimate joint. The maxillipeds of the second pair are by far the largest; they are moved more or less outwards and are provided with a very large chela. The three following pairs resemble each other in size and structure, each ending in a smaller rounded chela. Accordingly there remain for locomotion only the three pairs of legs of the last three uncovered thoracic segments; they have the form of biramous swimming feet. The abdominal swimming feet, however, are much more developed and bear the branchial tufts on their external lamellæ.

The two sexes are only slightly different. The male is, however, easily to be recognised by the possession of the pair of rods at the base of the last pair of thoracic feet, and also by the slightly modified form of the first pair of abdominal feet.

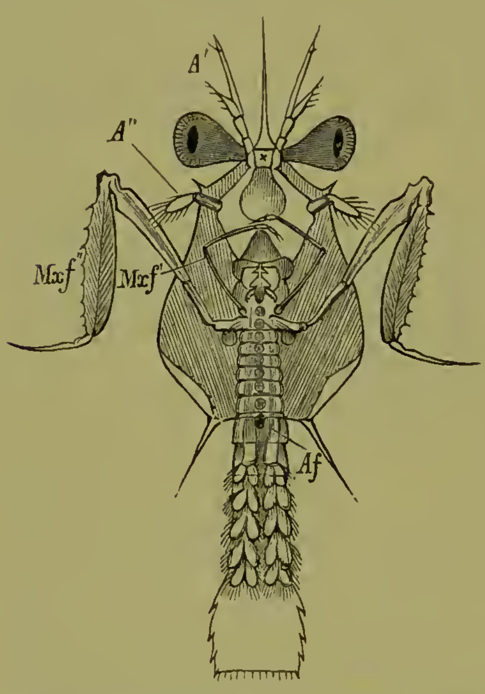



FIG. 370.—Young *Alima* larva. *Af.* Abdominal feet (pleopods); *Mxf'*, anterior maxillipeds; *Mxf''*, the large maxillipeds (second pair).

**Metamorphosis.**—The post-embryonic development consists of a complicated metamorphosis, which, unfortunately, is as yet not completely known to us. The youngest larvæ observed (about 2 mm. long) already possess all the segments of the thorax; but the abdomen, except the caudal plate, is still undeveloped. They are thus very different from the Zoæa of the *Decapoda*. Later larval stages are described as *Alima* and *Erichthus* (fig. 370).

The *Stomatopoda* are found exclusively in the warmer seas. They are excellent swimmers and live by preying on other marine animals.

Fam. **Squillidæ.** *Squilla mantis* Rond., *Sq. Desmarestii* Risso, Adriatic and Mediterranean.

### (3) Sub-order: **Schizopoda.***

*Small Thoracostraca with large, usually soft cephalo-thoracic shield and eight pairs of biramous thoracic feet, which are similarly formed and frequently bear freely-projecting gills.*

* G. O. Sars, "Hist. nat. des Crustacés d'eau douce de Norvège," Christiania,

In their outward appearance the *Schizopoda* resemble the long-tailed Decapods, inasmuch as they possess an elongated and usually compressed body, a large cephalo-thoracic shield covering the thoracic segments more or less completely and a well-developed abdomen. In the structure of their maxillipeds and thoracic legs, however, they differ essentially from the Decapods and approach the more advanced larvæ of the prawns, which they also resemble in their simpler internal organization. Further, in all the deep sea forms the cephalo-thoracic shield leaves a greater number of the thoracic segments free (*Siriella*), and in the early larval stages all the thoracic segments are free as in *Nebalia*. A larger or smaller number of these free segments subsequently fuse on the dorsal side with the carapace (*Gnathophausia*).

**Appendages.**—The first three pairs of thoracic appendages (the homologues of the maxillipeds of the *Decapoda*) are biramous ambulatory legs and resemble in structure the following thoracic legs, which, by the possession of a multiarticulate setigerous exopodite, are adapted both for swimming and for producing currents in the water. The two anterior pairs, however, show a closer relation to the oral appendages by their shorter and stouter form and by the presence of processes on the basal joint (*Mysis*, *Siriella*). The principal ramus (endopodite) of the leg is always relatively slender and ends with a simple weak claw or with a multiarticulate tarsal flagellum. Rarely (*Euphausia*) the two last pairs of thoracic legs are entirely rudimentary, except as regards the largely developed branchial appendages. The abdominal legs are usually small and delicate in the female, but are strongly developed in the male. Sometimes they are of abnormal size and form (to assist in copulation), but only exceptionally (male of *Siriella*) bear gills. The appendages of the sixth segment, which is usually very much elongated, are always lamellar, biramous structures and form with the telson a powerful caudal fin (fig. 371). The inner lamella or endopodite of this pair of limbs frequently contains an **auditory vesicle.**

The differences between the males and females are so great that formerly they were placed in distinct genera. The former possess, on the anterior antennæ, a comb-shaped prominence bearing a great number of olfactory hairs; and, owing to the larger size of the

1867. G. O. Sars, "Carcinologiske Bidrag til Norges Fauna. Mysider," Christiania, 1870 and 1872. R. v. Willemoes-Suhm, "On some Atlant. Crustacea," cf. Trans. Lin. Soc., 1875.

abdominal feet, of which the anterior may, moreover, be provided with copulatory appendages, they are capable of a more rapid and perfect locomotion than the females, to which fact corresponds again the greater respiratory requirements and the possession of branchial appendages in *Siriella*.

**Development.**—The females bear on the two posterior (*Mysis*) or at the same time also on the median and anterior (*Lophogaster*) pairs of thoracic limbs lamellæ, which form a brood pouch, in which, as in the *Arthrostraca*, the large eggs undergo their embryonic development. In other cases (*Euphausia*), the development proceeds by metamorphosis. The young *Euphausia* is hatched as a Nauplius larva, on which the three following pairs of appendages (maxillæ and first maxillipeds) soon appear as small prominences. The large carapace of the Nauplius, which is curved forwards round the base of the antennæ where it has a serrated edge, is the first rudiment of the cephalo-thoracic shield, and beneath it, at the sides of the unpaired eye, the rudiments of the lateral eyes are visible. The larva then, having moulted, assumes first the form of the Protozoæa and then of the Zoæa (described by Dana as *Calyptopis*), which is however provided with only six pairs of appendages and a long, already fully segmented, apodal abdomen. In the numerous succeeding larval stages (*Furcilia*, *Cyrtopia*) the remaining appendages are successively developed.


Fig. 371.—*Mysis oculata*. Female with brood lamellæ (after G. O. Sars). *Gb*, Auditory vesicle.

Fam **Mysidæ**. *Mysis vulgaris* Thomps., *M. flexuosa* O. Fr. Müll., *M. inermis* Raethk., Northern seas *Siriella Edwardsii* Cls.

Fam. **Euphausidæ.** *Euphausia splendens* Dana, Atl. Ocean. *Thysanopoda norwegica* Sars.

Fam. **Lophogastridæ.** *Lophogaster typicus* Sars, Norway.

## (4) Sub-order: **Decapoda.***

*Podophthalmia with large dorsal cephalo-thoracic shield, which is usually fused with all the segments of the head and thorax. They have three (two) pairs of maxillipeds and ten (twelve) ambulatory limbs, some of which are armed with chelæ.*

The head and thorax are completely covered by the dorsal carapace, the lateral expansions of which cover the basal joints of the maxillipeds and legs, forming a branchial chamber on either side, in which the gills are concealed. Only the last thoracic segment may retain its independence and be more or less movable. The shell is prolonged into a frontal spine (the rostrum) between the eyes. The firm, calcified integument of the dorsal carapace presents, especially in the larger forms, symmetrical prominences caused by the subjacent internal organs: these may be distinguished as regions and named in accordance with the internal organs.

The abdomen presents considerable differences both of size and form throughout the sub-order. In the *Macrura* it is of considerable size, possesses a hard exoskeleton, and, in addition to the five pairs of feet of which the anterior are often aborted in the female, is provided with a large swimming fin (the telson and the pair of large swimming feet of the sixth segment). In the *Brachyura* the abdomen is without a caudal fin and is reduced to a broad (female) or a narrow triangular (male) plate, which is bent up against the concave sternal surface of the thorax. The abdominal feet also are slender and styliform, and in the male are only developed on the two anterior segments.

**Appendages.**—The anterior antennæ in the *Brachyura* are often concealed in lateral pits; they usually arise beneath the movably articulated eye-stalks, and consist of a three-jointed basal portion bearing two or three multiarticulate flagella. The posterior antennæ

* Herbst. "Versuch einer Naturgeschichte der Krabben und Krebse," 3 Bde., Berlin, 1782-1804. Leach. "Malacostraca podophthalma Britanniæ," London 1817 to 1821. Th. Bell. "A history of the British stalkeyed Crustacea," London, 1853. H. Rathke, "Untersuchungen über die Bildung und Entwickelung des Flusskrebses," Leipzig, 1829. Spence Bate, "On the development of Decapod Crustacea," *Phil. Trans. of the Roy. Soc.*, London, 1859. C. Claus, "Zur Kenntniss der Malacostrakenlarven," *Würzb. naturwiss. Zeitschr.*, Tom II., 1861. Fr. Müller, "Die Verwandlung der Garneelen," *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, Tom XIX., 1863. Fr. Müller, "Für Darwin," Leipzig, 1864.

are usually inserted externally and somewhat ventrally to the first pair on a flat plate placed in front of the mouth (*epistom* or oral shield): they frequently possess a scale-like lamellar appendage. At their base there is always a protuberance with a pore at its end, through which the duct of the antennal gland (green gland) opens.

The mandibles vary considerably in shape in the different forms, but have, as a rule, a two or three-jointed palp, which, however, is absent in many prawns (Carididæ). They are either straight and strongly toothed on their thickened anterior edge (*Brachyura*), or are slender and much bent (*Crangon*), or else forked at the ends (*Palæmonidæ* and *Alpheidæ*). The anterior maxillæ always consist of two lamellæ and a palp, which is usually simple. The posterior maxillæ, on which there are usually four lamellæ (two double lamellæ) as well as palps, bear a large respiratory plate with setose edges (scaphognathite). These are followed by three pairs of maxillipeds, which, as a rule, have a flagellate appendage. There remain, therefore, only five pairs of thoracic appendages for use as legs; of these the two last are sometimes reduced or may even be entirely absent (*Lucifer*) as the result of retrogressive changes. The thoracic segments to which the ambulatory legs belong are, as a rule, all or all but the last fused together and form on the ventral side a continuous plate, which in all the *Brachyura* is broad. The legs consist of seven joints, which correspond to those of the *Arthrostraca*, and frequently end with a chela or prehensile hand.

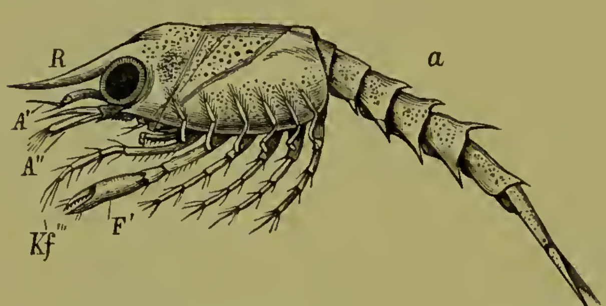


FIG. 372. -Young form (larva) of the lobster (after G. O. Sars). *R*, rostrum; *A'*, *A''*, antennæ; *K'''*. third maxilliped; *F'* anterior ambulatory leg.

**Development.**—The greater number of marine *Decapoda* leave the egg membranes in the zoæa form; in *Homarus*, amongst the *Macrura*, the metamorphosis is much reduced and the just-hatched young possesses all the thoracic legs, which are, however, provided with external swimming rami, but it is still without the abdominal feet (fig. 372).

**Embryonic development.**—In addition to the classical researches of Rathke* on the crayfish, more recent works, especially those of

* Besides Rathke l. c. and Lereboullet l. c., and a Russian paper of Bobretzky.

Bobretzky (prawns and cray-fish) and Reichenbach (cray-fish) have yielded important results. The segmentation seems (in all cases?) to be superficial (centrolecithal), that is, to be confined to the peripheral yolk (formative yolk). This divides successively into two, four, eight, and an increasing number of segmentation cells, while the central granular food yolk, which is rich in oil globules, remains unsegmented. The young of *Astacus*, when hatched, resemble the adult animal, excepting that the caudal fin is still rudimentary.

## I.—Macrura.

The abdomen is strongly developed and is at least as long as the anterior part of the body; there are four or five pairs of abdominal feet and a broad, well-developed caudal fin. The antennules bear two or three flagella, the antennæ have one simple flagellum and frequently bear a scale at the base. The maxillipeds of the third pair are long and pediform and do not completely cover the preceding ones. The *Zoœa* larva, when hatched, is elongated and has usually three pair of biramous feet.

Fam. **Carididæ**. Prawns. Body laterally compressed, with a thin shell, which is often provided with a median ridge and prolonged into a saw-like frontal process. The posterior (external) antennæ are inserted beneath the anterior (internal) and have a large scale projecting over the stalk. The long and slender anterior pairs of ambulatory legs frequently end in chelæ. They live in shoals near the coast. Some genera (*Penæus*) possess a rudimentary swimming ramus. *Palæmon squilla* L., *Crangon vulgaris* Fabr., *Pontonia tyrrhena* Risso, lives between the shells of bivalves. *Sergestes atlanticus* Edw.

Fam. **Astacidæ**. Tolerably large, usually with a hard shell. The cephalothorax is slightly compressed, the abdomen flattened. The antennæ are attached near the antennules, and bear a small or quite reduced scale at their base. The first pair of ambulatory feet ends with large chelæ, as do in many cases the weaker and smaller second and third pairs. Some soft-skinned forms bury themselves in the mud or sand. *Astacus fluviatilis* Rond., Crayfish. *Homarus vulgaris* Bel., Lobster. *Nephrops norwegicus* L., *Gebia* Leach., *Thalassina* Latr., *Callianassa subterranea* Mont., buries itself in sand on the sea-shore.

Fam. **Loricata**. With very hard, rough armour, and large broad abdomen. The antennules end with two short flagella; all five pairs of ambulatory feet with simple claws. The larvæ are described as species of *Phyllosoma*. *Palinurus quadricornis* Latr. *Scyllarus latus* Latr.

Fam. **Galatheidæ**. With broad, rather large abdomen, and well-developed caudal fin. The first pair of legs is chelate, the last is weak and reduced. *Galathea strigosa* L.

Fam. **Hippidæ**. Cephalo-thoracic shield long; end of the abdomen curved. The first pair of legs usually with a finger-shaped terminal joint; the last is

Kiew, 1873, compare H. Reichenbach, "Die Embryonalanlage und erste Entwickelung des Flusskrebses," *Zeitschr. für Wiss. Zool.*, Tom XXIX., 1877.

weak. *Hippa eremita* L., lives buried in the sea sand, Brazil. *Albunea symnista* Fabr., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Paguridæ.** Hermit crabs. Abdomen long, usually covered with a soft skin and distorted, with narrow anal fin and rudimentary abdominal feet. The first pair of feet ends with powerful chelæ, the two last are reduced. Some of them seek shelter in empty snail shells. to protect their soft-skinned abdominal region. *Pagurus Bernhardus* L., *Cœnobita rugosa* Edw.. *Birgus latro* Herbst, said to climb palm-trees.

## II.—Brachyura.

With pits for the reception of the short internal (anterior) antennæ and so-called orbits, *i.e.*, cavities for the reception of the stalked eyes. Abdomen short and reduced, without caudal fin, curved round against the excavated ventral surface of the thorax; in the male narrow and pointed, with only one, more rarely two pairs of abdominal feet; in the female broad, with four pairs of abdominal feet. In the female each oviduct dilates to form a bursa copulatrix. The third pair of maxillipeds have broad flat joints and completely cover the anterior mouth parts. The just-hatched *Zoœa* larvæ of stout shape, with only two pairs of biramous feet and a dorsal spine; later they assume the *Megalopa* form. Many Brachyura live on land.

Fam. **Notopoda.** Transitional between the *Brachyura* and *Macrura*. The two or four posterior thoracic feet are articulated higher up than the four or three posterior pairs, and shifted on to the back. The first pair of feet has large chelæ, the last is often modified to swimming feet. *Porcellana platycheles* Penn, *Dromia vulgaris* Edw., *Lithodes.* Latr.

Fam. **Oxystomata.** With rounded cephalo-thorax. The frontal region does not project. The buccal frame is triangular. The male genital openings are on the basal joint of the last pair of thoracic legs. *Calappa granulata* L., *Ilia nucleus* Herbst, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Oxyrhyncha.** Cephalo-thorax usually triangular, with projecting pointed rostrum. There are nine gills on either side. The male genital opening is on the basal joint of the last pair of thoracic legs. The thoracic ganglia are united into one mass. They do not swim but crawl. *Inachus scorpio* Fabr., *Maja squinado* Rond.. *Pisa armata* Latr., *Stenorhynchus* Lam.

Fam. **Cyclometopa.** With broad, short cephalo-thorax, rounded anteriorly. Without projecting frontal rostrum. There are nine gills on either side. The male genital opening is on the basal joint of the last pair of thoracic legs. Some of them are good swimmers. *Cancer pagurus* L., *Xantho rivulosus* Risso, Mediterranean. *Carcinus mænas* L., *Portunus puber* L.

Fam. **Catometopa, Quadrilatera.** Cephalo-thorax quadrilateral. Frontal region is curved downwards. There are fewer than nine gills. The male genital openings usually lie on the sternum. Some of them live for a long time away from the water. Some live in holes in the earth, as land crabs. *Pinnotheres pisum* L., in the shells of Mytilus. *P. veterum* Bosc., in the shells of *Pinna*; known to the ancients, who thought that there was a relation of mutual assistance between the crab and the mollusk. *Ocypoda cursor* Bel., *Gelasimus forceps* Latr., *Grapsus varius* Latr., *Gecarcinus ruricola* L., Land Crabs. Water is retained for a long time in the branchial cavities, owing to the presence of secondary spaces around the branchial plates, which are thus prevented from sticking together. They live in holes in the earth in the Antilles.

---

## III.—GIGANTOSTRACA.

The **Xiphosura** or **Pœcilopoda**, represented by the living genus *Limulus* and the orders of the fossil **Merostomata**, may be united under this head, as opposed to the *Entomostraca* and *Malacostraca*.

They are principally characterised by the possession of a single pair of appendages placed in front of the mouth and innervated from the cerebral ganglion, also by the presence of four or five pairs of legs, which are placed round the mouth and whose basal joints are modified to form large mandible-like masticatory organs. Behind the last pair of legs there is a simple or cleft prominence, forming a sort of underlip. The region of the body which bears these appendages is to be considered as an unsegmented cephalo-thorax; it is shield-shaped and may be drawn out into projecting wing-shaped lateral portions. On its upper surface two small median frontal eyes as well as two large lateral eyes can be distinguished. Following the cephalo-thorax there is an abdomen, which is usually elongated and composed of a greater number of segments. The abdomen tapers posteriorly and terminates in a telson, which may be flat or drawn out into the form of a spine.

### *Order* 1.—Merostomata.*

*Gigantostraca with five pairs of appendages on the cephalo-thorax which is relatively short; with an elongated apodal abdomen, usually composed of twelve segments and ending in a flat or styliform telson.*

The powerful body of the *Eurypteridæ* (included with the *Pœcilopoda* by Woodward), as the most important family of the *Merostomata* is named after the genus *Eurypterus*, consists of a cephalo-thoracic shield with median ocelli as well as large projecting marginal eyes, also of an abdomen with numerous (usually twelve) segments which become longer posteriorly, and of a caudal shield, which is prolonged into a spine. Round the mouth on the underside of the cephalo-thorax

* Woodward, "Monograph of the Brit. fossil Crustacea belonging to the order of Merostomata." P. I., & II., *Palæont. Soc. of London*, 1866-1869. Woodward, "On some points in the structure of the Xiphosura, having reference to their relationship with the Eurypteridæ," *Quarterly Journ. Geol. Soc. of London*, 1867 and 1871.

there are five pairs of long spiny legs, of which the last is much the largest and ends in a broad swimming-fin. Some of the anterior appendages may be armed with a chela. The resemblance of the true *Eurypteridæ* (in the general shape of their body) to the *Scorpionidæ* is very striking, while the genus *Hemiaspis* presents affinities to the *Pæcilopoda*. The most important forms are: *Eurypterus pygmæus* Salt., Devonian strata, *Pterygotus anglicus* Ag., four feet long, from the upper Silurian (fig. 373).

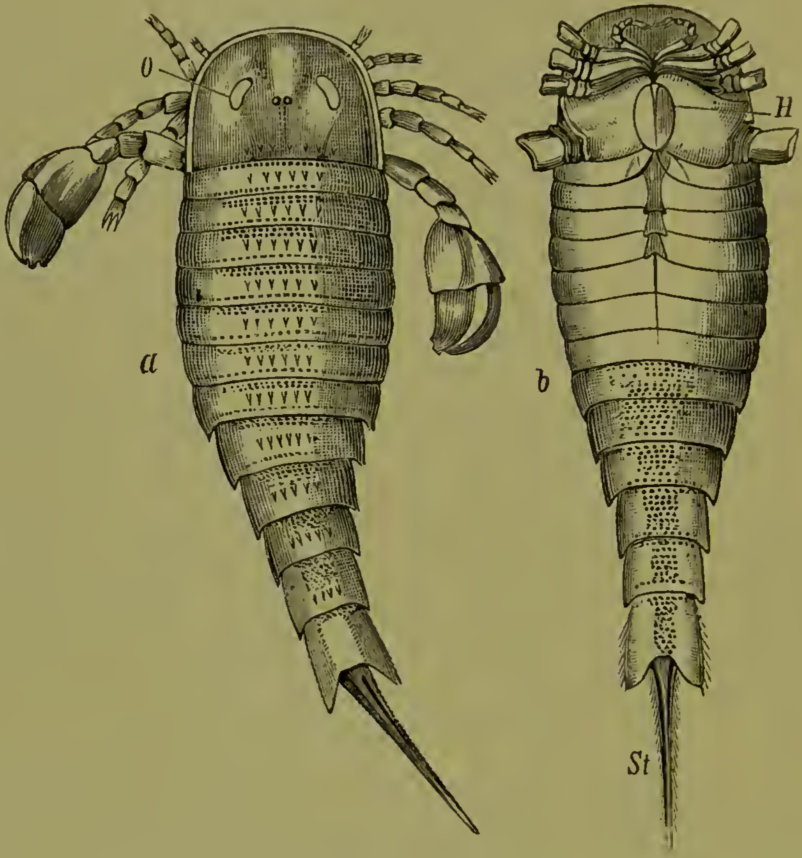



FIG. 373.—*Eurypterus remipes* after Nieszkowski. *a*, Dorsal view; *b*, ventral view; *O*, eyes; *St*. caudal spine; *H*, hypostome.

### *Order* 2.—XIPHOSURA.*

*Gigantostraca whose body is divided into three parts, which are movably articulated together; a large shield-shaped cephalo-thorax, an abdomen with five pairs of lamellar feet and a long movable caudal spine.*

The large body of these Crustacea is covered with a strong chiti-

* C. Gegenbaur, "Anatomische Untersuchung eines Limulus, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Gewebe." *Abhandl. der naturforsch. Gesellschaft zu Halle*, IV., 1858. Packard. "The Development of Limulus Polyphemus." *Soc. of Nat. Hist.*, 1870. A. M. Edwards, "Recherches sur l'anatomie des Limules." *Ann. sc. nat.* Vᵉ Sér. Tom. XVII., 1872-1873. [E. R. Lankester, "Limulus an Arachnid," *Quart. Journ. Mic. Soc.*, vol. xxi.]

nous armour and is divided into an arched cephalo-thorax and a flat, almost hexagonal abdomen, which ends in a movable sword-like caudal spine. The cephalo-thorax (fig. 374) forms by far the larger part of the body; it bears on its arched dorsal surface two large compound eyes, and further forwards, nearer the middle line, two smaller simple eyes; while on its ventral surface there are six pairs of appendages, of which the anterior pair is slender and may, on account of its position in front of the mouth, be regarded as a pair of antennæ, although it ends, like the others, with a chela. The latter are placed to the right and left of the mouth, and their coxal joints serve as organs for the mastication of the food. At the end of the cephalo-thorax there is a pair of lamellar appendages, which are connected in the middle line and form a kind of operculum for the branchial appendages of the abdomen. It seems of interest that the form of this branchial operculum in the Asiatic and American species presents constant differences, in that the median portion in the former is undivided, and in the latter consists of two joints. The shield-shaped abdomen which, by means of a transverse joint, is movable on the cephalic shield in a dorso-ventral direction, is armed on either side with movable spines, and bears on its ventral surface five pairs of lamellar feet, which are almost completely covered by the operculum. These abdominal feet assist both in swimming and in respiration, since the respiratory lamellæ are placed on them (fig. 374, *a*, *b*).

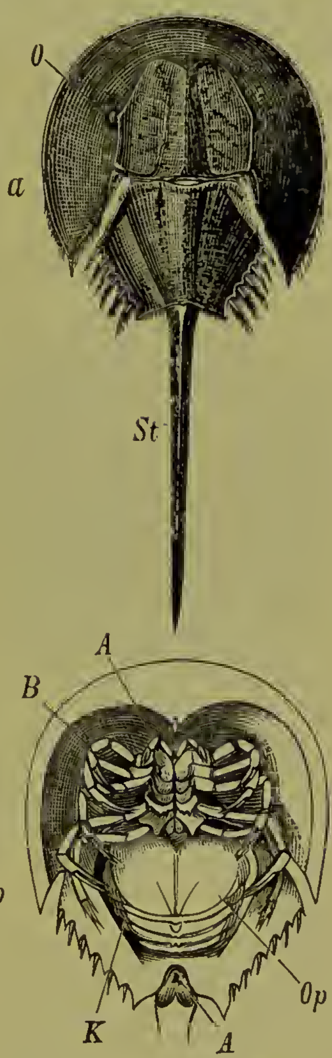



FIG. 374.—*a Limulus moluccanus*, seen from the dorsal side (after Huxley). *O*, eyes; *St*, caudal spine. *b*, *L. rotundicauda* (after M. Edwards), seen from the ventral side. *A* Antennæ; *B*, the feet with their coxal jaws; *K*, gills; *Op*, operculum.

The internal organization attains a relatively high development in correspondence with the large size of the body. In the **nervous system** the following parts can be distinguished:—a broad œsophageal ring, the anterior part of which constitutes the *brain* and gives off the optic nerves, while from the lateral parts the six pairs of nerves to the antennæ and legs take their origin; a subœsophageal ganglionic mass with three transverse commissures: and a double ganglionic cord, which gives off branches to the ventral feet and ends with a double ganglion in the abdomen. The **alimentary canal** consists of œsophagus, masticatory stomach, and a straight intestine communicating with a liver and opening by the anus, which is placed immediately in front of the base of the caudal spine.

The **heart** is elongated and tubular, and is pierced by eight pairs of slits, which can be closed with valves; it is also provided with arteries, which, after a short course, pass into lacunar blood paths. From the base of the gills, two spaces, returning the blood, extend to the pericardial sinus.

Five pairs of appendages of the abdominal feet function as **gills.** These are composed of a very large number of delicate lamellæ, lying one on another like the leaves of a book.

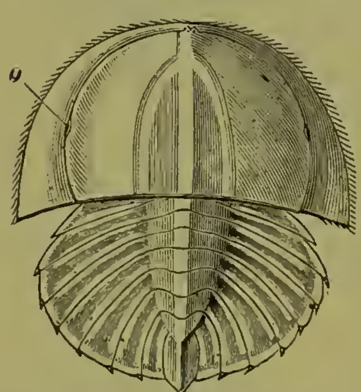


FIG. 375.—Embryo of *Limulus* in the Trilobite stage (after A. Dohrn).

**Generative organs.**—The branched *ovaries* unite to form two oviducts, which open by separate openings on the under side of the operculum (first pair of abdominal limbs); in the male the openings of the two seminal ducts are placed in the same position. In the male, the anterior thoracic feet end in simple claws.

**Development.**—It is known that the young leave the egg without the caudal spine and often without the three posterior pairs of gill-bearing feet. This stage has been suitably named the Trilobite stage, on account of the resemblance which the larva presents to a Trilobite (fig. 375). On the cephalic shield there is a median keel-like ridge, which is also found on the abdominal segments. The last abdominal segment includes between its lateral portions the short rudiment of the caudal spine. In the next stage the segmentation of the abdomen becomes less obvious (the caudal shield becomes consolidated) and the caudal spine developed.

The adult animals reach a length of several feet, and live exclusively in the warm seas, in the Indian Archipelago and on the east coast of America. They exist at a depth of two to six fathoms and move about in the mud by the alternating bending and straightening of the cephalic and abdominal shields and the caudal spine. Their food consists chiefly of Nereids. They are found in a fossil state, especially in the Sohlenhofen lithographic slate, but also in older formations as far back as the Uebergangsgebirge (Cambrian, Silurian, etc.) formation.

*Limulus moluccanus* Latr., East Indies. *L. polyphemus* L., East Coast of North America.

## TRILOBITA.*

In connection with the *Merostomata* and the *Xiphosura*, the *Trilobites* may be considered. Their systematic position cannot as yet be defined with certainty. They lived only in the most ancient periods of the earth's history, and their fossil remains are found in great numbers and are excellently preserved; but, unfortunately, the conditions under which they were fossilised were such that the under side of the body, and, consequently, the structure of the appendages, that is the very characters which would enable us to decide their affinities, remain unknown to us. We may probably infer from this absence of any trace of appendages * in the fossils, that the legs were soft and delicate; but Burmeister's conclusion that they resembled the legs of the *Phyllopoda* is not justified.

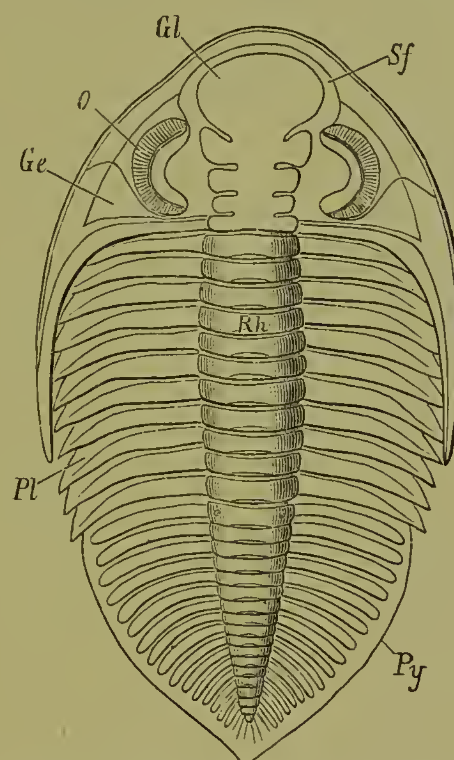


FIG. 376.—Diagram of *Dalmatites* (after Pictet). *Gl*, Glabellum; *Sf*, great suture (ocular suture); *O*, eyes; *Ge*, separable gena (cheeks); *Rh*, rhachis (tergum); *Pl*, pleuron; *Pg*, pygidium.

The body, which is frequently found rolled up, is covered with a thick shell, which is divided by two parallel longitudinal furrows into an elevated median portion (*rhachis*) and two lateral portions (*pleura*): it rarely attains any considerable size. There is an

* Burmeister, "Die Organisation der Trilobiten," etc., Berlin, 1843. Beyrich, "Untersuchungen über Trilobiten," Berlin, 1845, 1846. J. Barrande, "Système silurien du centre de la Bohême," Prague, 1852. S. W. Salter, "A monograph of the British Trilobites," London, 1864-1866.

* Portions of appendages have been recently observed on the ventral surface of an *Asaphus* ("Notes on some Specimens of Lower Silurian Trilobites," by E. Billings; also "Note on the Palpus and other appendages of Asaphus," etc., by H. Woodward, *Quart. Journ. of the Geolog. Soc.*, London, 1870), which are said to point to the affinity of *Trilobites* with the *Isopoda*.

anterior arched, semicircular region, which may be regarded as head or perhaps as cephalo-thorax, and a number of sharply distinct segments, which belong partly to the thorax and partly to the abdomen and are terminated by a larger shield-shaped caudal portion, the *pygidium* (fig. 376).

At the edge of the pygidium, the armour of the upper surface is folded round on to the ventral side and leaves only the middle part of the latter uncovered. The lateral regions of the head, the median part of which especially projects as the "*glabellum*," bear usually upon two protuberances large compound facetted eyes, and are often prolonged into two very long backwardly directed spines; they are also folded inwards on to the ventral surface. With the exception of a plate (hypostoma) comparable to the under-lip of *Apus*, no trace of mouth parts has been observed for certain on the ventral surface of the head. The number of thoracic (trunk) segments varies considerably, but is tolerably definite for the adults of each species. Their lateral portions are likewise folded inwards on to the ventral surface, and present variously shaped wing-like processes and long pointed spines.

The Trilobites lived in the sea, probably in shoals in shallow water near the coast. Their fossils are amongst the most ancient remains of animal life, and are found principally in Bohemia, Russia, Sweden etc., in the lowest strata of the Uebergangsgebirge (Cambrian, Silurian, etc.) They have been divided into numerous families according to the structure of the head (especially of the glabellum), the form of the pygidium and the number of segments. The most important genera are *Calymene Blumenbachii* Brogn; *Olenus gibbosus* Wahlb., *Ellipsocephalus Hoffii* Schlotth.

## Class II.—ARACHNIDA.*

*Air-breathing Arthropoda with fused head and thorax, with two pairs of jaws, four pairs of ambulatory legs and apodal abdomen.*

The Arachnida include animals of extraordinarily different form. The head and thorax are almost invariably fused to form a short cepholo-thorax; but the condition of the abdomen presents very great variations.

* C. A. Walckenaer et P. Gervais. "Histoire naturelle des Insectes Aptères." 3 Vols., Paris, 1837-1844. Hahn und Koch, "Die Arachniden, getreu nach der Natur abgebildet und beschrieben." Nürnberg, 1831-1849. E. Blanchard, "Organisation du règne animal. Arachnides," Paris, 1860.

In the Spiders (*Araneida*) the abdomen is swollen and is joined to the cephalo-thorax by a short stalk. In the *Scorpionidæ*, on the contrary, the long abdomen is joined to the cephalo-thorax by its whole breadth, and is divided into a broad segmented præ-abdomen and a narrow, very movable post-abdomen, which is also segmented. In the Mites (*Acarina*) the abdomen is unsegmented and fused with the cephalo-thorax. In the *Pentastomida* the entire body is elongated, ringed and vermiform, with four (two pairs of) hooks in place of the appendages; these animals are known as *Linguatulida*, and might be placed, on account of their parasitism, amongst the intestinal worms.

The marked reduction of the cephalic region, which is without true antennæ and possesses only two pair of oral appendages, is characteristic of the Arachnida. The anterior pair of cephalic appendages (chelicerae), which are used as jaws, have been regarded as modified antennæ; but it is perhaps more natural to regard them as morphologically equivalent to the mandibles of Crustaceans and Insects. These anterior jaws or chelicerae are either chelate, in which case the claw-like terminal joint can be moved against a process of the preceding joint (Scorpions, many Acarina), or sub-chelate, when the last joint is folded down upon the next like the blade of a pocket-knife upon the handle (Spiders).

The chelicerae may also have the form of stylets, which are enclosed in a tube formed by the second pair of jaws (Mites). The latter, which constitute the second pair of appendages of the head or the pedipalpi, consist of a stout basal joint and a palp, which has frequently the form and segmentation of a leg. This either ends with or without a claw or with a chela (Scorpions). In the true Spiders there is an unpaired plate, the lower lip, between the basal joints of the two pedipalpi and belonging to the same segment as the latter. The four following pairs of appendages of the thorax are ambulatory legs. The first of them is sometimes modified in form and elongated like a palp; its basal joint may function as a jaw. The legs consist of six or seven joints, which, in the higher forms, have been called by the same names as the analogous regions of the Insect leg.

The internal organization of the *Arachnida* shows hardly fewer differences than does that of the *Crustacea*. The **nervous system** may have the form of a common ganglionic mass around the œsophagus (Mites), and may even possess only a simple commissure above the œsophagus (*Pentastomida*). As a rule, however, there is a distinct separation between brain and ventral cord, the latter showing very different grades of development. Visceral nerves have been shown to exist in the Spiders and Scorpions. The **sense organs** are, as a rule, not so highly developed as in the *Crustacea*, and, putting on one side the tactile function of the extremities, are confined to eyes. The eyes are simple and immovable, and never possess a facetted cornea; they are from two to twelve in number, and are symmetrically arranged on the anterior surface of the cephalo-thoracic shield. Auditory organs have not yet been discovered, but there are tactile and olfactory organs.

The **alimentary canal** runs straight from the mouth to the hind end of the body, and is divided into a narrow œsophagus and a wide intestine, which is, as a rule, provided with lateral cæca. The intestine is, in the Spiders and Scorpions, divided into an anterior dilated portion—the so-called stomach—and the intestine proper. The glandular appendages of the digestive canal are **salivary glands**; in Spiders and Scorpions, a **liver**, composed of a number of branched canals; and, with a few exceptions, **Malpighian tubes**, which function as *urinary organs* and open into the hind end of the intestine.

The organs of **circulation** and **respiration** also show very different degrees of development and are only absent in the lowest Mites. The heart lies in the abdomen, and is a long, many-chambered dorsal vessel with lateral slits through which the blood enters. It is frequently continued into an anterior and posterior aorta, and in Scorpions gives off in addition lateral branching arteries. The organs of **respiration** are internal air chambers, which have the form either of ramified tubes (*tracheæ*), or of hollow lamellæ (*fan-tracheæ, lungs*) placed upon one another in great number like the leaves of a book and connected together by trabeculæ so as to have the form of a sac. The air chambers are always kept open by a firm internal chitinous membrane, so that the air can enter by the paired openings (*stigmata*) of the tracheæ or lungs at the beginning of the abdomen, and be distributed to the finest ramifications. The chitinous lining may become thickened so as to give rise to a spiral fibre.

**Generative organs.**—With the exception of the hermaphrodite Tardigrada, all the *Arachnida* are of separate sexes. The males are frequently distinguished by external characteristics, as for example by their smaller size, by the possession of organs of attachment (Mites), or by the modification of certain appendages. Their generative organs consist of paired testicular tubes, and the vasa deferentia often receive the contents of accessory glands before opening to the exterior by a single or double aperture at the base (anterior end) of the abdomen. Special copulatory organs in the region of the genital openings are, as a rule, wanting, but appendages far removed from the genital openings (*e.g.*, pedipalpi of Spiders) often serve to transfer the sperm from the male to the female. The female sexual organs are also paired, usually racemose glands, with two oviducts, which usually dilate to a receptaculum seminis before their single or double opening at the beginning of the abdomen. They are also connected with accessory glands. Rarely (*Phalangium*) there is a long protrusible ovipositor.

Only a few of the *Arachnida* are viviparous (Scorpions and some Mites); the greater number lay eggs, which they sometimes carry about with them in sacs till the young are hatched. As a rule, the just-hatched young have the form of the adult; but in most Mites two or more rarely four legs are wanting, and appear only with the succeeding moults. The development of the *Pygnogonida Pentastomida* and *Hydrachnea* (water-mites) (which latter pass through a pupa-like inactive stage) consists of a complicated metamorphosis.

Almost all *Arachnida* live on animals, a few on vegetable juices. The lowest forms are parasitic. The larger and more highly organised forms prey on living animals, principally on Insects and Spiders, and are usually furnished with poison weapons, with which they kill their prey. Many of them, by means of the secretion of spinning glands, spin webs, in which their prey becomes entangled. Most of them remain during the daytime beneath stones and in hiding-places, and come out to catch their prey only in the evening and at night.

### *Order* 1.—Linguatulida,* Pentastomida.

*Parasitic Arachnida with ringed, elongated, vermiform body, with two pairs of hooks in the neighbourhood of the jawless mouth.*

The vermiform ringed body of these parasites, which were for a long time taken for intestinal worms, is to be regarded as being principally formed of the extremely enlarged and elongated abdomen, the cephalo-thorax being much reduced; an interpretation which the form of the body of the *Dermatophili* seems to support. In the adult, jaws are completely wanting, but there are four curved hooks (two on each side of the mouth, fig. 377), which can be protruded from pouches in the skin and are attached to special chitinous rods. These may correspond to the terminal claws of the two posterior pairs of legs, since the two pairs of legs of the larva, which are to

* R. Leuckart, "Bau und Entwickelungsgeschichte der Pentastomiden," Leipzig und Heidelberg, 1860.

be regarded as the anterior appendages, are lost in the course of development. The **nervous system** is confined to a simple subœsophageal nervous mass, with œsophageal ring and giving off numerous nervous trunks. **Eyes** and organs of **respiration** and **circulation** are wanting. The **alimentary tract** is a simple canal in the middle of the body, which opens by an anus at the posterior end. Special cutaneous glands are present in great numbers and strongly developed. **Male** and **female** are distinguished by considerable differences in size and by the different position of the genital openings. While the genital opening of the surprisingly small male lies not far behind the mouth, that of the female is situated near the anus, at the hinder end of the body.

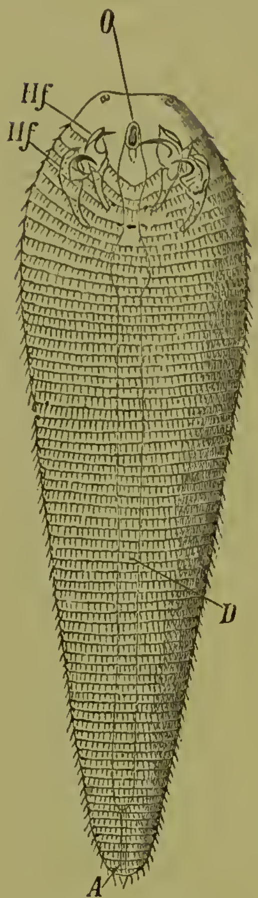


FIG. 377.—*Pentastomum denticulatum.* Young form of *P. tænioides.* *O*, Mouth; *Hf*, the four hooks; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus.

The *Linguatulida*, when sexually adult, inhabit the air chambers of warm-blooded animals and *Amphibia.* The developmental history of *Pentastomum tænioides*, which lives in the nasal cavities and in the frontal sinuses of dogs and wolves, is known from the researches of Leuckart. The embryos of this species, while still enveloped in the egg-membranes, pass out with the nasal mucus on to plants, and thence into the stomach of Rabbits and Hares, more rarely into that of Man. When freed from the egg-membranes, they pierce the walls of the in-

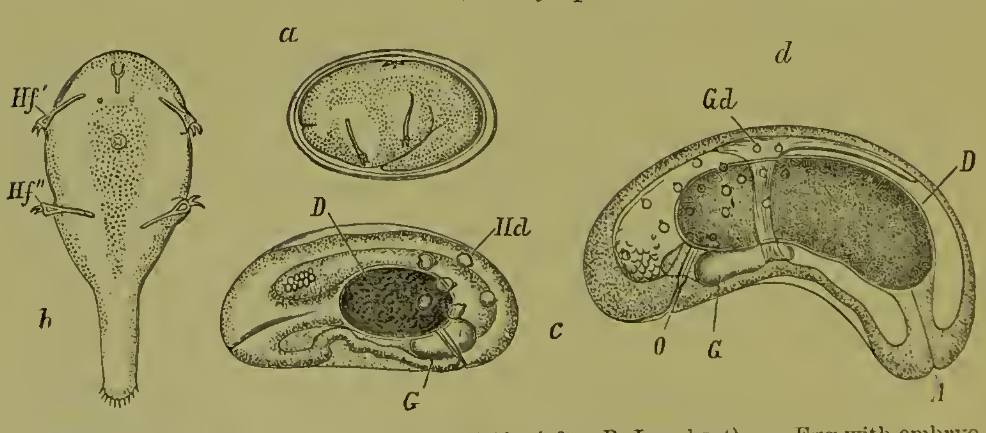


FIG. 378.—Young forms of *Pentastomum tænioides* (after R. Leuckart). *a*, Egg with embryo. *b*, Embryo with two pairs of hooked feet, *Hf'* and *Hf''*. *c*, Larva from liver of rabbit. *G*, Ganglion; *D*, intestine; *Hd*, skin glands. *d*, Older larva. *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *Gd*, genital glands.

testine and reach the liver. There they surround themselves with a cyst, in which they pass through a series of changes of form, accompanied, as in insect larvæ, by repeated ecdyses (fig. 378). When six months have elapsed, they have attained a considerable size and have acquired the four oral hooks, as well as a number of finely serrated superficial rings. They have now reached the stage formerly described as *P. denticulatum* (fig. 377), in which they break through their capsules and begin a fresh migration. They traverse the liver, and if present in great numbers, occasion the death of their host. In other cases, on the other hand, they soon become enveloped in

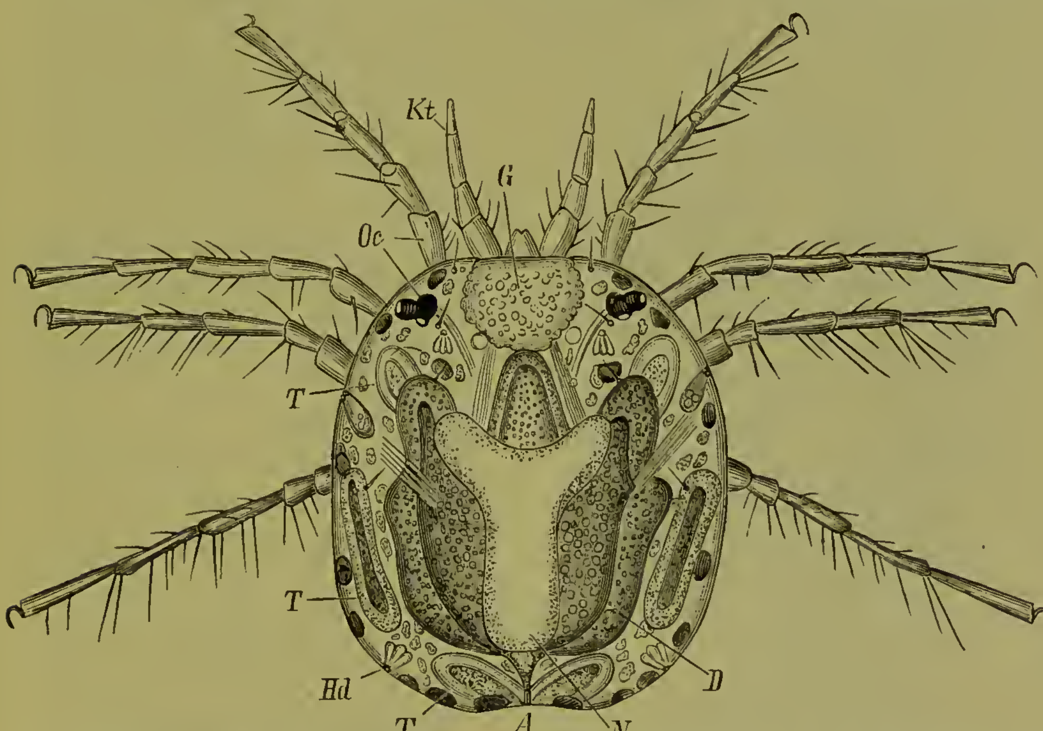



FIG. 379.—Ripe male of *Atax Bonzi*, seen from the dorsal surface (after E. Claparède). *Kt*, Pedipalpus; *G*, brain; *Oc*, eyes; *T*. testis; *N*, Y-shaped gland; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus; *Hd*, cutaneous glands.

another cyst. If they now pass with the flesh of the Hare or Rabbit into the buccal cavity of the Dog, they penetrate into the neighbouring air-chambers, and in two or three months become sexually mature.

*Pentastomum tænioides* Rud., 80-85 mm.. Male only 18-20 mm. long. *P. multicinctum* Harl., in the liver of *Naja haje*. *P. constrictum* v. Sieb. Encysted in the liver of negroes in Egypt.

## *Order* 2.—Acarina,* Mites.

*Arachnida with stout body. The abdomen is unsegmented and*

* O. Fr. Müller, "Hydrachnæ," etc., 1781. A. Dugès, "Recherches sur

*fused with the thorax. The oral apparatus is adapted for biting or piercing and sucking,. Respiration, as a rule, by means of tracheæ.*

The body of the *Acarina* is generally small and possesses a stout and unsegmented form. The head, thorax, and abdomen are fused into a common mass (fig. 379). The form of the oral apparatus varies exceedingly, and may be adapted either for biting or for piercing and sucking. The chelicerae are accordingly sometimes retractile styles, and are sometimes furnished with claws or chelæ. In the first case, the bases of the pedipalpi form a sheath which surrounds the styliform chelicerae and serves as a suctorial rostrum, while the peripheral part of the pedipalpus or palp frequently projects laterally, and ends with a claw or chela. The structure of the four pairs of legs is not less various, inasmuch as they may serve for crawling, attachment, running and swimming. They usually end with two claws, sometimes in parasitic forms with stalked suctorial discs.

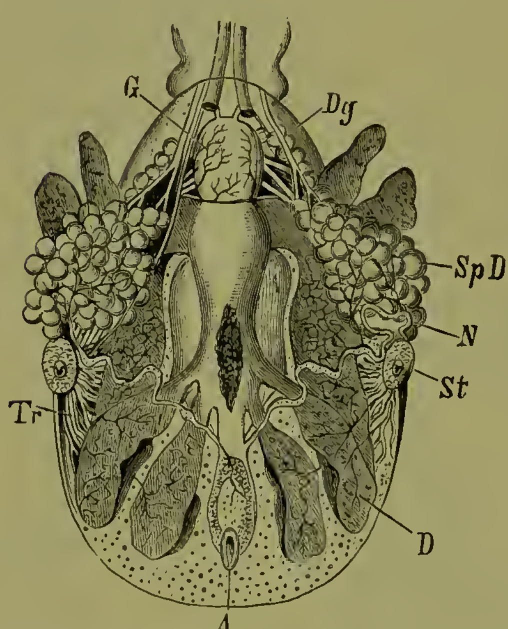



FIG. 380—Anatomy of *Ixodes Ricinus* (after Al. Pagenstecher). *G*, Brain ; *SpD*, salivary gland ; *Dg*, ducts of salivary gland ; *D*, diverticula of intestine ; *A*, anus ; *N*, urinary organ ; *Tr*, bundles of tracheæ ; *St*. stigma.

The **nervous system** is reduced to a common ganglionic mass representing the brain and ventral cord. *Eyes* may be absent or may be present, as one or two pairs of simple eyes.

The **alimentary canal** is frequently provided with salivary glands, and gives off on either side a number of blind saccular diverticula which may be forked (fig. 380).

**Heart and blood vessels** are invariably absent, but **respiratory organs** are frequently present in the form of tracheæ, which arise

l'ordre des Acariens en général et les familles des Trombidies, Hydrachnés en part," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, II. Ser.. Tom. I. and II. H. Nicolet. "Histoire naturelle des Acariens. etc. Oribatides." *Archives du musée d'hist. nat.*, Tom VII. O. Fürstenberg. "Die Krätzmilben des Menschen und der Thiere." Leipzig, 1861. Al. Pagenstecher, "Beiträge zur Anatomie der Milben," I. and II., Leipzig, 1860-1861. E. Claparède, "Studien an Acariden," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom XVIII., 1868. P. Mégnin, "Les parasites et les maladies parasitaires, 1880.

in tufts from a pair of stigmata, placed, as a rule, before or behind the last pair of legs (fig. 380, *St*).

The common **generative opening** is placed as a rule far away from the anus, and may be situated anteriorly between the last pair of legs (fig. 381, *a*, *b*). There may be a special copulatory opening, as in

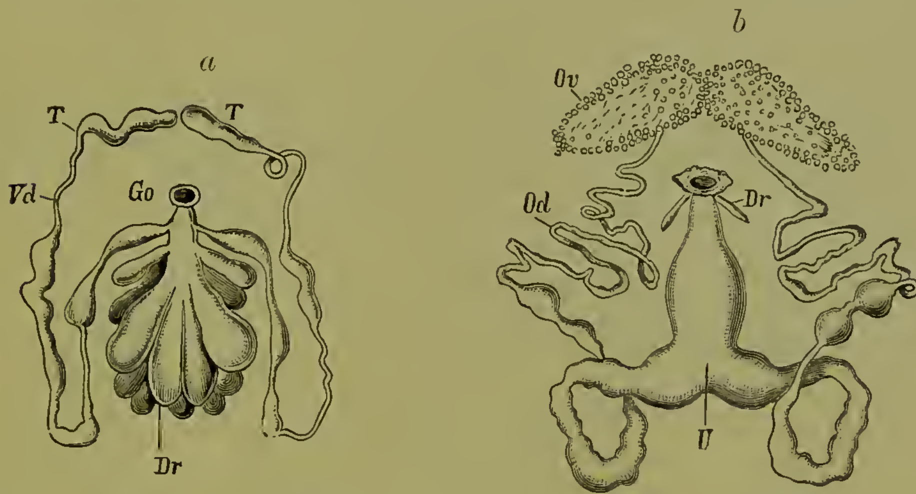



FIG. 381.—*a*, Male; *b*, female genital organs of *Argas* (after Al. Pagenstecher). *T*, Testes; *Vd*, seminal duct; *Dr*, prostate gland; *Go*, genital opening; *Ov*, ovaries; *Od*, oviduct; *U*, uterus; *Dr*, glandular appendages.

the itch-mites (*Sarcoptidæ*), through which the sperm passes into the receptaculum. The males are often distinguished not only by their

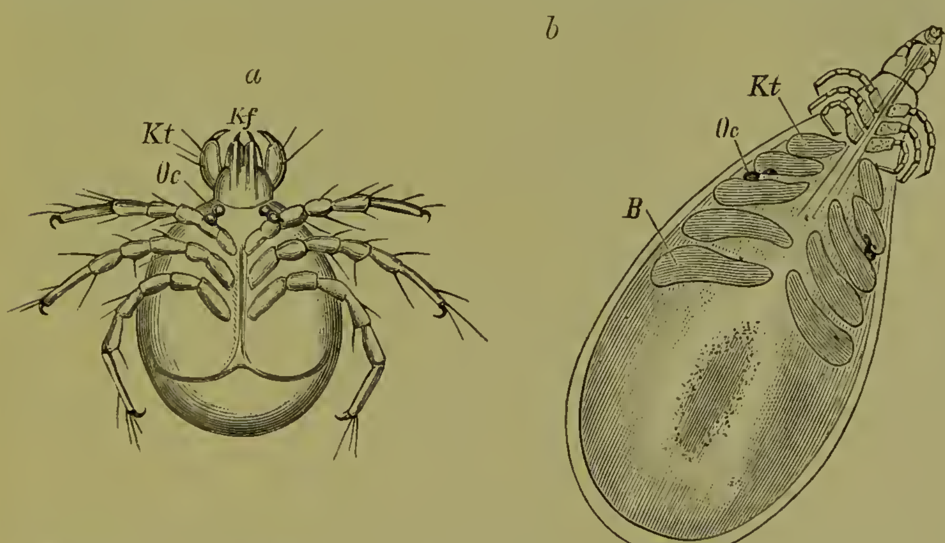



FIG. 382.—Larva of a *Hydrachna*. *b*, Its pupa. *Kf*, chelicera; *Kt*, pedipalpus; *Oc*, eyes; *B*, legs.

appendages, which are more powerful and of a slightly different form, but also by the possession of posterior suctorial pits, and sometimes also by the manner of nourishment and mode of life. The *Acarina* are, with the exception of the viviparous

*Oribatidæ*, oviparous. The young are usually hatched with only three pairs of legs, and undergo a metamorphosis, which in the *Hydrachnidæ* is distinguished by several larval and pupal stages (fig. 382 *a*, *b*). Very many Mites are parasitic on animals and plants, others are predacious and live some on land and others in water.

Fam. **Dermatophili.** Small elongated mites with long vermiform, transversely ringed abdomen, with suctorial proboscis, styliform jaws, and four pairs of short, two-jointed stump-like feet. The only known genus, *Demodex* (*Simonea*), lives in the hair follicles of domestic animals (Dog, Cat, Sheep, Cow, Horse), and as *D. folliculorum* Sim. in the hair follicles of Man, where they may give rise to comedones (fig. 384).

Fam. **Sarcoptidæ.** Itch mites. Body microscopic in size, stout, and with a soft skin, with chitinous rods for the support of the appendages. There are no eyes. The oral apparatus consists of a suctorial cone with chelate chelicerae and short laterally-placed pedipalpi. The legs are short and stump-shaped, and some or all of them have stalked suctorial discs. The males often have suckers and processes at the posterior end of the body. The females have a special vulva and receptaculum seminis. They live upon or in the skin of Vertebrates, and occasion the itch and mange. *Sarcoptes scabiei* Dug. (fig. 385), itch mite. With numerous pointed tubercles, spines and hairs on the dorsal surface. Legs five-jointed, the two anterior terminate with stalked sucker; the last pair of legs in the male ends not, as in the female, in a bristle, but in a stalked sucker (fig. 385). The females only bore deep passages in the epidermis, at the end of which they live, and produce by their pricking the skin disease known as the itch. The young, when hatched, possess only three pairs of legs and undergo several moults. The domestic animals are infected by different species of *Sarcoptidæ*, which may be temporarily transferred to man. *Dermatodectes communis* Fürst. *Symbiotes equi* Girl. (fig. 386).

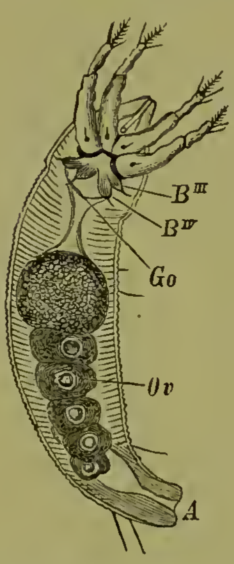



FIG. 383.—Female of *Phytoptus vitis*, from the leaf of the vine (after H. Landois). *Ov*, Ovaries; *A*, anus; *Go*, genital opening; $B^{III}$, $B^{IV}$, third and fourth pair of legs.

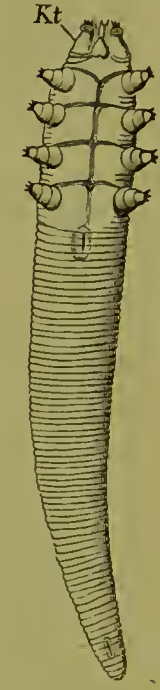



FIG. 384 — *Demodex folliculorum* (after Mégnin), strongly magnified; *Kt*, pedipalpus.

Fam. **Tyroglyphidæ.** Cheese-mites. Of more elongated form, with conical proboscis, chelate chelicerae, and three-jointed pedipalpi. The five-jointed legs are tolerably long, and have lobes for attachment and claws. Large suckers, especially in the male, are often present at the sides of the anus. They live on animal and vegetable matters. *Tyroglyphus siro* Gerv. *Rhizoglyphus*

*Robini* Clap., on roots. *Glyciphagus fecularum* Guér., on potatoes. *Hypopus* Dug., according to Mégnin and Robin, contains larval forms, which attach themselves to insects by their suckers.

Fam. **Ixodidæ.** Ticks. Larger usually blood-sucking mites, with strong dorsal shield and large, protrusible toothed chelicerae. The pedipalpi are three- or four-jointed and club-shaped; their bases are joined together to form a

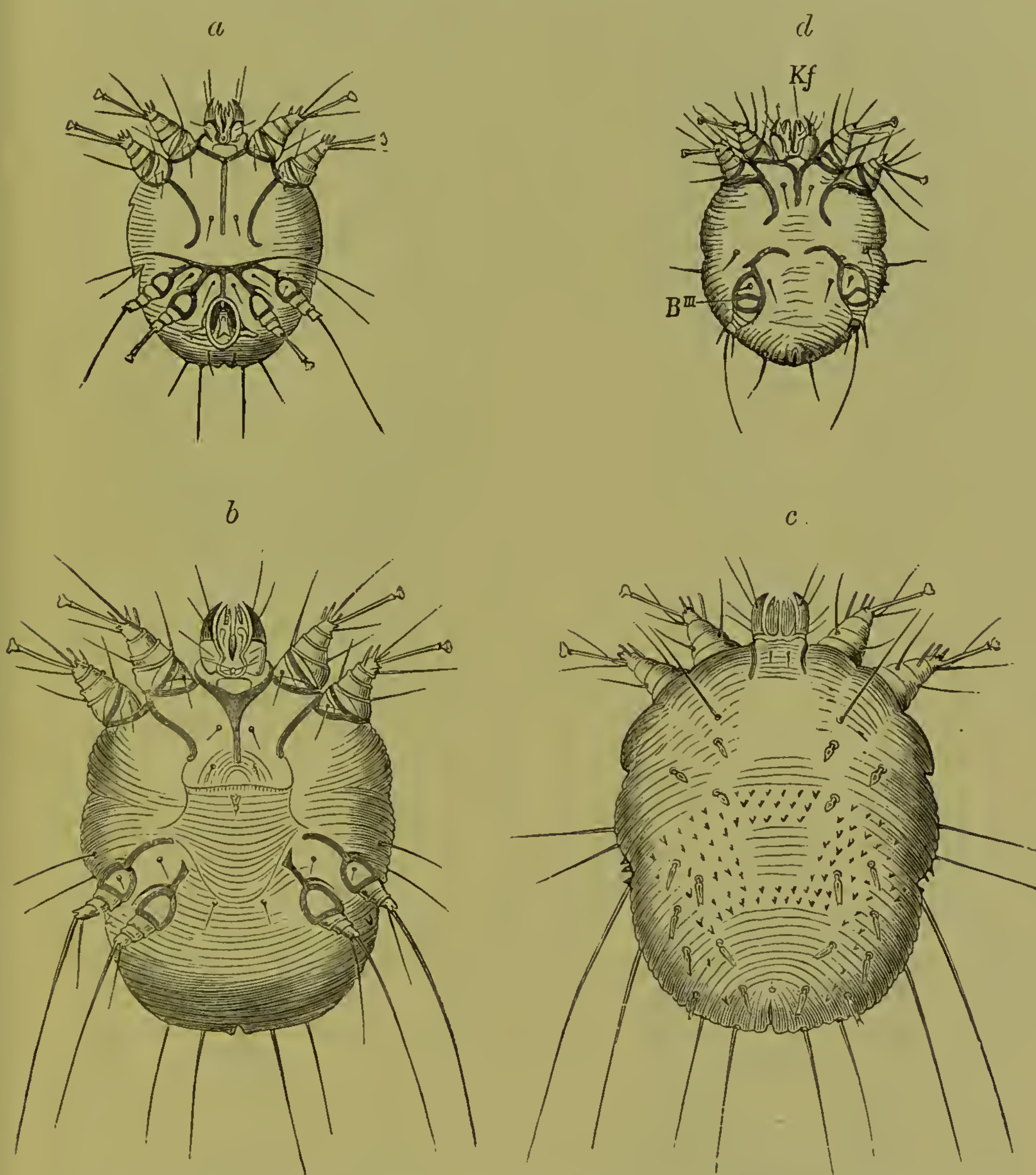
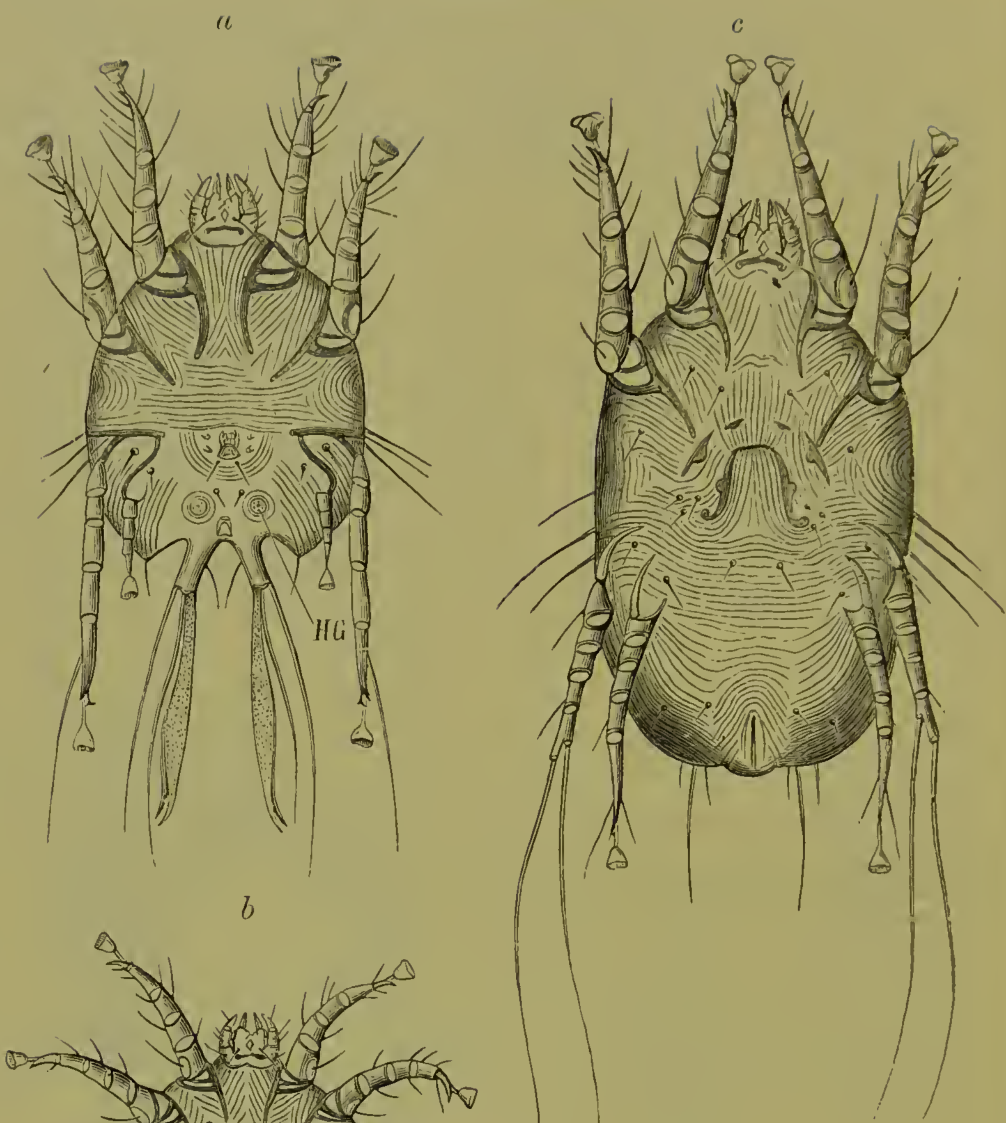



FIG. 385.—*Sarcoptes scabiei* (after Gudden). *a*, Male from the ventral side. *b*, Female from the ventral side. *c*, Female from the dorsal surface. *d*, Larva. *Kf*, Chelicerae; *B'''*, third pair of legs.

proboscis, bearing recurved hooks (fig. 387). The slender legs end with two claws. Two simple eyes are often present. Respiration by tracheæ. The Ticks live on the underwood in forests. The females crawl on to Mammalia and Man, suck blood, and become much swollen out. The young, when hatched, have three pairs of legs. In tropical countries the Ticks are of considerable size, and are amongst the most troublesome parasites. *Ixodes ricinus* L. *I. reduvius*,



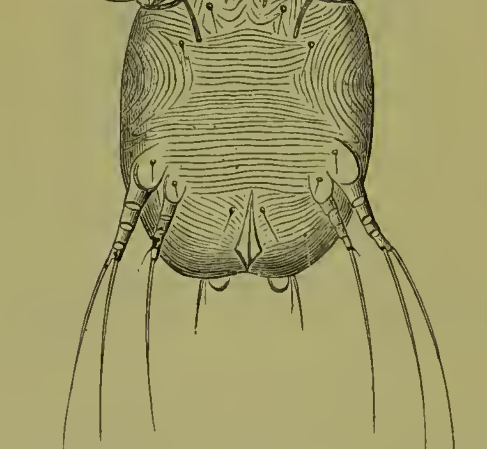



Fig. 386.—*Symbiotes equi* = *Chorioptes spathiferus*, from ventral side (after Mégnin). *a*, Male; *HG*, sucker; *b*, young female in copulatory stage; *c*, female ready to lay.

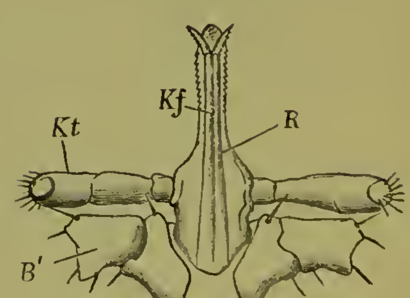



Fig. 387.—Oral apparatus of *Ixodes* (after Al. Pagenstecher). *R*, Proboscis; *Kf*, chelicera; *Kt*, pedipalpus; *B'* first pair of legs.

Deg., *Argas reflexus*, Latr., on Pigeons, occasionally on Man. *A. persicus*, Fisch. Notorious for its bite.

Fam. **Gamasidæ.** Beetle-mites. Chelicerae chelate. Pedipalpi five-jointed. The legs end with two claws and a sucker. Tracheæ are present. Some of them lead a free life and are predacious, some are parasitic on Beetles and on the skin of Birds and Mammals. *Gamasus coleoptratorum* L., *Dermanyssus avium*, Dug., *Pteroptus vespertilionis* Herm.

Fam. **Hydrachnidæ.** Water-mites. Body globular, often brightly-coloured. Chelicerae usually with a claw-like terminal joint. They have swimming legs, and two or four simple eyes. There are tracheæ. The larvæ, when hatched, adhere with their large suctorial cone to aquatic Insects, on the blood of which they live. *Hydrachna cruenta*, O. Fr. Müll. *Atax Bonzi* Clap., in the mantle cavity of the *Unios*. *Limnochares holosericeus* Latr.

Fam. **Trombidiidæ** (fig. 388). Body brightly coloured and covered with hairs ; the pedipalpus has a claw and a lobe-like appendage. Eyes present. Respiration by tracheæ. The hexapodous young live as parasites on *Insecta*

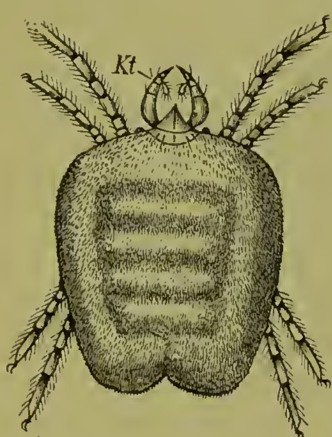



FIG. 388.—*Trombidium holosericeum* (after Mégnin).

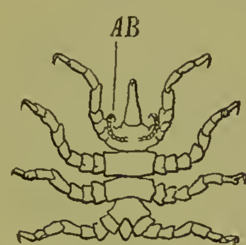



FIG. 389.—*Pygnogonum littorale*, (règne animal) *AB*, pair of legs used for carrying the eggs.

and *Arachnida*, sometimes on *Mammalia*, and on Man, in whom they (as *Leptus autumnalis*) produce a transitory affection of the skin. *Trombidium holosericeum* L. *Erythræus parietinus* Herm. *Tetranychus telearius* L. Spinning mite.

Fam. **Oribatidæ.** Chelicerae retractile and chelate. Pedipalpus five-jointed, with toothed biting plate on its basal joint. Ocelli absent. *Oribates alatus* Herm., under moss.

Fam. **Bdellidæ.** The cephalic region is elongated to form a proboscis, and is distinct from the rest of the body. The chelicerae are chelate. The pedipalpi are long and thin. The animals creep about on damp ground. *Bdella longicornis* L.

## PYGNOGONIDA.*

Milne Edwards and Kröyer placed the *Pygnogonida* among the *Crustacea* ; latterly, however, they have been generally placed between

* A. Dohrn, "Die Pantopoden des Golfes von Neapel und der angrenzenden Meeresabschnitte," Eine Monographie, Leipzig, 1881.

the Mites and Spiders amongst the *Arachnida*, although they possess a greater number of appendages than either, inasmuch as the males have an accessory pair of legs, used in carrying the eggs (fig. 389, *A B*). They are small animals with a conical suctorial proboscis and rudimentary abdomen (reduced to a tubercle); and they live in the sea, and crawl slowly about amongst the sea-weeds. There are four pairs of very long, many-jointed legs, which contain tubular diverticula of the stomach and the sexual glands. There are no tracheæ. On the other hand, there is a well-developed heart with an aorta

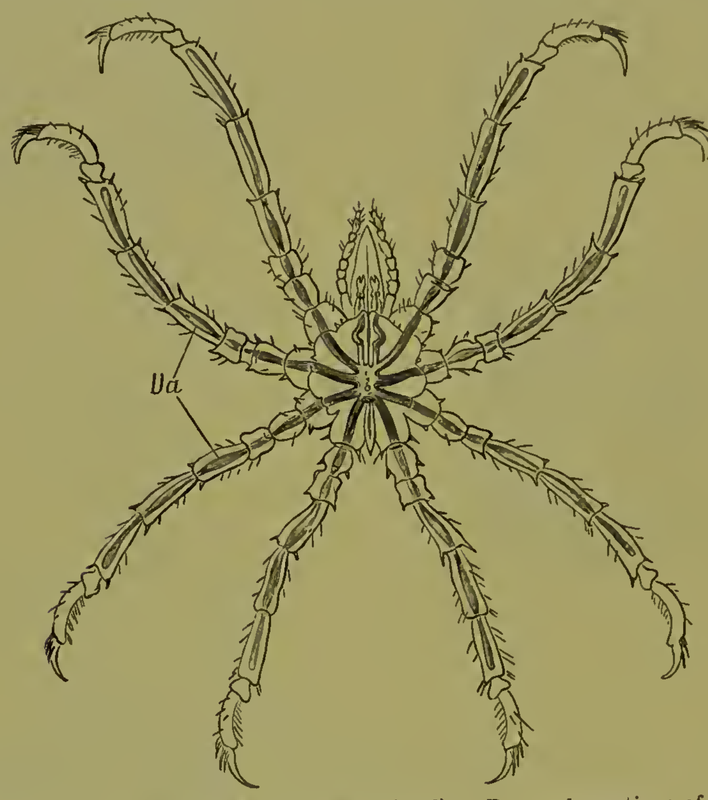



FIG. 390.—*Ammothea pygnogonoides* (règne animal). *Da*, prolongations of alimentary canal into the legs.

and several lateral ostia. Above the brain lie four small simple eyes. There is a considerable ventral chain, composed of several ganglia. The eggs are carried about on the accessory pair of legs on the thorax of the male (fig. 389) till the larvæ are hatched.

*Pygnogonum littorale* O. Fr. Müller, North Sea. *Phoxichilidium* Edw., *Ammothea* Leach, *A. pygnogonoides* Quatr. (fig. 390).

## TARDIGRADA.*

The *Tardigrada* constitute a second group, which is often separated as a distinct order. They are small mite-like *Arachnida*, and may

* Doyère, "Mémoire sur les Tardigrades." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, II[e] Sér., Tom. XIV., XVII., XVIII. C. A. S. Schultze, "Macrobiotus Hufelandii, etc," Berolini, 1834. C. A. S. Schultze, "Echiniscus Bellermanni," Berolini, 1840. Dujardin.

be defined as *hermaphrodite Arachnida with suctorial mouth parts, and short stumpy legs, without heart or respiratory organs.*

The body of these small, slowly-creeping aquatic animals is elongated and vermiform, and prolonged at the anterior extremity into a suctorial tube, from which two styliform jaws can be protruded. The four pairs of legs are short tubercles terminated by several claws (fig. 391); the last pair is placed at the extreme end of the body. The **nervous system** consists of four ganglia connected by long commissures. The first of these ganglia corresponds to the brain and gives off nerves to two simple eyes and to two sensory papillæ. **Circulatory** and **respiratory** organs are entirely absent. The **alimentary canal** consists of a muscular pharynx and a stomach beset with short cæcal diverticula. The ducts of two salivary glands of considerable size open into the suctorial proboscis (fig. 391). The *Tardigrada* are hermaphrodite, and possess a pair of **testes** and an unpaired **ovarian sac** which open together into the cloacal termination of the intestine. They usually lay large eggs at the time of moulting, which remain enclosed in the old cast-off skin till the young animals are hatched. Development takes place without metamorphosis. The animals live in moss and algæ in the gutters of roofs, and also on the sea-beach, and it is specially worthy of remark that, like the *Rotifera*, they can, by the addition of moisture, be called back to life after a long period of desiccation.

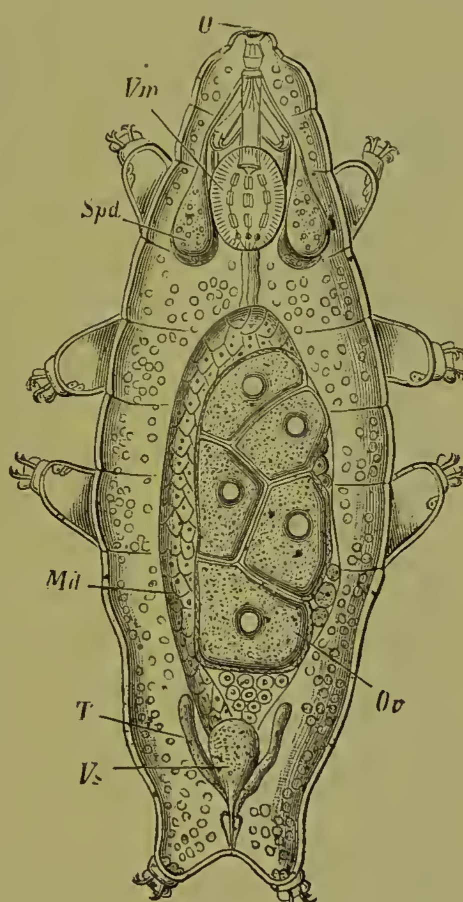



FIG. 391.—*Macrobiotus Schultzei* (after Greeff), *O*, Mouth; *Vm*, pharynx; *Md*, stomach; *Spd*, salivary glands; *Ov*, ovary; *T*, testes; *Vs*, vesicula seminalis.

*Macrobiotus Hufelandii* S. Sch., *Milnesium tardigradum* Doy., *Echiniscus Bellermanni* S. Sch.

"Sur les Tardigrades et sur une espèce à longs pieds vivant dans l'eau de mer." *Ann. des Sc. nat.* Sér. III., Tom XV. Also the works of Kaufmann, Greeff and Max. S. Schultze.

## *Order* 3.—ARANEIDA * (SPIDERS).

*Arachnida with poison glands in the subchelate chelicerae; with pediform pedipalpi and stalked unsegmented abdomen. They have four or six spinning mammillæ, and two or four pulmonary sacs.*

The peculiar shape of the true spiders is due to the swollen and unsegmented abdomen, the base of which is constricted to form the stalk by which it is united to the rest of the body (fig. 392). The large subchelate cheliceræ, which project beyond the front of the head, consist of a powerful basal portion grooved on the inner side, and a cläw-shaped terminal joint at the point of which the duct of a poison gland opens (fig. 393). At the moment of the bite the secretion of this gland flows into the wound, and in the case of small animals causes an almost instantaneous death. The pedipalpus bears on its broad coxal joint, which constitutes a kind of biting-blade (fig. 392 *K*), a many-jointed palp, the terminal region of which is peculiarly modified in the male and functions as a copulatory organ. The mouth is bounded on the under side by an unpaired plate, forming a sort of lower lip. The four pairs of usually long legs, whose form and size vary according to the manner of life, end with two toothed claws, to which a small claw (*Tk*) and several accessory claws may be added (fig. 394). The abdomen in the female is always larger and more swollen than in the male; at the base (anterior part) of its ventral surface is placed the unpaired sexual opening, at the sides of which are the two slit-like apertures of the lung sacs. There is often a second pair of stigmata behind these openings leading either into the

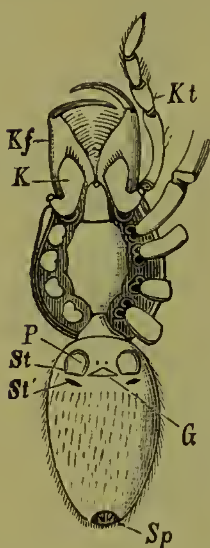



FIG. 392.—*Dysdera erythrina* from the ventral side (règne animal). *Kf*, chelicera; *Kt*, pedipalpus; *K*, basal joint (jaw) of pedipalpus; *P*, lungs; *St*, stigma of lungs; *St'*, posterior stigma leading into the tracheæ; *G*, genital opening; *Sp*, Spinning mammillæ.

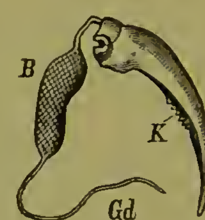



FIG. 393.—Poison gland and terminal joint of chelicera of *Mygale* (règne animal). *K*, claw; *Gd*, poison-gland; *B*, poison vesicle.

* Besides the works of C. A. Walckenaer, Treviranus, C. J. Sundevall, T. Thorell, Menge, Koch, Dugès, Lebert, etc., compare. E. Claparède, "Recherches sur l'évolution des Araignées," Génève, 1862: E. Claparède. "Études sur la circulation du sang chez les Aranées du genre Lycose," Génève, 1863: F. Plateau, "Recherches sur la structure de l'appareil digestif et sur les phénomènes de la digestion chez les Aranées dipneumones," Bruxelles, 1877.

posterior lung sacs (*Mygalidæ*) or into a system of tracheæ (*Argyroneta, Dysdera*). The anus is placed ventrally at the end of the abdomen, and is surrounded by four or six wart-like protuberances (fig. 395, *Spw*), the **spinning** or **arachnidial mammillæ**, from which the secretion of the spinning glands passes out. In front of these protuberances there often lies a peculiar structure called the *cribrellum*, with a covering of very fine hairs (fig. 395, *Cr*). The **spinning glands** (fig. 396) are tubes of various shapes; they open by fine pores on the surface of the spinning papillæ, and secrete a viscid material, which in the air hardens to a fine thread and is woven by the aid of the claws on the feet into the well-known spider's web.

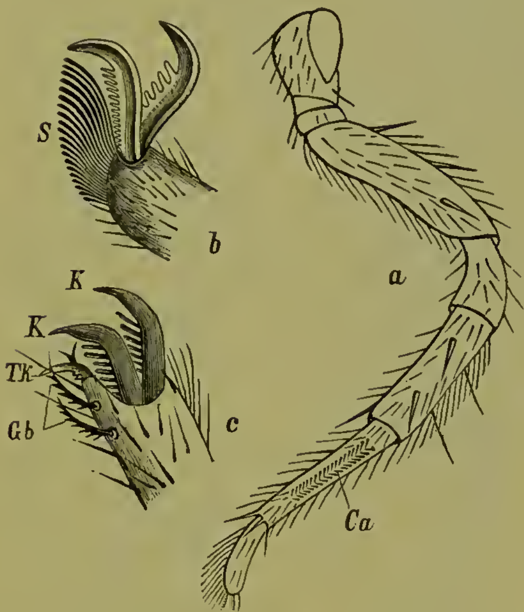



Fig. 394.—*a*, Leg of the fourth pair of *Amaurobius ferox*. *Ca*, Calamistrum. *b*, End of foot of *Philæus chrysops* with two claws and pencil consisting of spatulate hairs (*S*). *c*, End of foot of *Epeira diadema*; *K*, web-claws; *Tk*, ambulatory claw; *Gb*, toothed bristles (accessory claws) (after O. Hermann).

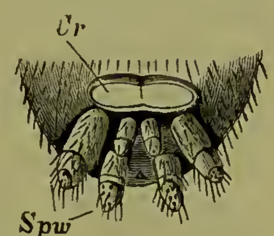



Fig. 395.—Spinning organ of *Amaurobius ferox* (after O. Hermann). *Cr*, Cribrellum; *Spw*, spinning mammillæ.

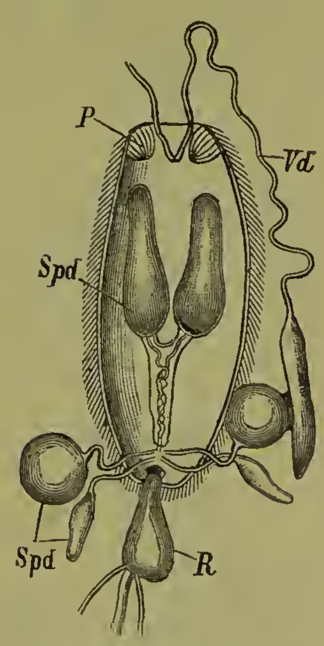



Fig. 396.—Lungs (*P*), spinning glands (*Spd*) and generative organs (*Vd*) of a male *Pholcus phalangista* (règne animal). *R*, Rectum with Malpighian vessels opening into it.

**Nervous system** (fig. 367).—Besides the brain, with the nerves to the eyes and cheliceræ, there is a single, usually star-shaped ganglionic mass in the thorax, from which nerves pass to the pedipalpi and legs, and also to the abdomen. Visceral nerves have also been observed on the alimentary canal. As a rule there are eight, or more rarely six simple eyes, which are disposed in two curved lines or more in a quadrate on the dorsal surface of the cephalic region behind the frontal margin. Their arrangement is very regular, and is characteristic for the different genera (figs. 398 and 399).

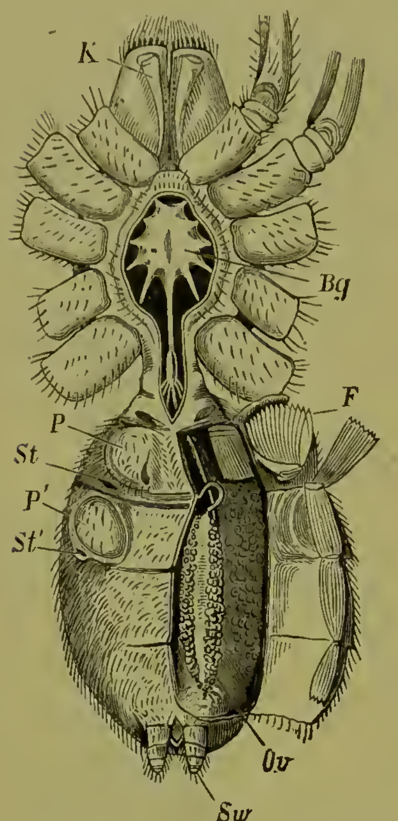



Fig. 397.—*Mygale* from the ventral side, part of the skin is turned aside (règne animal). *K*, Chelicera: *Bg*, thoracic ganglionic mass; *P*, *P'*, lungs; *F*, lamellæ of the lungs; *St*, *St'*, stigmata; *Ov*, ovary; *Sw*, spinning papillæ.

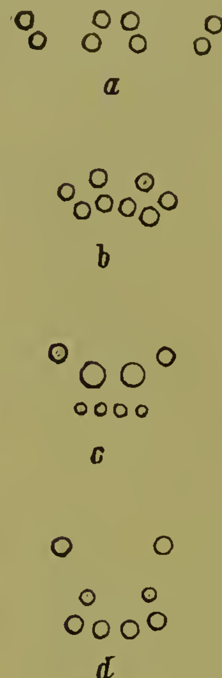



Fig. 399. — Arrangement of the eyes in different spiders (after Lebert). *a*, *Epeira*; *b*, *Tegenaria*; *c*, *Dolomedes*; *d*, *Salticus*.

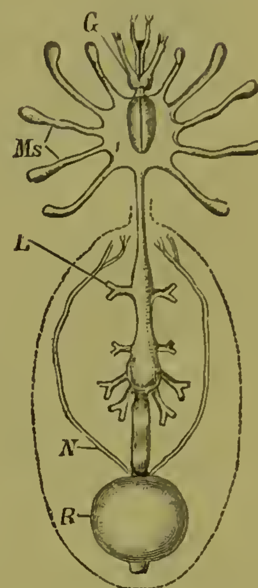



Fig. 400.—Alimentary canal of *Mygale* (règne animal). *G*, Cerebral ganglion; *Ms*, diverticula of stomach; *L*, hepatic ducts; *N*, Malpighian vessels; *R*, rectum.

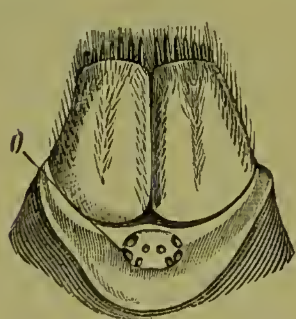



Fig. 398.—Anterior part of the cephalo-thorax of *Mygale* with the eyes (*O*) (règne animal).

The **alimentary canal** (fig. 400) begins beneath the upper lip with an ascending pharyngeal portion of the œsophagus, into which a saccular pharyngeal gland opens (salivary gland). The narrow œsophagus, before passing into the midgut or intestine, is dilated to form a suctorial stomach, which is furnished with powerful muscles arising from the dorsal part of the cephalo-thorax. The midgut is divided into an anterior part, lying within the cephalo-thoracic region and provided with two anterior and four lateral pairs of cæca, and into a narrower abdominal small intestine, into which the ducts of the branched hepatic tubes pour their secretion. The latter appears to have a digestive function similar to that of the pancreatic secretion, inasmuch as it dissolves albumens and transforms amyloid substances into sugar. The short rectum receives two branched urinary (Malpighian) canals, and dilates in front of the anal opening to the form of a vesicle (fig. 400).

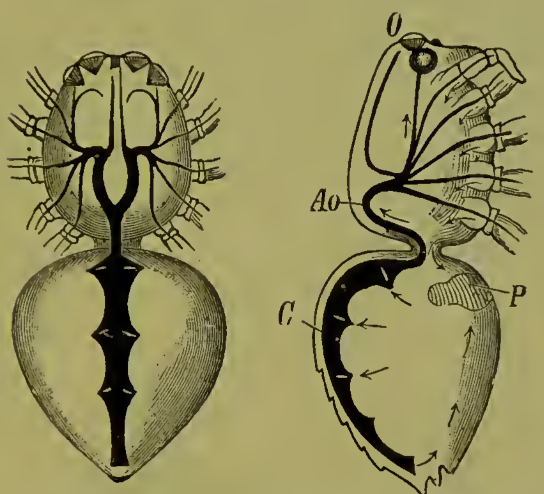



FIG. 401.—Heart and vascular trunks of *Lycosa*, in lateral and dorsal view (after Claparède). *P*, Lungs; *C*, heart; *Ao*, aorta; *O*, eyes.

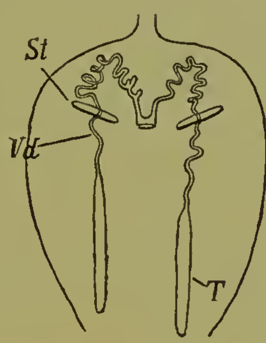



FIG. 402.—Sexual organs of a *Tegenaria* (*Philoica*) *domestica*, with the abdomen in outline (after Bertkau). *T*, Testis; *Vd* vas deferens; *St*. stigma.

The **vascular system** is not less highly developed (fig. 401). The blood flows from the pulsating dorsal vessel placed in the abdomen, through an anterior aorta into the cephalo-thorax, and thence into lateral arteries, supplying the legs, jaws, brain, and eyes. The blood returns from these organs into the abdomen, bathes the so-called lungs, which are composed of numerous flattened tubes, and then returns to the dorsal vessel through three pairs of lateral slits.

FIG. 403.—Terminal part of the pedipalpus of *Segestria* (♂) with the receptacle of the spermatophores (after Bertkau).

The **ovaries** (fig. 397) are two racemose glands surrounded by the liver; the short oviducts unite to form a single vagina, which is usually connected with two long receptacula seminis and opens on the ventral surface of the anterior part of the abdomen between the anterior stigmata. The **testes** consist of two long coiled canals with a common terminal duct, which likewise opens at the base of the abdomen (fig. 402).

The males are distinguished from the females by the smaller size of the abdomen. The females are always oviparous, and frequently carry their eggs about in special webs (*Theridium*, *Dolomedes*). In the male the pedipalpus is modified to form a copulatory organ; the thickened and excavated terminal joint is spoon-shaped, and possesses a vesicular copulatory appendage with a spirally-twisted fibre (fig. 403). Before copulation the male fills this appendage with sperm, and at the moment of coitus introduces the terminal fibre into the female genital opening (fig. 404). Sometimes the two sexes live peacefully near each other on neighbouring webs, or even for a time on the same web; in other cases the female, which is the stronger animal, lies in wait for the male in the same way as she does for all animals weaker than herself, and does not spare him even during or after copulation; the male, therefore, only approaches her with the greatest caution.

Fig. 404.—Male and female of *Linyphia*, during copulation (after O. Herman).

**Development.**—The segmentation of the ovum is centrolecithal (fig. 107). The embryos possess, in addition to the thoracic appendages, the rudiments of abdominal feet, which subsequently abort (fig. 405). The young, when hatched, already possess the form and appendages of the adult. They are not, however, sufficiently developed before the first moult to spin or to capture prey. It is only after the moult that they become capable of performing these functions, leave the web of the egg membranes, and begin to spin threads and to capture small insects. The threads which we find floating in the air in great numbers in autumn and are known as *gossamer* threads are the work of young Spiders, which raise themselves in the air by their means, and pass the winter in sheltered places.

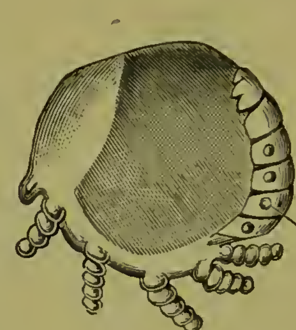



Fig. 405.—Spider embryo (after Balfour). *AF*, Rudiments of abdominal feet.

The habits of spiders are so remarkable that they have for a long time excited the interest of observers. All spiders are predacious, and suck the juices of other insects; nevertheless, the manner in which they get possession of their prey varies much, and often indicates the possession of highly-developed instincts. The so-called vagrant spiders do not, as a rule, form nets to catch their prey, but use the secretion of the spinning glands only to line their hiding-places and to make their ovisacs. They catch their prey either by running after it (fig. 406, *a*), or by springing on it (fig. 406, *b*). Other Spiders (fig. 406, *c*) are indeed able to run quickly, but they render the task of catching prey easier by making webs and nets, on which they move about with great dexterity, while other animals, especially insects, become very easily entangled. The webs themselves are of various kinds, and constructed with more or less skill;

Fig. 406.

*a* — *Dolomedes mirabilis* ♀

*d* — *Salticus scenicus* ♀ — *Thomisus citreus* ♀

*c* — *Tegnearia domestica* ♀

they are either delicate and thin and formed of irregularly arranged threads, or they are of a felt-like quality and extended horizontally; or again, they may have the form of vertically placed wheel-shaped nets; in this case they consist of concentric and radial threads, which are arranged with wonderful regularity, the radial threads meeting in a central point. Tubular or funnel-shaped hiding-places for the spider are often found near the webs. Most spiders rest in the daytime, and go out for prey in the dusk or in the night-time. Many vagrant spiders, however, hunt in the day-time, even when the sun is shining.

1. **Tetrapneumones.** With four lungs and usually with four spinning mammillæ.

Fam. **Mygalidæ.** Large spiders thickly covered with hairs, with four lungs and four spinning mammillæ, of which two are very small. They do not construct true webs, but prepare long tubes in the earth, or line their hiding-places (in clefts in trees or in holes in the earth) with a thick web ; they lie in wait for their prey (at the entrance of their homes), or they may catch it in the open by springing. The claw joints of the chelicerae are bent downwards. *Mygale avicularia* L., the large Bird Spider of South America, lives in a tubular web between stones and in crevices in the bark of trees. *Cteniza cæmentaria* Latr. The trap-door spider in South Europe, lives in tubular holes in the earth, the entrance to which is closed with an operculum, as with a sort of trap-door. *Atypus Sulzeri* Latr., in Central Germany, with six spinning mammillæ.

2. **Dipneumones.** With two lungs and six spinning mammillæ.

Fam. **Saltigradæ.** Springing spiders (fig. 406, *b*) with a large arched cephalo-thorax and eight eyes of unequal size, which are grouped almost in a square. The anterior legs with stout femoral joints serve with the following legs for making the leaps by which these animals catch their prey. They do not construct webs, but spin fine saccular structures in which they remain at night, and later on keep guard over their egg-sacs. *Salticus cupreus*, *formicarius* Koch. *Myrmecia* Latr., in Brazil, resemble ants in form.

Fam. **Citigradæ = Lycosidæ.** Wolf-spiders. With long oval cephalo-thorax, which is narrow anteriorly, but is strongly arched. There are eight eyes, which are usually arranged in three transverse rows. They run about with their long strong legs in pursuit of their prey. By day they are usually concealed beneath stones, in hiding-places, which they line with their webs. The females frequently sit on their egg-sacs, or carry them about on the abdomen, and usually protect the young for some time after they are hatched. *Dolomedes mirabilis* Walk. (fig. 406, *a*). *Lycosa saccata* L., *tarantula* L., the Tarantula Spider of Spain and Italy. It lives in holes in the ground, and its bite, according to the erroneous popular belief, occasions the dancing madness.

Fam. **Laterigradæ = Thomisidæ.** Crab-spiders. With rounded cephalo-thorax and flattened abdomen. The two anterior pairs of legs are longer than the following legs. They only spin isolated threads. They hunt insects beneath leaves running sideways and backwards. *Micrommata smaragdina* Fabr., *Thomisus citreus* Geoffr. (fig. 406, *d*).

Fam. **Tubitelæ.** Tube spinners. With six or eight eyes arranged in two transverse rows, which are usually curved. The two middle pairs of legs are the shortest, the hindermost pair often the longest. They spin for the capture of their prey horizontal webs with tubes in which they lie in wait. *Tegenaria domestica* L. (fig. 406, *c*) (Winkelspinne). Others, as *Agelena labyrinthica* L., construct funnel-shaped webs or, as *Clubiona holosericea* L., saccular receptacles. *Argyroneta aquatica* L., water spiders, with longer anterior pair of legs. The body has a silvery appearance, owing to the numerous air-bubbles which adhere to the hairs with which it is covered. It spins a bell-shaped water-tight web, which it fills with air like a diving-bell and attaches to water-plants.

Fam. **Inæquitelæ.** Web spinners. With eight unequally large eyes arranged in two transverse rows, and long anterior legs. They construct irregular webs, the threads of which cross one another in all directions, and live on their webs. *Theridium sisyphium* Clerck., *Pholcus phalangioides* Walck.

Fam. **Orbitelæ.** Wheel spinners. Head and thorax separated by a furrow; abdomen swollen to a globular form. The eight eyes are arranged rather irregularly in two rows, and the anterior legs are longer than the following legs. The legs of the third pair are the shortest. They spin perpendicularly hanging wheel-shaped webs with concentric and radial threads, and lie in wait in the middle point or in a remote hiding-place, which they surround with a web. *Epeira diadema* L., cross spiders.

FIG. 407.—*Phalangium opilio* ♂ (*cornutum*) (règne animal).

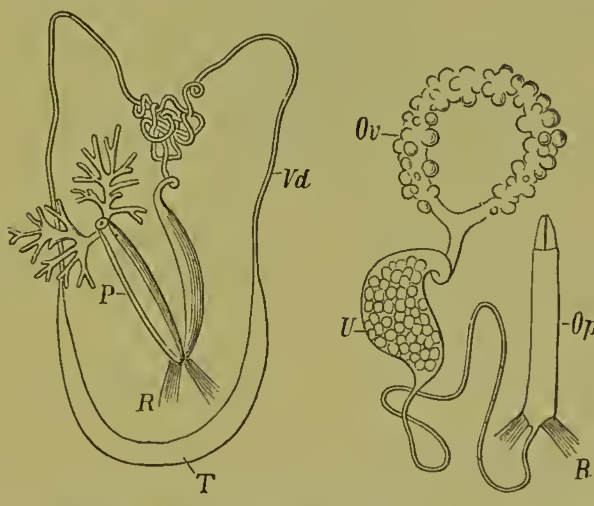



FIG. 408.—Male and female generative organs of *Phalangium opilio* (after Krohn). *T*, Testis; *Vd*, vasa deferentia; *P*, penis with accessory glands; *R*, retractor muscles; *Ov*, ovary; *U*, uterus; *Op*, ovipositor.

## *Order* 4.—PHALANGIIDA.*

*Arachnida with four pairs of long, slender legs, with chelate chelicerœ and segmented abdomen joined by its whole breadth to the cephalo-thorax. They have no spinning glands, and breathe by tracheœ.*

* Meade, "Monograph of the British species of Phalangiidæ," *Ann. of nat. hist.* 2d. Ser. XV., 1845. A. Tulk, "Upon the anatomy of Phalangium opilio," *Ann. of nat. hist.*, XII.. A. Krohn, "Zur näheren Kenntniss der männlichen Zeugungsorgane von Phalangium," *Archiv für Naturgesch.* 1865.

The *Phalangiida* (fig. 407) resemble the true spiders in their general appearance, but differ from them by possessing chelate cheliceræ which are bent downwards, by the form of the abdomen, the tracheal respiration, and the absence of spinning glands. The Pedipalpi are either filiform or pediform, and are armed with claws. The abdomen consists, as a rule, of six or more rarely eight or nine segments, and is joined to the cephalo-thorax by its whole breadth.

The **nervous system** is divided into a brain and a thoracic ganglionic mass, whence arise two visceral nerves which form ganglia in their course on either side. There are two or four simple **eyes.** The organs of **respiration**, which in all cases consist of tracheæ branching within the body, open by a single pair of stigmata, usually beneath the coxa of the last pair of legs. The **heart** consists of a long dorsal vessel divided into three chambers. The **stomach** is provided with a number of cæca, of which the last extend as far as the anus. The **male** as well as the **female** genital opening lies between the posterior pair of legs. In the male a long tubular copulatory organ, and in the female a long ovipositor can be protruded from the opening (fig. 408). The production of ova as well of spermatozoa in the testis, as was observed by Krohn and Treviranus in almost all males, is remarkable.

The *Phalangiidæ* usually conceal themselves during the day and go out at night to capture prey. The South American species are very numerous, and of very strange form.

Fam. **Phalangiidæ.** With characters of the order. *Phalangium opilio* L. (fig. 407). *Gonyleptus horridus* Kirb. To this group also belongs *Cyphophthalmus duricorius* Jos., and the genus *Gibocellum* Steck.

## *Order* 5.—Pedipalpi * (Scorpion-Spiders).

*Arachnida of considerable size; jaws provided with claws, and the anterior pair of the legs elongated, resembling antennæ. The abdomen has eleven or twelve segments, and is clearly marked off from the rest of the body.*

The Scorpion-spiders (fig. 409) are allied both to the Spiders and the Scorpions. The abdomen, which is always separated from the cephalo-thorax by a constricted portion, is divided into a considerable number of segments, but presents no distinction into a broad præ-abdomen and a thin styliform post-abdomen as in the Scorpions.

* H. Lucas, "Essai sur une monographie du genre Thelyphonus," *Magas. de Zool.*, 1835. J. v. d. Hoeven, "Bijdragen tot de kennis van het geslacht Phrynus," *Tijdschr. voor nat. Geschied.* IX., 1842.

In the genus *Thelyphonus*, however, which is most closely allied to the Scorpions, the three last segments of the abdomen are narrowed to the form of a short tube, the end of which is prolonged into a long-jointed appendage. The cheliceræ are always provided with claws, and probably, as in the spiders, contain a poison gland, since the bite of these animals is much feared. The Pedipalpi, on the other hand, are sometimes of considerable strength and armed with a claw and several spines (*Phrynus*). Sometimes (*Thelyphonus*) they are, as in the Scorpions, chelate. The legs of the anterior pair are always very long and thin, and end with a flagelliform ringed portion. There are eight **eyes**, of which the two largest are placed

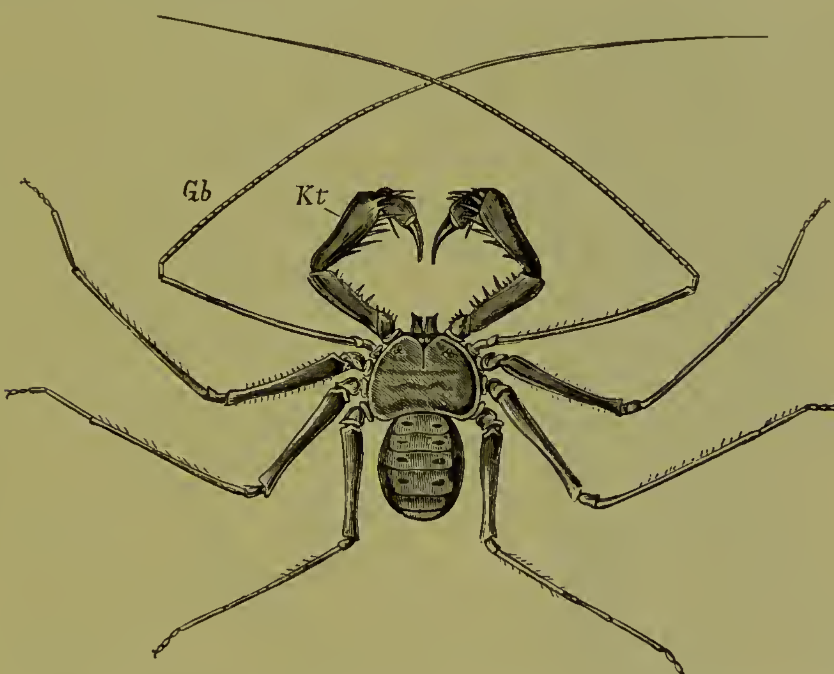



FIG. 409.—Phrynus reniformis (règne animal). *Kt*, Pedipalpi; *Gb*, flagelliform anterior leg.

in the middle of the cephalo-thoracic shield, while the three smaller pairs are situated on each side behind the frontal margin. They breathe by means of four **lung sacs**, composed of a very large number of lamellar tubes. The slit-like openings of the lung sacs lie on either side of the posterior margin of the second and third abdominal segments. In the structure of the **alimentary canal** they resemble the Scorpions, in that of the **nervous system** the Spiders. The genus *Phrynus* is viviparous. All the *Pedipalpi* live in the tropics of the Old and New World.

Fam. **Phrynidæ.** With the characters of the order. *Phrynus* Oliv. The large broad pedipalpi are armed with a number of spines and end with a claw. The masticating blades are free. The abdomen is flat and relatively short, and has eleven segments and no jointed anal filament. *Ph. reniformis* Latr., in Brazil. *Thelyphonus* Latr. The chelicerae are short and end in a chela, their masticating blades fuse in the middle line. The elongated twelve-ringed abdomen with segmented anal filament. *T. caudatus* Fabr., in Java.

## *Order* 6.—Scorpionidea* (Scorpions).

*Arachnida with chelate cheliceræ, and elongated, pediform chelate pedipalpi, with a præ-abdomen composed of seven segments, and an elongated post-abdomen of six segments, with poison spine at the hind end; with four pairs of lungs.*

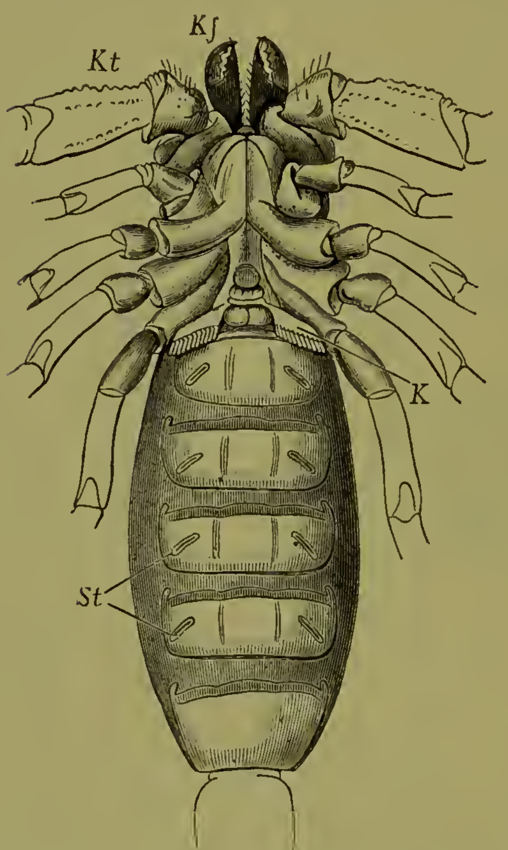



Fig. 410.—Cephalo-thorax and præ-abdomen of *Scorpio africanus* (règne animal). *Kf*, Cheliceræ; *Kt*, pedipalpi; *K*, pectines; *St*, stigmata.

The Scorpions have a certain resemblance to the *Decapod* Crustacea in their powerful chelate pedipalpi and firm armour (fig. 410). The stout cephalo-thorax is joined to an elongated abdomen, which is divided into a cylindrical præ-abdomen, composed of seven segments, and a very narrow six-segmented post-abdomen, which is curved dorsalwards. The post-abdomen ends with a curved poison spine, which is provided with two poison glands. The cheliceræ are three-jointed and chelate; the pedipalpi end with a swollen terminal chela, while the basal joint serves with its broad grinding surface as a jaw. The four pairs of legs are strongly developed and end with double claws.

In their internal organization the Scorpions reach the highest

* P. Gervais, "Remarques sur la famille des Scorpions et description de plusieurs espèces nouvelles, etc." *Arch. du musée d'hist. nat.*, IV. Newport, "On the structure, relations, and development of the nervous and circulatory Systems in Myriapoda and macrourous Arachnida." *Phil. Trans.* 1843. L. Dufour, "Histoire anatomiqué et physiologique des Scorpions." *Mém. près à l'acad. des sciences*, XIV., 1856. E. Metschnikoff, "Embryologie des Scorpions," *Zeitschr für wiss., Zool.*, 1870.

grade of all the *Arachnida.* The **nervous system** is composed of a bilobed brain, a large oval ganglionic mass in the thorax, and seven to eight smaller ganglionic swellings in the abdomen, of which the last four belong to the post-abdomen. The visceral nervous system is represented by a small ganglion, which is placed at the beginning of the œsophagus, connected with the brain by fibres and gives off nerves to the alimentary canal. The principal organs of sense are the **simple eyes.** Of these there are from three to six pairs, which are so distributed that the largest pair is situated on the middle of the cephalo-thorax, and the others right and left at the sides of the frontal region.

The **alimentary canal** is a narrow straight tube, which is surrounded in the præ-abdomen by the large multilobed liver, and opens on the penultimate ring of the abdomen. Two Malpighian vessels function as excretory organs.

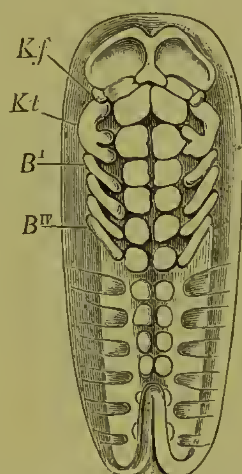


FIG. 411.—Embryo of a Scorpion (after E. Metschnikoff). *Kf*, Cheliceræ; *Kt*, pedipalpi; *B*i to *B*iv, the four pairs of thoracic legs. There are rudimentary limbs on the abdomen.

The **circulation** is the most complicated in the whole class, but, as in the *Decapoda*, special blood sinuses of the body cavity are inserted into the vascular system. The elongated dorsal-vessel, which is divided into eight chambers and is attached by alary muscles, is surrounded by a pericardial sinus, from which it receives the blood through eight pairs of slit-like openings, which are capable of being closed. From the heart the blood is driven through an anterior and posterior artery, and through lateral arteries to the organs. The finer ends of the arteries seem to be connected with the commencing veins by capillaries. From the veins the blood is collected in a receptacle on the ventral surface. Thence the blood passes to the respiratory organs, whence it passes by special veins into the pericardial sinus, and so back to the heart. **Respiration** is effected by means of four pairs of lung sacs, which open to the exterior by four pairs of stigmata on the third to the sixth abdominal segments and are composed of a relatively small number of flat tubes.

The male and female **generative organs** open on the ventral face of the first abdominal segment [the median opening being covered by a small valve-like flap, the genital operculum]; on the second abdominal segment are attached two peculiar comb-shaped structures, known as pectines. The latter are probably the remains of the appendages of the segment, and serve as tactile organs. The males are distinguished from the females by their broader chelæ and longer post-abdomen.

The females are viviparous. The development of the ovum takes place in the ovary, and the embryos have the rudiments of appendages on the præ-abdomen (fig. 411).

The Scorpions live in warm countries, and leave their hiding-places at dusk. When they run, the post-abdomen is bent upwards over the back. They seize their prey, *i.e.*, principally spiders and large insects, with their large chelate pedipalps, and sting them to death with their caudal poison-spine. Some species attain a very considerable size, and their sting may even prove fatal to man.

Fam. **Scorpionidæ.** *Scorpio europæus* Schr., of small size and with only six eyes, in Italy. *Androctonus occitanus* Am., *Buthus afer* L.

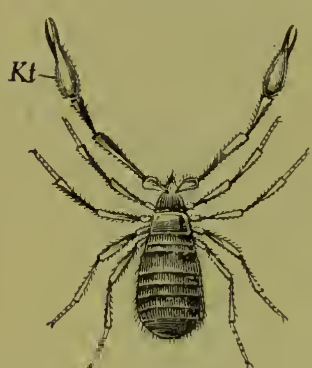



FIG. 412.—*Obisium trombidioides* (règne animal). *Kt*, Pedipalpus.

### *Order* 7.—PSEUDOSCORPIONIDEA.*

*Arachnida of small size and resembling scorpions, but without caudal spine or poison gland. They breathe by means of tracheæ.*

The Pseudoscorpions are far smaller and more simply organised than the scorpions. They bear much the same relation to the true scorpions that the mites do to the spiders. In their form and the structure of their chelicerae and chelate pedipalpi they resemble the scorpions. On the other hand, the hind end of the segmented abdomen does not become narrow so as to form a post-abdomen, and is without a caudal spine and poison gland (fig. 412). They all possess spinning glands, the openings of which lie near the genital openings on the second abdominal ring. They possess only two or four ocelli, and respire by means of tracheæ, which open by two pairs of stigmata on the two first abdominal rings. They live beneath the bark of trees, in moss, between the leaves of old books,

* W. E. Leach, "On the characters of Scorpionidea with description of the British species of Chelifer and Obisium," *Zool. Miscell.* III. A. Menge, "Ueber die Scheerenspinnen," *Neueste Schriften der naturforsch. Gesellschaft zu Danzig* V., 1855. L. Koch, "Uebersichtliche Darstellung der europ. Chernetiden." Nürnberg, 1873.

etc.; they run rapidly laterally and backwards, and live on mites and small insects.

Fam. **Chernetidæ.** *Chelifer cancroides* L. Book-scorpion with two eyes. *Obisium ischnoscceles* Herm., with four eyes. *Chthonius trombidioides* Latr. (fig. 412).

## *Order* 8.—Solifugæ.*

*Spider-like animals with separated head and thorax, with elongated, segmented abdomen; sub-chelate cheliceræ and pediform pedipalpi. Respiration is effected by means of tracheæ.*

The *Solifugæ* approach insects in the segmentation of the body. The cephalo-thorax is divided into two regions of which the anterior is comparable to the insect head, the posterior (composed of three segments) to the insect thorax. The long cylindrical abdominal region, which is composed of nine to ten segments, is quite distinct (fig. 413). The body is closely covered with hairs. The oral apparatus consists of powerful cheliceræ, which end in a large vertically placed chela, the lower arm of which can be moved perpendicularly against the upper. The pedipalpi serve as ambulatory legs, but are without claws, which are found only on the three posterior pairs of legs. The latter arise from the three free thoracic rings, and bear peculiar cutaneous lamellæ at their base. The anterior pair of legs belongs to the head and may be considered as a second pair of pedipalpi (maxillary palps). The *Solifugæ* possess two large projecting simple eyes, and respire like insects by

Fig. 413.—*Galeodes araneoides* (règne animal).

* L. Dufour, "Anatomie, physiologie et histoire naturelle des Galéodes," *Comptes rendus d l'acad. des sciences.* XLVI., 1858. Th. Hutton, "Observations on the habits of a large species of Galeodes," *Ann. and Mag. of Nat. Hist.*, XII., 1843.

means of tracheæ, which open to the exterior by four slit-like openings between the first and second pair of thoracic appendages and on the ventral surface of the abdomen. They live in warm, sandy localities, especially of the Old World. They are nocturnal in their habits, and are feared on account of their bite.

Fam. **Solpugidæ.** *Solpuga* (*Galeodes*) *araneoides* Pall., found on the steppes of the Volga and in South Russia. Other larger species are found in Africa, and some forms are known in America.

## Class III.—ONYCHOPHORA * (PROTOTRACHEATA).

*Tracheata with elongated vermiform body, two antennæ, and short paired imperfectly-jointed legs armed with claws.*

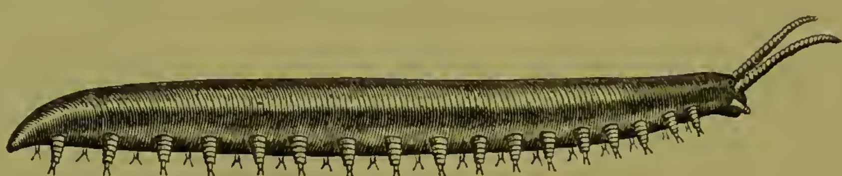


FIG. 414.—*Peripatus capensis* (after Moseley).

The *Onychophora*, which are represented by the single genus *Peripatus*, have a moderately elongated body, which is provided with paired legs (from fourteen to more than thirty pairs), each armed with two small claws (fig. 414). The head is distinct, and bears a pair of antennæ and two simple eyes. On its under surface the mouth is placed beneath a large projecting suctorial lip, and is furnished with a pair of jaws armed with chitinous claws. On each side of the mouth short, indistinctly jointed oral papillæ are attached to the sides of the head. The **nervous system** is distinguished by the remarkable separation of its two halves. The paired cerebral ganglion gives off two nerve trunks, which indeed approach each other closely

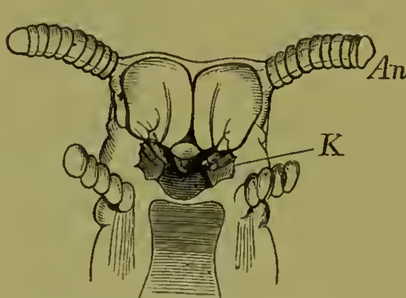



FIG. 415.—Head of a Peripatus embryo (after Moseley). *An*, Antennæ; *K*. jaws, anterior to which are the ectoderm thickenings, which will form the brain.

* E. Grube, "Ueber den Bau des Peripatus Edwardsii." *Müller's Archiv.*, 1853. Moseley, "On the Structure and Development of Peripatus capensis." *Phil. Trans.*, 1875. [F. M. Balfour, "On the Structure and Development of Peripatus Capensis," *Quart. Journ. of Mic. Science*, 1883.]

beneath the œsophagus, but, soon diverging, remain widely separate for the rest of their course. They are without ganglionic swellings; are connected together in their whole length by fine transverse commissures, and finally unite with each other over the rectum at the end of the body (fig. 416). The **alimentary canal** begins with a muscular pharynx, and runs in a straight course. The anus is terminal. A dorsal longitudinal vessel probably functions as **heart.** [A pair of elongated unbranched glandular tubes, the salivary glands, open into the buccal cavity.] Moseley discovered a well-developed **tracheal system,** the stigmata of which are distributed over the whole surface of the body. The tracheal trunks are delicate tubes, which are distributed upon the viscera in fine tufts. Long slime glands (considered as testes by Grube) open on the oral papillæ; they produce an exceedingly sticky fluid, which the animal ejects when irritated. The *Onychophora* are, according to Moseley, of separate sexes. The **ovaries** are united to form one structure placed in the middle line on the dorsal side of the intestine, near the hind end of the body. There are two long oviducts, which function as uterus and open by a common aperture on the ventral surface close to the hind end of the body (fig. 416). The **testes** are paired and egg-shaped, and lie towards the hind end of the body. The vasa deferentia are coiled and unite to form a common duct, which opens at the same place as do the female organs (fig 417). The eggs develop in the uterus.

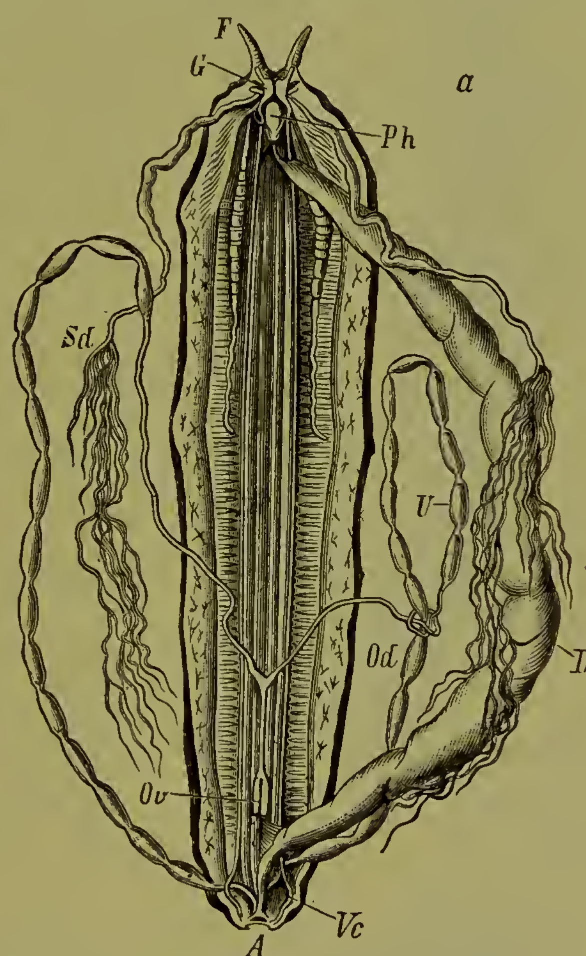



Fig. 416.—Anatomy of a female *Peripatus* (after Moseley). *F*, Antennæ; *G*, brain with the ventral nerve cords (*Vc*); *Ph*, pharynx; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus; *Sd*, slime gland; *Ov*, ovaries; *Od*, oviduct; *U*, uterus.

[**Segmental organs** or nephridia, resembling those of Annelids, are found one pair in each segment. They open externally at the base of the legs and internally into the body cavity. The body cavity is divided into four parts by three septa—(1) into a dorsal section containing the dorsal vessel, (2) a main central division containing the alimentary canal, slime glands and generative organs; and (3) two lateral compartments, which are continued into the legs and contain the salivary glands, segmental organs and ventral nerve cords.]

The animals live in damp places beneath decaying wood. [They are viviparous; in Peripatus Capensis the period of gestation is eleven or twelve months, the young being born in April and May.]

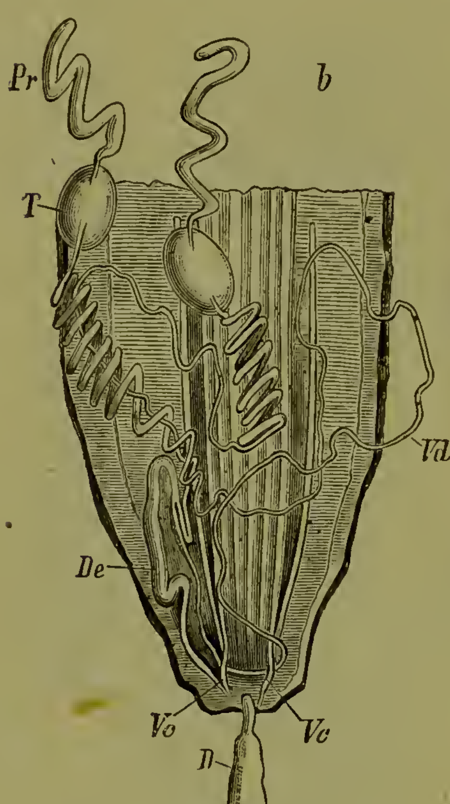


FIG. 417.—Hind end of a male *Peripatus* (after Moseley). *T*, Testes; *Pr*, prostate gland; *Vd*, vasa deferentia; *Dc*, ductus ejaculatorius; *D*, rectum; *Vc*, ventral nerve trunks.

Fam. **Peripatidæ**. *Peripatus Edwardsii* Blanch., *P. capensis* Gr.

## Class IV.—MYRIAPODA.*

*Tracheata with separated head and numerous fairly similar segments. They have one pair of antennæ, three pairs of jaws, and numerous pairs of legs.*

The Myriapoda of all the *Arthropoda* present the greatest resemblance to the Annelids, in the serial similarity of the segments, in the possession of an elongated, sometimes cylindrical, sometimes flattened body, and in the mode of locomotion. In fact, they bear much the same relation to the Annelids that the Snakes do to the vermiform fishes amongst the Vertebrata.

* J. F. Brandt, "Recueil des mémoires relatifs à l'ordre des Insectes Myriapodes," St. Petersbourg, 1841. G. Newport, "On the organs of reproduction and the development of the Myriapoda," *Phil. Trans.*, 1841. Koch. "System der Myriapoden, Regensburg, 1847. M. Fabre, "Recherches sur l'anatomie des organs reproducteurs et sur développment des Myriapodes," *Ann. des. Sc. Nat.*, IV. Sér., Tom. III. Fr. Meinert, "Danmarks Chilognather," *Naturh. Tidsskrift*, 3 R., Tom, V.; and "Scolopendrer og Lithobier," *Ibid.*, Tom. V. 1868. Latzel, "Die Myriopoden der österreichisch-ungarischen Monarchie" I.. "Die Chilopoden," Wien, 1880. Erich Haase, "Schlesiens Chilopoden," Breslau, 1880, 1881.

The head of the Myriapods corresponds closely with that of the Insects, and, like the latter, bears a pair of antennæ, the eyes, and two or in the *Chilopoda* three pairs of jaws. The antennæ are placed on the frontal region, and are usually filiform or setiform. The strongly-toothed mandibles resemble those of Insects, and, like the latter, are without palps. The maxillæ in the Chilognatha have the form of a complicated lobed oral valve (fig. 427 *b*), the parts of which were formerly supposed to represent two pairs of maxillæ fused together; while in the *Chilopoda* they consist of a single blade bearing a short palp (fig. 425). In rare cases the mouth parts are transformed into a suctorial apparatus (*Polyzonium*).

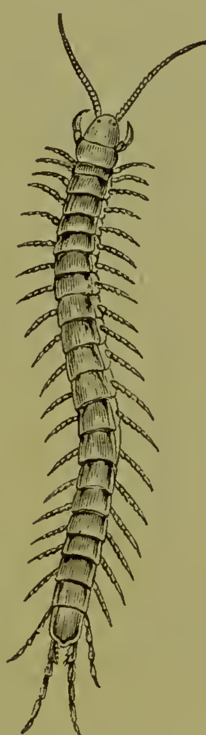


Fig. 418. — *Scolopendra morsitans.*

The body is composed of similar and distinctly separated segments, the number of which varies considerably in different species, but is usually constant for the same species. The segments bear paired appendages, and a strong dorsal and ventral plate (tergum and sternum) may often be distinguished. Although the segments of the body are so much alike that it is impossible to fix a limit between thorax and abdomen, still certain features of the internal organisation, especially the fusion of the three first ganglia of the ventral chain, show that we must regard the three anterior body segments at least of the *Chilognatha* as constituting a thorax. In the *Chilognatha* a single pair of legs is attached to each of the first three to five body segments; each of the following segments, on the other hand, bears

Fig. 419.—*Iulus terrestris* (after C. L. Koch).

almost invariably two pairs, so that they may be regarded as double segments, formed by the fusion of two somites. The legs may be attached to the sides of the somites (*Chilopoda*), or nearer the middle line of the ventral surface (*Chilognatha*), and are usually short with from six to seven joints, and terminate with claws (figs. 418 and 419).

In their internal structure the Myriapods closely resemble the

Insects. The **nervous system** is distinguished by the great elongation of the ventral ganglionic cord, which runs along the whole length of the body and is swollen in each segment to form a ganglion. According to Newport, there is a system of paired and unpaired visceral nerves, like those of Insects. **Eyes** are only rarely wanting, and are usually present as ocelli which are sometimes closely packed together, or rarely (*Scutigera*) as peculiarly-formed facetted eyes.

The **alimentary canal**, with rare exceptions (*Glomeris*), takes a straight course through the entire length of the body, and opens by the anus in the last segment. The following parts can be distinguished :—a narrow *œsophagus* beginning with the buccal cavity and, as in Insects, receiving the contents of two to six tubular salivary glands ; a wide, very long *mesenteron*, the surface of which is closely beset with short hepatic tubes projecting into the body cavity ; a *hind gut*, which receives two or four Malpighian tubules, the latter being coiled round the intestine ; and finally a short and wide rectum.

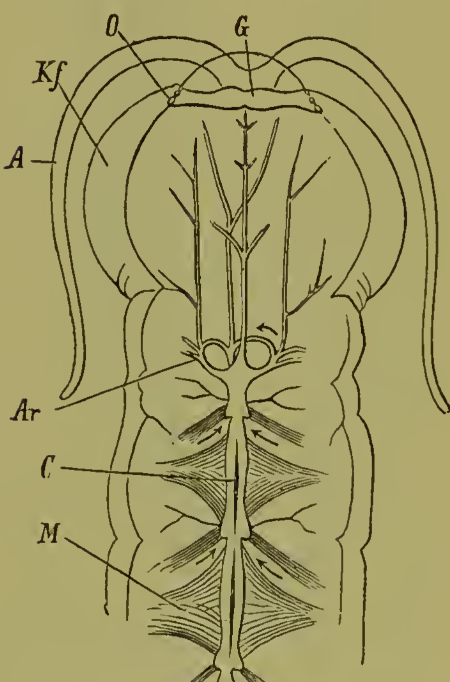


Fig. 420.—Head and anterior segments of *Scolopendra* (after Newport). *G*. brain ; *O*, eyes ; *A*, antennæ ; *Kf*, maxilliped (poison-claw) ; *C*, heart ; *M*, alary muscles of the heart; *Ar*, arteries.

The central organ of the circulation is a long pulsating **dorsal vessel**, which extends through all the segments of the body (fig. 420). It is divided into a great number of chambers, which correspond to the segmentation and, in *Scolopendra*, are attached to the dorsal wall by alary muscles to the right and left (fig. 420, *M*). The blood passes from the body cavity through lateral paired slits into the chambers of the heart, and is thence driven, partly through paired lateral arteries and partly through an anterior cephalic aorta which divides into three branches, to the organs of the body cavity, from which a blood sinus, embracing the ventral ganglionic chain, is separated off.

All *Myriapods* breathe by means of **tracheæ**. These, as in Insects, receive the air from the exterior through paired slits, which are found in almost every segment (sometimes beneath the basal joints of the limbs, sometimes in the connecting membranes between the sterna and terga); and they give off bunches of tracheæ, which branch and are distributed to all the organs.

**Generative organs.**—The *Myriapoda* are diœcious. The ovaries and testes usually have the form of long unpaired tubes, while their ducts are often paired and are always connected with accessory glands, and in the female are sometimes provided with a double receptaculum seminis (fig. 421). The genital openings lie on either side on the coxal joints of the second pair of legs, or behind this pair of appendages (*Chilognatha*), or, as in the *Chilopoda*, there is an unpaired genital opening at the posterior end of the body (fig. 422).

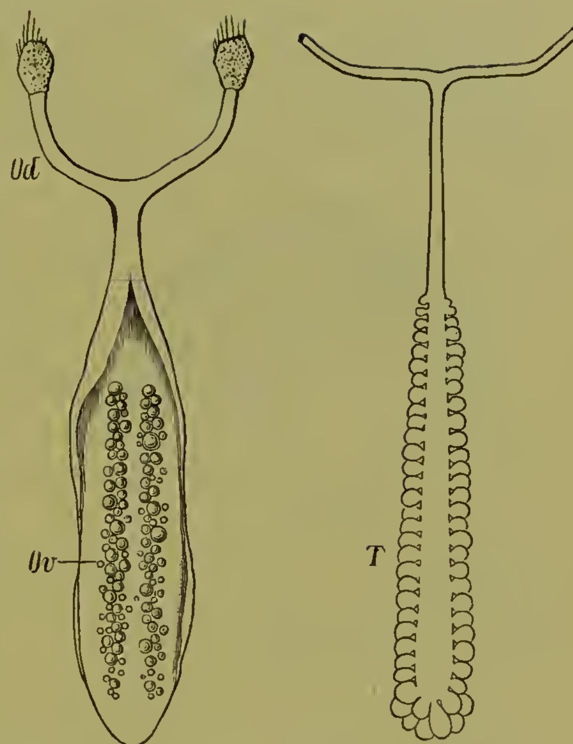



Fig. 421.—Generative organs of *Glomeris marginata* (after Fabre). *T*, Testis; *Ov*, ovaries; *Od*, Oviduct.

In the male sex amongst the *Chilognatha* there are often external copulatory organs* on the 7th segment, remote from the genital openings. These become full of sperm before copulation, and during the coitus introduce it into the female genital opening.

**Development.**—The females are usually larger than the males, and lay

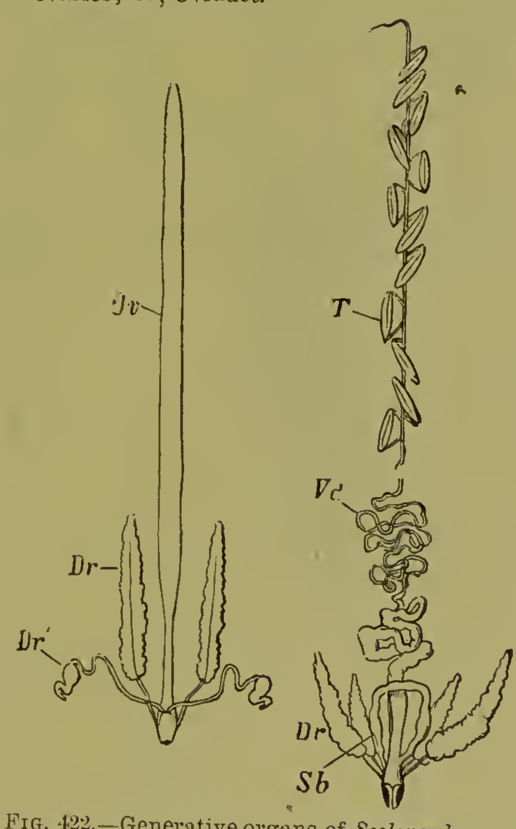



Fig. 422.—Generative organs of *Scolopendra complanata* (after Fabre). *T*, Testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Dr*, accessory glands; *Sb*, loop of the vesicula seminalis; *Ov*, ovary.

* Besides Fabre l.c., compare Voges, "Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Juliden," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom XXXI., 1878.

their eggs in earth. The just-hatched young often pass through a metamorphosis, having at first only three or seven pairs of legs in addition to the antennæ, and a few somites without limbs (fig. 423). The young animals undergo numerous moults, and gradually increase in size; the extremities sprout out on the somites, which are already present. New somites are constricted off from the terminal one until the full number is completed; the number of ocelli and of the joints of the antennæ is increased, and the resemblance to the sexual animal is gradually perfected. In other cases (*Scolopendra*, *Geophilidæ*) the embryo already possesses the full number of appendages.

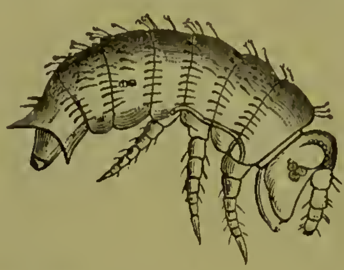


FIG. 423.—Embryo of *Strongylosoma* (after E. Metschnikoff).

### *Order* 1.—CHILOPODA.*

*Myriapoda of usually flattened form, with long many-jointed antennæ, and mouth parts adapted for predatory habits, with only one pair of appendages to each segment.*

The body is long and usually flattened. The chitinous exoskeleton is hardened on the dorsal and ventral surface of each somite, constituting the tergal and sternal plates, while on the sides of the somites it remains soft. In certain forms some of the terga develop to large shields, which over-lap the smaller terga of the intermediate somites (fig. 424). The number of legs is never greater than that of the separate segments, a single pair only being developed on each segment. The antennæ are long and many-jointed, and are inserted beneath the frontal margin. The eyes are simple or aggregated ocelli, except in the genus *Scutigera* which has facetted

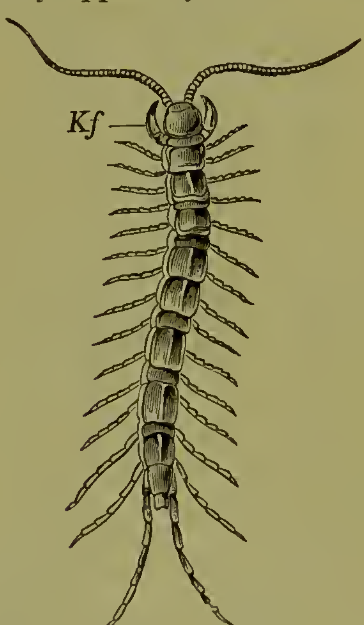



FIG. 424.—*Lithobius forficatus* (after C. L. Koch). *Kf*, Poison claws.

* Newport, "Monograph of the Class Myriapoda. order Chilopoda," *Linnæan Transactions*, XIX.

eyes. There are always two pairs of jaws (fig. 425); the mandibles (*Md*) and one pair of maxillæ (*Mx'*), the latter bearing a short palp. In addition, the first pair of (thoracic) legs (*Mx''*) forms a kind of underlip which often bears two long palps. The next pair of legs always approaches the head as a kind of maxilliped, and forms by the growing together of its basal parts a considerable median plate, on the right and left of which great four-jointed poison claws (*Mf*) project. The remaining appendages arise from the sides of the body segments, the last pair being frequently elongated so as to project backwards far behind the last segment.

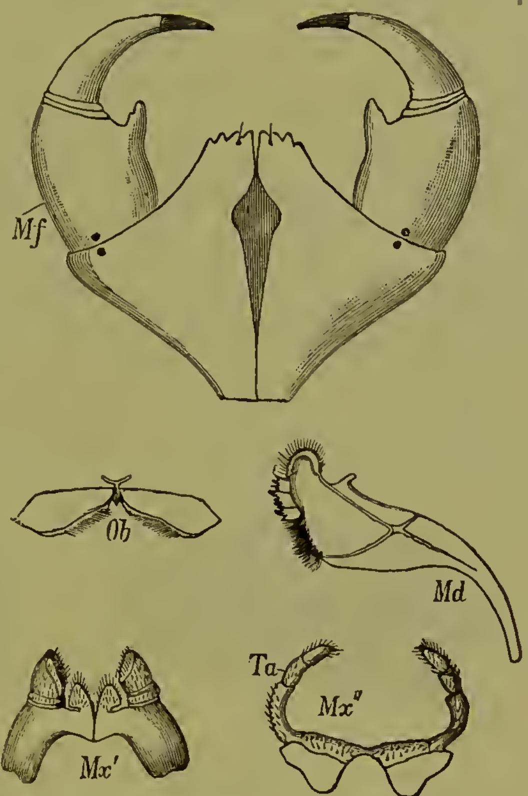


FIG. 425.—Oral apparatus of *Scolopendra mutica* (after Stein). *Ob*, Upper-lip; *Md*, mandibles; *Mx'*, maxilla; *Mx''*, first pair of legs or second maxillæ; *Mf*, poison claws (maxilliped); *Ta*, pulp.

The generative organs open by a single aperture at the hind end of the body. There is no male copulatory apparatus. The young, when hatched, have seven pairs (*Lithobius*) or the entire number of appendages (*Scolopendra*). The Chilopoda feed entirely on animals, which they bite with the poison claws and kill by the secretion of the poison gland which flows into the wound. Certain tropical species of large size are able to inflict wounds which are dangerous even to man.

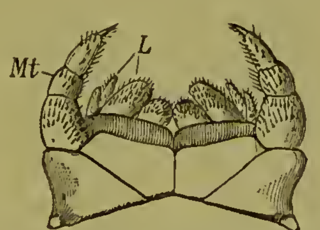


FIG. 426.—Mouth parts of *Geophilus* (Carus, *Icones*). *K*, Maxillæ; *Mf*, maxilliped.

Fam. **Scolopendridæ.** Antennæ long and thin with a relatively small number of joints, only a few ocelli. The segments of the body are sometimes equal, sometimes unequal. *Scolopendra* (with nine pairs of stigmata) *gigantea* L., found in the East Indies. *Sc. morsitans*, from South Europe. *Geophilus subterraneus*, *electricus* L.

Fam. **Lithobiidæ.** With long, many-jointed antennæ and numerous ocelli. Some of the terga are greatly developed, and partially over-lap those of the intermediate segments. *Lithobius forficatus* L., with fifteen pairs of legs.

Fam. **Scutigeridæ.** The antennæ are at least as long as the body. The legs are long, their length increasing from before backwards. Facetted eyes instead of ocelli. With a small number of free terga. *Scutigera coleoptrata* L., South Germany and Italy.

## *Order* 2.—Chilognatha.

*The shape of the body is cylindrical or subcylindrical. There is a four-lobed plate behind the mandibles, and two pairs of legs on each segment (the anterior segments excepted). The genital openings are on the coxal joint of the second pair of legs.*

The body of the *Chilognatha* is, as a rule, cylindrical or subcylindrical. The segments have the form of complete rings, or are provided with special dorsal plates. In many cases (*Julidæ*) the body is much elongated; in others (*Glomeris*) it is short, like that of a wood-louse (fig. 427). The antennæ are short, and consist only of seven joints, of which the last may abort. The mandibles are provided with broad masticating surfaces, which serve to crush the

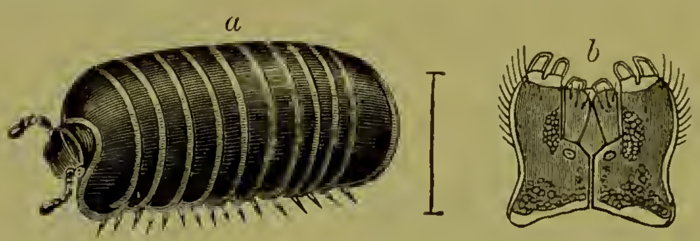



Fig. 427.—*a*, *Glomeris marginata* (after C. L. Koch). *b*, Maxillæ (inferior buccal plate) of *Julus terrestris*.

vegetable matters on which the animals feed, and with an upper movably articulated pointed tooth. The maxillæ are united so as to form an inferior buccal plate, the sides of which bear two rudimentary hook-shaped blades (fig. 427, *b*), while the middle portion appears to represent the underlip. The eyes, which as a rule consist of aggregated simple eyes, are situated above and external to the antennæ. The anterior thoracic legs are as a rule directed forwards towards the mouth. The three thoracic segments, and sometimes the next two or three segments, bear a single pair of legs. All the others, except the seventh in the male, bear two pairs. *Stigmata* are present in all the segments, and are more or less hidden beneath the coxal joints of the limbs. The rows of pores (*foramina repugnatoria*) on either side of the back, which are often taken for rows of stigmata, are the openings of cutaneous glands, and secrete a corroding fluid for the protection of the animal. The generative organs open on the coxal joint of the second pair of legs, and in the male sex there is also a paired copulatory organ present on the seventh segment of the body, at some distance from the genital openings. In *Glomeris*, this copulatory organ seems to be replaced by two accessory pairs of appendages on the anal segment. The young possess at first only three pairs of legs, and the metamorphosis would therefore seem to be more complete than in the Chilopods.

The Chilognatha live in damp places, beneath stones on the ground, and feed on vegetable and dead animal matters. Many of them roll themselves up into a ball like the woodlice or into a spiral.

Fam. **Polyzonidæ.** With small head and subcylindrical body which can be rolled up into a spiral, and suctorial mouth parts. *Polyzonium germanicum* Brdt.

Fam. **Julidæ.** The head is large and free. The eyes are mostly aggregated together; with cylindrical body, which can be rolled up in a spiral; without broad dorsal plates. The limbs meet together in the middle ventral line. *Julus sabulosus* L.

Fam. **Polydesmidæ.** With large free head and laterally extended dorsal plates. The number of somites is small. *Polydesmus complanatus* Deg., *Polyxenus lagurus* L., with twelve pairs of legs. *Pauropus Huxleyi* Lubb.

Fam. **Glomeridæ.** The body is short and broad, and can be rolled up into a ball. There are only twelve to thirteen segments, which possess dorsal plates. The last ring of the body is shield-like. They remind one of the genus *Armadillo*. *Glomeris marginata* Leach., with seventeen pairs of legs; in the male there are in addition two pairs of genital appendages at the hinder end of the body. *Sphærotherium elongatum* Brdt.

## Class V.—HEXAPODA * = INSECTA.

*Tracheata with two antennæ on the head, and with three pairs of legs and usually two pairs of wings on the thorax, which latter is composed of three segments; the abdomen has nine or ten segments.*

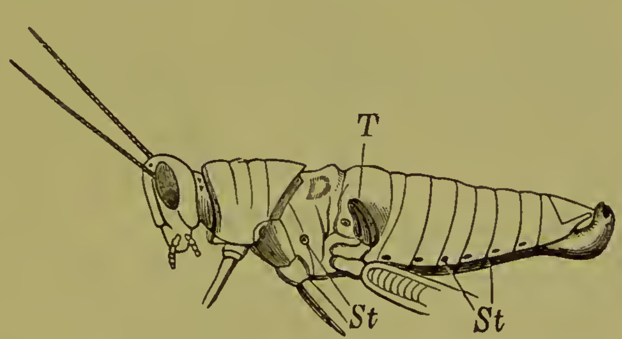



FIG. 428.—Head, thorax and abdomen of an *Acridium* seen from the side. *St*, Stigmata; *T*, tympanic organ.

* J. Swammerdam, "Historia Insectorum generalis," Utrecht, 1669. J. Swammerdam, "Bijbel der natuure," 1737-1738. Réaumur, "Memoires pour servir à l'histoire des Insectes," 12 vols., Paris, 1734-1742. Ch. Bonnet, "Traité d'Insectologie," 2 vols., Paris, 1740. A. Rösel von Rosenhof, "Insectenbelustigungen," Nürnberg, 1746 to 1761. Ch. de Geer, "Mémoires pour servir à l'histoire des Insectes," 8 vols., 1752 to 1776. H. Burmeister, "Handbuch der Entomologie," Halle, 1832.

The separation of the body into the three regions known as head, thorax and abdomen is more distinctly marked in Insects than in any other of the *Articulata*. The number of somites and appendages appears to be constant; the head, with its four pairs of appendages, being composed of four segments, the thorax of three, the abdomen usually of nine or ten (eleven) (*Orthoptera*) (fig. 428). The anterior abdominal segment, however, not unfrequently takes part in the formation of the thorax.

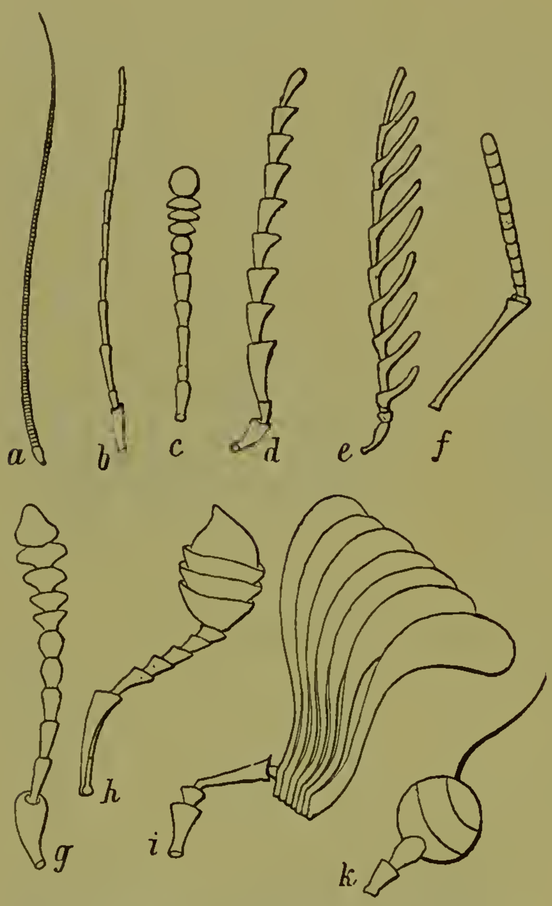



FIG. 429.—Different forms of antennæ (after Burmeister). *a*, Bristle-like antenna of *Locusta*; *b*, filiform antenna of *Carabus*; *c*, moniliform antenna of *Tenebrio*; *d*, dentate of *Elater*; *e*, pectinate antenna of *Ctenicera*; *f*, crooked antenna of *Apis*; *g*, club-shaped of *Silpha*; *h*, knobbed of *Necrophorus*; *i*, lamellated of *Melolontha*; *k*, antenna with bristle from *Sargus*.

The **head**, which is almost always sharply marked off from the thorax, is formed of an unsegmented capsule, in which different regions may be distinguished. These regions have been named, face, forehead, cheeks, throat, skull, etc. after the parts of the Vertebrate head. The upper side of the head bears the eyes laterally, and the antennæ, while on the under part the three pairs of oral appendages are inserted round the mouth. The anterior appendages, the antennæ, are in Insects formed of a simple row of segments, but vary much in form and size. They usually arise from the frontal region, and serve not only as tactile organs, but also as organs of smell. We can distinguish between *regular* antennæ (where all the joints are alike) and *irregular* antennæ (fig. 429). The first may be bristle-like, filiform, moniliform, dentate, or pectinate; the irregular antennæ, in which the second joint and terminal joints are especially liable to modification, are most frequently club-shaped, knobbed, lobed, or crooked. In the last case the first or second joint is elongated forming the shaft, to which the distal and shorter joints are attached at an angle as the flagellum (*Apis*).

The following structures enter into the formation of the mouth parts :—the upper lip (*labrum*), the upper jaws (*mandibles*), the first pair of maxillæ or lower jaws, the second pair of maxillæ or lower lip (*labium*). The upper lip is a plate, which is usually movably articulated to the cephalic shield and covers the mouth from above. Beneath the upper lip to the right and left are the mandibles or upper jaws, in the form of two *palpless* biting plates; they are unjointed, and therefore more powerful as masticatory organs. The first pair of maxillæ or lower jaws have a more complicated structure. They are composed of several joints, and are, therefore, adapted for less powerful but more varied movements in aid of the masticatory process.

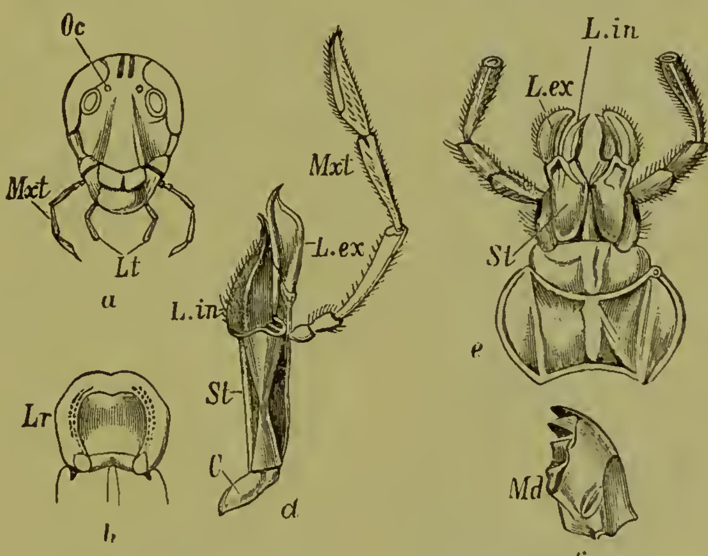



FIG. 430.—Mouth parts of a *Blatta* (after Savigny). *a*, Head seen from the front: *Oc*, ocelli; *Mxt*, maxillary palp; *Lt*, labial palp. *b*, Upper lip (labrum, *Lr*). *c*, Mandible (*Md*). *d*, 1st maxilla: *C*, Cardo; *St*, stipes; *L. in*, lobus internus; *L. ex*, Lobus externus. *e*, 2nd maxillæ or labium (lower lip), clearly composed of two halves.

The maxillæ of the first pair (fig. 430) are made up of the following parts : — a short basal joint (*cardo*, *C*), a longer second joint or shaft (*stipes*, *St*) with an external scale (*squama palpigera*), to which is attached a many-jointed palp (*palpus maxillaris*, *Mxt.*). Two blades, an internal and external, are attached to the distal end of the second joint [and known respectively as *lacinia* and *galea*] (*lobus externus*, *internus*, *L. in*, *L. ex*). The maxillæ of the second pair arise from the throat, and are partially fused together across the middle line so as to form the unpaired lower lip or *labium*. It is rarely the case that all the parts of the first maxillæ are discernible in the labium, the fusion being generally accompanied by the reduction and disappearance of certain parts. There are, however, cases in which all the elements of the first maxillæ can be shown to exist (*Orthop-*

*tera*, fig. 430). While the labium is usually reduced to a simple plate with two lateral palps (*palpi labiales*), in the *Orthoptera* we can distinguish a proximal piece (*submentum*), fixed to the throat, from a second piece, bearing the two palps (*mentum*), at the point of which there is a piece, the tongue (*glossa*) (fig. 430, *e*, *L. in*), and sometimes secondary pieces, the *paraglossæ* (*L. ex*). The submentum evidently corresponds to the fused basal joints (cardo), the mentum to the fused shafts (stipes), the simple or bifid glossa to the lobus internus, and the paraglossæ to the lobus externus of the first maxillæ. Median projections on the internal surface of the upper and lower lips are distinguished as *epipharynx* and *hypopharynx* respectively.

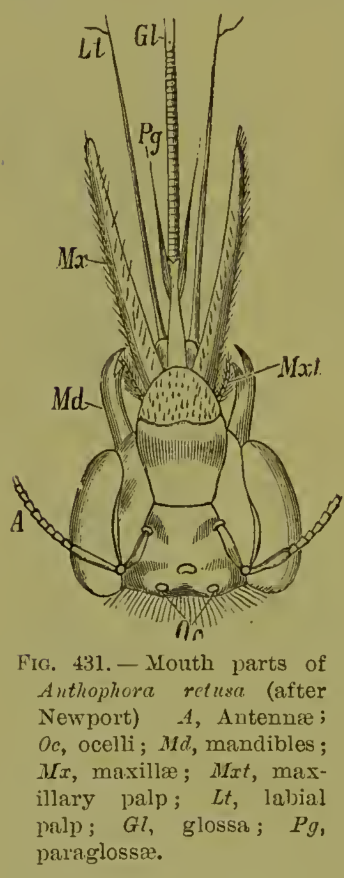



Fig. 431. — Mouth parts of *Anthophora retusa* (after Newport) *A*, Antennæ; *Oc*, ocelli; *Md*, mandibles; *Mx*, maxillæ; *Mxt*, maxillary palp; *Lt*, labial palp; *Gl*, glossa; *Pg*, paraglossæ.

The above description refers to insects which gnaw or bite their food. When the food is fluid, the mouth parts, either in whole or part, become so remarkably modified that it required the penetration of Savigny to establish their morphological relations. The biting mouth parts found in the orders of the *Coleoptera*, the *Neuroptera* and the *Orthoptera* are most nearly allied to the mouth parts of the *Hymenoptera*, which may be described as a *licking apparatus* (fig. 431). The upper lip and mandibles agree with those of the biting apparatus, but the maxillæ and labium are more or less elongated and modified, to admit of licking and sucking up fluids.

Mouth parts adapted for *sucking* are found in the Lepidoptera, where the first maxillæ are united to form a sucking tube, while the other parts are more or less aborted (fig. 432). Finally the *piercing* mouth parts of the *Diptera* and *Rhynchota* also possess a sucking apparatus, which is usually formed of the labium; but there are also styliform weapons, by means of which access is gained to the nourishing fluid, which is to be sucked up (figs. 433, 434). These weapons may be formed by the mandibles, and also by the maxillæ, and even the hypopharynx and epipharynx may be used, undergoing numerous modifications. Since the piercing part of the apparatus may be totally aborted, or, at any rate, become functionless, it is obvious

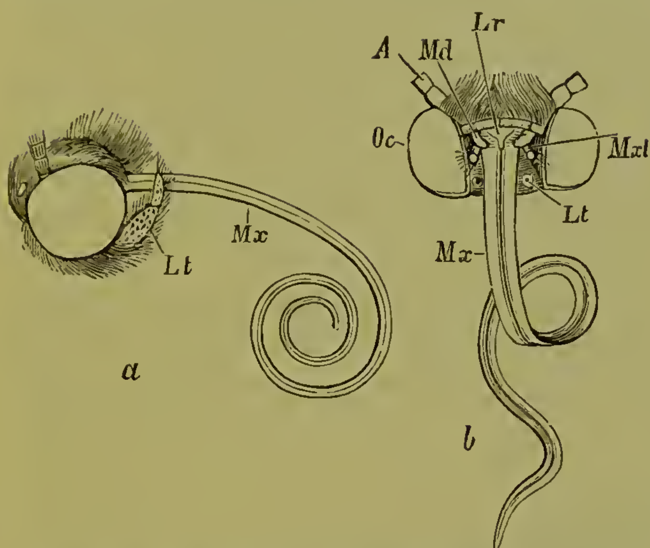



FIG. 432.—Oral apparatus of Butterflies (after Savigny). *a*, Of *Zygæna*; *b*, of *Noctua*. *A*, Antennæ; *Oc*, eyes; *Lr*, upper lip; *Md*, mandible; *Mxt*, maxillary palp; *Mx*, maxilla (first); *Lt*, labial palp, cut away.

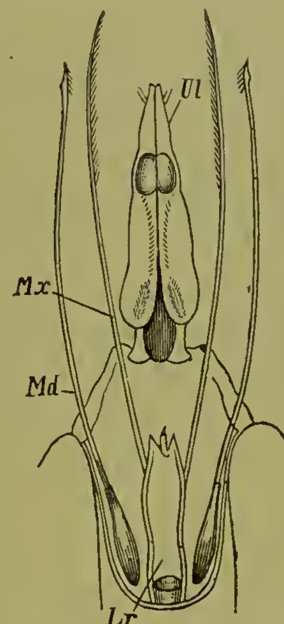



FIG. 433.—Mouth parts of *Nepa cinerea* (after Savigny). *Ul*, Lower lip (labium) or rostrum; *Lr*, upper lip; *Md*, mandible; *Mx*, maxilla (first).

that no sharp line can be drawn between the piercing and sucking forms of oral apparatus (fig. 434).

The next principal region of the body in Insects is the **thorax**, which is connected with the head by a slender neck. It consists of three segments, and bears three pairs of legs and usually two pairs of wings on the dorsal surface. These three segments, the *prothorax*, the *mesothorax* and the *metathorax* are rarely simple horny rings, but are usually composed of several parts united by sutures. In each segment a dorsal plate, lateral regions and a ventral plate can be distinguished. These may be termed *notum*, *pleura* and *sternum* respectively, and they may further be described, according to the segments in which they occur, as *pro-*, *meso-* and *meta-notum*, and *pro-*, *meso-*, and *meta-sternum*. The lateral regions are divided into an anterior piece (*episternum*) and a posterior (*epimerum*),

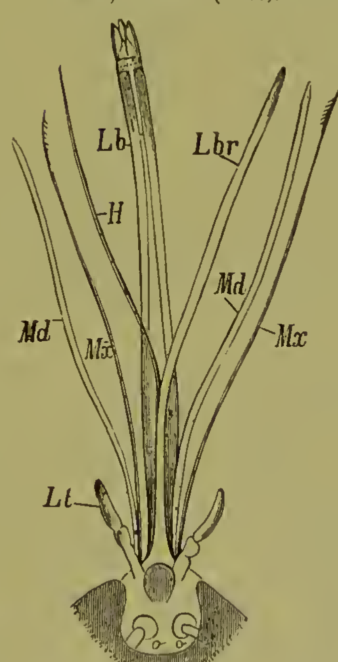



FIG. 434.—Mouth parts of *Culex memorosus* ♀ (after Becher). *Lbr*, Upper lip; *Lb*, lower lip (proboscis); *Lt*, labial palp; *Md*, mandibles; *Mx*, maxillæ (first); *H*. hypopharynx (piercing weapon).

while on the *mesonotum* there is a median triangular plate (the *scutellum*), and on the metanotum there is not rarely a similar but smaller shield (the *postscutellum*). The manner in which the three regions of the thorax are connected with one another varies in the different orders. In the *Coleoptera*, *Neuroptera*, *Orthoptera* and in many *Rhynchota*, the pro-thorax is freely movable, while in all other cases it is a relatively small ring and is fused with the following segments.

The three pairs of legs are articulated in excavations of the chitinous integument of the ventral surface between the sterna and pleura. The number and size of the joints of the legs seem


FIG. 435.—Different form of legs (règne animal). *a*, *Mantis* with predatory leg; *b*, leg of *Carabus* used in running; *c*, of *Acridium* used in springing; *d*, of *Gryllotalpa* used in digging; *e*, swimming leg of *Dytiscus*.

more constant in the Insecta than in any other group of the Arthropoda, so that it is possible to distinguish five regions (fig. 435). The basal joint (*coxa*), which is either spherical or cylindrical, is articulated to the thorax and permits of free movement of the limb. The coxa is followed by a second very short ring, constituting the *trochanter*, which is sometimes divided into two parts or in other cases is fused with the next joint. The third joint, which is conspicuous on account of its size and strength, is the long *femur*. The next joint is the likewise long but slender *tibia*, which is armed at the point with movable spines. Finally the last joint, or *tarsus*, is less movably articulated. It is simple only in rare cases; generally it is composed of a number of joints (usually five), of which the last is terminated by movable claws, and sometimes also by lobed appendages.

Of course the special form of the legs varies according to the mode of locomotion and the special needs of each insect. Legs adapted for running, walking, burrowing, leaping, prehension can be distinguished (fig. 435). The anterior pair only is used for predatory purposes, and in such a leg the tibia and tarsus are bent backward against the femur in the same way that the blade of a pocket-knife folds back against its handle (*Mantis*, *Nepa*). The legs used in springing are the posterior pair (*Acridium*), and they are characterised by the powerful femur. Those used in digging are usually the anterior pair, and they may be recognised by the broad, shovel-like tibia (*Gryllotalpa*). In the swimming legs all the parts are flat, and closely beset with long swimming hairs (*Naucoris*). The legs used in walking may be distinguished from the ordinary running legs by the broad hairy lower surface of the tarsus (*Lamia*).

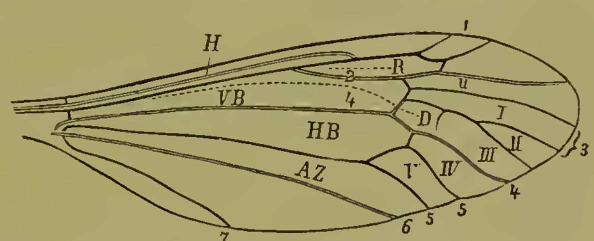



FIG. 436.—Wing of *Tipula* (after Fr. Brauer). *H*, Subcosta; 1, first longitudinal nervure (costa mediana); 2, radial rib (radius or sector); 3, cubital rib; 4, discoidal rib (or cubitus anticus); 5, submedian (or cubitus posticus); 6, anal rib (or postcosta); 7, axillar rib; *R*, marginal cell; *U*, submarginal cell. *D*, discoidal cell; *I—V*, posterior marginal cells; *VB*, anterior basal cell; *HB*, posterior basal cell; *AZ*, anal cell.

**Wings** are only found in the fully developed, sexually adult animals, which are relatively rarely without them. They are attached to the dorsal surface of the meso- and meta-thorax, being articulated between the notum and pleura. The anterior wings are attached to the meso-thorax, and the posterior wings to the meta-thorax. As regards their form and structure they are thin, superficially expanded plates, consisting of two membranes firmly adhering to one another and continuously connected at the edges. They are usually delicate and transparent, and are traversed by various strongly chitinised bands, the *nervures* or *veins* or *ribs* (fig. 436).

These nervures, which have a very definite and systematically important course, consist of canals, placed between the two layers of the wing, surrounded by chitin and containing *blood*, *nerves* and especially *tracheæ*, the distribution of which corresponds with the course of the nervures. The nervures, therefore, always start from the root of the wing as two or three principal stems, and distribute their branches more especially to the upper half. The first (fig. 436) of the main trunks which runs beneath the upper margin of the wing is called the *costa*, and often ends in a horny dilatation. Beneath the costa there is a second main stem, the *radius*, and behind this a third, the *cubitus*, which rarely remains simple, but usually bifurcates before the middle of its course into branches, which are often further divided so that a more or less complicated network is formed in the upper half of the wing. The spaces of this network may be distinguished as *marginal spaces* or *radial cells*, and as *submarginal spaces* or *cubital cells*. Not rarely there may also be present one or more lower nervures (anal, axillar nervures).

The form and structure of the wings present various modifications. The anterior wings may become coriaceous by the stronger chitinisation of their substance, as for instance in the *Orthoptera* and *Rhynchota*: or, as in the *Coleoptera*, they may have a firm horny structure (*tegmina* or *elytra*), and be used less for flight than as a protection of the back, the skin of which is soft. The anterior wings in the *Rhynchota* group of the *Hemiptera* are mostly horny and only membranous at the tip, while the posterior wings are membranous. When both pairs of wings are of a membranous structure, their surface is either thickly covered with scales, *Lepidoptera* and *Phryganidæ* (group of *Neuroptera*), or remains naked and is marked out into a number of very conspicuous spaces, which may not unfrequently have the form of a close net-like mesh-work, as in the *Neuroptera*. In general the two pairs of wings differ in size. Those insects which have coriaceous anterior wings and half or whole wing covers, have much larger posterior wings, while in the insects with membranous wings the anterior wings are, as a rule, the largest. In many of the *Neuroptera*, the wings are pretty nearly the same size, while in the *Diptera* the posterior wings are aborted and reduced to small knobs (*halteres*). Finally we find in all the orders of insects examples of a complete absence of wings either in both sexes, or in the female sex alone.

The third region of the body, which contains most of the vegetative organs, as well as the organs of reproduction, is the elongated and well-segmented **abdomen**. In the adult insect this region is destitute of appendages, although very often in larval life, and as an exception in the sexually adult animal (*Japyx*), short appendages are present. The abdominal segments are very definitely separated from one another by soft connecting membranes. They are composed of simple dorsal and ventral plates, which are also connected laterally by soft membranes. This structure of the abdomen, which contains the respiratory and genital organs, permits of its being dilated and contracted (respiratory movements, distension of the ovary). Very often the posterior segments have a special structure, owing to the various appendages which are connected with the processes of copulation and of deposition of the eggs. The anus is usually placed on the last abdominal ring, while the generative opening which is separate from the anal aperture opens on the ventral surface of the preceding segment (fig. 437). Terminal appendages, such as jointed filaments, etc., are present on the anal segment. The *appendices genitales*, forming the genital armature, are, on the contrary, placed on the ventral side around the genital opening. Developed in the male as valves and in the female in the form of ovipositors, stings, etc., they arise from the imaginal discs (growths of the hypodermis), in the *Hymenoptera* and *Orthoptera* on the eighth (first pair) and ninth (second pair) segments of the abdomen (fig. 438). The ovipositors of the *Diptera*, on the other hand, are to be derived from the retracted posterior segments.

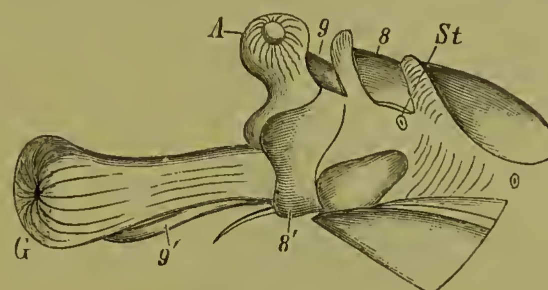



FIG. 437.- Posterior end of body of a Beetle. (*Pterostichus* ♂) (after Stein). 8, 9, Dorsal plates 8' 9', ventral plates; *St*, stigma; *A*, anus; *G*, genital opening.

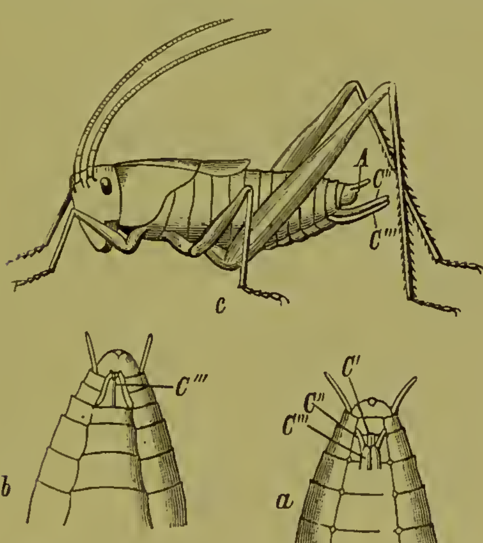



FIG. 438.—*a*, Hind end of abdomen of a young female *Locusta* with the protuberances of the ovipositor and the anal styles; *C'* and *C''*, the internal and external protuberances of the penultimate; *C'''*, the same of the antepenultimate segment. *b*, slightly older stage. *c*, Nympha; *A*, anus with anal styles (after Dewitz).

**Alimentary canal** (figs. 439, 440).—The mouth, which is covered by the upper lip, usually leads into a narrow œsophagus, into the anterior portion of which, distinguished as the buccal cavity, open one or more pairs of tubular or racemose salivary glands (*Sp*). In many of the suctorial insects, the end of the œsophagus is dilated into a sack with thin membranous walls and a short stalk, the *suctorial stomach*; in others into a more uniform dilatation, known as the *crop* (fig. 439, *Oe*). The intestine which follows the œsophagus is sometimes straight and sometimes coiled; it varies exceedingly in accordance with the mode of life. It is always at least divisible into a longer portion, which is concerned in digestion, the mesenteron or *chylific ventricle* (*M*, *Chd*), and a terminal portion, which is concerned with the ejection of the fæces (figs. 439, 440).

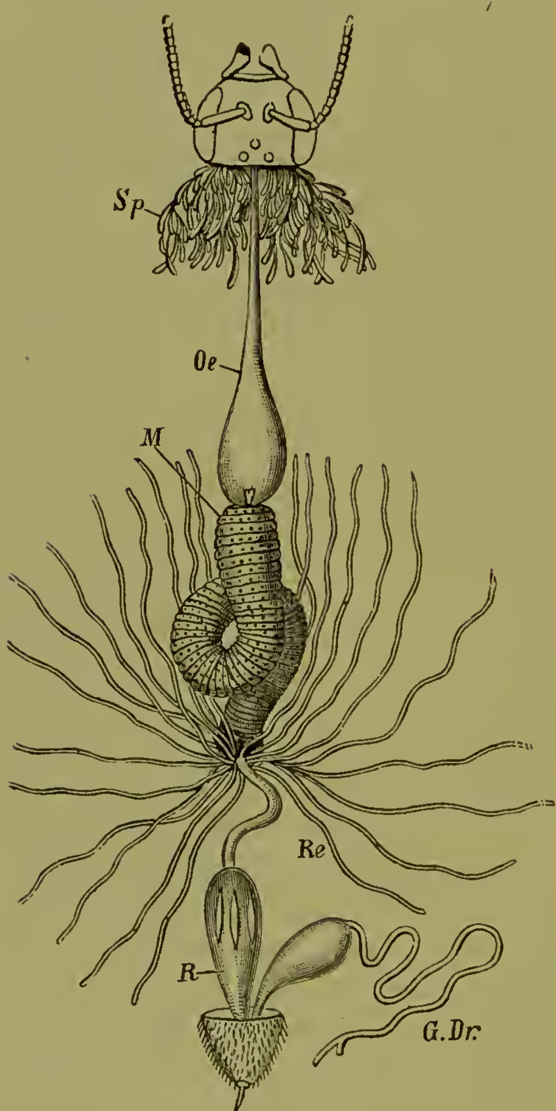



Fig. 439.—Digestive apparatus of *Apis mellifica* (after Léon Dufour). *Sp*, Salivary glands; *Oe*, œsophagus with crop-like dilatation; *M*, chylific ventricle; *Re*, Malpighian vessels; *R*, rectum with so-called rectal glands; *G. Dr*, poison glands.

The number of regions may, however, be larger. In predaceous Insects, especially in the orders of *Coleoptera* and *Neuroptera*, a masticatory stomach or proventriculus (fig. 440, *Pv*) is inserted between the crop and chylific ventricle; this is of globular form, and has powerful muscular walls. It is lined by a specially thick chitinous cuticle, which is beset with strong bands, teeth, and bristles. The chylific ventricle also, on which especially the digestive glandular layer is developed at the expense of the muscular layer, is sometimes divided into several regions, as for example in some Beetles the anterior part has a shaggy appearance from the numerous cæca which project from it (fig. 440 *Chd*), and is sharply marked off from the simple narrower portion which follows it. Larger cæca, too, after the manner of *hepatic glands,* may be inserted at the commencement of the chylific ventricle (*Orthoptera*).

The commencement of the hind gut or posterior portion of the alimentary canal is indicated by the opening of filiform cæcal tubes, the *Malpighian vessels.* It is divided into two or more rarely three regions, which are distinguished as the *small intestine,* the *large intestine* and the *rectum.* The last region is provided with a strong layer of muscles, and contains in its walls four, six or more longitudinal ridges, the so-called *rectal glands* (fig. 439, *R*). Sometimes two glands, the so-called anal glands (*G.Dr*, *Ad*), open into the rectum immediately in front of the anus. Their secretion, on account of its irritating qualities and disagreeable smell, seems to serve as a protection to the animal. In exceptional cases the larva alone takes up nutriment, the sexually mature apterous form being without a mouth (*Ephemera*). Finally the stomach of the larva in a few cases ends blindly, and does not communicate with the hind gut (larvæ of *Hymenoptera*, *Pupipara*, *Ant-lion*).

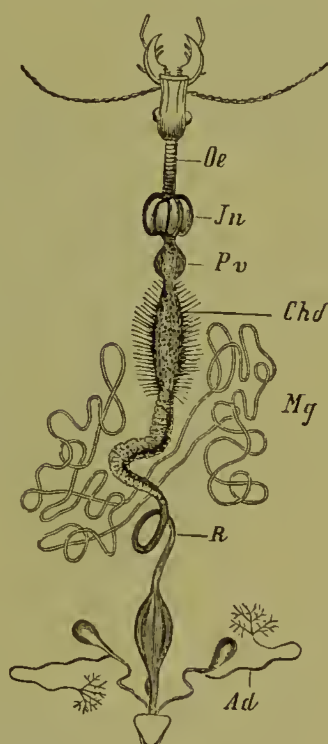



FIG. 440.—Alimentary canal and glandular appendages of a Beetle (*Carabus*) (after L. Dufour). *Oe*, œsophagus; *Jn*, crop; *Pv*, proventriculus; *Chd*, chylific ventricle; *Mg*, Malpighian tubes; *R*, rectum; *Ad*, anal glands with vesicle.

The **Malpighian vessels** already mentioned, which were formerly erroneously held to be bile organs, undoubtedly function as urinary organs. Their contents, secreted by the large nucleated cells of their walls, are usually of a brownish yellow or white colour, and consist of an aggregation of small granules and concretions, which, for the most part, consist of uric acid. Crystals of *oxalate of lime* and *taurin* have also been found. The numbers and grouping of these filiform tubes, which are usually very long and wound round about the chylific ventricle, varies very much. As a rule there are four or six, or more rarely eight of them opening into the intestine, but in the *Hymenoptera* and *Orthoptera* the number is much larger; in the latter there may even be a common duct into which the tubes are united (*Gryllotalpa*).

Amongst the **secretory glands** of insects the *glandulæ odoriferæ*, the *wax-glands*, *spinning-glands* and *poison glands* are to be mentioned. Of these, the first, to which belong the anal glands which we have already mentioned (fig. 440), lie beneath the covering of the body and secrete, usually between the articulations, strongly smelling fluids. In the *bugs* there is an unpaired piriform gland in the metathorax, which pours out its secretion by an opening between the hind legs and gives rise to the notorious smell. Unicellular cutaneous glands have been shewn to exist in different parts of the body of insects, and, like the sebacious glands of vertebrates, seem to secrete an oily liquid, which serves to lubricate the joints. Similar glandular tubes of the integument, which may be called *wax-glands*, secrete white threads and flakes, which cover the body as with a kind of powder or wool (Plant lice, etc., fig. 441). *Spinning-glands* occur exclusively in larvæ and serve for the production of webs and cases. When these glands have the form of two or more less swollen and elongated tubes (*sericteria*) opening behind the mouth, they may be compared to a special form of salivary gland, which they also resemble in their structure. The larva of the ant-lion has its spinning organs at the opposite end of the body; the wall of the rectum, which is shut off from the chylific ventricle, taking the place of the *sericteria*.

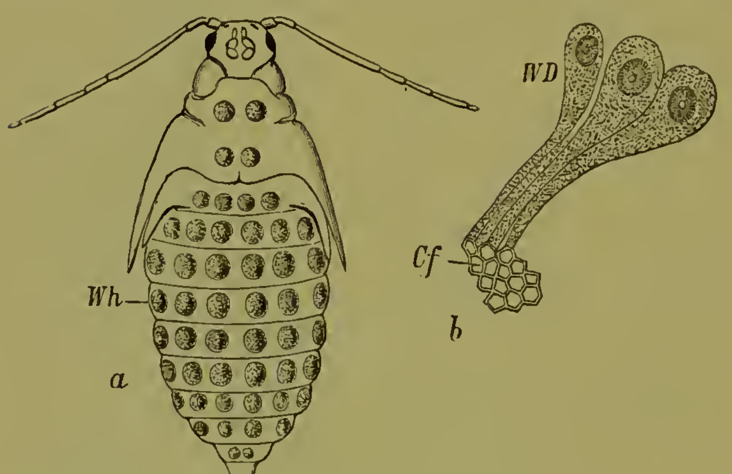



FIG. 441.—The wax glands and the prominences on which they open of an *Aphide* (*Schizoneura Lonicerae*). *a*, Pupa seen from dorsal surface; *Wh*, prominences on which the wax glands open; *b*, the unicellular wax glands (*WD*) beneath the cuticular facets (*Cf*) of the skin.

The poison glands, which are present in the female *Hymenoptera*, consist of two simple or branched tubes, the common duct of which is dilated to form a vesicular reservoir for the secreted fluid, which consists of formic acid. The end of this reservoir is connected with the *poison spine*.

**Vascular system.**—The blood, which is usually colourless but not unfrequently has a green tinge, always contains amœboid blood cells and travels along definite tracts of the body cavity. The simplification of the *circulatory apparatus,* which is confined to a *dorsal vessel,* is correlated with the richly branched respiratory apparatus, the air-conducting *tracheæ,* which are distributed to all the organs and carry oxygen to the blood. The heart, which has the form of a *dorsal vessel* (fig. 442), runs in the middle line of the abdomen, and is divided by transverse constrictions into numerous (up to eight) chambers corresponding to the segments. These chambers are attached to the integument of the dorsal surface by triangular muscles (alary muscles). During the diastole of the chambers the blood streams through as many paired lateral slits into the heart, which contracts gradually from before backwards and drives the blood in the same direction. The anterior chamber is prolonged into a median aorta, which runs forward to the head. From this aorta the blood flows freely into the body cavity and returns to the heart in four principal streams, two lateral, one dorsal beneath the dorsal vessel, and one ventral above the ganglionic chain, giving off numerous branches to the extremities, etc. It is only in exceptional cases (*e.g.*, in the caudal filaments of the larvæ of *Ephemera*) that arterial vessels are found passing out from the heart.

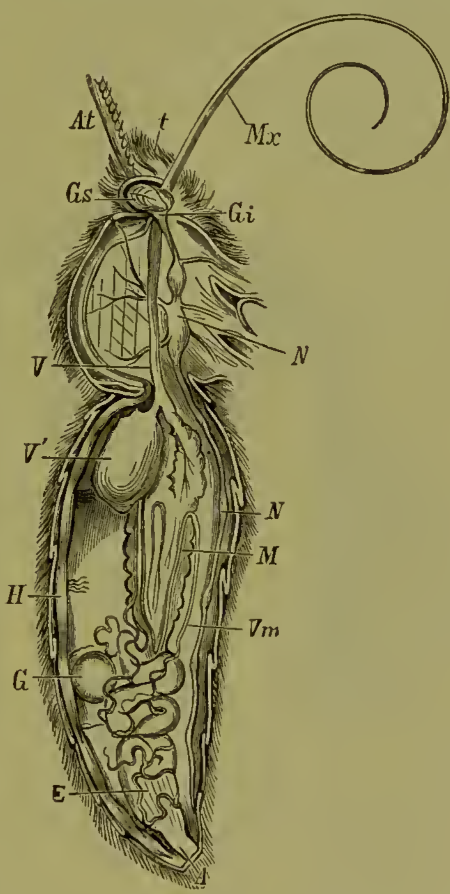



FIG. 442.—Longitudinal section through the body of *Sphinx ligustri* (after Newport). *Mx*, maxillæ forming the proboscis; *t*, palp; *At*, antenna; *Gs*, brain; *Gi*, subœsophageal ganglion; *N*, thoracic and abdominal ganglia; *V*, œsophagus; *V'*, suctorial stomach; *M*, mesenteron; *Vm*, Malpighian tubes; *H*, heart; *G*, testes; *E*, rectum; *A*, anus.

**Respiration** is effected by branched *tracheæ,* which take in their supply of air through paired slit-like openings, the *stigmata.* The latter are usually situated in the membranes connecting the sterna and terga (fig. 428), and the exchange of air is determined by the distinct respiratory movements of the abdomen. The number of stigmata is very various, but there are rarely more than nine or fewer than two pairs present. They are never present on the head or on the last abdominal segment. They are least numerous in the aquatic larvæ of beetles and Diptera, which have but two stigmata placed at the hind end of the abdomen on a simple or forked tube. There are, however, often two openings on the thorax in addition. Some water-bugs (*e.g.*, *Nepa Ranatra*, etc.) have at the end of the abdomen two long grooved filaments which lead at their base into two air cavities. Such water-bugs can by this arrangement take up air like the Dipteran larvæ, by protruding the respiratory tube on the surface of the water.

The *tracheæ* (fig. 443), which are kept open by the spiral thickening of the chitinous membrane lining them, are always more or less perfectly filled with air, and on that account have usually a silvery shining appearance. Their internal chitinous membrane is produced by an outer delicate and nucleated cell layer, and is thrown off with the external cuticle and renewed at each moult during larval life. The dilatations which are not unfrequently present in the course of the tracheæ, and which, in strong flying insects, as *Hymenoptera*, *Diptera*, etc., are enlarged to form air sacs of very considerable size, may with justice be compared to the air sacs of birds. They possess a delicate chitinous membrane, which exhibits no trace of the spiral fibre.

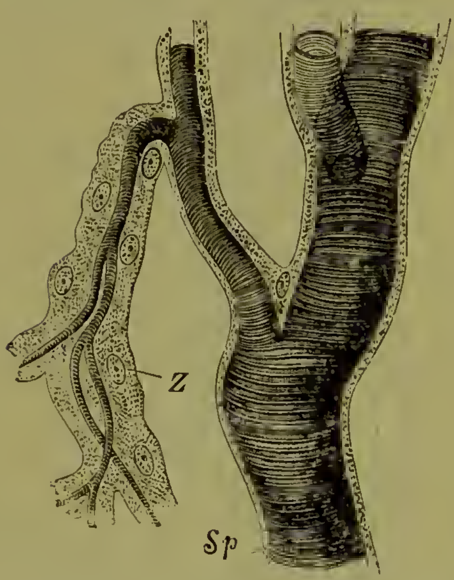


FIG. 443.—Tracheal branch with finer twigs (after Leydig). Z, Cellular external wall; *Sp*, cuticular lining (spiral fibre).

They therefore collapse with great ease, and require for their filling special respiratory movements. These are especially noticeable in the relatively clumsy *Lamellicorns* before their flight. The arrangement and distribution of the tracheal system may easily be described by starting with the origin of the principal trunks from the stigmata. Each stigma leads into one (or more) tracheal trunk, which sends out connecting branches to the neighbouring trunks and gives off a tuft of much branched tubes to the viscera. As a rule, there are formed in this way two independent lateral trunks, which communicate by transverse tubes and give off numerous secondary trunks to the internal organs. The finer branches of the secondary tubes are not only applied externally to the viscera, but partially traverse them and serve at the same time to support them.

*Tracheal gills* are present in the form of leaf-like or filiform appendages on the body of the larvæ of *Phryganidæ*, *Ephemeridæ* (fig. 444), and in the rectum of the larvæ of *Æschna* and *Libellula*.

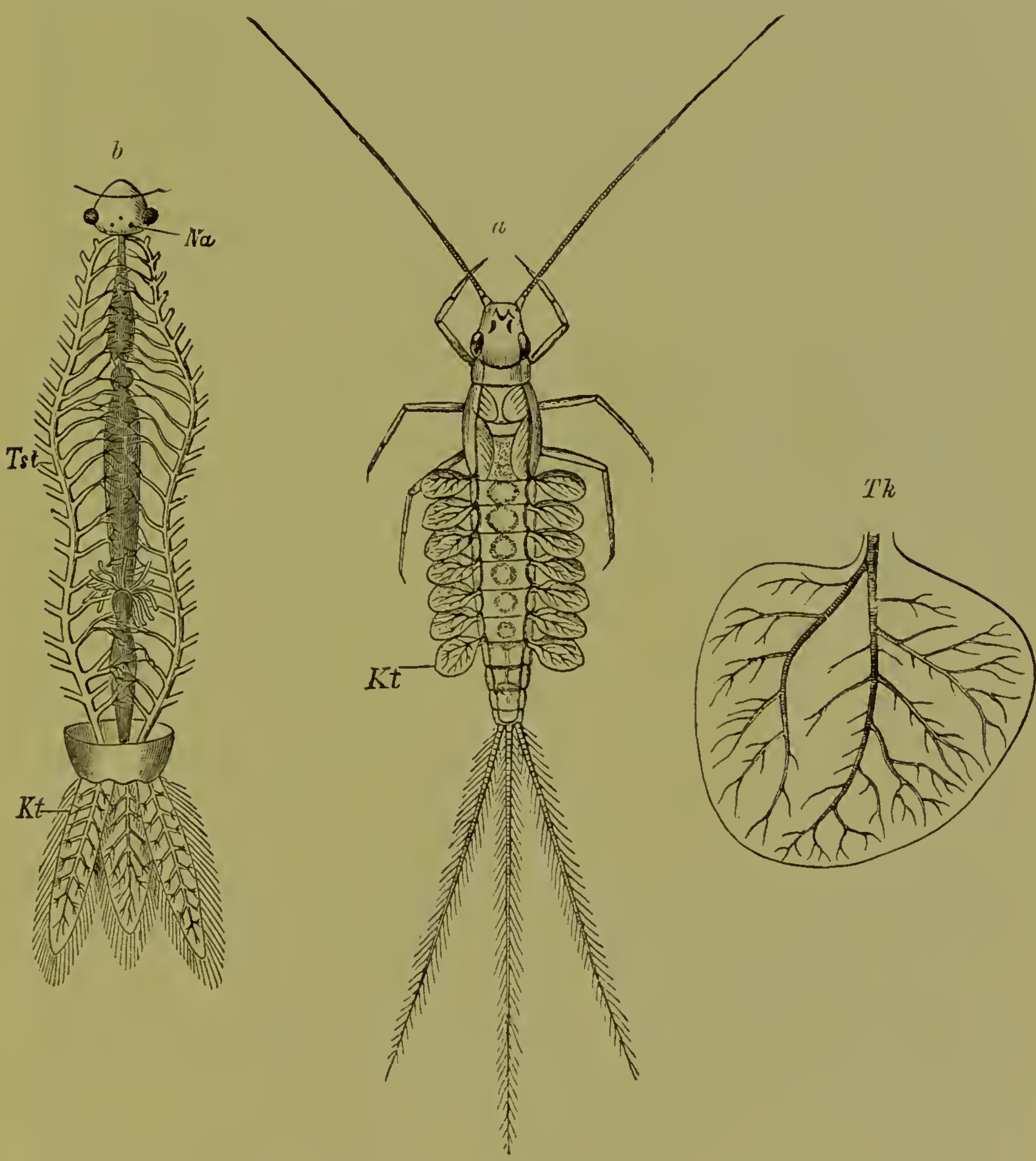



FIG. 444.—*a*, Larva of *Ephemera* with seven pairs of tracheal gills *Kt*, slightly magnified. *Tk*, An isolated tracheal gill, strongly magnified. *b*, Tracheal system of an *Agrion* larva (after L. Dufour); *Tst*, tracheal trunk; *Na*, accessory eyes.

In the last case the walls of the rectum are very muscular, and are capable of regularly pumping in and out water, thus giving rise to a kind of respiratory movement.

The so-called **fat bodies** stand in the closest relation to respiration and the nutritive processes. They are fat-like shining and usually coloured, lobed and globular bodies, which are distributed beneath the skin and between the organs, and are especially abundant during larval life. The chief importance of these organs depends on the part they play with regard to metabolism. They consist essentially of an accumulation of superfluous nutritive material, and seem to be used for nourishment and for the production of heat, and especially during the development into the perfect insect for the formation of new parts of the body and for the growth of the generative organs. The rich distribution of the tracheæ to the fat cells points to the consumption of a large amount of oxygen, and consequently to an active metabolism, which is further demonstrated by the frequent deposition of nitrogenous waste material, especially of uric acid.

The **phosphorescent organs** of the *Lampyridæ* and various *Elateridæ* show a certain resemblance to fat bodies. These organs are delicate plates, which in *Lampyris* are present on the ventral surface of several of the abdominal segments and consist partly of pale albuminous cells, and partly of granular cells, containing uric acid; richly branched tracheæ and nerves are distributed amongst these cells. The pale cells compose the lower ventral layer of the plates, and it is this layer alone which is phosphorescent. These cells, together with the terminal cells of the tracheæ, which are always very numerous, are to be regarded as the active elements, the chemical changes of which, under the influence of oxygen, and to a certain extent of the nervous system, give rise to the phenomenon of phosphorescence. The cells of the upper non-luminous layer of the plates contain a great number of refractile granules, which, according to Kölliker, consist of uric acid compounds, the final products of the metabolism which causes the phenomenon of phosphorescence.

The **nervous system** of insects presents a very high development, and a great amount of variation in arrangement; all transitions between a long ventral ganglionic chain, consisting of about twelve pairs of ganglia, and a common thoracic ganglionic mass are found (figs. 77 and 78). The brain (supra-œsophageal ganglion), which is placed in the head, attains a considerable size. It presents several groups of swellings; these are especially marked in the *Hymenoptera*, which have the highest psychical development. It gives origin to the sense nerves, and seems to be the seat of the will and of the psychical activity. The small subœsophageal ganglion supplies the mouth parts, and corresponds to several pairs of ganglia fused together.

The ventral chain, which with its lateral nerves may be compared to the spinal cord and the spinal nerves, preserves the primitive uniform segmentation in most larvæ, and is the least modified in insects with a free prothorax and long abdomen. In such insects, not only do the three large thoracic ganglia, which supply the wings and legs with nerves, remain separate, though certainly they are often strengthened by the anterior abdominal ganglia, but also a larger number of abdominal ganglia. Of the latter, the last, which is formed by the fusion of several ganglia and gives off numerous nerves to the ducts of the generative apparatus and to the rectum, is always distinguished by its considerable size. The gradually progressing concentration of the ventral cord, which may be followed out in the larval and pupal development,* is explained by the crowding together of the abdominal ganglia, as well as by the fusion of the thoracic ganglia. Of the latter, those of the meso- and meta-thorax first fuse to a large posterior thoracic mass, which then fuses with that of the prothorax to form a common thoracic mass. When the latter is finally united to the fused mass of the abdominal ganglia, the highest grade of concentration, which is found in the *Diptera* and *Hemiptera*, is reached.

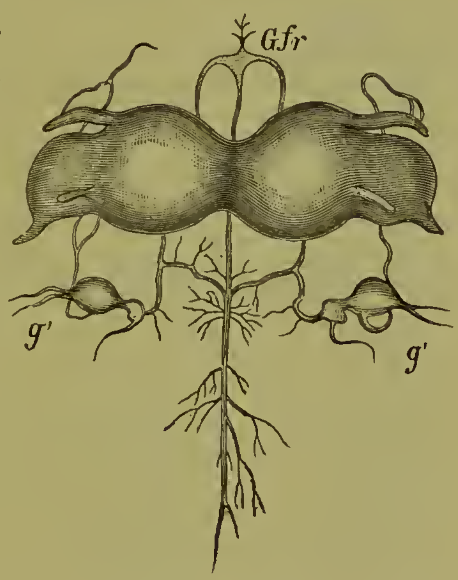


FIG. 445.—Cerebral ganglion and œsophageal nerve ganglia of *Sphinx ligustri* (after Newport). *Gfr.*, Frontal ganglion; *g'*, *g'*, ganglia of the paired œsophageal nerves.

The *visceral nervous system* is divided into the system of the œsophageal nerves and the true sympathetic. In the former we can distinguish unpaired and paired œsophageal nerves. The unpaired system springs from the anterior surface of the brain by two roots, which unite in front to form the so-called frontal ganglion (fig. 445 *Gfr.*) In its further course on the dorsal surface of the œsophagus it forms a number of fine plexuses in the muscular layer of that organ (fig. 445). The paired œsophageal nerves spring on either side from the posterior surface of the brain, and swell out at the sides of the œsophagus to form larger ganglia, which also supply nerves to the wall of the œsophagus. A system of pale nerves, first described by Newport

* Compare especially the numerous papers of Ed. Brandt, "Ueber die metamorphose des Nervensystems."

as *nervi respiratorii* or *transversi*, is to be regarded as a true sympathetic. These nerves are given off near one of the ganglia of the ventral chain from a median nerve which runs between the two ventral nerve cords, has a root in the ganglion, and sometimes forms a small sympathetic ganglion. After their separation they again form lateral ganglia, the nerves of which pass into the lateral nerves, but afterwards separate again from the latter, and after forming plexuses supply the tracheal trunks and muscles of the stigmata.

Of the **Sense organs**, the *eyes** attain the highest grade of perfection. The unicorneal ocelli are principally present in larval life, but two or three of them are often present on the top of the head of fully-developed insects (fig. 87). The facetted eyes are placed at the sides of the head, and are found in the fully-developed insect (fig. 85).

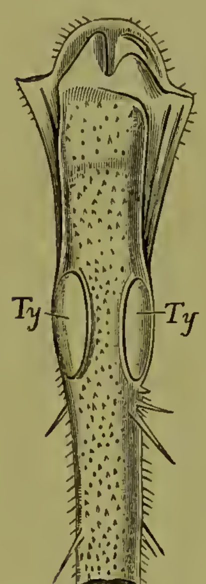


FIG. 446. — Tibia of the anterior leg of *Locusta viridissima* (after V. Graber). *Ty*, tympanic membrane with operculum.

**Auditory vesicles** with otoliths have not been discovered in insects. Since, however, the capacity of perceiving sound can scarcely be doubted for numerous insects, and especially for those which are capable of producing sound, we are forced to presuppose the existence of some organ for the perception of sound. In fact, in the springing *Orthoptera* apparatuses can be pointed to which probably serve as acoustic organs for the perception of sound waves. In the *Acridiæ* these are placed at the sides of the first abdominal segment close behind the metathorax (fig. 66, *b*), in the *Gryllodeæ* and *Locustidæ* in the tibiæ of the anterior legs, just beneath the articulation of the femora (fig. 446). In this region a tracheal trunk dilates between two lateral membranes so as to form a vesicle, on which are spread out the end cells, provided with so-called nerve rods, of a nerve springing from the first thoracic ganglion (fig. 447). Peculiar sense organs have also been discovered in the posterior wings of beetles and in the halteres of flies.

Shining nerve rods have been found by Leydig in the nerves of

* Compare especially Leydig, "Zum feineren Bau der Arthropoden. sowie Geruchs-und Gehörorgane der Krebse und Insecten." *Müller's Archiv*, 1855 and 1860.

H. Grenacher. "Untersuchungen über das Sehorgan der Arthropoden." Göttingen, 1879.

Also V. Graber, "Die tympanalen Sinnesorgane der Orthopteren." Wien, 1875.

the antennæ, the palps, and legs, under conditions which render it possible that these nerves have the value of tactile nerves, and this is the more probable since the *sense of touch* is principally discharged by the antennæ and the palps of the oral apparatus, as well as by the tarsal joints of the legs.

**Olfactory organs** are very generally distributed, as might have been expected from the developed capability of tracking which many insects possess. It may be regarded as fairly certain that the surface of the antennæ is the seat of the olfactory sense. Formerly, in accordance with the views of Erichson, the numerous pits which are found, for instance, on the leaf-shaped antennæ of the *Lamellicornia*, were interpreted as olfactory pits; but it is more correct to regard with Leydig the peculiar cones and knobs of the antennæ which are connected with gangliated nerve endings as olfactory organs.

FIG. 447.—A portion of the nerve termination in the anterior leg of *Locusta viridissima* (after V. Graber). *N*, nerve; *Gz*, ganglion cells; *St*, rods in the terminal cells.

The **reproduction** of insects is principally sexual. The male and female generative organs are always placed in different individuals; but they correspond in their position and parts, and in their opening on the ventral surface of the hind end of the body. The testes and ovaries are provided with paired ducts ending in an unpaired portion (fig. 91). The first rudiments of the genital organs may be traced back to a very early stage of the embryonic development. Their development, however, is only completed in the latest period of larval life, or in insects with complete metamorphosis during the pupal stage. In rare cases the full development and maturity of the sexual organs is never completed, as in the so-called sexless *Hymenoptera* (working bees, ants) and termites, which are incapable of reproduction.

The males and females are distinguished by more or less important external differences in various parts of the body; sometimes these differences lead to a marked sexual dimorphism. The males are almost always more slenderly formed, and are capable of quicker and easier movement. They have larger eyes and antennæ, and their colours are brighter and more striking. When there is a pronounced dimorphism the females are apterous, and their form approximates to that of the larva (*Coccidæ*, *Psychidæ*, *Strepsiptera*, *Lampyris*), while the males are provided with wings.

The female generative organs are composed of paired **ovaries** and oviducts, the unpaired oviduct, the vagina and the external genital apparatus. The ovaries are elongated tubes, in which the eggs originate. The ova lie one behind another in a single row like a string of pearls, increasing in size from the blind end to the opening into the oviducts (fig. 91, *a*). The arrangement of these ovarian tubes presents extraordinary variations, and there thus originates a great number of different forms of ovary, which have been described principally in the beetles by Stein. The number of the ovarian tubes also varies exceedingly, being least in some *Rhynchota*, and then in the butterflies, the latter having on each side only four very long ovarian tubes, which are many times folded (fig. 448). At their lower ends the ovarian tubes on either side open into the dilated commencement of the oviduct, which joins with that of the other side to form a median oviduct. The lower end of the latter represents the *vagina*, and often

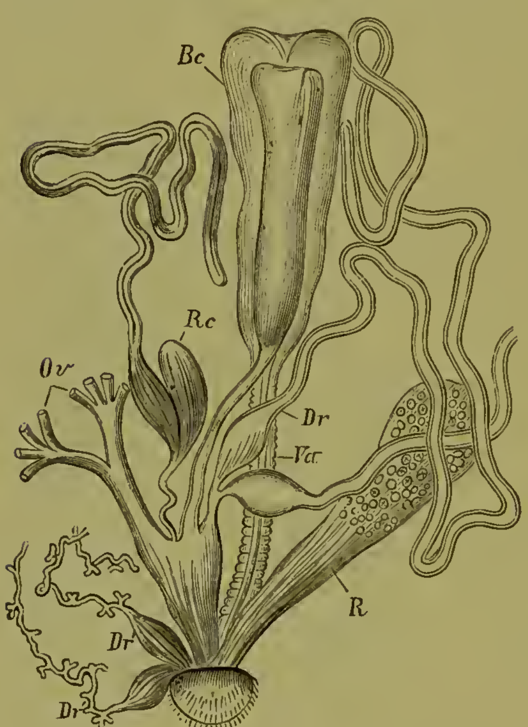



Fig. 448.—Female sexual organs of *Vanessa urticæ* (after Stein). *Ov*, The ovarian tubes cut off; *Rc*, receptaculum seminis and accessory glands; *Va*, vagina; *Bc*, bursa copulatrix with duct leading to the oviduct; *Dr*, glandular appendage; *Dr′*, glandulæ sebaceæ; *R*, rectum.

receives, near the genital aperture, the ducts of special cement and sebaceous glands (*glandulæ sebaceæ*), the secretion of which is used to surround and fasten the eggs which are about to be laid. In addition to these glands, the unpaired efferent duct of the genital apparatus is very commonly furnished with one or several usually stalked *receptacula seminis* (fig. 449), in which the semen, often introduced in the form of *spermatophores*, retains its fertilizing properties for a long time, sometimes for years, under the influence of the secretion of an accessory gland. Beneath the receptaculum seminis, a large pouch-like diverticulum, the *bursa copulatrix*, which assumes the function of the vagina, is sometimes separated from the vagina. In the butterflies (fig. 448) a narrow duct serves to convey the sperm from this bursa, which opens separately, to the receptaculum.

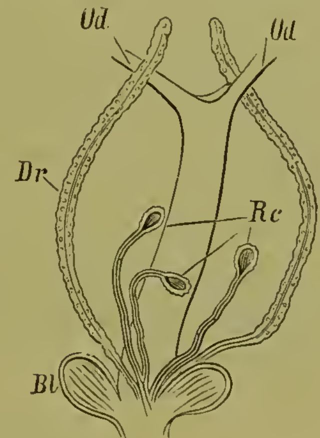



FIG. 449.—Terminal region of the female generative organs of *Musca domestica* (after Stein). *Od*, Oviduct, *Rc*, the three receptacula seminis; *Dr*, glandular appendages of the vagina; *Bl*. blind sac-like appendage.

The male generative organs consist of paired **testes** and their vasa deferentia, of a common ductus ejaculatorius and of the external copulatory organ (fig. 450). The testes are long blind tubes, which are present either singly or in number on either side, and are often coiled together so as to form a seemingly compact brightly-coloured body. They may also be united to form an unpaired organ in the middle line. The testicular tubes are prolonged on either side into a usually coiled efferent duct or vas deferens, the lower end of which dilates considerably, and may even swell out to the form of a vesicle (vesicula seminalis). At the point where the two vasa deferentia join to form the muscular ductus ejaculatorius, one or more glandular tubes often pour their coagulable secretion into the latter; the secretion serving to form a case round the balls of spermatozoa. The transference of the spermatophores into the body of the female is effected by a horny tube or groove which surrounds the end of the ductus ejaculatorius. This tube, when not in use, usually lies retracted in the abdomen, and when protruded is surrounded by external organs for attachment (valves or pincers), as by a sheath. In exceptional cases (*Libellula*) the copulatory apparatus which serves to transfer the sperm is remote from the generative opening, as in the male spiders, being placed on the ventral side of the enlarged second abdominal segment.


FIG. 450.——Male generative organs of the Cockchafer; (after Gegenbaur). *T*, Testes; *Vd*, dilated portion of the seminal duct; *Dr* coiled accessory gland.

Almost all insects are oviparous, and only a few, as the *Tachinæ*, some of the *Œstridæ* and of the *Pupipara*, are viviparous. As a rule, the eggs are laid shortly after fertilization, and before the commencement of the development of the embryo. In rare cases the embryo is already formed when the egg is laid. In the last case the segmentation and formation of the embryo take place in the vagina (fig. 451). The fertilization of the egg usually takes place during its passage through the oviduct, at the place where the *receptaculum seminis* opens. Since the eggs become invested with their resistant *chorion* in the ovarian tubes, from the epithelial cells of which they originate for the most part during the larval life, it is necessary that there should be special arrangements which render possible the entry of the spermatozoa and the fertilization of the ovum. For this object there exist on the upper pole of the egg (the pole turned towards the egg-tubes during the passage of the egg) one or more pores known as *micropyles*,* which pierce the chorion and present a characteristic form and arrangement (fig. 452).

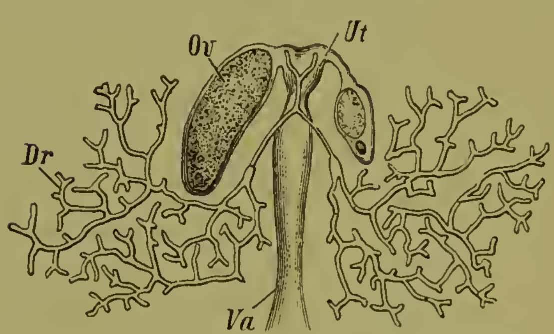


Fig. 451.—Female generative organs of the viviparous *Melophagus ovinus* (*Pupipara*) (after R. Leuckart). *Ov*, Egg in the ovarian tube of one side; *Ut*, uterus; *Dr*, the glands opening into the uterus; *Va*, vagina.

The ova originate in the narrow terminal portion of the egg-tubes, which is often prolonged into a thin thread. Here the growth of the egg-tube takes place, as well as the differentiation of its contents into egg cells and ovarian epithelium. The ovarian tubes increase continuously in diameter towards the oviduct, in correspondence with the gradual increase of size undergone by the eggs, which are arranged one behind another in its lumen. Each egg occupies a chamber, and obtains an external resistant membrane (*chorion*), which is secreted by the epithelium which lines the chamber. The chorion shows in its external markings the peculiarities of the epithelium from which it was formed.

Besides this type, which is found in *Pulex* and in many of the *Neuroptera* and *Orthoptera*, there is a second type of ovarian tube, distinguished from the first by a more complicated structure of the ovarian chambers. The lumen of such egg-tubes encloses above the

* Compare R. Leuckart, "Ueber die Mikropyle und den feineren Bau der Schalenhaut bei den Insecten." *Müller's Archiv.*, 1855.

ovum a single (*Forficula*), or a number of yolk-forming cells (nutritive cells), so that we can distinguish in the egg-tube alternate yolk and germ compartments (fig. 453, *a* and *b*). In rare cases (*Aphides*) there is at the end of each egg-tube a common larger chamber of yolk cells, which are connected with the egg-chambers by means of "yolk-cords" (fig. 453 *c*).

**Parthenogenesis and Heterogamy.**—In certain insects, parthenogenesis, *i.e.*, spontaneous development of unfertilized ova, has been shown to obtain; this occurs in the *Psychidæ* (*Psyche*), *Tineidæ* (*Solenobia*), *Coccidæ* (*Lecanium*, *Aspidiotus*) and *Chermes*; also in numerous *Hymenoptera*, especially in *Bees*, *Wasps*, *Cynipidæ*, and *Tenthredinidæ* (*Nematus*). In the *Hymenoptera* which live together in the so-called animal communities, male forms only are produced from the unfertilized ova (*arrentokia*). *Chermes* affords an example of **Heterogamy**, in that two different oviparous generations follow one another; a slender and winged summer generation, and an apterous generation which is found in autumn and spring and lives through the winter: the males are, in most cases, not yet known. The closely-allied Aphides (plant-lice), which were formerly supposed to present the phenomenon of an alternation of generations, behave in a similar manner. In them the summer generations are very numerous, and are succeeded by a sexually-developed autumn generation, which includes winged males as well as the oviparous and often apterous females (fig. 97, *a*, *b*). In the spring, viviparous Aphides are developed from the fertilized eggs. These are mostly winged (fig. 99), and in their organisation closely resemble true females. Their reproductive organs are, however, differently constructed, and are without the receptaculum seminis. Since they never copulate, they have often been regarded as asexual forms provided with germ tubes.

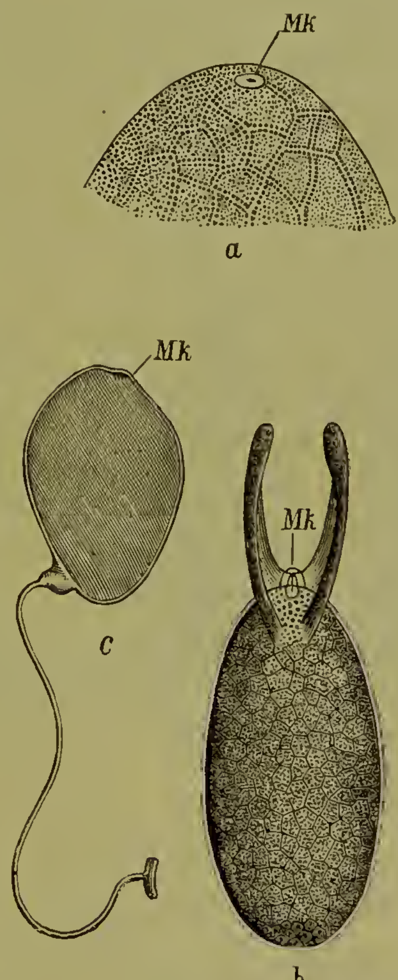



FIG. 452.—Micropyles (*Mk*) of insect eggs (after R. Leuckart). *a*, upper part of the egg-shell of *Anthomyia*; *b*, egg of *Drosophila cellaris*; *c*, stalked egg of *Paniscus testaceus*.

The germ apparatus, however, of the so-called Aphide asexual generation not only has a very great resemblance to the female generative apparatus of insects, but the structure and mode of origin of the germ seems to agree so closely with that of the ovum that the viviparous Aphides must be considered as a peculiarly organised generation of females, the genital apparatus of which has undergone some simplifications adapted to parthenogenesis. However that may be, it will be convenient in this case to call the ovary the *pseudovary*, and the ova which originate in it and are incapable of fertilization, the *pseudova*. From this point of view the reproduction of some

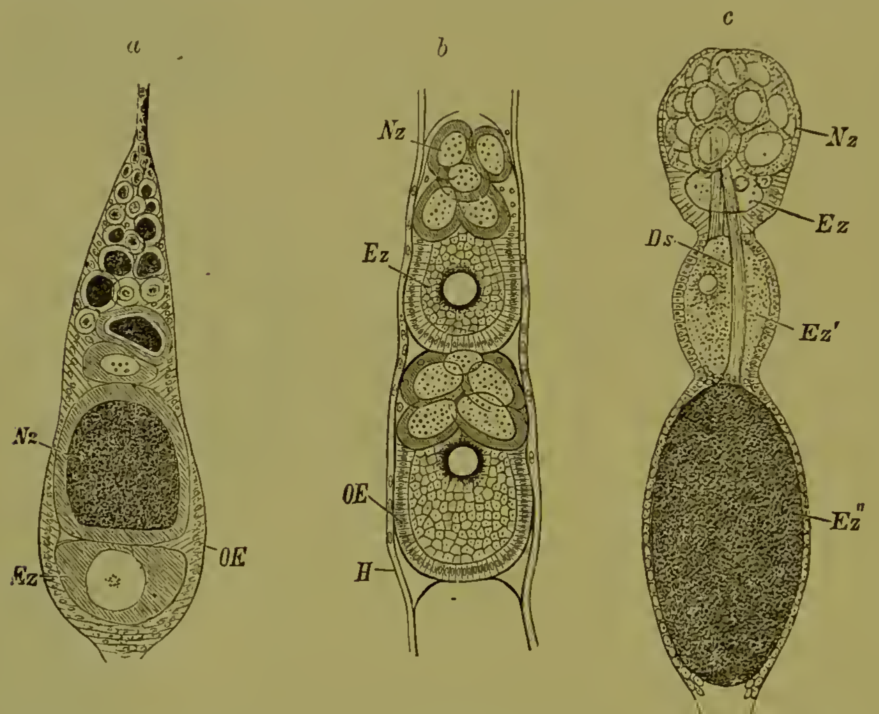



FIG. 453.—*a*, Egg tube of *Forficula*. *Nz*, Nutritive cells; *Ez*, ovum; *OE*, epithelium of the wall of the egg tube. *b*, Median part of the egg tube of a Moth. *Nz*, nutritive cells of the yolk-chamber; *Ez*, ovum in the germ-chamber; *H*, connective tissue investment, so-called serosa. *c*, Egg-tube of *Aphis platanoides* with three ovarian chambers (*Ez*—*Ez''*) and the terminal nutritive chamber with its cells *Nz*. *Ds*, yolk cord.

*Diptera* (*Cecidomyia*, *Miastor*, fig. 100), which can reproduce themselves while still in the larval stage, may be explained.

The **development** of the embryo takes place as a rule outside the body of the mother, and occupies a longer or shorter period of time, according to the temperature and the time of the year. The centrolecithal segmentation leads to the formation of a superficial blastoderm, which surrounds the ovum, and always consists of a single layer of cells. A part of this blastoderm, on that side of the ovum which the later history shows to be ventral, becomes thickened and sharply marked off from the rest, and forms the structure known as the *ventral plate*, which constitutes the first rudiment of the head and ventral half of the embryo.

In many cases (*Rhynchota Libellula*) the ventral plate grows out from a hill-like thickening of the blastoderm (fig. 454) into the interior of the yolk, so that an internal ventral plate arises, in the formation of which a portion, though a small one, of the external blastoderm participates. The ventral thickening, which gives rise to the ventral plate, is caused by long columnar cells, and is at first confined to a small portion of the egg; in *Hydrophilus* the posterior end (fig. 455, *a*). Inasmuch as its lateral edges become elevated

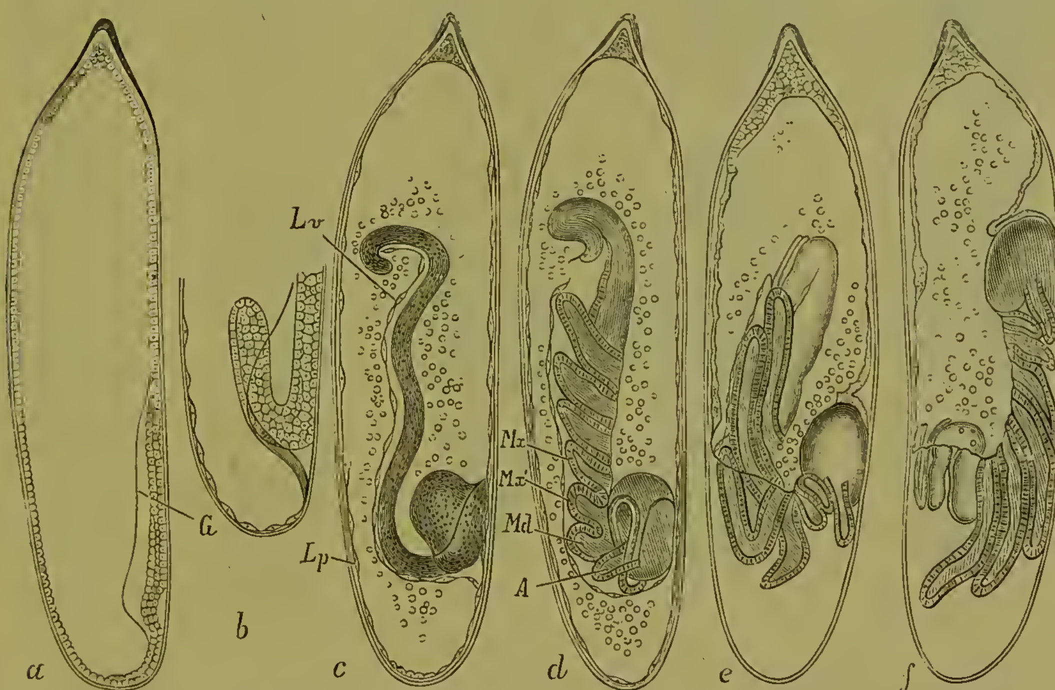



FIG. 454.—Embryonic development of *Calopteryx virgo* (after Al. Brandt). *a*, Commencing involution of the ventral plate. The blastoderm was at first one-layered and thickened at the poles. *G*, edge of ventral plate. *b*, Later stage of the involution. *c*, The embryonic membranes are developed; *Lp*, parietal (serosa); *Lv*, visceral (amnion) layer of the latter. *d*, The appendages have sprouted out on the ventral plate. *A*, Antenna; *Md*, mandible; *Mx'*, first maxilla; *Mx*, second maxilla (labium or lower lip). Then follow three pairs of legs. *e*, Eversion of the embryo which is protruded from the sheath of the visceral layer. *d*, Completion of the inversion; the hind end of the body is free; the yolk sac is on the dorsal surface.

and grow towards one another (fig. 455, *b*, *c*), the thickened ventral plate first assumes the form of a groove, and then, after the fusion of the lateral edges, becomes a canal, the lumen of which is soon obliterated. The roof only of this canal corresponds to the epiblast, while the cells of its floor and its sides give rise to the first rudiment of the mesoblast. At the edge of the so-called ventral plate, fresh folds are then formed; these lead to the formation of the embryonic membranes, which are so characteristic of insect development. In

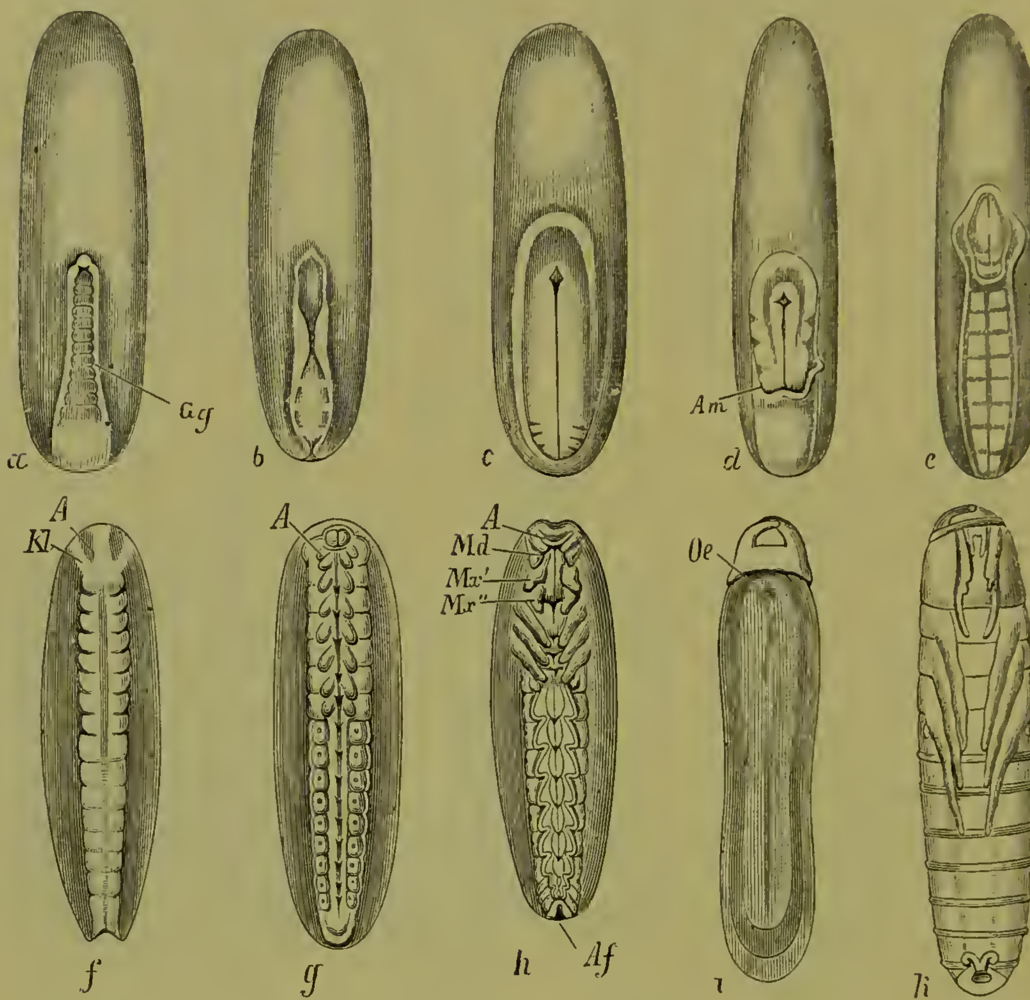



FIG. 455.—Development of the embryo of *Hydrophilus piceus* (after Kowalevski). *a*, Shield-like ventral plate with raised edges. *b*, The edges are already growing together in the middle. *c*, The groove is almost entirely closed. *d*, The tail fold of the embryonic membranes has grown over the posterior end of the closed groove and is gradually extending forward; *Am*, Amnion. *e*, The embryonic membranes have almost entirely grown over the embryo. *f*, The embryonic rudiment beneath the completely closed membranes; with seventeen primitive segments: *Kl*, Procephalic lobes; *A*, antennæ. *g*, The ventral plate extends along the whole length of the ventral surface. The bi-lobed upper lip is present, also the antennæ, (*A*) the jaws, and the first rudiments of the legs; rudimentary appendages are present on the seventh segment as prominences. On the abdominal segments there are round invaginations, the first rudiments of tracheæ; there is a longitudinal groove from mouth to anus. *h*, The ventral plate covers the whole ventral surface of the ovum; the openings of the invaginations (stigmata) have become small; rudimentary extremities are still present on the first abdominal segment. The ganglia of the ventral chain have appeared. *i*, Viewed from the dorsal surface the so-called dorsal plate has closed up to a tube; *Oe* is its opening. *k*, The embryo just before hatching seen from the ventral side.

*Hydrophilus* these folds grow together over the ventral plate from behind forwards, and fuse with one another, so as to give rise to an external and internal membrane, the former being called the serous membrane, and the latter the amnion (fig. 455, *d*, *e*).

Simultaneously with the above-mentioned appearance of the membranes (in other cases at an earlier stage of development) the ventral plate becomes divided into two symmetrical halves, the *germinal bands*, which become divided by transverse constrictions into segments (up to 17). First of all three *cephalic segments*, on which the oral appendages are subsequently developed, make their appearance behind the procephalic lobes, which bear the first rudiments of the antennæ. Behind these the rest of the *primitive segments* (*mesoblastic somites*) are successively marked off.

Inasmuch as the germinal bands become strongly contracted, their dorsally bent round, terminal portion becomes drawn more and more towards the lower part of the egg, while their lateral parts gradually grow round the yolk to form the dorsal surface of the embryo (fig. 455, *f*, *g*, *h*). With these changes the body of the embryo has assumed a closed form: it now possesses mouth and anus, the first rudiments of the internal organs and the external appendages of the segments, and is soon ready to escape from the egg and begin its independent life.

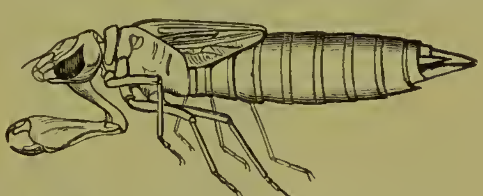


FIG. 456.—*Æschna* larva with rudimentary wings and mask.

In *Hydrophilus* and the *Phryganidæ*, peculiar differentiations appear on the dorsal surface, giving rise to a dorsal plate, which later on becomes folded, so as to form a dorsal canal (fig. 455, *i*).

The **post-embryonic development** takes place, as a rule, by means of metamorphosis, the form, organization and mode of life of the young animal, after hatching, being different from that of the sexually adult animal. It is only in the lowest forms, the partly parasitic *Aptera*, both sexes of which are without wings, that the young leave the egg as perfect animals (*Insecta ametabola*).

In those insects which pass through a metamorphosis, the manner and degree of the transformation differs greatly, so that the distinction of a complete and an incomplete metamorphosis, which was formerly employed, seems to be in a certain degree justified.

In the case of the incomplete metamorphosis (*Rhynchota*, *Orthoptera*) the development of the larva into the perfect winged insect presents a number of stages, during which the larva is capable of free locomotion and of nourishing itself. During these stages, which are marked by successive ecdyses, it gradually acquires wings and increases in size, the rudiments of the generative organs are further developed, and it becomes more and more like the winged insect. In the simplest case the mode of life and the organization of the young larvæ closely resemble those of the sexually adult animal, as for instance in the *Hemiptera* and *Orthoptera genuina*, but in other cases the adult and larva may differ considerably, although not so much so as in insects with complete metamorphosis; for instance, the larvæ of the Ephemeridæ and the Libellulidæ live in another medium and increase in size under different conditions of nourishment (fig. 456).

The metamorphosis is only said to be *complete* in those forms in which the larva passes through a quiescent stage, in which it is known as a *pupa* and does not take nourishment. With this stage

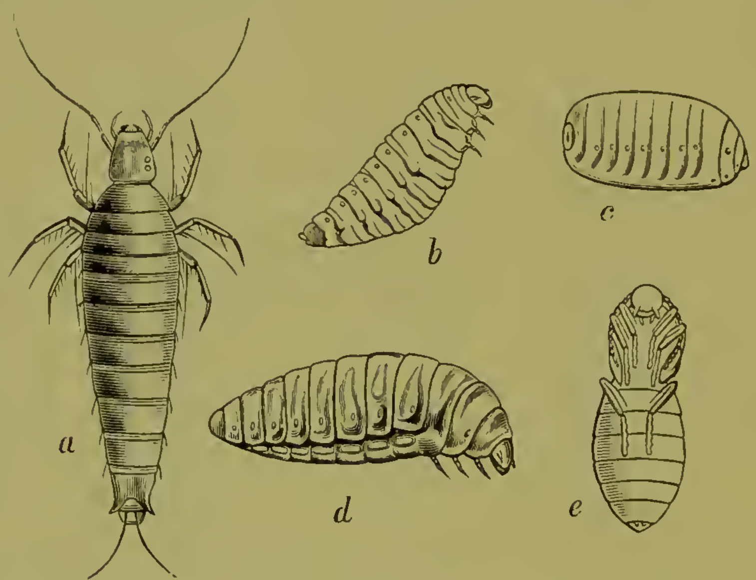



Fig. 457.—Metamorphosis of *Sitaris humeralis* (after Fabre). *a*, First larval form. *b*, Second larval form. *c*, Pseudo-pupa. *d*, Third larval form. *e*, Pupa.

the larval life ends and the life of the winged insect (*Imago*) begins. The larvæ of insects with complete metamorphosis differ from the sexual animal to such an extent in mode of life and nourishment, in the form of the body and in the whole organization, that though the parts of the body peculiar to the winged insect are prepared and established in larval life, yet a longer or shorter period of quiescence, in a certain sense a second embryonic period, seems necessary, during which the essential alterations of the internal organs, as well as the consolidation of the newly-established external parts, are effected (*hypermetamorphosis*, Meloidæ, fig. 457).

In the form of their body and the homonomous segmentation, the larvæ recall Annelids, with which they also often have in common the uniform segmentation of the ganglionic chain. Nevertheless, it is probable that only a proportionately few of the larval forms have preserved the primitive form, and have a phylogenetic significance (*Orthoptera*). In most cases the insect larvæ owe their special peculiarities to secondary adaptations. In exceptional cases, the metamorphosis may be distinguished by quite special larval forms, as for instance in the *Pteromalina* (*Platygaster*, *Teleas*), the eggs of which are laid in other insect larvæ (fig. 458).

The lowest, usually parasitic larvæ are quite vermiform, and are without limbs or a separate head, the latter being represented by the anterior rings of the body (*maggots* of *Diptera* and of numerous

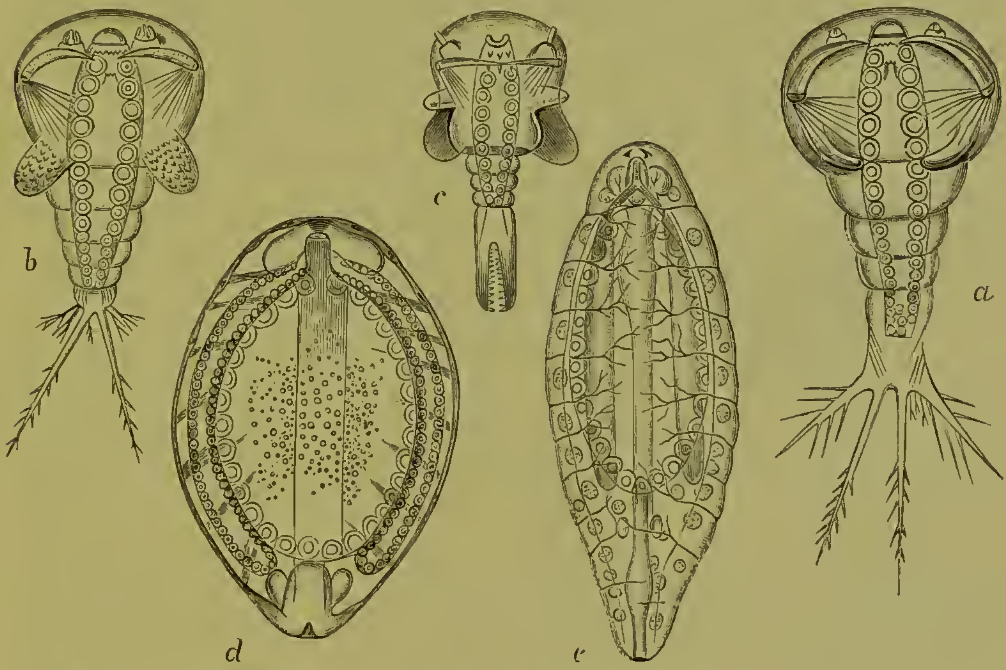



FIG. 458.—Larval forms of three species of *Platygaster* (after Ganin). *a*, *b*, *c*, Cyclops-like larval stages with claw-like jaws, cephalothoracic shield and abdomen. *d*, Second larval stage. *e*, Third larval stage.

*Hymenoptera*, fig. 66, *a*). In other cases there is indeed a separate cephalic region, but the following thoracic and abdominal segments are entirely without appendages. The larvæ of the *Neuroptera*, of many beetles, of the *Tenthredinidæ* and butterflies (caterpillars), have, on the contrary, jointed appendages on their three free thoracic segments, and frequently also a greater or less number of rudimentary appendages, the so-called prolegs, on their abdomen. There are two rudimentary antennæ on the heads of these larvæ, and a varying number of simple eyes. The mouth parts are, as a rule, adapted for biting, even when the adult animal has a suctorial tube, but, with the exception of the mandibles, they are usually rudimentary. The mode of nourishment of the larvæ varies very greatly; but their diet is for the most part vegetable, which stands in great abundance at the disposal of the quickly-growing body. The larva usually undergoes four or five, rarely a greater number of moults, and in the course of its growth gradually assumes the form of the winged insect, not in all cases by the direct transformation of parts already present, but sometimes only after essential processes of new formation.

In this respect, however, there are considerable differences, the extremes of which are represented in the *Diptera* by the genera *Corethra* and *Musca*. In the case of *Corethra*, the larval segments and the appendages of the head are transformed directly into the corresponding parts of the perfect insect, while after the last larval ecdysis the limbs and wings are formed from the *imaginal discs*. The imaginal discs are derived from the hypodermis of the larva. The muscles of the abdomen and the other systems of organs pass unaltered, or with but little alteration, into those of the adult animal. The thoracic muscles, on the contrary, originate as fresh formations from rows of cells already established in the egg. With these slight changes, the active life of the pupa and the small development of the fat body are in necessary correlation. In *Musca*, on the contrary, the pupa of which is quiescent and enclosed in a firm barrel-shaped membrane and contains a large fat body, the body of the adult animal, with the exception of the abdomen, arises by extensive transformations of the larva. The head and thorax are developed from imaginal discs, which, already established in the egg, become developed in the larva on the investing membrane of the nerves or tracheæ. It is not until the pupal stage that these discs grow together, and give rise to the head and thorax. Every thoracic segment is composed of two pairs of discs (a dorsal and a ventral), the appendages of which represent the later wings and legs. All the systems of organs of the larvæ are said to undergo a disruption during the protracted pupal stage as a result of the (recently, however, contested) process of so-called histolysis, and are replaced by new formations by aid of the fat body and the granular spheres arising from the latter.

FIG. 458 *f*.—Imago of *Platygaster* (after Ganin).

When the larva has attained a certain size and degree of development, *i.e.*, when it is fully grown and provided with the food material required for its future changes, in the form of the enormously developed fat body, it is ready to enter on the pupal stage. The larvæ of many insects prepare above or below the ground, by means of their spinning glands, a protective web, in which, after casting their skin, they enter the pupal stage (*Chrysalis*). The external parts of the body of the winged insect either lie against the common horny skin of the pupa, so that they are recognizable as such (*Lepidoptera*, *pupa obtecta*), or they already stand out freely from the body (*Coleoptera*, *pupa libera*). This distinction is, however, an unimportant one, since in the first case the limbs are free just after the ecdysis, and are only cemented afterwards by the hardening cuticular layer. If the pupa remains enclosed by the last larval skin (*Muscidæ*) it is termed *pupa coarctata*.

In all cases the body of the winged insect lies with its external parts sharply marked in the pupa, and the special object of the pupal life is to complete the changes of the internal organisation and the maturity of the sexual organs. When this is accomplished the winged insect bursts the pupal skin, forces its way out by means of antennæ, wings and legs, and expands those parts which have been folded together, under the influence of violent inspirations, by which the tracheæ become filled with air. The chitinous covering becomes harder and harder, the urinary secretion which has accumulated during the pupal sleep is ejected from the rectum. and the insect is capable of performing all the functions of the sexually adult animal.

The mode of life of insects is so varied that it is hardly possible to give a general account of it. The diet is both animal and vegetable, and is taken in the most varied forms, either solid or fluid, and fresh or decaying. Plants are especially subject to the attacks of insects and their larvæ, and there exists, perhaps, no *Phanerogam* which does not afford nourishment to one or more species of insects. On the other hand, insects seem useful or even necessary to the well-being of the vegetable world, for in many cases—*e.g.*, many flies, bees, and butterflies—they bring about fertilization by carrying the pollen to the stigmata of flowers.

The complex, often marvellous, and apparently intelligent actions performed by insects correspond to the perfection with which the vegetative organs discharge their functions. Such actions are largely carried out instinctively by the mechanism of the organisation, but they certainly in part depend upon psychical processes, since they presuppose memory and judgment, in connection with the highly-developed perceptive powers of the sense organs. The animal enters the world with instinct, but, in order to perform acts depending on memory and judgment, it must first acquire the necessary psychical conditions by sense perceptions and experience (*bees*). In the inherited organisation are latent all those capabilities which have been acquired in the gradual processes of phylogenetic modifications and at the expense of psychical forces, and have, at last, as the result of frequent use, become automatic and a pure mechanical property of the organism.

The instinctive and psychical manifestations tend directly to the preservation of the individual by providing ways and means for the acquisition of food and for protection, but there is a special instinct tending to the preservation of the species and the care of the young. The most simple example of the latter is to be found in the judicious deposition of the eggs in protected localities, and on plants suitable for the nourishment of the just-hatched animal. The actions of the mother become more complicated in those cases in which the larvæ develop in specially prepared places, and have, as soon as hatched, to meet with the requisite amount of suitable nutritive material (*Sphex sabulosa*). But most wonderful are the instincts of some of the *Orthoptera* and *Hymenoptera*, which concern themselves about the fate of their young after they are hatched and carry nourishment to them during their growth. In such cases a great number of individuals become associated together for the common welfare in the so-called animal communities, in which there is a marked division of labour among the different members; males, females and sexually aborted forms or neuters (termites, ants, wasps, bees).

Some insects are capable of producing sounds,* which we must in part regard as the expression of an internal disposition. We cannot, however, thus regard the buzzing sounds produced during flight by *Hymenoptera* and *Diptera* (vibration of wings and of the foliaceous appendages within the tracheæ), or the sounds like those of a rattle which are produced in numerous beetles by the friction of certain body segments against one another (pronotum and mesonotum of the *Lamellicornia*) or with the inner sides of the wing-covers, although it is possible that such sounds are of some use for defence against hostile attacks. Peculiar vocal organs, which produce sounds for the purpose of attracting the females, are found in the male *Cicada* on the abdomen, and in the males of the *Gryllidæ* and

* H. Landois, "Die Ton-und Stimmapparate der Insecten." Leipzig, 1867.

*Locustidæ*, at the base of the anterior wings. Both sexes of the *Acrididæ* also produce similar though feebler chirping sounds, by rubbing the femora of the posterior legs against the edge of the wing-covers.

Insects are almost universally distributed, from the equator to the extreme limits of vegetation; certainly with a considerable diminution in the number of species, and in their size and beauty of colour. Some forms are truly cosmopolitan, *e.g.*, *Vanessa cardui*. Fossil insects are found in increasing numbers of species, from the carboniferous formation to the tertiary period. The best preserved are those enclosed in amber and the impressions in the lithographic slate.

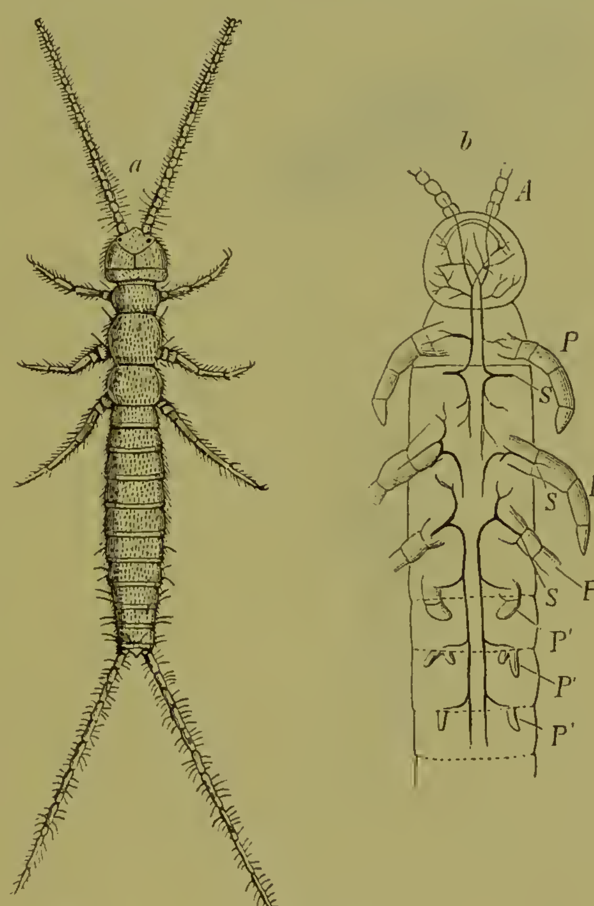


FIG. 459.—*a*, *Campodea staphylinus* (after J. Lubbock). *b*, Anterior half of the body of *C. Fragilis* (after Palmén). *Tr*, Trachea; *S*, stigmata; *P*, legs; *P'*, rudimentary abdominal feet.

## *Order* 1.—THYSANURA* (including COLLEMBOLA).

*Wingless insects, with hairy or scaly body covering; with rudimentary masticating mouth parts and setiform anal filaments, which may serve as a springing apparatus, at the end of the ten-segmented abdomen. Development without metamorphosis.*

The *Thysanura* seem to have preserved most completely the primitive character of the oldest insect forms. The elongated *Campodidæ* particularly recall certain Myriapods, especially since they may have rudimentary feet on the abdomen (fig. 459, *a*, *b*). On this account the *Campodidæ* have been regarded as ancestral

* John Lubbock, "Monograph of the Collembola and Thysanura." London, 1873.

forms of the insects. The head bears tolerably long setiform antennæ, and, as a rule, aggregated ocelli, in place of the facetted eyes. The mouth-parts consist of mandibles and maxillæ, which can be retracted into a sort of atrium. In this case an apparatus for attachment with gland is often present on the ventral side of the first abdominal segment. Tracheæ are completely absent in many *Collembola* (*Podura*), while in *Campodea* they present very simple relations. There are only three pairs of stigmata, and the trunks which spring from them do not anastomose. On the penultimate abdominal segment there are often setiform filaments, which when forcibly bent ventralwards serve as a springing apparatus (springing fork fig. 460, *a*).

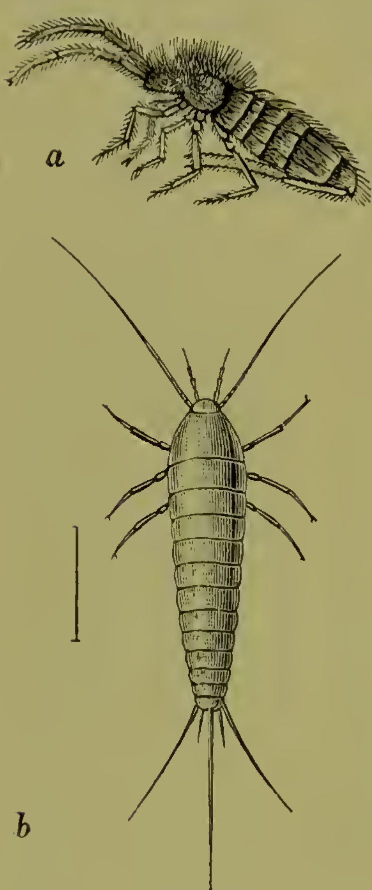

a
b

Fig. 460.—*a*, *Podura villosa*. *b*, *Lepisma saccharina* (règne animal).

Fam. **Campodidæ** (fig. 459). The body is elongated, and the abdomen has ten segments and ends with two filaments. *Japyx gigas* Br., Cyprus. *J. solifugus* Hal., *Campodea staphylinus* Westw.

Fam. **Poduridæ**, spring-tails (fig. 460, *a*). The body is stout, globular, or elongated. The abdomen is usually reduced to a few segments, and has a ventral organ for attachment, and ends with a long, ventrally-bent fork, used in springing. *Smynthurus signatus* Latr., *Podura aquatica* Deg.

Fam. : **Lepismidæ** (fig. 460, *b*). Body arched, elongated, and thickly covered with metallic shining scales. The abdomen has ten segments, and terminates with a long median seta and two weaker lateral seteæ. *Lepisma saccharina* L., *Machilis polypoda* L.

### *Order* 2.—Orthoptera.*

*Insects with an incomplete metamorphosis, with two usually unequal pairs of wings. Jaws adapted for biting.*

The name of this order, which was borrowed from the wings, is by no means suitable for all the forms included, and a very great variety prevails, both in the external appearance and in the internal

* A. Serville, "Histoire naturelle des Insectes Orthoptères." Paris, 1839.
T. De Charpentier, "Orthoptera descripta et depicta." Leipzig, 1841.
L. H. Fischer, "Orthoptera Europæa." Leipzig, 1853.

organisation. The head usually bears long, multiarticulate antennæ, facetted eyes of considerable size, and also simple eyes. The oral apparatus is adapted for masticating and biting. On the under-lip (*labium*) the four lobes, and sometimes also their supports (*stipites*), remain separate from one another. The prothorax, the size of which is very variable, is always freely moveable, and separated from the mesothorax by an articulation. The form and structure of the wings is extraordinarily variable. The anterior wings frequently have the form of coriaceous wing covers, or, at any rate, are stronger and thicker than the larger posterior wings, which can be folded together. In other cases, both pairs of wings are similarly formed and have a net-like appearance, like those of the Neuroptera. The legs also vary in their form, the tarsus consisting rarely of two, usually of three, four or five joints.

The abdomen usually preserves the full number of segments, and ends with caudal appendages having the form of pincers, stylets, filaments or setæ; ten segments usually take part in its construction, the genital opening being on the ninth, and the anus on the tenth. On the abdomen of the female there is sometimes an ovipositor (*Saltatoria*). This springs from the penultimate and antepenultimate segment, and consists on either side of an upper and a lower valve, and an inner spinous rod lying on the upper valve and passing along a groove on the upper edge of the lower valve.

Many *Orthoptera* have a dilatation of the œsophagus which may be called a crop, and a gizzard; this is followed by the chylific ventricle, which often has some cæcal appendages at its anterior end. The salivary glands are often extraordinarily large, and are provided with a vesicular reservoir. The number of the Malpighian vessels is, with a few exceptions, very considerable. The ventral ganglionic cord presents three larger thoracic ganglia, and five, six, or seven smaller abdominal ganglia. Some *Orthoptera* possess tympanic auditory organs. The generative organs consist, as a rule, of numerous egg tubes and testicular sacs. Large glands open into their efferent ducts. A bursa copulatrix is absent.

All *Orthoptera* undergo an incomplete metamorphosis. The two sexes are distinguished, not only by the differences of the external copulatory organs and by the size of the abdomen, but sometimes by the size of the wings (*Periplaneta*), or by the absence of the wings in the female (*Heterogamia*, *Pneumora*); and in the jumping *Orthoptera* (*Saltatoria*) by the development of a voice organ on the body of the male. The chirping sounds produced by this organ probably serve to call the female to the place, and to excite her to copulation. The female also, in rare cases, has the voice apparatus perfectly developed (*Ephippigera* among the *Locustidæ*). The eggs are laid under very various conditions—sometimes in the earth, sometimes on external objects in air in damp places, or in water. The embryonic development has been most accurately traced out in the *Libellulidæ*, in which an internal ventral plate is formed. The larvæ of the winged forms leave the egg without any trace of wings, and either agree with the sexual animal in mode of life and form of body, excepting in the number of joints on the antennæ and of the corneal facets, or differ from it considerably in these relations (*Ephemeridæ*, *Libellulidæ*) in that they live in quite another medium. Most of them, in the fully developed state, feed on fruits and leaves, and a few on animal substances.

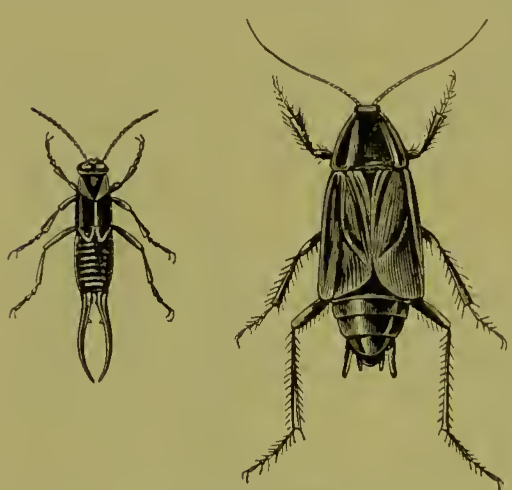


Fig. 461.—*a*, *Forficula auricularia*. *b*, *Blatta orientalis* ♂ (règne animal).

## Sub-order 1.—Orthoptera genuina.

Front wings small and hard, sometimes coriaceous for the protection of the hind wings and the back. The hind wings are membranous and broad, and can be folded together longitudinally. The maxillæ with horny internal lobe toothed at the point and covered by the helmet-shaped membranous outer lobe (*galea*), with five-jointed palp. The appendages of the last abdominal segment are developed; the inferior stylets are sometimes wanting. The females often have an ovipositor. The larvæ always feed on solid substances and always live on land.

### Tribe 1. **Cursoria.** With running legs.

Fam: **Forficulidæ**, Earwigs (*Dermatoptera*). Elongated body, with four unequal wings, of which the anterior are short horny wing-covers, which lie horizontally on the body and cover the thin membranous hind wings, which can be folded by means of joints (fig. 461, *a*). The abdomen has nine segments and ends with a pincer, the arms of which are strongly curved in the male. They feed on vegetable matters, especially on fruit, and conceal themselves by day in their haunts, from which they emerge at dusk. *Forficula auricularia* L., *Labidura gigantea* Fabr.

Fam. **Blattidæ.** The body flat, elongated oval, with a broad shield-like prothorax, long multiarticulate antennæ and powerful locomotory legs, with spiny tibiæ and five-jointed tarsi. The head is covered by the large prothoracic shield and is as a rule without ocelli. External lobe twice as large as the internal. The front wings are large wing-covers which overlap one another, but these, together with the hind wings, may be absent in the female (*Heterogamia*) or in both sexes. They live on solid animal matter and avoid the light in the day, living in dark hiding-places. Many species are distributed over all the world, and in great numbers cause much damage in bakeries and storehouses. The tropical forms are especially large. The females lay their eggs in cases a short time before the hatching of the young. These capsules in *Periplaneta orientalis* enclose about forty eggs, arranged in two rows. In this animal the metamorphosis is said to last four years. *Periplaneta orientalis* L., common cockroach, said to have been introduced into Europe from the East (fig. 461, *b*). *P. americana* Fabr., *Blatta laponica* L., *B. germanica* Fabr.

Tribe 2. **Gressoria.** With ambulatory legs.

Fam. **Mantidæ** (Fangheuschrecken). Anterior predatory legs, the jagged tibiæ of which can be folded against the toothed femora. They prey on other insects, and inhabit warm and hot countries; only the smaller species extend

FIG. 462.—*Gryllotalpa vulgaris* (règne animal).

to South Europe. The females lay their eggs in clumps on plants, and surround them with a tough secretion, which hardens so as to form a capsule. This secretion is produced by the filiform appendages of the oviduct. *Mantis religiosa* L., praying insect, in South Europe.

Fam. **Phasmidæ** (Gespenstheuschrecken). The body elongated, as a rule linear, with long ambulatory legs. The tarsi have five joints, and bear a large lobe for attachment between the terminal claws. Wing-covers and wings are often rudimentary or altogether wanting. The anal processes are not jointed. They live in the tropics and feed on leaves. The wingless forms resemble dried twigs, the winged dried leaves. *Bacteria calamus* Fabr., Surinam. *Phasma fasciatum* Gray, Brasil. *Phyllium siccifolium* L., East Indies.

Tribe 3. **Saltatoria.** With jumping legs.

Fam. **Acridiidæ** (Grasshoppers). With short filiform antennæ. The anterior wings are stiff and only a little broader than the anterior division of the hind wings, which during quiescence are folded up like a fan and completely covered by the front wings. The auditory organs lie on either side on the metathorax. The female has no projecting ovipositor, but has an upper and lower genital valve, each composed of two horny stylets. The males can produce a chirping sound by rubbing the toothed internal edge of the posterior femora against the projecting nervures of the wing-covers. In the female, also, this stridulating apparatus is present, though in a rudimentary form, and not more developed than in the male larvæ. The females of many species are able to produce weak chirping sounds. They live principally in fields, meadows and mountains, the larvæ being present in spring and summer, and the sexual animals in late summer and in autumn. They fly with a rattling sound, and as a rule, only for short distances. They feed on plants. *Tettix subulata* L., *T. bipunctata* Charp., *Œdipoda migratoria* L., South and East Europe. Enormous swarms migrate together, and distribute themselves in corn-fields, causing much damage. *Acridium tataricum* L., South Europe.

Fam. **Locustidæ** (Laubheuschrecken). The body is elongated and usually coloured grass green or brown. The antennæ are very slender, and the wing covers usually lie vertically on the body. The auditory organs are in the tibia of the front legs. The females have a projecting sabre-shaped ovipositor, which consists of a right and left double valve on the eighth and ninth segments; between the valves there is, on either side, a style which arises on the ninth segment. The eggs are deposited in the earth in late summer or in autumn, and there pass the winter. The larvæ are hatched in the spring, and after many months develop into the winged sexual animal late in the summer. The *Locustidæ* live in forests and bushes, or in fields on the tops of grass stalks and shrubs. *Locusta viridissima* L., *L. cantans* Charp., Switzerland. *Ephippigera perforata* Ross., Italy and South Germany.

FIG. 463.—*Gryllus campestris* ♂ (règne animal).

Fam. **Gryllidæ** (Grabheuschrecken). Of thick cylindrical body form, with thick free head. Antennæ usually long and setiform; wing covers (anterior wings) short, placed horizontally, and the hind wings, when rolled up, project far beyond them. The anterior legs are sometimes digging feet.

The male gives rise to shrill chirping sounds by rubbing his two wing-covers, which present the same structure, against each other, and these sounds probably attract the female. During copulation the male attaches to the female genital opening a spermatophore, which, as in the *Crustacea*, is carried about till it is empty. The females have a straight cylindrical ovipositor, which is spindle-shaped at the end; more rarely they are without an ovipositor. The *Gryllidæ* mostly live beneath the earth in holes and passages, and feed on roots and animal matters. The larvæ are hatched in summer and pass the winter in the earth. *Gryllotalpa vulgaris* Latr., mole cricket (fig. 462). In gardens and fields; very harmful. They lay two hundred to three hundred eggs, which they place, enclosed in a mass of plastered earth, at the end of their subterranean passages. *Gryllus campestris* L., field-cricket (fig. 463). *G. domesticus* L., house-cricket. *G. sylvestris*. Fabr.

## Sub-order 2.—Orthoptera Pseudo-Neuroptera.

The wings thin and membranous, both pairs being similarly constructed. They usually cannot be folded together, and possess a network of nervures more or less close.

Tribe 1. **Physopoda.** The body small, narrow and flat, with tolerably similar wings, covered with delicate hairs. The mandibles are setiform, and the mouth parts are suctorial.

Fam. *Thripsidæ*, *Thrips physapus* L., found in the flowers of chickory.

Tribe 2. **Corrodentia.** Wings with few nervures, and sometimes quite without transverse nervures. The head has strong mandibles with toothed internal edges. The first maxillæ with hooked masticatory portion, the point of which is furnished with two teeth, and with membranous external lobe. The *Corrodentia* feed on dried vegetable and animal substances.

Fam. **Psocidæ**, booklice. *Troctes pulsatorius* L., found in collections of insects and between papers. *Psocus domesticus* Burm., *Ps. strigosus* Curt.

Fam. **Termitidæ**,* white ants. The antennæ have from eighteen to twenty joints, with two ocelli in front of the eyes and strong mandibles. The delicate wings, which are of equal size, lie in rest parallel to the body.

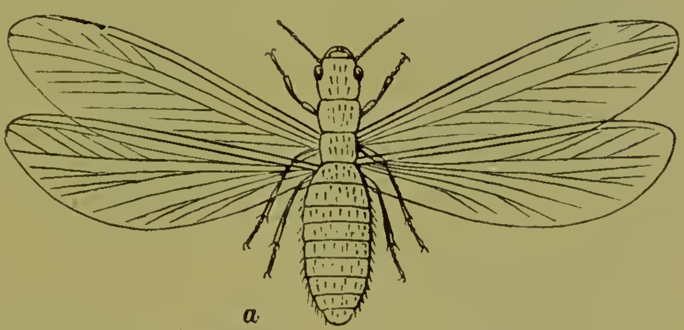


Fig. 464.—*a*, Male of *Termes lucifugus* (règne animal).

The Termites (fig. 464) live together in communities, composed of individuals of different kinds. The winged forms are the sexual individuals; the apterous forms are partly the larvæ and pupæ of the sexual forms, and partly fully developed (in species of *Calotermes* and *Termes lucifugus*) sexually aborted males and females (neuters). The latter are divided again into soldiers, which look after the protection of the community and are provided with large quadrangular head and very strong mandibles, and workers with small rounded heads and less projecting mandibles. These individuals undertake the other work of the community. In species of *Eutermes*, every trace of sexual organs may be wanting in the neuters. Some species live in South Europe, but the greater number are found in the hot parts of Africa and America, where they are notorious for their ravages and their nests. The Termites make their dwellings either in the trunks of trees, often only beneath the bark, or on the surface of the earth in the form of hills, in which they excavate passages and cavities. The nests of species of *Calotermes* are the most incomplete; they only gnaw passages in wood, which mainly run in the

* H. Hagen, "Monographie der Termiten." *Lin. Entomol.*, Tom. X. and XIV. Ch. Lespès, "Recherches sur l'organisation et les mœurs du Termite lucifuge." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.* IV. sér., Tom. V., 1856.

Fr. Müller, "Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Termiten." *Jen. nat. Zeitschr.* Tom. VII., 1873.

direction of the axis of the tree. There is no special place for the queen. The walls of the passages are usually coated with a thin layer of excrement. In species of *Eutermes*, in which the soldiers have pointed heads, the passages are so close to one another that the wood partition between them disappears, and the wall of excrement alone separates them. When the nests project outside

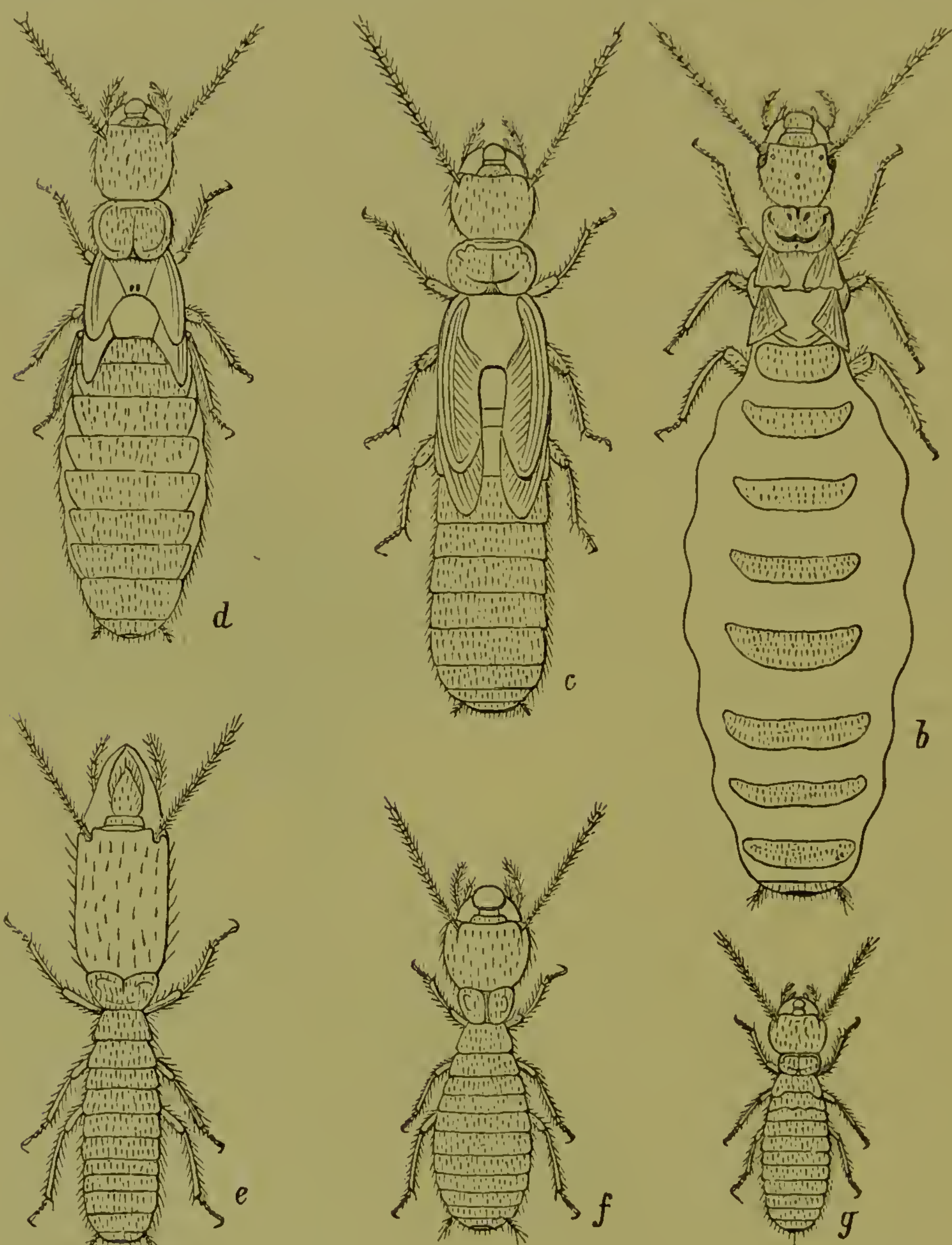



FIG. 464.—*b*, Pregnant female (queen) of *Termes lucifugus*. *c*, Pupa. *d*, Pupa of the second form. *e*, Soldier. *f*, Worker. *g*, Larva. (After Ch. Lespès).

the tree, they form the so-called spherical tree-nests. There are also nests which are attached to trees from outside, and are built of earth or clay. Other species of *Eutermes* make their nests in holes in the earth beneath the roots of Palms. Some, as *Anoplotermes pacificus*, build hills of earth. In this species, soldiers are absent; the males and females leave the community shortly after they have cast their pupal skin, probably copulate after they return from their flight to the nest, and then lose their wings, retaining only the basal stump.

The males remain behind in the community, as according to the works of Smeathman, Lespès, Bates, etc., a king is said to remain always in the company of the queen. After copulation the queen, which remains in the community, swells up to an enormous size on account of the enlargement of her ovary, and begins to lay the eggs frequently in special places in the nest. They are at once carried away by the workers. *Termes lucifugus* Ross., South Europe. *T. fatale* L., in tropical Africa, builds hills from 10 to 12 feet high. *Calotermes flavicollis* Fabr., South Europe.

Tribe 3: **Amphibiotica.** The larvæ live in water and possess tracheal gills.

Fam. **Perlidæ.** Body elongated and flat, with laterally placed eyes, three ocelli and setiform antennæ. The wings are unequal, and the posterior region of the broad hind wings can be folded downwards. The abdomen has ten segments and two long segmented filaments. The wings are often reduced in the males. The female carries the eggs for a time in a depression of the ninth abdominal segment, and finally deposits them in water. The larvæ live beneath stones. They usually have tracheal gills on the thorax, and feed principally on the larvæ of *Ephemeridæ*. *Nemura nebulosa* L., *Perla bicaudata* L., *P.* (*Pteronarcys*) *reticulata* Burm., with tufted gills. Found in Siberia.

Fam. **Ephemeridæ.** May flies. Body slender, and soft-skinned, with hemispherical eyes, three ocelli and short setiform antennæ. The front wings are large, the posterior small and rounded, sometimes fused with the anterior or altogether absent. The mouth parts are rudimentary. The males have very long front legs. The abdomen has ten segments and terminates with three long anal filaments, of which the median one may be absent. The penultimate abdominal segment of the male has two jointed copulatory forceps. The May flies live only a short time in the winged stage, taking no nourishment and devoting themselves entirely to the business of reproduction. We often find swarms of them in the air on warm summer evenings and the next morning see their dead bodies lying in quantities on the ground. The larvæ live at the bottom of clear water and feed on other insects. They have a large head with powerful mandibles and toothed maxillæ. On the abdomen they bear six to seven pairs of swinging plates, which function as tracheal gills, and at the end of the abdomen they have three long feather-like caudal setæ. The larvæ moult frequently (in *Chloëon* more than twenty times) and, according to Swammerdam, require three years for the passage into the winged insect. After the ecdysis of the pupal skin, which is provided with the rudiments of wings, the

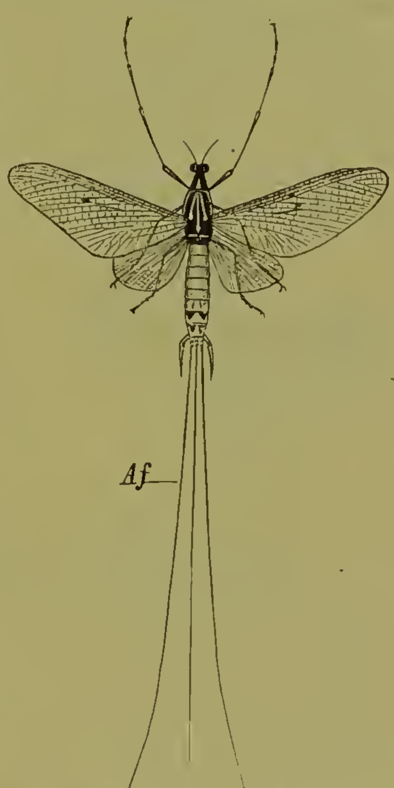


FIG. 465.—*Ephemera vulgata* (règne animal); *Af*, Anal filaments.

winged insect, which is now in the subimago stage, undergoes another ecdysis and becomes an imago. *Ephemera vulgata* L. (fig. 465). *Palingenia longicauda* Oliv.

Fam. **Libellulidæ.** Dragon flies. Large slenderly-built insects with freely moveable, transversely cylindrical head, short six- to seven-jointed thin and pointed antennæ, and four large net-like latticed wings. The mouth parts are powerfully developed, and are covered by the large upper lip. The maxillæ have fused horny lobe, and single-jointed sickle-shaped palp. The labium has a simple or divided internal lobe and separate outer lobes fused with the bi-jointed palp. The abdomen has ten joints, and on the last segment two unjointed anal styles opposed to one another, so as to form a sort of forceps. They live near water, and feed on other insects. The two sexes are usually of different colours, and their flight is rapid and prolonged. During copulation the male clasps the prothorax of the female with his abdominal forceps, while she bends her abdomen towards the base of his abdomen. Here is placed the copulatory organ, which is remote from the genital opening, and is filled with sperm prior to copulation. The larvæ live in water and are predaceous. The lower lip is modified to form a special predatory apparatus (the mask) (fig. 456). Many of them breathe by means of tracheal gills, which are placed at the end of the abdomen or in the rectum. *Calopteryx virgo* L., *Agrion puella* L., *Æschna grandis* L., *Libellula vulgata, flaveola* L.

FIG. 466.—*Panorpa communis* (règne animal).

## *Order* 3.—Neuroptera.*

*Insects with biting (sometimes also suctorial) mouth parts, with free prothorax and membranous wings, the nervures of which form a net-work. The metamorphosis is complete.*

Most *Neuroptera* have an outward resemblance to the *Libellulidæ* and *Ephemeridæ*, while others resemble the *Lepidoptera* in their scaly wings. The two pairs of wings are usually similar and membranous, and their size is almost equal. They are traversed by a close network of nervures which, however, differs essentially from the nervation of the *Neuroptera*-like *Orthoptera*. The front wings never have the form of wing-covers, but the hind-wings can sometimes be folded together and sometimes not. They may be covered with scales and hairs (*Phryganidæ*). The mouth parts present a greater approximation to the Beetles, in that the labium only rarely shows any trace of a median slit, the two pairs of lobes being fused to a single plate. In one group (*Phryganidæ*) we find suctorial mouth parts. The mandibles in this case are aborted, and the labium and maxillæ fuse to form a tube. As a rule the antennæ are many-

* E. Pictet, " Histoire naturelle des Neuropterès." Genf 1834.

† E. Brauer und Fr. Löw, " Neuroptera Austriaca." Wien, 1857. Brauer. " Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Verwandlung der Neuropteren. *Verhand. der zool.-bot. Gesellschaft zu Wien.* Tom IV. und V.

jointed, filiform or setiform, the eyes of medium size, and the tarsuses five-jointed. The prothorax is always freely moveable, and the abdomen is composed of eight or nine segments. The nervous system is similar to that of the Orthoptera, and consists of clearly distinct thoracic and abdominal ganglia. There is always a muscular gizzard on the digestive canal (*Myrmeleontidæ, Panorpidæ*). A sucking stomach is found only in the *Hemerobidæ*. Six to eight long Malpighian tubes arise from the hindgut. The metamorphosis is always complete. The larvæ prey on other animals, and are provided with biting or sucking forceps (formed from the mandibles and maxillæ). They pass into a quiescent pupal stage, in which the parts of the winged insect can already be made out. The pupa is often surrounded with a cocoon, but possesses the power of locomotion to a certain degree, since before the animal passes out of the pupal stage it ceases to be quiescent and seeks out a place suitable for development. Fossil remains are found in tertiary formations and in amber.

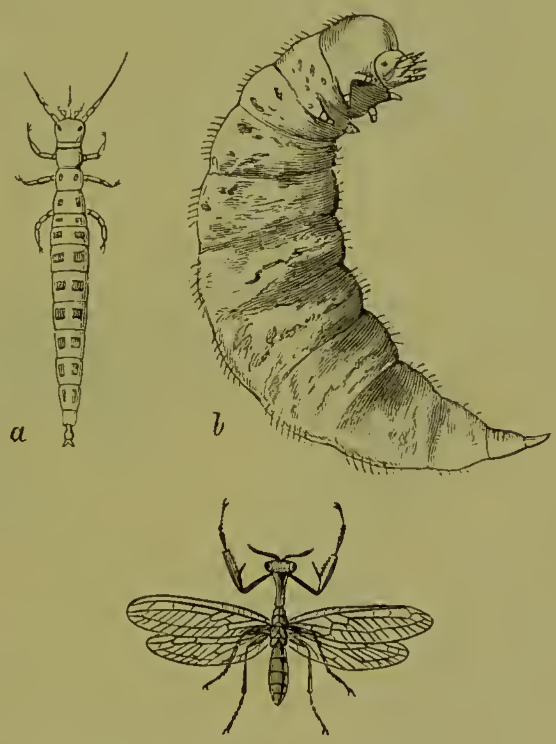



FIG. 467.—*a*, Larva of *Mantispa styriaca* after hatching. *b*, The same before the pupal stage (after F. Brauer). *c*, *Mantispa pagana* (règne animal).

Sub-order 1. **Planipennia.** Front and hind wings similar, never capable of being folded. The mouth parts are powerful and adapted for mastication.

Fam. **Sialidæ.** With large head bent obliquely forwards, and projecting hemispherical facetted eyes. The wings, when at rest, overlap one another like the slates on a roof. The larvæ have biting mouth-parts, with four-jointed maxillary palps and three-jointed labial palps. *Sialis lutaria* L., *Corydalis cornuta* L., *Raphidia ophiopsis* Schum. camel-neck flies.

Fam. **Panorpidæ** (Schnabelfliegen). The head is small and placed vertically; the multiarticulate antennæ are placed in the frontal region beneath the ocelli. The oral region is prolonged in the form of a beak. The wings are long and narrow, and similar to each other. The larvæ are like caterpillars. They have thirteen segments and a heart-shaped head, and biting mouth-parts. They live in damp earth, where they dig horseshoe-shaped passages, and are transformed into pupæ in oval cavities. *Panorpa communis* L. (fig. 466). *Bittacus tipularius* Fabr.

Fam. **Hemerobidæ** (Florfliegen). Head vertical; antennæ filiform. The two pairs of wings are transparent like glass and are nearly equal in size. The larvæ suck insects and spiders. *Mantispa pagana* Fabr. Anterior legs predatory; prothorax much elongated (fig. 467, *a*, *b*, *c*). The larvæ, after eight months' fasting, bore their way by means of their sucking forceps into the ovisacs of spiders, and suck out the eggs and the young. After the first moult, the legs are reduced to short stumps, and the body becomes like a Hymenopteran maggot. When about to enter the pupal stage, they spin a cocoon in the ovisac, and strip off the larval skin in the middle of June. The pupa breaks through the cocoon and moves freely about till it casts its skin and is transformed into the winged insect. *Chrysopa perla* L. The eggs have long stalks. The larvæ have sickle-shaped suctorial forceps, feed on Aphides and spin globular cocoons. *Hemerobius lutescens* Fabr. The larvæ feed on Aphides. *Osmylus maculatus* Fabr., *Nemoptera* (*Nematoptera* Burm.) *coa* L., Asia Minor and Turkey.

Fam. **Myrmeleontidæ** (Ant-lions). With large vertically-placed head: antennæ knobbed at the ends; prothorax short and narrow; mesothorax very large. Wings of equal size. The larvæ with toothed sucking pincers composed of mandibles and maxillæ, and short broad abdomen, live in light

FIG. 468.—*a*, *Myrmeleon formicarius* (règne animal). *b*, Its larva.

sandy soil, in which they hollow out funnels. Before entering the pupal stage they spin a globular envelope for themselves (fig. 468). *Myrmeleon formicarius* L., *M. formicalynx* Fabr., *Palpares libelluloides* L., South Europe. *Ascalaphus italicus* Fabr.

Sub-order 2. **Trichoptera.***—Wings covered with hairs or scales; the hind wings can as a rule be folded. The mouth parts with aborted mandibles; the maxillæ and the labium fuse to form a kind of suctorial proboscis. In many cases (*Oestropsidæ* Brauer) the maxillæ and labium as well as the mandibles become aborted during the pupal stage.

Fam. **Phryganidæ** (spring-flies). The small vertically-placed head with long setiform antennæ and hemispherical projecting eyes. The wings are covered with scales, and have but few transverse veins. They lie on the back in a tectiform manner. The larvæ live in water in tubular cases, which, in

* J. Pictet, "Recherches pour servir à l'histoire et l'anatomie des Phryganides," Génève, 1834.

H. Hagen. "Synopsis of the British Phryganidæ," *Entomol. Annual* for 1859, 1860, 1861.

*Hydropsyche* and *Rhyacophila*, are fastened to stones. In the walls of these cases there are sand grains, bits of plants and empty snail shells. The larvæ have biting mouth parts and filiform tracheal gills on the body segments. They project their horny head and thoracic segments, with their three pairs of legs, from these tubes and crawl about. The pupa leaves the case, which serves also as a pupal skin, and develops into the winged insect out of the water. The perfect insect resembles the *Lepidoptera* in many respects, and lives near water on leaves, and the stems of trees. The female lays her eggs in clumps enclosed in a gelatinous case on stones and leaves near water. *Phryganea striata* L. (fig. 469). *Mystacides quadrifasciatus* Fabr., *Hydropsyche variabilis* Pict.

## *Order* 4.—**Strepsiptera.***

*Insects with rudimentary anterior wings rolled up at the points and large hind wings which can be folded longitudinally. The mouth parts are rudimentary. In the female there are neither wings nor legs. The larvæ are parasitic in the body of Hymenoptera.*

The mouth parts are reduced in the adult sexual animal, and

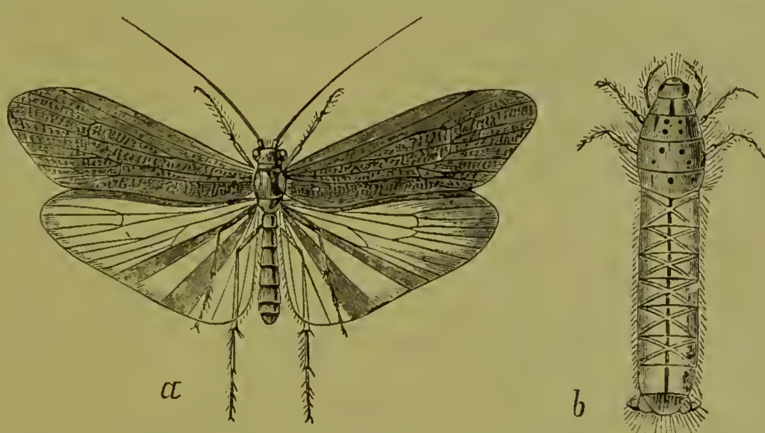


FIG. 469.—*a*, *Phryganea striata*. *b*, The larva freed from its case (règne animal).

consist of two pointed mandibles which overlap one another, and small maxillæ, which are fused with the lower lip and are provided with two-jointed palps. The prothorax and mesothorax are two very short rings, but the metathorax is unusually elongated, and covers the base of the abdomen, which consists of nine segments. The males possess small rolled-up wing covers, and very large hind wings, which can be folded longitudinally like a fan. The females have no eyes, and remain through life without wings or legs like maggots; they never leave their pupal skin nor their parasitic

* W. Kirby, "Strepsiptera, a new order of Insects," *Transact. Linn. Soc.*, Tom X.

v. Siebold, "Ueber Xenos sphecidarum und dessen Schmarotzer," Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte der wirbellosen Thiere, 1839.

v. Siebold, "Ueber Strepsiptera," Archiv für Naturgesch., Tom IX., 1843.

Curtis, "British Entomology," London, 1849.

habitat in the abdomen of wasps and humble bees (*Bombyliidæ*) from which they only protrude the anterior part of their body. In copulation the males are said to open by means of their copulatory organ the dorsal tube of the female, which is at first closed. The ovaries have no oviduct, and continue as it seems at an earlier stage of development, since they—probably like those of the viviparous Cecidomyia larvæ—produce eggs. The eggs fall freely into the body cavity, are fertilized and develop (perhaps sometimes parthenogenetically) into larvæ, which pass out through the above-mentioned dorsal canal and become attached to larvæ of bees and wasps (fig. 470). In this larval state they are able to move about and possess, like the young larvæ of *Cantheridæ*, three well-developed pairs of legs, and two caudal setæ on the abdomen. They bore their way into the body of their new host. About eight days later they undergo an ecdysis, and change to an apodal cylindrical maggot, which becomes a pupa within the Hymenopteran pupa, and as such bores its way out with its head from the abdomen of the latter. The males leave the pupal skin and seek the females. They seem to live only a short time.

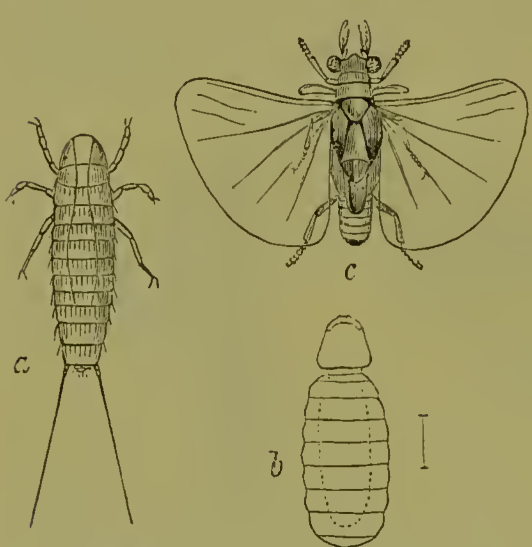



FIG. 470.—*Stylops Childreni* (after Kirby). *a*, Larva. *b*, Female. *c*, Male.

Fam. **Stylopidæ.** *Xenos Rossii* Kirb. (*X. vesparum* Ross.) parasitic in *Polistes gallica*. *Stylops melittæ* Kirb.

## *Order* 5.—**Rhynchota*=Hemiptera.**

*Insects with jointed rostrum, piercing (exceptionally biting) mouth parts. With usually free prothorax and incomplete metamorphosis.*

The mouth parts are almost without exception arranged for taking up fluid nourishment, and are usually represented by a rostrum, in which the mandibles and maxillæ, as four rigid styles, are moved backwards and forwards. The rostrum, which is formed

* Burmeister, "Handbuch der Entomologie." II. Bd., Berlin 1835.
J. Hahn, "Die wanzenartigen Insecten." Nürnberg, 1831-1849. Continued by H. Schäffer.
F. X. Fieber, "Die europäischen Hemipteren nach der analytischen Methode." Wien, 1860.

by the labium, is a three- or four-jointed almost closed tube, which is narrowed towards the point, and is covered at the larger open base by the elongated three-cornered upper lip. The antennæ are either short and three-jointed with a setiform terminal joint, or are many-jointed and often elongated. The eyes are small and usually facetted, but they are sometimes ocelli with a simple cornea. Frequently two ocelli are found between the facetted eyes. The prothorax is usually large and freely moveable, but all the thoracic segments may be fused together. Wings are sometimes quite absent; usually four, rarely two, are present. In the first case the front wings are horny at the base and membranous at the tip (*Hemiptera*), or the front and hind wings are similarly formed and are membranous (*Homoptera*), though the anterior are often stiffer and coriaceous. The legs are, as a rule, adapted for walking, but sometimes they serve for clinging or swimming. In other cases the front legs are used to capture prey, or the posterior for springing. The alimentary canal is distinguished by the numerous salivary glands, and by the complicated chylific ventricle, which is often divided into three regions; behind the chylific ventricle usually four Malpighian tubes open into the hindgut. The ventral cord is concentrated into three, usually into two thoracic ganglia. With exception of the *Cicada*, the female genital organs have only four to eight egg-tubes, a simple receptaculum seminis and no bursa copulatrix. The testes are composed of two or more tubes, the ducts of which are usually dilated at the lower end. Many (*bugs*) emit an offensive smell, which proceeds from the secretion of a gland placed in the mesothorax or metathorax, in the latter case opening between the hind limbs. Others (*Homoptera*) secrete by means of numerous cutaneous glands a white waxy film which covers the surface of their body. They all live on vegetable or animal juices, to which they obtain access by means of the piercing styles of their rostrum. Many of them, by their appearance in great numbers on young plants, are harmful, and sometimes cause gall-like outgrowths; others are parasitic on animals. The young, when hatched, possess the form and habits of the sexually mature animal. They have, however, no wings, which make their appearance as small stumps after one of the first moults. The true *Cicada* need several years to effect their metamorphosis. The male *Coccidæ* change inside a cocoon to quiescent pupæ, and undergo accordingly a complete metamorphosis.

Sub-order 1. **Aptera=Parasitica.** Wingless *Rhynchota*, with short fleshy rostrum and broad cutting styles. Sometimes they have rudimentary biting mouth parts, an indistinctly segmented thorax, and an abdomen which usually consists of nine segments.

Fam. **Pediculidæ.** Lice. With fleshy proboscis-sheath armed with recurved hooks, protrusible suctorial tube, and two protrusible knife-like stylets. The antennæ have five joints. The feet, which are adapted for clinging, have hooked terminal joints. The eyes are small and not facetted. The animals live on the skin of Mammalia, and suck their blood, and lay their pear-shaped eggs in the roots of the hair. The young, when hatched, do not undergo a metamorphosis, and the louse which infects the human head, is fully developed and capable of reproduction in eighteen days. *Pediculus capitis* Deg. Head-louse of man. *P. vestimenti* Burm. (larger and of pale colour). *Phthirius pubis* L. (fig. 471).

Fam. **Mallophaga (Anoplura)** (Pelzfresser). Lice-like in form, with three- to five-jointed antennæ, and biting mouth parts, no fleshy proboscis, but a sort of suctorial tube. They live on the skin of Mammalia and Birds, and feed on young hairs and feathers, but also on blood. *Trichodectes canis* Deg. *Philopterus versicolor* Burm., *Liotheum anseris* Sulz. *Menopon* Nitsch, *M. pallidum* Nitsch, on fowls.

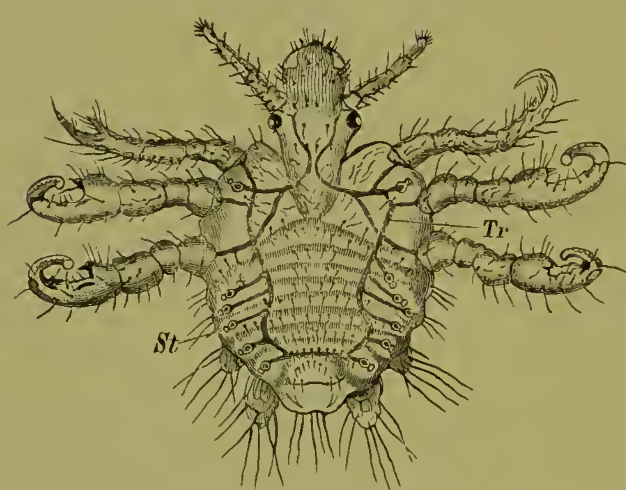


FIG. 471.—*Phthirius pubis* (after Landois) *St*, Stigma; *Tr*, Trachea.

Sub-order 2. **Phytophthires.** * *Rhynchota* with two pairs of membranous wings. The female is usually apterous. The surface of the skin is very often covered with a dense waxy deposit, the product of cutaneous glands which are placed in groups beneath warty prominences of the segments.

Fam. **Coccidæ** (Schildläuse). The large females have a shield-shaped body, and are wingless. The males are much smaller, and have large front wings, and sometimes also rudimentary hind wings. The fully-developed males have no proboscis or piercing weapons, and do not take in nourishment, while the unwieldy, often unsymmetrical females, which may even have lost the segmentation, insert their long rostrum into the parenchyma of plants and remain motionless. The eggs are deposited beneath the shield-shaped body

* C. Bonnet, "Traité d'Insectologie," Tom. I., Paris 1745.

J. F. Kyber, "Erfahrungen und Bemerkungen über die Blattläuse." *Germar's Magaz. der Entomol.* Tom. I., 1815.

J. H. Kaltenbach, "Monographie der Familie der Pflanzenläuse." Aachen, 1843.

R. Leuckart, "Die Fortpflanzung der Rindenläuse." *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, 1859.

and develop, protected by the drying-up body of the mother. They are generally fertilized (*Coccus*), but sometimes develop parthenogenetically (*Lecanium, Aspidiotus*). Unlike the female (and forming a single exception to what otherwise obtains in the order), the males undergo a complete metamorphosis; the apterous larvæ surround themselves with a cocoon, and are transformed into quiescent pupæ. Many *Coccidæ* cause great damage in conservatories. Others are useful in industry, in that they produce a colouring matter (cochineal), while others are useful in causing, by their puncture, an outflow of vegetable juices which when dried, are used by man (*lac, manna*). *Aspidiotus nerii.* Bouché, found on the Oleander. *Lecanium hesperidum* L., *L. persicæ* Bouché. *Kermes ilicis* L., on Quercus coccifera, also *K*, ? (*Coccus*) *lacca* Kerr., on Ficus religiosa in the East Indies. *Coccus cacti* L., (fig. 472) lives on Opuntia coccinellifera, Mexico, gives cochineal. *C. adonidum* L., *C.* (?) *manniparus* Ehbg., on Tamarix (manna).

Fam. **Aphidæ**,* plant-lice. As a rule, there are four transparent wings, with a scanty venation. The wings may, however, be absent in the female, and rarely in the male. The *Aphidæ* live on vegetable juices, and are found on roots, leaves and buds of quite definite plants. They frequently live in the spaces of gall-like swellings or deformities of leaves, which are produced by the punctures of the plant-lice. Many of them possess, on the dorsal surface of the antepenultimate segment, two "honey tubes," from which is secreted a sweet fluid —the honeydew—which is eagerly sought for by ants. In addition to the usually apterous females, which, as a rule, only appear in autumn with the winged males and lay fertilized eggs after copulation, there are also viviparous, usually winged generations, which appear principally in the spring and in summer, and which produce their living brood without the assistance of males. Bonnet observed nine generations of viviparous aphides succeed one another. They are distinguished from the true oviparous females, not only by their form and colour, and, in many cases, by the possession of wings, but also by essential peculiarities in the generative apparatus and the eggs (*pseudova*, germs). The receptaculum seminis is absent, and the eggs undergo their embryonic development in the very long egg-tubes. Viviparous and oviparous aphides usually succeed one another in regular alternation, since the females lay fertilized eggs in the autumn, which survive the winter and in the spring give birth to viviparous aphides, the descendants of which are also viviparous, and produce viviparous forms through a number of generations. It is only in the autumn that the males and the oviparous females are born which copulate. Viviparous individuals of many forms seem to pass the winter in ant-hills. Sexual forms (at time of birth already mature, wingless and without proboscis) are sometimes found in the spring; they are in all probability produced by such viviparous forms which have persisted through the winter. This has been shown to be the case for

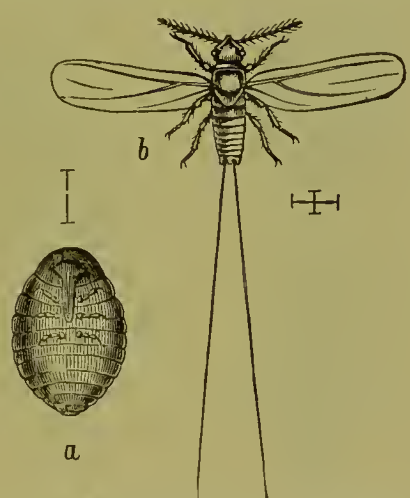



FIG. 472.—*Coccus cacti.* *a*, Female. *b*, Male (after Burmeister).

* Derbès, "Notes sur les Aphides du pistachier térébinthe," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.* 1872.

*Pemphigus terebinthi* by Derbès. Here the sexual animals are succeeded by apterous asexual animals, which produce the galls, and the descendants of which are the winged asexual generations which are dispersed and pass through the winter. The reproduction of *Chermes* and *Phylloxera* is different, in that in place of the viviparous generations there is a special oviparous sexual form, which also produces eggs capable of developing parthenogenetically. The apterous females of the fir-tree lice pass the winter at the base of the young buds, increase in size in spring in the same place, undergo several moults, and lay a number of eggs. The young, when hatched, pierce the swollen pointed leaves of the young shoots and produce galls. They develop later into winged females. In *Phylloxera quercus*, besides the two generations, there is another generation, which appears in autumn and consists of very small movable males and females (without suctorial proboscis or alimentary canal). These animals arise from two kinds of eggs which are laid on the roots. The female, after copulation, lays only a single egg. It is the same with the famous vine-lice (*Ph. vastatrix*), the larvæ of which pass the winter on the roots of the vine (fig. 473). The principal enemies of the Aphides are the larvæ of the *Ichneumonidæ* (*Aphidius*), *Syrphidæ*, *Coccinellæ* and *Hemerobidæ*.

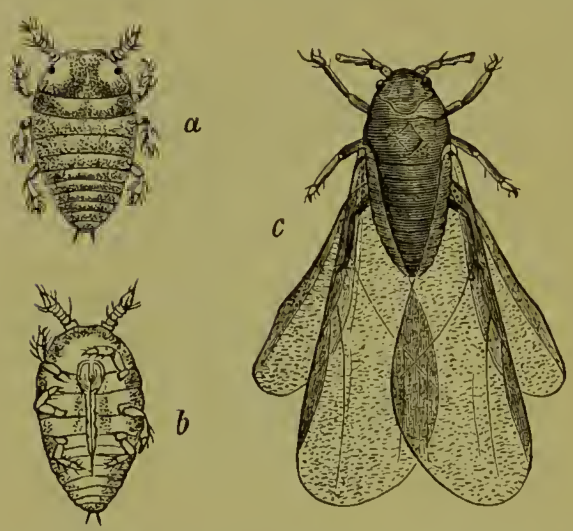


FIG. 473.—*Phylloxera vastatrix.* *a*, Wingless root-louse seen from the back, *b*, from the ventral surface. *c*, Winged form.

*a*. Leaf-lice, s. st. *Schizoneura lanigera* Hartg., on apple trees. *Lachnus pini* L., *L. juglandis* L., *L. fagi* L., *Aphis brassicæ* L., *A. rosæ* L.

*b*. Bark-lice. *Chermes abietis* L., *Ch. laricis* Hartg., *Phylloxera quercus* v. Heyd., on oak-leaves. *Ph. vastatrix*, vine-lice, with winged and apterous generations.

Fam. **Psyllidæ** (*Psyllodes*), leaf-fleas. Antennæ long, with ten joints. In the fully-developed stage always winged. The hind legs serve for springing. Their puncture often occasions deformities of flowers and leaves. *Psylla alni* L., *Livia juncorum* Latr.

*Sub-order* 3. **Homoptera-Cicadaria.** Both pairs of wings are, as a rule, membranous. Sometimes the front pair is coriaceous, not transparent and coloured. They lie, when at rest, obliquely on the body. The head is relatively large, and often prolonged into processes. The rostrum always arises low down, and apparently between the front legs; it has three joints. In many species the hind legs are springing legs, with which the animal jumps before flight. The females have an ovipositor, and often lay the eggs beneath the bark and in the twigs of plants. The larvæ of larger species may live several years (fig. 474).

Fam. **Cicadellidæ** (Kleinzirpen). *Jassus biguttatus* Fabr., *Ledra aurita* L., *Tettigonia vittata* L. *Aphrophora.* The prothorax is trapezoidal (seven-cornered). The larvæ eject a bubbly foam out of the anus (cuckoo-spittle), and envelop themselves in it. The wing covers are coriaceous. Posterior tibiæ have three strong spines. *A. spumaria* L.

Fam. **Membracidæ** (Buckelzirpen). *Centrotus cornutus* L., *Membracis lateralis* Fabr.

Fam. **Fulgoridæ** (Leuchtzirpen). In many species the abdomen is thickly covered with long strings and flakes of wax, which in one species (*Flata limbata*) is so richly secreted that it is collected and sold as Chinese wax. *Fulgora laternaria* L., the lantern carrier of Surinam, is erroneously said by Merian to emit light from its lantern-shaped frontal process. *F. candelaria* L., Chinese lantern-carrier. *Lystra lanata* L., and other American species. *Flata limbata* Fabr., China.

Fam. **Cicadidæ = Stridulantia** (Singcicaden). The thick abdomen of the male is provided with a voice organ, which produces loud, shrill, chirping sounds (fig. 474). They are very shy, and remain concealed between leaves in the day time. They feed on the juices of young shoots, and their puncture causes a flow of sweet plant juices, which harden and become manna (*Cicada orni* L., Sicily). The females have a saw-like ovipositor placed between two jointed valves. The larvæ, when hatched, crawl on the earth, into which they burrow with their shovel-like front legs, and suck the juice of roots. *Cicada orni* L., South Europe. *C. septemdecim* Fabr., Brazil. *C. hæmatodes* L., South Germany.

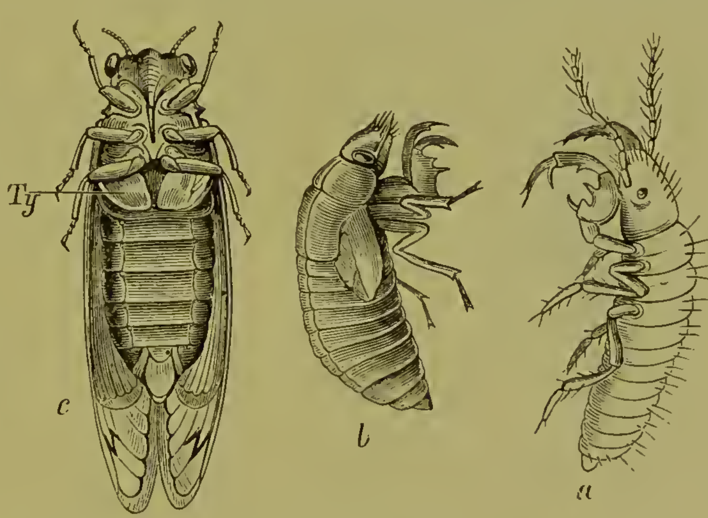


Fig. 474.—*Cicada orni* (after Packard). *a*, Larva. *b*, Pupa. *c*, Male, *Ty*, Singing apparatus.

*Sub-order* 4. **Hemiptera** (Bugs). The wings of the front pair are half horny and half membranous (*hemielytra*), and lie horizontally on the body. Many species are apterous, as are the females of some species of which the males have wings. The first thoracic segment is large, and freely moveable. The proboscis arises from the frontal region, and when at rest usually lies folded beneath the thorax. Some species of the *Reduvidæ* produce a shrill sound, as *Pirates stridulus*, by the movement of the neck on the prothorax.

*Tribe* 1. **Hydrocores = Hydrocorisæ** (Water-bugs). The antennæ are shorter than the head, having only three or four joints, and are more or less hidden from view. The rostrum is short. They feed on animal juices.

Fam. **Notonectidæ** (Rückenschwimmer). *Corixa striata* L., *Notonecta glauca* L., water-bug.

Fam. **Nepidæ**, water-scorpions (fig. 475). *Naucoris cimicoides* L., *Nepa cinerea* L., water-scorpion. *Ranatra linearis* L.

*Tribe* 2. **Geocores** (Land-bugs). Antennæ directed forwards, and of medium length, having four or five joints. The rostrum is usually long.

Fam. **Hydrometridæ** (*Ploteres*) (Wasserläufer). *Hydrometra lacustris* L., *Limnobates stagnorum* L., *Velia rivulorum* Latr.

Fam. **Reduvidæ** (*Reduvini*) (Schreitwanzen). *Reduvius personatus* L., *Pirates stridulus* Fabr., South Europe.

Fam. **Acanthiadæ** (*Membranacei*), skin-bugs. *Acanthia lectularia* L., bed-bug. *Aradus depressus* Fabr. (*corticalis* L.).

Fam. **Capsidæ** (Blindwanzen), *Capsus trifasciatus* L., *Miris erraticus* L.

Fam. **Lygæidæ** (*Lygæodes*) (Langwanzen). *Lygæus equestris* L., *Pyrrhocoris apterus* L. (Feuerwanze).

Fam. **Coreidæ** (*Coreodes*) (Randwanzen). *Coreus marginatus* L., *Alydus calcaratus* L.

Fam. **Pentatomidæ** (Schildwanzen). *Pentatoma junipera* L., *P. rufipes* L., *P. oleracea*.

FIG. 475.—*Nepa cinerea* (règne animal).

## *Order* 6.—**Diptera** * (**Antliata**).

*Insects with piercing and sucking mouth parts, with membranous front wings. The hind wings reduced to small knobs (halteres). The metamorphosis is complete.*

The designation of this order, which is derived from the apparent number of the wings, does not correspond accurately to the actual state of matters. Two pairs of wings are present, the front pair always as large glassy and transparent plates, the hind pair in a rudimentary condition as stalked knobs (*halteres*). On the inner margin of the front wings two lobes are marked off by indentations; an outer lobe (*alula*), and an inner one (*squama*) which may cover

* J. W. Meigen, "Systematische Beschreibung der bekannten europäischen, zweiflügeligen Insecten," 7 Theile. Aachen, 1818-1838.

Wiedemann, "Aussereuropäische zweiflügelige Insecten," 2 Theile. Hamm. 1828-1830.

N. Wagner, "Ueber die viviparen Gallmückenlarven," *Zeitschr. für. wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XV., 1865.

A. Weissmann, "Die Entwickelung der Dipteren," Leipsig. 1864.

A. Weissmann, "Die Metamorphose der Corethra plumicornis," 1866.

the hind wings. The latter are composed of a spherical head at the end of a thin stalk. Leydig described at the base of the halteres a ganglion with nervous rods, which he concluded was an auditory apparatus. The head is freely moveable, and usually spherical in form. It is articulated to a short and narrow neck, and is distinguished by the large facetted eyes, which in the male sex may meet in the median line of the face and frontal region. There are as a rule three ocelli. The antennæ are constructed on two different types; they may either be very short and composed of three joints, frequently bearing a tactile hair at the extremity (*arista*), or they may be filiform and of considerable length and composed of a great number of joints. But since in the first case the terminal joint is again divided into a number of smaller joints, and the tactile hair may be also jointed. it is impossible to draw a sharp distinction between the two types. The mouth parts form the kind of suctorial tube known as a proboscis (*haustellum*), in which the jaws (mandibles and maxillæ) and an unpaired rod (*epipharynx*) attached to the upper lip may appear as horny, setiform or knife-shaped piercing organs. When the maxillæ only are present as paired rods, the unpaired piercing stylet seems to correspond to the fused mandibles. The proboscis, which is principally formed by the labium, ends with a swollen spongy tongue, and is without labial palps, while the maxillæ are provided with palps, which, in cases of fusion with the labium, are situated on the proboscis. The abdomen is frequently stalked, and consists of five to nine segments. The legs have five-jointed tarsuses, which end with claws and usually with sole-like lobes for attachment.

The nervous system presents very different degrees of concentration according to the length of the body. While in flies of very stout build, the ganglia of the abdomen and thorax fuse together to form a common thoracic ganglion; in the Diptera with longer bodies, not only are the three thoracic ganglia distinct, but several, even five or six, separate abdominal ganglia are present. With regard to the alimentary canal, the presence of a stalked suctorial stomach as an appendage of the œsophagus and the number—four—of the Malpighian tubes may be mentioned. The two tracheal trunks are dilated to two great vesicular sacs at the base of the abdomen. This is correlated with the power of active flight possessed by these insects.

The male genital organs consist of two oval testes with short vasa deferentia, to which are added firm copulatory appendages. The ovaries are not connected with any special bursa copulatrix, but have three receptacula seminis in connection with the vagina (fig. 449), and often end with a retractile ovipositor.

There is rarely a striking difference between the two sexes. The males have as a rule larger eyes, which in some cases meet each other in the middle line; their abdomen also is frequently differently shaped to that of the female, and in exceptional cases the colouring is different (*Bibio*). The mouth-parts, too, may differ; for example, the male gad-flies (*Tabanidæ*) are without the knife-shaped mandibles, which form the principal part of the female armature. The males of the *Culicidæ* also are without the piercing weapons, and have multiarticulate hairy antennæ, while the antennæ of the female are filiform, and are composed of fewer joints.

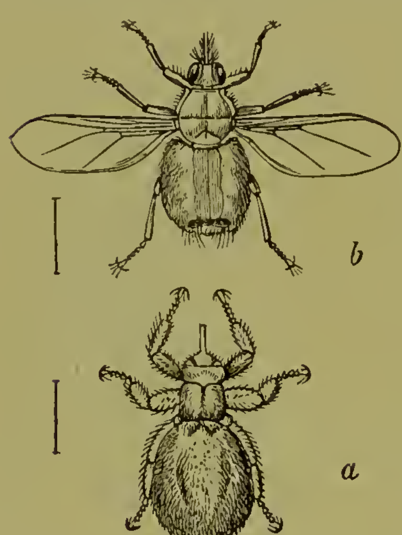


FIG. 476.—*Melophagus ovinus.* *b*, *Hippobosca equina* (after Packard).

The metamorphosis is complete, and the larvæ, which are usually apodal, have either a clearly separate head with antennæ and ocelli (most *Nemocera*), or a short, usually retracted, cephalic region, without antennæ or eyes (at most with an X-shaped pigment spot), with quite rudimentary mouth parts, sometimes with two oral hooks, serving for attachment.

In the first case the larvæ have masticating mouth-parts and feed on other animals; in the latter case they are known as maggots and suck up fluids or semi-liquid substances. After several moults the larvæ either change within the hardened larval skin to pupæ (*P. coarctata*), or casting the larval skin are transformed into moving pupæ (*P. obtecta*), which often swim freely in water, and may be provided with tracheal gills. The differences which the development of the winged insect from the larval organism presents in the two groups have been already mentioned (p. 550).

Many Diptera when flying give rise to buzzing sounds. This is caused by the vibrations of various parts of the body; partly of the wings and partly of the segments of the abdomen, with participation of the voice apparatus on the four stigmata of the thorax. Here, beneath the margins of the stigmata, the tracheal trunk forms a vesicle with two delicately folded leaflets, which are set in vibration beneath two external valves by the expiration of air.

Sub-order 1. **Pupipara*** (fig. 476). Lice flies. The body is stout; the three thoracic segments are fused together, the abdomen is broad and often flattened. The antennæ are short, and often consist of but two joints. The suctorial proboscis is formed by the upper lip (labrum) and the maxillæ. The legs are provided with toothed clasping claws, and the wings may be rudimentary or absent. The development of the embryo and of the larva takes place in the uterus-like vagina. The maggot which issues from the egg (without pharyngeal framework or buccal hooks) swallows the secretion of large glandular appendages of the uterus (fig. 451); it undergoes several moults, and is completely developed when it is born, which occurs just before it enters the pupal stage. They are parasitic, like lice, on the skin of warm-blooded animals, rarely of insects.

*Braula cœca*, Nitzsch., Bee louse. *Nycteribia Latreillei* Curt., without eyes and is parasitic on species of Vespertilio. *Melophagus ovinus* L., Sheeptick. *Anapera pallida* Meig., parasitic on Swallows. *Hippobosca equina* L., horse-louse.

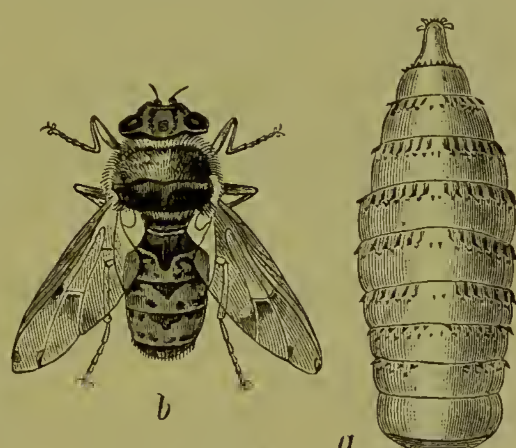



FIG. 477.—*Gastrophilus equi* (after F. Brauer). *a*, Larva. *b*, Male.

Sub-order 2. **Brachycera** (Flies). Body of very various shape, frequently thick and stout, with an abdomen composed of from five to eight segments. Antennæ short, and usually composed of three joints with large, usually secondarily ringed terminal joint, to which is attached a simple or ringed bristle. Wings are almost always present. The larvæ live in decaying matter in earth and water, partly also as parasites; they are, in great part, maggots with hooked jaws, and pass into the pupal stage within the moulted cask-shaped larval skin (fig. 477). Many of them have the form of a pupa obtecta.

Tribe 1. **Muscaria.** With frontal vesicle; proboscis usually with fleshy terminal lobe; maxillæ as a rule aborted; larvæ without jaw

* L. Dufour, "Études anatomiques et physiologiques sur les Insectes Diptères de la famille des Pupipares." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, II. ser., Tom. III., 1843.

R. Leuckart, "Die Fortpflanzung und Entwickelung der Pupiparen." *Abhand. der naturf. Gesellschaft zu Halle*, Tom. IV.

capsule and as a rule with two or four oral hooks. The pupæ are always barrel-shaped.

Fam. **Phoridæ.** *Phora incrassata* Meig. Live as larvæ in Bee hives.

Fam. **Acalyptera.** *Trypeta Cardui* L., *Tr. signata* Meig., in cherries. *Chlorops lineata* Fabr. (Weizenfliege), Larvæ in blades of grass. *Scatophaga stercoraria* L., dung-flies, on dung heaps. *Piophila casei* L., cheese-flies.

Fam. **Muscidæ.** *Musca domestica* L., house-fly. *M. Cæsar* L. (Goldfliege). *M. vomitoria* L., the abdomen is of a shining blue colour. *M. cadaverina* L. (Aasfliege). *Sarcophaga carnaria* L. (Fleischfliege), viviparous. *Tachina puparum* Fabr., *T. (Chrysosoma) viridis* Fall., *T. grossa* L., *T. larvarum* L. The larvæ are parasitic, principally in caterpillars.

Fam. **Conopidæ.** *Conops flavipes* L., the larvæ live in the abdomen of *Hymenoptera*. *C. rufipes* Fabr. (in *Œdipoda*).

Fam. **Stomoxyidæ.** *Stomoxys calcitrans* L. (Stechfliege), resembles the house-fly.

Fam. **Œstridæ*** (Biesfliegen). The proboscis is aborted. The females have an ovipositor and lay their eggs or their living larvæ (in which case the ovipositor is absent) on certain places on Mammalia, *e.g.*, in the nostrils of Stags, or on the breast of the Horse. The larvæ with dentated body rings, and frequently with oral hooks, live in the frontal sinuses, beneath the skin and even in the stomach of certain Mammalia. Under the skin they produce boils. *Hypoderma bovis* L. *H. Actæon* Br., on the Stag. *H. tarandi* L. *Dermatobia hominis* Goudot, on Ruminants, *Felidæ* (Jaguar) and Men in South America. *Œstrus auribarbis* Wied. The larvæ are brought by the flies into the nasal cavities of the Stag. *Gastrus (Gastrophilus) equi* Fabr. (fig. 477). The egg is deposited on the breast of the Horse, and licked off by the latter. The larva, when hatched, attaches itself to the walls of the stomach by its oral hooks, undergoes several moults, and is passed with the excrements before the pupal stage.

Fam. **Syrphidæ** (Schwebfliegen). *Syrphus pirastri* L., *Eristalis tenax* L., *E. æneus* Fabr. Larvæ with respiratory tube, in sewers and stagnant water.

Fam. **Platypezidæ** (Pilzfliegen). *Pl. boletina* Fall.

Tribe 2. **Tanystomata.** The proboscis is usually long and has styliform predatory jaws. Larvæ with jaw sheath and hooked jaws.

Fam. **Dolichopodidæ.** *Dolichopus pennatus* Meig. *D. nobilitatus* L.

Fam. **Empidæ** (Tanzfliegen). *Empis tesselata* Fabr.

Fam. **Asilidæ** (Raubfliegen). *Asilus germanicus* L., *A. crabroniformis* L., *Laphria gibbosa* Fabr. *L. flava* Fabr.

Fam. **Bombyliidæ** (Hummelfliegen). *Anthrax morio* Fabr. (*sinuatus* Fall.). The larvæ live in the nests of *Megachile muraria* and *Osmia tricornis*. *Bombylius major* L., *B. medius* L.

Fam. **Henopiidæ.** *Henops gibbosus* L. (Mundhornfliege). *Lasia flavitarsis* Wied.

Fam. **Therevidæ** (*Xylotomæ*). (Stilettfliegen). *Thereva annulata* Fabr. *Th. plebeja* L., *Scenopinus fenestralis* L.

Fam. **Tabanidæ** (Gadflies). Proboscis short, horizontally projecting, and provided with six or four (male) stylets and two-jointed palp. In the male

* F. Brauer, "Monographie der Œstriden." Wien. 1863.

the knife-shaped mandibles are wanting. Their puncture is severe, and they suck blood. *Chrysops cœcutiens* L., *Tabanus bovinus* L. (Rinderbremse). *Hæmatopota pluvialis* L. (Regenbremse).

Fam. **Leptidæ** (Schnepfenfliegen). *Leptis scolopacca* L., *L. vermileo* L., South Europe. The larva digs holes in the sand, and there, like the Ant-lion, captures insects.

Fam. **Xylophagidæ** (Holzfliegen). *Xylophagus maculatus* Fabr. The larvæ live in beech wood. *Beris clavipes* L.

Fam. **Stratiomyidæ** (Waffenfliegen). *Stratiomys chamælcon* L., *St. Odontomyia hydroleon* L., *Sargus cuprarius* L.

Sub-order 3. **Nemocera** (**Tipulariæ**). Longhorns (fig. 478). *Diptera* of elongated form, with many-jointed, usually filiform, antennæ, which in the males are sometimes tufted. They have long slender legs, and large, naked or hairy wings. The palps are usually of considerable length, and with four or five joints. The proboscis is short and fleshy, and often armed with piercing setæ. The halteres are free. The larvæ have usually a perfectly differentiated head (*Eucephala*), more rarely a retractile jaw capsule (*Tipulidæ*, *Cecidomyia*); they live in water, in earth, and in vegetable matter (galls and fungi), and some of them have a respiratory tube. After moulting the larval skin the eucephalous larvæ become quiescent or freely moveable pupæ; the latter are provided with tracheal gills on the neck and tail. The insect when hatched swims, till the wings are hard, on the burst pupal skin as on a boat. The females of many species suck blood (gnats), and become a veritable pest in certain districts where they appear in swarms.

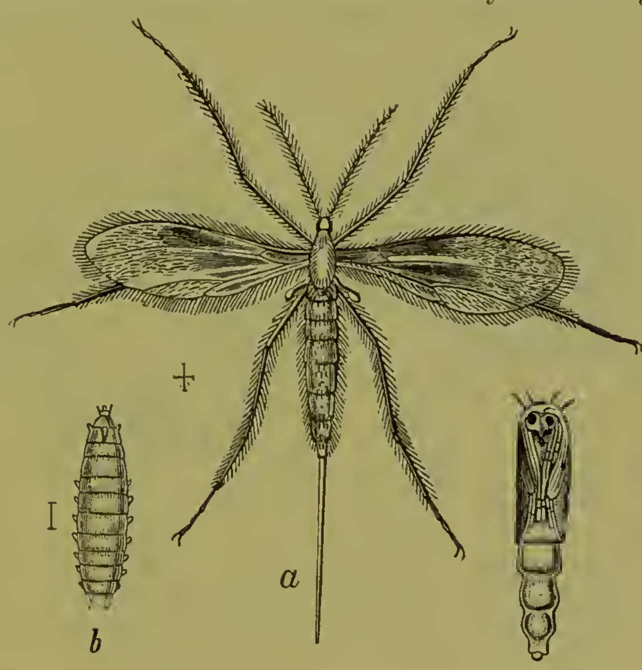



FIG. 478.—*Cecidomyia tritici* (after Wagner). *a*, Female with protruded ovipositor. *b*, Larva. *c*, Pupa.

Fam. **Bibionidæ** (*Musciformes*). Body fly-like; antennæ six- to eleven-jointed. The abdomen has seven segments. *Bibio marci* L., *B. hortulanus* L. The males are black, the females brick red with a black head. *Simulia reptans* L., *S. columbacschensis* Fabr. (Kolumbäczer Mücke). Suck blood. In Hungary they attack the herds of cattle in swarms.

Fam. **Fungicolæ** (Pilzmücken). The larvæ, which are without rudimentary feet on the second segment, live in fungi. *Sciara Tomæ* L. The larvæ before entering the pupal stage come together in great numbers, and wander about in long sinuous chains. *Mycetophila fusca* Meig., (Pilzmücke), *Sciophila maculata Fabr.* (Schattenmücke).

Fam. **Noctuiformes** (owl-like gnats). *Psychoda phalænoides* L., *Ptychoptera contaminata* L. (Faltenmücke).

Fam. **Culiciformes**. The larvæ live in water, in rotten wood, or in earth. *Chironomus plumosus* L., *Corethra plumicornis*, Fabr. The larvæ have four tracheal vesicles and a circle of setæ on the anal segment; live in water.

Fam. **Culicidæ** (gnats). The larvæ live in water and have respiratory tube and appendages at the posterior end of the body. *Culex pipiens* L. (Singmücke). The palp of the male is tufted and longer than the proboscis. The females sting.

Fam. **Gallicolæ** (gall-flies). The larvæ live in galls. *Cecidomyia destructor*


FIG. 479.—*a*, *Pulex avium* ♂ (after Taschenberg). *A* Antenna; *Mt.* Maxillary palp. *b*, Larva of *Pulex irritans*.

Say, Hessian fly. Notorious in the United States as a destroyer of crops since the year 1778. Imported (?) into the country in straw by the Hessian troops. *C. tritici* Kirb., in wheat. *C. secalina* Loew. *C. salicis* Schrk. etc. The viviparous larvæ belong to the genus *Miastor*.

Fam. **Limnobiidæ** (Schnaken). The larvæ are found in earth or rotten wood. *Tipula oleracea* L., (Kohlschnaken). *Ctenophora atrata* L. (Kammmücke).

Sub-order 4. **Aphaniptera** (Fleas). *Diptera*, with laterally compressed body and distinctly separated thoracic rings. Wings are absent, but there are two lateral plate-like appendages on the meso- and meta-thorax. The antennæ are very short and arise in a depression behind the simple ocelli. The mandibles have the form of toothed saw-like stylets, the maxillæ are broad plates with four-jointed palps. The under lip (labium) is three-jointed and forms the proboscis sheath. The larvæ have a distinct head and jaws (fig. 479).

Fam. **Pulicidæ.** *Pulex irritans* L., flea of man. The dorsal surface of the male is concave and serves for the reception of the larger female. The large apodal larvæ have a distinctly separated head, and live in sawdust and between boards, where the elongated oval eggs are deposited. *Sarcopsylla penetrans* L., sand-flea (Chigoe), lives free in South America in the sand (fig. 480). The female however bores into the skin of the human foot and of various Mammalia, and there deposits the eggs. The escaping larvæ give rise to ulcers.

## Order 7.—Lepidoptera* (Butterflies).

*Insects with suctorial mouth parts, which form a spirally rolled proboscis, with four similar wings which are completely covered with scales, with fused prothorax and complete metamorphosis.*

The head is moveably articulated and thickly covered with hairs. It bears semicircular facetted eyes and sometimes two ocelli. The antennæ are always straight and many-jointed, but vary much in form, being often seti-

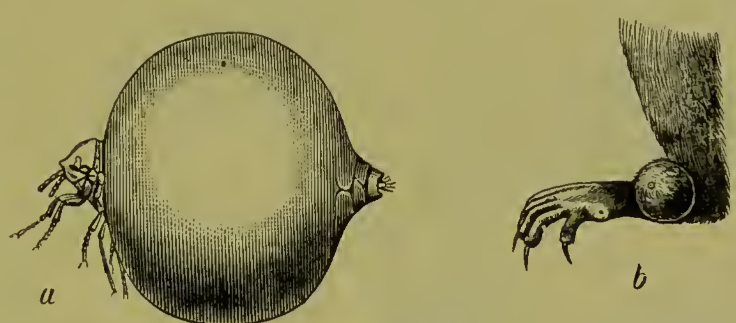



FIG. 480.—*a*, Gravid female of *Sarcopsylla penetrans*. *b*, Foot of a field mouse with Rhynchoprion attached (after H. Karsten).

form or filiform, or even club-shaped, and not rarely denticulate or pectinate. The mouth parts are modified for sucking up fluid nourishment, especially the nectar of flowers, but are occasionally very short and hardly capable of being used. The upper lip and mandibles are reduced to rudiments, but the maxillæ are elongated and closely jointed, and their inner sides are grooved, so that when applied together they form a tube—the spirally rolled proboscis (fig. 481). The proboscis is furnished with small spines used for tearing the nectaries of flowers; while the nectar ascends through it into the mouth, being sucked up by pumping movements of the

* E. J. C. Esper, "Die europäischen Schmetterlinge in Abbildungen nach der Natur, mit Beschreibungen." 7 Bde. Erlangen, 1777—1805.

F. Ochsenheimer und F. Treitschke, "Die Schmetterlinge von Europa." 10 Bde. Leipzig, 1807-1835.

W. Herrich-Schäffer, "Systematische Beschreibung der Schmetterlinge von Europa." 5 Bde. Regensburg, 1843-1855.

W. Herrich-Schäffer, "Lepidopterorum exoticorum species novæ aut minus cognitæ. Regensburg. 1850-1865.

œsophagus. The maxillary palps are as a rule rudimentary (except in the *Tineidæ*). When at rest the proboscis lies rolled up beneath the mouth, and on either side of it are placed the large three-jointed labial palps, which are often tufted with hairs and are situated on the rudimentary triangular lower lip.

The three thoracic rings are intimately fused with one another, and like almost all external parts of the body are thickly covered with hairs. The wings are in most cases very large, but in rare cases are quite rudimentary (female *Geometridæ*); the anterior are the largest, and are distinguished by their partial or complete covering of scale-like hairs which overlap one another in a tectiform manner, and cause the extremely various colouring, tracing, and iridescence of the wings. These scales consist of small, usually finely ribbed and toothed plates, which are attached by styliform roots in pores of the integument of the wings, and are comparable to flattened out hairs. They arise during the pupal period. The arrangement of the nervures is of systematic value. The essential arrangement is a large median cell near the root of the wing, from which six to eight radial nervures pass to the external lateral edges, while above and below the middle cell single independent nervures run parallel to the upper or lower fringed margin. The two pairs of wings are frequently connected with one another by retinacula, the upper edge of the hind wings being covered by spines or setæ, which catch in a band of the anterior wings. The legs are delicate and weak, their tibiæ are armed with spurs of considerable size. The tarsuses are in general five-jointed. The abdomen has six or seven segments and is thickly covered with hairs, and ends not unfrequently with a strongly projecting tuft of hairs.

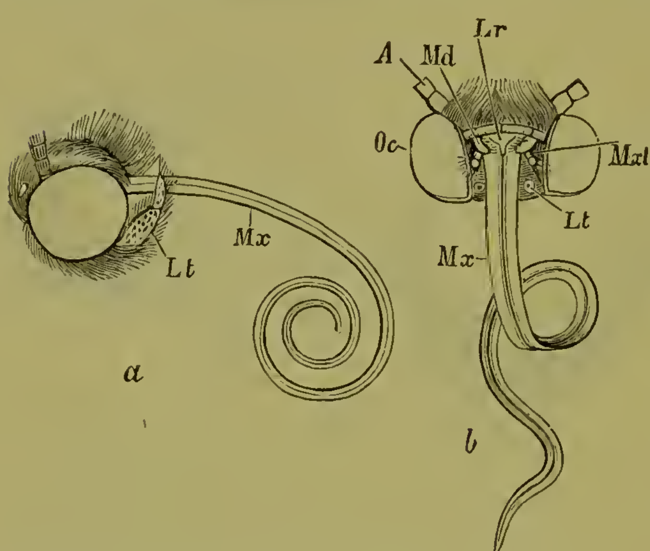



FIG. 481.—Mouth-parts of butterflies, (after Savigny); *a*, of *Zygæna*; *b*, of *Noctua*. *A*, Antennæ; *Oc* eyes; *Md*, mandibles; *Mxt* maxillary palp; *Mx*, maxilla; *Lt*, labial palp; *Lr*, labrum.

**Nervous system.**—The brain is bi-lobed, and is provided with large optic lobes, and special swellings for the origin of the antennal nerves. The ventral ganglionic chain is reduced, leaving the subœsophageal ganglion out of consideration, to two thoracic ganglia (of which the larger second ganglion shows traces of constrictions and arises from the fusion of four ganglia) and four or five ganglia in the abdomen. In the larval condition, on the other hand, there are eleven pairs of ventral ganglia.

The **alimentary canal** possesses a long œsophagus, which is connected with a stalked suctorial stomach, and usually six much coiled Malpighian tubes, of which the three on either side open by a common duct (figs. 47 and 48).

**Generative organs.**—The ovaries consist on either side of four very long many-chambered egg-tubes, which contain a great quantity of eggs, and have, in consequence, a moniliform appearance. The duct apparatus always possesses a long-stalked receptaculum seminis with glandular appendages, and a large bursa copulatrix which opens independently beneath the genital opening. The two long testicular canals are packed together so as to form an unpaired, usually brightly coloured body, from which pass off the two vasa deferentia, which are much convoluted and receive the contents of two accessory glandular tubes before uniting to form a ductus ejaculatorius. The two sexes are often so different in size, colour, and the structure of the wings, that there is a sexual dimorphism. The males are often more brightly and beautifully coloured (a means of exciting the females). The dimorphism, or even polymorphism (seasonal dimorphism), found in the female sex of many butterflies, is worthy of remark. **Parthenogenesis** occurs exceptionally in silkworms (*Bombyx mori*), in many *Psychidæ*, and some moths (*Solenobia*), the larva-like females of which have no wings (fig. 482).

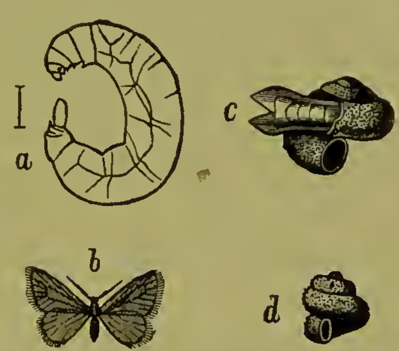


FIG. 482.—*a*, Female of *Psyche helix*. *b*, Male. *c*, Case of the male; *d*, of the female caterpillar.

**Development.**—The larvæ when hatched (caterpillars) possess masticating mouth parts and feed principally on plants, leaves and wood. On the head, which is large and covered with hard skin, there are a pair of three-jointed antennæ and six ocelli, each of which is divided into three parts. In all cases there are abdominal feet behind the three pairs of conical five-jointed thoracic legs. There may be only two pairs of such legs, as in the caterpillars of the

*Geometridæ*, or five pairs, which then belong to the third to the sixth and the last abdominal segments. The caterpillars establish themselves before passing into the pupal stage in some protected place, or they spin cocoons and become transformed into *pupæ obtectæ**, from which the winged insects issue either in a few weeks or in the following year. The winged insects, as a rule, live only for a short time, and die after copulating and laying their eggs. Some of them, however, pass the winter in sheltered localities (*Rhopalocera*). Some very widely distributed species of caterpillars cause great damage to forests and cultivated plants, a damage which is, however, limited by the persecution which they suffer from certain *Ichneumonidæ* and *Tachinaria*. Fossil remains of butterflies have been found in tertiary formations and in amber. Linnæus' classification of the *Lepidoptera* into diurnal, twilight, and nocturnal butterflies has been superseded by the establishment of several groups and a number of families.

Tribe 1. **Microlepidoptera**. Very small and delicately formed *Lepidoptera*, usually with long setiform antennæ. The caterpillars have as a rule sixteen legs, of which the abdominal feet are provided with a circle of hooks round the sole. Many of them bore passages in the parenchyma of leaves, others live in leaves folded together, and others in buds. Some few are found in water, *e.g.*, *Nymphula* and other *Pyralidæ*. The greater number remain hidden during the day.

Fam. **Pterophoridæ** (Federgeistchen). Plume-moths. *Pterophorus pentadactylus* L., *Pt. pterodactylus* L., *Alucita hexadactyla* L.

Fam. **Tineidæ** *Yponomeuta evonymella* L., spindle-tree moth. The caterpillars live together in cocoons; several species live on fruit trees. *Solenobia pineti=lichenella* L.. *S. triquetrella* Fisch.. R., the female is apterous. The caterpillars (sac-bearers) live in short sacs. Some of them reproduce parthenogenetically. *Tinea granella* L., (Kornmotte). Lays its eggs in grain. The caterpillars (known as grain worms) eat the grain. *T. pellionella* L., (Pelzmotte) *T. tapezella* L. (Tapetenmotte). Clothes-moth.

Fam. **Tortricidæ** (Wickler). *Tortrix viridana* L., in the oak. *Grapholitha funebrana* Tr., in plums. *Gr.* (*Carpocapsa*) *pomonella* L., in apples.

Fam. **Pyralidæ** (Zünsler). *Crambus pascuellus* L., *Botys urticalis* L., *Galleria mellionella* L., in bee-hives. *Pyralis pinguinalis* L. (Fettschabe). Tabby-moth. *Scopula frumentalis* L. (Saatmotte).

Tribe 2. **Geometrina**. Loopers. For the most part of slender build and with large wings, which in repose are tectiform. The antennæ are setiform and the basal joint is thickened. The caterpillars have ten to twelve feet; they move in a looping manner. When at rest

* Compare M. Herold, "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Schmetterlinge." Cassel und Marburg, 1815.

they cling with the posterior feet. Many species are hurtful to fruit trees.

Fam. **Phytometridæ.** *Larentia populata* L., *Cheimatobia brumata* L., frost butterflies. The females, which have rudimentary wings, lay their eggs on the trunks of fruit trees in late autumn.

Fam. **Dendrometridæ.** *Acidalia ochreata* Scop., *Geometra papilionaria* L., *Abraxas* (*Zerene*) *grossulariata* L., harlequin, Magpie Moth.

Tribe 3. **Noctuina** (Eulen). Nocturnal *Lepidoptera* with broad body which is narrower behind, and dull coloured wings. The antennæ are long and setiform, in the male sometimes pectinate. The wings when at rest are tectiform. The legs are long and have strong spurs on the tibiæ. The caterpillars, which are sometimes naked, sometimes covered with hairs, have usually sixteen, more rarely, in consequence of the reduction or absence of the anterior legs, fourteen or twelve legs. The greater number pass the pupal stage in the earth.

Fam. **Ophiusidæ** (Ordensbänder). *Catocala paranympha* L. (gelbes Ordensband). *C. fraxini* L. (blaues Ordensband). *C. nupta* L., *C sponsa* L., *C. promissa* Esp. (rothe Ordensbänder).

Fam. **Plusiadæ** (Goldeulen). *Plusia gamma* L., *Pl. chrysitis* L.

Fam. **Agrotidæ.** *Agrotis segetum* tr. *A. tritici* L., *Triphæna pronuba* L.

Fam. **Orthosiadæ.** *Orthosia jota* L.

Fam. **Cuculliadæ.** *Cucullia verbasci* L., *C. absynthii* L.

Fam. **Acronyctidæ.** *Acronycta psi* L., *A. rumicis* L.. *Diloba cæruleocephala* L. The caterpillar is harmful to fruit trees.

Tribe 4. **Bombycina** (Spinner). Nocturnal *Lepidoptera* of clumsy build, with body thickly covered with hairs so as often to have a woolly appearance. The antennæ are setiform, and in the male pectinate. The wings are tolerably broad and tectiform when at rest. The larger and clumsier females fly but little ; but the males, which are often brightly coloured, move with greater rapidity. In some cases the wings are reduced (*Orgyia*) or are absent (*Psyche*) in the female sex. The eggs, which are often laid in groups and are covered with a woolly mass, give origin to caterpillars with sixteen legs and a thick covering of hairs ; the caterpillars spin complete cocoons in which they become pupæ above ground. The caterpillars of some species live together in common cocoons; some (*Psychidæ*) prepare a sac in which they conceal their bodies. Parthenogenesis occurs.

Fam. **Euprepiadæ** (Bärenspinner). The caterpillars with very long hairs, are known as bear caterpillars. *Euprepia caja* L., *E plantaginis*, etc.

Fam. **Liparidæ.** *Liparis monacha* L., the caterpillar is very harmful to leafy trees and Coniferæ. *L. dispar* L., *Orgyia antiqua* L. The female is apterous. *O.* (*Dasychira*) *pudibunda* L.

Fam. **Notodontidæ.** *Notodonta ziczac* L., *N. dromedarius* L. *Cnethocampa processionea* L., the caterpillars live on oaks. *Harpyia vinula* L. (Gabelschwanz). The caterpillar has pharyngeal gland and two protrusible anal filaments.

Fam. **Bombycidæ.** *Gastropacha quercifolia* L. (Kupferglucke). *G. potatoria* L., *G. rubi* L., *G. pini* L., *Clisiocampa neustria* L.; *Bombyx mori* L. Silk-spinner originally from South Asia, but now bred in South Europe and China on account of the silk obtained from its cocoons. The caterpillar (silkworm) lives on the leaves of the mulberry. (The disease of silkworms, the muscardine, is produced by *Botrytis Bassiana*).

Fam. **Saturnidæ.** *Saturnia pyri* Borkh. *S. carpini, spini* Borkh., *Attacus cynthia, Yamamai, cecropia* cultivated for silk. *Aglia tau* L.

Fam. **Psychidæ.** The caterpillars carry about sacks in which they are transformed into pupæ. *Psyche atra* L., *Ps. helix* L. The sacs are spirally coiled and have a second lateral opening, and are different in the two sexes. *Fumea nitidella* Hb.

Fam. **Zygænidæ.** *Zygæna filipendulæ* L.

Fam. **Cossidæ.** The caterpillars live mostly in the medulla of plants. *Cossus ligniperda* Fabr., *æsculi* L., *Hepiolus humuli* L. The caterpillar lives in hop roots.

Tribe 5. **Sphingina** (Schwärmer). *Lepidoptera* with elongated body, pointed at the end, and usually a very long rolled proboscis. The anterior wings are long and narrow. The hind wings are short. The antennæ are short, and, as a rule, taper at the points. The wings lie when at rest horizontally on the body and always have a retinaculum. The caterpillars are flat, and provided with an anal horn and sixteen legs. They pass their pupal stage in the earth. The adult insects fly about in the twilight, some species also in the day (*Macroglossa*).

Fam. **Sesiadæ.** *Sesia apiformis* L., *S. bembeciformis* Hb.

Fam. **Sphingidæ.** Hawk-moths. *Macroglossa stellatarum* L. (Taubenschwanz), Humming-bird Hawk-moths. *Sphinx elpenor* L., *S. porcellus* L. (Weinschwärmer), *S. Nerii* (Oleanderschwärmer). *S. convolvuli* L., *Acherontia atropos* L., death-head. The caterpillar lives on potatoes. *Smerinthus populi* L. (Pappelschwärmer), *S. tiliæ* L. (Lindenschwärmer), *S. ocellatus* L. (Nachtpfauenauge), Eyed Hawk-moth.

Tribe 6. **Rhopalocera.** Day butterflies. *Lepidoptera* of slender build, usually with brightly coloured wings. The antennæ are club-shaped, or knobbed at the end. The legs are slender. The tibiæ of the front legs are short, and sometimes reduced. The *Rhopalocera* fly by day, and when at rest hold the wings upright, often applied together. The caterpillars have sixteen feet, and are either naked or thickly covered with hairs and spines. They develop, for the most part without cocoons and attached to extraneous objects by fibres, into the pupa, which is often of a shining metallic colour.

Fam. **Hesperidæ.** *Hesperia comma* L., *H. sylvanus* Schn.

Fam. **Lycænidæ** (*Polyommatidæ*). (Bläulinge). *Polyommatus Arion* L., *P. Damon* Fabr. *P. virgaureæ* L., *Thecla rubri* L.. green hairstreak. *T. quercus* L., purple hair streak. *T. betulæ* L.

Fam. **Satyridæ.** *Satyrus Briseis* L., *S. Hermione* L., *Erebia* Bsdv. (*Hipparchia* Fabr.), *E. Janira* L., etc.

Fam. **Nymphalidæ.** The caterpillars have spiny outgrowths, rarely covered with fine hairs. The pupa is attached by its posterior extremity. *Apatura iris* L. (purple emperor). *Limenitis populi* L. (Eisvogel). *Vanessa prorsa* L. (*V. levana* is the spring generation). *V. cardui* L., painted lady. *V. atalanta* L., Admiral. *V. antiopa* L. (Camberwell beauty). *V. io* L., peacock. *V. urticæ* L..(Kleiner Fuchs), small tortoiseshell. *Argynnis paphia* L., silver-washed Fritillary. *A. aglaia* L. (dark green Fritillary), *Melitæa cinxia* L.

Fam. **Pieridæ** (Weisslinge). *Pieris cratægi* L. Blackveined white. *P. brassicæ* L., large white (Kohlweissling). *P. napi* L., green-veined white. *P. rapæ* L., small white. *Colias hyale* L., *C. rhamni* L. (Citronenvogel).

Fam. **Equitidæ.** *Papilio Podalirius* L.. *P. Machaon* L. (Swallow-tail). *Doritis Apollo* L. The females have a pouch-like appendage at the posterior end of the body.

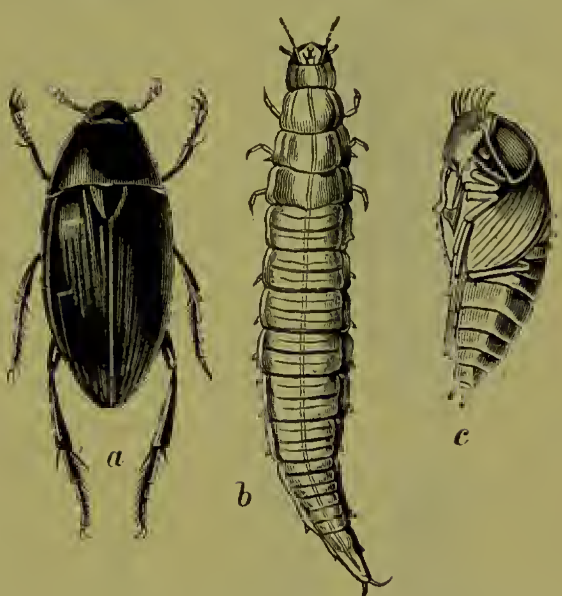


FIG. 483,—*Hydrophilus piceus* (règne animal). *a*, Beetle. *b*, Larva. *c*, Pupa.

## *Order* 8.—Coleoptera.*

*Insects with masticating mouth-parts and horny front wings (tegmina). Prothorax freely moveable. The metamorphosis is complete.*

The chief characters of this large, but tolerably well-defined, group of insects depend upon the structure of the wings. In the state of rest the anterior wings, as wing-covers (elytra), cover the posterior membranous wings which are transversely and longitudinally folded, and lie horizontally on the abdomen (fig. 483). The hind wings alone are used in flight, while the front wings are modified to perform a protective function, and usually correspond in size and form to the soft-skinned dorsal surface of the abdominal region, of

* W. E. Erichson. "Zur systematischen Kenntniss der Insectenlarven," *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, Tom. VII., VIII.. and XIII.
Th. Lacordaire, "Genera des Coléoptères," Paris, 1854-1866.
L. Redtenbacher, "Fauna Austriaca, die Käfer," 3 Aufl. Wien.. 1873.
Gemminger und Harold. "Catalogus Coleopterorum, etc.." München, 1868.
Kowalevski l.c., "Entwickelungsgeschichte des Hydrophilus, etc."

which, however, they leave in some cases the last segment (*pygidium*), or in other cases (*Staphylinæ*) several segments, exposed. As a rule, when the insects are at rest, the straight internal edges of both wing-covers are shut closely together, while the outer edges are bent round the sides of the abdomen. Sometimes the inner edges of the wings are fused together, so that the power of flight is abolished. In rare cases the wings are altogether absent. The head is seldom free, but as a rule is sunk into the freely moveable prothorax, and bears very variously shaped, usually eleven-jointed, antennæ. In the male the latter are of considerable size and have a considerable extent of surface. Ocelli are with few exceptions absent, but the facetted eyes are only absent in certain blind species, which live in caves. The mouth parts are adapted for masticating and biting, and sometimes show transitional forms to those of the *Hymenoptera*. The maxillary palps are usually four-jointed and the labial palps three-jointed. In the predatory beetles, the external lobe of the maxilla has a palp-like form and articulation. The labium, which is simplified by the reduction of its parts, is in rare cases elongated to form a divided tongue. The large prothorax (cervical shield) is moveably articulated with the mesothorax, which is usually weakly developed; and on it, as well as on the other thoracic segments, the pleura extend on to the sternal surface. The legs vary very much in shape, but usually end with a five-, rarely with a four-jointed tarsus. The tarsus is rarely composed of a smaller number (from one to three) of joints. The abdomen is attached to the metathorax by its broad base, and always possesses a greater number of dorsal than of ventral plates, of which some may fuse with one another. The smaller terminal segments are usually retracted and concealed by the preceding.

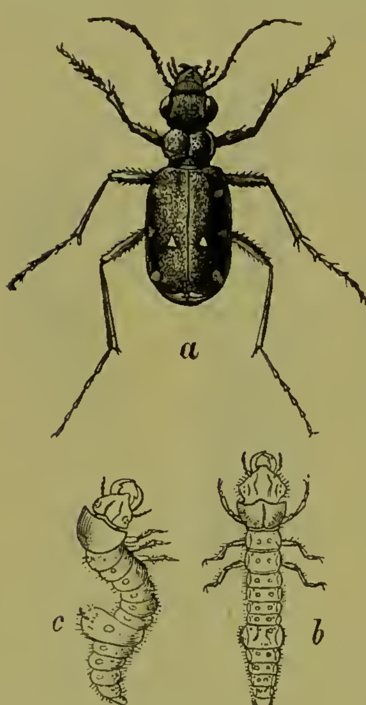


FIG. 481.—*a*, *Cicindela campestris*. *b*, *c*, Its larva with the two dorsal hooks on the fifth abdominal segment (règne animal).

The **nervous system** of the *Coleoptera* varies in the greater or less concentration of the ventral ganglionic cord. The subœsophageal ganglion is followed by two or three thoracic ganglia, with the posterior of which one or two abdominal ganglia may be fused. In the abdomen there are usually a series of separate ganglia (2 to 7). The latter may, however, fuse together to form a long mass or be drawn into the thoracic ganglia.

The long coiled **alimentary canal** dilates in the carnivorous beetles to form a gizzard, which is followed by a shaggy chylific ventricle. The number of Malpighian tubes is, as in Lepidoptera, confined to four or six.

The **males** and **females** are easily distinguished by the form and size of the antennæ, the structure of the tarsal joints, and by special relations of size, form and colour. In the female the numerous egg-tubes unite in very various arrangements, and a bursa copulatrix is often present. The males possess a large horny penis, which, when at rest, is retracted into the abdomen and is protruded by means of a powerful muscular apparatus.


FIG. 485.—*a*, *Meloë violaceus*. *b*, *Sitaris humeralis* (règne animal).

Almost all the larvæ have mouth parts adapted for biting, rarely suctorial pincers. They feed under the most different conditions, as a rule concealed and removed from the light, and usually in the same way as the perfect insect. They are either grub-like and apodal, but with a distinctly developed head (*Curculionidæ*), or they possess, in addition to the three pairs of legs on the thorax, also stumps on the last abdominal segments.

Many larvæ, as those of the *Cicindelæ*, have a peculiar apparatus for capturing their prey (fig. 484). In place of the facetted eyes, which have not yet appeared, ocelli are present in varying number and position. Some beetle larvæ, like the larvæ of the *Diptera* and *Hymenoptera*, live as parasites and feed inside bees nests on the eggs and honey (*Meloë*, *Sitaris*) (fig. 485). The pupæ of beetles, which are either suspended and attached to objects or lie on the earth or in holes, have their limbs freely projecting.

Fossil *Coleoptera* are found in coal formations and are specially numerous in amber.

Tribe 1. **Cryptotetramera = Pseudotrimera.** The tarsuses are composed of four joints, of which one joint is rudimentary. Latreille considered them to be three-jointed.

Fam. **Coccinellidæ** (Lady Birds). *Coccinella septempunctata* L. The larvæ feed on Aphides. *Chilocorus bipustulatus* L.

Fam. **Endomychidai** (Pilzkäfer). *Endomychus coccineus* L. *Lycoperdina succincta* L.

Tribe 2. **Cryptopentamera = Pseudotetramera.** One joint of the five-jointed tarsus is reduced and concealed.

Fam. **Chrysomelidæ** (Blattkäfer). The adult insects are mostly of a bright colour and feed on leaves. Their larvæ have a cylindrical thick-set body, which is very generally covered with warts and spiny prominences; they always have well-developed legs; they likewise feed on leaves, into the parenchyma of which some of them (*Hispa*) burrow, and present the peculiarity of using their excrements to prepare cases which they carry about with them (*Clythra*, *Cryptocephalus*). Before entering the pupal stage they attach themselves to leaves by the hind end of their body. *Haltica oleracea* Fabr. Harmful to cabbage leaves. *Lina populi* L. *Chrysomela varians* Fabr.

Fam. **Cerambycidæ** (*Longicornia*) (Bockkäfer). Some species (*Lamia*) produce a peculiar sound by rubbing the head against the prothorax. The elongated grub-like larvæ have a horny head with powerful mandibles, short antennæ, and usually no legs or ocelli. They live in wood, in which they bore passages and sometimes cause great damage. *Lamia textor* L., *Cerambyx heros* Scop., *C. cerdo* Fabr., *Prionus coriarius* Fabr.

Fam. **Bostrychidæ** (Borkenkäfer). *Coleoptera* of small size and cylindrical body shape. The larvæ are of stout cylindrical shape and without legs, the place of which is taken by ridges covered with hairs like those of the *Curculionidæ*. The adult insects and larvæ bore passages in wood, on which they feed. They live in companies, and belong to the most dreaded destroyers of forests of conifers. The way in which they eat into the bark is very peculiar, being characteristic of the individual species and indicative of their mode of life. The two sexes meet in the superficial passages, which the female, after copulation, continues and lengthens in order to lay her eggs in pits, which she hollows out for that purpose at the end of them. The larvæ when hatched eat out lateral passages, which, as the larvæ increase in size and get further from the main passage, become larger and give rise to the characteristic markings on the inside of the bark. *Bostrychus chalcographus* L., *B. typographus* L., under the bark of pine-trees. *B. stenographus* Duft.

Fam. **Curculionidæ** (Rüsselkäfer). Weevils. Head prolonged into a proboscis in front. Larvæ cylindrical, without or with very rudimentary legs and ocelli; they are almost entirely phytophagous: and indeed they live under the most various conditions, some inside buds and fruit, others under bark, or on leaves, or in wood. *Calandra granaria* L., in grain known as black grain-worms. *Balaninus nucum* L., Nut-weevil. *Hylobius abietis* Fabr., *Apion frumentarium* L.

Tribe 3. **Heteromera.** The tarsuses of the two anterior pairs of legs are five-jointed, of the posterior pair four-jointed.

Fam. **Oedemeridæ.** *Oedemera virescens* L.

Fam. **Meloidæ (Cantharidæ).** They furnish a substance used in the preparation of vesicants. The larvæ live partly parasitically on insects, partly free under the bark of trees, and some of them pass through a complicated metamorphosis called by Fabre hypermetamorphosis: they possess at first three pairs of legs: in later stages they lose these, and the body acquires a cylindrical form (fig. 457). *Meloe* L. The beetles live in grass. and when touched they give out an acrid pungent fluid between the joints of the legs. The larvæ creep on the stalks of plants, penetrate into the flowers of Asclepiadæ, Primulaceæ, etc., and attach themselves fast to the body of bees (*Pediculus melittæ* Kirby), in order to be carried to the bees' nest, in which they nourish themselves chiefly on honey. *M. proscarabæus* L., *M. violaceus* Marsh. *Lytta vesicatoria* L., Spanish fly. *Sitaris humeralis* Fabr., South Europe (fig. 485).

Fam. **Rhipiphoridæ.** The larvæ live in wasp nests (*Metoecus*), or in the abdomen of cockroaches (*Rhipidius*). *Rhipiphorus bimaculatus* Fabr.

Fam. **Cistelidæ.** *Cistela fulvipes* Fabr.. *C. murina* L.

Fam. **Tenebrionidæ.** *Tenebrio molitor* L., Larva known as meal-worm. *Blaps mortisaga* L.

### Tribe 4. **Pentamera.** Tarsus usually five-jointed.

Fam. **Xylophaga.** Tarsus sometimes only four-jointed. The larvæ sometimes feed on dead animal matters, sometimes bore cylindrical horizontal passages in wood, and are therefore destructive to furniture and wooden material as well as to living trees. *Lymexylon navale* L., on docks in oak. *Anobium pertinax* L., death watch, produces a ticking noise in wood. *Ptinus fur* L., *Pt. rufipes* Fabr.

Fam. **Cleridæ.** The variegated larvæ live under bark and for the most part on other insects. *Clerus formicarius* L., *Trichodes apiarius* L. The larva is parasitic in bee-hives.

Fam. **Malacodermata.** *Malachius æneus* Fabr. *Cantharis* (*Telephorus*) *violacea* Payk., *C. fusca* L. *Lampyris* Geoffr., Glow-worm. Female apterous, or only with two small scales. Light organs in the abdomen *L. noctiluca* L., *L. splendidula* L. Female with two small scales instead of wing-covers.

Fam. **Elateridæ** (Springkäfer). The elongated body is distinguished by the very free articulation between the prothorax and mesothorax; and by the possession of a spine upon the prothorax which fits into a pit on the mesothorax. These two arrangements enable the beetle to jump up when lying on its back. The larvæ live under the bark of trees on the wood, sometimes in the roots of grain and turnips, and may be very destructive. *Agriotes lineatus* L., *Lacon murinus* L., *Elater sanguineus* L., *Pyrophorus noctilucus* L., in Cuba, prothorax dilated to the form of a vesicle and phosphorescent.

Fam. **Buprestidæ** (Prachtkäfer). Body elongated, pointed behind, often brightly coloured, with a metallic lustre. The elongated vermiform larvæ are without ocelli and, as a rule, legs; and possess a very broadened prothorax. They live like the larvæ of the *Cerambycidæ*, to which they present a general resemblance, in wood, and bore flat ellipsoidal passages. *Trachys minuta* L., *Agrilus biguttatus* Fabr., *Buprestis rustica* Fabr.. *B. flavomaculata* Fabr.

Fam. **Lamellicornia** (Blatthornkäfer). The antennæ are seven- to eleven-jointed; the basal joint is large, and the terminal joints (three to seven) are widened to a fan shape. In many the anterior legs are adapted for digging. The soft-skinned larvæ possess a horny head, moderately long legs, and a curved abdomen, which is dilated behind to the form of a sac; they feed sometimes on leaves and roots, sometimes on putrefying vegetable and animal substances, and enter into the pupal stage after two or three years sojourn in a cocoon beneath the earth. *Lucanus cervus* L., stag beetle. Larvæ in rotten wood of old oaks. The beetle feeds on the sap which comes from the oak. *L. parallelipipedus* L., *Copris lunaris* L., *Aphodius subterraneus* Fabr., *Geotrupes vernalis* L., *G. stercorarius* L., *Rhizotrogus solstitialis* L., *Melolontha vulgaris* Fabr., Cockchafer. The larvæ at first live together and feed on fresh vegetable substances, later (in the second and third years) on roots, which they destroy, doing great damage. Towards the end of the fourth summer the beetle is usually developed from the pupa, which lies in a smooth round hole, but it remains in the earth till the next spring. *M. hippocastani* Fabr., *Cetonia aurata* L., *Ateuchus sacer* L., *Oryctes nasicornis* L.

Fam. **Dermestidæ** (Speckkäfer). *Attagenus pellio* L. (Pelzkäfer). *Dermestes lardarius* L., (Speckkäfer).

Fam. **Histeridæ** (Stutzkäfer). *Hister maculatus* L., *Ontophilus striatus* Fabr.

Fam. **Silphidæ** (Aaskäfer). Beetles and larvæ live on and lay their eggs in decomposing animal and vegetable matters ; some of them even attack living insects and larvæ. When attacked many defend themselves by the ejection of a stinking anal excretion. *Silpha thoracica* Fabr., *S. obscura* Fabr. *Necrophorus vespillo* Fabr., *N. germanicus* Fabr. (Todtengräber).

Fam. **Pselaphidæ.** Live in the dark under stones and in colonies of ants. *Pselaphus Heisei* Herbst. *Claviger testaceus* Pr.

Fam. **Staphylinidæ** (Kurzdeckflügler). *Myrmedonia canaliculata* Fabr. Live among ants. *Staphylinus maxillosus* L., *Omalium rivulare* Payk.

Fam. **Hydrophilidæ (Palpicornia).** Swimming beetles with short club-shaped antennæ and long maxillary palps, which often project beyond the antennæ. Feed on plants. *Hydrophilus piceus* L., *Hydrobius fuscipes* L.

Fam. **Dytiscidæ.** Swimming-beetles, with filiform, ten- or eleven-jointed antennæ and broad swimming legs beset with setæ ; the hind legs project back and are especially adapted for swimming by the possession of a close covering of swimming-hairs. *Colymbetes fuscus* L., *Dytiscus marginalis*, Sturm.

Fam. **Carabidæ.*** Running beetles, with eleven-jointed filiform antennæ, powerful pincer-shaped mandibles, and running legs. The elongated larvæ possess four-jointed antennæ, four to five ocelli on each side, sickle-shaped projecting pincers, and fairly long five-jointed legs *Harpalus æneus* Fabr., *Brachinus crepitans* K. (Bombardirkäfer). *Carabus auratus* L., *Procrustes coriaceus* L.

Fam. **Cicindelidæ.** Tiger-beetles. Mandibles with three teeth. The larvæ form subterranean passages, possess a broad head, very large sickle-shaped curved jaws, and bear on the dorsal surface of the eighth segment of the body two horny hooks for attachment in the passage, at the opening of which they lie in wait for prey. *Cicindela campestris* L. (fig. 484).

## *Order* 9.—HYMENOPTERA.†

*Insects with biting and licking mouth parts, fused prothorax, four membranous wings with only few nervures. Metamorphosis complete.*

The body has as a rule an elongated form, and possesses a freely

* Dejean, "Species général des Coléoptères, etc." Tom I.-V., Paris. 1825-1831.

† L. Jurine, "Nouvelle méthode de classer les Hyménoptères et les Diptères." Tom. I., Hyménoptères. Génèva. 1807.

C. Gravenhorst, "Ichneumologia Europæa," Vratislaviæ. 1829. J. Th. C. Ratzeburg, "Die Ichneumonen der Forstinsecten." 3 Bde. Berlin. 1844-1852.

G. Dahlbom, "Hymenoptera Europæa, præcipue borealia." Lund. 1845.

v. Siebold, "Beiträge zur Parthenogenesis der Arthropoden." Leipzig. 1871.

moveable head with large facetted eyes which in the male are almost in contact, and three ocelli (fig. 486).

In the antennæ a large basal joint (shaft) and eleven to twelve shorter joints can usually be distinguished, or they are not crooked, in which case they consist of a greater number of joints.

The **mouth parts** are biting and licking; the upper lip and mandibles are constructed as in beetles and Orthoptera; the maxillæ and labium, on the other hand, are elongated and adapted for licking, and when at rest are frequently bent round. In bees the tongue can be considerably elongated and assume the form of a proboscis; in this case the lobes of the jaws also become considerably extended, and form a kind of sheath around the tongue. The maxillary palps are usually six-jointed; the labial palps on the other hand only four-jointed, but the number of joints may be reduced.

As in the *Lepidoptera* and *Diptera*, the prothorax is firmly connected with the following thoracic segments, inasmuch as the

FIG. 486.—Apis mellifica. *a*, Queen. *b*, Worker. *c*, Drone.

pronotum at least (excepting in the leaf- and wood-wasps) is fused with the mesonotum, while the rudimentary prosternum remains freely moveable. On the mesothorax two small moveable scales (*tegulæ*) are found over the base of the forewing, and behind the scutellum the anterior part of the metanotum is developed into the posterior shield (*postscutellum*). Both pairs of wings are membranous, transparent, and traversed by but few nervures; the anterior are considerably larger than the posterior. From the outer edge of the latter small hooks arise, which are attached to the inferior edge of the anterior pair, thus bringing about the connection between the two pairs of wings. Sometimes the wings are absent in one of the two sexes, or in the workers amongst many social *Hymenoptera*. The legs possess five-jointed, usually broadened tarsuses with long first tarsal joint. The abdomen is rarely attached to the thorax by its whole breadth (sessile); as a rule the first or the two first segments of the abdomen are narrowed to a thin stalk, bringing about the connection with the thorax (stalked). In the female sex the abdomen ends with an ovipositor (*terebra*), which as a rule is retracted, or with a poison spine (*aculeus*). The latter develops from six warts, of which four belong to the ventral side of the penultimate, two to that of the antepenultimate segment. The sting (fig. 487) consists of the grooved piece (sting-groove), two piercing stylets and two sting-sheaths (with oblong plates) and is retracted when at rest. The grooved piece, the furrow of which is directed downwards, arises from the inner pair of warts of the penultimate segment, while the piercing stylets on the edge of the grooved piece correspond to the pair of warts of the antepenultimate segment. Finally the segments also take part in the formation of this apparatus, inasmuch as they furnish powerful supporting plates for the sting (quadratic plate and angular piece).

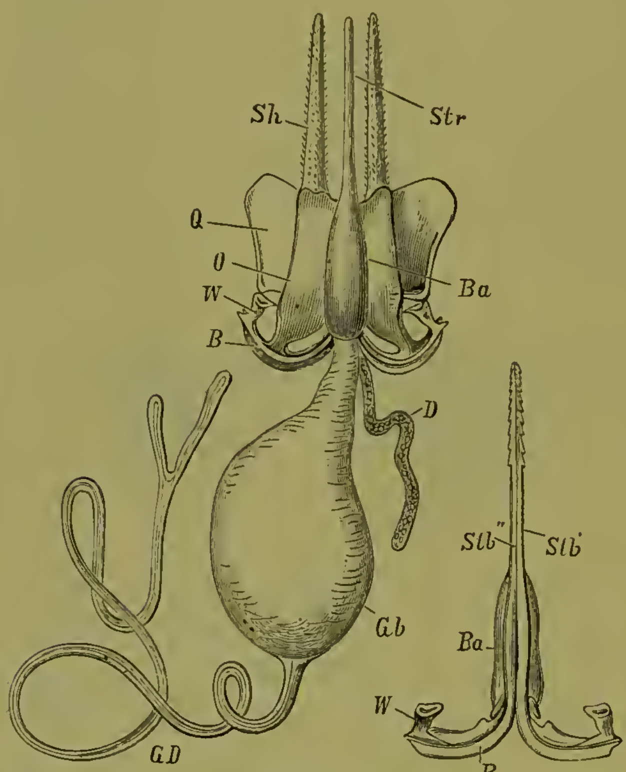



FIG. 487.—Stinging apparatus of the honey bee from the dorsal side (after Kraepelin). *GD*, poison gland; *Gb*, poison reservoir; *D*, gland; *Str*, grooved piece with the two stylets; *Ba*, swollen base of the grooved piece; *B*, curved root of the same; *W*, angular piece; *Sh*, sheath of spine; *O*, oblong plate; *Q*, quadratic plate; *Stb'*, *Stb''*, the two piercing spines on the ventral side of the grooved piece.

The **nervous system** consists of a large complicated brain, an infra-œsophageal ganglion, two thoracic ganglia (the ganglia of the mesothorax and metathorax are fused with the anterior abdominal ganglion), and five to six ganglia in the abdomen.

The **alimentary canal** frequently attains to a considerable length, especially in those Hymenoptera which with a longer life cumber themselves with the care and nourishment of the young. Large salivary glands are present. The narrow œsophagus usually dilates to a suctorial stomach, more rarely to a spherical gizzard (ants). A considerable number of short Malpighian tubules open into the intestine (hindgut).

In connection with the great power of flight, the longitudinal tracheal trunks give rise to vesicular dilatations, of which two at the base of the abdomen are conspicuous by their size.

The **female** sexual organs usually possess very numerous (up to one hundred) many-chambered egg tubes, and a large receptaculum seminis with accessory glands. A special bursa copulatrix is absent (fig. 488). When a sting is developed, filiform or branched poison glands with a common reservoir and a duct opening into the sheath of the sting, are present. In the **male** sex the ducts of the two testes are connected with two accessory glands, while the common ductus ejaculatorius ends with a large protrusible penis.

With the exception of the leaf-wasps (*Tenthredinidæ*), and wood-wasps (*Uroceridæ*), the **larvæ** are apodal and live either parasitically in the body of insects (the *Pteromalinæ* pass through various larval stages, undergoing a kind of hypermetamorphosis) or in plants, or in brood spaces (cells) formed of animal and vegetable substances. The former, like the caterpillars of the butterflies, possess, besides the six thoracic legs, six to eight pairs of abdominal legs, and live free on leaves; the latter are grub-like, find the nutritive material in their cells, and are in part fed during their growth. Almost all—*e.g.*, the larvæ of bees and wasps—possess a small retractile head with short mandibles and pointed pieces (maxillæ and labium). The anus is not developed, for the stomach is blind and does not communicate with the hindgut, which receives the Malpighian tubules. Most of the larvæ, when they enter the pupal stage, spin an irregular investment or a firmer cocoon of silk-like fibres. The larvæ of bees and wasps then soon undergo a moult (when they get rid of their excrementitious matters), and enter upon a stage which precedes that of the pupa and is called by v. Siebold the *pseudo-pupa* (fig. 489).

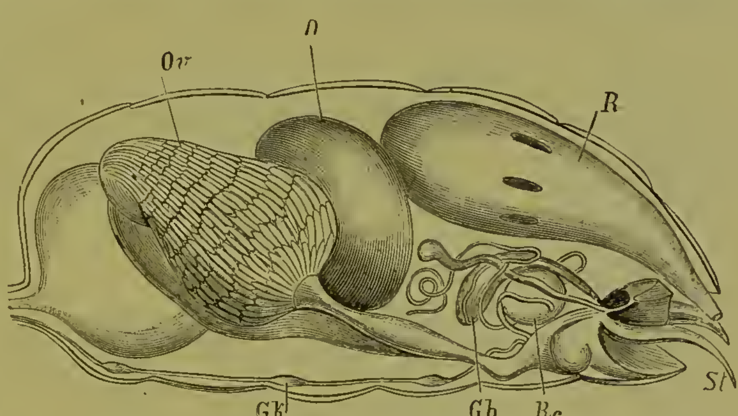



FIG. 488.—The viscera in the abdomen of the queen bee (after R. Leuckart). *D*, alimentary canal; *R*, rectum with rectal glands and anus; *Gk*, chain of ganglia; *Ov*, ovary; *Rc*, receptaculum seminis; *Gb*, reservoir of poison gland; *St*, sting.

## Sub-order 1.—**Terebrantia.**

Female with ovipositor as tube or borer (*terebra*), which projects freely at the end of the abdomen, and is sometimes retractile.

Tribe 1. **Phytophaga.** Abdomen sessile. Trochanter composed of two rings. Larvæ phytophagous, resemble caterpillars.

Fam. **Tenthredinidæ** (Leaf-wasps). Saw-flies. Abdomen sessile with short borer. The larvæ have rarely three, usually nine to eleven pairs of legs, and resemble caterpillars. The females lay their eggs in the epidermis of leaves, the puncture causes the flow of sap, which the egg imbibes and thereby increases in size. The young larvæ feed on leaves, often in early stages live in societies, and become pupæ in a cocoon. They are distinguished from the caterpillars by the greater number of legs, and by the two ocelli on the horny head. *Lyda betulæ* L., *Tenthredo* (*Athalia*) *spinarum* Fabr., larvæ sometimes on roses. *Nematus ventricosus* Klg., larvæ on gooseberries. *Cimbex femorata* L.

Fam. **Uroceridæ** (Wood-wasps). Abdomen with first tergum split, and usually long, freely projecting ovipositor (egg-borer). The females bore holes in wood and deposit their eggs therein. The larvæ bore further into the wood and live a long time. *Sirex gigas* L.

FIG. 489.—*a*, Larva of the bumble bee about to become a pupa. *b*, Pseudo-pupa (Semi-pupa). *c*, pupa (after Packard).

Tribe 2. **Gallicola.** Abdomen stalked. Larvæ apodal and aproctous, usually living in vegetable cells.

Fam. **Cynipidæ** (Gall-wasps). Thorax humped. Abdomen usually short, laterally compressed. The ovipositor (egg-borer) arises on the ventral side, and is as a rule retracted. The females bore into plant tissues and cause, by the irritation of an acrid fluid, an abnormal flow of vegetable fluids, thus giving rise to the outgrowths known as *galls*, on which either one or several apodal larvæ feed. Certain galls, especially those of the oaks of Asia Minor (*Aleppo*), contain tannic acid, and are on this account used in industry. In many species the females only are at present known; the eggs in such cases develop parthenogenetically. Many larvæ are parasitic in *Diptera* and *Aphides*. *Cynips quercus folii* L., *Rhodites rosæ* L., produces the bedeguar of roses. *Figites scutellaris* Latr., parasitic on the grubs of *Sarcophaga*.

Tribe 3. **Entomophaga.** Abdomen stalked. Female with freely projecting ovipositor (spine). Larvæ apodal and without anus, usually parasitic in the larvæ of other insects.

Fam. **Pteromalidæ.** The larvæ are parasitic in all possible insect larvæ, frequently in parasites, and pass through a complicated metamorphosis, extremely remarkable for the succession of very different stages. *Pteromalus puparum* L., *Teleas clavicornis* Latr., *Platygaster* Latr., (fig. 458).

Fam. **Braconidæ.** They principally persecute caterpillars, as well as beetle larvæ living in dead wood. *Microgaster glommeratus* L., in caterpillars. *Bracon impostor* Scop., *Br. palpebrator* Ratzbg.

Fam. **Ichneumonidæ.** *Ichneumon incubitor* L. *I.* (*Trogus*) *lutorius* Ratzbg., *Pimpla* (*Ephialtes*) *manifestator* L., *Ophion luteus* L.

Fam. **Evaniadæ.** *Evania appendigaster* L., *Foenus jaculator* L.

## Sub-order 2.—**Aculeata.**

With retractile perforated sting and poison gland in the female sex. Abdomen always stalked; the antennæ of male usual thirteen-jointed, of the female twelve-jointed. The larvæ are apodal and without anus.

Fam. **Formicidæ*** (Ants) (fig. 490). They live together in communities, which contain, besides the winged males and females, a great excess of small apterous workers with stronger prothorax. The latter are sometimes of two kinds, known as soldiers and true workers, distinguished by the size of the head and jaws. The workers are aborted females and resemble the true females in possessing a poison gland, the acid secretion (formic acid) of which they either pour out with the help of the sting or, in the absence of the latter, eject into the wound made by the mandibles.

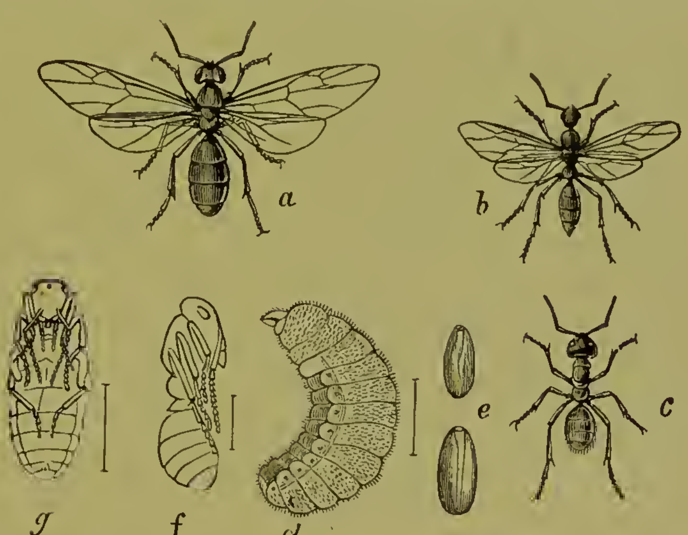



Fig. 490.—*Formica* (*Camponotus*) *herculanea*. *a*, Female. *b*, Male. *c*, Worker. *d*, Larva of *Formica rufa*. *e*, pupa with case, so-called ant egg. *f*, *g*, Pupa liberated from the case.

The dwellings of the ants consist of passages and cavities, which are placed in rotten wood, in the earth, or in hill-like heaps which they throw up. Winter provisions are not carried into these spaces, since the ant-workers, which with the queens alone survive the winter, fall into a kind of winter sleep.

In the spring queens are found in addition to the workers. From the eggs of the queens larvæ proceed, which are carefully reared and protected by the workers. The larvæ in egg-shaped cocoons become pupæ (ants' eggs) and develop, some of them to workers and some to winged sexual animals, which appear with us sooner or later in the course of the summer, and copulate in the flight. After copulation the males die, the females lose their wings and are carried back by

* P. Huber, "Recherches sur les mœurs des Fourmis indigènes." Geneva, 1810.

Latreille, "Histoire naturelle des Fourmis." Paris, 1802.

A. Forel, "Les Fourmis de la Suisse." Zurich, 1874.

the workers into their dwellings, to deposit their eggs, or found with some of the workers new societies.

In the tropics the ants undertake migrations in great numbers, and may become a regular plague when they enter houses and destroy all eatables. Many forms (*Oecodoma* species) are especially destructive to young trees and plants, which they strip of foliage. Some species, however, render service in attacking Termites and in destroying other pernicious insects, such as the cockroaches, even in the dwellings of man. Many species, especially of the genus *Eciton*, are predatory ants and destroy other ant colonies. Certain species are said to make war with foreign ant states and to carry off their young, which they bring up for service in their own colony (Amazon colonies. *F. rufa*, *rufescens*). The relatively high psychical activity of these insects is undeniable ; many instances of it have been disclosed by the thorough observations of P. Huber. They keep Aphides as we do milch cows ; they carry provisions into their dwellings ; they go out to battle in regular columns, and offer up their lives bravely for the community. In contrast to the war-like features of the slave-states are the friendly relations of the ants to other insects, which, as *Myrmecophila*, live in the ant dwellings (larvæ of *Cetonia*, *Myrmecophila*, etc.). *Formica herculanea* L.. *F. rufa* L., *Myrmica acervorum* Fabr., with sting.

Fam. **Chrysididæ** (Gold wasps). The females lay their eggs in the nests of other Hymenoptera, especially of the digging wasps (*Fossoria*), with which they have on this occasion to carry on war. *Chrysis ignita* L.

Fam. **Heterogyna** (*Mutillidæ*, *Scoliadæ*). Males and females very different in form, size and structure of antennæ. The females, with shortened wings or apterous, live solitarily and lay their eggs on other insects or in bees' nests, and do not trouble themselves with the nourishment and care of their young. *Mutilla europaea* L., *Scolia* (*Scoliadæ*) *hortorum* Fabr. The larva lives parasitically on that of the nasicorn beetle.

Fam. **Fossoria**.* (Digging wasps). Solitary Hymenoptera, with unbent antennæ and elongated legs; the tibiæ are armed with long spines. The females, which live on honey and pollen, dig passages and tubes usually in sand and in earth and in dry wood, and deposit at the end of them their cells, each of which contains an egg and animal nutritive matter for the future larva. Some (*Bembex*) carry fresh food daily to their growing larvæ, contained in open cells ; others place in the closed cell as many insects as the larva requires for its development. In the last cases the introduced insects are not completely killed, but merely crippled by a sting in the ventral nerve cord. The individual species usually capture quite definite insects (*caterpillars*, *Curculionidæ*, *Buprestidæ*, *Acridiæ*, etc.), which they overpower and paralyse in a very remarkable manner. For example, *Cerceris bupresticida* attacks *Buprestis*, while *C. Dufourii* chooses *Cleonus ophthalmicus*. The digging wasp seizes the head of the beetle with its mandibles and inserts its sting into the thoracic ganglia between the articulation of the prothorax. *Sphex flavipennis*, which constructs three cells at the end of a horizontal passage, two or three inches long, attacks *Grylla*, and *Sphex albisecta* species of *Œdipoda*. *Ammophila holosericea* supplies each of its brood cells with four or five caterpillars ; *A. sabulosa* and *argentata* only with one very large caterpillar, which is paralysed

* Fabre, "Observations sur les mœurs des Cerceris ;" also "Études sur l'instinct et les métamorphoses des Sphégiens," *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, ser. 4. Tom IV. and VI.

by a sting in a median apodal body segment. *Pompilus viaticus* L., *Ammophila sabulosa* L., *Crabro cribarius* L.

Fam. **Vespidæ** * (Wasps). Body slender, smooth. Anterior wings are narrow and can be folded together longitudinally. They are sometimes solitary, sometimes they live in societies; in the last case the workers also are winged. The females of the solitary wasps build their brood-cells in sand or on the stalks of plants with sand and clay, and fill them rarely with honey, usually with insects, especially caterpillars and spiders; they thus approach the *Fossoria* in their mode of life. The social wasps approximate to bees in the organization of their society. They construct their nests of gnawed wood, which they manufacture into lamellæ resembling paper, and fasten together into regularly hexagonal cells. The combs, which are composed of a simple layer of cells attached to one another, are either suspended freely on the branches of trees, or in holes in the earth and in hollow trees, or surrounded by a common leafy investment, on the under surface of which the holes for exit are placed. In the latter case the internal structure frequently consists of several horizontally-suspended combs which are placed one above the other, like the floors of a house, and are connected by buttresses. The openings of the hexagonal vertically placed cells look downwards. The foundation of each wasp nest is laid in the spring by a single female, which was fertilized in the preceding autumn and has survived the winter. She begets, in the course of the spring and summer, workers, which help to increase the size of the nest and to rear the offspring, and of which the larger forms produced in the summer not rarely lay eggs, which develop parthenogenetically into males. The larvæ are fed with insects which have been well chewed, and are transformed in a delicate case into pupæ in the closed cells. The perfect insects feed as a rule on sweet substances and honey juices, which they are said occasionally to gather in (*Polistes*). Males and females first appear in late summer and copulate in the flight high up in the air. The males soon die and the whole colony is generally dissolved in the autumn; the fertilized females, on the other hand, survive the winter under stones and moss in order to found new societies in the following year. *Odynerus parietum* L., *Polistes gallica* L. Nests are without investment of leaves and consist of a stalked comb. The fertilized females, which have survived the winter, produce according to v. Siebold at first only female offspring, whose eggs remain unfertilized and develop parthenogenetically into males. *Vespa crabro* L., hornets. *V. vulgaris* L.

Fam. **Apidæ**† (Bees). Tibia and tarsus, especially of the hind legs, broadened; the first tarsal joint, especially of the hinder legs, covered with hairs like a brush. Anterior wings cannot be folded together. Body hairy. The hairs on the hind legs or on the belly serve as a collecting apparatus for the pollen. The labium and maxillæ often reach a very considerable length. The latter are applied as a sheath to the tongue, and bear only rudimentary palps. The bees are solitary and social, and place their nests in walls, under earth and in hollow trees, and feed their larvæ with honey and pollen. Some do not build nests, but lay their eggs in the filled cells of other bees (parasitic bees). *Andrena cineraria* L., *Dasypoda hirtipes* Fabr., *Nomada ruficornis* Kirb.,

* H. de Saussure, "Études sur la famille des Vespides." 3 vols. Paris, 1852 to 1857.

† F. Huber, "Nouvelles observations sur les Abeilles." 2 vols. Paris, 1814.

*Megachile (Chalicodoma) muraria* Fabr., *Osmia bicornis* L., *Anthophora pilipes* Fabr., *Xylocopa violacea* Fabr. Wood-bees construct perpendicular passages in wood, and divide them by transverse walls into cells.

*Bombus* Latr. Bumble bee. Body heavy; hairy like fur. The nests are usually placed in holes under the earth, and include only a small number, about fifty to two hundred, rarely as many as five hundred workers, in addition to the fertilized female. They do not construct combs, but pile up irregular masses of pollen, in which the eggs are deposited, and which serve as food for the hatching grubs. The latter eat out cellular cavities in the pollen masses and form oval cocoons, which are free but irregularly placed by the side of one another. The nest is founded by a single female which has survived the winter. She at first alone has the burden of rearing the brood; subsequently, however, this is shared by the hatched workers of different size, which themselves lay unfertilized eggs. *B. lapidarius* Fabr., *muscorum* Ill., *terrestris*, Ill., *hypnorum* Ill.

*Apis* L., honey-bee. The workers with lateral separated eyes, with one-jointed maxillary palps. The external surface of the hinder tibiæ is pressed into the form of a pit, and is surrounded by simple marginal setæ (basket, fig. 491, *K*); the inner surface of the tarsus is beset with regular rows of setæ (brush, fig. 491 B, *b*). The female (queen) with shorter tongue, longer abdomen, without brush. The male (drone), with large eyes in contact, broad abdomen, and short mouth parts, without basket and brush. *A. mellifica* L., honey bee, distributed over Europe and Asia as far as Africa.

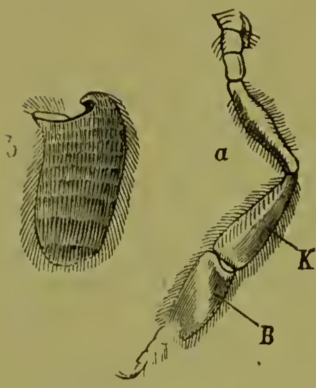



FIG. 491.—*a*, Hind leg of a worker of *Apis mellifica*. *K*, basket on the tibia; *B*, enlarged tarsal joint with brush on the under side. *b*, brush, more strongly magnified.

The workers build perpendicular combs in hollow trees, or in other protected places; under the influence of human cultivation, in suitably arranged baskets or hives. The wax used in the construction of the comb is produced in the organism as a result of metabolism (honey being the source), and is exuded in the form of small tablets between the segments of the abdomen. The combs consist of two layers of horizontal hexagonal cells, the bases of which are formed of three rhomboidal plates. The smaller cells serve for the reception of provisions (honey and pollen) and for the brood of workers, the larger for the reception of honey and the drone brood. Outside, at the edge of the comb, there are at definite times a small number of large irregular queen cells, in which the female larvæ are brought up. When the cells are filled with honey, or the larvæ contained in them have reached the stage of pupæ, they are closed up. A small opening at the bottom of the hive serves for entry and exit; all other clefts and fissures are closed with wax, and no light enters the interior of the nest. In no other Hymenopteran society is the division of labour so strictly carried out as in that of the bees. There is only one fertilized queen, and she alone lays the eggs (she may lay more than three thousand eggs in one day). The working bees divide amongst themselves the business of collecting honey, preparing wax, and feeding the brood, and the completion of the nest. The drones, which exist only at the swarming time, and then only in proportionately small numbers (two hundred to three hundred in a society of twenty thousand to thirty thousand workers) have the privilege of enjoying themselves and of doing no kind of work in the hive ; they arise from unfertilised eggs and are killed in the autumn (slaughter of drones). The queen and the workers live through the winter consuming the stored-up provisions, and kept warm by the heat produced by the dense population of the hive. In the first days of spring the queen deposits eggs, first in the workers' cells and later in the drone cells. Some royal cells are then constructed, and at intervals she deposits a fertilised egg in each of them. The larvæ in the royal cells receive a richer nourishment and royal food, and become sexually mature females (queens), capable of copulating. Before the oldest of the young queens is hatched—sixteen days from the deposition of the egg is required for this, while the workers develop in twenty days, the drones in twenty-four—the queen-mother leaves the hive with a part of the inhabitants (first swarm). The young queen either kills all the other royal larvæ and remains in the old hive, or if she is prevented from doing this by the workers, and the population is still large enough, she also leaves the old hive with a part of the workers before the appearance of a second queen (second swarm). Soon after her metamorphosis the young queen makes her marriage flight, and returns after impregnation to the hive. The queen is only impregnated once in the course of her life, which lasts four or five years ; she is henceforward able to produce male and female offspring. If the wings of the queen are paralysed and she is unable to copulate, she lays eggs which only give rise to drones ; the same is the case with the fertilised queen in her old age, when the contents of the receptaculum seminis is exhausted. Workers also may lay eggs which develop into drones ; the larvæ destined to develop into workers may, if the food supply at any early stage be abundant, become queens. As parasites in bee-nests may be mentioned the death's head moth, the wax moth, the larva of the bee-wolf, (*Trichodes apiarius*), and the bee-louse (*Braula cæca*).

The genera *Melipona* Ill., *Trigona* Jur., comprise small American species of bees; they appear, however, to be less closely related to the genus *Apis* than has been hitherto believed. With regard to the economy of the society, one of the most striking deviations they present, is that the brood-cells are filled with honey before the deposition of the eggs and afterwards closed, so that the just-hatched grub is provided beforehand with all the food material (Fr. Müller). The workers also prepare large reservoirs for the storage of the honey. Among the former there are forms as in *Bombus*, that do not build nests, but lay their eggs in the nests of other species.

# INDEX.

Printed by Hazell, Watson, and Viney, Limited, London and Aylesbury.

MACLACHLAN & STEWART.
BOOKSELLERS
64 South Bridge,
EDINBURGH.

*Fa 6.15

R36312

By or
of the
mc

ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK OF ZOOLOGY.

# ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK

OF

# ZOOLOGY.

*SPECIAL PART: MOLLUSCA TO MAN.*


BY

DR. C. CLAUS,

*Professor of Zoology and Comparative Anatomy in the University of Vienna*
*Director of the Zoological Station at Trieste.*

TRANSLATED AND EDITED BY

ADAM SEDGWICK, M.A.,

*Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge,*

WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF

F. G. HEATHCOTE, B.A.,

*Trinity College, Cambridge.*



ROYAL COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS, EDIN.
LIBRARY


WITH 706 WOODCUTS.

ARDVA · QVÆ · PVLCRA


LONDON:
W. SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO.,
PATERNOSTER SQUARE.
1885.

Printed by Hazell, Watson, & Viney, Limited, London & Aylesbury.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

# SPECIAL PART:

## *MOLLUSCA TO MAN.*

# CHAPTER I.

## MOLLUSCA.*

*Bilaterally symmetrical unsegmented animals, without a locomotory skeleton; with a ventral foot and usually a calcareous univalve or bivalve shell; with brain (supraœsophageal ganglia), circumœsophageal ring, and subœsophageal group of ganglia.*

SINCE Cuvier several different groups of animals, which were placed amongst the worms by Linnæus, have been included in the Mollusca. Of late years, however, the anatomy and development of these forms have been more closely examined, and it seems fairly certain that some of them are allied to the Worms. In any case, the group Mollusca must be looked upon as of more limited extent than has for some time been the case. The bivalved *Brachiopoda*, which in structure and development stand in closer relationship to the Bryozoa, may be removed from the Mollusca and united with the latter under the head *Molluscoidea*. The *Tunicata* also must be constituted an independent group between the Mollusca and the Vertebrata.

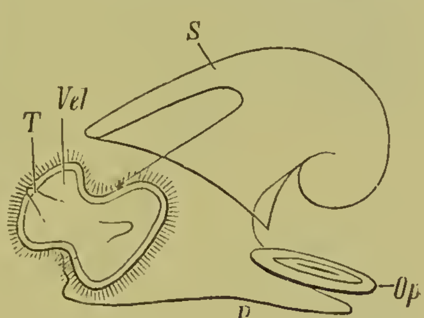



FIG. 402.—Older larva of a *Gasteropod* (after Gegenbaur). *S*, Shell; *P*, foot; *Vel*, velum; *T*, tentacles; *Op*, operculum for the closure of the shell opening.

* G. Cuvier, "Mémoires pour servir à l'histoire et à l'anatomie des Mollusques." Paris, 1817.

R. Leuckart, "Ueber die Morphologie und die Verwandschaftsverhältnisse der wirbellosen Thiere." Braunschweig, 1848.

Huxley, "On the Morphology of the Cephalous Mollusca, as illustrated by the Anatomy of certain Heteropoda and Pteropoda, etc." *Phil. Trans.*, 1853.

The Mollusca are unjointed, unsegmented animals, without jointed appendages. The body is covered by a soft slimy skin. They lack both an internal and external locomotory skeleton, and appear therefore especially suited for life in water. But few of them are terrestrial, and when this is the case the locomotion is always limited and slow; while the aquatic forms, in correspondence with the far more favourable conditions for locomotion presented by water, may be endowed with the power of rapid swimming.

The *dermal muscular system* plays an important part in the locomotion of these animals, especially that part of it placed on the lower, *i.e.*, ventral, surface of the body. In this region it is greatly developed, and gives rise to a more or less projecting locomotory organ of very various shape, the **foot** (figs. 492 and 493). The foot always consists of an unpaired median structure, which is sometimes divided into several parts and may possess in addition lateral paired portions, the **epipodia.** Above the foot there very generally exists on the body a shield-shaped thickening of the integument, the so-called *mantle*, the edges of which, in more advanced development, grow over the body as a fold of the skin and partially or completely cover it. The surface of this fold of skin secretes calcareous and pigmentary substances, and gives rise to the variously shaped and coloured shells which contain and protect the soft body. In addition to the *foot* and *mantle*, the body generally possesses in the anterior region, on either side of the mouth, a pair of lobe-like appendages, the *buccal lobes*, which are the remnants of a largely-developed larval structure, known as the **velum.**

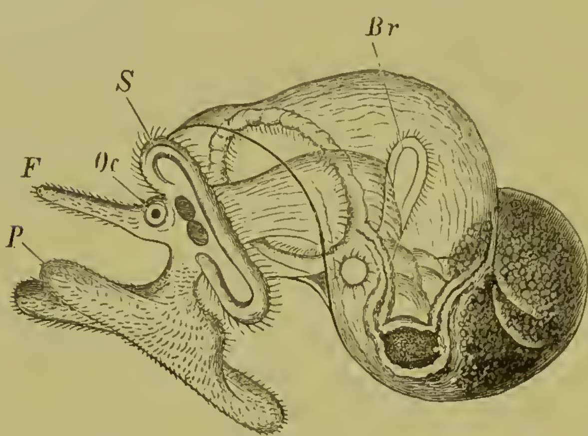


FIG. 493.—Larva of *Vermetus* (after Lacaze-Duthiers). *S*, velum; *Br*, gill; *F*, tentacle; *P*, foot; *Oc*, eye.

In the higher Mollusca (*Cephalophora*) the anterior part of the body bearing the buccal lobes, and containing the central parts of the nervous system and the sense organs, is more or less sharply marked off as a *head*. The part of the body behind the head constitutes the main mass of the animal. Its dorsal portion (*the visceral sac*) contains the viscera and is frequently spirally twisted, as a result of which the bilateral symmetry undergoes externally a remarkable disturbance. The visceral sac may, however, have a flattened or cylindrical form and retain its symmetry. In this group (the *Cephalophora*) the shell may be simply plate-shaped or spirally wound, or remain as a mere flat rudiment hidden under the dorsal integument. In one group of the Cephalophora, viz., the *Cephalopoda*, a circle of arms is attached to the head around the mouth opening. They serve both for swimming and creeping, and for the capture of nourishment. By Lovén and R. Leuckart they were looked upon as modifications of the buccal lobes; by others, perhaps with greater justice, as tentacles, and by others again as

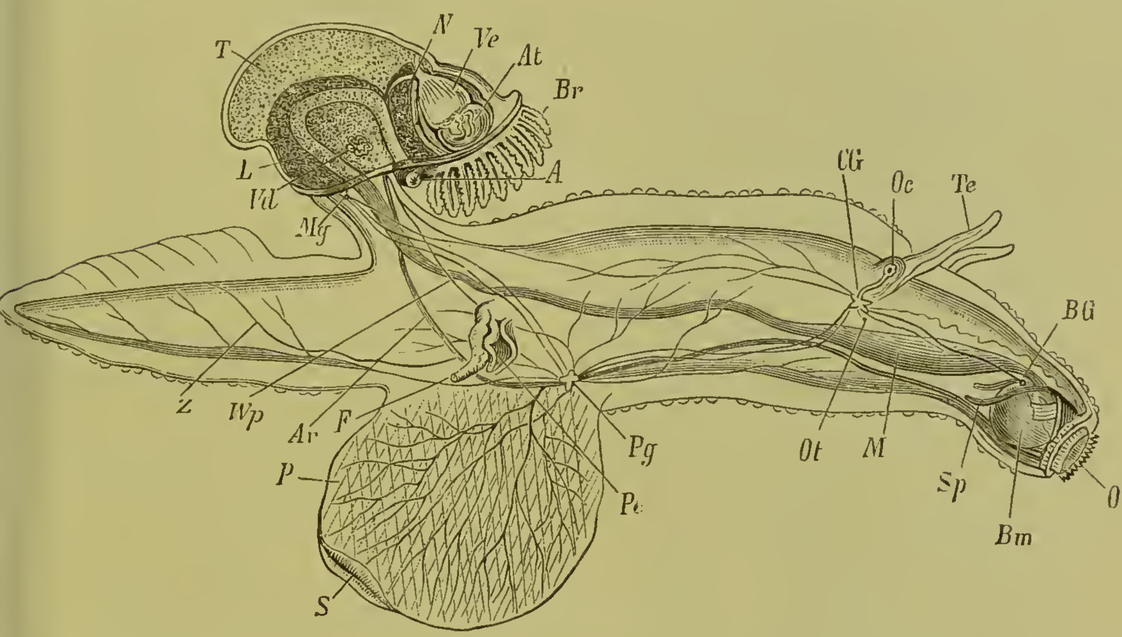



FIG. 494.—Male of *Carinaria mediterranea* (after Gegenbaur). *P*, Foot; *S*, sucker; *O*, mouth; *Bm*, buccal mass; *M*, stomach; *Sp*, salivary gland; *L*, liver; *A*, anus; *CG*, cerebral ganglion; *Te*, tentacle; *Oc*, eye; *Ot*, auditory vesicle; *BG*, buccal ganglion; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Mg*, mantle ganglion; *N*, kidney; *Br*, gill; *At*, auricle; *Ve*, ventricle; *Ar*, aorta; *Z*, hinder branch of the same; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Wp*, ciliated furrow; *Pe*, penis; *F*, flagellum with gland.

modifications of the foot. A perforated funnel-shaped cone, through which the excretory products and water which has passed over the gills is expelled from the large mantle cavity, and which thus serves at the same time as a swimming organ, probably corresponds to the fused folds of the epipodia. Amongst the *Gastropoda* the head is provided with tentacles and buccal lobes, and the ventrally placed foot possesses a large flat plantar surface; more rarely it has the form of a vertically placed fin (*Heteropoda*, fig. 494). In another group, the *Lamellibranchiata* (*Acephala*), there is no independent head, and the laterally compressed body bears two large lateral mantle lobes, each of which secretes a single shell; the two valves so formed are united on the dorsal surface by a ligament.

The internal organization of the Mollusca presents as many differences as does the external form. Like the external form, the internal structure also frequently presents surprising deviations from the bilateral arrangement.

The **nervous system** * (figs. 495, 496, 497) consists of a dorsal pair of ganglia lying on the œsophagus (only exceptionally—fig. 495—dissolved into a general ganglionic investment of the commissure), the *cerebral ganglia* (figs. 496, 497, *Cg*), from which pass off the sense nerves and an œsophageal ring, composed of several fibrous cords. The latter primitively gives off two pairs of nerve-trunks. The nerves of the upper and lateral pair are the *pallial nerves* (fig. 495, *PaSt*); they supply the lateral parts of the body and the mantle. The nerves of the ventral pair are placed nearer the middle line, and are known as the *pedal nerves* (fig. 495, *PeSt*); they are connected together by transverse commissures (fig. 495) and innervate the muscles of the foot. This arrangement, found in the simplest form in *Chiton*, agrees essentially with that of the Gephyrean-like genus, *Neomenia*. At a more advanced stage, two large swellings are found at the origin of the pedal nerves; these are the *pedal ganglia* (figs. 496, 497, *Pg*). In addition, a third group of ganglia, known as the *visceral ganglia*, is also found. The arrangement of the latter ganglia is very various; they are sometimes fused with the cerebral, sometimes with the pedal ganglia, and are sometimes broken up into several groups of ganglia. They are

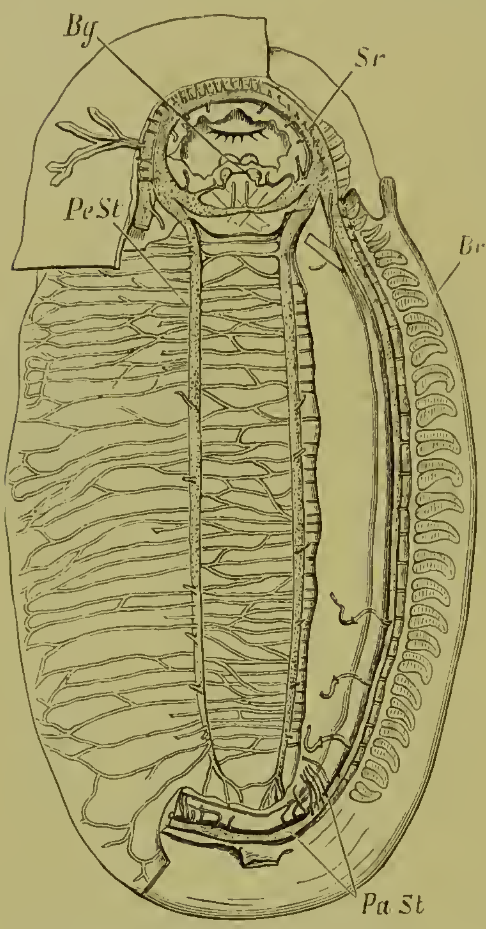



FIG. 495.—Nervous system of *Chiton* (after B. Haller). *Sr*, œsophageal ring; *Bg*, buccal ganglion; *PeSt*, pedal nerve; *PaSt*, pallial nerve; *Br*, gills.

* H. v. Jhering, "Vergleichende Anatomie des Nervensystems und Phylogenie der Mollusken." Leipzig, 1877.

connected with the cerebral ganglia by a longer or shorter commissure, and give off nerve plexuses to the heart, gills, and generative organs. This third pair of ganglia is, therefore, regarded as the equivalent of the sympathetic, but unjustly, as it also gives off nerves to the skin and muscles. Small ganglia (*buccal ganglia*), lying above and below the buccal mass and sending off nerves to the œsophagus and intestine, may more justly be regarded as sympathetic.

**Tactile organs** are present in the more highly-developed Mollusca, as two or four lobes placed near the mouth, the above-mentioned buccal lobes; in addition to which, tentacles round the edge of the mantle are often found in the *Acephala*, and in the *Cephalophora* two or four retractile tentacles on the head. The **eyes** have almost always a complicated structure, and are provided with lens, iris, choroid, and retina. There are usually two of them on the head; in rare cases—*e.g.*, in some Lamellibranchs—they are more numerous, and are placed on the edge of the mantle. **Auditory organs** are very generally present. They have the form of closed otocysts, provided with hairs on their internal walls. They are usually paired, and lie either on the cerebral or pedal ganglia (fig. 497, *Ot*). They are, however, always innervated from the former.

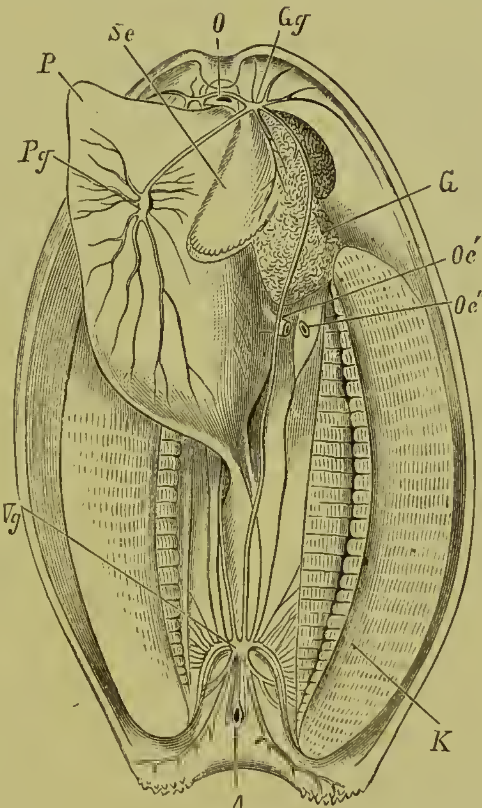



FIG. 496.—Nervous system of the pond mussel (*Anodonta*) (after Keber). *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *K*, gills; *P*, foot; *Se*, labial palps; *Gg*, cerebral ganglion; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Vg*, splanchnic ganglion; *G*, generative gland; *Oe′*, external opening of kidney; *Oe″*, opening of generative gland.

In the **alimentary canal**, three divisions, at least, can be clearly distinguished—the œsophagus, the stomach and intestine, and the hindgut or rectum. Of these the middle or digesting division (stomach and intestine) is usually characterized by the possession of a very extensive *liver*. **Kidneys** are always present, and are frequently paired and symmetrical in each half of the body. Often, however—principally when the body is asymmetrical—the kidney of one side is smaller (*Patella*, *Haliotis*) or is entirely absent (*Gastro-*

*poda*). They usually have the form of sacs with a wide lumen, and open on the one hand into the body cavity (*pericardial sinus*), and on the other to the exterior by a lateral opening. In all probability the molluscan kidney is homologous with an annelidan segmental organ. The internal, funnel-shaped opening is frequently beset with cilia. The anus is very often removed from the middle line, and placed on one side of the body.

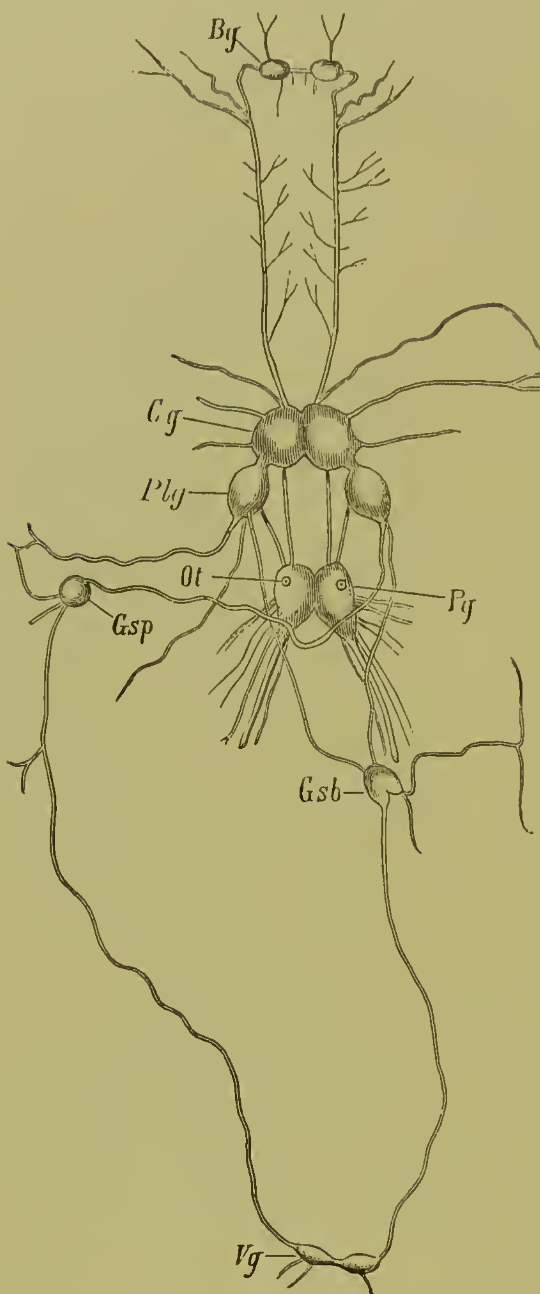



Fig. 197. — Nervous system of *Cassidaria* (after Haller). *Cg*, cerebral ganglion; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Plg*, pleural ganglion; *Bg*, buccal ganglion; *Gsp*, supraintestinal ganglion; *Gsb*, subintestinal ganglion; *Vg*, visceral ganglion; *Ot*, otocyst.

A compact **heart** is always present, driving the blood through the vessels into the organs. The vascular system is never completely closed, for, even when the arteries and veins are connected by capillaries, blood sinuses, derived from the body cavity, are inserted into the course of the vessels. The heart is always arterial—*i.e.*, systemic—and receives arterial blood from the respiratory organs.

**Respiration** is in all cases carried on through the general outer surface of the body; but in addition special respiratory organs, in the form of *branchiæ*, more rarely of *lungs*, are present. The branchiæ are ciliated projections of the body surface, and are usually placed between the mantle and the foot; they may have the form of branched appendages, or of broad lamellæ (*Lamellibranchiata*). The lung, on the other hand, is derived from the mantle cavity, which is filled with air, and the inner surface of which is thrown into a number of complicated folds, so as to expose a large surface for the respiratory blood-vessels; it communicates by an opening with the external medium. The pulmonary and branchial cavities are, therefore, morphologically equivalent.

**Reproduction** is always sexual. The *hermaphrodite* condition, on the whole, preponderates; nevertheless, not only many marine Gastropods, but also most Lamellibranchs and all Cephalopods are diœcious.

**Development** usually begins with a total segmentation, which is followed by the formation of a blastoderm surrounding the hinder part of the yolk or the whole yolk. The just hatched young often pass through a complicated metamorphosis, and possess an anterior cutaneous expansion bordered with cilia—*the velum*—which functions as a locomotory organ. In form, disposition of cilia and organisation, many molluscan larvæ permit of a closer comparison with Lovén's worm larva.

By far the majority of the Mollusca are aquatic animals, especially marine; only a few live on land, and these always seek damp localities. When we consider the extraordinarily wide distribution of the Mollusca in past times, the importance of their fossil remains for the determination of the age of the sedimentary formations becomes intelligible.

## Class 1.—LAMELLIBRANCHIATA.*

*Laterally compressed Mollusca without separated head, with bilobed mantle and bivalve shell, composed of a right and left half and connected by a dorsally-placed ligament; with large gill plates; sexes usually separate.*

The Lamellibranchs were formerly united with the Brachiopoda as *Conchifera*. Like the latter, they lack a differentiated cephalic region, and possess a large and usually bilobed mantle and a bivalve shell. Nevertheless, the structural differences between these

* G. Cuvier, "L' histoire et l'anatomie des Mollusques." Paris, 1817.
Bojanus, "Ueber die Athem- und Kreislaufswerkzeuge der zweisehaligen Muscheln." *Isis*, 1817, 1820, 1827.
S. Lovén, *K. Vet. Akad. Handlgr.* Stockholm, 1848. Translated in the *Arch. für Naturgesch.*, 1849.
Laeaze-Duthiers, *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, 1854—1861.
H. and A. Adams, "The Genera of the Reeent Mollusca." London, 1853-1858.
T. Reeve, "Conchologia ieoniea." London, 1846-1858.

two groups are so essential, that a close connection between them cannot be maintained.

The usually strictly symmetrical body is laterally compressed and of considerable extent, and is surrounded by two lateral mantle lobes, which are continuous across the dorsal middle line and secrete a right and left shell valve. To the sides of the mouth opening are found two pairs of leaf- or tentacle-like buccal lobes—the **labial palps**. On the ventral surface a large, usually hatchet-shaped foot (fig. 498, *F*) projects; and two pairs, rarely one pair, of large lamellar gills are always placed in the mantle furrow between the mantle and foot (fig. 498, *K*).

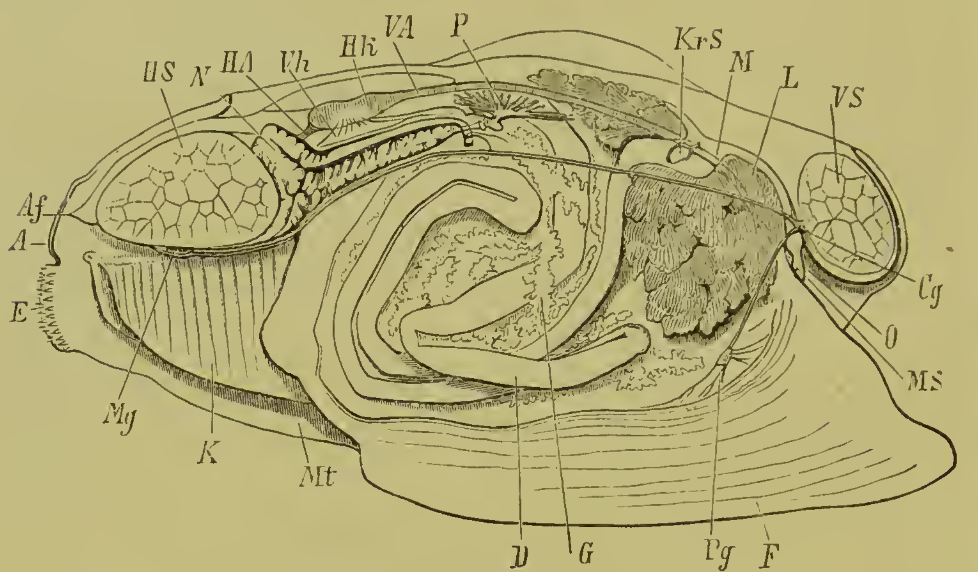



FIG. 498.—Anatomy of *Unio pictorum* (after C. Grobben). *VS*, anterior adductor muscle; *HS*, posterior adductor muscle; *MS*, labial palp; *F*, foot; *Mt*, Mantle; *K*, branchiæ; *Cg*, cerebral ganglion; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Mg*, splanchnic ganglion; *O*, mouth; *M*, stomach; *L*, liver; *KrS*, crystalline style; *D*, intestine; *Af*, anus; *G*, generative organs; *A*, region of mantle lobes bounding the exhalent or cloacal orifice; *E*, region of ditto bounding inhalent or branchial orifice; *N*, kidney; *Vh*, auricle; *Hk*, ventricle; *VA*, anterior aorta; *HA*, posterior aorta; *P*, pericardial gland (schematic).

The hind end of the edges of each mantle lobe almost always presents two slight, contiguous excavations (fig. 498, *A* and *E*), the ventral of which is bordered by numerous papillæ. When the two halves of the mantle are above together, these excavations form, with the corresponding structures of the opposite side, two slit-like openings, placed one behind the other. The upper or dorsal of these two openings functions as the cloacal, or exhalent opening; the lower or ventral as the inhalent opening. Through the latter, with a slightly gaping shell, the water is driven by the peculiar arrangement and action of the cilia on the inner surface of the mantle and the gills into the mantle and respiratory chamber. Food materials pass with the water to the labial palps, and so to the mouth. The edges of the mantle lobes do not always remain free through their whole extent, but frequently fuse together, first at the hind end, and then gradually forwards. As a result of this fusion, a posterior opening, including in itself the inhalent and exhalent orifices, becomes separated from the anterior opening into the mantle cavity; and, further, the exhalent and inhalent openings become separated from each other by a transverse bridge of tissue. The long anterior opening or *foot-cleft*, in consequence of the progressive fusion of the mantle edges, often becomes gradually so shortened, that the foot, which is correspondingly reduced, can scarcely be protruded. In this case, the mantle comes to have the form of a saccular investment with two openings. The further forward the fusion of the two mantle lobes proceeds, the more marked becomes a peculiar elongation of the posterior mantle region round the inhalent and exhalent openings—an elongation of such a nature that two contractile tubes, or **siphons**, become formed (fig. 499, *a*). The latter may reach such a size that they can no longer be drawn between the posterior edges of the gaping valves of the shell. The two siphons often fuse with one another; but the two canals, with their openings surrounded by tentacles, remain separate. In the most extreme cases the siphons are enormously enlarged, and the posterior region of the body is peculiarly elongated and uncovered by the rudimentary shell; so that the whole animal acquires a vermiform appearance, the shell-bearing anterior region of the body constituting the head (*Teredo*, fig. 505).

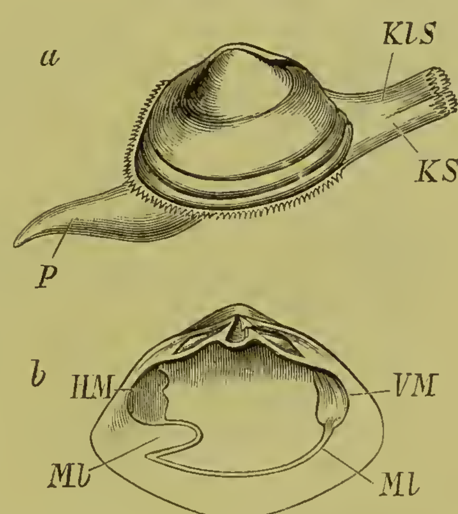



Fig. 499.—*a*, *Mactra elliptica*, animal with shell; *KlS*, cloacal or exhalent siphon; *KS*, branchial or inhalent siphon; *P*, foot. *b*, left valve of *M. solida*; *VM*, anterior adductor muscle; *MH*, posterior adductor muscle; *Ml*, pallial line; *Mb*, pallial indentation.

The mantle and skin consist of a cellular, slimy epidermis, beneath which lies a connective tissue, richly traversed by muscular fibres. The epidermis on the outer surface of the mantle consists of columnar cells; while on the inner surface of the mantle the cells composing it are ciliated. Pigments are present principally upon the edges of the mantle, which are frequently folded or beset by papillæ and tentacles.

The outer surface of the mantle secretes a strong calcareous shell, which is constituted of two valves corresponding to the two mantle lobes. The two valves are united dorsally. They are rarely exactly alike. Nevertheless, the term unequivalve is only applied to those shells in which the asymmetry is very marked, and the valves can be distinguished as upper and lower. The lower valve is the larger and more arched, while the upper is smaller and flatter, closing up the cavity of the lower after the manner of an operculum. The edges of the two valves are generally closely applied to one another, still they may gape more or less widely at various points for the exit of the foot, byssus and siphons. The latter is especially the case for those Molluscs which bore in sand, wood, or hard rock. In extreme cases the shell may, by a wide anterior emargination and an extended docking of its posterior part, be reduced to an annular rudiment (*Teredo*), while to its hinder end is applied a calcareous tube, which may intimately fuse with the shell rudiments and receive the latter entirely into itself (*Aspergillum*).

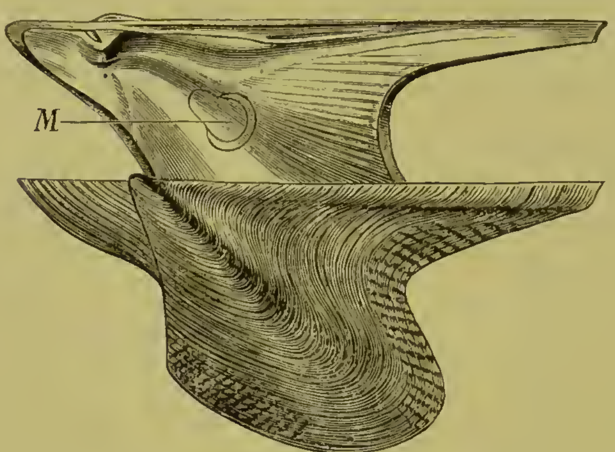



FIG. 500.—*Avicula semisagitta*, the valves are shifted over one another; *M*, muscle impression.

The two valves of the shell are always connected dorsally by an external or internal ligament, which tends to keep the valves open. The two shell valves are also firmly connected together dorsally by interlocking teeth, which constitute the so-called hinge (*cardo*). The hinge edge with the ligament is therefore to be distinguished from the free edge of the shell, which is divided into an anterior, inferior (ventral), and posterior or siphonal edge. The anterior and posterior edge may generally be easily determined by the position of the hinge-ligament with regard to the two *umbones* (*nates*), which have the form of two prominencies projecting over the dorsal edge, and indicate the point (*apex*) where the development of the valves began. The *area* is behind the apex, and includes the dorsal posterior side of the shell. The part of the dorsal edge in front of the apex is usually shorter, and contains, at least in the equivalve species, an excavation, the *lunula*, by means of which the anterior edge can be at once recognised.

While the outer surface of the shell presents various sculpture markings, the inner surface is smooth and shines with the lustre of mother-of-pearl. On a closer examination, impressions and pits become visible on the inner surface. A narrow line, the so-called *mantle* or *pallial line* (the line of attachment of the mantle edge to the shell), is placed near and fairly parallel to the ventral edge of the shell (fig. 499, *Ml*). In the siphoned forms this presents posteriorly a bend directed forwards and upwards (*Mb*), the *pallial bay*, which is due to the siphons. Impressions are usually caused by the insertion of an anterior and posterior adductor muscle which pass through the body of the animal transversely from one side to the other, and are attached to the inner surface of the shell (fig. 499, *HM*, *VM*). While in the equivalve mussels (*Orthoconcha*) the two impressions are usually of equal size, in the unequivalve forms (*Pleuroconcha*) the anterior adductor is reduced, and may completely vanish; the posterior adductor, on the other hand, now a muscle of much larger size, shifts forward to the middle of the shell (fig. 500). Hence the names *Dimyaria* and *Monomyaria*. According to its chemical composition, the shell consists of carbonate of lime and an organic matrix (conchyolin), which usually presents a laminated texture. In addition to this laminated layer there is also a thick external calcareous layer, composed of large, pallisade-like prisms, which are placed side by side and may be compared to the enamel of teeth (fig. 501, *S*). Finally, on the outer surface of the shell there is a horny cuticle, the so-called epidermis (*Cu*). The internal laminated layer is secreted by the whole internal surface of the mantle,

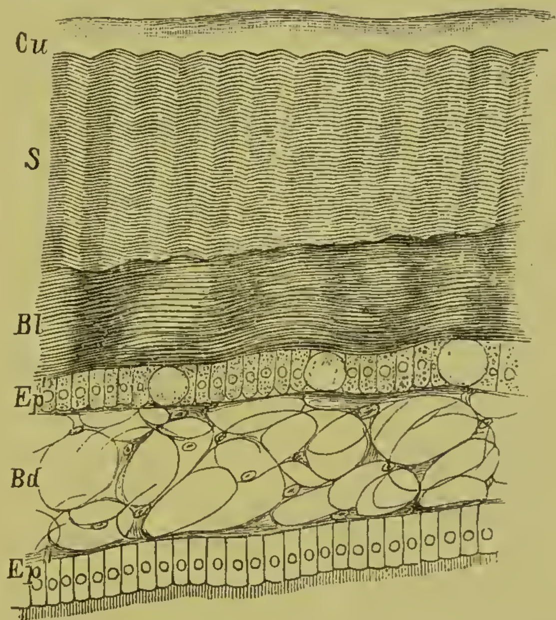



FIG. 501.—Vertical section through the shell and mantle of *Anodonta* (after Leydig). *Cu*, cuticle; *S*, prismatic layer; *Bl*, laminated (mother-of-pearl) layer; *Ep'*, external epithelium of mantle; *Bd*, connective tissue substance: *Ep''*, internal epithelium of mantle.

while the two outer layers are formed only by the free edge of the mantle. The growth of the shell is effected in two ways; (1) by additions to the internal laminated layer, whereby the shell increases in thickness; (2) by additions to the prismatic and horny layers, whereby it increases in superficial extent. Accordingly the outer coloured part of the shell, which is composed of vertical prisms and a horny cuticle, when once formed cannot increase in thickness; while new concentric layers are constantly being added to the internal colourless mother-of-pearl layer during the whole life of the animal. The mantle-secretion gives rise in the so-called pearl-mussel (*Meleagrina*, *Unio margaritifer*), to the formation of pearls.

The foot is completely absent in comparatively few of the *Lamellibranchiata*, and only in those which have lost the power of locomotion (*Ostrea*, *Anomia*). In many forms, principally in the larva (*Unio*), less frequently in the adult (*Mytilus*), the foot possesses a **byssus** gland, which secretes silk-like fibres, by which a temporary or permanent attachment of the animal is effected. The form and size of the foot vary very considerably, according to the special kind of locomotion. The foot is most frequently used for creeping in sand, and then is hatchet-shaped; in other cases it is spread out laterally and its creeping surface has the form of a disc. More rarely it is of a large size and bent, in which case it serves for springing movements in the water (*Cardium*). Some Lamellibranchs possess a linear club-shaped or cylindrical foot (*Solen*, *Solenomya*), and move by rapidly retracting the foot and ejecting water through the siphons. Many use the foot for burying themselves in mud; others bore into wood (*Teredo*) or hard rock (*Pholas*, *Lithodomus*, *Saxicava*, etc.), for which purpose they push themselves against the rock with their short blunt foot (*Pholas*, *Teredo*), and use the hard and often finely serrated edge of their shell as a grater, giving it a rotatory movement. According to Hancock, the foot and edge of the mantle at the anterior end of the gaping shell are beset with siliceous crystals, and effect the excavation of the rock after the manner of a file.

The **nervous system** presents three pairs of ganglia, the cerebral, pedal, and visceral ganglia. The visceral ganglia are connected with the cerebral by a longer or shorter commissure on each side (figs. 496 and 498). Since there is never a distinct head, and sense organs do not appear on the anterior region of the body, the brain (cerebral ganglia) is proportionately little developed. Its nerves supply mainly the region round the mouth and the mantle, to which two large nerves are often distributed. The two halves of the brain are frequently (*Unio*) far removed from one another laterally, and are approximated to the anteriorly placed pedal ganglia (*Pecten*), whose nerves are distributed on the ventral side of the body in the foot. The large *visceral ganglia* are placed on the ventral side of the posterior adductor muscle, and supply nerves partly to the gills and partly to the viscera and to the mantle; the latter are two large trunks which run in the edge of the mantle and anastomose with the mantle nerves from the brain, often forming plexuses. Large nerves also pass off from the visceral ganglia to the siphons, at the base of which they form an accessory pair of ganglia.

**Sense organs.**—Auditory organs, eyes, and tactile organs are present. The former have the form of paired auditory vesicles, and lie beneath the œsophagus attached to the pedal ganglia (their nerve, however, arises from the brain); they are characterised by the large hair cells which line the wall of the vesicle. Eyes may either be simple pigment spots at the end of the respiratory tube (*Solen*, *Venus*), or be much more highly developed and placed on the edge of the mantle of *Arca*, *Pectunculus*, *Tellina*, and especially of *Pecten* and *Spondylus*. In the latter genera they are placed on stalks between the marginal tentacles, and have an emerald green or brown red colour; they consist of an eye-bulb with a corneal lens, choroid, iris, and a well-developed layer of rods into which the optic nerve passes. The sense of touch is provided for by the labial palps, the edges of the respiratory apertures (siphons) with their papillæ and cirri, and also the often numerous tentacles at the edge of the mantle (*Lima*, *Pecten*). In all probability the hair cells found in the mantle are the seat of a special olfactory sense (tracking sense).

The **digestive organs** begin with the mouth, which is placed between the labial palps (fig. 498). The mouth leads into a short œsophagus, into which the cilia of the labial palps drive small nutrient particles received into the mantle cavity with the water. Jaws and tongue are always absent. The œsophagus widens into a spherical stomach, at the pyloric end of which a blind sac, which can be closed up, is attached. A rod-like transparent structure (*crystalline style*) is often found either in the above-mentioned blind diverticulum of the stomach, or in the alimentary canal itself. It is to be regarded as an excretion-product of the alimentary epithelium, and is periodically renewed. The intestine always attains a considerable length, is much coiled and is surrounded by the liver and generative glands; it projects into the foot and then ascends again behind the stomach to the dorsal surface; it then traverses the ventricle of the heart, passes over (dorsal to) the posterior adductor muscle to open at the hind end of the body into the mantle cavity at the end of a projecting papilla.

The **circulation** is effected by an arterial heart, which is enclosed in a pericardium and lies in the dorsal middle line slightly in front of the posterior adductor muscle. The heart consists of a median ventricle, which is perforated by the alimentary canal, and of two lateral auricles, through which the blood enters the ventricle. The ventricle of the heart of *Arca* is peculiar in being double; the efferent aortæ, however, unite to form an unpaired vessel. The ramifications of the anterior and posterior aorta lead the blood into a complicated system of lacunæ in the mantle and in the interspaces between the viscera. These, which coincide with the body cavity, represent the capillaries and finer venous vessels; while, by some observers, they have been regarded as a true capillary and venous system. The chief venous sinuses are two lateral sinuses placed at the base of the gills, and a median sinus into which the lacunæ of the foot lead. From these part of the blood passes direct into the gills; the main part, however, first passes through a network of canals in the walls of the kidney or organ of Bojanus, as through a kind of portal circulation, and thence into the gills, whence it is returned as arterial blood to the auricles of the heart. Water is said to enter the circulation through openings in the foot and to become mixed with the blood. Nevertheless the erectile networks of the foot are blood-lacunæ.

**Organs of respiration.**—There are usually two pairs of branchial leaflets (gills), which begin behind the labial palps and pass backwards along the sides of the body. The outer surfaces and the interlamellar water-spaces of these branchial leaflets are covered with cilia, which keep up a continuous flow of water over the gills. The outer gill, viz., that lying next the mantle, is usually considerably the smaller of the two. It is often completely absent, so that the number of the gills is reduced to a single pair. Sometimes the gills of the two sides fuse with one another across the middle line in the posterior region, and may in extreme cases represent a sack, like the branchial sack of the Ascidians (*Clavagella*).

The most important of the **excretory organs** — the organ of Bojanus, so-called after its discoverer—is a paired, glandular sac with folded walls, and of an elongated oval form, whose cavity communicates with the pericardium (fig. 498). The substance of this gland, which functions as kidney, is composed of a yellow or brown spongy tissue, which is covered with a closely ciliated layer of cells, from which concrements containing calcareous matter and uric acid (also *guanin*) are excreted. The simple duct often receives the duct of the generative apparatus, or the two organs open together on a common papilla on either side. In the *Siphoniata*, on the other hand, the renal and generative openings are almost always separate.

**Generative organs.** — The Lamellibranchs are, with a few exceptions (the genera, *Cyclas, Pecten, Ostrea, Clavagella, Pandora*), diœcious. Both kinds of sexual organs lie amongst the viscera, and have the form of lobed or racemose glands, which are placed near the liver, surround the windings of the intestine, and extend into the base of the foot. The testis and ovary can usually be distinguished from one another with the unaided eye by their colour; the ovary being red in consequence of the colour of the ova; the sperm, on the contrary, is milk-white or yellow. The openings of the ducts are placed right and left near the base of the foot. The form, position and opening are exactly the same in the hermaphrodite glands, in which the male and female follicles may be separate and open separately (*Pandora*) or together (*Pecten, Clavagella, Cyclas*); or the same follicles may function sometimes as ovary and sometimes as testis (*Ostrea, Cardium norwegicum*). In the diœcious forms, the male and female animals may differ in the shape of the shell, as is the case in the fresh water *Unionidæ*. Here the outer gills of the female are used for the reception of the eggs (brood pouch), and the shell is more arched. Hermaphrodite individuals are met with among the freshwater mussels, both in *Unio* and in *Anodonta*. The fertilization of the eggs is probably usually effected in the mantle or branchial cavity of the female.

But few Lamellibranchs are viviparous. The fertilized eggs, however, almost always remain for some time between the valves of the shell, or pass into the branchial leaflets, where they undergo the early processes of embryonic development under the protection of the mother. This care of the brood is especially conspicuous in the freshwater forms; in the *Unionidæ* the eggs pass into the great longitudinal canal of the external gill, whence they are distributed into the gill spaces, which become enormously widened and modified into peculiar brood-pouches. In the emptying of these brood-pouches the contents are expelled through the great longitudinal canal as a mass of eggs, united together by mucus and containing ciliated embryos, or as a continuous string of eggs.

The development* of the embryo is introduced by an unequal segmentation. The segments arrange themselves in the form of a blastosphere, on which the archenteron often arises by invagination, while the mesoderm is developed from two cells which are early

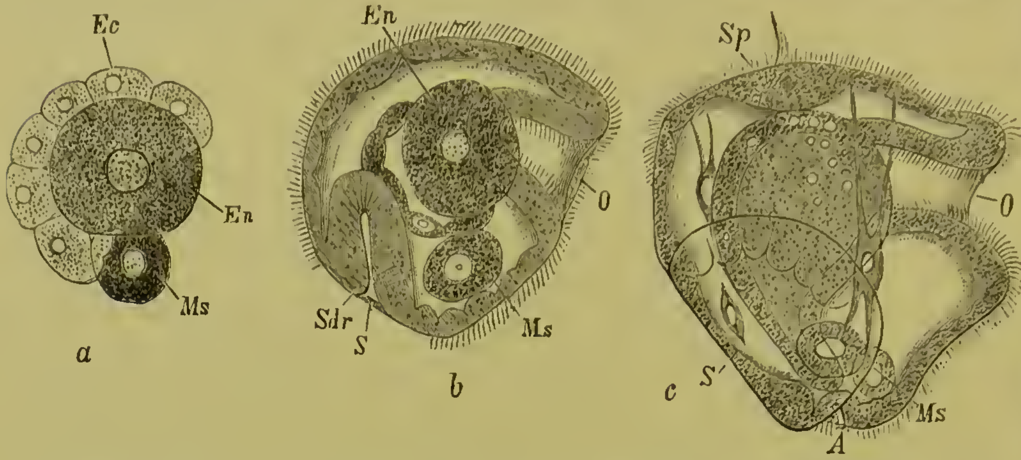
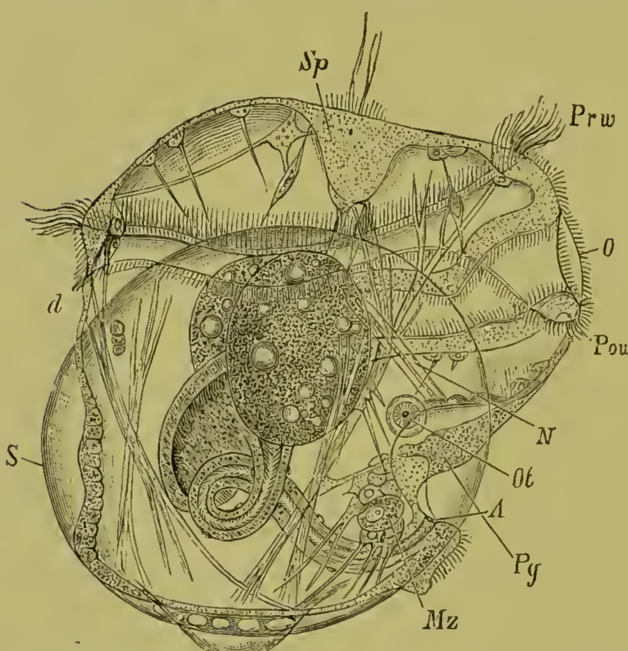



FIG. 502.—Stages in the development of the larva of *Teredo* (after B. Hatschek). *a*, optica median section of an embryo with two mesoderm cells (*Ms*) and two entoderm cells (*En*); *Ec*, ectoderm cells. *b*, Ciliated embryo with mouth (*O*), stomach, intestine, and shell gland (*Sdr*); *S*, shell. —*c*, Later stage; *Sp*, apical plate; *A*, anal invagination.




*d*, Larva of *Teredo*. *O*, mouth; *A*, anus; *Prw*, præoral ciliated ring; *Pow*, postoral ciliated ring; *N*, pronephros; *Ot*, otocyst; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Mz*, mesoderm cells.

separated. The first trace of the endoderm also may have the form of two cells (fig. 502). The embryo, which is partially ciliated and often rotates within the egg membranes, soon acquires a ciliated velum and shell gland. The nervous system, otocysts, and foot are not differentiated till

* Vide especially Lovén. "Bidrag till Kännedomen om Utvecklingen af Mollusca Acephala Lamellibranchiata." Stockholm. 1848.

Flemming, "Studien über die Entwicklungsgeschichte der Najaden." *Sitzungsber. der K. Akad. der Wissensch.* Vienna. 1875.

Carl Rabl, "Ueber die Entwickelungsgeschichte der Malermuschel." Jena, 1876.

B. Hatschek, "Ueber die Entwick-gesch. von Teredo." *Arbeiten aus dem zool. Institute, etc.*, Tom. III. Vienna. 1881.

afterwards; while the heart, kidney, and gills are still later in making their appearance. Among the provisional arrangements the velum, which proceeds from the sides of the præoral ciliated ring, is very generally present, and in the free-swimming larvæ has the form of a large ciliated ring or collar.

The development of the freshwater forms (*Cyclas*, *Unio*, *Anodonta*), in which the eggs and embryos are contained in well-protected brood pouches, may generally be called direct. The marine Lamellibranchs, on the other hand, are born at an early stage, and swim about for a long time as larvæ with large umbrella-like velum, from which the labial palps are developed (fig. 503).

The Lamellibranchs are for the most part marine and live at different depths, sometimes creeping, sometimes swimming and jumping. Many are without the power of changing their position, inasmuch as they fix themselves at an early age by means of the byssus threads to rocks and stones (oysters). Others, as the boring forms, bore passages in the wood of ships and piles and in rocks.

The Lamellibranchs had a wide distribution in the earlier periods of the earth's history, and their fossil shells are most excellently preserved; they are therefore of the greatest importance as characteristic fossils for the determination of the age of formations.

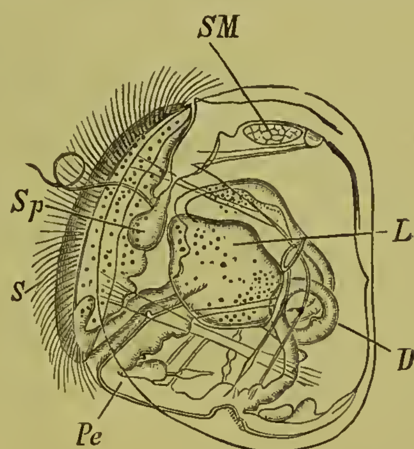



FIG. 503.—Larva of *Montacuta bidentata* (after Lovén). *S*. velum; *Sp*, apical plate with flagellum; *D*, intestine; *L*, liver; *SM*, anterior adductor muscle; *Pe*, foot.

## 1.—ASIPHONIA.

Mantle without siphons. Pallial impression simple.

Fam. **Ostreidæ.** Oysters. Shell valves unequal, laminated, with weak hinge usually without teeth, and simple central adductor muscle. In the true oysters the more arched left valve is firmly attached, while the right and upper valve, which is fastened by an internal ligament, lies as an operculum on the lower valve. Mantle completely split and fringed at the edge; gill lamellæ, on the contrary, partially fused on their outer edge. Foot absent or rudimentary. They usually live together, like colonies, in the warmer seas, where they may form banks of considerable extent (oyster banks). They were also represented in earlier times, especially in the Jura and in the Chalk. *Ostrea edulis* L., oyster, on the coasts of Europe on rocky ground; probably includes a series of different species according to the locality. According to Davaine, the oysters are said to produce only male sexual products towards the end of the first year, and it is only later, from the third year onwards, that they become females and produce ova. Moebius, on the contrary, asserts that the sperm is the later formed, and not until after the pregnant beast has got rid of her eggs. The reproduction takes place especially in the months of June and July, at which time, in spite of their extraordinary fertility, the oysters must not be gathered. *O. crista galli* Chemn., in the Indian Ocean. *Anomia ephippium* L. *Placuna placenta* L.

Fam. **Pectinidæ.** Scollops. Shell equivalved or unequivalved, but tolerably equisided, with straight hinge line; often with fan-shaped ribs and bands, with single adductor muscle. The free and completely split mantle edges bear numerous tentacles, and often emerald green eyes in great number. The small foot often secretes byssus fibres for attachment. Some are attached by their arched shell valve (*Spondylus*), others swim about by rapidly opening and closing the shell (*Pecten*). Many are edible and are even more esteemed than

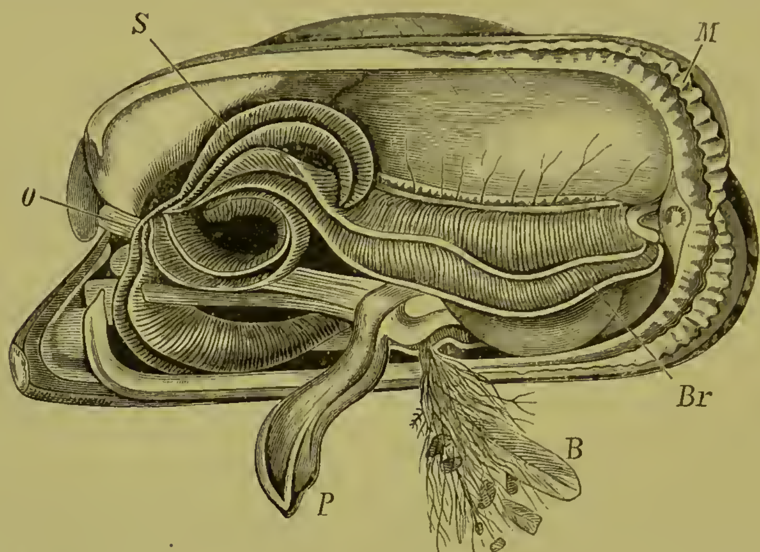



FIG. 504.—*Mytilus edulis* (règne animal). *O*, mouth; *S*, labial palps; *P*, foot; *B*, byssus secretion; *Br*, gills; *M*, thickened edge of mantle.

the oysters. *Pecten Jacobæus* L., *P. maximus* L., *P. varius* L. Mediterranean. *Spondylus gaederopus* L. *Lima squamosa* Lam.

Fam. **Aviculidæ.** With oblique unequivalved shell of laminated texture and inner mother-of-pearl layer. They possess two adductor muscles, of which, however, the anterior is very small. Mantle completely open. Foot small, secreting byssus. *Avicula hirundo* L., Gulf of Tarent. *Meleagrina margaritifera* L., pearl mussel, inhabits especially the Indian and Persian Oceans, and also the Gulf of Mexico. Secretes pearls.* The internal layer of the shell is used in commerce as mother-of-pearl. *Malleus vulgaris*, Lam., Indian Ocean.

Fam. **Mytilidæ** (fig. 504). Mussels. Shell equivalved, covered with thick epidermis, with large posterior and small anterior muscle impressions. The tongue-shaped foot fastens itself by the byssus fibres which it secretes. Mantle more or less free except a short siphonal opening fringed at the edge. *Pinna squamosa* Gm., Mediterranean. *Mytilus edulis* L., edible mussel of the North Sea and Baltic (fig. 504). *Lithodomus dactylus* Sow., in the Mediter-

* *cf.* Moebius, "Die echten Perlen, etc." Hamburg, 1857.

ranean (Temple of Serapis at Pozzuoli). *Dreyssena polymorpha* Fall., has gradually extended over many freshwater systems of Germany.

Fam. **Arcaceæ** (Archemuscheln). Shell thick, equivalved with well-developed hinge, and covered by hairy epidermis. The two adductors form two equally large anterior and posterior muscle impressions. *Arca Noæ* L., Mediterranean. *Pectunculus pilosus* L., Mediterranean.

The **Trigoniadæ (Trigoniacea)** are allied here. *Trigonia pectinata* Lam.

Fam. **Unionidæ (Najades)**, Freshwater Mussels. With long equivalved but not equisided shells, which are covered externally by a strong smooth usually brown epidermis, and internally by a mother-of-pearl layer. One of the muscle impressions is divided. Foot with cutting edge; gills fused behind the foot. The outer gill plates also function as brood-pouches for the developing eggs. They live in standing or running water.

*Anodonta cygnea* Lam., in ponds. *A. anatina* L., more in rivers and brooks. *Unio pictorum* L., (Malermuschel). *Unio tumidus* Retz., *batavus* Lam. *Margaritana margaritifera* Retz. (Flussperlmuschel), in mountain streams of South Germany, especially in Bavaria, Saxony, and Bohemia.

## II.—SIPHONIATA.

Part of the mantle edges fused, with elongated tubular siphons.

Fam. **Chamidæ (Chamacea)** (Gienmuscheln). Shell unequivalve, with strongly developed cardinal teeth and simple pallial line. The mantle edge fused, except at three points, viz., the opening for the foot, the dorsal (cloacal) and ventral (inhalent) siphons. *Chama Lazarus* Lam.

The **Tridacnidæ** are closely related to the above. *Tridacna gigas* L. *Hippopus maculatus* Lam. Indian Ocean.

Fam. **Cardiidæ (Cardiacea)** Cockles. Shell equivalve, fairly thick, heart-shaped and arched, with large incurved umbones, external ligament, and strong hinge formed of several teeth. Siphons short. Foot powerful and bent elbow-like, serves for swimming; passes out through anterior slit. *Cardium edule* L., North Sea and Mediterranean. *Hemicardium cardissa* L., East Indies.

Fam. **Lucinidæ (Lucinacea)**. Shell circular, free, closed, with one or two cardinal teeth, and a second quite rudimentary lateral tooth. Pallial line simple. Mantle open in front, prolonged behind into one or two siphons. *Lucina lactea* Lam. Mediterranean.

Fam. **Cycladidæ.*** Shell equivalve, free, swollen, with external ligament and thick horny epidermis. Mantle with two (rarely one) more or less fused siphons. Live in fresh water. *Cyclas cornea* L., *Pisidium* Pf. *Corbicula* Mühlf.

Fam. **Cyprinidæ.** Shell regular, equivalve, elongated to an oval, closed, with thick and strong epidermis. One to three principal cardinal teeth, and usually a hinder lateral tooth. Pallial line simple. Mantle edges fused to form two siphonal openings. *Cyprina islandica* Lam., *Isocardia cor* L. Mediterranean.

Fam. **Veneridæ.** Shell regularly round, or oblong with three diverging cardinal teeth on each valve. Pallial line bent in. Siphons of unequal size, fused at the base. *Venus verrucosa* L., Mediterranean. *Cytherea Chione* L., edible, Mediterranean. *C. Dione* L., Atlantic Ocean.

Fam. **Mactridæ** (Fig. 499). Shell trigonal, equivalve, closed or slightly

* Fr. Leydig, "Anatomie und Entwickelung von Cyclas." *Müller's Archiv*, 1835.

gaping, with thick epidermis. Two diverging cardinal teeth. Pallial indentation short, rounded. Siphons fused, with fringed openings. *Mactra stultorum* L., Mediterranean. *Lutraria* Lam.

Fam. **Tellinidæ.** With two long, completely separated siphons; edges of mantle widely open, bearing tentacles. Triangular foot. *Tellina baltica* Gm. *T. radiata* L. *Donax trunculus* L.

Fam. **Myidæ** (Gapers). Mantle almost completely closed, with slit for the protrusion of the short or cylindrically elongated foot, and very long fleshy fused siphons. The valves gape at each end and possess a weak hinge. Bury themselves deep in mud and sand. *Solen vagina* L., razor shell. *Mya truncata* L. (Gaper).

FIG. 505. — *Teredo navalis*, removed from its calcareous tube, with elongated siphons (after Quatrefages).

Fam. **Gastrochænidæ** (**Tubicolidæ**). Shell thin, equivalve, toothless, sometimes inserted in a calcareous tube formed by an excretion of the mantle. Mantle with one small opening anteriorly and prolonged behind into two fused siphons with terminal openings. *Gastrochæna clava* L., *Clavagella bacillaris* Desh. *Aspergillum javanum* Lam., Indian Ocean.

Fam. **Pholadidæ.** Boring mussels. The valves of the two sides gaping; without cardinal teeth and ligament, but with accessory calcareous pieces which lie either on the hinge (*Pholas*) or on the siphons (*Teredo*, fig. 505). Mantle with only small opening for the passage of the thick foot. Siphons elongated. Bury themselves in mud and sand, or bore into wood and even into solid stone, calcareous rocks and corals. They form passages, from which they protrude their fused siphons. *Pholas dactylus* L. Piddock, *Ph. crassata* L. *Teredo navalis* L. (Fig. 505) Shipworm, was the cause of the famous dam-break in Holland at the beginning of last century.

## SCAPHOPODA.

*Diœcious Mollusca without head, eyes, or heart, with tri-lobed foot, and tubular calcareous shell open at the two ends.*

The *Scaphopoda* are allied to the Lamellibranchs. The admirable investigations of *Lacaze-Duthiers* * first cleared up this group of Molluscs, which were for a long time known as *Cirrobranchiata* and grouped amongst the Gastropods. He showed that they are closely related to the *Acephala*, and constitute forms transitional between the latter and the *Cephalophora*.

The shell is an elongated, somewhat bent, open, conical (with the apex broken off) tube, and contains the animal, which has a similar shape and is fastened by a muscle to the thinner lower edge of the shell

* Lacaze-Duthiers, "Histoire de l'organisation et du développement du Dentale." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, 1856-1858.

(fig. 506). The body possesses a saccular mantle, like the shell open at both ends, and a trilobed foot; the foot is protruded through the larger of the openings of the shell from the anterior opening of the mantle, the margin of which is thickened. A separated cephalic region is not present, but there is an egg-shaped projection in the mantle cavity, at the apex of which is placed the mouth, surrounded by eight leaf-like labial appendages.

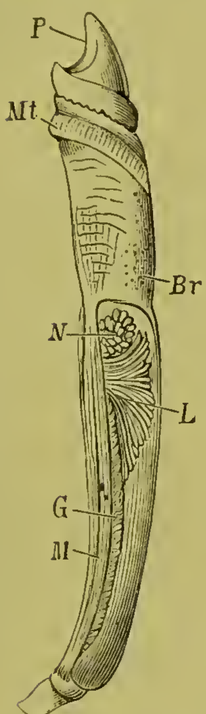



FIG. 506.—*Dentalium Tarentinum* (after Lacaze-Duthiers). Animal without shell from right side. *P*, foot; *Mt*, circular muscle of mantle; *M*, longitudinal muscle; *Br*, gills; *N*, kidney; *L*, liver; *G*, generative gland.

The **buccal armature** consists of a lateral (right and left) rudimentary jaw, and a tongue beset with five rows of plates.

The **alimentary canal** is divided into a buccal cavity, œsophagus, stomach with large liver, and an intestine, which after several coils closely pressed together, opens behind the foot into the middle of the mantle cavity.

The **circulatory organs** are reduced to two mantle vessels and a complicated system of wall-less spaces of the body cavity.

**Respiration** is effected by the surface of the mantle and also by the filiform tentacles, which arise from two ridges (*cervical collar*) behind the head-like buccal prolongation.

The **kidney** lies round the rectum, and opens by two openings placed on the right and left of the anus.

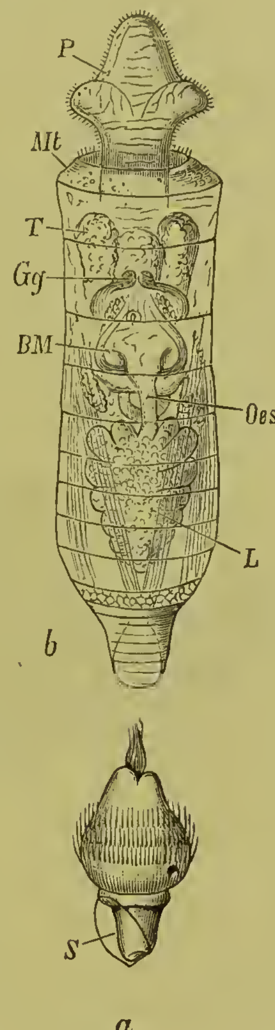



FIG. 507.—Larva of *Dentalium* (after Lacaze-Duthiers). *a*, young larva with first rudiment of shell (*S*). *b*, Older larva seen from the dorsal surface; *T*, tentacle collar; *Gg*, cerebral ganglion; *Oes*, œsophagus; *L*, liver.

The **nervous system** consists of three groups of ganglia, of which the pedal ganglion bears two otocysts. **Eyes** are absent. The numerous ciliated tentacles serve as *tactile organs*.

The *Scaphopoda* are diœcious. The **ovaries** and **testes** are unpaired finger-shaped lobed glands, which are placed behind the liver and intestine, and open to the exterior with the right kidney.

The animals live buried in mud, and creep about slowly by means of the foot. The young swim about for some time as larvæ, provided with ciliated tuft and ciliated collar; then acquire a shell, which is almost bivalve, a velum, and foot; the shell subsequently becomes tubular (fig. 507).

### Order.—Solenoconchæ.

Fam. **Dentalidæ.** *Dentalium entalis* L., *D. elephantinum* L., Mediterranean and Indian Ocean.

## Class II.—GASTROPODA.*

*Mollusca with distinct head, often bearing tentacles; a ventral muscular foot and undivided mantle, which frequently secretes a simple plate-shaped or spirally twisted shell.*

The anterior part of the body or head usually bears two or four tentacles and two eyes, which are placed sometimes at the apex, usually at the base of a pair of tentacles (fig. 508). The muscular foot projects from the ventral side of the body; its form and size presents numerous modifications. As a rule it has a broad and long plantar surface; but in the *Heteropoda* it has the form of a vertically extended fin. The shape of the body depends on the position and form of the mantle. The latter is placed like a cap on the dorsal surface, and consists of a more or less considerable fold of the dorsal integument; its edge is usually thickened, sometimes also prolonged into

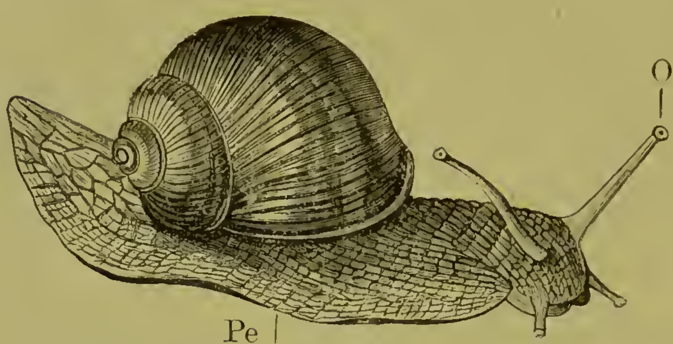



FIG. 508.—*Helix pomatia.* *O*, Eyes at the extremity of the long tentacles; *Pe*, foot.

* Martini and Chemnitz. Conchylien-Cabinet. 12 Bde. Herausgegeben von Küster. Nürnberg, 1837-1865.
Sowerby. "Thesaurus conchyliorum, or figures and descriptions of shells." London, 1832—1862.
Reeve. "Conchologia iconica. etc." London, 1842-1862.
H. and A. Adams. "The genera of the recent Mollusca," 3 vols. London, 1858.
H. Troschel. "Das Gebiss der Schnecken." Berlin, 1856-1878.
Woodward. "Manual of the Mollusca." 2nd ed., London, 1868.
Fol. "Etudes sur le développement des Mollusques." I. and II.
C. Rabl, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Tellerschnecke." Morphol. Jahrbuch. Tom. V. 1819.

lobes or drawn out into processes. The lower surface of the mantle usually serves as the roof of a cavity, which extends on to the dorsal surface and also on to the sides of the body. This cavity contains the respiratory organ, and opens to the exterior by an aperture or tubular prolongation at the mantle edge.

The body cavity is developed on the dorsal surface of the foot, usually in a visceral sac, which projects like a hernia. The visceral sac tapers gradually at its upper end, and is usually spirally twisted. The mantle and visceral sac are covered by the shell, which to a certain extent repeats the twistings of the latter and can usually completely receive and protect the head and foot when the animal is retracted. The shell is as a rule hard and calcareous, and possesses an internal nacreous layer similar to that of the mother-of-pearl layer of the Lamellibranch shell. The shell is sometimes delicate, horny, and flexible, or it may have a gelatinous (*Tiedmannia*) or cartiliginous (*Cymbulia*) consistency. More rarely the shell is so small that it only covers the mantle cavity with the respiratory organs or lies hidden completely within the mantle (*Limax*, *Pleurobranchiata*). In other cases it is thrown off at an early stage, so that the adult beast is completely without a shell (*Nudibranchiata*). The shell differs from that of the *Lamellibranchiata* in being composed of a single piece; it is either flat and cup-shaped (*Patella*) and uncoiled, or it is spirally twisted in very different ways, from a flat disc-shaped to the long drawn-out turret-shaped spiral (fig. 509). In the first case it more resembles the embryonic shell, which lies as a delicate, cap-shaped covering on the mantle. The growth of the shell keeps pace with that of the animal, the additions being made to the edge of the shell, viz., to that part which lies on the edge of the mantle. In consequence of the inequality of this growth spiral twistings arise, the diameter of which gradually and continuously increases. Inasmuch as the unsymmetrical growth of the shell is due to the unequal growth of the body, the position of the openings of the unpaired organs (anus, sexual opening) to one side of the great external lip of the shell is intelligible.

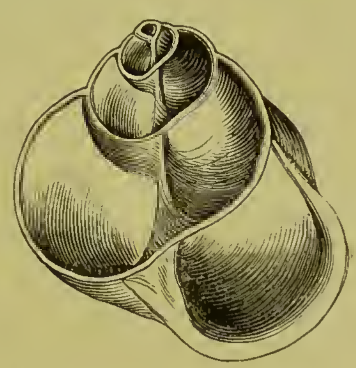


FIG. 509.—Section through the shell of *Helix pomatia*.

The following parts may be distinguished in a spirally-twisted shell; (1) the apex, as the part of the shell at which the growth began and from which the spiral twistings started; (2) the opening or *aperture*, which leads into the last and usually largest turn of the spiral; its lip (*peristoma*), swollen in the adult animal, lies on the edge of the mantle. The spiral is twisted to the right or left round an axis which is directed from the apex to the aperture, and is indicated either by a solid spindle (*columella*) or a hollow canal. When the turns of the spiral are far removed from the axis, this canal may become an almost conical space with a wide opening (*Solarium*). The turns are usually closely applied to one another; more rarely they are separated (*Scalaria pretiosa*). According to the position of the columella, a columella edge or inner lip and an outer edge or outer lip of the aperture may be distinguished. The latter may be entire (*holostomatous*), or broken by an excavation which is often prolonged into a canal (*siphonostomatous*). In many Gastropods an *operculum* is added; this is usually placed on the hind end of the foot, and closes the shell aperture when the animal is retracted. Many terrestrial Gastropods secrete before the beginning of the winter sleep an operculum, which is thrown off again in the spring.

The slimy integument consists of a superficial layer of cylindrical cells, which are frequently ciliated, and of a connective tissue dermis, which is inseparably connected with the dermal muscles. Calcareous and pigment glands are placed in the integument; they are especially numerous at the edge of the shell, where they contribute to the growth and peculiar colouring of the shell. The shell, which is a cuticular structure, is secreted by the epithelium, like other cuticular structures; it becomes hard when the calcareous salts which are mixed in the organic basis assume a hard and crystalline condition. The superficial layer of the shell often remains uncalcified as a thin delicate epidermis, while the inner surface is thickened by mother-of-pearl layers (secreted by surface of mantle). The connection of the animal to its shell is effected by a muscle, which on account, of its position on the spindle (*columella*), is called the spindle muscle. This muscle arises from the dorsal part of the foot, and is attached to the spindle at the beginning of the last turn of the spiral.

The **nervous system** presents a great resemblance to that of the *Lamellibranchiata*, but there are many differences in detail.

In the *Placophora*, whose nervous system presents close relations to that of *Neomenia* and *Chætoderma*, the ganglionic swellings are not marked (fig. 495). In all other cases the three typical groups of ganglia are present. * The cerebral ganglia (fig. 497, *C g*) are

* The subjoined account of the nervous system is slightly modified from the German.—ED.

connected together by a transverse band, and each of them gives off a commissure to the pedal ganglia ($P\,g$), and a second commissure to a pair of visceral ganglia ($Plg$). The latter ganglia, which are known as the *commissural* or *pleural ganglia*, are also connected with the pedal ganglia (fig. 497). There are thus two nervous commissures round the œsophagus—the direct cerebro-pedal, and the cerebro-pedal by way of the pleural or commissural ganglia. The pleural ganglia may lie directly on the cerebral or pedal ganglia.

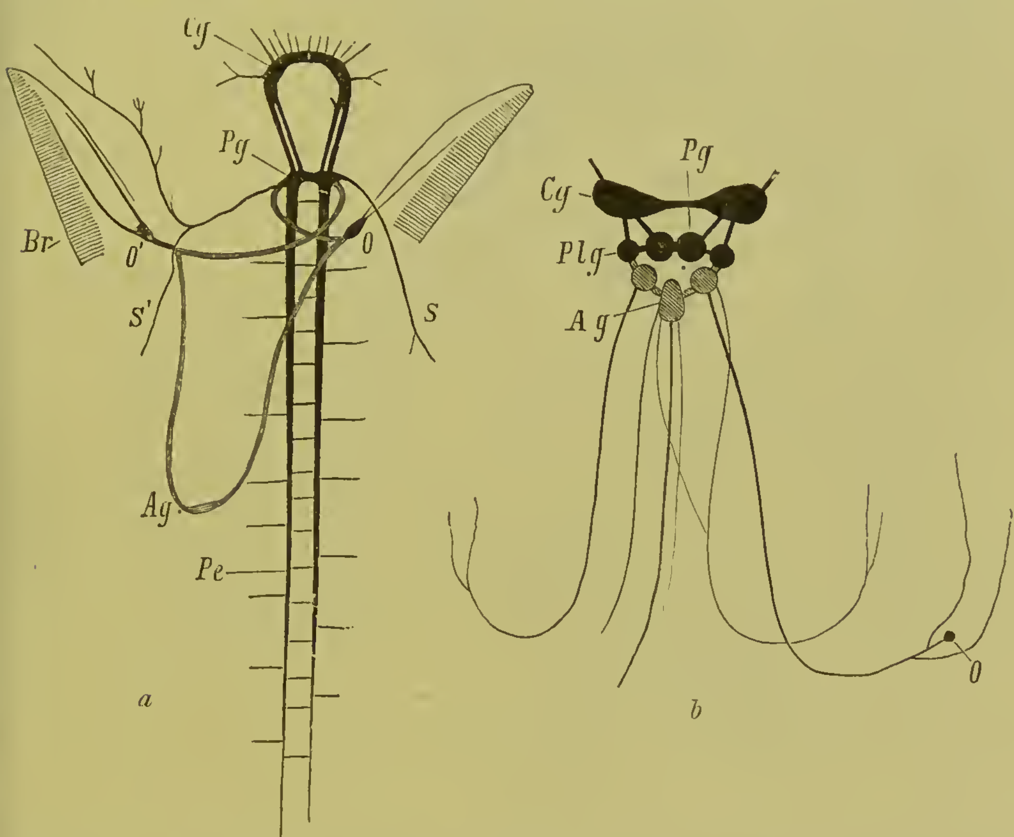



FIG. 510.—Nervous system of *Haliotis* (diagrammatic, after Spengel). *Cg*, cerebral ganglion; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Plg*, pleural ganglion (commissural ganglion); *Ag*, abdominal ganglion; *O* and *O'*, olfactory organs; *Pe*, pedal cord; *S* and *S'*, lateral nerves; *Br*, gills. *b*, Nervous system of *Limnæus* (after Lacaze-Duthiers).

The pleural ganglia are part of the third typical group of ganglia, viz., the visceral group. They are connected with each other by a long commissure, the *visceral commissure*, which often extends into the hinder part of the body, and contains several ganglia in its course; the latter ganglia, which also constitute part of the visceral group of ganglia, send off nerves to the sexual organs, kidney, heart, gills, olfactory organs, and mantle (fig. 497, $G\,s\,b$, $V\,g$, $G\,s\,p$; fig. 510 *a*, $O$, $O'$, $A\,g$; fig. 510 *b*, $A\,g$).

The visceral ganglionic system of Gastropods is therefore broken up into several ganglia, and is connected with the pedal (by the pleuro-pedal commissure) as well as with the cerebral.

In the *Prosobranchiata* the position of the visceral commissure, with its ganglia, and nerves presents a peculiar condition (*Chiastoneura*); the commissure from the right pleural ganglion passes over (dorsal to) the alimentary canal to the left side, and here forms a ganglion—the *supraintestinal ganglion* (fig. 497, *G s p*)—which supplies the left side, while the commissure from the left pleural ganglion passes under (ventral to) the alimentary canal to the right side, and there gives rise to a ganglion, the *subintestinal ganglion*, which supplies the right side (*vide* also fig. 510 *a*). The part of the visceral commissure, which connects the supra- and sub-intestinal ganglia often contains one or more ganglia (*V g*, *A g*). More rarely this crossing is less clearly marked. The cerebral ganglia always give off a pair of nerves, one on each side of the œsophagus, to the *buccal ganglia*, which give off nerves to the mouth and alimentary canal (fig. 497, *B g*).

**Sense organs.**—Eyes, auditory vesicles (otocysts), tactile and olfactory organs are present.

The *eyes* are paired, and are usually placed at the end of stalks, which are as a rule fused with the tentacles. The eyes are largest and most developed in the *Heteropoda*,* in which group they are fastened in special transparent capsules and admit of a movement of the bulb.

The two *otocysts* are ciliated internally, and are, except in the Heteropoda, connected with the pedal ganglion (fig. 497, *O t*), although their nerve always arises in the brain.

Tactile organs are represented by the tentacles, the edges of the lips which are often folded, and lobe-like prolongations which are found here and there on the head, mantle and foot. There are usually two tentacles; † exceptionally they are absent (*Pterotrachea*, etc.). They consist of simple contractile prolongations of the body wall, which can sometimes (*Pulmonata*) be invaginated into the interior of the body. Certain peculiar hair cells, from which tufts of hairs project in the aquatic Molluscs, are to be looked upon as the seat of a special sensation. They are scattered over the whole surface of the body, and are especially aggregated upon the parts of the body

* V. Hensen. "Ueber das Auge einiger Cephalophoren." *Zeit. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XV., 1865.

† W. Flemming. "Untersuchungen über Sinnesepithelien der Mollusken." *Arch. für. mik. Anatomie*, Tom. VI., 1870.

serving for the tactile sensation. The antennæ of the terrestrial Gastropods possess on their end-plates a great number of fine sense-cells (club-shaped cells with rods, Flemming), which are placed between specially-modified epithelial cells, and probably function as olfactory organs. Recently an organ, which was supposed to be a rudimentary gill and is innervated from the supraintestinal ganglion,

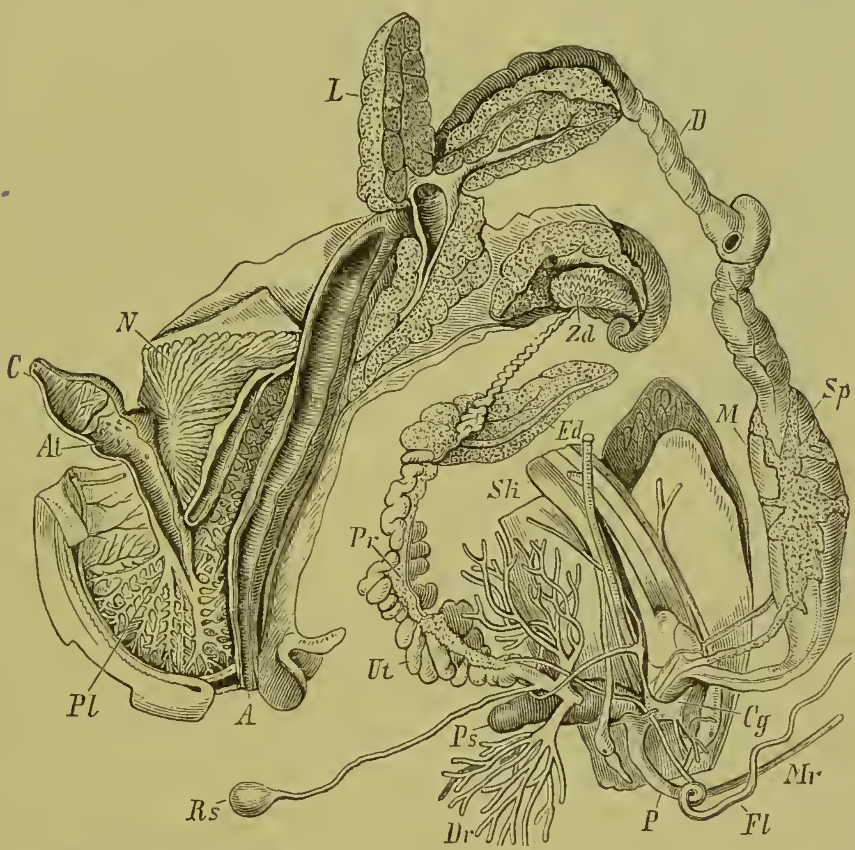



FIG. 511.—Anatomy of *Helix pomatia* (after Cuvier). The mantle cavity is opened on the left side, and the mantle is turned over to the right. The body cavity has been opened and the viscera are unravelled. *Cg*, cerebral ganglion; *Sp*, salivary gland; *M*, stomach; *D*, intestine; *L*, liver; *A*, anus; *N*, kidney; *At*, auricle; *C*, ventricle; *Pl*, lung; *Zd*, hermaphrodite gland, invested by the lobes of the liver; *Ed*, albumen gland; *Pr*, prostate; *Ut*, uterus; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis; *Dr*, finger-shaped glands; *Ps*, dart sac; *P*, penis; *Fl*, flagellum; *Mr*, retractor muscle; *Sp*, spindle muscle.

has been recognised as a sense organ and explained as an *olfactory* * organ.

In the Zeugobranchiata (*Fissurella*, *Haliotis*), two such organs are present, one on the right and the other on the left side, and are indicated by a considerable ganglion.

The **digestive organs** rarely have a straight course; they are

* J. W. Spengel, "Die Geruchsorgane und das Nervensystem der Mollusken." *Zeit. für. wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXXV.

usually much coiled, and as a rule bend forwards to open in front on the right side in the mantle cavity. The anus, however, is sometimes on the dorsal surface behind.

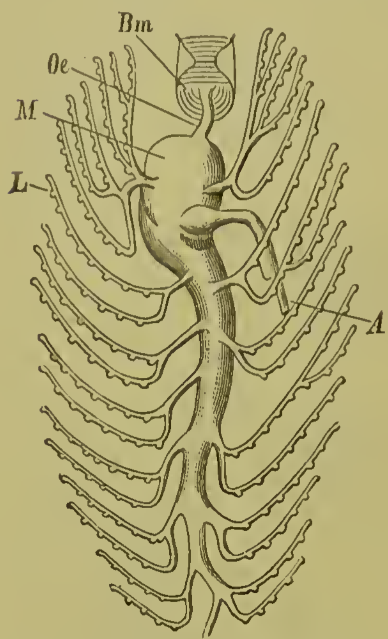


Fig. 512.—Alimentary canal of *Æolis papillosa* (after Hancock). *Bm*, buccal mass; *Oe*, œsophagus; *M*, stomach, *L*, liver sacs, which enter the dorsal appendages; *A*, anus.

Many of the higher *Gastropoda* possess an invaginable proboscis, the invagination beginning at the base; others possess one which is retractile from the point. The mouth is bounded by lips, and leads into a buccal cavity armed with hard masticating structures, and receiving the ducts of two salivary glands. The buccal cavity leads into the œsophagus, which is followed by a dilated stomach, usually provided with a cæcal appendage. The stomach opens into an intestine, which is usually long and much coiled, and surrounded by a very large, multi-lobed liver. The liver occupies nearly all the upper part (upper coils) of the visceral sac, and pours its secretion into the intestine and also into the so-called stomach (fig. 511). The arrangement of the digestive canal and of the liver presents in details many essential modifications; one of the most remarkable is that offered by the intestine with its hepatic cæca of the *Phlebenterata* (fig. 512). The terminal portion of the intestine is distinguished by its size, and may be called the rectum.

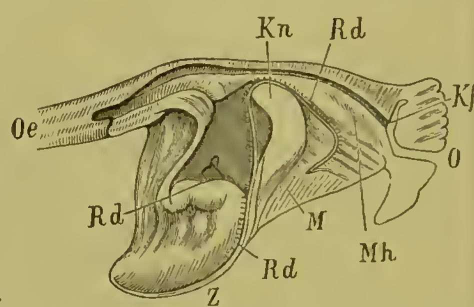


Fig. 513.—Longitudinal section through the buccal mass of *Helix* (after W. Keferstein). *O*, mouth; *Mh*, buccal cavity; *M*, muscles; *Rd*, radula; *Zn*, lingual cartilage; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Kf*, jaws; *Z*, sheath of radula.

The **armature of the buccal cavity** consists partly of jaws placed on the upper wall, partly of the so-called lingual ribbon (*radula*), placed on a tongue-like projection of the ventral surface of the buccal cavity.

The jaws consist either of a single curved horny plate, placed close behind the edge of the lip, or of two lateral pieces of very different form, between which, in some Pulmonates, there is an unpaired piece. There are no lower jaws; but on the floor of the buccal cavity there is a ridge, partly muscular and partly cartilaginous, which, from its resemblance to the tongue of the Vertebrata, has received the same name (fig. 513). The surface of this tongue is covered by a tough membrane, known as the lingual ribbon or *radula*, on which are arranged transverse rows of plates, teeth, and hooks of a characteristic form. Behind, the radula passes into a cylindrical pocket, the so-called *radula sheath* (fig. 513 *Z*), which projects in a tubular manner from the lower (ventral and posterior) end of the buccal mass. The radula is secreted in the radula sheath. The size, number, and form of the plates and teeth on the surface of the radula vary in different forms, and afford important systematic characters for genera and families.

In the transverse rows of plates—the so-called *segments* of the radula membrane—*median*, *intermediate*, and *lateral plates* may be

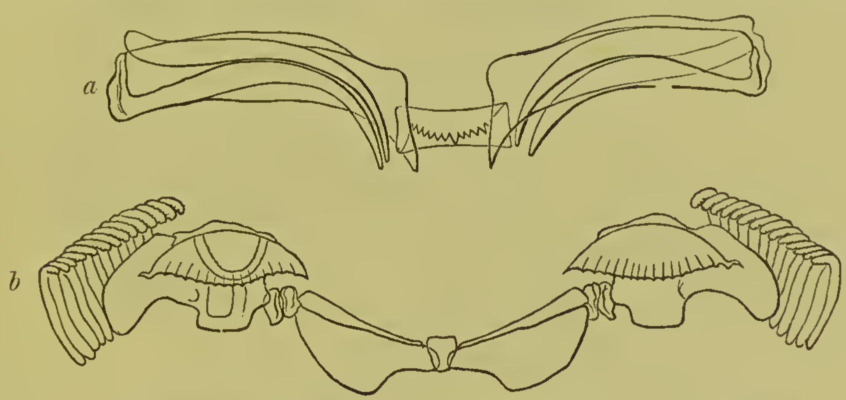



Fig. 514.—*a*, A segment of the radula of *Pterotrachea Lesueurii* (after Macdonald). *b*, ditto of *Neretina fluviatilis* (after S. Lovén).

distinguished (fig. 514 *a*, *b*). Troschel believed that natural divisions could be formed according to the special structure of the armature of the radula. But this one-sided systematic treatment requires many corrections, as has been especially shown in the case of the Tænioglossa and Rhipidoglossa.

The **vascular system** presents numerous and essential variations. The heart is enclosed in a special pericardium, and is usually placed on one side of the middle line near the respiratory organs (fig. 515). It usually consists of a conical ventricle, which gives off the aorta, and of an auricle which is turned towards the respiratory organs, and into which the blood passes by veins. In some Gastropods (Gastropods with two gills, *Haliotis*, *Turbo*, *Nerita*, *Fissurella*, etc.), the heart resembles that of the Lamellibranchs, in that there are two auricles and the ventricle is pierced by the rectum. The aorta usually divides into two arteries, of which one passes forward and gives off many branches to the head and foot; while the other passes dorsalwards to the viscera (fig. 515, *Aa*, *Ac*). The arteries terminate by opening into blood spaces of the body cavity without special walls, from which the blood passes either through the branchial (pulmonary) arteries, or directly, without traversing intermediate vessels (*Heteropoda* and many *Nudibranchiata*), to the respiratory organs, whence it is returned through branchial (pulmonary) veins to the auricle. The arrangements described as obtaining in the *Lamellibranchiata*, by which water is able to enter the blood spaces and dilute the blood, are said to occur also in *Gastropoda*.

In a small number of Gastropods only is respiration effected

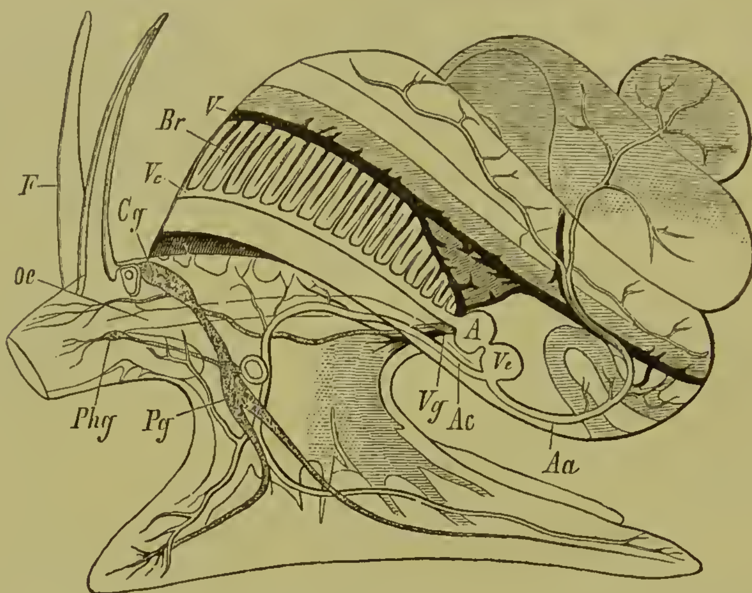



FIG. 515.—Nervous system and circulatory organs of *Paludina vivipara* (after Leydig). *F*, tentacle; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Cg*, cerebral ganglion with eye; *Pg*, pedal ganglion with adjacent otocyst; *Vg*, visceral ganglion; *Phg*, pharyngeal ganglion; *A*, auricle of heart; *Ve*, ventricle; *Aa*, abdominal aorta; *Ac*, cephalic aorta; *V*, veins; *Vc*, afferent vein; *Br*, gill.

exclusively through the general integument. By far the greater number breathe through gills, and many through lungs; a few combine branchial and pulmonary respiration. The gills are usually foliaceous or pennate cutaneous appendages, which are generally placed between the mantle and foot and enclosed by the mantle fold; in rare cases they are exposed and placed on the dorsal surface. The mantle cavity is therefore at the same time the respiratory cavity.

The primitive arrangement of the gills appears to be that found in the *Zeugobranchiata*, in which there are two, one on each side; but, usually an asymmetrical development takes place, and one gill only remains (fig. 516). The respiration of air is confined to some *Prosobranchiata* and to the *Pulmonata*. In this case also the mantle cavity serves as the respiratory cavity, but it differs from the branchial cavity by containing air, and possessing, instead of a gill, a rich network of blood-spaces and vessels on the inner surface of its roof. Both branchial and pulmonary cavities communicate by a long slit along the mantle edge or by a small round aperture, capable of being closed, with the external medium. Frequently, however, the edge of the mantle is prolonged into a long respiratory tube of variable length, which is analogous to the siphon of the *Lamellibranchiata*. This siphon corresponds, as a rule, to a notch or canal of the shell (*vide* p. 32).

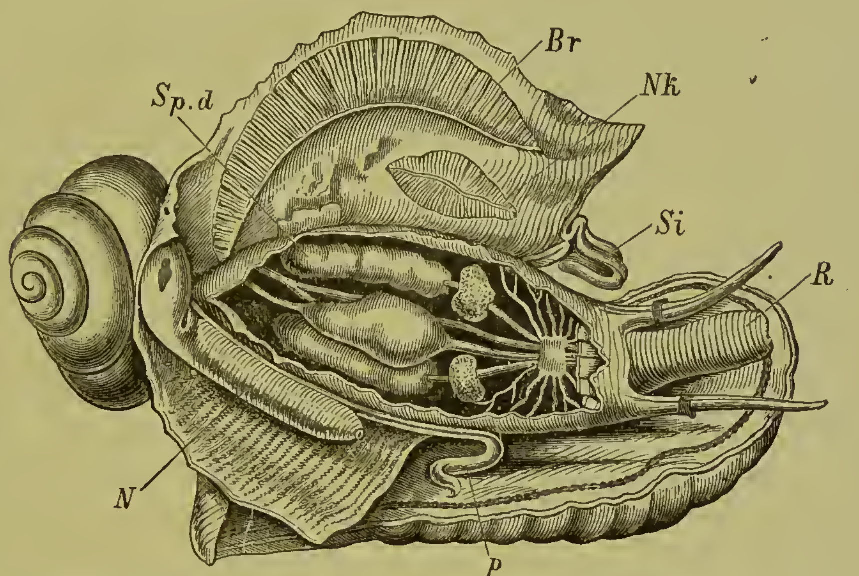



FIG. 516.—Anatomy of *Cassis cornuta* (after Quoy)). *R*, proboscis; *Si*, siphon; *Br*, gill; *Nk*, olfactory organ (formerly regarded as a rudimentary gill); *Spd*, salivary gland; *N*, kidney; *P*, penis.

The structure of the respiratory organs has become of importance for the classification of the larger groups. According to the position of the respiratory organs, with regard to the heart and its auricle, two great divisions can, as Milne Edwards has pointed out, be established: (1) the *Opisthobranchiata*, in which the auricle and gills are placed behind the ventricle; (2) the *Prosobranchiata*, in which the auricle, with the branchial vein entering from the front, lies in front of the ventricle. As far as this character is concerned, the *Heteropoda* and most *Pulmonata* are allied to the latter group; but the *Pulmonata*, in many features of their organization and in their hermaphroditism, stand closer to the *Opisthobranchiata*.

The **kidney** (fig. 516) is the most important excretory organ of the *Cephalophora*. It corresponds in position and structure to the organ of Bojanus of Lamellibranchs. It is, however, usually unpaired, and lies near the heart as an elongated triangular sac, with spongy (rarely smooth) walls of a yellowish brown colour. The secretion of the gland consists mainly of hard concrements, which arise in the lining cells, and consist of uric acid, calcareous and ammoniacal salts. It opens near the anus into the mantle cavity, either immediately by a slit capable of being closed, or by a special excretory duct running with the rectum.

The *Gastropoda* generally possess, in the roof of the respiratory cavity, a *mucous gland*, which often pours out an enormous quantity of its secretion through the mantle orifice. The *purple gland* (*Purpura*, *Murex*) lies in the roof of the mantle cavity, near the rectum. It is a long, whitish-yellow glandular mass, the colourless secretion of which, according to the investigations of Lacaze-Duthier, quickly acquires, under the influence of sunlight, a red or violet colour. The secretion of this gland was known to the ancients, and prized by them on account of its permanence. The coloured fluid, which is excreted from pores of the skin of many Opisthobranchs, *e.g.*, *Aplysia*, must not be confounded with the genuine purple.

Another gland, whose function is not accurately known, is the pedal gland of *Limax* and *Arion*. It extends through the whole length of the foot, and consists of unicellular glands, the delicate ducts of which open into the band-shaped main duct. The latter opens to the exterior between the foot and the head. In many naked Pulmonates (*Arion*) there is, in addition, a gland at the point of the tail, which secretes considerable quantities of mucus with great rapidity.

**Generative Organs.**—Some of the *Gastropoda* are diœcious, some are hermaphrodite. The *Pulmonata* and *Opisthobranchiata* are hermaphrodite; the *Prosobranchiata* are diœcious. Almost all Gastropods lay eggs, usually in strings. Only a few bear living young, which have developed from the fertilised eggs in the uterus.

The **female organs** consist of an ovary, oviduct, albumen gland, uterus (dilated and glandular part of the oviduct), vagina, and receptaculum seminis.

The **male organs** consist of a testis, a vas deferens with seminal vesicle, a ductus ejaculatorius, and external copulatory organs.

The hermaphrodite forms are distinguished by the close connection of the male and female generative glands and their ducts; for not only are the latter in direct communication with each other, but the ovaries and testes are, with a few exceptions (*Actæon, Janus*), united in one hermaphrodite gland, which is usually imbedded among the lobes of the liver. The ova and spermatozoa arise either in different but adjacent follicles of the lobed or branched hermaphrodite gland (*Nudibranchiata*), the ovarian follicles being placed peripherally to the semeniferous follicles (*Æolis*) or the epithelium of the same follicle produces in one part ova, in another part spermatozoa, not however usually at the same time, the maturity of the male element preceding that of the female (terrestrial snails). The efferent duct of the female is nearly always provided with a separated albumen gland, and a receptaculum seminis (fig. 517). In the *Helicidæ* the vagina bears two tufts of finger-shaped glandular tubes and a peculiar sac—the *dart-sac*—which produces in its interior a dart-like calcareous rod. The latter — the so-called love-dart—is attached to a papilla at the base of the sac; it is protruded during copulation, and seems to play the part of a stimulating organ. It is usually broken during use and is replaced later by a new one. The male generative opening is always in connection with a protrusible penis, and usually opens with the female into a common lateral cloaca.

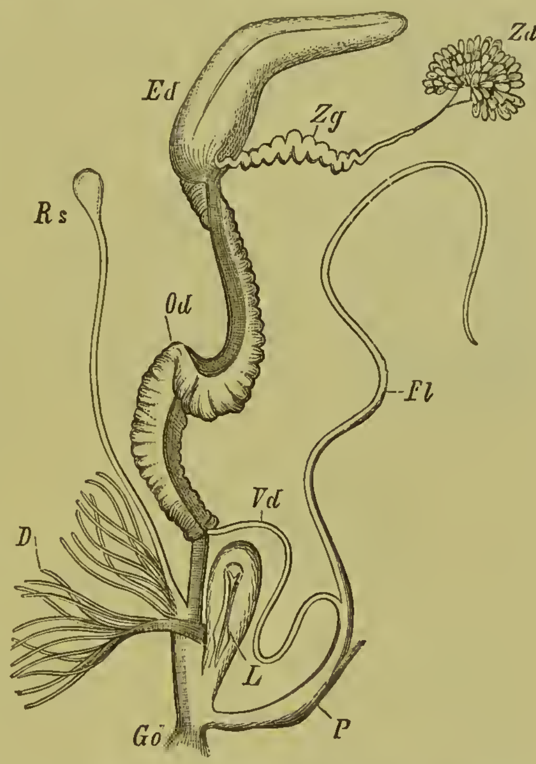



Fig. 517.—Sexual organs of the Roman Snail (Helix pomatia). *Zd*, hermaphrodite gland; *Zg*, its duct; *Ed*, albumen gland; *Od*, oviduct and seminal groove; *Vd*, vas deferens; *P*, protrusible penis; *Fl*, flagellum; *Rs*, receptaculum seminis; *D*, finger-shaped gland; *L*, Spiculum amoris; *Gö*, common genital opening. (After Baasen).

The structure of the generative organs in the diœcious Gastropods resembles that of the hermaphrodite forms. A receptaculum seminis and an albumen gland may be present in the female (*Paludina*). The ovaries and testes lie hidden among the lobes of the liver, and the sexual orifices are placed laterally. The males almost always possess a projecting penis, which is either perforated by the terminal part of the vas deferens (*Buccinum*) or traversed by a furrow, at the base of which the sexual opening is placed. When the penis is remote from the sexual opening, a ciliated furrow is present, which conducts the spermatozoa from the opening to the penis (*Murex*, *Dolium*, *Strombus*).

The embryonic* **development** begins with an unequal segmentation leading to the formation of a blastula or gastrula. Later the embryo acquires a ciliated velum, the first rudiment of the shell, foot, and primitive kidney, and rotates in the fluid albumen of the egg by the vibrations of the cilia.

The free development is either direct, the just-hatched anima possessing (excepting for the rudiments of larval organs) the form and organization of the adult (*Pulmonata*), or it takes place by a metamorphosis. Almost all marine *Gastropoda* develop by meta-

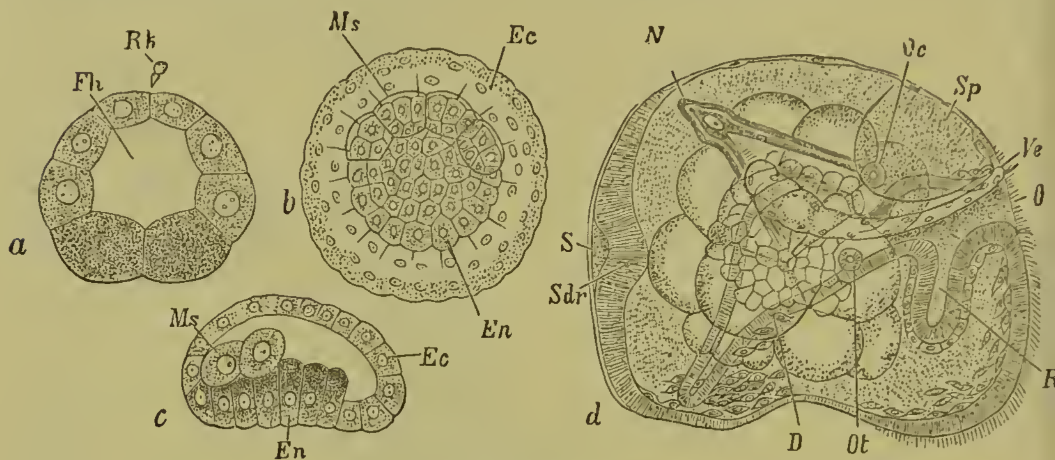



FIG. 518.—Some stages in the embryonic development of *Planorbis* (after C. Rabl). *a*, optical section through a segmenting ovum (24 segments). *Rk*, polar bodies; *Fh*, segmentation cavity. *b*, stage with four mesoderm cells, viewed from the vegetative (lower) pole. *Ms*, mesoderm cells; *En*, endoderm; *Ec*, ectoderm. *c*, Oblique optical longitudinal section through the stage with four mesoderm cells. *d*, Older embryo, in which the shell gland has shifted to the right. *Sdr*, shell gland; *S*, shell; *O*, mouth; *D*, alimentary canal; *R*, commencing radula; *Sp*, apical plate (thickening of præoral lobe); *Oc*, eyes; *Ot*, otolith; *N*, primitive kidney; *Ve*, velum.

morphosis, and the larvæ possess two large ciliated sails (velum), which serve as locomotory organs in place of the still rudimentary foot. The shell, which is already present on the dorsal surface, is still small and flat with hardly any trace of the spiral twisting, and can usually be closed by an operculum which is attached to the foot. Very often a change of shell is effected, the old embryonic shell being thrown off and a new one formed in its place.

* Cf. especially.
N. Bobretzky, "Studien über die embryonale Entwickelung der Gastropoden." *Archiv für mik. Anat.*, Tom XIII., 1876.
C. Rabl, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Tellerschnecke." *Morph. Jahrb.* Tom V.
Also Fol, Bütschli, R. Lankester, etc.

By far the majority of *Gastropoda* are marine; the *Basommatophora* and some *Prosobranchiata* (*Paludina*, *Valvata*, *Melania*, *Neretina*, etc.) inhabit fresh-water. Many *Littorina*, *Cerithia*, *Melania*, etc., live in brackish water. The *Cyclostomidæ*, and the *Stylommotophora* among the Pulmonates, are terrestrial. Further, many branchiate Gastropods are able to live for some time out of water in dry places; in such circumstances they are withdrawn into their shells, the opening of which is closed by the operculum. Almost all move by creeping; some, however, as *Strombus*, jump; others, as *Oliva* and *Ancillaria*, swim excellently by the aid of the lobes of their foot. Some marine forms, as *Magilus*, *Vermetus*, etc., are fixed by their shells; a few only are parasitic, as *Stylifer* on sea-urchins and starfishes, *Entoconcha mirabilis* in *Synapta*.

The method of nutrition differs as much as the habitat. Many, especially the *Siphonostomata*, are voracious predatory animals, and prey on living animals; some branchiate Gastropods, as *Murex* and *Natica*, with this object bore into the shells of Molluscs; several (*Strombus*, *Buccinum*) prefer dead animals. An equally large number, viz., almost all Pulmonates and holostomatous branchiate Gastropods, feed on plants.

## Order 1.—Prosobranchiata.*

*Diœcious branchiate Gastropods with shell, and with gills in front of the heart.*

Behind the usually distinctly separated head lies the respiratory (mantle) cavity, into which the rectum, kidney, and oviduct open. In rare cases two gills are present, as a rule the right gill is absent. The branchial veins enter the heart from the front. Cerebral, pedal, pleural and visceral ganglia are present. The males are, as a rule, more slender, and are easily recognized by the large penis placed on the right side of the anterior part of the body. In the generative organs, the accessory glands are usually absent. The eggs are surrounded by albumen and laid in capsules, which are frequently fixed to foreign objects; more rarely they are attached to the foot and carried about (*Janthina*).

* Fr. Leydig, "Ueber Paludina vivipara." *Zeit. für. wiss. Zool.*, Tom II., 1850.

E. Claparède, "Anatomie und Entwickelungsgeschichte der Neritina fluviatilis." *Müller's Archiv.*, 1857.

H. Lacaze-Duthiers, "Mémoire sur le système nerv. de l'Haliotide et Mémoire sur la Poupre." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.*, Tom XII. and XIII

N. Bobretzky, l.c.

Sub-order 1. **Placophora.*** *Body vermiform, symmetrical, without eyes and tentacles. Ventral surface flattened; dorsal surface covered by calcareous plates placed in a segmental manner one behind the other. Gills and kidney paired.*

The Placophora are the most nearly allied of all Mollusca to certain forms of worms, to which they approximate through the genera *Neomenia* and *Chætoderma*. The symmetrical body does not possess a separated head, eyes, or tentacles. The integument presents numerous scattered spines, which are sometimes hard and chitinous, and sometimes calcified; they always arise in special follicles lined by ectoderm cells. In addition to these integumentary structures, which are also present in *Chætoderma*, there are a series of broad calcareous plates on the dorsal surface, which are only exceptionally covered by the mantle (*Cryptochiton*), and which, according to their origin, represent a multivalve Molluscan shell. The free edge of the mantle is moderately thickened, and under it on each side is placed the small mantle cavity as a furrow containing a series of leaf-like gills (fig. 519).

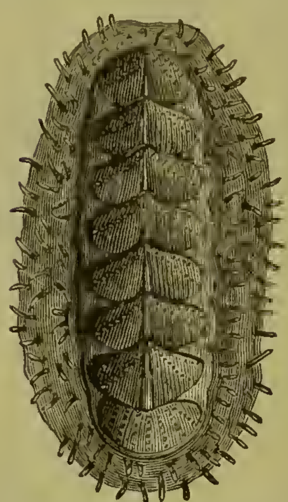


FIG. 519.—*Chiton (spiniferus) spinosus* (règne animal).

Of special interest is the simple condition of the **nervous system** (fig. 495), which greatly resembles that of the Gephyrean-like genera *Neomenia* and *Chætoderma*. Cerebral ganglionic swellings are absent, in correspondence with the want of eyes and tentacles. Four nerve trunks pass off from the double œsophageal ring, an upper lateral pair, the *pallial nerves*, and a ventral pair, the *pedal nerves*, which latter are connected by transverse commissures. Pedal and visceral ganglia are not separated as ganglionic swellings from the nerve stems. Buccal ganglia, on the contrary, are present.

The **alimentary canal** begins with the mouth, which is placed on a roundish lobe; it is much coiled, and extends through the whole length of the body, to open by the anus at the hind end. As in

* A. Th. Middendorff, "Beiträge zu einer Malacozoologica rossica. 1. Beschreibung und Anatomie neuer oder für Russland neuer Chitonen." *Mém. Acad. Imp., St. Petersburg*, 1848.

S. Lovén, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Gattung Chiton." *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, 1856.

B. Haller, "Die Organisation der Chitonen der Adria." *Arbeiten a. d. Zool Inst. in Wien.*, Tom IV., 1882.

*Vide* also Tullberg's and Graff's works on *Neomenia* and *Chætoderma*.

most Cephalophora (Odontophora) a large muscular mass, the **tongue**, covered by a hard chitinous plate, the *radula*, is found upon the floor of the buccal cavity. The **heart**, on the other hand, more nearly resembles in structure and position that of the Lamellibranchs, in that it consists of two auricles opening into a median ventricle, which lies over the rectum.

The **kidneys** are paired, and open right and left in the mantle furrow; [they also open, as in other Molluscs, into the pericardium]. The *Placophora* are diœcious.

**Testes** and **ovaries** are simple unpaired glands, which lie immediately over the liver and alimentary canal; their ducts open on each side into the mantle cavity in front of the kidneys.

The development of the egg begins with an equal segmentation; subsequently the segments of one-half of the ovum divide less rapidly. This half is invaginated, so that a gastrula arises. The larva which leaves the egg membranes resembles Lovén's worm larva in the possession of two eye-spots and a ciliated ring, and develops without a larval shell.

Fam. **Chitonidæ.** In place of the shell, eight calcareous pieces are present, which are so arranged that the hinder edge of one shell piece overlaps the anterior edge of the next following piece.

*Chiton squamosus* L., Mediterranean. *Cryptochiton Stelleri*, Midd.

Sub-order 2. **Cyclobranchiata.** Prosobranchiata with flat plate-shaped shell and foliaceous gills, which are arranged in a closed circle under the edge of the mantle round the broad root of the foot. The buccal lobes are little developed. The foot is powerful, and usually flat and broad. The lingual armature, like that of the *Placophora*, is formed of toothed horny plates, hence the name *Docoglossa* of Troschel. A cervical gill placed on the right side of the neck is sometimes present (*Lottia*). Two kidneys are present. External copulatory organs absent. They feed on plants.

Fam. **Patellidæ**, (Limpets). The shell is bowl-shaped, and consists of a single piece, to which the animal is attached by a horse-shoe-shaped muscle. Head with two tentacles, at the swollen base of which are placed the eyes. Tongue extraordinarily long and spirally coiled. The radula is without the median plates, while the intermediate and marginal plates are raised to hooks, and smaller lateral plates appear.

*Patella* L. The apex of the shell is slightly eccentric, and hardly inclined to the front. *P. cœrulea* L., *P. tarentina* Lam., *P. scutellaris* Lam., Adriatic and Mediterranean. *Nacella* Schum. Circle of gills broken on the head; the apex of the pellucid shell, shining internally like mother-of-pearl, bent forwards. *N. pellucida* L.

Sub-order 3. **Zeugobranchiata.** Gills bipennate, paired and symmetrical. Anterior border of mantle deeply cleft, in correspondence with which the shell is perforated or provided with a slit on its outer lip. Kidneys paired, that of the left side rudimentary. Auricle paired; ventricle perforated by rectum. Tongue *rhipidoglossal*, in that the complicated radula bears in each transverse row, in addition to the median and intermediate plates, a great number of lateral plates which are arranged in a fan-like manner and the upper edges of which are bent into the form of hooks. They are all herbivorous, and are without a retractile proboscis or siphonal tube at the shell aperture. They often possess filiform appendages on the foot. A penis is not developed.

Fam. **Fissurellidæ.** Shell cup- or cap-shaped, with an aperture at the apex or an anterior marginal excavation for the entrance of water into the mantle cavity, which contains two symmetrical gills. Mantle edge fringed. The animals resemble the *Patellidæ*, are provided with tentacles and a large foot. *Fissurella* Brug. Shell with longish aperture through the apex, which is placed in front of the middle. *F. græca* L., Adriatic and Mediterranean. *Emarginula* Lam. An excavation at the anterior edge of the deep bowl-shaped shell. *E. elongata* Costa, Adriatic and Mediterranean. *Scutus* Montf. (*Parmophorus* Blainv.) Australia.


FIG. 520.—*Conus textilis* (règne animal). *R*, proboscis; *Si*, siphon; *F*, tentacle; *O*, eye.

Fam. **Haliotidæ.** Sea-ears, ormers. Shell flat, ear-shaped, internal mother-of-pearl lustre, with a row of holes on the left side. The mantle cavity is on the left side and contains two gills, of which the right is the smaller. Foot fringed, with a broad pedal surface. Head with two long tentacles and short stalked eyes. *Haliotis* L. Spiral of shell small and flat. Foot projecting slightly over the shell. *H. tuberculata* L., Adriatic and Mediterranean.

Sub-order 4. **Ctenobranchiata (Anisobranchiata,** *e.p.*). With large cervical gill of pectinate form on the left side with small olfactory organ (so-called rudimentary gill, fig. 516, *Nk*). A spiral shell is very generally present (fig. 520). The male possesses a penis on the right side. Most are carnivorous and possess a protrusible proboscis.

1. **Rhipidoglossa.** Each transverse row of the radula with numerous lateral plates arranged in a fan-like manner (fig. 514, *b*).

Fam. **Trochidæ,** (Top shells). With conical shell and spiral operculum. Foot prolonged into cirri and lobes. Eyes on short stalks. *Turbo* L. With roundish (convex) windings, round aperture, and buccal edge somewhat cut off. *T. rugosus* Lam. *Trochus* L. With angular windings, buccal edge divided above, and outer lip thin. *Tr. varius* L., Adriatic and Mediterranean.

Fam. **Neritidæ (Neritacea).** With thick, hemispherical shell and operculum. Eyes stalked, behind the two long tentacles. Proboscis short, often bilobed. Foot large, triangular. Heart perforated by rectum, with two auricles. *Nerita* L. Shell thick, hemispherical, spiral lateral; aperture semi-circular. *N. rugata* Recl.; *N.* (*Neritina*) *fluviatilis* L.; *Navicella* Lam.; *N. elliptica* Lam., Pacific Ocean.

2. **Ptenoglossa.**—Without siphon, aperture of shell entire, without excavation or canal. Tongue armed with rows of numerous small hooks and without the median plates.

Fam. **Janthinidæ.** *Janthina bicolor* Menke, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Solariidæ,** (Wentle-traps). *Scalaria communis* Lam., *Sc. pretiosa* Lam., East Indies. *Solarium perspectivum* Phil., Mediterranean.

3. **Rhachiglossa.**—With long proboscis invaginable from the base. Tongue long and narrow with at most three plates in each transverse row, a toothed median plate and an intermediate plate on each side, which are often reduced to mere hooks, and may be absent. All possess a siphon and are predatory.

Fam. **Volutidæ** (Faltenschnecken). *Voluta undulata* Lam., New Zealand; *V. vespertilio*, East Indies; *Cymbium æthiopicum* L.

Fam. **Olividæ.** *Oliva utriculus* Lam., Indian Ocean; *Harpa ventricosa* Lam., New Guinea.

Fam. **Muricidæ (Canaliferæ).** *Murex brandaris* L., Mediterranean. *Fusus australis*, Quoy Gaim. *Columbella mercatoria* L., Atlantic.

Fam. **Buccinidæ.** Whelks. *Buccinum undatum* L.; *Nassa reticulata* L. Mediterranean; *Purpura lapillus* L., North Sea.

4. **Toxoglossa.**—Tongue with two rows of long hollow hooks, which can be protruded from the mouth. All possess a siphon, and usually prey on marine animals.

Fam. **Conidæ** (fig. 520) (Kegelschnecken). *Conus litteratus* L., East Indies.

Fam. **Terebridæ** (Schraubenschnecken). *Terebra dimidiata* Lam.

Fam. **Pleurotomidæ.** *Pleurotoma nodifera* Lam.; *Cancellaria* Lam.; *C. cancellata*, Lam.

5. **Tænioglossa.**—In each transverse row of the elongated radula there are usually seven plates. Two small jaws usually found at the mouth entrance.

Holostomatous are :—

Fam. **Littorinidæ,** (Winkles). *Littorina littorea* L.

Fam. **Cyclostomidæ.** Respire air like the *Pulmonata* by vessels of the mantle cavity. Live in damp places on land. *Cyclostoma elegans* Drap.

Fam. **Paludinidæ,** (Flusskiemenschnecken). Inhabit fresh water. *Paludina vivipara* L.; *P. impura* Lam.

Fam. **Vermetidæ,** (Wurmschnecken). *Vermetus arenarius* L.

Fam. **Cerithiidæ.** *Cerithium læve* Quoy Gaim.

Siphonostomatous are :—

Fam. **Cypræidæ**, (Cowries). *Cypræa tigris* Lam ; *C. moneta* L.

Fam. **Tritoniidæ**, (Tritonshörner). *Tritonium variegatum* Brug. ; *Ranella gigantea* Lam.

Fam. **Doliidæ.** *Cassis cornuta* Lam. ; *Dolium galea* L., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Strombidæ (Alata)** (Flügelschnecken). *Strombus Isabella* Lam. ; *Pterocerras lambis* Lam. ; *Rostellaria rectirostris* Lam.

Fam. **Naticidæ.** *Natica ampullaria* Lam. ; *Sigaretus haliotoideus* L., Atlantic.

Fam. **Capulidæ**, (Mützenschnecken). *Capulus hungaricus* L., Adriatic ; *Calyptræa rugosa* Desh.

Fam. **Ampullariadæ**, (Doppelathmer). With branchial and pulmonary cavity. In rivers of hot countries. *Ampullaria celebensis* Quoy. ; *A. polita* Desh.

## Order 2.—Heteropoda.*

*Pelagic Gastropoda with fin-like foot, large projecting head and highly-developed moveable eyes. Diœcious.*

The body (fig. 521) of the Heteropoda is usually cylindrical and elongated and prolonged into a proboscis-like projecting head, which carries large well-developed eyes and tentacles, and encloses a powerfully-armed protrusible tongue (fig. 514 *a*). The main peculiarity of the body consists in the formation of the foot, the anterior and middle portion (*pro-* and *mesopodium*) of which is modified to the form of a leaf-shaped fin, often provided with a sucker (fig. 521 *S*); while the hinder section (*metapodium*) is considerably elongated and extended far backwards, and seems to form the caudal continuation of the body. The visceral sac is either spirally twisted, and enclosed by a mantle and spiral shell (*Atlanta*), or has the form of a saccular and projecting mass, which is placed at the limit of the hinder region of the foot, and is likewise covered by the mantle and a hat-shaped shell (*Carinaria*, fig. 521); or finally the visceral sac is reduced to a very small, scarcely-projecting nucleus, which is covered on the front side by a membrane with a metallic lustre and is completely without a shell.

The **nervous system** is more highly developed than that of any other Gastropod. The two large *eyes* are placed near the tentacles in special capsules, in which they are moved by several muscles. The

* Souleyet. "Hétéropodes. Voyage autour du monde exécuté pendant les années 1836 et 1837 sur la corvette la Bonite, etc," Tom II. Paris, 1852.

R. Leuckart. "Zoologische Untersuchungen." Heft III. Giessen, 1854.

C. Gegenbaur. "Untersuchungen über Pteropoden und Heteropoden." Leipzig, 1854.

H. Fol. "Sur le Développement des Hétéropodes." *Arch. de Zool. experim.* Tom V., 1876.

large *auditory vesicles* each receive a long auditory nerve from the cerebral ganglion, and are characterised not only by the remarkable vibrations of the long tufted cilia of their epithelium, but also by the arrangement of the nerve cells (group of hair cells of the *macula acustica* round a large central cell, fig. 83). In addition numerous peculiar nerve-endings in the skin, which appear to serve the tactile sensation, and the so-called *ciliated organ* on the anterior side of the visceral sac, are present. The latter has the form of a ciliated pit, under which is placed the ganglionic swelling of a nerve which

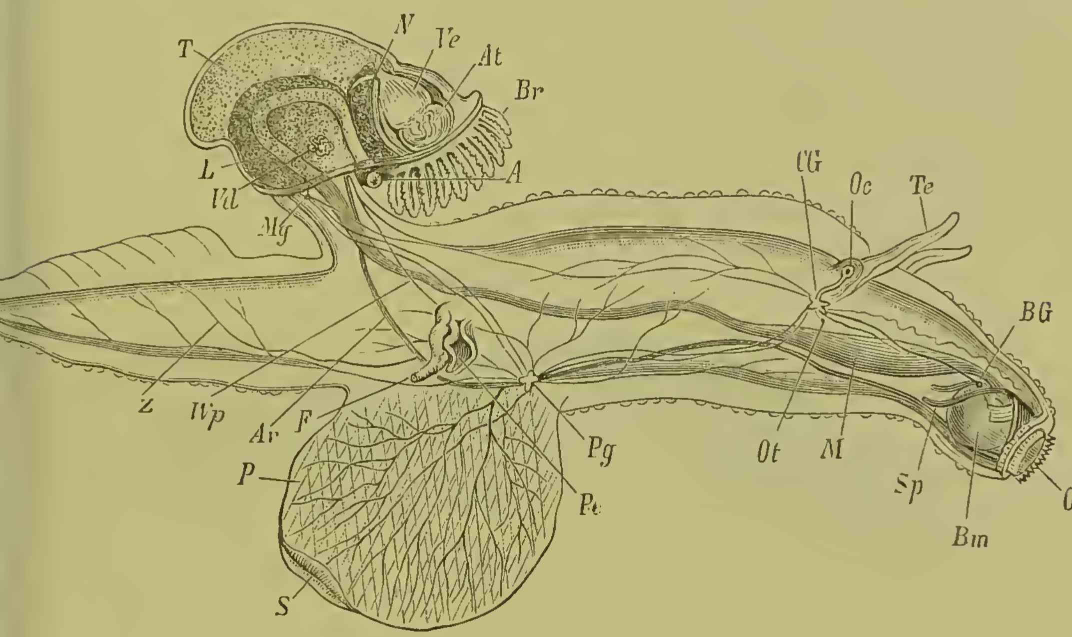



Fig. 521.—Male of *Carinaria mediterranea* (after Gegenbaur). *P*, foot; *S*, sucker; *O*, mouth; *Bm*, buccal mass; *M*, stomach; *Sp*, salivary gland; *L*, liver; *A*, anus; *CG*, cerebral ganglion; *Te*, tentacles; *Oc*, eye; *Ot*, auditory vesicle; *BG*, buccal ganglion; *Pg*, pedal ganglion; *Mg*, mantle ganglion; *N*, kidney; *Br*, gills; *At*, auricle; *Ve*, ventricle; *Ar*, anterior aorta; *Z*, posterior branch of same; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Wp*, ciliated furrow; *Pe*, penis; *F*, flagellum with gland.

arises in the visceral ganglion; it has the value of an *olfactory organ*.

The males are distinguished by the possession of a large copulatory organ, which projects freely on the right side of the body: the males of *Pterotrachea* also possess a sucker on the foot. In *Atlanta* and *Carinaria* the sucker is present in both sexes. The testes and ovaries fill the posterior part of the visceral sac and are partially imbedded in the liver. The ducts, viz., vas deferens and oviduct, open on the right side of the body; the former at some distance from the organ of copulation, to which the sperm is conducted from the sexual opening in a ciliated furrow. The copulatory organ consists of two parts placed side by side, (1) the penis with the continuation of the ciliated groove; and (2) the gland rod which encloses a longish gland. The oviduct (fig. 90) is more complicated, inasmuch as a large albumen gland and a receptaculum seminis open into it; its dilated terminal part acts as a vagina.

The *Heteropoda* are exclusively pelagic animals, and they are often found in great numbers in the warmer seas. They are somewhat clumsy in their movements, which are effected with the ventral surface uppermost by oscillations of the whole body and the fin. They are all carnivorous. When the tongue is protruded, the lateral teeth fly apart from one another like the limbs of forceps, and when retracted they again fall together. By means of these prehensile movements small marine animals are seized and drawn into the mouth.

Fam. **Pterotracheidæ.** *Carinaria mediterranea* Lam., *Pterotrachea coronata* Forsk., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Atlantidæ.** *Atlanta Peronii* Less., Mediterranean.


FIG. 522.—*Arion empiricorum* (règne animal). *Al*, respiratory aperture.

## Order 3.—PULMONATA.*

*Terrestrial and fresh-water Gastropods with lung which is placed in front of the heart. Hermaphrodite.*

The roof of the mantle cavity, as in the *Cyclostomidæ*, is provided with a network of vessels for aërial respiration. The mantle (pulmonary) cavity opens to the exterior on the right side by a respiratory aperture (fig. 522.) The mantle cavity of the young of the fresh-water Pulmonates is at first filled with water, and only later with air. Some species of *Planorbis* and *Limnæus* retain, during the whole time of their life, the ability to breathe both in air and water (some *Limnæus*, with lungs full of water, have been dredged up at

* L. Pfeiffer, "Monographia Heliceorum viventium." Leipzig, 1848-1869; and "Monographia Auriculaceorum viventium." Cassel, 1856.

A. Rossmässler, "Iconographie der Land-und Süsswassermollusken Europas." Leipzig, 1835-1859.

Férussac et Deshayes, "Histoire naturelle générale et particulière des Mollusques terrestres et fluviatiles." Paris, 1829-1851.

considerable depths in Lake Constance). The anus and renal opening are placed near the respiratory aperture, sometimes in the respiratory cavity itself. The generative organs open some way in front, but on the same side. In the forms with a left-handed spiral, the respiratory orifice, anus and generative opening are on the left side. Some Pulmonates are naked, or possess only rudiments of the shell in the dorsal integument; others carry a relatively thin and usually right-handed shell. *Physa*, *Planorbis*, and *Clausilia* alone present a left-handed spiral. A true operculum is absent. On the other hand, many forms secrete temporarily a winter operculum.

While the Pulmonates (with some exceptions) resemble the Prosobranchs in the position of the heart behind the respiratory organs, in the arrangement of other organs, *e.g.*, the nervous system, they more resemble the Opisthobranchs. The dentition consists of an unpaired, horny, and usually longitudinally-ribbed upper jaw (which, however, may be absent) and of a radula, which is covered with a great number of toothed plates in longitudinal and transverse rows. All are hermaphrodite. A few, *e.g.*, species of *Clausilia* and *Pupa*, are viviparous. Most Pulmonates, however, lay eggs, either as in the fresh-water forms united in tubular or flat masses on water-plants, or as in the terrestrial forms in damp places, each one being surrounded by a protecting calcareous shell. The ovum is always contained in a large mass of albumen, which serves as nourishment to the developing embryo.

## I.—Basommatophora.

The eyes lie at the base of the two tentacles. Present many resemblances to the *Tectibranchiata*.

Fam. **Limnæidæ.** *Limnæus auricularis* Drap., (Pond snail); *L. stagnalis* O. Fr. Müller; *Physa fontinalis* L., *Planorbis corneus* L., *Ancylus fluviatilis* Blainv.

Fam. **Auriculidæ.** *Auricula Judæ* Lam., *A. Midæ* Lam., *Carychium minimum*, O. Fr. Müll.

## II.—Stylommatophora.

The eyes lie at the tips of two usually retractile tentacles (posterior tentacles).

Fam. **Peroniadæ** (*Amphipneusta*). Lung behind heart (Opisthopulmonate). *Peronia verruculata* Cuv., *Veronicella* Blainv., *Onchidium* Buchan.

Fam. **Limacidæ** (Naked snails). *Arion* Fér. Sexual opening beneath the respiratory orifice in front of the middle of the dorsal shield. Back without a keel, with caudal gland and mucous aperture at end of body. *A. empiricorum* Fér., *Limax* L. Respiratory aperture behind the middle of the right edge of the mantle. Sexual opening far removed from respiratory aperture behind the right tentacle. Back keeled, without caudal gland and mucous orifice. *L. agrestis* L., *L. cinereus* O. Fr. Müll.

Fam. **Helicidæ**. *Succinea amphibia* Drap., *Pupa muscorum* L., *Clausilia bidens* Drap., *Bulimus montanus* Drap., *Helix pomatia* L. (Roman snail), *H. nemoralis* L.

FIG. 523.—*Doris* (*Acanthodoris*) *pilosa* (Bronn). *Br*, gills; *A*, anus; *F*, tentacle.

Order 4.—OPISTHOBRANCHIATA.*

*Hermaphrodite Gastropods, with flat foot. Branchial veins open into the auricle behind the ventricle.*

The great majority of this order are without a shell. The branchial cavity never contains more than one gill. The gills are usually exposed (fig. 523) or absent. Sometimes there are dorsal processes, into which appendages of the alimentary canal enter (fig. 525). The nervous system contains cerebral, visceral and pedal ganglia (except in *Tethys*, which has a fused ganglionic mass and simple œsophageal commissure). The branchial veins, with a few exceptions (*Gastropteron*), enter the heart from behind.

Sub-order 1. **Tectibranchiata**. Gill almost always on the right side, covered by the mantle edge or placed in a dorsal branchial cavity. Shell usually present (fig. 524).

Fam. **Pleurobranchidæ**. With large gill on right side, and usually internal shell. *Pleurobranchæa Meckelii* Cuv., *Pleurobranchus aurantiacus* Cuv., *Umbrella mediterranea* Lam.

Fam. **Aplysiadæ** (Sea-hares). Shell covered by two lobes of the foot. *Aplysia depilans* L., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Bullidæ**. *Bulla ampulla* L., *Philine aperta* L., *Acera bullata* O. Fr. Müll.

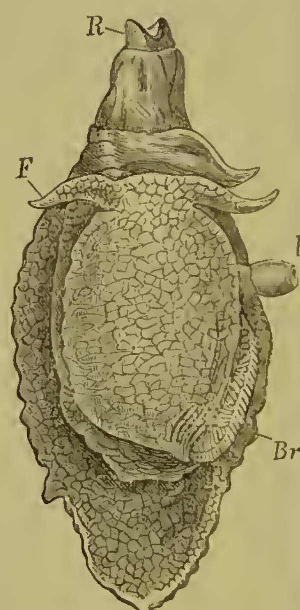


FIG. 524.—*Pleurobranchus aurantiacus* (règne animal). *Br*, gills; *P*, penis; *F*, tentacle; *R*, proboscis.

Sub-order 2. **Nudibranchiata**. Marine Gastropods, without shell

* Alder and Hancock, *l. c.* H. Müller and C. Gegenbaur, "Ueber Phyllirhoë bucephalum." *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*, Tom IV., 1854.

or mantle. The gills project freely on the dorsal surface, and may receive appendages of the alimentary canal.

Fam. **Tritoniadæ.** Gills in two longitudinal rows on the back. *Tritonia Hombergii* Cuv., *Scyllæa pelagica* L.

To this family is allied *Tethys fimbriata* L., with concentrated ganglionic mass, without radula and buccal mass.

Fam. **Dorididæ.** Gills in circle round anus (fig. 523). *Doris coccinea* Forb., *D. tuberculata* Cuv., Adriatic and Mediterranean.

Fam. **Æolididæ.** Numerous processes on dorsal surface, into which diverticula of the alimentary canal pass (*Phlebenterata*). *Æolis papillosa* L. (fig. 525), *Tergipes Edwardsi* Nordm. Here are allied *Phyllirhoë bucephalum* Pér., and the *Phyllidiidæ*.

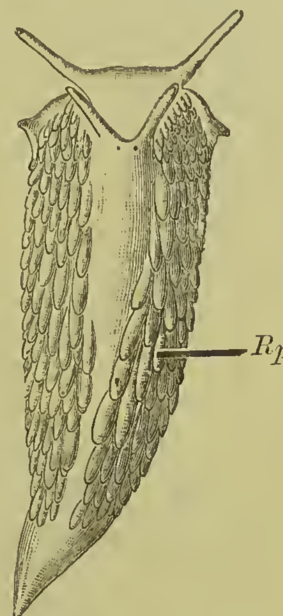



FIG. 525.—*Æolis papillosa* (Bronn). *Rp*, dorsal papillæ.

Sub-order 3. **Saccoglossa.** Gills absent, or as simple appendages of the dorsal integument. The radula with a single row of toothed plates, of which the anterior, after they are worn out, fall into a pocket developed on the floor of the buccal cavity.

Fam. **Limapontiadæ.** *Limapontia atra* Johnst.
Fam. **Elysiadæ.** *Elysia viridis* Ok.

## Class III.—PTEROPODA. *

*Hermaphrodite Mollusca without sharply separated head, with two large wing-like fins, often with cephalic cones.*

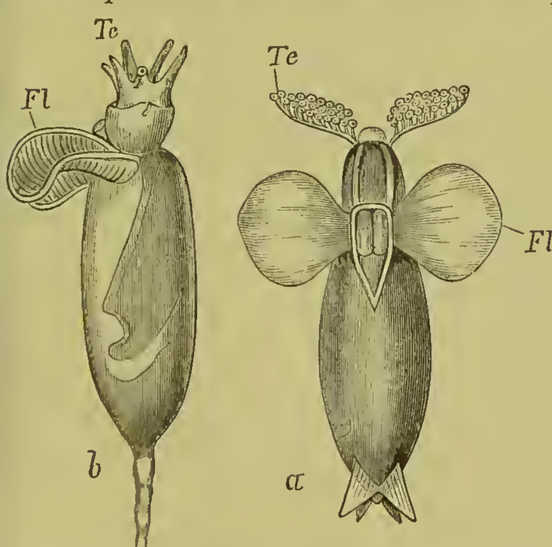



FIG. 523.—*a*, *Pneumodermon violaceum* from the ventral side. *b*, *Clione australis* from the side (Bronn). *Fl*, fins; *Te*, tentacles.

The body is sometimes elongated and straight, sometimes with its hinder part spirally rolled. The anterior region bears the

* Rang et Souleyet, "Histoire naturelle des Mollusques Ptéropodes." Paris, 1852.
C. Gegenbaur, "Untersuchungen über die Pteropoden und Heteropoden." Leipzig, 1855.
A. Krohn, Beiträge zur Entwickelungsgeschichte der Pteropoden und Heteropoden." Leipzig, 1860.
H. Fol, "Sur le développement des Ptéropodes." *Archives de Zoologie expérimentale*, etc., Tom. IV., 1875.

mouth and tentacles but is hardly separated off as a distinct head: beneath the mouth there are two large lateral fins which morphologically are to be explained as paired parts (*epipodia*) of the foot (the unpaired part is rudimentary), and which, by their wing-like flappings, cause the movement of the animal. The body is either naked (fig. 526) and without distinctly separate mantle, or there is a shell of very various shape, into which the body with the fins can usually be completely withdrawn, and which may be horny, gelatinous and cartilaginous, or calcareous, and is almost always symmetrical. In the last case (presence of shell) the mantle is usually very completely developed and encloses most of the body to the region of the fins, behind which the slit-like entrance to the mantle cavity is placed. The integument usually contains calcareous concretions, cutaneous glands, and pigment cells, which may give the body a dark brown, sometimes brownish, or even reddish colour.

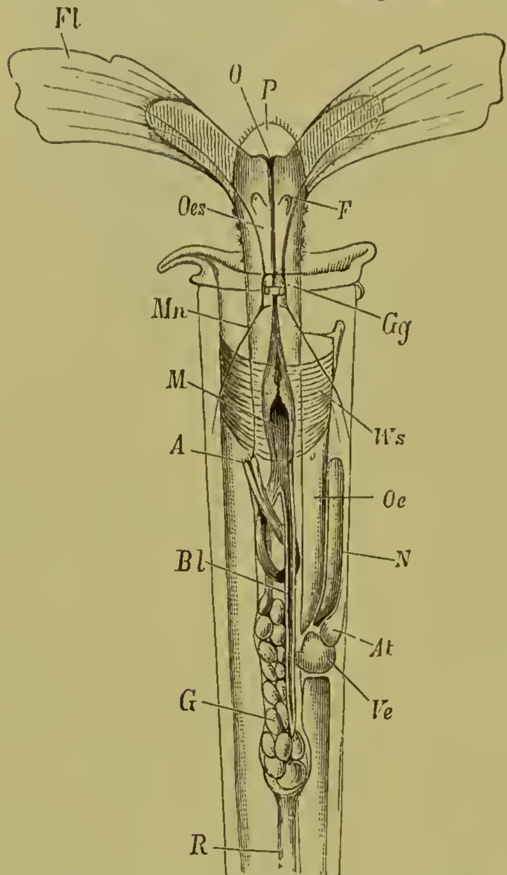



FIG. 527.—*Creseis acicula* from the dorsal side (after Gegenbaur). The hinder part of the body is omitted. *Fl*, fins; *O*, mouth; *Oes*, œsophagus; *P*, median lobe of the foot; *F*, tentacle; *Gg*, cerebral ganglion; *Mn*, mantle nerve; *Ws*, ciliated shield; *M*, stomach; *Bl*, blind sac of stomach; *A*, anus; *N*, kidney; *Oe*, opening of kidney into the mantle cavity; *At*, auricle; *Ve*, ventricle; *G*, sexual gland; *R*, retractor.

The mouth is sometimes surrounded by several arm-shaped processes (*Clio*), or by two processes beset with suckers (*Pneumodermon*), the *cephalic cones* (fig. 526). It leads into a buccal cavity, armed with jaws and toothed radula; at the bottom of the mouth the long œsophagus begins (fig. 527). The œsophagus leads into a dilated stomach, which is followed by a long, coiled intestine, which is surrounded by the liver and bends laterally and forwards. The anus is usually in the mantle cavity on the right side and near the front end.

The **circulatory organs** are reduced to arterial vessels; the main trunks arise from the spherical ventricle. The veins are replaced by a system of lacunæ of the body cavity without special walls, into which the arteries open. The blood returns from the lacunæ through the respiratory organs to the pericardial sinus, whence it enters the auricle through the venous ostium.

The **respiratory organs**, as far as they are not represented by the whole integument (*Clio*), have the form either of foliaceous branchial appendages (*Pneumodermon*) at the hind end of the body, or, in the shell-bearing forms, of internal gills placed within the mantle cavity, the entrance to which is lined with peculiar ciliated bands. The gills are always but slightly developed, and are reduced either to folded elevations of the ciliated mantle-wall, or to the mantle-wall itself.

The **kidney** is an elongated contractile sac, which communicates with the pericardial sinus by a ciliated funnel, and with the mantle cavity or directly with the exterior by a strongly ciliated opening which is capable of being closed.

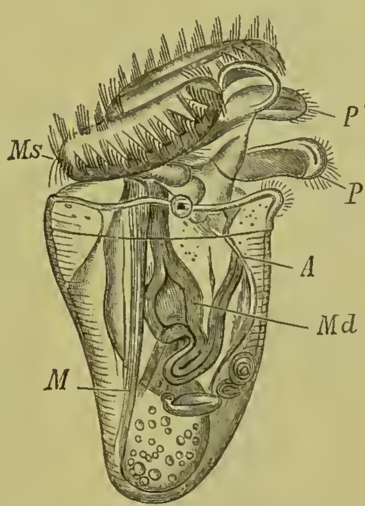



FIG. 528.—Larva of *Carolinia tridentata* (after Fol). *Ms*, velum; *P*, foot; *P′*. the two lateral (epipodial lobes of the foot; *A*, anus; *M*, retractor muscle; *Md*, stomach.

The **nervous system** resembles that of the higher Opisthobranchs. Pleural ganglia are present. The cephalic cones receive their nerves from the brain; the two fins as parts of the foot from the pedal ganglia.

**Sense organs.**—A pair of auditory vesicles are always present. Eyes on the other hand are absent or very rudimentary, as red pigment spots (*Hyalea*) placed either on the visceral sac near the œsophageal ring or on the tentacles (*Clio*). Tactile organs are represented by two small tentacles (*Hyalea*, *Cymbulia*) and the larger cephalic cones which are sometimes beset with suckers (*Clio* and *Pneumodermon*).

The Pteropoda are *hermaphrodite.* The hermaphrodite gland lies near the heart behind the stomach in the visceral sac, and usually possesses a common duct which is provided not only with a seminal vesicle, but also with a kind of albumen gland and receptaculum seminis; it opens to the exterior usually on the right side in front of the anus. The penis is sometimes in the terminal part of the duct; in the *Hyaleidæ* and *Cymbuliidæ* it has the form of a rolled-up protrusible tube placed in front of the sexual opening. The eggs are surrounded by albumen and laid in long strings which float freely in the sea. The embryos acquire velar lobes and shell, and leave the egg as larvæ (fig. 528). While the velum is atrophying, the two fins gradually appear on the first-formed unpaired part of the foot, while the shell (with operculum) is usually cast off. The *Hyaleidæ* however appear to keep the larval shell and develop it further, while the *Cymbuliidæ* replace it by a new shell. The naked *Pneumodermidæ* and *Clionidæ* do not after the loss of the velum and shell grow direct into the sexual animal, but first acquire three rings of cilia and pass into a new larval phase (fig. 529). The Pteropods always live on the high sea, but may by retracting their velum sink.

### Order 1.—Thecosomata.

Pteropoda with a shell. Head but little developed, often not distinct; tentacles rudimentary. The rudimentary foot remains in connection with the fins.

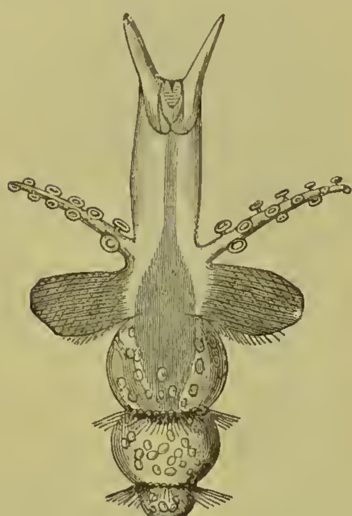


Fig. 529.—Larva of *Pneumodermon* (after Gegenbaur).

Fam. **Hyaleidæ.** Shell calcareous or horny, swollen ventrally or pyramidal, symmetrical, with pointed processes. *Hyalea tridentata* Lam., *Cleodora* Per. Les., *Crescis* Rang., *Cr. acicula* Rang., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Cymbuliidæ.** With cartilagino-gelatinous shell, boat-shaped or slipper-shaped. *Cymbulia Peronii* Cuv., *Tiedmannia neapolitana* Van Ben.

### Order 2.—Gymnosomata.

Naked Pteropods, head bearing tentacles, often with external gills. Fins separated from the foot. Larvæ with rings of cilia.

Fam. **Clionidæ.** Body spindle-shaped, without gills. *Clio borealis* Pall., constitutes with *Limacina arctica* the chief food of Whales.

Fam. **Pneumodermonidæ.** Body spindle-shaped, with external gills, and two protrusible arms, which are beset with suckers and placed in front of the fins. *Pneumodermon violaceum* d'Orb.

## Class IV.—CEPHALOPODA. *

*With well-marked head, a circle of arms bearing suckers round the mouth and funnel-shaped perforated foot. Diœcious.*

In the form of their body the Cephalopods are most nearly allied

* Férussac et d'Orbigny, "Histoire naturelle générale et particulière des Céphalopodes acétabulifères vivants et fossiles." Paris, 1835-45.
J. B. Verany, "Mollusques Méditerranéens observés, décrits, figurés et

to the Pteropods. The morphological relation between these two groups was first thoroughly discussed by R. Leuckart. He showed that the cephalic cones (tentacles) of *Clio* correspond to the cephalic arms of Cephalopods, while the median lobe of the foot, represented by the cervical collar, is the equivalent of the funnel. Huxley, however, does not take this view; he holds that the arms are parts of the propodium and that the funnel, which is formed by the fusion of paired folds, is equivalent to the paired elements of the epipodium which in Pteropods form the fins.

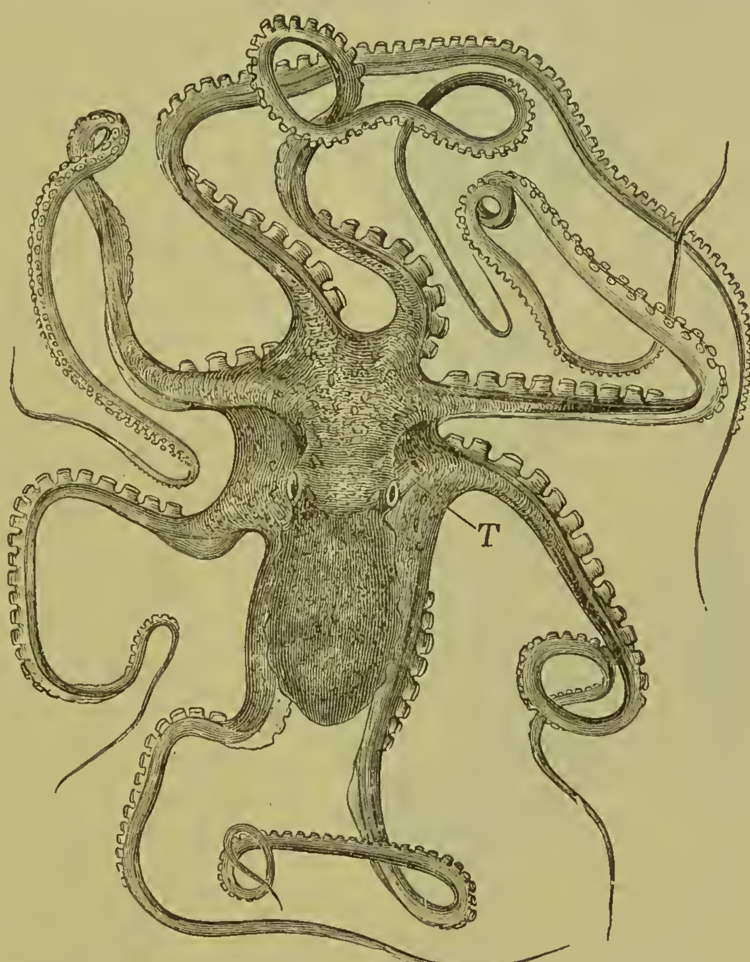


FIG. 530.—*Octopus macropus*, creeping (after Verany). *T*, funnel.

The mantle cavity is placed on the posterior surface of the body, which in the natural position is the under surface. In it are placed on each side one (*Dibranchiata*) or two (*Tetrabranchiata*) gills, the anus, the paired renal openings, and the generative opening which is sometimes single and sometimes paired. The eyes and olfactory organs are placed at the sides of the head. Anteriorly around the mouth four pairs of fleshy cephalic arms,

chromolithographiés d'après le vivant." I[e] Partie. Céphalopodes de la Méditerranée. Gênes, 1847-51.

H. Müller, "Ueber das Männchen von Argonauta argo und die Hectocotylen." *Zeit. für wiss. Zool.*, 1855.

Jap. Steenstrup, "Hectocotylus dannelsen hos Octopodsl., etc." *K. Danks. Vidensk. Selskabs Skrifter*, 1856. Uebersetzt im *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, 1856.

Alb. Kölliker, "Entwickelungsgesch. der Cephalopoden." Zürich, 1844.

arranged in a circle, project; they serve for creeping and swimming, as well as for the capture of prey, and usually bear rows of suckers on their oral surface. In many forms (*Octopoda*) the basal parts of the arms are united by a membrane which forms a kind of funnel in front of the mouth, the cavity of which is contracted and dilated in movement (not to be confounded with the pedal funnel, fig. 530 *T*). In others two lobe-like cutaneous appendages, the so-called fins, serve for swimming (fig. 531): these forms (*Decapoda*) possess in addition to the eight arms a pair of very long tentacles (fig. 531).

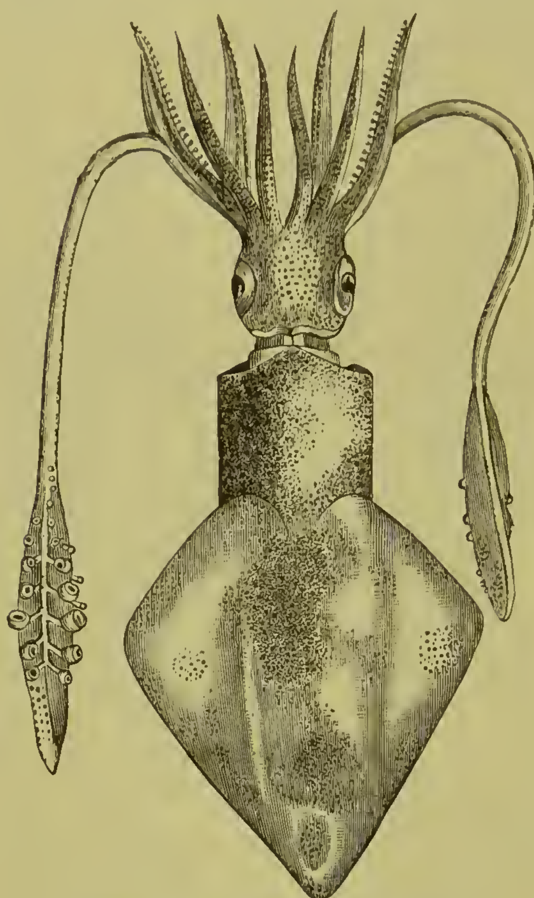


Fig. 531.—*Loligo vulgaris* (after Verany).

In *Nautilus*, the single living representative of the *Tetrabranchiata*, there is found in place of the eight arms a crown of very numerous tentacles. These, however, according to the view of Valenciennes, appear to correspond morphologically to suckers; in fact similar filaments are found on the arms of *Cirroteuthis*, as prolongations of the cylindrical nucleus of the suckers. The true arms of *Nautilus* are very short and rudimentary, forming fold-like lobes at the base of the tentacles.

The **funnel** is placed on the ventral (posterior) side and projects from the broad opening of the mantle cavity, which can be closed laterally by suckers. It has the form of a cylindrical tube, narrowed at the front (free) end, and in *Nautilus* is open along the under surface. Its broad base is placed in the mantle cavity, and it serves to conduct away to the exterior from the latter the respiratory water which has entered by the general mantle-opening, and with it the excrementitious and generative products. At the same time, acting in conjunction with the powerful mantle musculature, it serves as an organ of locomotion. The respiratory water is violently driven through the funnel by the contraction of the mantle, the general opening of the mantle being firmly closed by the sucker-like arrangement at the base of the funnel; the animal, in consequence of the reaction, is thus projected backwards.

Many *Cephalopoda* are naked (*Octopoda*), others (*Decapoda*) possess an internal rudimentary shell, a few (*Argonauta*, *Nautilus*) are provided with an external spirally-coiled shell. The internal shell rudiment of the Decapoda lies in a pocket in the dorsal mantle, and is usually a flat, lancet-shaped spongy calcareous plate (*os sepiæ*). The external shell is only exceptionally thin and simple (*Argonauta*); usually it is spirally-twisted and divided by cross partitions into a number of successive chambers. The animal lives in the anterior chamber, which is the last formed and largest. The other chambers, which diminish continuously in size backwards, are filled with air; they remain, however, connected with the large anterior chamber by a central tube (*siphon*), which perforates the partitions and contains a prolongation of the animal's body.

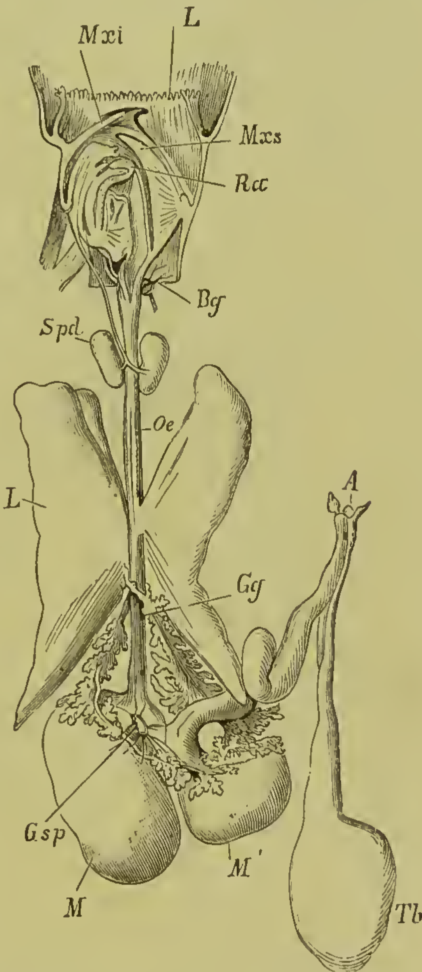



FIG. 532.—Digestive apparatus of *Sepia* (after W. Keferstein). *L*, lip; *Mxi*, *Mxs*, lower and upper jaws; *Ra*, radula; *Bg*, buccal ganglion; *Spd*, salivary gland; *Oe*, œsophagus; *L*, liver; *Gg*, bile duct; *Gsp*, splanchnic ganglion; *M*, stomach; *M'*, blind appendage of stomach; *A*, anus; *Tb*, ink sac.

The dermis of the *Cephalopoda* contains the remarkable **chromatophores**, which cause the well-known play of colours. These consist of cells filled with pigment; to their walls, which are formed of a cellular membrane, numerous radiating muscular fibres are attached. When the latter contract the cells are pulled out into a star shape; in the processes so formed the pigment is distributed. When the contraction ceases, the cell returns, in virtue of the elasticity of its walls, to its original spherical form and the pigment is again concentrated in a small space; thus the animal changes its colour. There are usually two kinds of chromatophores, as far as colour is concerned, placed above and near one another. They are connected with a special centre on the stalk of the optic ganglion and they cause a rapid interchange of blue, red, yellow and dark colours. In addition to the chromatophores, there is a deeper layer of small shining spangles which produce interference colours, and thus give rise to the peculiar iridescence and lustre of the skin.

The *Cephalopoda* possess an internal **cartilaginous skeleton,** which serves for the protection of the nerve centres and sense organs and attachment of muscles. In the Dibranchiata this skeleton constitutes a cartilaginous capsule which encloses the cerebral ganglia, œsophageal ring, and the auditory organ, while its lateral portions are hollowed out and represent the orbits. There are also (Decapods) optic cartilages, a so-called brachial cartilage and dorsal cartilage, various small cartilages for the closure of the mantle cavity, and fin cartilages for the support of the fins.

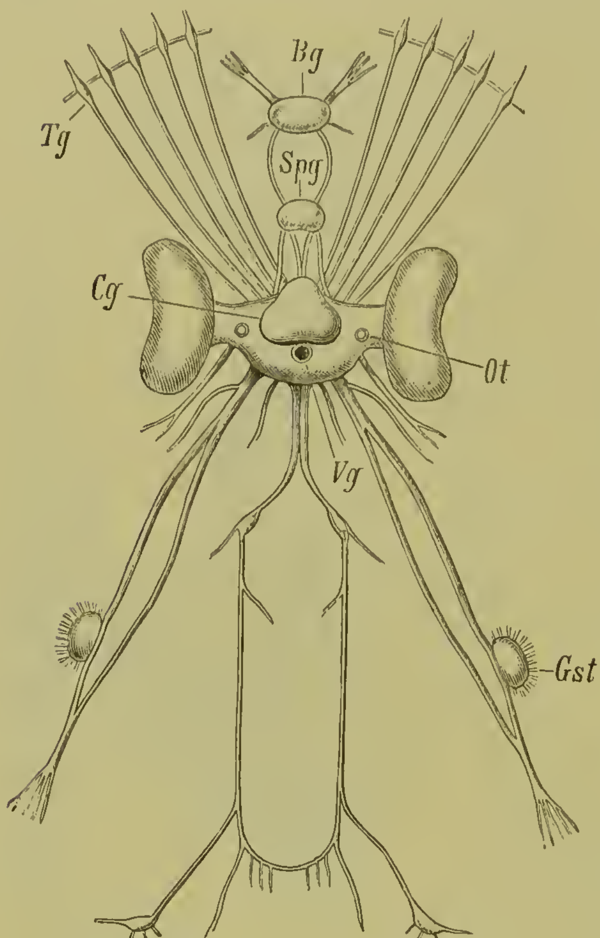



Fig. 533.—Nervous system of *Sepia officinalis* (after Chéron). *Cg*, cerebral ganglion; *Vg*, visceral ganglion; *Bg*, buccal ganglion; *Spg*, suprapharyngeal ganglion; *Tg*, ganglia of the tentacles; *Gst*, stellate ganglion; *Ot*, auditory vesicle.

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth, which is placed within the circle of arms, is surrounded by a circular fold forming a kind of lip (fig. 532). It is armed with two powerful jaws, an upper and a lower, which resemble in form a reversed parrot's beak. The radula, which recalls that of the Heteropoda, bears in each row a tooth-like median plate, and on each side three long hooks, adapted for drawing in the food; in addition there may also be some flat non-toothed plates. The œsophagus usually receives two pairs of salivary glands, and either has the form of a simple narrow tube, or presents before its junction with the stomach a crop-like dilatation (Octopods, fig. 535 *Jn*).

The stomach (Fig. 532 *M*) is usually spherical; its walls are muscular and its internal lining is raised into longitudinal folds or papillæ. It possesses a large, sometimes spirally wound, cæcal appendage, which opens into it close to the point of origin of the intestine, rarely at some distance from that point. The ducts of the large liver open into this cæcum. A mass of yellow glandular lobes, which are attached to the upper part of the bile ducts, may be interpreted as pancreas (fig. 532 *Gg*). The intestine is but little convoluted and the anus always opens in the middle line of the mantle cavity.

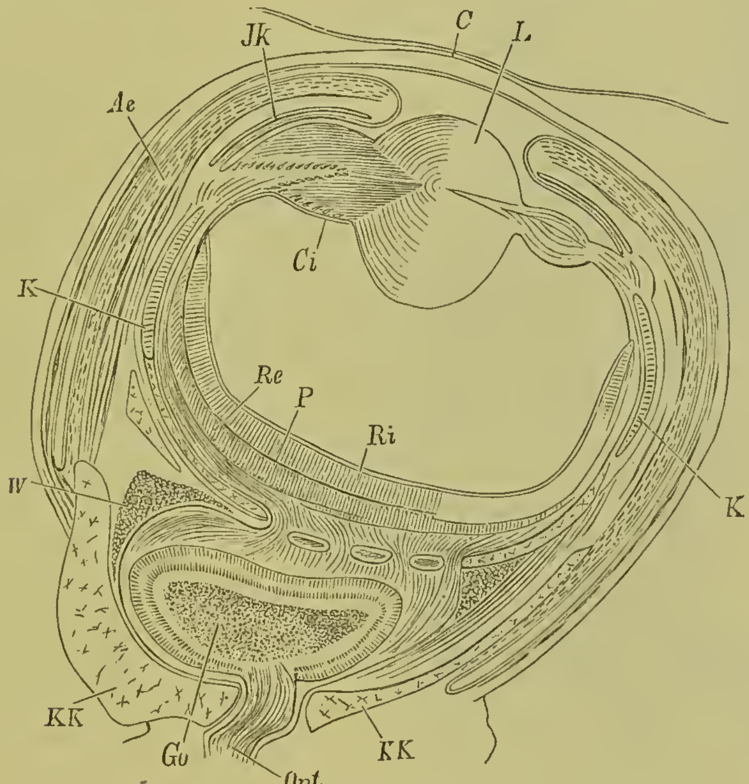



FIG. 534.—Horizontal section through the eye of *Sepia* (diagrammatic, after Hensen). *KK*, cephalic cartilage; *C*, cornea; *L*, lens; *Ci*, ciliary body; *Jk*, iris cartilage; *K*, cartilage of optic bulb; *Ae*, argentea externa; *W*, white body; *Opt*, optic nerve; *Go*, optic ganglion; *Re*, outer layer of rods, *Ri*, inner layer of rods of the retina; *P*, pigment layer of the retina.

The **nervous system** is characterised by its great concentration and high development. In the *Dibranchiata* the nerve centres constitute a large ganglionic mass which is placed in the cartilaginous cranial capsule and is perforated by the œsophagus (fig. 533). It is divided into a dorsal and a ventral portion, connected by two commissures. The former corresponds to the brain (cerebral ganglia) and sends nerves to the sense organs and to the buccal ganglia. The ventral portion consists mainly of the pedal and visceral ganglia.

The latter sends a large number of nerves to the mantle, the viscera and the gills. The large *ganglion stellatum*, which is found on each side in the mantle, a ganglion of the vena cava, two branchial ganglia, and the *ganglion splanchnicum* are all developed on the course of these nerves from the visceral ganglia.

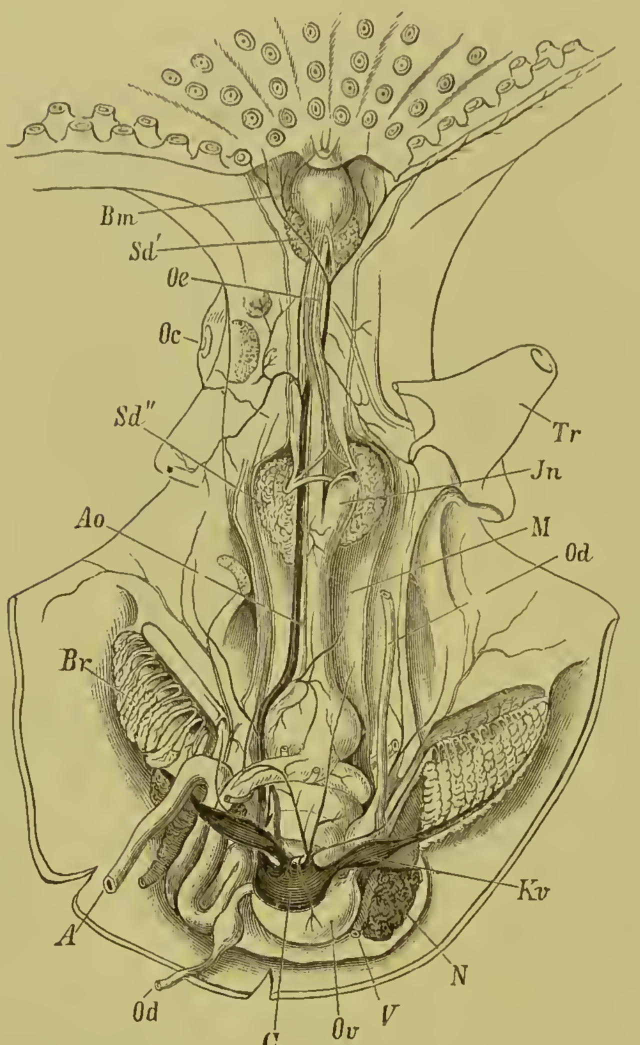



FIG. 535.—Viscera of *Octopus vulgaris* after removal of the posterior mantle wall and liver (after M. Edwards). *Bm*, buccal mass ; *Sd'*, upper salivary gland : *Oe*, œsophagus, *Sd''*, lower salivary gland ; *Jn*, crop ; *M*, stomach ; *A*, end of the rectum turned back ; *Oc*, eye ; *Tr*, funnel; *Br*, gills ; *Ov*, ovary ; *Od*, oviduct ; *N*, kidney ; *Kv*, auricle, receiving the branchial vein ; *V*, posterior vena cava ; *C*, ventricle ; *Ao*, aorta.

Of the **sense organs** the large eyes, placed on the sides of the head, are the most conspicuous. Each eye-bulb is placed in a special orbit, which is partly formed by an excavation in the cephalic cartilage. It is enclosed in a strong capsule which is continued over the front of the eye as a thin and transparent membrane, the *cornea*. The cornea may, however, be entirely absent (*Nautilus*), or in other cases be pierced beneath an eyelid-like cutaneous fold by a small hole (*Oigopsidæ*), through which the water enters the anterior optic chamber, and passes into a space of various extent round the anterior surface of the bulb (fig. 534). The Cephalopod eye possesses almost exactly the parts as the Vertebrate eye. The presence of the inner layer of same retinal rods in the former may be mentioned as an essential difference between them. The eye of *Nautilus* is without the lens.

The two auditory sacs are placed in the cephalic cartilage, and in the *Dibranchiata* in special cavities of the latter, the so-called cartilaginous labyrinth. They receive from the pedal ganglion their short auditory nerves, which, however, arise in the brain.

The **respiratory organs** have the form of two (*Dibranchiata*) or four (*Tetrabranchiata*) pennate gills, which are placed at the sides of the visceral sac in the mantle cavity. They are bathed by a current of water which is continually renewed.

The **heart** lies in the hinder part of the visceral sac, more or less closely approximated to the apex of the body. It consists of a median ventricle and as many lateral auricles as there are gills (figs. 535 and 536). A large anterior aorta (*aorta cephalica*) passes off from the ventricle and gives in its course strong branches to the mantle, alimentary canal, and funnel, and breaks up in the head into vessels to the eyes, lips and arms. A posteriorly directed visceral artery also leaves the ventricle. The capillary network, which is richly developed in all the organs, passes partly into sinuses, partly into veins, which are collected through lateral veins into a large anterior and a posterior vena cava. Each of these bifurcates into two or four trunks (according to the number of gills) which carry the blood to the gills. Immediately before their entrance into the gills the walls of these so-called branchial arteries are (except in Nautilus) especially muscular and rhythmically contractile and constitute *branchial hearts.* The *Cephalopoda* also possess arrangements by which a mixture of water with the blood can be effected.

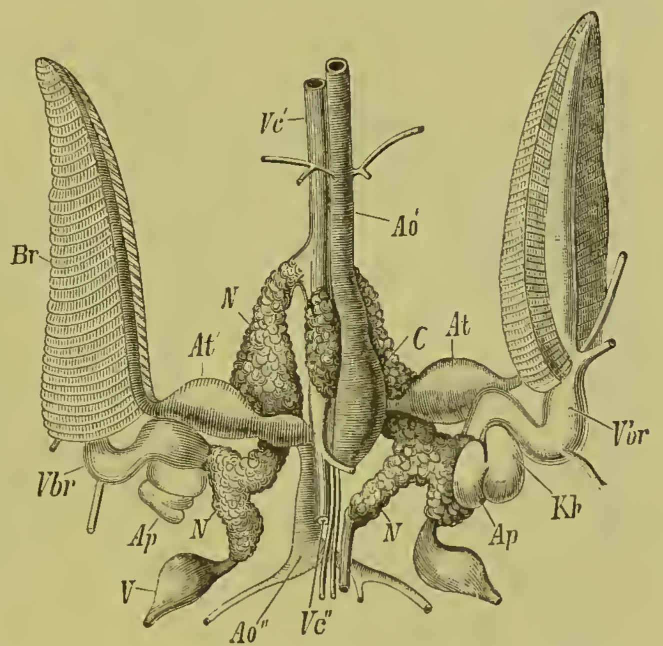



FIG. 536.—Circulatory and excretory organs of *Sepia officinalis* from the dorsal side (after Hunter) *Br*, gills; *C*, ventricle; *Ao'* and *Ao''*, the anterior and posterior aorta; *V*, lateral vein; *Vc'*, anterior vena cava; *Vc''*, posterior vena cava; *N*, renal appendages of the veins; *Vbr*, advehent branchial vessels (branchial arteries); *Kh*, branchial heart; *Ap*, appendage of the same; *At*, *At'*, auricles receiving the revehent branchial vessels (branchial veins).

Paired **kidney** sacs are always present, one on each side of the abdomen. They open into the mantle cavity, each through the apex of a papilla. The anterior walls of the sacs are pushed inwards by cæcal appendages of the venæ cavæ (branchial arteries), so as to give rise to a number of racemose lobules projecting into each renal sac (fig. 536). The renal sacs, as in other Molluscs, communicate with the body cavity, which in *Sepia* is largely developed and contains the heart, generative organs, etc., but in the *Octopoda* is reduced to a narrow tubular space ("water-vascular system" of Krohn) and only contains the sexual glands.

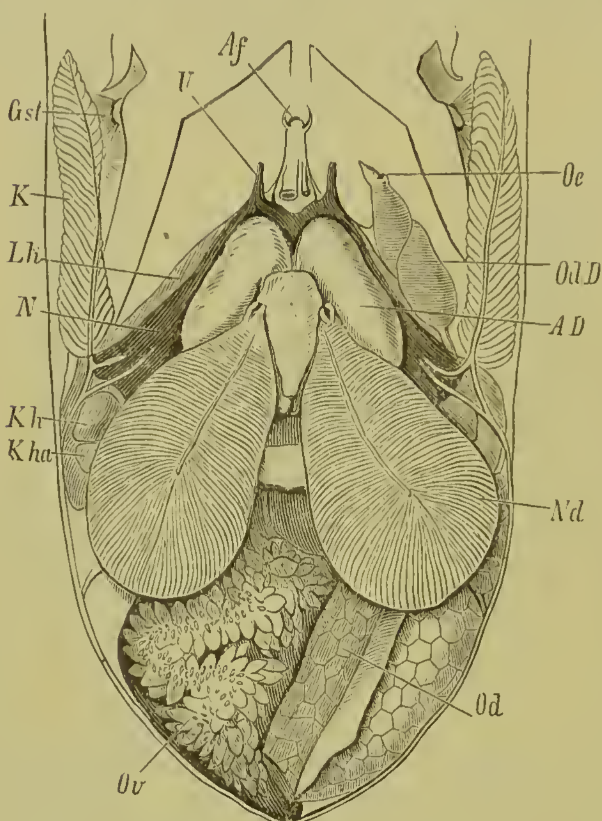



Fig. 537.—Anatomy of the body of a female *Sepia* (after C. Grobben). *Ov*, ovary in its cavity (body cavity) which is laid open; *Od*, oviduct; *Oe*, opening of the same; *OdD*, oviducal gland; *Nd*, nidamental gland; *AD*, accessory nidamental gland; *N*, kidney; *U*, ureter; *Lk*, canal of the body cavity (water canal); *Kh*, branchial heart; *Kha*, pericardial gland (appendage of branchial heart); *K*, gills; *Af*, anus; *Gst*, stellate ganglion.

An excretory organ very generally present is the **ink-sac**. It is a piriform sac, whose duct opens to the exterior with the anus, and empties an intensely black fluid, which surrounds the body of the animal as in a black cloud, and so protects it from the pursuit of larger marine animals.

The *Cephalopoda* are diœcious. Males and females present external sexual differences which principally concern a particular arm. According to the discovery of Steenstrup, one of the arms in the male always becomes modified, *hectocotylized* as it is called, as an intromittent organ. The two sexes of *Argonauta* differ considerably, inasmuch as the small male has no shell.

The **sexual glands** lie freely in the body cavity. Their products are dehisced into the body cavity, from which they are taken up and conveyed to the exterior by special ducts. The ovary is unpaired and racemose, and the oviduct is a double (*Octopoda*) or unpaired (usually left) duct opening into the mantle cavity; it receives in its course a round gland, and its terminal portion possesses glandular walls. In addition, the so-called nidamental glands (fig. 537) are present in the *Decapoda* and *Nautilus*; they open into the mantle cavity near the generative opening and secrete a cementing substance which surrounds and unites together the eggs. The eggs are surrounded—either singly (*Argonauta, Octopus*) or in great number (*Sepia*)—by capsules with long stalks, which are united together in racemose masses (so-called sea-grapes), and fastened to foreign objects in the sea. In other cases the eggs are aggregated in gelatinous tubes (*Loligo, Sepiola*).

The male generative apparatus presents a similar arrangement (fig. 538, *a*). The testis (*T*) consists of an unpaired gland formed of long cylindrical tubes. The duct of the testis is placed on the left side and is long, coiled and complicated. The following parts may be distinguished in it: (1) a much coiled vas deferens (*Vd*), which opens into the body cavity, (2) a long dilated vesicula seminalis (*Vs*) with two prostatic glands (*Pr*) opening into its terminal portion, (3) a spacious sac, known as Needham's sac, in which the spermatophores are formed, and which opens into the mantle cavity at the apex of a papilla placed on the left side.

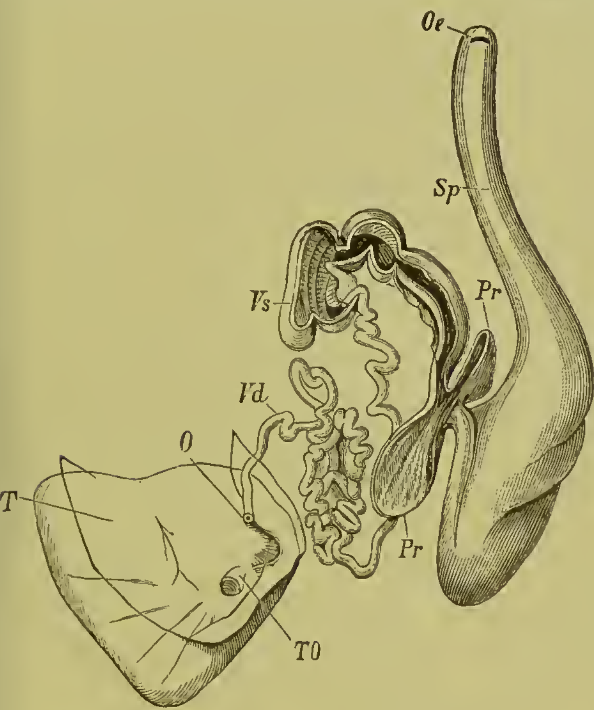



FIG. 538*a*.—Male sexual organs of *Sepia officinalis* (after Duvernoy), modified from C. Grobben. *T*, testis, with a piece of peritoneum; *To*, opening of the testis into the body cavity; *Vd*, vas deferens; *O*, opening of the vas deferens into the body cavity; *Vs*, vesicula seminalis; *Pr*, prostate; *Sp*, spermatophore reservoir; *Oe*, sexual opening.

FIG. 538 *b*.—Spermatophore of *Sepia* (after M. Edwards).

In copulation the large spermatophores (fig. 538, *b*) are introduced by means of the hectocotylised arm into the female sexual opening. In some Cephalopoda (*Tremoctopus violaceus, Philonexis Carenæ*, and

*Argonauta argo*) the hectocotylised arm of the male appears as an individualized intromittent organ which is filled with spermatophores, then separates from the body of the male, moves about for a time independently, and finally conveys the semen into the mantle cavity of the female (fig. 539).

The **development*** of the egg is introduced by a discoidal (partial) segmentation which takes place at the pointed pole of the egg. As in the bird's egg, the segmented portion of the ovum (formative yolk) gives rise to a *germinal disc* which in the subsequent growth is raised more and more from the lower part of the blastoderm which forms the yolk sac. Soon several projections appear on the embryonic rudiment (fig. 540); first in the centre of the germ a flattened ridge is formed around a central depression ($M$) which it soon grows over. This is the mantle [the depression is the so-called shell gland]; on each side of it the two parts of the funnel appear ($Tr$), and between these and the mantle the gills ($Br$). Also laterally but external to the folds of the funnel the first traces of the head appear as two pairs of elongated lobes, of which the external anterior pair bears the eyes. On the outer edge of the disc papilliform structures are formed, the first rudiments of the arms. In the later growth of this absolutely symmetrical embryo the Cephalopod form becomes more and more apparent: the mantle projects considerably, and grows over the gills and two parts of the funnel, which fuse to form the definitive funnel. The cephalic lobes grow together between the mouth and funnel, and on their oral sides become more sharply constricted off from the yolk, which with a few exceptions persists for some time as a yolk sac (fig. 541).

FIG. 539.—Male of *Argonauta argo* (after H. Müller). *Hc*, hectocotylised arm.

The Cephalopods are marine animals, some frequenting the coast and others the high seas. They feed on the flesh of other animals,

* Cf. besides van Beneden and Kölliker; Ussow, "Zoologisch-embryologische Untersuchungen." *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, 1874.

especially *Crustacea*. Some of them attain a great size. The flesh is eaten, and the colouring matter of the ink-sac (sepia) and the dorsal shell (*os sepiæ*) are used by man. The remains of Cephalopods occur in all formations from the oldest Silurian and constitute important characteristic fossils (*Belemnites*, *Ammonites*).

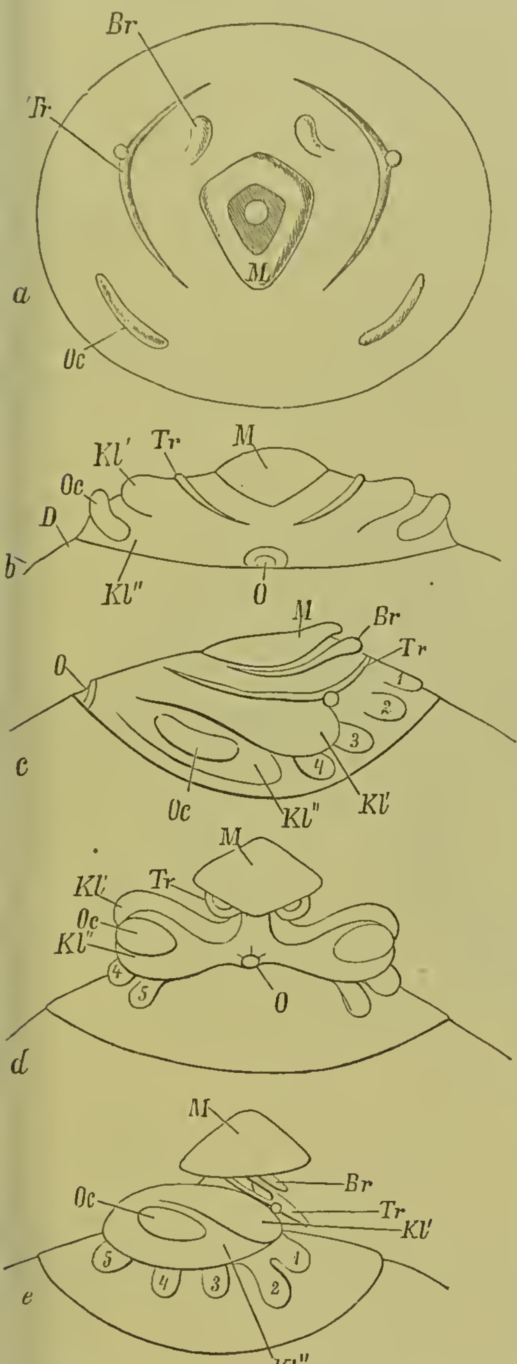



FIG. 540.—Embryonic development of *Sepia officinalis* (after Kölliker). *a*, View of germinal disc from above, commencing embryo lying on the yolk. *Br*, gills; *Tr*, folds of the funnel; *Oc*, eye; *M*, mantle. *b*, Somewhat older stage, seen from the front. *D*, yolk; *Kl'*, anterior; *Kl''*, posterior cephalic lobe; *O*, mouth. *c*, later stage from the side. 1-4, first rudiments of the arms. *d*, older stage from the front. 5, fifth pair of arms. *e*, Still later stage in lateral view The halves of the funnel have united.

## Order 1.—TETRABRANCHIATA.*

*Cephalopoda with four gills in the mantle cavity and numerous retractile tentacles on the head, with split funnel and many-chambered shell.*

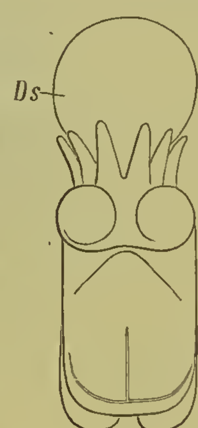



FIG. 541.—Almst ripe embryo of *Sepia officinalis* from the dorsal (anterior) face (after Kölliker). *Ds*, yolk sac.

The appendages of the head are peculiar. In place of the arms there are a number of filiform tentacles round the mouth. In *Nautilus* there are on each side of the body (*a*) nineteen external tentacles, of which the dorsal pair constitutes a kind of hood which can close the orifice of the shell; (*b*) two ocular tentacles on each side near the

* Van der Hoeven, "Beiträge zur Kenntniss von Nautilus" (in Dutch), Amsterdam, 1856.

W. Keferstein in Bronn, Classen und Ordnungen des Thierreichs. Dritter Band. Cephalopoda. 1865.

eye and (*c*) twelve internal tentacles, the four ventral of which on the left side are in the male modified to form the *spadix*, an organ analogous to the hectocotylised arm. Finally, in the female there are on each side, within the latter, fourteen or fifteen ventrally-placed labial tentacles. (Fig. 542.)

The cephalic cartilage, instead of forming a complete ring, consists of two horse-shoe-shaped limbs on which the central parts of the nervous system lie. The eyes are stalked, and are without a lens or other refractile media. The funnel has the form of a lamina rolled upon itself, but the edges are free and not fused. There is no ink-sac. The branchiæ are four in number as are also the branchial vessels and the kidneys.

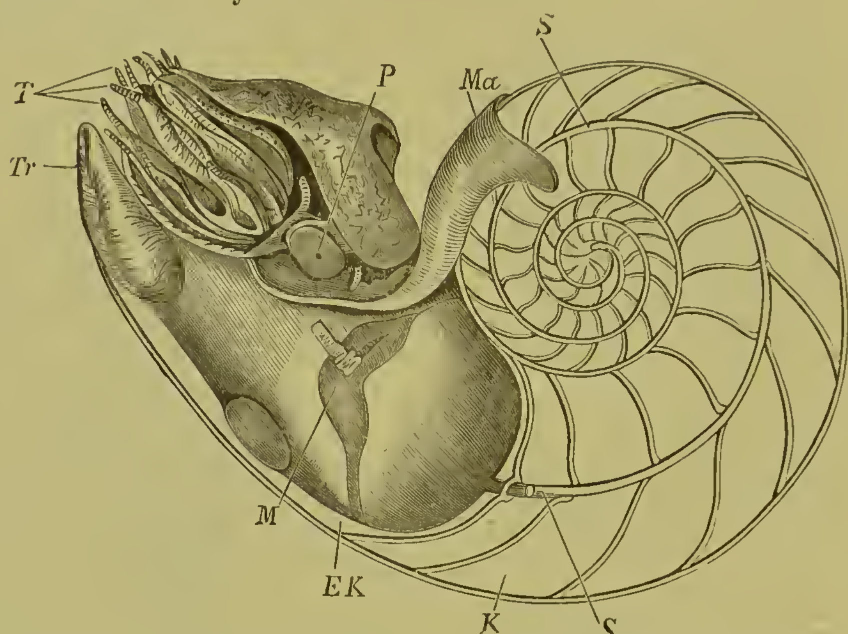



FIG. 542.—*Nautilus* (règne animal). *T*, tentacles; *P*, pupil of the eye; *Ek*, terminal chamber; *Tr*, funnel; *K*, chambers of the shell; *S*, siphon; *Ma*, mantle; *M*, muscle.

The hinder part of the thick external shell of the Tetrabranchiata is divided by cross partitions into numerous chambers, which are filled with air and are traversed by a siphon. The shell consists of an external, frequently coloured calcareous layer, and an internal mother-of-pearl layer. The similar structure of many fossil shells allows us to infer a similar organisation for their unknown inhabitants. The position and structure of the siphon, as well as the form of the septa, and the lines of fusion of the latter with the shell, are important characters for the classification of the fossil Tetrabranchiata. The small number of living species of the genus *Nautilus* are found in the Indian and Pacific Oceans.

Fam. **Nautilidæ.** The septa are simply bent and concave towards the anterior chambers. Line of suture simple, with a few large wavy curves or a lateral lobe. Siphon usually central; shell orifice simple. *Orthoceras*, shell straight. *O. regularis* v. Schl., calcareous strata of the North German plain. *Nautilus*, shell coiled. *N. pompilius* L., Indian Ocean.

Fam. **Ammonitidæ.** The septa much folded at the sides, always with lobe on the outer side, in the middle usually convex forwards. Siphon on the outer side. Contains only fossil forms. *Goniatites retrorsus* v. Buch., *Ceratites nodosus* Bosc., *Ammonites capricornus* v. Schl.

## Order 2.—Dibranchiata.*

*Cephalopoda with two gills in the mantle cavity, eight arms bearing suckers or hooks, complete funnel and ink-sac.*

The *Dibranchiata* possess round the mouth eight arms provided

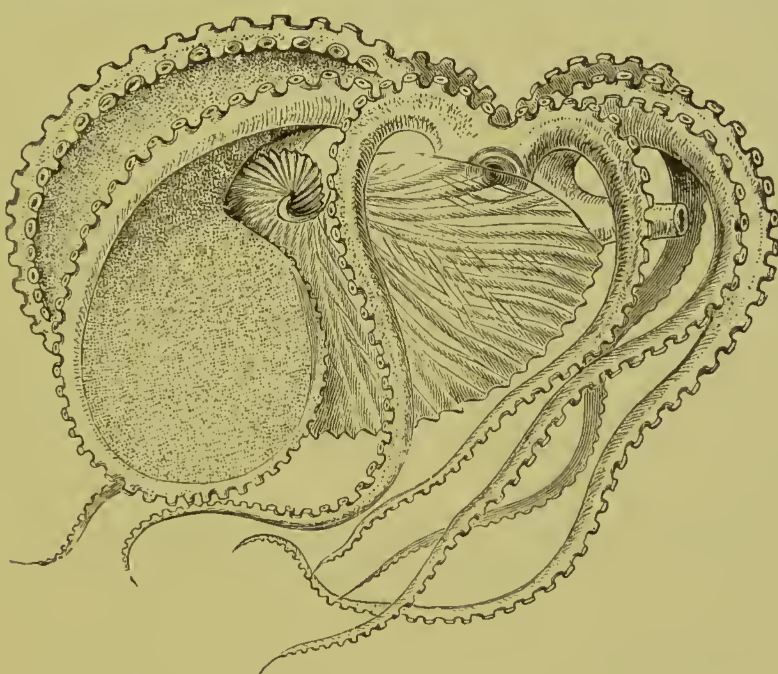


Fig. 543.—*Argonauta argo* (female), swimming.

with suckers or hooks; in the *Decapoda* there are, in addition, two long tentacles placed between the ventral arms and the mouth. The cephalic cartilage constitutes a completely closed ring surrounding the central parts of the nervous system; its slightly arched lateral parts serve for the support of the sessile eyes. There are only two gills in the mantle cavity and the same number of branchial vessels and kidneys. The funnel is closed. An ink-sac is usually present. The shell is in many forms completely absent; in others it is reduced to a horny or calcareous dorsal lamella. A spirally-coiled shell is

* Chief works: Férussac et d'Orbigny *l.c.*, also Verany *l.c.*

rarely present. In the female *Argonauta* (fig. 543) there is a single-chambered spiral shell with thin walls; in *Spirula* (fig. 544) there is a multilocular spiral shell, the chambers of which are traversed by a siphon.

Sub-order 1. **Decapoda.** In addition to the eight arms, there are two long tentacles between the third and fourth pairs of arms (ventral). The suckers are stalked and provided with a horny rim. The eyes are without a sphincter-like lid. The mantle bears two lateral fins, and at the mantle edge a well-developed apparatus for closing the mantle opening. An internal shell is present.

Fig. 544.—*Spirula Peronii* (Bronn).

Fam. **Spirulidæ.** *Spirula Peronii* Lam., Pacific Ocean.

Fam. **Belemnitidæ.** *Belemnites digitalis* Voltz, Upper Lias.

Fam. **Myopsidæ.** With closed cornea and covered lens. *Sepia officinalis* Lam., *Loligo vulgaris* Lam., Mediterranean (fig. 531). *Sepiola vulgaris* Grant., Mediterranean, *Rossia macrosoma* Fér. d'Orb., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Oigopsidæ.** Eyes with widely-opened cornea, so that the crystalline lens is exposed and bathed by the sea-water. *Onychoteuthis Lichtensteini* Fér., *Ommastrephes todarus* d'Orb.

Sub-order 2. **Octopoda.** The two tentacles are not present. The eight arms bear sessile suckers without a horny ring, and are connected at their base by a membrane. Eyes relatively small, with sphincter-like lid. The short, rounded body is without the internal shell, and usually also the fin-like appendages. Mantle without cartilaginous apparatus for closing mantle opening, and attached to the head by a broad cervical band. Funnel without valve; oviduct paired.

Fam. **Octopodæ** (fig. 530). *Octopus vulgaris* Lam., *O. macropus* (fig. 535), *Eledone moschata* Lam.

Fam. **Philonexidæ.** *Philonexis Carenæ* Ver., *Tremoctopus violaceus* Dell. Ch., *Argonauta argo* L. The small male is without a shell (fig. 539). The large female possesses fin-like expansions of the dorsal arms, and bears a boat-shaped, delicate shell, round the sides of which the arm-fins are spread (fig. 543).

# CHAPTER II.

## MOLLUSCOIDEA.

*Attached bilateral unsegmented animals, with crown of ciliated tentacles or spirally rolled buccal arms; enclosed by a cell or by a bivalve shell, the valves of which are dorsal and ventral: with a simple ganglion or with several ganglia connected by a pharyngeal ring.*

The two groups, *Bryozoa* and *Brachiopoda*, which are included in the Molluscoidea were formerly placed amongst the Molluscs, to which they do indeed present affinities. With the increase in our knowledge of their developmental history, it appears more and more probable, not only that the two groups are descended from an ancestral form common to them and the Annelids, but also that in spite of the considerable differences between them in the adult state, they are in reality closely related, a supposition which agrees with the great resemblance of their larvæ. Should this view of the close relationship of the Brachiopoda, which are always solitary, with the Bryozoa, which almost always form colonies, turn out to be well grounded, then the tentacular crown and the simple ganglion of the latter would be homologous with the spiral arms and subœsophageal ganglion of the former respectively.

### Class 1.—BRYOZOA * = POLYZOA.

*Small animals usually united together to form colonies; with ciliated tentacular crown, horse-shoe-shaped alimentary canal and simple ganglion.*

The *Bryozoa* owe their name to the moss-like dendritic appearance of their colonies, on which the small individual zooids are arranged in a regular manner. The colonies may, however, have a foliaceous or polyparium-like form, or they may form crusts on the surface of foreign objects. Solitary Bryozoa are rare exceptions (*Loxosoma*). As a rule the colonies possess a horny or parchment-like, frequently

* F. A. Smitt, "Kritisk förteckning öfver Skandinaviens Hafs-Bryozoer Öfvers." *Kongl. Vetensk. Akad. Förhandl.*, 1865, 1866, 1867.

H. Nitsche, "Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Bryozoen." *Zeit. für wiss. Zool.*, 1869 and 1871.

J. Barrois, "Recherches sur l'embryologie des Bryozoaires." Paris, 1877.

also calcareous, rarely gelatinous exoskeleton, which arises from the hardening of the cuticle around the individual zooids. Each zooid (*zooecium*) (fig. 545) is accordingly surrounded by a very regular and symmetrical case—the **ectocyst** or **cell**; through the opening of which the anterior part of the soft body of the contained zooid with its tentacular crown can be protruded.

The form of the cells, and the manner in which they are connected together, are very different in the different groups, and give rise to a great variety in the form of the colonies composed of them. The cells are usually completely shut off from each other. With regard to their connection, they sometimes project obliquely or at a right angle; sometimes they are spread out horizontally on the same plane; sometimes arranged in rows on a branched axis. Their openings are usually turned towards one side or towards two opposite sides. The soft body wall, or **endocyst** (fig 545, *En*) is closely applied to the inner wall of the ectocyst: it consists of an external layer of cells (matrix of the ectocyst) and of a network of crossing muscular fibres (the external fibres are transversely, the internal longitudinally arranged), which are separated from the first layer by a homogeneous membrane. On the inner side of the muscular layer there is, at least in the fresh-water Bryozoa, a delicate layer of ciliated cells which line the body cavity. At the opening of the cell the soft endocyst is invaginated inwards, and passes thence on to the anterior and extrusible part of the body, of which it forms the only investment. In most fresh-water Bryozoa this reduplicature of the endocyst is always present even when the zooid is protruded (fig. 545). The greater part of the anterior region of the body, with its crown of tentacles, can, however, always be protruded from the cell and retracted into it again by special muscles traversing the body cavity (fig. 545).

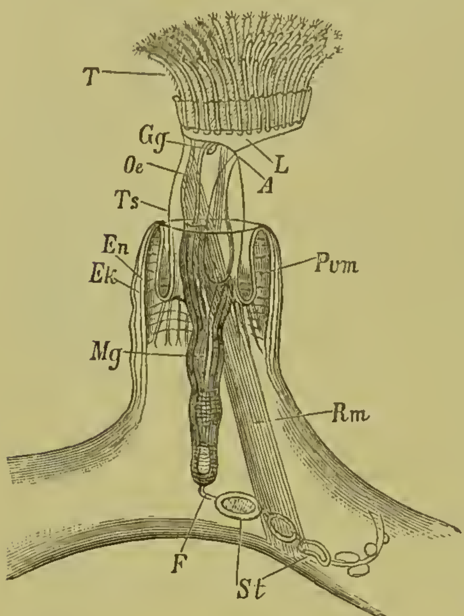



FIG. 545.—*Plumatella repens* (after Allman). *T*, Tentacles; *L*, lophophore; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Mg*, stomach; *A*, anus; *F*, funiculus; *St*, statoblasts; *Ts*, tentacular sheath; *Ek*, ectocyst; *En*, endocyst; *Gg*, ganglion; *Pvm*, parieto-vaginal muscles; *Rm*, retractor muscle.

The disc on which the mouth is placed is known as the **lophophore**. The lophophore is either circular (*Stelmatopoda*), or it is drawn out into two lobes so as to have a horse-shoe shape (*Lophopoda*, fig. 545), and its margins are produced into a number of richly ciliated tentacles. The tentacles are simply hollow processes of the body wall; they are provided with longitudinal muscles, and their cavity communicates with the body cavity, from which they are filled with blood. They serve both for procuring food (setting up by means of their cilia whirlpools in the water) and for respiration.

The **digestive organs** lie freely in the body cavity, and are attached to the integument by the so-called *funiculus* and by bundles of muscles. The body and tentacular apparatus has been incorrectly regarded as a kind of individual, and opposed to the cell or *Cystid*, in which it is placed, as the *Polypid*. The mouth is placed in the centre of the circular or horse-shoe shaped lophopore, and a moveable epiglottis-like process, known as the **epistome**, often projects over it. The alimentary canal is bent on itself, and consists of (1) an elongated ciliated œsophagus often dilated to a muscular pharynx; (2) a spacious stomach, with a blind backward prolongation, the hind end of which is attached to the body-wall by a cord (**funiculus**), and (3) a narrow intestine, which is bent up nearly parallel with the pharynx and is directed forwards. The intestine opens by the dorsally-placed anus, near but usually outside the buccal disc (*Ectoprocta*, fig. 545). In a few forms the anus is within the circle of tentacles (*Endoprocta*), *e.g.*, *Pedicellina* and *Loxosoma* (fig. 546).

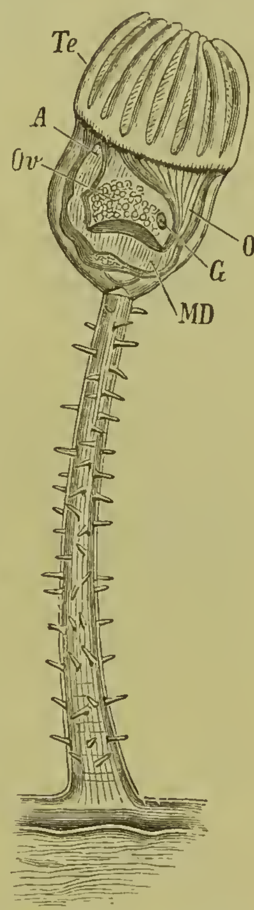


FIG. 546.—*Pedicellina echinata*. *Te*, tentacular crown; *O*, mouth; *MD*, alimentary canal; *A*, anus; *G*, ganglion; *Ov*, ovary.

**Heart** and **vascular system** are absent. The blood fills the whole body cavity, through which it is circulated chiefly by the cilia of the body-wall. The whole surface of the anterior protrusible part of the body, and especially of the tentacles, serves as a **respiratory organ**. The ciliated canal of the *Endoprocta* is to be regarded as a **kidney**.

The **nervous system** consists of a ganglion placed on the œsophagus between the mouth and the anus. This ganglion in the *Lophopoda* is contained in the cavity of the lophophore, and is attached to the œsophagus by a delicate circum-œsophageal ring; it sends off numerous nerves to the tentacles and œsophagus. According to Fr. Müller there is in *Serialaria* a so-called *colonial nervous system* which connects the individual zooids of one colony and enables them to co-ordinate their activities. Claparède* describes the same for *Vesicularia*, also for *Scrupocellaria scruposa* and *Bugula* (*avicularia*). Special organs of sense have not been recognised.

Many forms of Bryozoa present examples of a well-marked polymorphism. In *Serialaria* and its allies the joints of the stalk represent a special form of individual; they have a considerable size and a simplified organization, and serve as the ramified substratum on which the nutritive individuals are placed. In addition, there are here and there joints of the roots which, under the form of tendril- and stolon-like processes, serve to attach the colony. The peculiar appendages known as *avicularia* and *vibracula*, which are modified individuals and seem to have the function of food-procuring organs, are found in many marine Bryozoa. The avicularia (fig. 547, *Av*) resemble birds' heads and consist of two-armed pincers, which are attached to the colony near the openings of the cells and occasionally snap. They may seize small organisms, *e.g.*, worms, and hold them till they are dead; the decomposing organic remains are swept into the mouth by the currents caused by the cilia of the tentacles. The vibracula have a similar arrangement, but present in place of the snapping beak a long and extremely moveable flagelliform filament (fig. 548). Finally there are the *ovicells* (oœcia), each of which is filled with an egg; they have the form of helmet or dome-shaped appendages and are sessile on the zoœcium (fig. 547 *Ovz*).

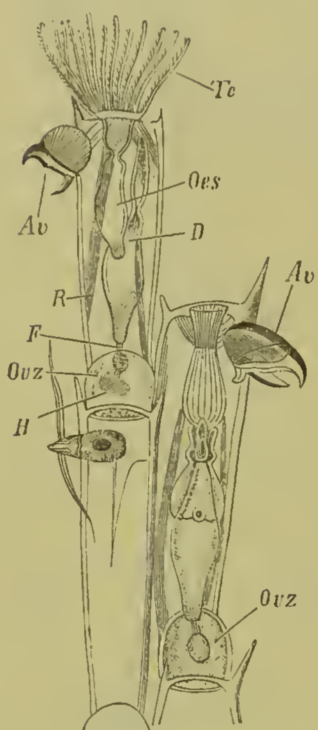



FIG. 547.—*Bugula avicularia* (after Busk). *Tc*, Tentacular crown; *R*, retractor muscle; *D*, alimentary canal; *F*, funiculus; *Av*, avicularia; *Oes*, œsophagus; *Ovz*, Ovicells.

The **reproduction** is partly sexual and partly asexual; in the latter case it may be effected by the so-called *statoblasts* or by budding. The male and female sexual organs are reduced to groups of cells producing either spermatozoa or ova, which usually arise in

* Ed. Claparède, "Beiträge zur Anatomie und Entwickelungsgeschichte der Seebryozoen." *Zeit. f. wiss. Zool.*. Tom. XXI., 1871.

the same animals, more rarely in different individuals. The ovaries which are filled with many ova are placed on the inner surface of the anterior part of the body wall; while the testes with their seminal capsules are developed either on the upper part of the funiculus or near the point of attachment of the latter to the body wall. Both kinds of generative products are dehisced into the body cavity where fertilization takes place. From the body cavity the fertilized egg passes either into a bud of the body wall (*Alcyonella*), or, as in marine Bryozoa, into an external appendage, — the oœcium.

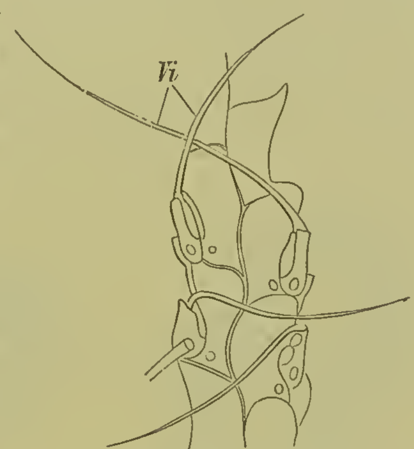


FIG. 548.—*Scrupocellaria ferox* (after Allman). *Vi*, Vibracula.

The name **statoblast** (fig. 549) was given by Allman to certain peculiar reproductive bodies, which were formerly regarded as hard-shelled winter eggs, but by him were recognised to be germs which are not fertilised. The statoblasts are found only in the fresh-water forms. They arise from masses of cells which appear principally towards the end of summer on the funiculus (fig. 545). They usually possess a lens-like, biconvex form, and are covered by two watchglass-shaped, hard chitinous shells, the edges of which are often enclosed by a flat ring formed of cells containing air (float), and sometimes (*Cristatella*) provided with a crown of projecting spines (fig. 549).

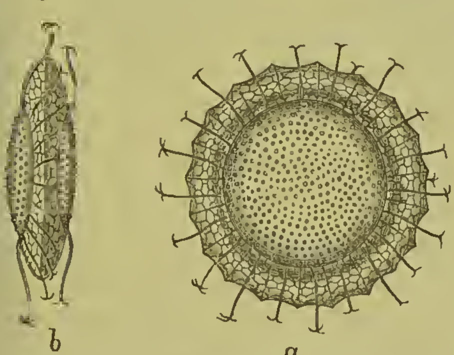
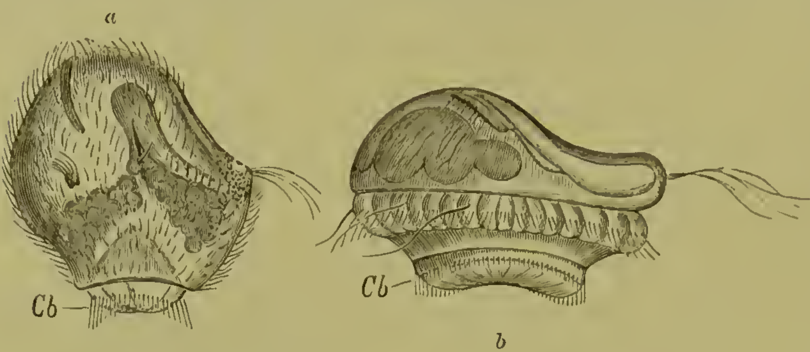


FIG. 549.—Statoblasts of *Cristatella mucedo* (after Allman). *a*, From the surface; *b*, from the side.

A very important part of the reproduction is effected by buds which remain permanently attached. The process of budding begins very early in life, before the development of the embryo is completed, and gives rise to the formation of colonies. Parts separated off from the colony are rarely able to produce new colonies (*Cristatella, Lophopus*).

The **development** is always connected with a metamorphosis. The budding always begins in the embryo. In the fresh-water forms, after the alimentary tract and tentacular apparatus have made their appearance, a second alimentary canal and tentacular apparatus arise, so that the ciliated embryo still enclosed in the egg membranes represents a small colony of two individuals. In the marine chilostomatous Bryozoa the fertilized egg passes into the ovicell, which consists of a helmet-shaped capsule and a vesicular operculum. Here the egg segments and develops into an embryo, which passes out as a ciliated larva, and swims about freely in the sea. The irregularly globular larva possesses a ring of cilia (fig. 550, *a*, *b*, *c*). After some time the larva attaches itself and develops the tentacular crown. The primary zoœcium soon produces new zoœcia by budding; avicularia are developed, and finally, but not until after the death of the older zoœcia, root filaments.



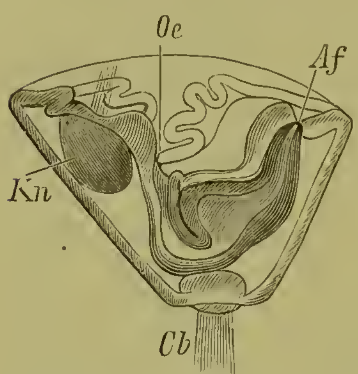




FIG. 550.—*a*, Larva of *Canda reptans* (after Barrois). *b*, Larva of *Lepralia* (after Barrois). *c*, *Cyphonautes* (diagrammatic after Hatschek). *Oe*, mouth; *Af*, anus; *Cb*, tuft of cilia; *Kn*, bud.

In the *Endoprocta* the egg develops in a brood-pouch placed on the oral side of the animal. The segmentation is complete, and leads to the formation of a blastosphere; the endoderm arises by invagination, and gives rise to the lining of the midgut; the œsophagus and rectum being formed from the ectoderm (fig. 551). The mesoderm arises from two cells. The larvæ of the Endoprocta possess an alimentary canal bent into the form of a horse-shoe, and a ciliated collar which is protruded at the front end; further, they contain a bud (fig. 551 *e*, *Kn*), as the first rudiment of a second individual, and a cement gland at the hind end (*Dr*).

Other larval forms, which are apparently of a very different structure, are reducible to the same type—*e.g.*, *Cyphonautes* (fig. 500, *c*), a larva which is found in all seas, and is, according to Schneider, the larva of *Membranipora pilosa*.

After the winter the contents of the statoblasts give rise to simple, non-ciliated animals, which possess, when they are hatched, all the parts of the adult animal, at once become attached, and produce new colonies by budding.

The Bryozoa are for the most part marine, and they attach themselves to stones, Lamellibranch shells, corals and plants. Some fresh-water forms belonging to the genus *Cristatella* have the power of moving about.

The Bryozoa were widely distributed in the earlier periods, as their numerous fossil remains, which increase in number from the Jurassic period onwards, prove.

## Order 1.—Endoprocta.*

*Bryozoa with anus within the circle of tentacles.*

In the structure of their bodies and the formation of their colonies

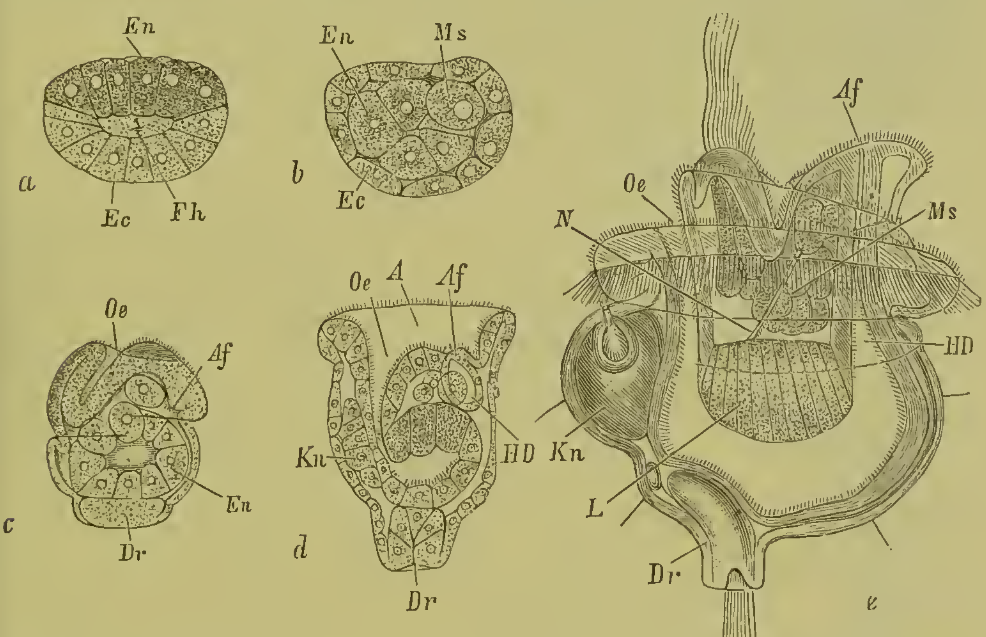



Fig. 551.—Development of *Pedicellina echinata* (after B. Hatschek). *a*, Blastosphere with flattened side of endoderm. *Ec*, Ectoderm; *En*, endoderm; *Fh*, segmentation cavity. *b*, Later stage in optical median section. One of the two first mesoderm cells (*Ms*) which lie to the right and left of the middle line is indicated. *c*, Later stage in optical median section. *Dr*, Cement gland; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Af*, first rudiment of the rectum. *d*, Young larva in optical median section. *A*. Atrium; *HD*, rectum; *Kn*, bud. *e*, Free-swimming larva, extended. *N*, Excretory canal; *L*, liver cells; *Ms*, mesoderm cells.

the Endoprocta present simpler, more primitive conditions since they retain essentially the organization of the Bryozoan larva. The tentacular apparatus of the adult is from its origin directly reducible to the ciliated crown of the larva. Mouth and anus both open within the tentacular circlet into a kind of atrium, which forms

* Besides Nitsche, cf., B. Hatschek, " Embryonal Entwickelung und Knospung der Pedicellina echinata." *Zeit. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XXVIII.

a brood-pouch in which the testes and ovaries open and the embryos are developed. A pair of ciliated excretory canals is present.

Fam. **Pedicellinidæ.** Stocks with stolons, on which the long-stalked individuals project. *Pedicellina echinata*, Sars. (fig. 552).

Fam. **Loxosomidæ.** Long-stalked solitary animals. *Loxosoma singulare* Kef., *L. neapolitanum* Kow.

## Order 2.—Ectoprocta.

*Bryozoa with anus opening outside the tentacular circlet.*

This group includes by far the greater number of the Bryozoa; their structure has been especially referred to in the precedent description of the class. The anus always opens outside the ring of tentacles, which are either arranged in a closed circle or on a two-armed horseshoe-shaped lophophore.

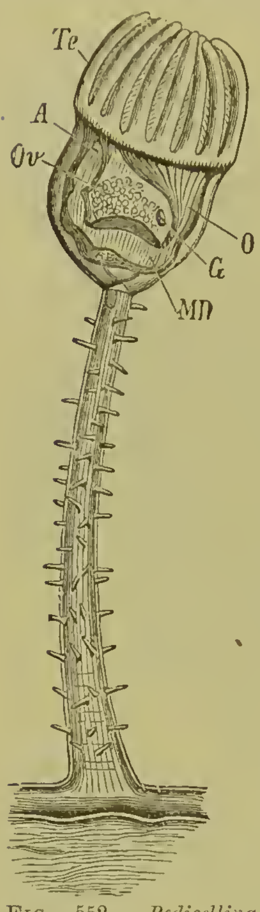



Fig. 552. — *Pedicellina echinata*. *Te*, Tentacular crown; *O*, mouth; *MD*, alimentary canal (*mesenteron*); *A*, anus; *Ov*, ovary; *G*, ganglion.

### Sub-order 1. **Lophopoda** * (**Phylactolæmata** Allm.).

*Fresh-water Bryozoa (excepting the marine Rhabdopleura) with horseshoe-shaped lophophore and epistome.*

The Lophopoda are mainly distinguished by the bilateral arrangement of the numerous tentacles on the two-armed lophophore (fig. 553). There is always present above the mouth a moveable, tongue-shaped process, the *epistome*, whence the name *Phylactolæmata* given by Allman to this sub-order. The zooids are usually of considerable size, and, as opposed to the marine Bryozoa, they are all alike (*i.e.*, there is no polymorphism). The cells frequently communicate with each other and give rise to ramified, or more spongy massive stocks of always transparent, sometimes horny, sometimes softer (either leathery or gelatinous) consistency. Statoblasts are very generally present.

Fam. **Cristatellidæ.** Free-moving colonies on the upper surface of which the individual zooids are arranged in concentric circles. *Cristatella mucedo* Cuv.

Fam. **Plumatellidæ.** Attached, massive or ramified colonies of fleshy or coriaceous consistence. *Lophopus crystallinus* Pall., *Alcyonella fungosa* Pall., *Plumatella repens* L. (figs. 545, 553).

* G. J. Allman, "Monograph of Fresh-water Polyzoa." Ray Soc., 1856.

Sub-order 2. **Stelmatopoda (Gymnolæmata).**

*Bryozoa with discoidal lophophore, tentacles in a closed circle; mouth without epistome.*

The Stelmatopoda are, with the exception of the *Paludicellidæ*, all marine forms. They are always without the epiglottis-like epistome, and possess a complete circle of less numerous tentacles, which arise from a round buccal disc (fig. 547). In many forms, as in *Alcyonidium gelatinosum*, *Membranipora pilosa*, a flask-shaped ciliated canal in the body cavity has been observed; it opens to the exterior near the tentacles, and probably corresponds to the nephridia of segmented worms. Statoblasts are only rarely present. The eggs usually give rise to ciliated larvæ. The colonies are for the most part polymorphic, being often composed of root- and stem-cells, with vibracula and avicularia. The ectocysts are sometimes horny, sometimes incrusted with calcareous matter, and present great variety of form.

Tribe 1. **Cyclostomata.** The orifices of the cells wide and terminal, without movable appendages. Most of the species are fossil. The living species inhabit the Northern Seas.

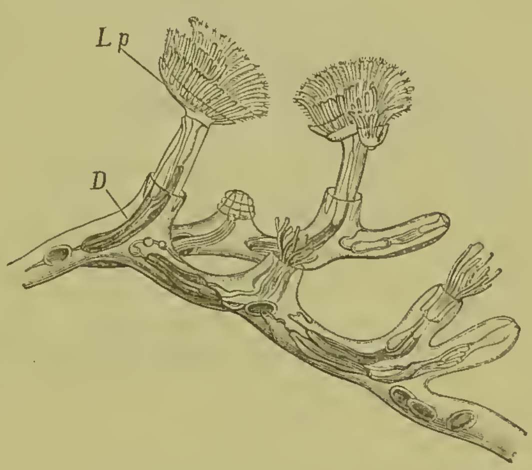


Fig. 553.—*Plumatella repens*, slightly magnified (after Allman). *Lp*, Lophophore; *D*, alimentary canal.

Fam. **Crisiadæ.** Colonies erect and jointed. *Crisia cornuta* Lam., Mediterranean and North Sea; *C. eburnea* L.

Fam. **Tubuliporidæ.** The zoœcia disposed in continuous rows. *Idmonea atlantica* Forb., *Phalangella palmata* Wood, Arctic Ocean.

Tribe 2. **Ctenostomata.** Apertures of the cells terminal; when the tentacular sheath is retracted they are closed by a circle of spines as by an operculum. Stem-cells and root-filaments frequently occur

Fam. **Alcyonidiidæ.** Zoœcia united to form gelatinous stocks of irregular form. *Alcyonidium gelatinosum* L., Northern Seas.

Fam. **Vesicularidæ.** The zoœcia project as free tubes on the branched, creeping or erect colonies. *Vesicularia uva* L., *Farella pedicellata* Ald., Norway, *Serialaria Coutinhii*, Fr. Müll.

Fam. **Paludicellidæ.** Fresh-water forms. *Paludicella Ehrenbergii*, Van Ben.

Tribe 3. **Chilostomata.** The apertures of the horny or calcareous cells can be closed by a movable operculum or by a sphincter muscle. Avicularia, vibracula, and ovicells are often present.

Fam. **Cellulariidæ.** Dichotomously branched colonies; zoœcia in two or several rows. *Cellularia* Pallas, *C. Peachii* Busk, *Scrupocellaria* Van Ben. *S scruposa* L.

Fam. **Bicellariidæ.** Zoœcia conical or quadrangular, bent. Lateral face on which the aperture is placed is elliptical, and placed obliquely to the median plane of the axis. *Bugula* Oken, *B. avicularia* L. (fig. 547).

Fam. **Membraniporidæ.** Zoœcia more calcified and united to form an incrusting colony. *Membranipora* Blainv., *M. pilosa* L., Adriatic; *Lepralia pertusa* Esp., Adriatic; *Flustra membranacea* L.

Fam. **Reteporidæ.** Zoœcia oval-cylindrical, united to a reticulated colony. *Retepora* Lam., *R. cellulosa* L., Mediterranean to the Arctic Ocean.

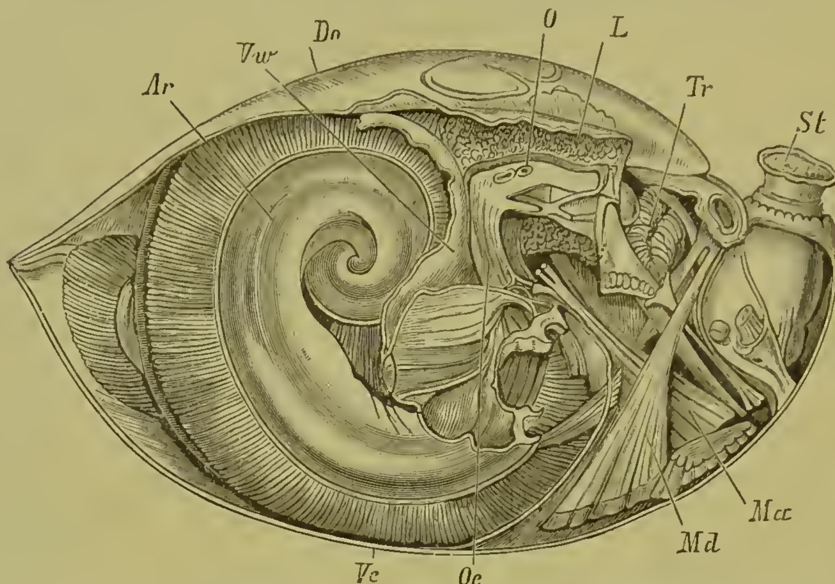



FIG. 554.—Anatomy of *Waldheimia australis*, seen from the side (after Hancock) *Do*, Dorsal side; *Ve*, ventral side of the mantle; *St*, peduncle; *Ma*, adductor; *Md*, divaricator *Ar*, arms: *Vw*, anterior body wall; *Oe*, œsophagus; *D*, intestine ending blindly: *O*, point of opening of the liver (*L*); *Tr*, funnel of the oviduct.

## Class II.—BRACHIOPODA.*

*Fixed Molluscoidea, with anterior (dorsal) and posterior (ventral) shell-valves, with two spirally-coiled buccal arms.*

The more recent researches into the development have shown that

* R. Owen. "On the anatomy of the Brachiopoda." *Transact. Zool. Soc.*, London, 1835.

A. Hancock, "On the organisation of the Brachiopoda." *Phil. Trans.*, London, 1858.

Davidson, "Monograph of the British fossil Brachiopoda." 1858.

Lacaze-Duthiers, "Histoire naturelle des Brachiopodes vivants de la Mediterranée." *Ann. des. Sc. Nat.*, 1871, Tom. XV.

Kowalevski, "Russische Abhandlung über Brachiopoden-Entwickelung." Moskau, 1874.

W. K. Brooks, "The development of Lingula. and the systematic position of the Brachiopoda." *Chesapeake Zool. Lab. Scient. Results*, 1878.

the Brachiopoda, which have hitherto been regarded as Molluscs, are closely related to the *Bryozoa.*

The Brachiopoda possess a large body, enclosed in a bivalve shell, of which one valve is anterior (dorsal valve), the other posterior (ventral valve) (fig. 554). Both valves lie upon corresponding folds of the integument (mantle lobes), and are often connected on the back by a kind of hinge, above which the usually more arched ventral valve projects like a beak. This ventral valve is either directly fused with foreign bodies, or the animal is attached by a peduncle projecting through the opening of the beak (fig. 554 *St*). The peduncle may, however, pass out between the two valves (*Lingula*). The valves of the shell are cuticular structures secreted by the skin and impregnated with calcareous salts; they are not opened by a ligament, but by special groups of muscles (fig. 554 *Md*); they are closed also by muscles which are placed near the hinge, and pass transversely from the dorsal to the ventral surface through the body cavity (fig. 554 *Ma*).

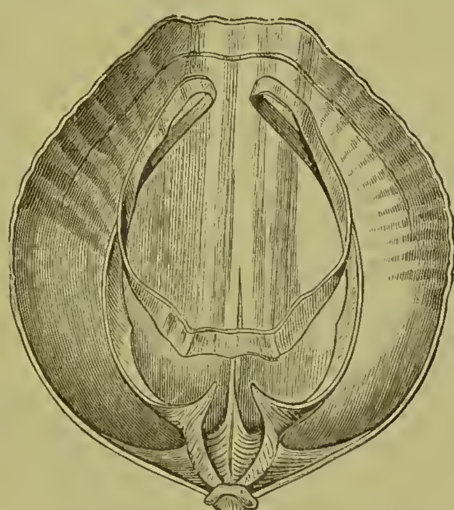


Fig. 555.—Dorsal valve of shell of *Waldheimia australis* with the brachial skeleton (after Hancock).

The body is bilateral and enclosed by the shell; it possesses two large reduplications of the integument, the two mantle lobes, which are applied to the inner surface of the shell. The edges of the mantle lobes are thickened, and carry very regularly-arranged setæ. The mantle may also produce within its own substance calcareous spicules or a continuous calcareous network.

The mouth is placed between the bases of the two spiral arms and leads into the œsophagus; the latter passes into the intestine, which is attached by ligaments and surrounded by large hepatic lobes. The intestine either describes a single bend, or is of considerable length and coiled (*Discina, Lingula*). In the latter case it opens into the mantle cavity by an anus placed on one side of the middle line; while in the hinged Brachiopoda (*Terebralula, Waldheimia*) there is no anus, and the intestine ends blindly in the body cavity (fig. 554). Sometimes the end of the intestine is continued into a string-like organ (*Thecidium*).

The two buccal arms are supported by a hard framework, consisting of calcareous processes of the dorsal valve of the shell (fig. 555). They have the form of long appendages rolled up in a conical spiral on the anterior side of the body; and they are traversed, as are the labial palps of many Lamellibranchs, by a groove. The edges of the groove give rise to close-set and long fringes composed of stiff

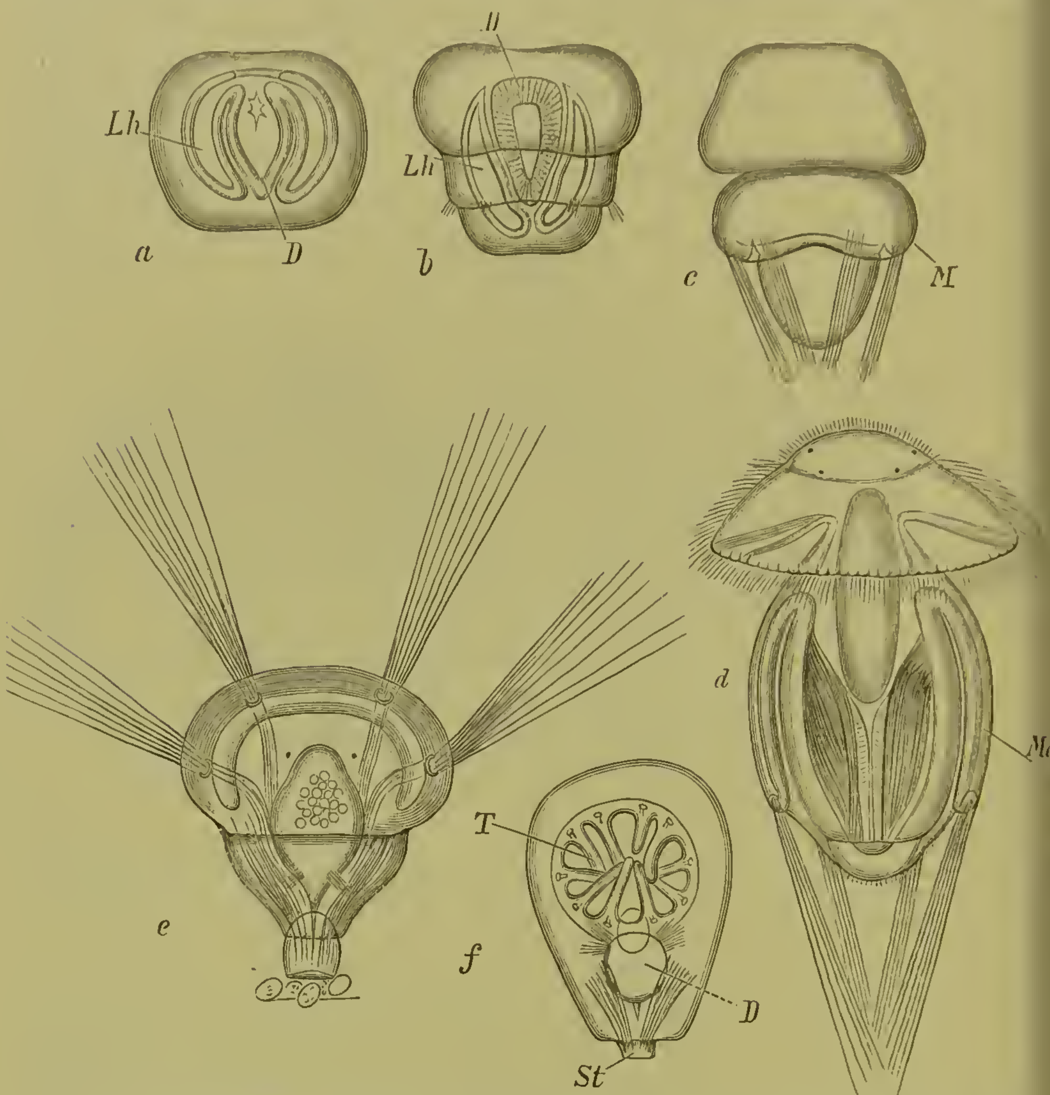



FIG. 556.—Development of *Argiope* (after Kowalevski). *a*, Larva, the gastric cavity of which has given rise to the diverticula of the body cavity (*Lh*); *D*, gut. *b*, Larva with three regions or segments. *c*, Larva with four bundles of setæ in the mantle-lobes of the middle segment. *d*, Later stage. *e*, Attached larva with mantle lobes bent anteriorly. *f*, The tentacles (*T*) are developed; *St*, peduncle.

and movable filaments, the ciliated covering of which produces a strong current which leads small particles of food to the mouth opening.

The **heart** is placed on the dorsal side of the anterior part of the intestine (stomach). It receives the blood through a venous trunk running on the œsophagus, and gives off several lateral arterial trunks. The vascular system is not closed, but is in connection with a blood sinus surrounding the alimentary canal, with the lacunæ of the viscera and with a well-developed system of lacunæ in the mantle and arms. In the latter the blood is brought into close osmotic relation with the water, over a large surface; the inner surface of the mantle and the spiral arms are, therefore, correctly regarded as **respiratory organs.**

**Excretory organs.**—Two, rarely four, canals, which are provided with glandular walls and open on each side of the intestine with a funnel-shaped aperture (fig. 554 *Tr*) into the body cavity, and on either side of the mouth to the exterior, are to be regarded as kidneys (corresponding to the segmental organs of Annelida.) They function at the same time as generative ducts, and were called *oviducts* by Hancock.

The **nervous system** consists of a circumœsophageal ring on which two small supraœsophageal ganglia are inserted. The subœsophageal ganglionic swelling of the ring is, however, much larger, and from it nerves pass out to the dorsal mantle lobe, the arms and adductor muscles, and to two small ganglia which supply the ventral mantle lobe and the peduncular muscle with nerves. Sense organs are not known with certainty.

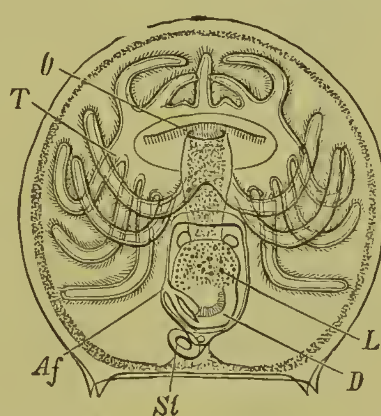



FIG. 557 *a*.—Larva of *Lingula* (after Brooks). *T*, Tentacles; *O*, mouth; *D*, alimentary canal; *Af*, anus; *L*, liver; *St*, rudiment of peduncle.

**Generative organs.**—In all probability most Brachiopoda, as *Discina*, *Thecidium* and *Terebratulina* are diœcious. The sexual organs consist of thick yellow bands and ridges which have a paired arrangement and project from the body cavity into the lacunæ of the mantle, and are there considerably ramified. The eggs pass from the glands into the body cavity, and are conducted to the exterior by the oviducts (excretory organs) whose funnel-shaped internal openings have already been mentioned.

**Development** (fig. 556).—After a total segmentation a kind of gastrula is formed, usually by invagination, and the archenteron (*Argiope*) becomes divided as in *Sagitta* into a median cavity, and two lateral diverticula which are constricted off and give rise to the body cavity (fig. 556 *a*, *b*). The oval larva then elongates and becomes divided by constrictions into three segments (fig. 556 *b*, *c*), of which the anterior becomes umbrella-shaped, and develops cilia and eye-spots; subsequently it atrophies and gives rise to the upper lip. A fold is formed on the middle segment; this gives rise to the two mantle lobes, which soon cover the body and a part of the caudal segment (fig. 556, *d*). Four bundles of long setæ, which, as in the Worms, can be drawn in and protruded, make their appearance on the ventral lobe of the mantle of the developing larva. Later the larva becomes attached and the metamorphosis begins. The fixed posterior segment becomes the peduncle; the mantle lobes bend forward and produce the shell. The bundles of setæ are thrown off; the deposition of calcareous matter in the shell begins, and the tentacular filaments (which are at first arranged in a circle) of the later arms make their appearance. In *Thecidium* the inner layer (mesoderm and endoderm) arises from masses of cells which are budded off into the segmentation cavity. The subsequent metamorphosis of the larva when provided with tentacles has been most accurately investigated by Brooks for *Lingula*, the larvæ of which are still free-swimming when the tentacles are being developed (fig. 557, *a*, *b*).

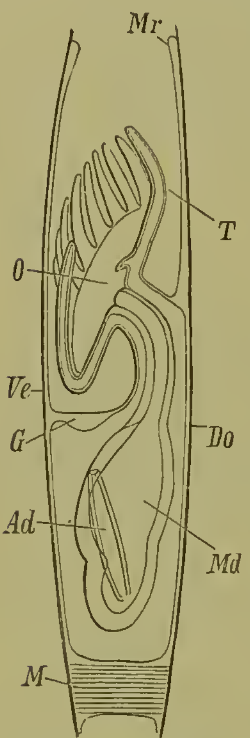



FIG. 557 *b*.—Longitudinal section of an older larva (after Brooks). *Do*, Dorsal; *Ve*, ventral valve of the shell; *Mr*, thickened mantle edge; *T*, tentacles; *O*, mouth; *Md*, stomach; *Ad*, intestine; *M*, posterior muscle; *G*, ganglion.

At the present day but few Brachiopods are found in the different seas, as compared with the much larger number in the earlier formations; certain species of these fossil Brachiopods have great importance as characteristic fossils. The oldest fossils also belong to the Brachiopoda and certain genera which first appeared in the Silurian have persisted to the present day (*Lingula*).

## Order 1.—ECARDINES (INARTICULATA.).

Shell without hinge and brachial skeleton. Alimentary canal with laterally-placed anus. Edges of the mantle lobes completely separated.

Fam. **Lingulidæ.** *Lingula anatina* Lam., Indian Ocean,

Fam. **Discinidæ.** *Discina lamellosa* Brod., South America.

Fam. **Craniadæ.** *Crania anomala* Müll., North Sea; *Cr. rostrata* Hoev., Mediterranean; *Cr. antiqua* Defr., fossil from the Chalk.

### Order 2.—Testicardines.

The shell is calcareous, with hinge and brachial skeleton. The intestine ends blindly.

The exclusively fossil families of the **Orthidæ** and **Productidæ** (*Productus* Sav.), the edge of the shells which have no hinge, form the transition between the two orders.

Fam. **Rhynchonellidæ.** *Rhynchonella psittacca* Lam., fossil species found in the Silurian. *Pentamerus* Sow., contains only fossil species from the Silurian and Devonian formations. The fossil *Spiriferidæ* are allied here (*Spirifer* Sow.).

Fam. **Terebratulidæ.** *Thecidium mediterraneum* Riss., *Waldheimia* King; *Terebratula vitrea* Lam., Mediterranean; *Terebratulina caput serpentis* L., North Sea; *Argiope* Dp.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### Tunicata*

*Bilateral, saccular, or barrel-shaped animals; the respiratory cavity with two wide openings, between which is placed a simple nerve ganglion. Heart and branchiæ are present.*

The *Tunicata* owe their name to the presence of a gelatinous or cartilaginous envelope or mantle (the *tunica externa* or *testa*), which completely surrounds the body. The body is saccular (*Ascidians*) or barrel-shaped (*Salpæ*). In all cases there is at the anterior end a wide opening (figs. 558, 559, *O*), which can be closed by means of muscles, and often also by valves. Through this opening water and nutrient matters pass into the pharyngeal cavity, which also serves as a respiratory organ. At some distance (*Ascidians*) from this first opening, or at the opposite end of the body (*Salpæ*), there is a second opening (figs. 558, 559 *A*), which can also be closed; this serves as the exhalent opening of the cloacal cavity (*Kl*), which communicates with the pharyngeal cavity.

* J. C. Savigny, "Mémoires sur les animaux sans vertèbres, II." Paris, 1815.

Chamisso, "De animalibus quibusdam e classe Vermium." Berlin, 1819.

Milne Edwards, "Observations sur les Ascidies composées de côtes de la Manche." *Mém. Acad. Sc. Paris*, 1839.

A. Kowalevski, "Weitere Studien über die Entwickelung der einfachen Ascidien." *Arch. für mikr. Anatomie*, Taf. VI., 1870.

The integument is sometimes gelatinous and sometimes of leathery or cartilaginous consistency, and is often clear as crystal or transparent, but sometimes opaque and variously coloured. The outer surface is smooth or warty, sometimes spiny or felted. This external integument, which completely envelopes the body, is called the external mantle (*tunica*), and was formerly regarded as a sort of shell and compared to the bivalve shell of the Lamellibranchs. This view seemed to be supported by the interesting discovery of Lacaze-Duthiers* that there are Ascidians in which the stiff cartilaginous tunic is split into two separate valves which can be closed by special muscles (*Chevreulius*). As a matter of fact, this is simply an external analogy, for the mantle space corresponds to an atrial cavity, and the branchial sac to the pharyngeal sac. The substance of the mantle arises as a cuticular excretion; it consists of a matrix containing *cellulose* and cells, and therefore with respect to its structure is a kind of connective tissue. In the colonial Tunicates the external mantles of all the individuals may fuse together to form a common mass.

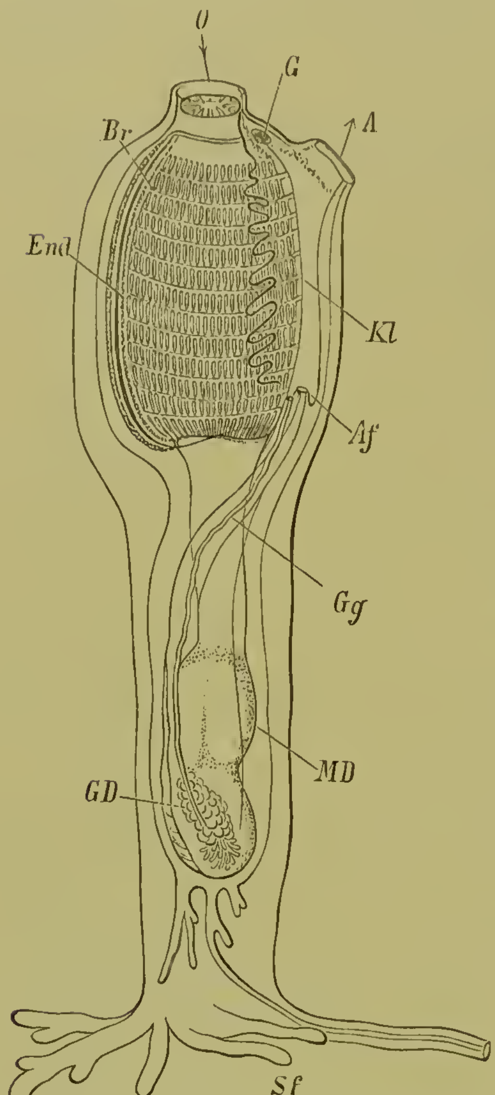



FIG. 553.—*Clavellina lepadiformis* (règne animal), somewhat diagrammatic. *O*, Mouth; *Br*, gills; *End*, endostyle; *Oe*, œsophagus; *G*, nervous centre; *MD*, stomach; *Kl*, cloacal space; *A*, exhalent pore; *Af*, anus; *GD*, genital gland; *Gg*, genital duct; *Sf*, stolons.

Beneath the saccular mantle lies the body wall of the animal, the outer cellular layer of which is applied to the mantle and represents the ectodermal epithelium which has produced the mantle and also the subjacent so-called internal mantle layer. Within the latter all the organs of the

* Lacaze-Duthiers, "Sur un nouveau d'Ascidien." *Ann. des Sc. Nat.* V[e]. Ser., Tom. IV., 1865.

body,—the muscles, nervous system, the digestive apparatus, the generative and circulatory organs,—lie embedded in a kind of body cavity.

The **nervous system** is confined to a simple ganglion, the position of which near the inhalent aperture marks the dorsal surface. The nerves which radiate from the ganglion branch and pass, some to the muscles and viscera, some to the sense organs—such as eyes, auditory and tactile organs—which are found principally in the free-swimming Tunicates.

The **muscular system** is chiefly developed around the respiratory cavity, and serves for the dilatation and contraction of this space as well as for closing the inhalent and exhalent pores. In the Ascidians there are three layers of muscles, an external and internal longi-

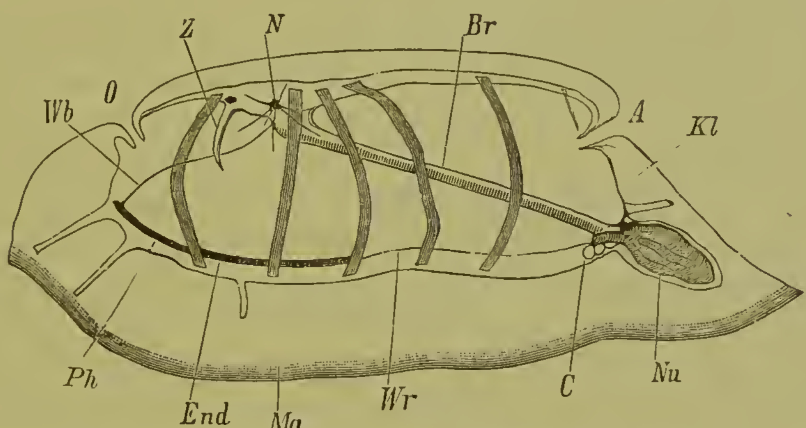



FIG. 559.—*Salpa democratica* from the side, somewhat diagrammatic. *O*, Mouth; *Ph*, pharyngeal cavity; *Kl*, cloaca: *A*, exhalent opening; *Br*, gills; *N*, nervous centre; *Ma*, mantle; *M*, muscular rings; *Z*, languet; *Wb*, ciliated arc; *End*, endostyle; *Wr*, ciliated groove; *Nu*, nucleus; *C*, heart.

tudinal and an internal circular layer, while in the Salps there are band-like rings of muscles embedded in the substance of the body-wall, and effecting not only the renewal of the water used in respiration, but also the movements of the free-swimming barrel-shaped body. A special organ of locomotion is present in the small *Appendicularia* and the free-swimming Ascidian larvæ; it is placed on the ventral surface as indicated by the position of the heart, and consists of a vibratile whip-like caudal appendage supported by a notochordal rod (*urochord*).

The **alimentary canal** begins in all cases with a wide pharyngeal cavity, which functions as a respiratory organ. The anterior mantle opening, which must be looked upon as the mouth, leads into this cavity. The œsophageal opening is placed at a distance from the mouth inside this respiratory cavity, which in the Ascidians has the form of a latticed branchial sac. A ciliated groove bounded by two folds extends along the middle ventral line of the pharyngeal cavity, between the mouth and the opening of the œsophagus. The glandular walls of this ventral groove are distinguished as the **endostyle** (figs. 558 and 559, *End*). It begins with two lateral ciliated arcs, which unite to form a complete ring near the inhalent aperture (mouth), and somewhat in front of the ganglion pass over a small cone projecting into the pharyngeal cavity.

The digestive canal which follows the pharyngeal cavity consists of a ciliated œsophagus, which is usually narrowed into the form of a funnel; of a stomach, usually provided with a liver; and of a small intestine, which bends round, forming a loop, and opens into the cloacal cavity.

There is always a **heart**, which is placed on the ventral side of the intestine and is surrounded by a delicate pericardium. The contractions, which are active and regular, pass from one end of the heart to the other.

The sudden change in the direction of the contractions (discovered in the Salps by Hasselt), by which after a momentary period of rest the direction of the blood stream in the heart is reversed, is worthy of note. The vascular trunks (lacunæ) passing from the heart lead into a system of spaces in the body wall through which the blood passes. In the Ascidians there are also vascular loops in the mantle, in that diverticula of the body wall, containing blood and covered with epidermis, project into the mantle. Two principal channels for the blood are placed in the middle line—one on the dorsal side, and the other on the ventral beneath the ventral groove; they are connected by transverse channels placed in the wall of the branchial cavity. The latter communicate with the blood spaces of the variously-shaped branchia, which is formed by the walls of the pharynx, and over the surface of which the water is continually renewed by means of the vibratile cilia which cover it. In the Ascidians almost the entire wall of the pharynx takes part in the formation of the gill. In these animals the pharynx has the form of a sac with net-like walls—*i.e.*, its walls are perforated by a number of slits, which lead from the pharynx into a chamber which is developed round it. This chamber is derived from the cloacal cavity, and is known as the *peribranchial* chamber. The branchial sac or pharynx is fixed to the walls of the peribranchial cavity along the whole length of the endostyle, and by numerous short trabeculæ which pass from the bars of the branchial network to the outer wall of the peribranchial chamber. In other cases, the number of gill-slits is considerably reduced, and the gill is confined to the dorsal part of the pharyngeal wall (*Doliolum, Salpa*).

**Generative Organs.**—The Tunicates are hermaphrodite; the male and female generative products, however, often attain maturity at different times. The Salps especially, at the time of their birth, have only the female organs, and it is not until later when they are pregnant that the male organs attain maturity. In *Perophora* the testes become mature first, in the *Botryllidæ* the ova. The testes and ovaries lie, as a rule, among the viscera in the hind part of the body. The ovaries have the form of racemose glands, the testes of blind tubes united in tufts. The generative ducts of both sexes open into the cloacal chamber, in which (rarely in the place where the germs originate) the fertilization of the ovum and the development of the embryo takes place. The embryo either leaves the cloacal chamber through the exhalent aperture while still enveloped by the egg-membranes, or is nourished by a sort of placenta and born at a more advanced stage of development (*Salpa*).

In addition to the sexual reproduction, the asexual reproduction by means of budding is very general, and frequently leads to the formation of colonies with very characteristic grouping of the individuals. The budding sometimes takes place on different parts of the body, sometimes is confined to definite places or to a germ-stock (*stolo prolifer*). The colonies thus produced do not by any means always remain fixed; but, as *e.g.*, *Pyrosoma*, may possess the power of moving from one place to another, or, as in the *Salp-chains*, they can swim tolerably rapidly.

The **embryonic development** of the Ascidians presents a great resemblance to that of the lower Vertebrates, and more especially to that of *Amphioxus*. After the completion of the total segmentation a two-layered gastrula is formed, from the ectoderm of which the neural tube is developed. At the same time an axial skeletal structure, like the chorda dorsalis, arises from a double row of endoderm cells. The relative positions of the alimentary canal, the nervous system and the notochord are analogous to those of the Vertebrates.

The **post-embryonic development** of the Ascidians is complicated. The embryos leave the egg-membranes as movable larvæ (Ascidian tadpoles) provided with a swimming organ (tail) and an eye-spot. They swim about freely for some time, and in many cases produce a small colony by budding before becoming fixed. In the *Salps* and

*Doliolum* there is an alternation of generations, which was discovered in the case of *Doliolum* by Chamisso long before Steenstrup. The solitary Salp, developed from the fertilized ovum of the viviparous sexual form remains asexual all its life, but from its *stolo prolifer* chains of Salps are produced, the individuals of which differ considerably in form from the asexual animals and are sexual. In *Doliolum* the alternation of generations is much more complicated, inasmuch as several generations succeed one another in the cycle of development.

All the *Tunicata* are marine animals and feed on *Algæ, Diatoms*, and small *Crustacea*. Many, and especially the transparent *Pyrosomidæ* and *Salpidæ*, are phosphorescent, emitting a beautiful and intense light.

## CLASS I.—TETHYODEA* (Ascidians).

*For the most part fixed Tunicata with saccular bodies. The inhalent and exhalent pores are placed close together, and the branchial sac is large. Development by means of tailed larvæ.*

The body of these animals, as the name Ascidia implies, has the form of a more or less elongated tube or sac with two openings, which are usually close to one another; of these openings the anterior is the mouth and the posterior the cloacal opening. More rarely, as in the *Botryllidæ* and the free-swimming *Pyrosomidæ*, the two openings are placed at a considerable distance from one another at the opposite ends of the body. The mouth can be closed by a sphincter muscle, and in many cases by four, six, or eight marginal lobes (fig. 560). The edge of the exhalent opening, which can also be closed, and which is placed behind the mouth on the neural (dorsal) side, is often similarly divided into four to six lobes. The spacious pharynx which, as a rule, has the form of a latticed branchial sac, contains at some

* Besides the already quoted works of M. Edwards and Savigny, Cf. J. C. Savigny, "Tableau systematique des Ascidies, etc." Paris, 1810.

Eschricht, "Anatomisk Beskrivelse af Chelyosoma Mac-Leyanum." Kjövenhavn, 1842.

Van Beneden, "Recherches sur l'Embryogénie, l'Anatomie et la Physiologie des Ascidies simples." *Mém. de l'Acad. roy. de Belgique*, Tom. XX., 1846.

A. Krohn, "Ueber die Entwickelung von Phallusia mammillata." *Müller's Archiv*, 1852.

A. Krohn, "Ueber die Fortpflanzungsverhältnisse bei den Botrylliden und über die früheste Bildung der Botryllusstöcke." *Archiv für Naturgeschichte*, Tom. XXXV., 1869.

Th. Huxley, "Anatomy and development of Pyrosoma." *Trans. Lin. Soc.*, Vol. XXIII., 1859.

distance from the mouth a circle of usually simple tentacles. On the neural side of the branchial sac is the cloacal cavity which receives not only the water flowing out through the branchial slits, but also the fæces and the generative products. The digestive canal, together with the other viscera, is sometimes placed as in all the simple Ascidians rather to the side of the branchial sac or, as in the elongated forms of the compound Ascidians, simply behind the same, and in the latter case often occasions a constriction of the body, so that Milne Edwards was able to distinguish a thorax and abdomen, or even a thorax, abdomen and post-abdomen.

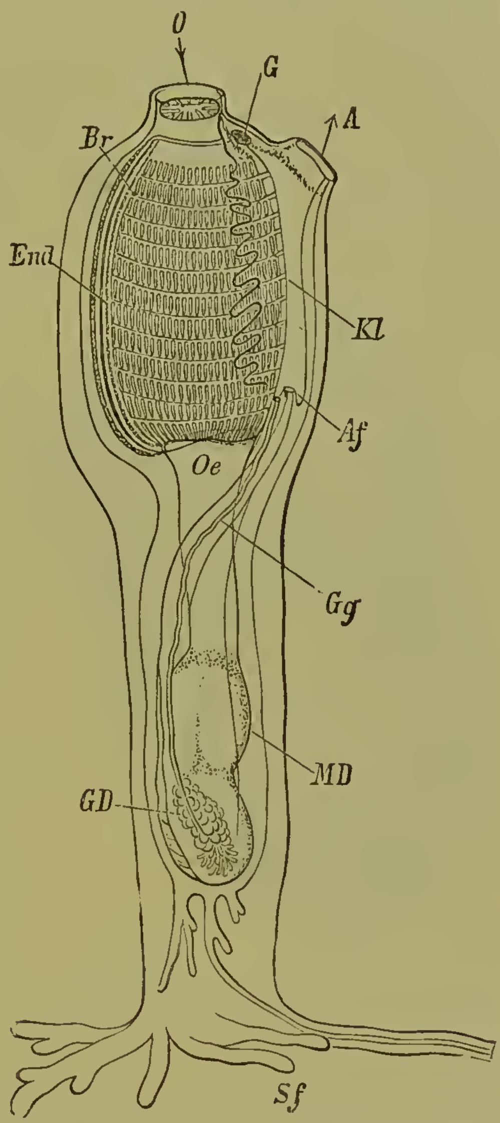



FIG. 560.—*Clavellina lepadiformis* (règne animal), somewhat diagrammatic. *O*, Mouth; *Br*, branchiæ; *End*, endostyle; *Oe*, œsophagus; *G*, nervous centre; *MD*, stomach; *Kl*, cloacal chamber; *A*, exhalent pore; *Af*, anus; *GD*, genital gland; *Gg*, duct of genital gland; *Sf*, stolons.

The Ascidians either remain solitary, and then usually attain a considerable size (*A. solitariæ*), or by budding and throwing out root-processes they produce branched colonies, the individuals of which are connected together by their body walls, and are not embedded in a common mantle covering (*A. sociales*). In other cases (*Synascidiæ*) numerous individuals live in a common mantle; they often have a characteristic arrangement around a common central opening (*A. compositæ*), so that each group has its central cavity, into which the exhalent (*i.e.* atrial) openings lead as into a common cloacal cavity (fig. 561). There are solitary (*Appendicularia*) as well as compound Ascidians (*Pyrosoma*) which can move freely. The solitary *Appendiculariæ* execute the most perfect swimming movements. In their external form they resemble the free-swimming Ascidian larvæ, and like these they have a whip-like swimming tail, which by its undulating movements propels the body forward.

In order to understand the structure of the Ascidians, it will be well to start from these simply organised forms. The most striking character of the *Appendicularia*, next to the possession of the ventrally-placed swimming tail with its notochord-like skeletal axis (*urochord*), consists in the absence of a cloacal chamber for the reception of the excreta. The anus is placed in the middle line of the ventral surface; further, there are two funnel-shaped atrial canals which begin on either side with a strongly-ciliated opening into the pharyngeal sac, and open to the exterior right and left, usually rather in front of the anus. These branchial passages arise as invaginations of the ectoderm, which come into connection with corresponding evaginations of the pharyngeal sac. The introduction of nourishment is regulated by two ciliated arcs, which begin at the front end of a short endostyle, surround the entrance of the pharyngeal sac, and run obliquely towards the dorsal surface, where they unite to form a median row of cilia (composed of two rows of ciliated cells). The latter passes back to the opening of the œsophagus, opposite a narrow ventral ciliated band, which begins at the hind end of the endostyle (fig. 562).

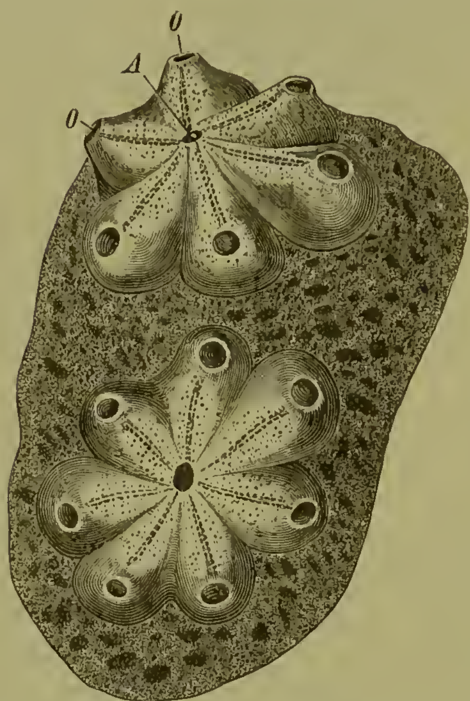


FIG. 561.—*Botryllus violaceus* (after M. Edwards). *O*, Mouth; *A*, common cloacal opening of a group of individuals.

The Ascidian larvæ (*Phallusia*) also have, as Krohn long ago discovered, two branchial slits with corresponding atrial passages. The latter, according to Kowalevski, arise as invaginations of the ectoderm, and later on unite on the dorsal side, and then open by a common cloacal orifice. The ectodermal lining of the atrial cavity, which grows round the sides of the pharyngeal sac, consists, therefore, of a branchial layer which is applied to the pharynx, and a parietal layer which forms the internal lining of the outer wall of the peribranchial or atrial cavity. The atrial cavity extends round the pharynx as far as the sides of the endostyle. The wall of the pharynx becomes perforated by an ever-increasing number of slits, and thus gives rise to the branchial basket-work.

The special form of the branchial basket-work presents numerous modifications of systematic value. Not only is the external surface of the branchial sac attached to the body-wall by trabeculæ and bands,

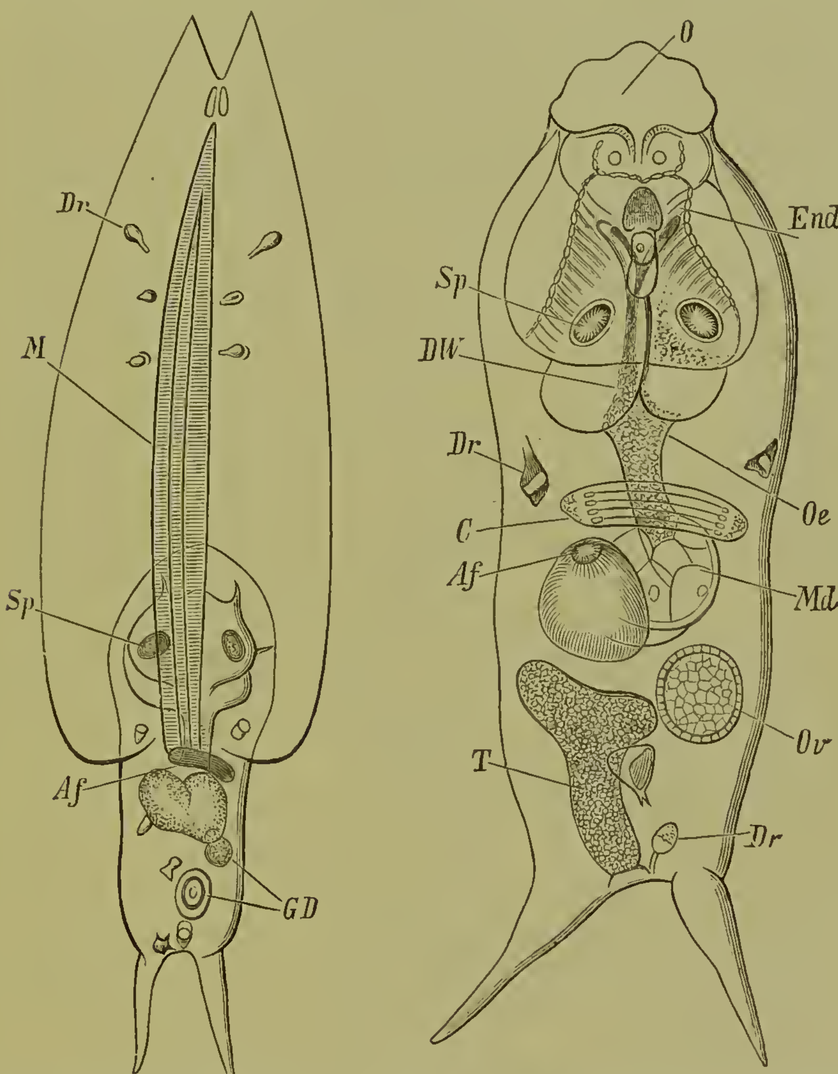



Fig. 562.—*Appendicularia* (*Fritillaria*) *furcata*. *a*, From the ventral side with the tail bent forwards. *GD*, Genital glands; *M*, muscles of the tail. *b*, From the ventral side after the caudal appendage has been removed. *O*, Mouth; *End*, endostyle; *Sp*, the two ciliated passages of the pharyngeal cavity; *DW*, the dorsal row of cilia; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Md*, stomach; *Af*, anus; *Dr*, glands; *C*, heart; *Ov*, ovary; *T*, testis.

through which the blood passes, but the internal surface also often presents folds and projections of varying form. Similarly the branchial openings with which the wall of the pharynx is pierced differ in size, number, and form; they may be rounded, elliptical, or even spirally coiled.

The ciliated arrangements in the perforated branchial sac of the

Ascidians correspond to those of the *Appendicularia*, and consist of the so-called endostyle with the ventral groove and the two ciliated arches.

The ciliated œsophagus is short and funnel-shaped, and leads into a dilated portion distinguished as stomach, whose walls have a layer of large entodermal cells and are complicated by the presence of fold-like projections. Glands, which are sometimes follicular, sometimes composed of bundles of tubes, or of tubes united in a network, lie upon and open into the stomach; they are generally known as * *liver*, but would be better called *hepatopancreas*. The small intestine which follows the stomach is of considerable length, is usually bent on itself (hæmal curvature), and is continued into a short rectum (piriform in *Appendicularia*), which opens into the cloacal chamber. Besides the glands already mentioned, a gland-like organ has been found in many Ascidians: as there is no opening to this gland, the concretions found in its lumen are probably not in general removed. It may, perhaps, be regarded as a kidney, since Kupffer † has shown that uric acid is present in the concretions.

The **heart** is placed on the ventral side of the intestinal canal. It is a contractile tube, each end of which is prolonged into a vessel. In the *Appendicularia* (*Copelata*) the heart is placed transversely. and is pierced by only two slits. The so-called vascular system of the Ascidians consists of a rich net-like system of lacunæ, which cannot, however, be said to have special walls.

The **nervous system** is reduced to an elongated ganglion (cerebral ganglion) placed on the dorsal side of the branchial cavity. From this ganglion nerves are given off, especially forwards towards the entrance of the pharyngeal sac; but unpaired sense nerves and lateral and posterior nerves also arise from it. In the *Copelata* and Ascidian larvæ the cerebral ganglion is more complicated. In these animals it has the form of a cord, primitively containing a cavity, and divided later by constrictions into three regions, and is connected with ganglia in the tail (fig. 563). The anterior conical part of the brain gives off paired sensory nerves to the region of entrance into the branchial sac; on the median globular part are placed the auditory vesicle and a stalked ciliated organ; while the attenuated posterior part gives off two lateral nerves to the atrial canals, and is prolonged

* Th. Chandelon, "Recherches sur une annexe du tube digestive des Tuniciers." *Bull. de l'acad. roy. de Belgique*, Tom. XXXIX., 1875.

† Cf. Besides Kowalevski l.c. Kupffer, "Zur Entwiekelung der einfachen Ascidien." *Arch. für mikr. Anat.*, Tom. VIII. 1872.

Lacaze-Duthiers, *Arch. de Zool. expérim.*, 1874.

into a long nerve, which at the base of the tail dilates to a ganglion, and in its further course forms a number of smaller ganglia (fig. 563). The reduction of the central nervous system to the simple ganglion of the Ascidian begins after loss of the tail, and after development of the branchial basket.

Of **sense organs** the processes of the integument which serve for tactile purposes (the lobes of the oral and atrial apertures and the tentacles), and peripheral nerves, ending in epithelial cells, are most widely distributed. The large ciliated cells on the edge of the mouth of the *Copelata* must be placed in the same category. The ciliated pit is to be regarded as an **olfactory** organ. It consists of a depression in the wall of the pharynx lined with ciliated cells, and is situated in front of the ganglion. According to Julin, it is, together with a gland situated beneath the ganglion, to be regarded as the equivalent of the hypophysis. In the *Copelata* the ciliated pit is elongated and lies on the right side of the ganglion.

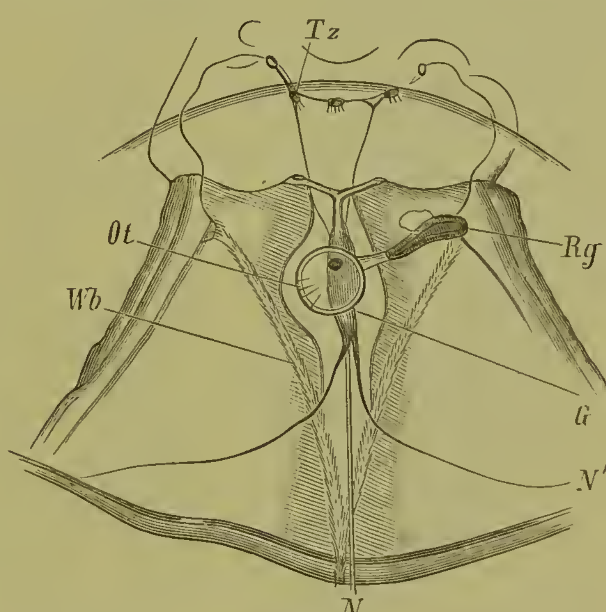



FIG. 563.—Nervous system of *Appendicularia* (*Fritillaria*) *furcata* (after Fol.). *G*, Ganglion; *N*, body nerve; *N'*, lateral nerve; *Ot*, otolith vesicle; *Rg*, olfactory pit; *Tz*, tactile cells with their nerve; *Wb*, arch of cilia.

There is an **auditory vesicle** on the left side of the ganglion in the *Copelata*. This structure, which is developed from a cell of the wall of the ganglion, is found in the Ascidian larvæ, but degenerates soon after the attachment of the larva. Paired auditory vesicles appear in *Pyrosoma* where they are connected with the ganglion by a short stalk.

Masses of pigment which are present with great regularity on the lips of the large openings of the body in the simple and compound Ascidians may be interpreted as **eye spots**. The eye of the Ascidian larvæ, which lies on the ganglion and originates from a part of the neural canal, has a more complicated structure. Later it degenerates, but in *Pyrosoma* it is retained in the adult condition and possesses a lens-like structure.

The **generative organs** are always united in the same animal. The formation of villi on the surface of the egg-membrane by the follicular cells surrounding the ovum is remarkable. The origin of

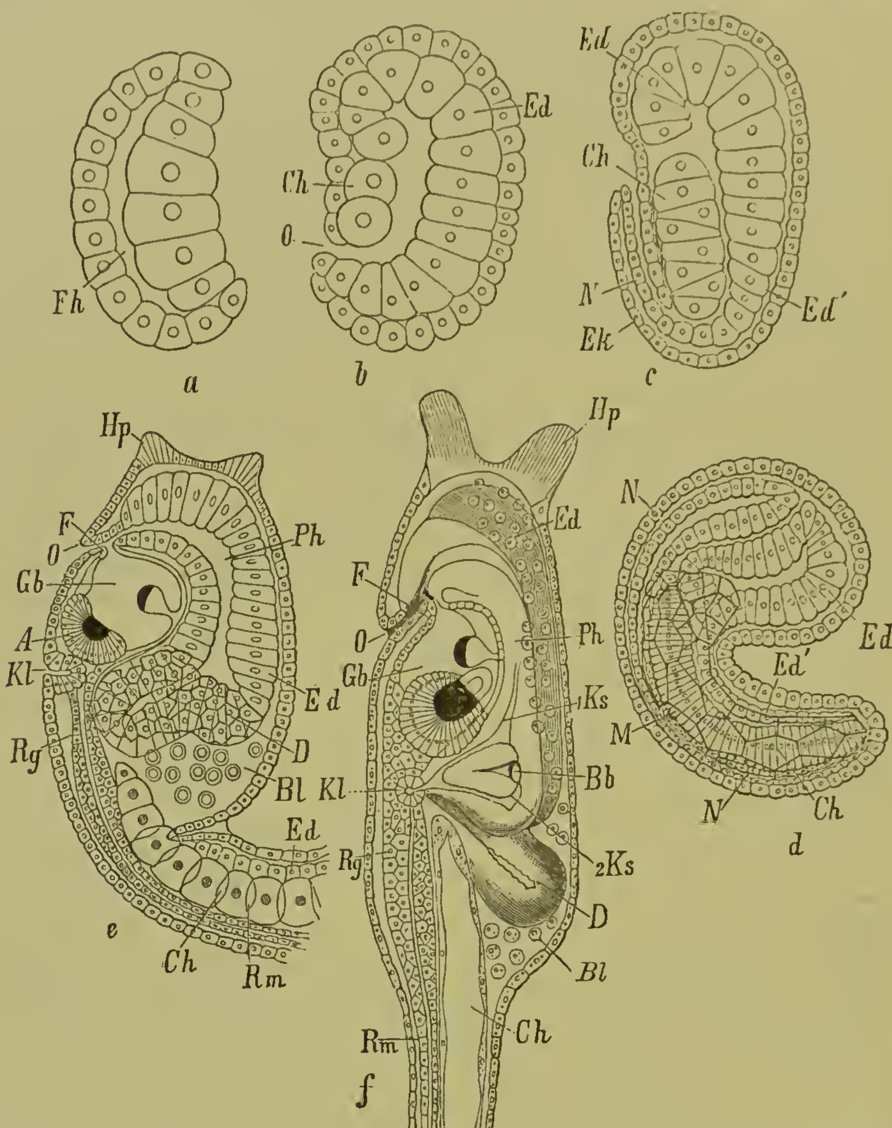



FIG. 564.—Development of *Phallusia mammillata* (after Kowalevski). *a*, Blastosphere beginning to invaginate; *Fh*, segmentation cavity. *b*, Gastrula with blastopore (*O*); *Ed*, endoderm; *Ch*, commencing notochord (urochord). *c*, Later stage. *Ek*, Ectoderm; *N*, rudiment of the still open neural canal. *d*, Stage with body and tail; *Ed′*, endodermal layer in the tail; *M*, muscular cells in tail. *e*, Just hatched larva; *Rg*, anterior swelling of the spinal division of the neural tubo; *Rm*, posterior part of neural tube; *Gb*, dilated anterior part of neural tube (cerebral vesicle), with otolith projecting into it; *F*, opening of *Gb*; *A*, eye; *O*, invagination of mouth; *Ph*, pharyngeal cavity; *Ed*, endostyle; *D*, commencing intestine; *Kl*, atrial opening; *Bl*, blood corpuscles; *Hp*, papilla for attachment. *f*, Two days' larva (only the beginning of the tail is represented); $_1Ks$, $_2Ks$, branchial stigmata: *Bb*, branchial vessel between them; *B*, intestine.

the so-called test-cells (follicle-cells which have migrated inwards) over the substance of the yolk on the inside of the egg-membrane, is also worthy of note.

**Development.**—The segmentation is complete, and leads, according to Kowalevski, to the formation of a blastosphere as in Amphioxus (fig. 564). The wall of the blastosphere then begins to invaginate. After the completion of the invagination the blastosphere becomes a gastrula, with the remains of the segmentation cavity between the ectoderm and entoderm (fig. 564, *Fh*). The mouth of the gastrula is at first wide, but soon becomes narrower and narrower, until finally it becomes transformed into a small opening placed on the dorsal surface at the hind end of the body. A flat median groove on the ectoderm appears along the dorsal side of the already bilaterally symmetrical embryo extending from the blastopore forwards. This groove, into the hind end of which the blastopore opens, is the first rudiment of the central nervous system. It is known as the medullary groove. Its edges project and form the medullary folds which grow round and close the narrow blastopore, and gradually fuse with one another from this point forwards in such a manner as to convert the groove into a canal, the walls of which separate from the external ectoderm and give rise to the central nervous system. This canal is known as the medullary canal: behind it is shut off from the exterior, but communicates with the cavity of the gastrula (archenteron) by way of the blastopore (fig. 564 *c*), which is now known as the neurenteric canal; while in front it remains open for some time. Before these processes are completed two rows of the endoderm cells of that part of the gastric wall which immediately underlies the neural tube become different from the remaining endoderm cells and give rise to the first rudiment of the notochord. The anterior part of the archenteron only gives rise to the pharynx and intestine (fig. 564, *e*), while the posterior part furnishes the cell material not only for the notochord, but also for the muscular system and the blood corpuscles. It may accordingly be asserted that the mesodermal organs in the Ascidians arise from the entoderm, which is as good as saying that the hinder half of the gastral sac has the value of mesoderm.

In the further course of development the somewhat elongated spheroidal body grows out at the posterior and inferior end, opposite to the blastopore and rather to the right,* into a tail-like prolongation, the axis of which is formed by the cells of the notochord (at this period arranged in a simple row). The neural canal is prolonged into

* In *A. mammillata*, according to Kowalevski, on the contrary, this growth takes place at the other end towards the left, and therefore agrees with that of *Amphioxus*.

the tail dorsal to the notochord. The tail, thus developed, becomes bent and applies itself to the side of the body opposite to that on which the nervous system is placed (Fig. 564*e*). Subsequently the skin begins to thicken at the anterior end and gives rise to three papillæ, the future papillæ for attachment. The rudiment of the nervous system, on which two pigment spots provided with refractive organs make their appearance (eye and auditory organ, fig. 564*e*, *f*), is converted at its anterior extremity into a vesicle and is continued above the chorda into the tail (as a cord with a central canal) (*A. canina*).

The branchial sac, still closed and formed of columnar epithelium, lies close to the nervous system: it is separated from the ventral wall of the body by roundish uncoloured cells, which are probably the formative elements of the blood and of the wall of the heart. It has at this period the position and relative size of the future pharynx and its posterior dorsal extremity grows out to form the, at first cæcal, rudiment of the digestive canal (fig. 564 *e*, *D*). The mouth is formed from an invagination of ectoderm on the dorsal surface immediately in front of the anterior end of the cerebral vesicle (fig. 564 *e*, *O*). The cloaca first appears as a pair of dorsally-placed epiblastic involutions (fig. 564 *e*, *Kl*): these ingrowths meet and fuse with the wall of the branchial sac so that two perforations are formed. The embryo surrounded by the mantle (formed of gelatinous substance with amœboid test-cells which have wandered into it) now breaks through the villous egg-membrane and passes into the stage of the free-swimming larva, which presents on the right side of the endostyle the first rudiments of the heart, and possesses all the organs of the later Ascidian except the vessels and the generative glands: in its subsequent development, however, it has to go through a decidedly retrogressive metamorphosis. After the larva has attached itself by means of its papillæ, the tail aborts, the muscles and notochordal sheath degenerate, and the axial string of the notochord contracts. The nervous system with the pigment organs degenerates, and the cavity in it disappears; the branchial sac, on the contrary, increases in size, and the œsophagus, stomach, and intestine proper become more sharply distinct. The mantle then becomes firm, the mouth opening perforates the gelatinous covering and becomes the entrance to the branchial sac; behind the mouth the arch of cilia appears at the anterior end of the ventral furrow, which was formed at an earlier stage and gives rise to the endostyle. The opening to the œsophagus becomes funnel-shaped and more distinct. The first branchial slits soon become visible. The blood with its amœboid corpuscles is already moving in the body cavity beneath the skin, and indeed on the branchial sac, through definite channels in the connective tissue, which connects the walls of the branchial sac with the skin. The water which flows through the slits of the branchial sac is collected in the peribranchial space the opening of which coincides with the cloacal opening.

**Asexual Reproduction.**—In addition to the sexual reproduction, multiplication by means of budding plays an important part, particularly in the *Synascidians.* According to Krohn, Metschnikoff, and Kowalevski, an entodermal layer (arising in *Botryllus* from the covering of the atrium) and mesodermal cells as well as the ectoderm take part in the formation of the buds. Many Ascidians, as *Perophora* and *Clavellina*, produce stolons by budding, and from these new individuals are developed, but the latter are not united together into a compact system. Complex systems of buds are developed in the Synascidians, the individuals of which are embedded in a common cellulose mantle. In some cases the larva may form buds while it is still in the tailed stage (*Didemnum*). In *Botryllus*, a genus which is distinguished by the star-like grouping of the individuals round a common cloaca (fig. 561), and by the rich branching of the blood canals, the larva is simple, and does not, as Sars believed, form a colony. Metschnikoff and Krohn, whose accounts agree, have both shown that the eight knob-like buds of the larva are only processes of the ectoderm and contain diverticula of blood spaces. The young *Botryllus* produces only one bud (first generation), and before the latter is mature perishes without attaining sexual maturity. The bud of the first generation produces two buds (second generation), and dies without reaching sexual maturity. The buds of the second generation each produce two buds, which arrange themselves in a circle, and after the death of their producers form the first system with a common cloaca. In a similar manner new buds are formed, and the older generation dies; the new systems are, however, as transitory and are replaced by others, so that as the stock increases the old generations are continually being replaced by new. In this continuous process of renewal the first-formed generations have only the provisional value of establishing the colony. The later generations alone become sexually mature, and the female maturity is attained before the male. The ova of the still young hermaphrodite generations are fertilized by the sperm of the older; and it is not until after the death of the latter that the testes of the former become fully developed. The young generations, therefore, now have the double task of caring for their own already fertilized eggs and of fertilizing those of the succeeding generations.

### Order 1.—Copelatæ* (Ascidians with larval tail).

Small free-swimming Ascidians of long oval form, with swimming tail; they resemble in the whole of their organization the larvæ of other Ascidians (fig. 562). The anus opens directly to the exterior on the ventral side. The pharyngeal sac is pierced by only two branchial slits. The heart has two slits and no vessels. The ovaries and testes lie in the hind part of the body, close to one another, and are without ducts. The elongated cerebral ganglion is divided by constrictions into three parts; it is connected with a ciliated pit and an otolithic vesicle, and is prolonged into a nerve-cord of considerable size. The latter is continued into the tail, at the base of which it swells out to a ganglion; in its further course it forms several small ganglia, whence lateral nerves pass out. In consequence of a torsion of the axis of the tail, the originally dorsally-placed caudal nerve comes to have a lateral position. The segmentation of the nerve-cord in the tail (as shown by the ganglionic swellings) corresponds to the segmental divisions of the muscles, which recall the myotomes of *Amphioxus*. The large chorda (urochord), which extends along the whole length of the tail, constitutes another point of resemblance to Amphioxus.

Some species have a pellucid gelatinous covering, comparable to a shell. The development of these small animals, which were formerly erroneously held to be larvæ, has been insufficiently investigated.

Fam. **Appendicularidæ.** *Oikopleura* Mertens (*Appendicularia* Cham.), *Oi. cophocerca* Gegbr., *Oi. furcata* Gegbr., *Fritillaria* Fol. The integument forms a hood-like reduplicature in front; the tail one and a-half times as long as the elongated body; the endostyle is curved. *Fr. furcata* C. Vogt., *Fr. formica* Fol, *Kowalevskia* Fol. Without heart and endostyle. Rectum absent. *K. tenuis* Fol, Messina.

### Order 2.—Ascidiæ simplices.†

This order comprises solitary forms as well as branched stocks.

* Cf. C. Gegenbaur, "Bemerkungen über die Organisation der Appendicularien." *Zeitsch. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. VI., 1855.

H. Fol, "Études sur les Appendiculaires du détroit de Messine." *Mém. Soc. de Phys. et d'Hist. Nat. de Génève*, Tom. XXI., 1872.

† Cf. besides Lacaze-Duthiers l.c., C. Heller, "Untersuchungen über die Tunicaten des Adriatischen Meeres, I., II., III.," *Denkschr. der k. Akad. der Wissensch. Wien*, 1874-1877.

The latter, or social Ascidians, are placed on branched root-processes, and have for a time, or permanently, a common circulation. The mantle-parenchyma is usually of transparent hyaline consistency. The body of the solitary Ascidians is far larger and is surrounded by a hard cartilaginous, very thick and usually completely opaque mantle, the surface of which often has wart-like protuberances and incrustations of various kinds (fig. 560).

Fam. **Clavellinidæ.** Social Ascidians, the stalked individuals of which arise from a common branched stolon, or on a common stem. The body is sometimes (*Clavellina*) divided into three regions, like that of the *Polyclinidæ*. *Clavellina* Sav.: *Cl. lepadiformis* Sav., North Sea; *Perophora Listeri* Wiegm., North Sea.

Fam. **Ascidiadæ.** Solitary Ascidians, usually of considerable size. The individuals reproduce themselves, as it seems, only occasionally by budding, and are connected, when they are aggregated together, neither by a common mantle covering nor by bloodvessels. *Ascidia* L. (*Phallusia* Sav.); *A. mammillata* Cuv., Mediterranean; *A.* (*Ciona*) *intestinalis* L., etc.; *Cynthia* Sav., *C. papillosa* Sav., *C. microcosmus* Cuv., *Chevreulius* Lac-Duth., Mediterranean.

The deep-sea Ascidians are very remarkable aberrant forms. *Hypobythius calcycodes* Mos., and *Octacnemus bythius* Mos.

## Order 3.—Ascidiæ compositæ.*

Numerous individuals lie in a common mantle layer, and form soft, brightly-coloured colonies, which have a spongy or lobed form, and not unfrequently form crusts round foreign objects.

In almost all cases the individuals are grouped in a definite number round a common cloaca (*Botryllidæ*), so that round or star-shaped systems with central openings are formed in the colony (fig. 561). The body is sometimes simple and short, sometimes long and divided into two or three regions, and sends out branched processes containing blood into the common mantle mass, so that the latter is permeated by vascular canals.

Fam. **Botryllidæ.** The viscera of the simple body, which is not divided into thorax and abdomen, lie by the side of the respiratory cavity; without lobes round the inhalent opening. *Botryllus stellatus*, Pall.; *B. violaceus* Edw.

Fam. **Didemnidæ.** The viscera are for the most part placed behind the respiratory cavity, and the body is divided into two parts, the thorax and abdomen. *Didemnum* Sav.: *D. candidum* Sav.; *D. styliferum* Kow.

Fam. **Polyclinidæ.** The body of the individual is much elongated, and is

* Besides Savigny, cf. M. Edwards, "Observations sur les Ascidies composées des côtes de la Manche." *Mém. Acad. sc.*, Tom. XVIII., Paris, 1842.

A. Giard, "Recherches sur les Synascidies." *Arch. de Zool. expér.*, Tom. I., Paris, 1872.

Kowalevski, "Ueber die Knospung der Ascidien." *Arch. für mikr. Anat.*, Taf. X., 1874.

divided into thorax, abdomen, and postabdomen. The heart lies at the hind end of the body. *Amarœcium* Edw.; *A. proliferum* Edw.

## Order 4.—Ascidiæ salpæformes.*

Free-swimming colonies, which float on the surface of the sea, and have in general the form of a fir cone, hollowed out like a thimble. They are composed of numerous individuals arranged in the common gelatino-cartilaginous mass in a direction at right angles to the long axis of the colony. The inhalent openings lie in irregular circles on the external surface; the exhalent openings open opposite to them into the space which serves as a common cloaca. The branchial sac is wide and latticed as in the Ascidians. The intestine and ovary are compressed together, and lie in a rounded prominence like a nucleus

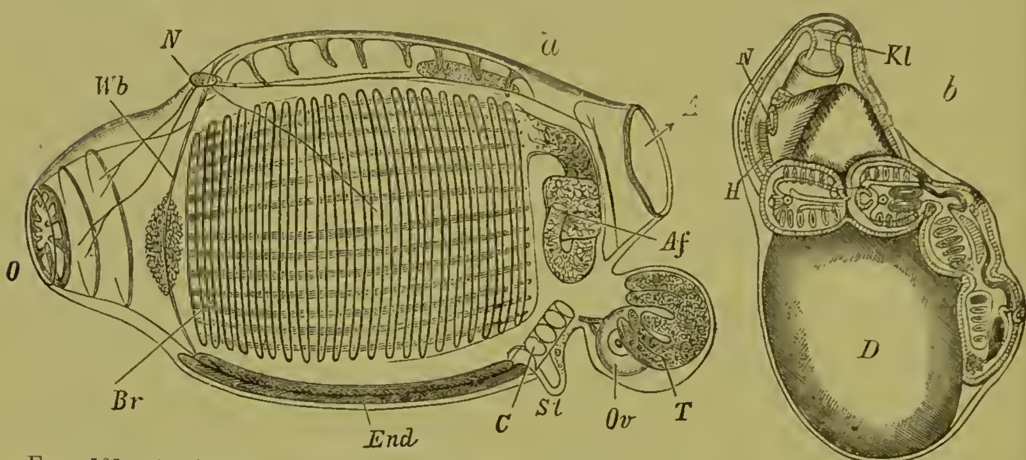



Fig. 565.—An individual of *Pyrosoma*, (after Keferstein). *O*, Mouth; *A*, atrial aperture; *Af*, anus; *Ov*, ovary; *T*, testis; *N*, ganglion; *End*, endostyle; *Br*, branchial sac; *Wb*, arch of cilia; *C*, heart; *St*, stolo prolifer. *b*, Cyathozoid of *Pyrosoma* (after Kowalevski). *H*, Heart; *Kl*, cloaca; *D*, yolk around which are the four individuals (ascidiozoids).

(fig. 565 *a*); near them is the heart. The ovary brings only one ovum to maturity, which is surrounded by a saccular follicle with a long stalk. The stalk constitutes the oviduct, and opens into the cloacal cavity. The eye lies on the ganglion. By the presence of the eye, as well as by the position of the two respiratory openings and of the viscera, by the method of reproduction and the free locomotion, the *Pyrosomidæ* are allied to the Salps.

Budding takes place by means of a stolon, which begins at the hind end of the endostyle, and contains an endodermal process of

* Th. Huxley, "Anatomy and development of Pyrosoma." *Trans. Linn. Soc.*, 1860.

W. Keferstein und Ehlers, "Zoologische Beiträge." Leipzig, 1861.

Kowalevski, "Ueber die Entwickelungsgeschichte der Pyrosomen." *Arch. für mikr. Anatomie*, Tom. XI., 1875.

the latter (endostylic cone). Sexual reproduction and gemmation take place in the same individual.

The egg develops within an ovarian sac into an embryo, which has the form of a stunted Ascidian-like individual (*cyathozooid*), and produces, by budding from a stolon, a group of four individuals (*ascidiozooids*). The peculiar mode of origin of these individuals has been minutely described by Huxley and Kowalevski (fig. 565 *b*). The process of budding, by which the colony is increased, is no less complicated: it takes place on a germ-stock (*stolo prolifer*, fig. 565 *a, St*) placed behind the endostyle. Each commencing bud receives a prolongation of the foundation of the ovary,* as well as of the endoderm.

The *Pyrosomidæ* derive their name from the bright light which they emit. According to Panceri, this light proceeds from a paired group of cells in the region of the mouth.

Fam. **Pyrosomidæ.** These animals were discovered by Péron in the Atlantic Ocean, and were at first regarded as solitary individuals. *Pyrosoma* Pér.; *P. atlanticum* Pér.; *P. elegans* and *giganteum* Les., from the Mediterranean.

## Class II.—THALIACEA.†

*Free-swimming transparent Tunicata with cylindrical or cask-shaped body. The mantle apertures are terminal, and at opposite ends of the body. The branchiæ are band-shaped or lamellar, and the viscera are compressed together into a nucleus.*

The Thaliacea (fig. 566 *a, b*) are transparent, cylindrical or cask-shaped animals, of gelatino-cartilaginous consistency; they are either solitary, or the individuals are united in chains (usually in double rows). They move on the surface of the sea by the rhythmically alternating contraction and dilatation of the branchial cavity. The two openings are placed at opposite ends of the body; the mouth at the anterior end, the atrial at the posterior end, near the dorsal

* [Generative blastema, or indifferent tissue from which the reproductive organs of the parent were developed (Huxley).]

† Compare Th. Huxley, "Observations upon the anatomy and physiology of Salpa and Pyrosoma, together with remarks upon Doliolum and Appendicularia." *Phil. Trans.*, London, 1851.

R. Leuckart, "Zoologische Untersuchungen." Heft II., Giessen, 1854.

C. Gegenbaur, "Ueber den Entwickelungscyklus von Doliolum nebst Bemerkungen über die Larven dieser Thiere." *Zeitschr. für wiss Zool.*, Tom. VII.

C. Grobben, "Doliolum und sein Generationswechsel, etc." *Arbeiten aus dem Zool. Institute in Wien*, Tom. IV., 1882.

surface. The mouth has usually the form of a broad transverse slit, bounded by movable lips, and leads into the large respiratory cavity, which consists of the pharyngeal cavity and the cloaca, and contains the lamellar or band-shaped gill, extended from the dorsal surface obliquely backwards and ventralwards. In *Doliolum* the gill has the form of an oblique partition, which is pierced by two lateral rows of large transverse slits, through which the water flows

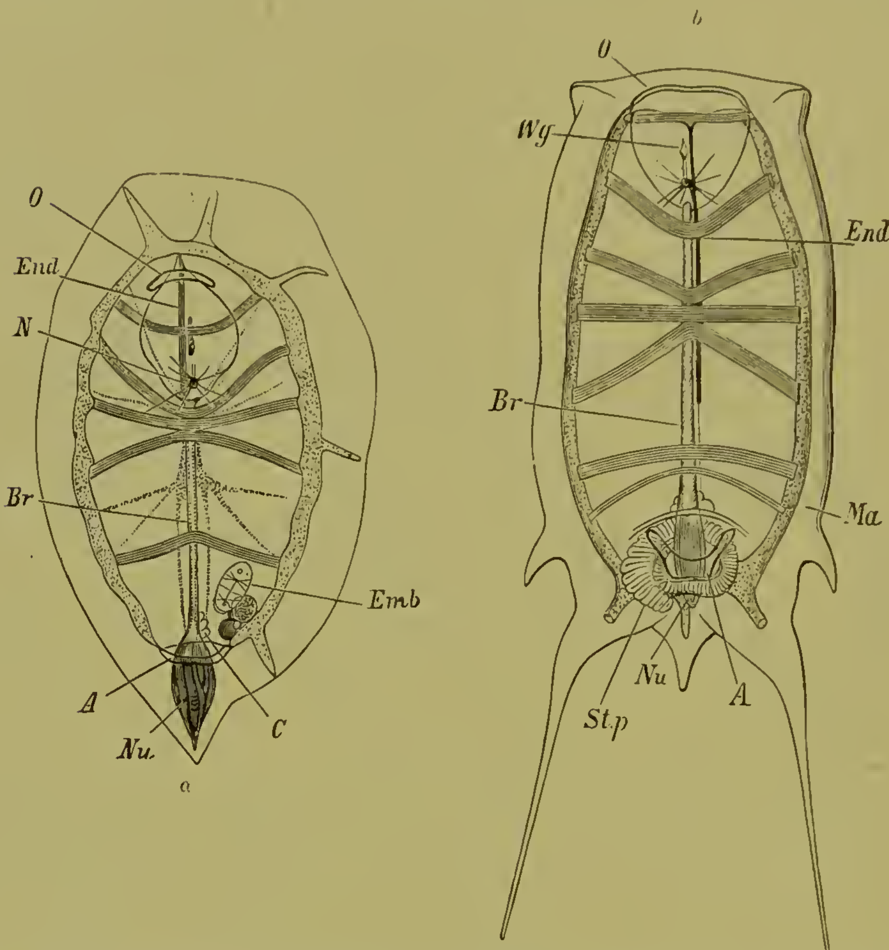



FIG 566.—*a*, *Salpa mucronata*. *b*, *S. democratica*. *O*, Mouth ; *A*, cloacal aperture ; *N*, ganglion ; *Br*, gill *End*, endostyle ; *Wg*. ciliated pit ; *Ma*, mantle ; *Nu*, nucleus ; *C*, heart ; *Emb*, embryo ; *Stp*, stolo prolifer.

from the pharyngeal cavity into the cloacal chamber. In *Salpa* the transverse slits are represented by one very large gill-slit on each side, so that the branchial wall is reduced to a median band (the median part of the gill of *Doliolum*). The two arches of cilia which bound the entrance to the respiratory cavity, and the ventral endostyle (mucous gland) from which a ciliated groove leads to the œsophagus, are placed in the wall of the pharyngeal cavity.

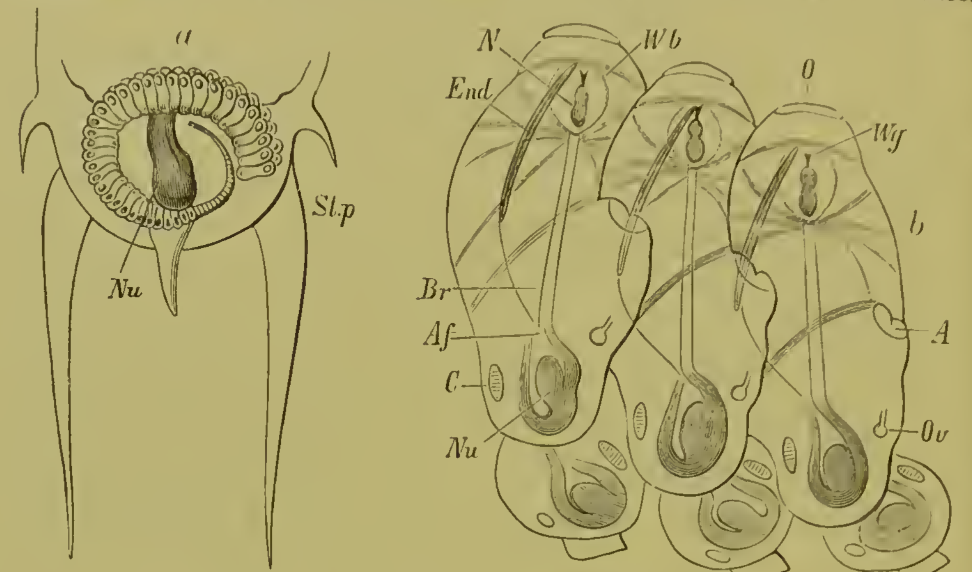
The **digestive canal**, together with the other viscera, the heart and the generative organs, are closely packed together in a brightly-coloured mass, the **nucleus**, at the ventral side of the hind end of the body. The mantle is often thickened round the nucleus so as to form a globular swelling.

The **nervous system**, the **sense organs**, and the **organs of locomotion**, in correspondence with the power of free locomotion, present a higher grade of development than in the Ascidians. The ganglion, with its numerous nerves, lies above the point of attachment of the branchial band, and attains a considerable size. On the ganglion there is usually (*Salpa*) a piriform or spherical process, with a horse-shoe-shaped brownish-red pigment spot and numerous rod-shaped structures, which prove beyond all doubt that this structure is an eye. In other cases (*Doliolum*) there is on the left side of the body an auditory vesicle connected with the ganglion by a long nerve. The median ciliated pit, too, is placed in the respiratory cavity in front of the ganglion. Peculiar sense organs, probably tactile in function, have been observed in *Doliolum* in the lobes of the two mantle apertures and also on other parts of the external skin. These have the form of groups of roundish cells into which nerves enter.

Locomotion is effected by means of broad bands of muscles, which span the respiratory cavity like hoops, and by their contraction narrow it. Part of the water is thus driven out of the cloacal aperture, and the body is propelled in the opposite direction.

The **reproduction** of the Salps is alternately sexual and asexual. The solitary Salps are produced sexually, the chains of Salps asexually. The individuals of the chains of Salps are sexual animals, which form no stolon; the solitary Salps only reproduce themselves asexually by budding on a ventrally-placed stolon. Since these two forms, which differ both in size and shape, as well as in the course of their muscular bands, and in certain features of the gills and viscera, alternate regularly in the developmental cycle of the species, the development represents an alternation of generations, which may even be still further complicated (*Doliolum*). This alternation of solitary Salps and chains of Salps was discovered long before Steenstrup by the poet Chamisso.

The Salps which form the chain are hermaphrodite, but the two kinds of sexual organs are neither developed nor ready to discharge their functions at the same time. Soon after birth the female organs attain maturity, while the testicular cæca are not developed till later, and produce the sperm still later. In *Salpa* the female parts are almost always reduced to a capsule enclosing a single egg and surrounded by blood. This capsule opens into the respiratory cavity on the right side, some distance from the nucleus, by a narrow stalk-like duct (fig. 567 *b*). After fertilization the stalk becomes



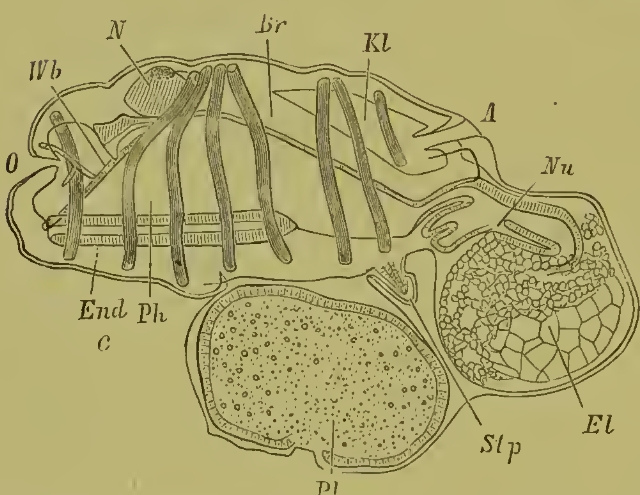




FIG. 567.—*a*, Posterior end of *Salpa democratica*, seen from the ventral side. *Stp*, Stolo prolifer; *Nu*, nucleus. *b*, Terminal portion of stolon = young chain, strongly magnified; *O*, mouth; *A*, cloacal aperture; *N*, nervous centre (ganglion); *Wg*, ciliated pit; *Wb*, arch of cilia; *End*, endostyle; *Af*, anus; *Br*, gill; *Nu*, nucleus; *Ov*, ovary; *C*, heart. *c*, Embryo of *Salpa democratica* (after C. Grobben). *El*, Elæoblast; *Pl*, placenta; *Ph*, pharyngeal cavity; *Kl*, cloacal cavity.

shorter, so that the egg, which is increasing in size, approaches closer and closer to the lining of the respiratory cavity, and forms with its capsule a projecting cone in which, as in a brood pouch, the embryonic development takes place.*

In the course of development a placenta is formed between the embryo

* Besides R. Leuckart l.c. compare Kowalevski. "Beitrag zur Entwickelungsgeschichte der Tunicaten." "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Salpen." *Nachr. von der königl. Gesellsch. der Wissensch.*, Nr. 19, Göttingen, 1868.

W. Salensky, "Ueber die embryonale Entwickelungsgeschichte der Salpen," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom XXVII., 1876.

W. Salensky, "Ueber die Knospung der Salpen." *Morph. Jahrb.*, Tom. III., 1877.

and the mother, and this structure plays an important part in the nourishment and growth of the embryo. In the further development of the organs, which agrees in its general features with that of the Ascidians, the placenta becomes more sharply marked off from the body of the embryo, at the posterior end of which a structure known as the *elæoblast*—the equivalent of the notochord—makes its appearance (fig. 567 *c*).

It is only after a relatively long period that the embryo is born as a small fully-developed *Salpa*, which, however, still possesses the remains of the placenta and the *elæoblast*.

This solitary *Salpa*, which has been produced sexually, grows considerably during its free life, but always remains asexual, while by budding on its stolon it produces a number of individuals united together in chains. This stolon or germ-stock is a process of the body containing the rudiments of the most important organs. Its central cavity is traversed by a stream of blood, and on its walls the buds sprout out. In *Salpa*, as in the Ascidians, the stolon lies on the ventral side, and later enters into a special, open excavation of the body covering (fig. 567 *a*).

On account of the extraordinary fertility of the stolon several groups of buds of different ages are always present one behind the other; they separate successively as independent chains.

In *Doliolum* the reproductive processes are much more complicated, for not only do the sexually produced young undergo a metamorphosis but a new series of generations is introduced into the life history. The eggs are laid, and the larvæ which issue from them are provided with tails and resemble Ascidian larvæ (fig. 568, *e*). They develop into asexual forms which differ from the sexual forms, and are provided with a *dorsal* stolon (fig. 568 *b*, *Std*); the ventral stolon (stolon of Salpa) is rudimentary (*Stv*) (rosette-shaped organ). Two different kinds of buds are formed on this dorsal stolon, viz., *median buds* and *lateral buds* (Gegenbaur). The lateral buds have a slipper-like form, and are without the cloacal cavity; they do not reproduce themselves, but are concerned with the nourishment of the asexual form. The latter as it increases in size loses its gills and alimentary canal, while its muscular system becomes powerfully developed. The median buds develop into individuals, which resemble the sexual animals except that they are without genital organs; they therefore represent a second generation of asexual forms, which become free and produce the sexual generation from a *ventral* stolon.

## *Order* 1.—Desmomyaria (Salpæ).

*Thaliacea* of cylindrical, usually dorso-ventrally flattened form, with band-shaped muscular hoops and thick mantle (fig. 566). The

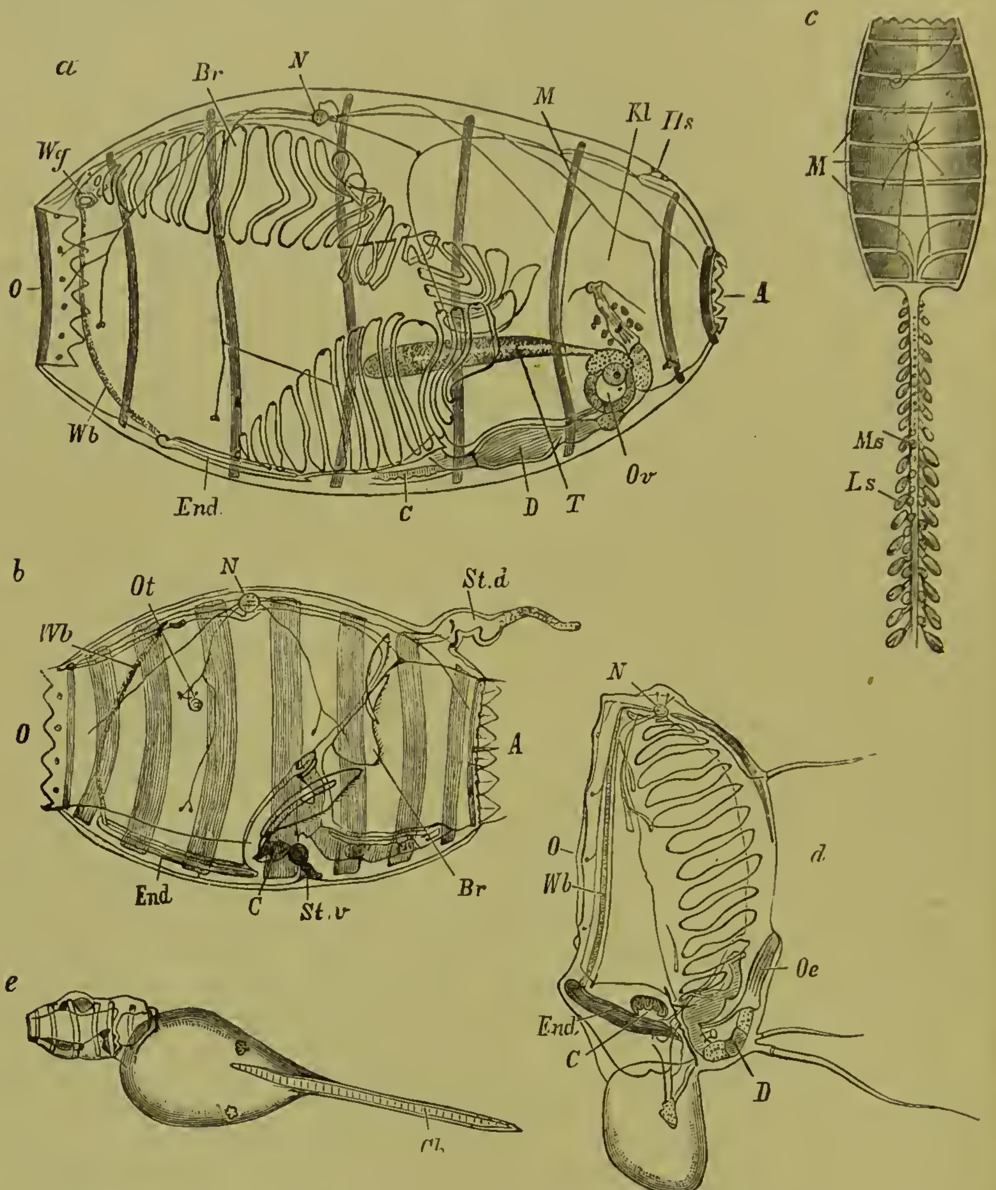



Fig. 568.—The forms of *Doliolum denticulatum* (*a*, *b*, *d*, *e*, after C. Grobben ; *c*, after Gegenbaur). *a*, Sexual animal. *O*, Mouth ; *A*, cloacal aperture ; *Kl*, cloacal space ; *N*, nerve centre ; *Hs*, cutaneous sense organ ; *Wb*, arch of cilia ; *Wg*, ciliated pit ; *End*, endostyle ; *Br*, gills ; *C*, heart ; *D*, intestine ; *T*, testis ; *Ov*, ovary ; *M*, muscular hoops. *b*, First asexual generation. *Stv*, Ventral stolon ; *Std*, dorsal stolon ; *Ot*, auditory organ. *c*, A later stage of *b*, with developed dorsal stolon and aborted intestine and gills, less highly magnified. *Ms*, Median buds ; *Ls*, lateral buds. *d*, Nutritive animal produced from the lateral buds with large mouth and without cloaca ; *Oe*, œsophagus. *e*, Doliolum larva with larval tail ; *Ch*, chorda (*urochord*).

anterior opening is furnished with a valve-like lip which can be shut down. The gill reaches from the ganglion to the oral region, and in consequence of the development of two large lateral branchial slits is reduced to a median band. The viscera are compressed together at the end of the ventral side and form the so-called nucleus. Solitary generations which reproduce themselves by means of stolons regularly alternate with sexual animals which are budded from the stolon and united in chains. The maturity of the female sexual organs precedes that of the male organs. The single egg develops into an embryo which is nourished within the brood-pouch of the viviparous mother by means of a placenta, and becomes a solitary *Salpa* (asexual form) (fig. 567 *c*).

Fam. **Salpidæ.** *Salpa* Forsk., *S. pinnata* Forsk., *S. democratica* Forsk., *S. mucronata* Forsk. (chain form), Adriatic and Mediterranean. *S. africana* Forsk., *S. maxima* Forsk. (chain form), Adriatic and Mediterranean. *S. chordiformis* Quoy. Gaim., *S. zonaria* Pall. (chain form).

### *Order* 2.—Cyclomyaria.

Body cask-shaped, mouth and atrial opening surrounded by lobes, with delicate mantle (fig. 568). The muscles are in the form of closed rings. The dorsal wall of the pharyngeal cavity is formed by a branchial lamella which is pierced by numerous slits, is placed obliquely or is bent and stretched far forwards (*D. denticulatum*). The digestive canal is not compressed into a nucleus. The ovaries contain several eggs. The testes attain maturity simultaneously with the ovaries. In the first asexual generation there is a large auditory vesicle on the left side. The development takes place by means of a complicated alternation of generations.

Fam. **Doliolidæ.** *D. denticulatum* Quoy, Gaim., the gill is bent and is pierced by about forty-five slits. *D. Mülleri* Krohn. The gill is straight, with ten to twelve slits on either side. Mediterranean.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

## Vertebrata.*

*Bilaterally symmetrical animals with an internal skeleton (vertebral column), of which dorsal processes (upper vertebral arches) enclose the nervous centres (brain and spinal cord), and ventral processes (ribs) the cavity in which the vegetative organs are enclosed. There are at most two pairs of limbs.*

The various animals included in this group were first put together

* Besides the works of Cuvier, F. Meckel and J. Müller, compare R. Owen, "On the anatomy of Vertebrates." Vol. I., II., III., London, 1866-68.
C. Gegenbaur, "Grundzüge der vergleichenden Anatomie," 2 Aufl. Leipzig, 1878.
Th. H. Huxley, "A Manual of the Anatomy of vertebrated animals." London, 1871.

by Aristotle, who called them "animals with blood" (vol. I., p. 132); he also put forward the possession of a bony or cartilaginous skeletal axis as a common characteristic. But it was Lamark who first recognised the presence of a vertebral column as the most important character, and introduced before Cuvier the name of *Vertebrata* into the science. This designation, however, in its strict significance, is only an expression for a definite grade of development of the skeleton, which may persist in its first unsegmented condition as the notochord (*Amphioxus*, *Myxine*). The most important characteristics therefore of the Vertebrata do not depend upon the presence of internal vertebræ and of a vertebral column, but upon a *combination of characters which have to do with the general relations of position, the mutual arrangement of the organs and the mode of embryonic development.* We may accordingly define the *Vertebrata* as laterally symmetrical organisms with an axial skeleton, on the dorsal side of which is placed the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord), while on its ventral side lie the alimentary canal with its two openings (oral and anal) and the rest of the viscera and the heart; the latter being placed on the ventral side of the alimentary canal.

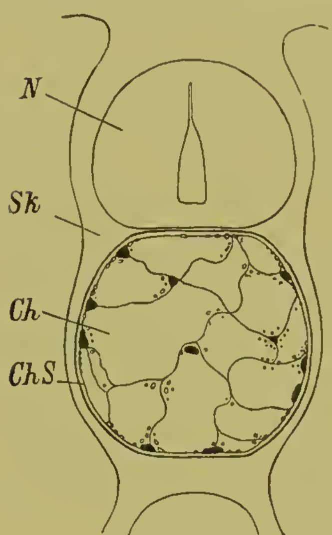


FIG. 569.—Transverse section through the chorda dorsalis (*Ch*) of the larva of *Bombinator igneus* (after Götte). *ChS*, Notochordal sheath; *Sk*, skeletogenous layer; *N*, spinal cord.

**The Skeleton.**—The presence of an internal skeleton is a character of great importance. While in the Invertebrates the firm supporting structures are almost always produced by the hardening and segmentation of the external skin, in the Vertebrates the relation of the hard to the soft parts of the body is reversed. The hard parts are placed in the axis of the body, and send out processes towards the dorsal and ventral surfaces, which constitute respectively a dorsal canal for the reception of the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord) and a ventral arch over the vascular trunks and the viscera. In the simplest and lowest Vertebrates the axial skeleton remains as an elastic cord—the *notochord* (*chorda dorsalis*), which in the higher Vertebrates is present in embryonic life and constitutes the first rudiment of the vertebral column (fig. 569). When the internal skeleton acquires a firmer consistency it, like the external skeleton of the Invertebrates, becomes segmented. This modification is introduced by alterations in the notochordal sheath as well as in the surrounding skeletogenous sheath (fig. 570, *a*). The latter gives rise to cartilaginous or bony rings, which represent the first rudiments of the vertebral bodies. These rings constrict the notochord till they assume the form of biconcave cartilaginous or bony discs, and become connected with cartilaginous or bony arches which are developed round the spinal cord and the perivisceral cavity (fig. 570 *a*, *b*). Each **vertebra** therefore consists of a principal median portion, the **body of the vertebra** or **centrum**, which frequently retains the remains of the notochord in its axis; of a dorsal or neural arch, and a ventral or hæmal arch. The two limbs of the dorsal arch are called **neurapophyses**, those of the ventral arch **hæmapophyses**, and the unpaired median prolongation of each arch is known as the **spinous process** (fig. 570, *D*, *D'*). The transverse processes (**pleurapophyses**) which arise from different parts of the vertebræ, either from the neural arches or from the centra, are not independent structures but merely processes. The **ribs**, on the other hand, are independent lateral bony or cartilaginous rods which are attached either to the hæmapophyses (fishes) or to the pleurapophyses, and embrace the part of the body cavity containing the viscera.

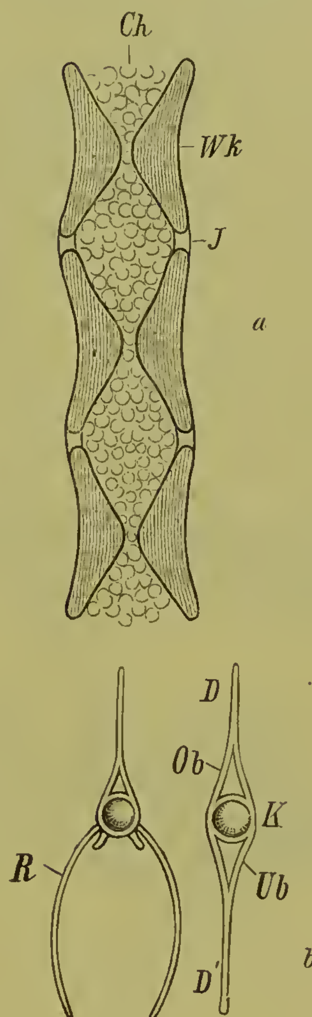



FIG. 570.—*a*, Diagram of the vertebral column of a Teleostean with intervertebral growth of the notochord. *Ch*, Notochord; *Wk*, bony vertebral bodies; *J*, membranous intervertebral portion. *b*, Vertebræ of fish. *K*, Body of vertebra, *Ob*, dorsal arch (*neurapophysis*); *Ub*, ventral arch (*hæmapophysis*); *D*, dorsal spinous process; *D'*, ventral spinous process; *R*, rib.

**Regions of the vertebral column.**—In the higher Vertebrates the primitive homonomous segmentation of the skeleton gives place to a heteronomous segmentation which leads to the origin of a number of regions. In this point as in others there is a parallel between the segmented Invertebrates and Vertebrates. In the first place an anterior region or **head** can always be distinguished from the posterior uniformly segmented region or **trunk** (fig. 571); and this division corresponds with the enlargement of the anterior part of the central nervous system to form the brain and with the first portion of the alimentary canal. The canal formed by the neural arches is here dilated to form the cranial capsule, on the ventral side of which are placed cartilaginous arches known as the visceral arches, of which the anterior pair constitutes the mandibular apparatus, is armed with teeth and surrounds the entrance to the alimentary canal (fig. 571). The mandibular arch is followed by a number of arches which surround the pharynx; the first of these is the hyoid arch and the rest are the branchial arches.

The part of the body behind the head may be divided into two regions: (1) an anterior region—the **trunk** proper—in which the peritoneal or body cavity lined by the peritoneal membrane is placed; the vertebræ in this region bear ribs; (2) a posterior region or **tail**,

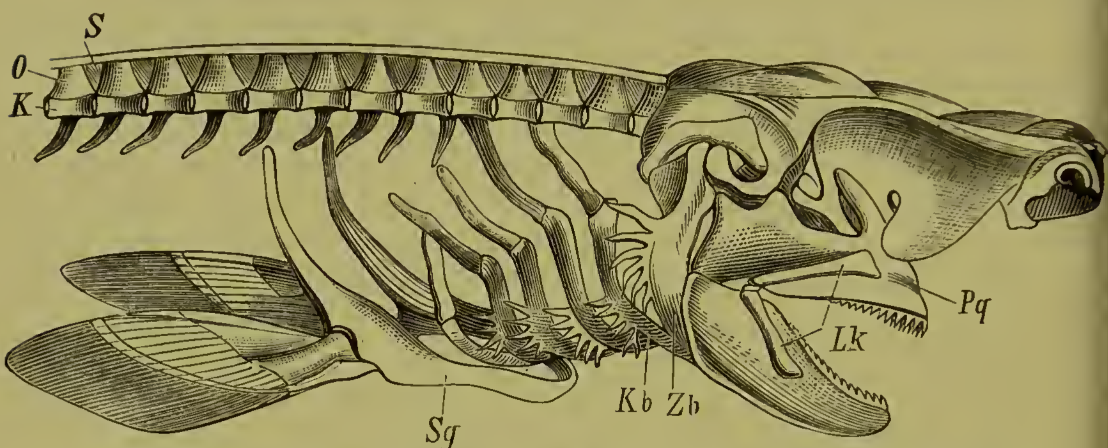



Fig. 571.—Head and anterior region of the vertebral column of *Acanthias* (after Owen). *K*, Body of vertebra; *O*, neural arch; *S*, intercalated piece; *Pq*, Palatoquadrate; *Lk*, labial cartilage; *Zb*, hyoid arch; *Kb*, branchial arch; *Sg*, shoulder-girdle.

in which there is no body cavity, and the hæmapophyses unite with each other to enclose a canal (containing the caudal vessels). This, the most simple form of segmentation of the trunk, is confined to the lower Vertebrates which propel themselves by the flexion and undulatory movements of the vertebral column, and, like the Annelids, live in water, in mud, or in the earth, or even creep after the manner of snakes on the surface of the earth.

In the higher Vertebrates, however, in which, as in the Arthropods, the function of locomotion is discharged by paired appendages, the movements of the chief axis are reduced and in many regions are altogether absent. In the Vertebrata there are only two pairs of limbs, an anterior pair and a posterior pair. In the lower Vertebrata they have the form of fins and play but a subordinate part in locomotion. In such cases, therefore, the vertebral column retains its mobility and the uniformity of its segmentation. It is only in those cases in which the method of locomotion requires a greater expenditure of force on the part of the limbs, and a firmer connection between them and the axial skeleton, and the limbs are more strongly developed, that the vertebral column is divided into successive regions, each of which is characterised by the special form of the vertebræ composing it.

Since the posterior limbs constitute the chief supports of the body, and are the principal seat of the propulsive power, their girdle is usually immoveably fused with a region of the vertebral column, which is distinguished by the firm and rigid connection of its vertebræ (fig. 572). This region, which is situated between the trunk and the tail, is called the **sacral region**, and is formed in the *Amphibia* by a single vertebra, in *Reptilia* by two, and in the higher Vertebrates by a number of vertebræ, the transverse processes of which are specially large and are firmly united to the iliac bones of the pelvic girdle by means of their corresponding ribs (fig. 572, *S*). With the development of the anterior limbs, and the need of a firmer connection between them and the trunk, a more rigid region of the vertebral column makes its appearance in the anterior part of the body. This region is known as the **thoracic** region and its vertebræ as the **thoracic** or **dorsal** vertebræ (fig.

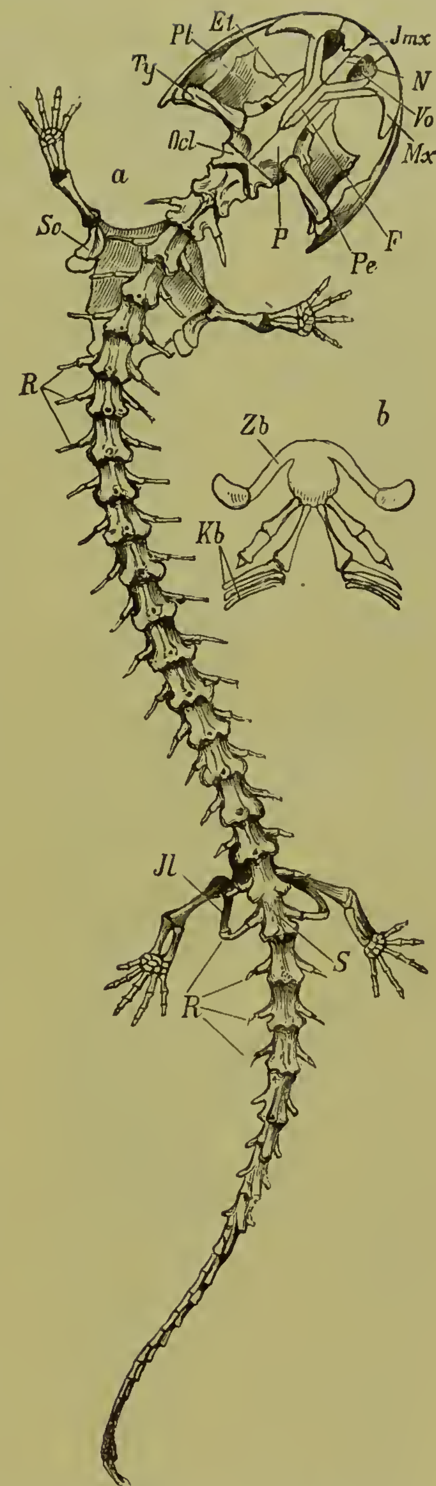



Fig. 572.—Skeleton of *Menopoma alleghaniense*. *Ocl*, Exoccipital bone; *P*, parietal bone; *F*, frontal; *Ty*, tympanic; *Pe*, petrosal; *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, inter-maxillary (præmaxillary); *N*, nasal; *Vo*, vomer; *Et*, girdle bone; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Sc*, pectoral girdle; *Il*, pelvic girdle; *S*, sacral vertebra; *R*, ribs; *b*, hyoid arch (*Zb*), and branchial arches (*Kb*) of the same.

573, *D*). Its ribs are distinguished by their special length, and they are connected ventrally with a system of cartilaginous or bony pieces (**sternum**) placed in the middle line of the ventral body-wall. Between the head and thoracic region on the one hand, and between the thoracic and sacral region on the other, there is a region the vertebræ of which are more movable upon one another. The region which connects the head with the thorax—the neck (**cervical region**)—is characterised by the greater freedom of movement possessed by its vertebræ, on which the rudiments of ribs are retained. The region between the thorax and sacrum—the **lumbar region** (fig. 573, *L*)—is distinguished by the great size of its transverse processes, and at the same time by a greater mobility of its vertebræ which are as a rule without ribs.

Accordingly the trunk of the higher Vertebrates is divided into **cervical, thoracic** (**dorsal**), **lumbar** and **sacral** regions, which are followed by the **caudal** region (fig. 573, *C*).

The **limbs**, which have perhaps been derived from lateral folds of the skin or possibly from parts of the visceral arches, present very considerable differences in their form and function. They may have the form of **legs** and support the body as in terrestrial animals, or serve for flight as the **wings** of aerial animals, or they may be used in swimming, as the **fins** of aquatic animals. It can be shown, however, that in every case they are composed of the same essential parts, the variation, suppression, and reduction of which determines the differences between them.

Just as legs, wings, and fins are homologous organs, so the anterior and posterior pairs of limbs seem to be repetitions of the same arrangement. In both we can recognise the **girdle** for the connection with the vertebral column, the shaft composed of long tubular bones and the terminal region. In tracing the development of the extremities Gegenbaur takes the skeleton of the fin of *Ceratodus* and of the *Crossopterygians* (**archipterygium**) as his starting-point, from which, by the reduction of certain regions and the modification of others, the limbs of the higher Vertebrates may be derived. The **pectoral girdle**, that is the girdle of the anterior pair of limbs, consists of three paired pieces—the dorsal shoulder-blade (**scapula**) and two ventral pieces placed one behind the other, known as the **præcoracoid** (with the **clavicle**) and the **coracoid**. The **pelvic girdle**, or girdle of the posterior limbs, corresponds to the pectoral girdle, and is likewise composed of three paired elements—a dorsal element attached to the sacrum and known as the **ilium**, and two ventral elements which join their fellows in the middle ventral line, and are known as the **pubis** and **ischium**. The limbs are divided into three segments—the two proximal of which are long and contain long hollow bones articulated together, the third segment being shorter and terminal. These segments are called **brachium, antebrachium** and **manus** in the fore-limb; **femur, crus** and **pes** in the hind-limb.

The proximal segments (*i.e.*, the brachium and femur) each contain one bone—the **humerus** (*H*) and **femur** (*Fe*) respectively. The middle segments (*i.e.*, antebrachium and crus) each contain two bones—the **radius** and **ulna** in the former (*R*, *U*), the **tibia** and **fibula** (*T*, *F*) in the latter. The distal or terminal segments (*i.e.*, the manus and pes) each contain a large number of elements placed close together. These elements consist of two proximal rows of bones, known in the hand as the **carpus**, and in the foot as the **tarsus**; of a middle row, known respectively as the **meta-carpus** and **metatarsus**; and of a number of distal bones known as the **phalanges**, and constituting the skeleton of the fingers and toes.

The **skull** varies considerably in form and structure. When the vertebral column is membranous and cartilaginous, the skull likewise consists of a continuous membrano-cartilaginous capsule, which in essential points agrees with the embryonic rudiment of the cranium (**primordial cranium**) of the higher Vertebrates (fig. 571). From this primordial cranium the bony

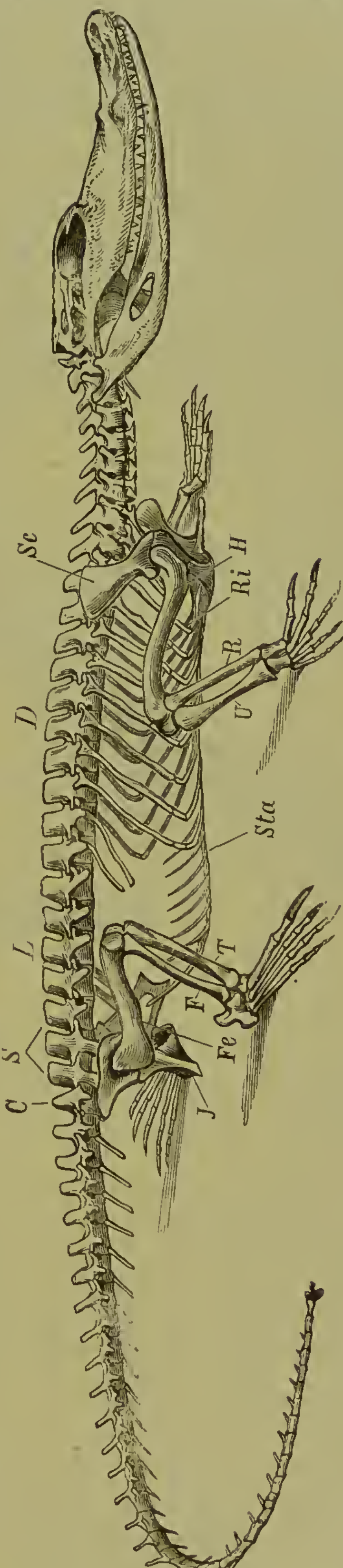



Fig. 573. Skeleton of Crocodile. *D*, Dorsal region; *L*, lumbar region; *Sa*, sacral region; *Ri*, ribs; *Sc*, scapula; *H*, humerus; *R*, radius; *U*, ulna; *Sta*, abdominal sternum; *Fe*, femur; *T*, tibia; *F*, fibula; *J*, os ischii; *C*, caudal vertebræ.

skull* is developed partly by ossifications in the cartilaginous capsule or by ossifications proceeding from the membranous perichondrium; partly by the addition of membrane bones, which gradually supplant the cartilaginous parts.

**Segmentation of the skull.**—It is only when the cranial capsule is bony that any comparison can be instituted between the arrangement of the hard parts of the skull and that of the parts of a vertebra: this comparison has led to the view that the skull is composed of three or four vertebræ or segments. These are from behind forwards, the **occipital, parietal, frontal** and **ethmoid** segments. Each such segment, according to the vertebral theory of (P. Frank) Gœthe and

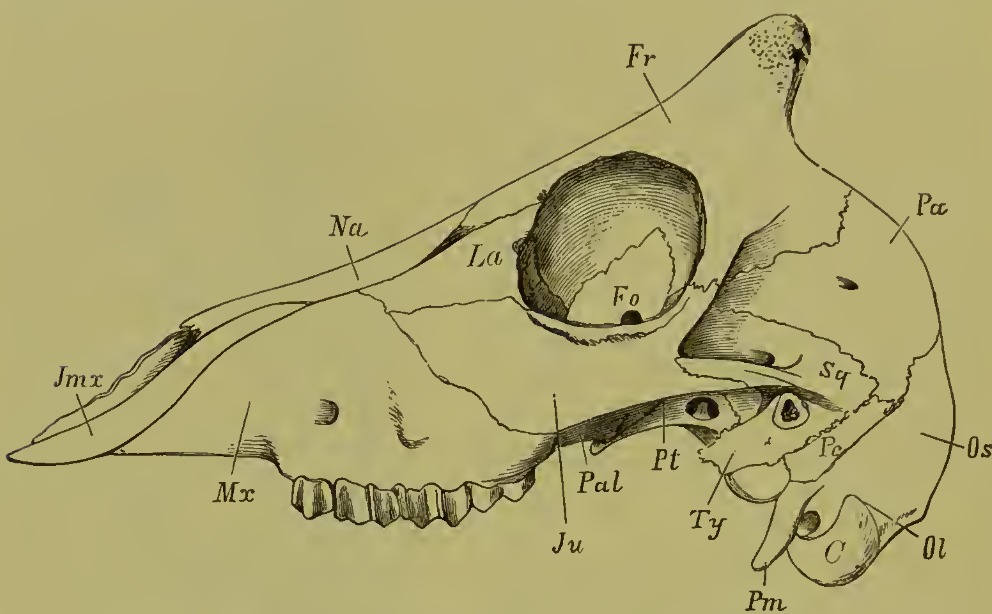



Fig. 574.—Lateral view of a goat's skull; *Ol*, exoccipital bone; *C*, condyle; *Os*, supra-occipital; *Sq*, squamosal; *Ty*, tympanic; *Pe*, petrosal; *Pm*, paramastoid process; *Pa*, parietal; *Fr*, frontal, *La*, lachrymal; *Na*, nasal; *Fo*, optic foramen; *Mx*, maxilla; *Jmx*, inter-maxilla (pre-maxilla); *Ju*, jugal; *Pal*, palatine; *Pt*, pterygoid.

Oken, is supposed to consist of a basal part corresponding to the body of the vertebra, and of a neural arch formed of two lateral pieces and a median dorsal piece (spinous process) (fig. 574). According to this theory the **basi-occipital** bone would correspond to the body of the vertebra, the two **exoccipitals** to the lateral parts of the neural arch, and the **supra-occipital** to the dorsal median parts or spinous process. The bones of the middle or parietal region of the skull consist of a basal bone, the **basisphenoid**, two lateral bones, the **alisphenoids** and two dorsal bones, the **parietals**; the two latter are membrane bones, and complete the arch dorsally. The bones of the

* Compare especially Reichert and Kölliker, Huxley, Parker etc.

anterior or frontal region likewise consist of the basal **præsphenoid**, the two lateral **orbitosphenoids**, and the two dorsal **frontal** bones, which are membrane bones and complete the arch dorsally.

The **ethmoid** may be regarded as representing the body of a fourth or anterior vertebra; it is covered above by the **nasal** bones and below by the **vomer**.

Finally, between these different bones other bones are intercalated, *e.g.*, the **mastoid** and **petrosal** between the occipital and sphenoidal.

Recently essential objections to this vertebral theory have been raised by Huxley and Gegenbaur; and these objections have proved fatal to the theory. According to Gegenbaur, the skull is composed

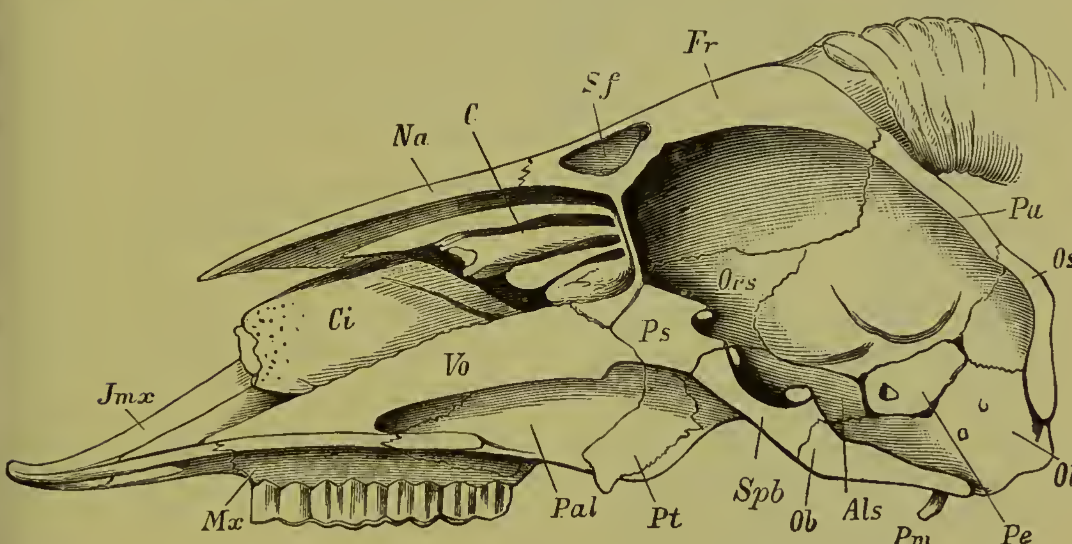



FIG. 575.—Median longitudinal section of a sheep's skull seen from the inside. *Ob*, basi-occipital; *Ol*, exoccipital; *Os*, supraoccipital; *Pe*, petrous bone; *Spb*, basisphenoid; *Ps*, præsphenoid; *Als*, alisphenoid; *Ors*, orbitosphenoid; *Pa*, parietal; *Fr*, frontal; *Sf*, frontal sinus; *Na*, nasal; *C*, turbinal; *Ci*, inferior turbinal; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Pal*, palatine; *Vo*, vomer; *Mx*, maxilla; *Jmx*, inter-maxilla (pre-maxilla).

of a much greater number of segments corresponding to the primary visceral arches, and the resemblances between the cranial bones, especially of the median and anterior regions of the skull, and the parts of a vertebra are entirely secondary.

The rest of the hard parts, which are more or less intimately connected with the skull, consist of a number of arches lying one behind the other, and surrounding the entrance into the visceral cavity.

The anterior of these—the maxillo-palatine apparatus—forms the facial region. In its simplest form it consists of two moveable pieces (**palato-quadrate** and **lower jaw**), which are attached by the hyomandibular (the dorsal element of the second arch) to the auditory region of the skull (fig. 571, *H*). The upper piece of the first arch, likewise, is sometimes more or less firmly applied along its whole length to the skull, and when ossification takes place it becomes divided on either side into an outer and inner series of pieces, the first including the **jugal**, the **maxilla**, and **præmaxilla**, the latter the **pterygoid** and **palatine** (fig. 575). These series of bones form the upper jaw and the roof of the mouth.

The lower jaw, which is primitively a simple cartilaginous arch (Meckel's cartilage), also becomes replaced on either side by a number of bones (**articulare, angulare, dentary**, etc.), of which the dentary usually bears teeth and is the largest.

The visceral arches which follow the mandibular arch and are also connected with the skull are developed in the wall of the pharynx, to which they bear the same relation that the ribs do to the thorax and body cavity. The anterior arch (**hyoid** arch), the upper portion of which in the lower Vertebrates serves as the suspensorium of the jaw (**hyomandibular**), forms a support for the tongue, and the arch of each side meets a median basal piece (*os linguale*). The latter is followed by a series of median unpaired bones (*copulæ*), which connect the following arches (branchial arches). The branchial arches are most developed in the aquatic Vertebrates, in which they are separated by the pharyngeal slits, and serve to bear the gills. In the air-breathing Vertebrates they become more and more reduced, and finally are only discernible in imperfect number as embryonic structures. The remains of the whole apparatus form the body and cornua of the hyoid bone.

**Integument.**—The external skin of the Vertebrates is divided into two very distinct layers, the epidermis externally and the cutis internally. The latter is principally composed of a fibrous connective tissue, with which muscular elements come into relation, without however forming a complete dermal-muscular envelope as in the Annelids.

When the dermal muscles have a considerable extension over large surfaces, they serve exclusively to move the skin and its manifold appendages, but are not used for the movements of the trunk, which are produced by a highly-developed muscular system surrounding the skeleton. The cutis is continued into a deeper, more or less loose layer, the subcutaneous connective tissue, but its more superficial part is tolerably compact, and contains not only various pigments, but also blood-vessels and nerves. At its upper surface the cutis is raised into small conical papillæ, which are covered by the epidermis and are of importance not only as special sense organs (tactile organs), but also for the production of various hard structures (scales, teeth). The epidermis is composed of several layers of cells, of which the upper and older layers are cast off, while the lower layers (*stratum Malpighi*) are actively growing and serve as a matrix for the continual renewal of the upper layers, and sometimes contain the cutaneous pigments. Some of the appendages of the skin are epidermal structures, in which case they arise as the result of peculiar and independent growths of the epidermis (hairs and feathers). Some are derived from ossifications of the dermal papillæ which sometimes may even give rise to a hard and complete dermal armour (scales of Fishes and Reptiles, carapace of Armadillos and Tortoises).

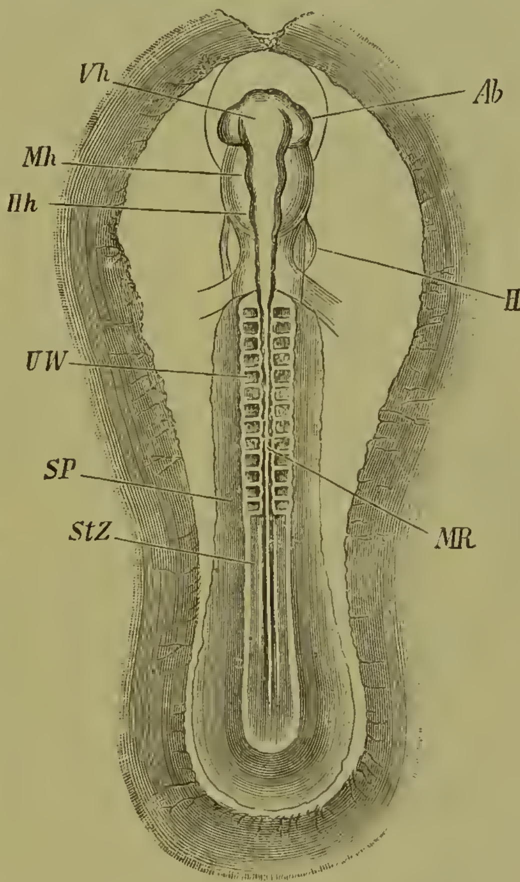


FIG. 576.—Embryo chick at end of second day (after Kölliker). *Vh*, Fore-brain; *Mh*, mid-brain; *Hh*, hind-brain; *Ab*, optic vesicle; *MR*, medullary canal; *UW*, protovertebræ; *StZ*, vertebral plates of the mesoderm; *SP*, lateral mesoblastic plates; *H*, heart.

The **central nervous system** is placed in the dorsal cavity formed by the upper arches of the vertebræ; it consists essentially of a cord—the *spinal cord*—the anterior enlarged and more differentiated part of which is distinguished as the *brain*. The spinal cord contains a narrow central canal, which is continued into the brain, where it widens out and forms the **ventricles** of the brain. The brain and spinal cord are, therefore, parts of the same organ. The brain seems to be the seat of the intellectual faculties and the central organ of the sensory apparatuses; while the spinal cord conducts the impulses to and from the brain, and in particular is the centre of reflex movements, but it also contains the centres of certain automatic actions. The mass of the brain and that of the spinal cord increase as might be expected, as the grade of life is higher. They increase, however, in an unequal ratio, for the brain soon preponderates over the spinal cord. The lower Vertebrates with cold blood have a relatively small brain, the mass of which is still considerably smaller than that of the spinal cord. In the warm-blooded Vertebrates, on the other hand, this proportion is reversed, and the more markedly, the higher the organisation and grade of life of the animal in question.

The **spinal nerves** arise in pairs from the spinal cord: each nerve has two roots—a dorsal sensory root and a ventral motor root. They correspond in number with the vertebræ, between which they pass out, so that the spinal cord repeats in a general manner the segmentation of the vertebral column.

In the brain the arrangement of the *nerves* presents several complications which are further increased by the origin of two sensory nerves—the olfactory and optic. In spite of the differences in form

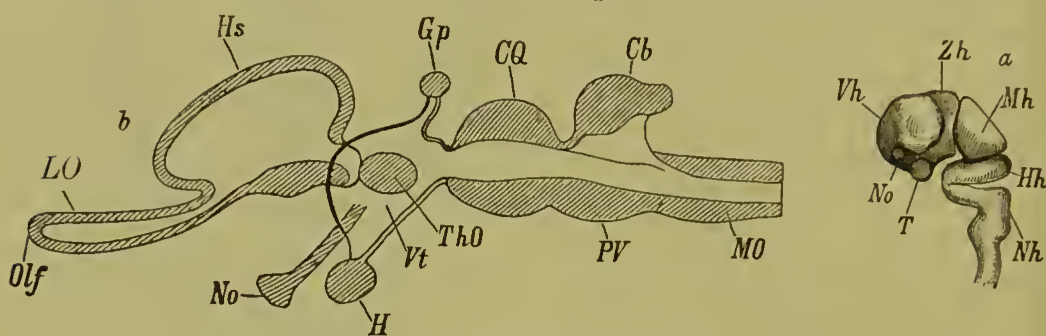



FIG. 577.—*a*. Brain and anterior part of the spinal cord of a human embryo seen from the side (after Kölliker). *Vh*, Fore-brain; *Zh*, thalamencephalon; *Mh*, mid-brain: *Hh*, hind-brain; *Nh*, medulla oblongata; *T*, anterior ventral end of the thalamencephalon; *NO*, optic nerve. *b*. Diagrammatic longitudinal section through a vertebrate brain (after Huxley). *Hs*, Hemispheres; *LO*, olfactory lobes; *Olf*, olfactory nerve; *ThO*, optic thalamus; *Vt*, third ventricle; *No*, optic nerve; *H*, pituitary body (hypophysis); *Gp*, pineal gland; *CQ*, corpora quadrigemina; *Cb*, cerebellum; *MO*, medulla oblongata; *PV*, pons Varolii.

and structure presented by the brain, three principal regions which correspond to the three vesicles found in the embryo can always be distinguished (fig. 576). The anterior vesicle (fore-brain, fig. 576, *Vh*) corresponds to the *cerebral hemispheres* and the *optic thalami* (fig. 577, *Hs*, *ThO*), the middle vesicle (mid-brain, *Mh*) to the *corpora quadrigemina* (fig. 577, *C Q*), and the posterior vesicle (hind-brain, fig. 576, *Hh*) to the *cerebellum* and *medulla oblongata* (fig. 577, *Cb*, *MO*). The anterior vesicle, however, is again divided into two parts—an anterior bilobed part, which constitutes the cerebral hemispheres and contains the lateral ventricles, and a posterior unpaired part which constitutes the so-called thalamencephalon with the thalami optici and the parts surrounding the third ventricle (fig. 577). The third cerebral vesicle is also divided into two parts—anteriorly the cerebellum, and posteriorly the medulla oblongata.

The **sense organs** present the following arrangement. The anterior is the **olfactory** organ, which consists of a pit usually paired, exceptionally unpaired (Cyclostomes); the nerves which pass to these pits arise from the fore-brain and are often swollen at their origin into special lobes (olfactory lobes). In aquatic animals which breathe by gills the nasal cavity consists with rare exceptions (*Myxine*) of a blind sac. In all lung-breathing Vertebrates, on the contrary, it communicates with the cavity of the mouth by the nasal passages, and serves for the entrance and exit of the pulmonary air.

Next come the **eyes** with the optic nerves which arise from the thalamencephalon and mid-brain. They are always paired (for the structure of the eye *vide* p. 73, vol. i.). In *Amphioxus* alone they are represented by an unpaired pigment spot placed on the anterior end of the central nervous system.

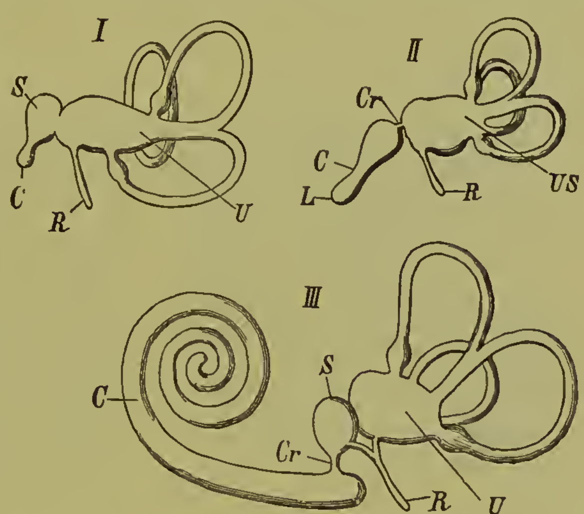



Fig. 578.—Diagram of the auditory labyrinth (after Waldeyer). *I*, of fish; *II*, of bird; *III*, of mammal; *U*, utricle with the three semicircular canals; *S*, saccule; *US*, alveus communis; *C*, cochlea; *L*, lagena; *Cr*, canalis reuniens; *R*, aquæductus vestibuli.

The **auditory** organ, the nerve of which belongs to the hind-brain (probably derived from the sensory root of a spinal-like cranial nerve), is entirely absent in *Amphioxus*. In its simplest form it is a membranous sac (membranous labyrinth) containing fluid and otoliths. The posterior part of this sac is usually prolonged into three semi-circular canals, while the anterior part, which in many cases is separated as the *saccule*, gives off a prolongation which forms the *cochlea* (fig. 578, *S*, *C*.).

The sense of **taste** is located in the palate and the root of the tongue. The organs of taste consist of peculiarly-modified groups of epithelial cells (taste buds), and are supplied by a spinal-like cerebral nerve (*glossopharyngeal*). The general sensibility, which is distributed over the whole surface of the body, and the tactile sense are also connected with the terminations of the sensory fibres of spinal nerves.

In addition to the cerebro-spinal nervous system there is (except in *Amphioxus* and the *Cyclostomes*) a special visceral nervous system

—the **sympathetic**. This is formed by special branches of the spinal nerves and spinal-like cranial nerves, which are connected with special ganglia and give off nervous plexuses to the viscera (fig. 80).

The organs of nourishment, circulation, and reproduction are placed in the body cavity which extends beneath (ventral to) the skeletal axis. The **digestive canal** is a more or less elongated tube which in the region of the skull is encircled by the visceral arches; it begins with the mouth and ends with the anus, which latter is placed on the ventral surface at various distances from the hinder end of the body (according to the length of the caudal region of the vertebral column). The alimentary canal is invested in the greater part of its course by a fold of the peritoneum which lines the body cavity, and is fastened to the under surface of the vertebral column by the two lamellæ of this fold, which are closely applied to one another and form the mesentery. As a rule the alimentary canal is much longer than the distance between the mouth and anus, and therefore forms more or less numerous coils in the body cavity.

The digestive canal is almost always divided into three regions, the œsophagus and stomach, the small intestine with liver and pancreas, and the large intestine. The œsophagus always begins with a buccal cavity, on the floor of which a muscular fold, the tongue, projects. Although this organ, which is richly supplied with nerves, is in general rightly regarded as an organ of taste, it nevertheless plays a considerable part in the reception of the food, and may even in some cases altogether lose its importance as an organ of taste. The buccal cavity, except in *Amphioxus* and the *Cyclostomes,* is enclosed by the skeletal arch known as the maxillo-palatine apparatus and the lower jaw, of which the latter is always capable of powerful movements, while the parts of the former are either more or less firmly united together and attached to the bones of the skull, or are capable of movement on the latter. The two jaws, unlike those of the Arthropoda, work upon one another in the direction from below upwards. They are usually furnished with teeth. The teeth are derived from ossified papillæ (**dentine**) of the mucous membrane of the mouth (fig. 579), which are covered with an epidermal structure—the **enamel**; they are either directly fused with the bones of the jaw or inserted into special alveoli in the latter. The teeth in the higher Vertebrates are confined to the upper and lower jaws, but in the lower Vertebrates they may appear on all the bones which surround the buccal cavity. Teeth are, however, often altogether absent. In Birds and Tortoises they are replaced by a horny covering of the sharp edges of the jaws (beak), and certain toothless Whales bear horny plates (the so-called whalebone) on their palate.

In almost all cases the alimentary canal is provided in its different regions with independent glands which mix their secretion with its contents. In the cavity of the mouth the saliva secreted by a greater or less number of salivary glands is mingled with the food. In many aquatic animals these salivary glands may be reduced or be wholly absent. Into the first part of the small intestine the bile and the secretion of the pancreas, which is of great importance for the digestion of the food, is poured. The bile is secreted by the liver—a large gland through which the venous blood returning from the viscera passes on its course to the heart (portal circulation). In *Amphioxus* the liver is represented by a simple cæcal diverticulum of the intestine. In *Amphioxus* and some other fishes the pancreas is wanting. The small intestine in which the juices are absorbed is distinguished not only by its great length—it is in fact this portion of the alimentary canal which is arranged in coils—but also by the presence of internal folds and papillæ which considerably increase the extent of absorbing surface. The terminal region (large intestine, rectum) of the digestive canal is principally distinguished by its width and its powerful muscles.

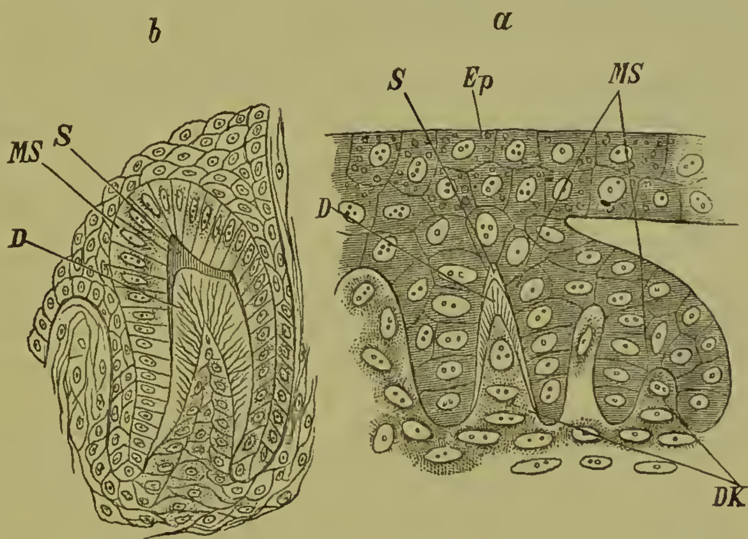



Fig. 579. —The development of the tooth in *Triton* (after O. Hertwig). *a*, The first stages of the development of a tooth; on the right hand is the earliest rudiment. *b*, Later stage of development. *DK*, papilla of the cutis which later becomes the dentine of the tooth *MS*, enamel membrane (epithelial growth which forms the enamel); *D*, dentine; *S*, enamel; *Ep*, epithelium of the mouth.

Special **respiratory organs**, as lungs or gills, are always present. The gills usually consist of double rows of lancet-shaped lamellæ, which are arranged on the sides of the pharynx behind the mandibular arch, and except in the *Cyclostomes* are borne by visceral arches. Between these arches there are always narrower or wider slit-like openings, which lead directly into the pharynx and allow the water which bathes the gills and serves for respiration to pass from the pharynx into the branchial cavity. On the external side the gills are often protected by a cutaneous fold or by an operculum, at the lower or posterior margin of which there is a long slit for the passage outwards of the water from the branchial cavity. The gills may, however, project as uncovered external appendages (external gills of Amphibians and Selachian embryos).

In the lower Vertebrata lungs and gills may coexist in the same animal, and in fishes the lungs are represented by a morphologically equivalent organ—the swimming bladder. Lungs, however, in their more complete development are only found in the higher and for the most part warm-blooded Vertebrates. In their simplest form they appear as two sacs filled with air and opening by a common air passage (*trachea*) into the pharynx. The walls of the pulmonary sacs contain the respiratory capillaries; their surface is usually increased by folds and projections which give them the appearance of a spongy organ or of an organ traversed by tubes. The two lungs often extend far into the body cavity, but in the higher Vertebrates they are confined to the anterior part of the latter which may be more or less completely separated off from the hinder part of the body cavity by a transverse partition—the **diaphragm**—and is then called the thoracic cavity.

Aerial respiration also requires a continual change of the medium serving for respiration; the exchange of the used-up air saturated with carbonic acid gas for the atmospheric air rich in oxygen. This exchange is effected by various mechanical arrangements on which the so-called respiratory movements are dependent. These movements take place in all those Vertebrates which breathe by means of lungs, but are most complete in the Mammalia, in which they consist in alternating rhythmical contractions and dilatations of the thorax.

At the entrance of the trachea and in connection with the organs of respiration is the **vocal organ (larynx)**, which is usually formed by a modification of the upper portion of the trachea. The larynx contains vocal chords, and opens into the pharynx by a narrow slit (*glottis*) which is usually capable of being closed by an epiglottis.

The **circulatory** organs are in close relation with the respiratory organs. The vascular system is always closed and contains red blood (except in *Amphioxus* and the *Leptocephalida*, where the blood is white). The red colour of the blood, which was formerly held to be the essential character of blood (Aristotle), is due to the presence of an enormous number of red blood corpuscles, which are flat, disc-shaped globules, contain the colouring matter (**hæmoglobin**) and carry the oxygen to the tissues. In addition to the red blood-corpuscles there are small colourless cells in the blood—the amœboid white blood-corpuscles (vol. i., fig. 19).

Except in *Amphioxus,* in which the larger vascular trunks pulsate, a definite part of the vascular system is always developed to form a heart. The heart lies in the anterior part of the body cavity, and is primitively placed exactly in the middle line. It has a conical shape and is enclosed in a pericardium. The position of the principal vessels and their connection with the heart are in the simplest case as follows: A large artery—the dorsal aorta—runs along the vertebral column and gives off numerous lateral branches, corresponding to the segmentation of the vertebral column, to the right and left. Beneath this there is in the caudal region, an unpaired vein—the caudal vein,—in the body cavity on the contrary a pair of veins—the inferior cardinal veins. These veins receive their blood from lateral venous branches which proceed directly from the capillary network of the arterial branches. Another principal vein—the vena cava inferior—separated from the cardinal veins by the hepatic portal system, and connected with two superior cardinal veins, conveys the venous blood back to that portion of the heart which is known as the auricle. From the auricle the blood flows into the the muscular ventricle and is forced thence into an ascending artery (*aorta ascendens* or cardiac aorta). The latter divides into lateral arterial arches which pass towards the dorsal side and unite beneath the vertebral column to form the anterior part of the dorsal aorta (*aorta descendens*) (vol. i., fig. 57).

This system of the aortic arches is, however, complicated in various ways by the insertion of the respiratory organs in the course of the circulation (compare vol. i., p. 63 *et seq*).

In all Vertebrates there is a system of **lymphatic** vessels. These are a special part of the vascular system and contain a clear nutritive fluid (chyle and lymph) which is filled with colourless corpuscles (lymph corpuscles). They conduct the lymph (containing plastic materials for the renewal of the parts of the blood which have been consumed in metabolism) to the blood. The principal trunk of the lymphatic system (the thoracic duct) runs along the vertebral column and in the higher Vertebrates opens into the upper part of the vena cava superior. In the lower Vertebrates there are several communications between the lymphatic and vascular systems. Special gland-like organs—the so-called **vascular glands, spleen**—are inserted into the course of the lymphatic vessels.

Urinary organs or **kidneys** are generally present. They have the form of paired glands and lie beneath the vertebral column. The first rudiments of the kidneys appear in the form of organs resem-

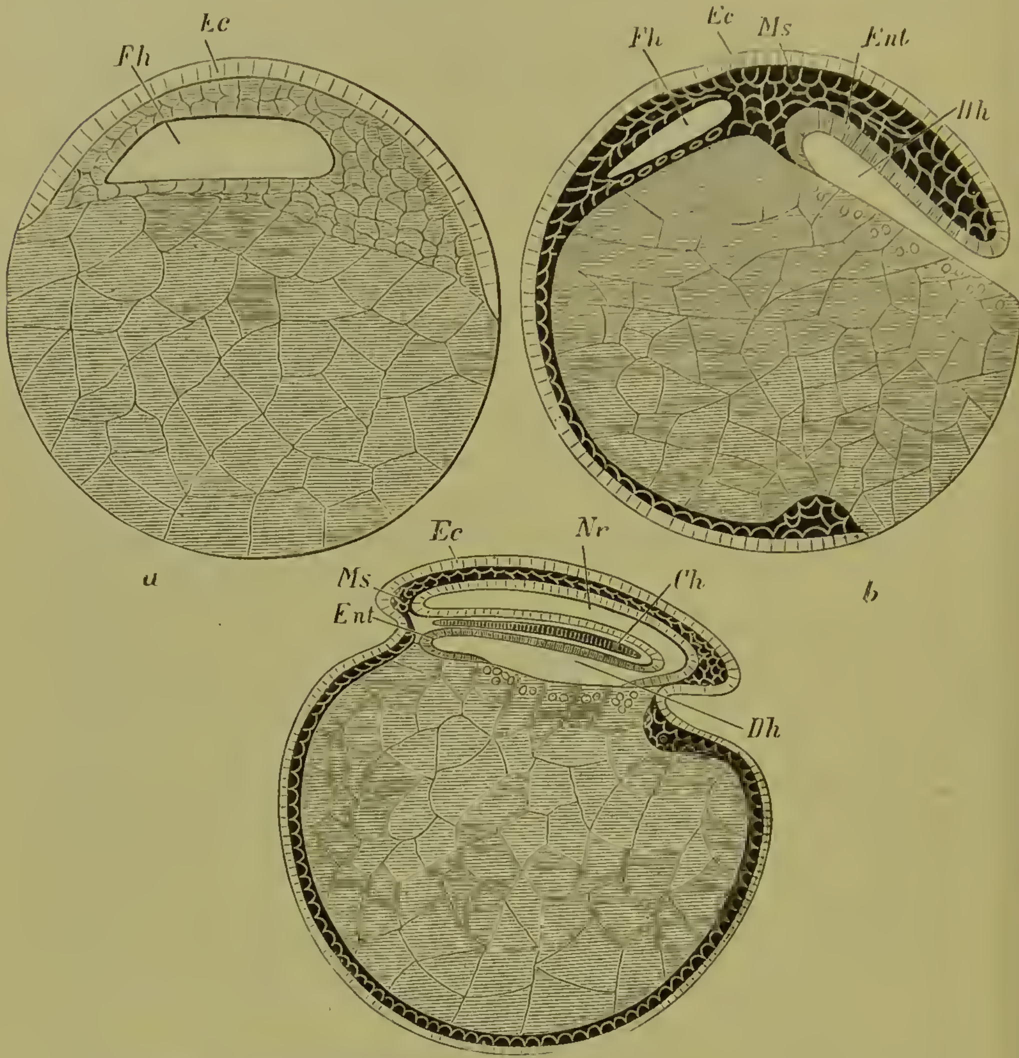



FIG. 580.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section through an ideal vertebrate embryo (after Balfour). *a*, After the completion of segmentation. *b*, Later stage in which the mesenteron is being formed at the hind end of the embryo (gastrula). *c*, Stage in which the neural canal is closed and communicates with the alimentary canal. *Ec*, ectoderm; *Ent*, entoderm; *Ms*, mesoderm; *Fh*, segmentation cavity; *Dh*, alimentary cavity; *Nr*, neural canal; *Ch*, notochord.

bling the segmental organs of Annelids. Peritoneal invaginations (urinary tubules), which communicate with the body cavity by funnel-shaped openings, come into connection with the primitive kidney-duct (archinephric duct) which is the first part of the system to appear (compare vol. i., p. 76, fig. 71). The ducts of the kidneys—the *ureters*

—usually unite to form an unpaired terminal section—the *urethra*, which, in *Teleosteans* only, opens behind the anus; very often it opens into the cloaca, and in Mammals almost always unites with the terminal parts of the genital ducts to form a common urogenital canal. A vesicular reservoir—the urinary bladder—is often inserted into the course of the efferent ducts. In fishes only does the bladder lie behind the intestine.

**Reproduction** is always sexual, and separate sexes are the rule. A few fishes only (species of *Serranus*) are hermaphrodite. In male Amphibians however traces of ovaries are found.

Both kinds of sexual glands lie as paired organs in the body cavity, and send off paired ducts which in the lower Vertebrates open into the cloaca and often join to form an unpaired canal. Sometimes indeed the ducts are absent and the genital products fall into the body cavity and pass out thence to the exterior by a genital pore. The division of the generative ducts into different regions, and their connection with accessory glands and external copulatory apparatuses determines the great variations in the structure of the generative organs which are most complicated in the *Mammalia*.

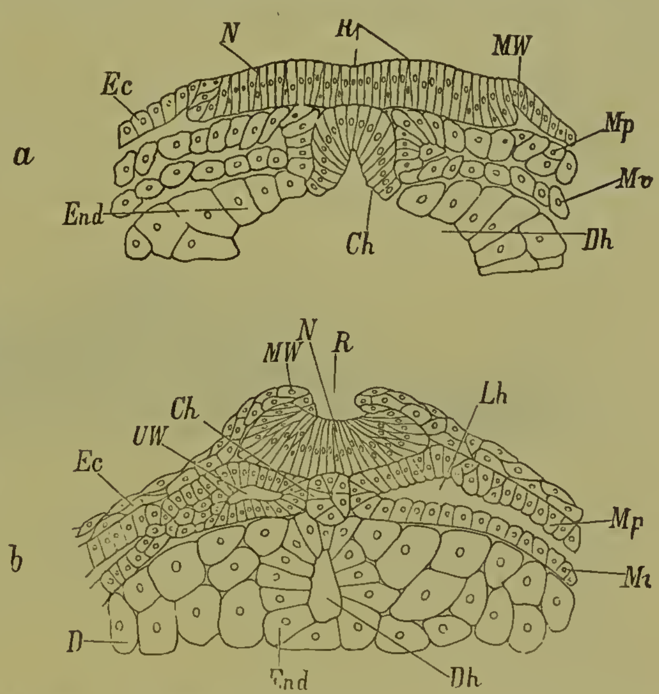



Fig. 581.—Transverse section through a young embryo of *Triton tæniatus* (after O. Hertwig). *a*, First appearance of the medullary folds and formation of the notochord. *b*, Closing of the medullary groove. The notochord is completely separated off from the entoderm. The constriction of the mesoderm into the protovertebræ is beginning (left hand side of the figure). *Ec*, ectoderm; *N*, nervous system; *R*, dorsal groove; *MW*, medullary folds; *Mp*, somatic mesoblast; *Mv*, splanchnic mesoblast; *Ch*, notochord; *End*, intestinal endoderm; *Dh*, lumen of gut; *Lh*, body cavity (pleuroperitoneal cavity); *UW*, protovertebra; *D*, yolk.

In many Fishes and Amphibia copulation is confined to an external union of the two sexes, and the eggs are fertilized in the water. Most Fishes, many Amphibia and Reptiles, and all Birds lay their eggs. All the *Mammalia* are viviparous and their small ova undergo embryonic development in the female generative ducts.

The **development** of the embryo (fig. 580) begins with a total or partial (discoidal) segmentation. The first rudiment of the embryo is usually a germinal disc or blastoderm lying upon the yolk. From the posterior end of this disc the alimentary cavity is developed. A primitive streak which marks the long axis of the embryo is developed by a thickening of the layers of the blastoderm. Two laterally placed longitudinal folds give rise to an ectodermal groove—the medullary groove or first rudiment of the central nervous system—beneath which is placed the notochord which is developed from the endoderm (fig. 581).

The medullary groove which is dilated anteriorly is closed by the growing together of its edges, and the tube so formed gives rise to the spinal cord and to the brain. Its lumen is for some time in

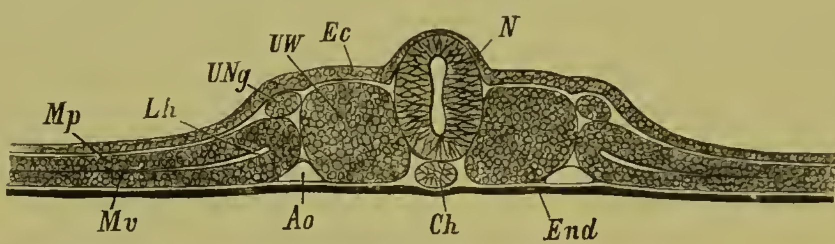



FIG. 582.—Transverse section through a chick embryo of the second day (after Kölliker). *Ec*, ectoderm; *N*, medullary canal; *End*, endoderm; *Ch*, notochord; *UW*, proto-vertebra; *UNg*, Wolffian duct (primitive duct of kidney); *Mp*, somatic mesoblast; *Mv*, splanchnic mesoblast; *Lh*, body cavity; *Ao*, primitive aorta.

communication with the alimentary cavity by the neurenteric canal. At the sides of these structures the mesoderm extends in the form of two bands, the median portions of which (protovertebral plates) become segmented in the course of the further development and give rise to the protovertebræ (figs. 576 and 582). The archinephric duct is separated off at the boundary between the protovertebræ and the unsegmented lateral plates of mesoblast, while the generative glands arise nearer the median line from the peritoneum of the lateral plates of mesoblast. While the dorsal part of the embryo is thus being formed the alimentary canal becomes further developed on the ventral side of the blastoderm, and gradually absorbs the yolk, often leaving an external yolk sac. The young animals only undergo a metamorphosis in the naked Amphibia and several Fishes.

The division of the Vertebrata into the four classes of Fishes, Amphibia, Birds, and Mammals was first established by Linnæus, though it had been already indicated in the system of Aristotle.

The Fishes and Amphibia are cold-blooded animals (*i.e.*, animals with a varying temperature); Aves and Mammals are warm-blooded (*i.e.*, with a constant temperature), and as they attain a much higher grade of life they are distinguished as the higher Vertebrates. Recently the naked *Amphibia* have rightly been separated from the scaly animals or *Reptilia*, and together with the Fishes have been distinguished as lower Vertebrates, in distinction to the Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals, which have been classed as higher Vertebrates. Fishes and Amphibia have, in fact, many characters in common, and seem to be less sharply marked off from one another (*Dipnoi*) than are the *Amphibia* from the *Reptilia*. The two former groups not only resemble one another in the branchial respiration and in the frequent persistence of the notocord, but also in the simpler course of the embryonic development and in the absence of the embryonic organs characteristic of the higher Vertebrates—the **amnion** and the **allantois**. On these grounds, and in consideration of the many relations between Reptiles and Birds, Huxley distinguishes three principal groups of Vertebrata—the **Ichthyopsida** (Pisces and Amphibia), the **Sauropsida** (Reptilia and Aves), and the **Mammalia**. Among the Fishes there are certainly such wide differences of organisation that we are justified in dividing them into several classes. The *Leptocardia* might be separated not only from all the Fishes but also from all other classes of Vertebrates as **Acraniata**; also the *Selachians*, the *Cyclostomes* and the *Dipnoi* might be regarded as separate classes if it were not more convenient to preserve the unity of the class **Pisces**.

## CHAPTER V.

### Class I.—PISCES.*

*Cold-blooded, generally scaly, aquatic animals with unpaired fins and paired pectoral and pelvic fins. They breathe exclusively by means of gills, and have a simple heart consisting of auricle and ventricle. They are without anterior urinary bladder.*

The peculiarities which the structure and internal organisation of these animals present result in general from the requirements of their

* Cuvier et Valenciennes, "Histoire Naturelle des Poissons." 22 Vols., Paris, 1828-49.
Joh. Müller, "Vergleichende Anatomie der Myxinoiden." Berlin, 1835-45.
L. Agassiz, "Recherches sur les poissons fossiles." Neufchâtel, 1833-44.
Günther, "Catalogue of the fishes in the British Museum." London.
C. E. v. Baer, "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Fische." Leipzig, 1835.

aquatic habits. Although there are in all classes of Vertebrates forms which move and live in water, yet nowhere is the whole organisation so completely adapted to an aquatic life as in Fishes.

The body is in general spindle-shaped and more or less compressed, but in details presents numerous modifications. There are cylindrical, snake-like fishes (*Lampreys*) as well as fishes with a spherical, balloon-like form (*Gymnodonta*). Others are elongated and band-shaped, and others again are very short, flat and unsymmetrical (*Pleuronectidæ*). Finally a dorsoventral flattening may lead to a flat discoidal form (*Rays*).

Locomotion is effected mainly by lateral flexions of the vertebral column, which are caused by the powerful body muscles. The effect of these movements may be greatly increased by the unpaired dorsal and ventral fins, which are capable of being elevated and depressed. The two pairs of extremities—the pectoral and pelvic fins—appear, on the contrary, to be used more as rudders to direct the course of

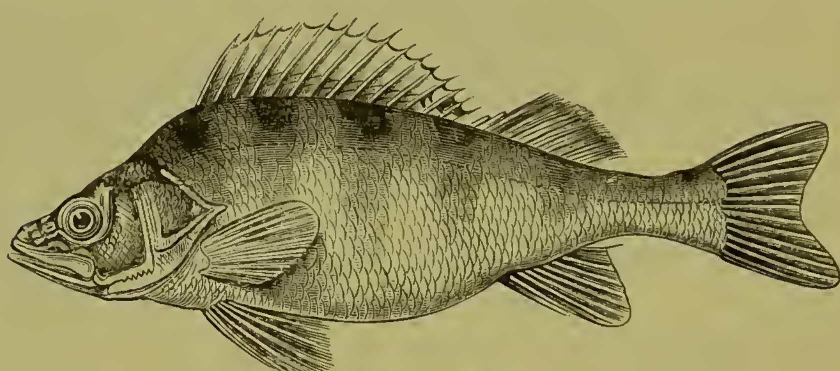


FIG. 583.—*Perca fluviatilis* (règne animal).

the animal. The structure of the vertebral column, which is not divided into many regions, corrresponds to the mode of locomotion. The head is directly attached to the trunk, and is usually rigidly connected with it. A moveable cervical region, which would be a hindrance in swimming, is completely absent. The anterior part of the body is rigid, but behind it becomes more flexible and passes gradually into the the tail, the vertebræ of which permit of the most complete movements on one another, and which on that account constitutes the principal organ of locomotion.

**Fins.**—The system of unpaired fins is developed from a median cutaneous fold of the embryo, extending over the back and tail as far as the anus. Subsequently this fold becomes broken up into parts, the definite unpaired fins. There are usually three such parts, constituting the dorsal fin (*pinna dorsalis*), the caudal fin (*pinna caudalis*), and anal fin (*pinna analis*) (fig. 583). These ridges of skin are supported as a rule by firm rays—the fin-rays; in the Teleosteans either by hard, bony, pointed spines—the so-called spine-rays (*Acanthopteri*)—or by soft jointed rays (*Malacopteri*). The caudal fin is as a rule composed of a part of the dorsal and a part of the ventral fin-fold, but it varies much in its form. When the dorsal and ventral lobes are symmetrical the caudal fin is said to be **homocercal**; when the ventral lobe is the larger, in which case the caudal part of the vertebral column is usually bent dorsalwards, the caudal fin is said to be **heterocercal.** It sometimes happens, however, that while the caudal fin is externally homocercal the axial skeleton is bent dorsalwards so that the fin is internally heterocercal.

The paired **pectoral** and **pelvic** fins correspond to the anterior and posterior limbs of other Vertebrates. The former are attached to the head immediately behind the gills by means of an arched shoulder-girdle, while the two pelvic fins are approached to the middle line and placed further back, usually on the abdomen (ventral fins); sometimes, however, they lie between the pectoral fins (thoracic fins), and more rarely in front of the latter on the throat (jugular fins).

The integument of fishes is seldom completely naked (*Cyclostomi*). As a rule scales—ossifications of dermal papillæ, which are completely covered by epidermis—are embedded in it. The scales are often so small that they are hidden beneath the skin and seem to be completely absent (Eels). As a rule, however, they are present as firm, more or less flexible plates, which are covered with a number of concentric lines and radial striations and lie on one another like slates on a roof. Scales may be distinguished according to the structure of their free edges as **cycloid** scales with smooth edges, and **ctenoid** scales with serrated edges. Scales, which overlap but little and are generally rhomboidal, more rarely cycloidal in shape, and have an outer layer of enamel, are called **ganoid** scales, while the term **placoid** scale is applied to the small bony granules (composed of enamel and dentine) of different shapes, which lend to the surface of the skin the appearance of shagreen (these are the primitive form of teeth). Agassiz divided the Fishes according to the shape of their scales into *Cycloids, Ctenoids, Ganoids,* and *Placoids.*

In the skin there are peculiar cutaneous canals communicating with the exterior by lateral rows of pores. These are called the **lateral lines** and were considered to be slime-secreting glands till Leydig* discovered that they contain a sense organ.

* Compare Leydig, "Ueber das Organ eines sechsten Sinnes." Dresden, 1868. Fr. E. Schulze, "Ueber die Sinnesorgane der Seitenlinie bei Fischen und Amphibien." *Arch. für mikrosk. Anatomie,* Tom. VI., 1870.

In the *Myxinoids* and *Acipenseridæ* these organs have the form of short sacs; in the Rays, Skates, and Chimeras they are simple tubes, which begin as ampullæ and extend also over the head in several rows. In the *Teleostei* there are branching tubes which pierce the scales of the lateral lines as pores, and are also present on the head in several rows (fig. 583). Nerves run in the walls of these tubes and end in knob-like swellings. The epithelial covering of the latter contains in the centre short piriform cells, which at the free end are prolonged into a fine stiff hair, while at the base they pass into a varicose process—the axis cylinder of a nerve fibre (fig. 584).

The **skeleton** in its simplest form consists only of the notochord (*Amphioxus*). The notochord also persists in the Myxinoids, which possess a cartilagino-membranous cranial capsule. In the *Petromyzontidæ** there appear for the first time, above the notochord, cartilaginous neural arches, and similarly beneath it paired cartilaginous bands. These are the first rudiments of the dorsal and ventral vertebral arches. These vertebral arches are more perfect in sturgeons (*Acipenser*), and in the sea-cats (*Chimæra*), in which the notochord persists, surrounded by a very compact connective-tissue sheath. A differentiation of the axial skeleton into separate vertebræ is first found in the Skates and Rays, where dorsal and ventral arches are united with annular portions of the notochordal sheath which become cartilaginous vertebral bodies. The notochord is constricted by the growth of the latter in the centre of each vertebra, in such a manner that biconcave (*amphicœlous*) vertebral bodies are formed,

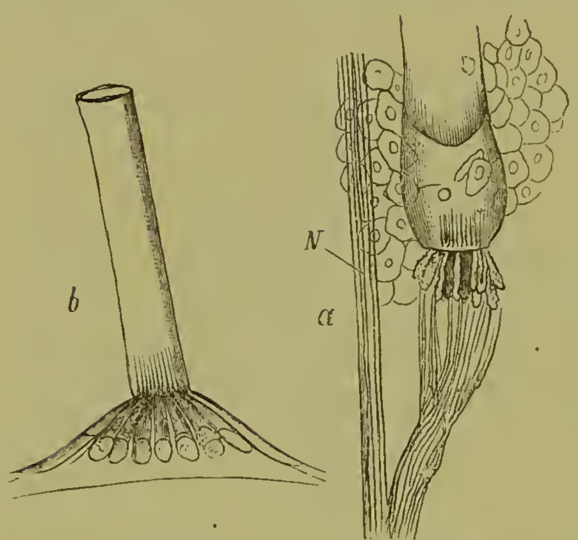


Fig. 584.—*a*, Lateral organ in the tail of a fish (roach); *N*, nerve. *b*, lateral organ in the head of a young fish (bream) (after F. E. Schulze).

* Compare Joh. Müller l.c., Reichert, "Ueber die Visceralbögen im Allgemeinen, etc." *Müller's Archiv*, 1837.
A. Kölliker, "Ueber die Beziehungen der Chorda dorsalis zur Bildung der Wirbel der Selachier und einiger anderer Fische." Würzburg. 1866.
C. Gegenbaur, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Wirbelsaüle des Lepidosteus mit vergleichenden anatomischen Bemerkungen." *Jen. naturwissensch. Zeitschr.*, Tom. III.

the conical cavities of which contain a part of the remains of the notochord. The notochord as a rule persists also in the centre of the vertebral body as a thin cord (connecting the dilated inter-vertebral portions, fig. 570 *a*). In the bony Ganoids and the Teleosteans the biconcave* vertebral bodies are completely ossified and fuse with the corresponding upper and lower bony arches, so as to form a complete vertebra. In some parts of the trunk ribs are attached to the pieces of the ventral arches (hæmapophyses) which here diverge from one another; and there are often in addition ossifications of the inter-muscular ligaments.

The structure of the **skull** in Fishes presents a series of grades of development culminating in the complicated skull of the *Teleostei*. The primordial skull of the *Cyclostomes* is the simplest. It consists of a cartilagino-membranous cranial capsule, in the hard basilar part

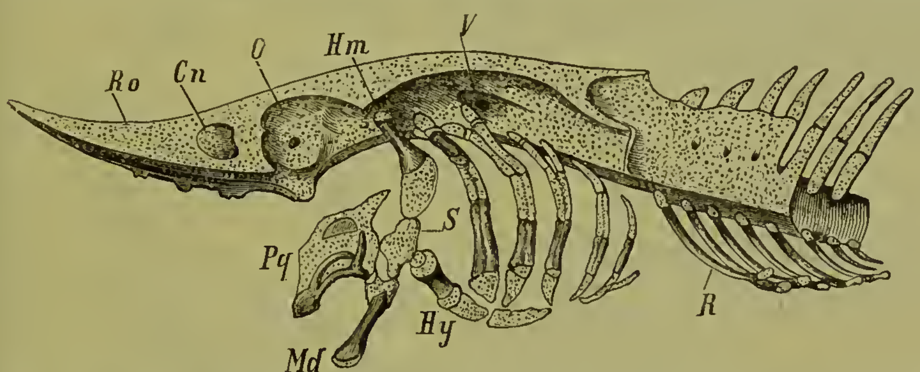



FIG. 585.—Cephalic skeleton of the Sturgeon (after Wiedersheim). *Ro*, rostrum; *Cn*, nasal pit; *O*, orbit; *Hm*, hyomandibular; *S*, symplectic; *Pq*, palatoquadrate; *Md*, lower jaw; *Hy*, hyoid bone; *V*, foramen for the vagus; *R*, ribs.

of which the notochord ends. Two bony capsules—lateral appendages of the bony basilar region—enclose the auditory organ, while two anterior pieces are connected with the complicated apparatus of the facial and palatal cartilages. The primordial skull of the Selachians (fig. 571) shows a further advance in development. It has the form of a simple cartilaginous capsule which is not further divided into separate pieces. The notochord ends in its base. In the sturgeon (fig. 585), there are bony pieces as well as the cartilaginous cranial capsule. These consist of a flat basilar bone—the parasphenoid—and a system of dermal membrane bones. A true bony cranial investment is first developed round the primordial skull of the *Dipnoi*. In the bony skulls of the *Ganoidei* and *Teleostei* there still remain continuous portions of the primordial cartilaginous cranium (Pike

* In the genus *Lepidosteus* alone is there an anterior articular surface on the vertebral bodies; the centra being convex in front and concave behind.

and Salmon). The remains of cartilage are retained longest in the ethmoid region (*Silurus*, *Cyprinus*), while on the roof and base of the skull all remains of cartilage are replaced, partly by membrane bones and partly by the primarily ossifying occipitals (basi- and exoccipital) and petrosals (periotic) as well as by the alisphenoids.

The posterior part of the skull is connected with the vertebral column without any special articulation (except in the Rays and

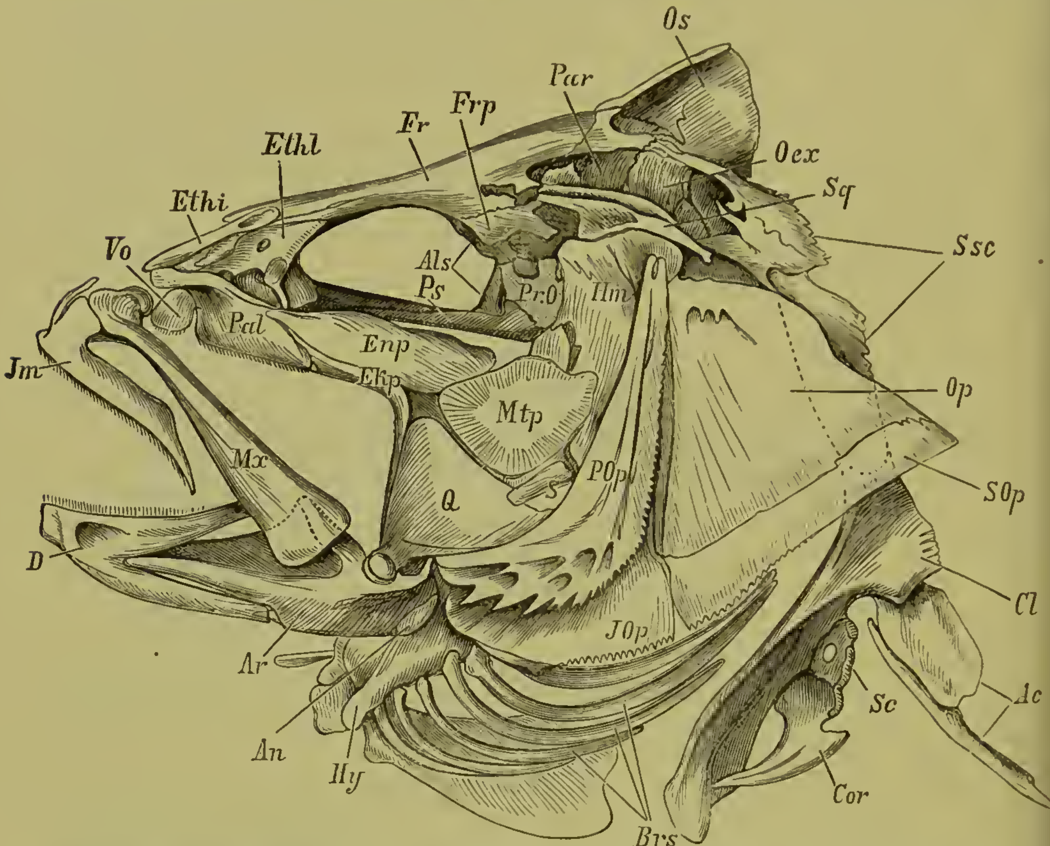



FIG. 586.—Cephalic skeleton of *Perca fluviatilis* (règne animal). *Os*, supraoccipital; *Oex*, epiotic; *Par*, parietal; *Sq*, squamosal (pterotic); *Fr*, frontal; *Frp*, postfrontal (sphenotic); *PrO*, prootic; *Als*, alisphenoid; *Ps*, parasphenoid; *Ethi*, median ethmoid; *Ethl*, lateral ethmoid (præ-frontal); *Hm*, hyomandibular; *S*, symplectic; *Q*, quadrate; *Mtp*, metapterygoid; *Enp*, endopterygoid; *Ekp*, ectopterygoid; *Pal*, palatine; *Vo*, vomer; *Jm*, intermaxillary (premaxillary); *Mx*, maxillary; *D*, dentary; *Ar*, articulare; *An*, angulare; *Op*, operculum; *POp*, præ-operculum; *SOp*, sub-operculum; *JOp*, inter-operculum; *Hy*, hyoid arch; *Brs*, branchiostegal rays; *Cl*, clavicle; *Sc*, scapula *Cor*, coracoid; *Ssc*, supraclavicle; *Ac*, accessory bone.

Chimæra), the os basilare having the conical depression and form of a vertebral body. Between the exoccipitals (which contain the foramina for the exit of the vagus and glosso-pharyngeal nerves) and the supra-occipital, which is distinguished by a strong ridge, an epiotic bone (occipitale externum) is inserted on either side (fig. 586, *Oex*). Close to the epiotic bone is the opisthotic (Huxley), which varies greatly in size and form (being very large in *Gadus* and small in

*Esox*), and the prootic (*PrO*), which surrounds the anterior semicircular canal and is pierced for the exit of the trigeminal nerve. There is also an external bone, the squamosal (pterotic) (*Sq*), to which the hyomandibular is articulated. The lower surface of the cranial capsule is covered by the long parasphenoid (*Ps*). The lateral walls of the skull are formed by two pairs of wing-like bones—the orbitosphenoids and the alisphenoids (fig. 586). Of these the alisphenoids are applied to the sides of the parasphenoid, and are almost always discernible with their openings for the exit of the optic nerves and the orbital branch of the trigeminal. The two orbitosphenoids are often united on the floor of the skull so as to form a median bone, which, when the cranial cavity is reduced, may be represented by a cartilaginous or membranous septum.

The roof of the skull is formed of bony plates, below which remains of the primordial cartilaginous cranium are only rarely retained. Close in front of the occipital are two parietal bones (*Par*), and in front of these again the great frontal bone (*Fr*), on each side of which is developed a post-frontal (*FrP*), which reaches to the squamosal (pterotic), and takes part in the articulation with the hyomandibular.

In the ethmoid region there is in the prolongation of the base of the cranium an unpaired cartilage or bone,—the median or unpaired ethmoid. This is covered ventrally by the large vomer, which is attached to the parasphenoid. There are also two paired lateral bones—the lateral ethmoids or præfrontals—which are perforated by the olfactory nerves and form the supports of the nasal pits (nasal capsules). There are finally accessory membrane bones—the infra-orbital and supra-temporal—which protect the cranial (sensory) canals.

A true maxillary apparatus appears for the first time in the Selachians and Sturgeons, where a hyomandibular attached to the auditory region serves to support the mandibular and hyoid arches (figs. 571 *H* and 585 *Hm*). The upper part of the mandibular arch (the palatoquadrate) is usually moveably attached to the skull by ligaments. In the *Teleostei* the mandibular suspensorium is divided into several parts, and the branchial operculum is attached to it. The upper part is formed of a hyomandibular, and two bones called by Cuvier the symplectic and tympanic (metapterygoid); the præoperculum forms the middle part, and finally the lower part, which bears the articulation of the lower jaw, is formed by the quadrate or quadrato-jugal. The flat osseous plates applied to the hinder edge of the præoperculum constitute the branchial operculum, and are distinguished as operculum, suboperculum, and interoperculum. A bone extending from the metapterygoid and quadrate to the upper jaw corresponds to the pterygoid, and is, as a rule, formed of an external (ectopterygoid) and an internal piece (endopterygoid). Then come the palatine bone and the apparatus of the upper jaw, with the præmaxilla (intermaxilla), which is placed at the front of the snout and is usually moveable, and the very variable, usually toothless maxilla. The two limbs of the lower jaw are only rarely fused together in the middle line, and are divided at least into a posterior

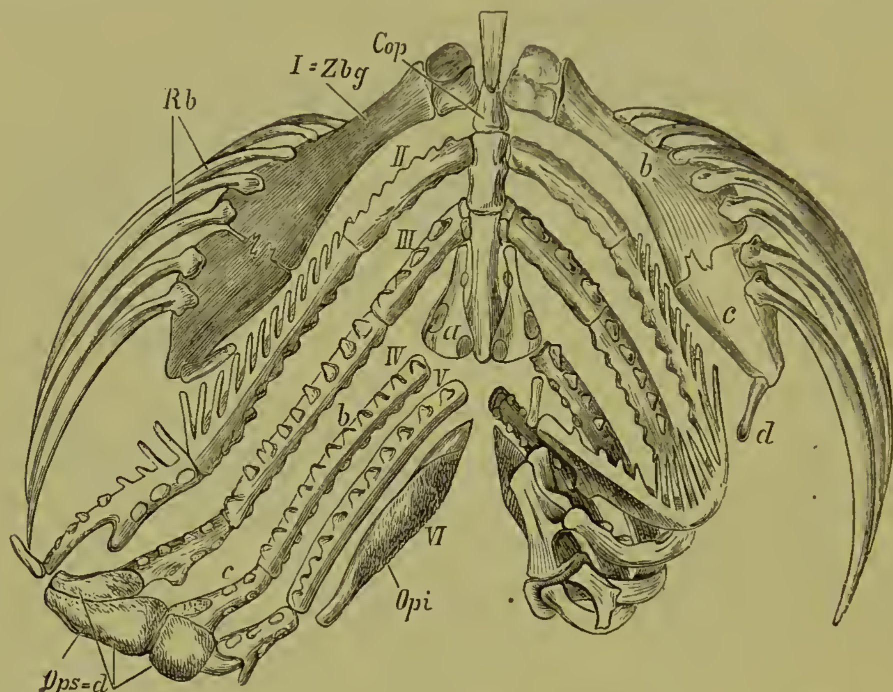



FIG. 587.—Hyoid apparatus and branchial arches of *Perca fluviatilis* (règne animal). *I*, hyoid apparatus; *II*—*V*, branchial arches; *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, joints of the branchial arches, the upper joints (*Ops*) are the superior pharyngeal bones (pharyngo-branchials); *VI*, (*Opi*) the inferior pharyngeal bones (reduced 5th branchial); *Cop*, copulæ; *Rb*, branchiostegal rays.

os articulare and an anterior dentary; there may, however, also be an angulare and an operculare.

Behind the mandibular arch there follows a system of equivalent arches surrounding the pharyngeal cavity. Of these the anterior—the hyoid arch—bears on its outer edge a number of cartilaginous rods, which serve to support the opercular membrane and are called the branchiostegal rays (fig. 587, *Rb*), while the remaining arches are the branchial arches and serve for the support of the branchial lamellæ (fig. 587). In the Teleosteans four (seldom three) arches bear gills, while the posterior arch is reduced so that only its ventral part (ceratobranchial) remains and forms the so-called inferior pharyngeal bones (*pharyngealia inferiora*). The upper segments of the branchial arches, which are applied to the base of the skull, are distinguished as the superior pharyngeal bones (pharyngobranchials or *pharyngealia superiora*).

**Paired Fins.*** The pectoral fins are in the Teleosteans attached to the skull by means of the shoulder girdle. In the cartilaginous fishes the shoulder girdle is a simple cartilaginous arch, which unites with that of the other side in the middle ventral line. In the cartilaginous Ganoids the shoulder-girdle is transitional between this primary form and the secondary form, which is characteristic of the Teleosteans (fig. 586), inasmuch as membrane bones (clavicle) are applied to the primary cartilaginous girdle. Ossifications also arise in the cartilage itself and give rise to bones known as the scapula and coracoid, or the præcoracoid.

The skeleton of the fins, which is articulated to the shoulder-girdle, can be derived from the primitive form of fin known as the archipterygium, which still persists in *Ceratodus* as an axial row of cartilaginous pieces beset with jointed lateral rays (*radii*).

The **nervous system** (fig. 588) presents the lowest and simplest form found in any Vertebrate. In general the brain is small and consists of several swellings lying one behind another. Of these the small anterior, as the *lobi olfactorii*, pass into the olfactory nerves. The larger anterior lobes correspond to the *hemispheres*, the median globular swellings to the lobe of the *third ventricle* with the corpora quadrigemina. From this part of the brain the optic nerves are given off anteriorly, while on its lower surface the infundibulum, to which the pituitary body is attached, arises from the floor of the third ventricle.

The posterior region corresponds to the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata. The cerebellum, which varies considerably in size and form, constitutes a transverse bridge, which covers the anterior part of the fourth ventricle. Lateral swellings—the so-called *lobi posteriores*—are often developed in this region; in the Sturgeons and Squalidæ at the origin of the trigeminal nerve, as the *lobi nervi trigemini*; in Torpedo as the large *lobi electrici*, projecting over the fourth ventricle.

A separate visceral (*sympathetic*) nervous system is absent in the

* Compare C. Gegenbaur, "Untersuchungen zur vergleichenden Anatomie der Wirbelthiere." 2 Heft, Leipzig, 1865.
C. Gegenbaur, "Ueber das Skelet der Gliedmassen." *Jen. naturwiss. Zeitsch.*, Tom. V.

*Cyclostomes* alone, where it is represented by the vagus and by fibres of the spinal nerves. The spinal cord, the mass of which is con-

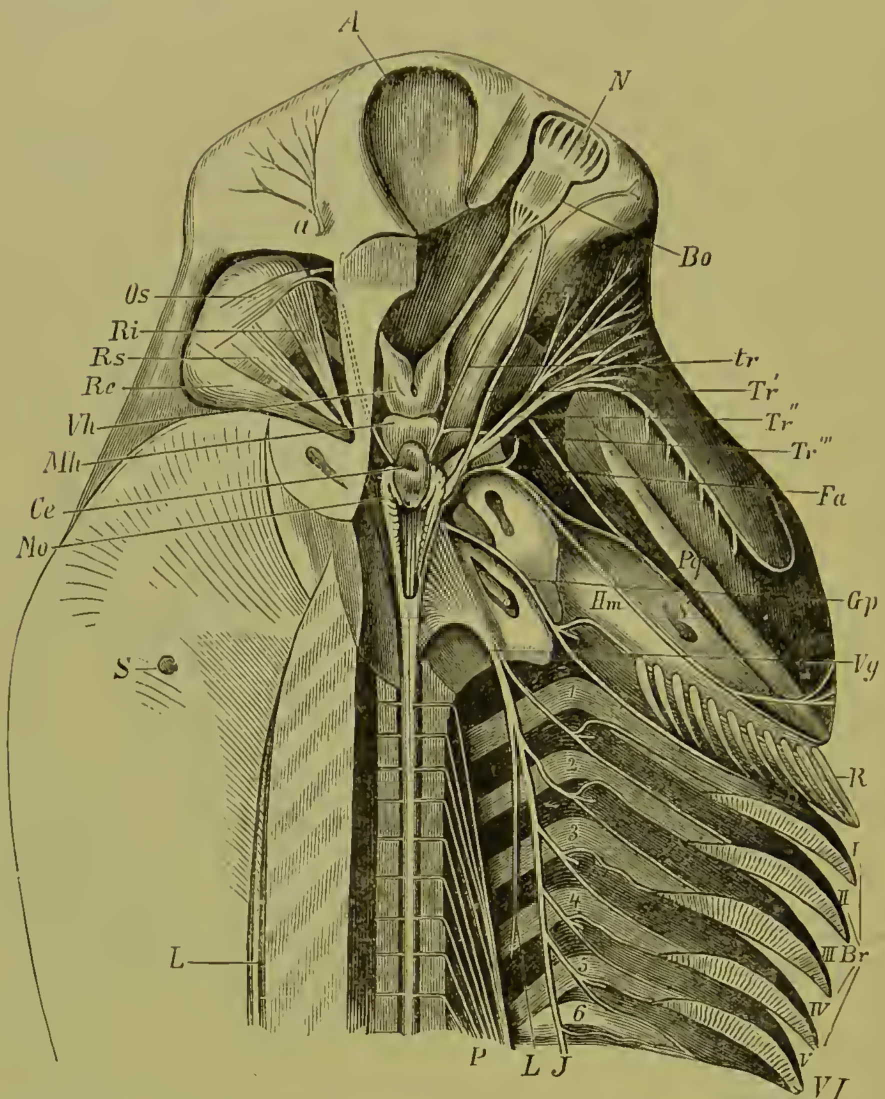



FIG. 588.—Brain and anterior part of the spinal cord and nerves of *Hexanchus griseus* (after Gegenbaur). The nerves are dissected out on the right side; the right eye removed. *A*, Anterior cavity of the skull; *N*, nasal capsule; *Vh*, fore-brain (cerebral hemispheres); *Mh*, mid-brain (optic lobes); *Ce*, cerebellum; *Mo*, medulla oblongata; *Bo*, olfactory bulb; *tr*, trochlear nerve (fourth nerve); *Tr'*, first (ophthalmic) branch of the trigeminal or fifth; *a*, terminal branches of the same in the ethmoid region; *Tr''*, second branch; *Tr'''*, third branch; *Fa*, facial (seventh); *Gp*, glossopharyngeal (ninth); *Vg*, vagus (tenth); *L*, lateral branch of vagus (to lateral line); *J*, intestinal branch; *Os*, superior oblique muscle of eye; *Ri*, internal rectus muscle; *Re*, external rectus; *Rs*, superior rectus; *S*, spiracle; *Pq*, palatoquadrate; *Hm*, hyomandibular; *R*, branchial rays; *I—VI*, branchial arches; *Br*, branchiæ; *P*, spinal nerves.

siderably greater than that of the brain, extends tolerably uniformly throughout the whole length of the neural canal, and usually does not form a so-called *cauda equina*. Rarely its upper part presents paired or unpaired swellings (*Trigla, Orthagoriscus*) at the origin of the spinal nerves.

The **eyes** are seldom hidden beneath the skin and the muscles (*Myxine, Petromyzon, Amblyopsis*). In *Amphioxus* they are represented by a pigment spot lying directly on the central nervous system. In all other fishes they are characterised by possessing a flat cornea and a large, almost spherical crystalline lens, the anterior surface of which projects far out of the pupil (fig. 589). As peculiar structures of the eyes of fishes are further to be mentioned the so-called *choroideal gland*—a vascular body (rete mirabile) usually projecting at the entrance of the optic nerve, as well as a fold of the choroid known as the *processus falciformis*, which traverses the retina, and the *campanula Halleri* which is attached to the lens.

The **auditory organ** * (absent only in *Amphioxus*) consists only of the labyrinth (fig. 578, *I*), and in Teleosteans, Ganoids, and *Chimæra* lies partly in the cranial cavity, surrounded by fatty tissue. It is worthy of notice that in *Cyprinoidæ Characinæ, Siluridæ*, and others, the labyrinth is connected with the swimming bladder by a chain of small bones.

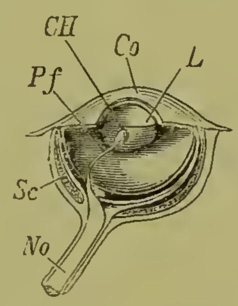


FIG. 589. — Horizontal section through the eye of *Esox lucius*. *Co*, cornea; *L*, lens; *Pf*, processus falciformis; *CH*, campanula Halleri; *No*, optic nerve; *Sc*, ossifications of the sclerotic.

The **olfactory organ** in *Amphioxus* consists of a simple unsymmetrical pit at the anterior end of the nervous centre. In *Cyclostomes* also it consists of a simple tube, with an unpaired median opening. All other fishes possess double, and indeed with the exception of the *Dipnoi* blindly-closed nasal cavities, the internal surface of which is considerably increased by folds of the mucous membrane.

The sense of **taste** seems to be less developed. It is located in the buccal cavity, and especially in the richly innervated part of the soft palate. For the **tactile** sense, lips and their appendages—the frequently appearing barbules—probably serve. Certain isolated rays of the ventral fin may also, on account of their rich nerve supply, be regarded as tactile organs (*Trigla*). The nervous organs of the so-called mucous canals, which we have before mentioned, constitute an organ of a special sense.

* Compare E. H. Weber, "De aure et auditu hominis et animalium." P. I., "De aure animalium aquatilium." Lipsiæ, 1820.
C. Hasse, "Anatomische Studien." Heft 3: "Das Gehörorgan der Fische." Leipzig, 1872.

The **electrical organs*** may be mentioned as a peripheral appendage of the nervous system (*Torpedo*, *Gymnotus*, *Malapterurus*, *Mormyrus*). They are nervous apparatuses which in the arrangement of their parts may be compared to a Voltaic pile. They develop electricity, and give electrical discharges when their opposite poles are

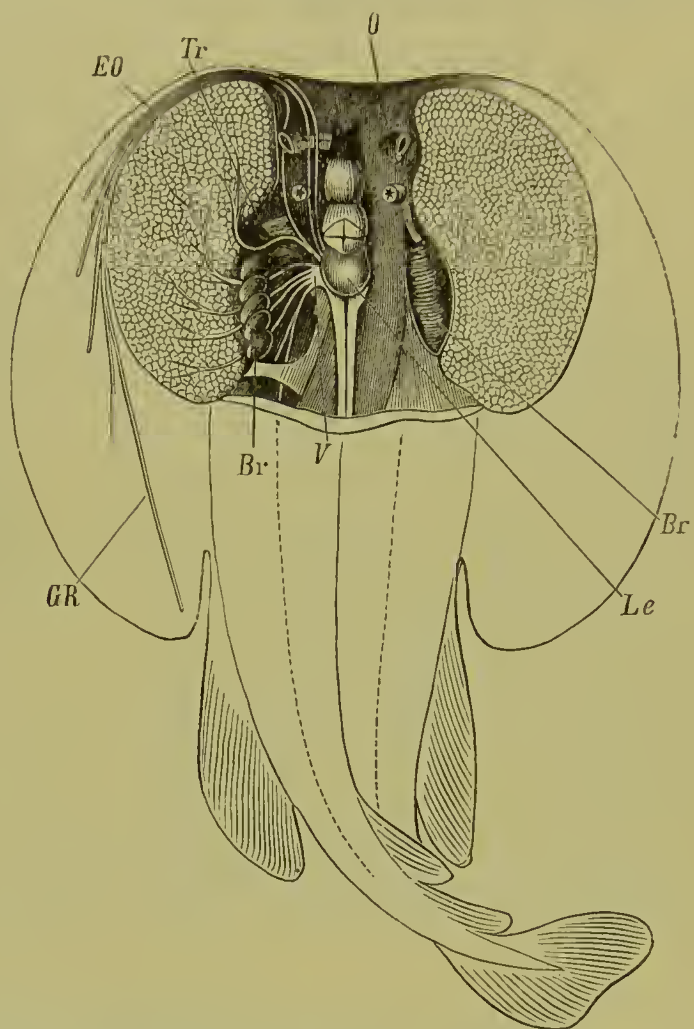



FIG. 590.—Torpedo with electric organ dissected out (*EO*) (after Gegenbaur). On the right side the dorsal surface only of the organ is exposed; on the left side the nerves which go to it are shown. *Le*, electric lobe; *Tr*, trigeminal nerve; *V*, vagus nerve; *O*, eye; *Br*, gills; on the left the individual branchial sacs; on the right the latter are shown covered with a common muscular layer. *Gr*, Gelatinous tubes of the skin (sense canals).

connected. In *Torpedo* these organs are situated (fig. 590) between

* Compare Savi, "Recherches anatomiques sur le système nerveux et sur l'organe électrique de la torpille." Paris, 1844.

Bilharz, "Das elektrische Organ des Zitterwelses." Leipzig, 1857.

Max Schultze, "Zur Kenntniss des elektrischen Organs der Fische." 1, 2, Halle, 1858 and 1859.

Max Schultze, "Zur Kenntniss des den elektrischen Organen verwandten Schwanzorganes von Raja elavata." *Müller's Archiv*, 1858.

Sachs, "Untersuchungen am Zitteraal." Leipzig, 1881.

the branchial pouches and the anterior cartilages of the pectoral fins, and consist of a number of perpendicular columns enclosed by walls of connective tissue. The columns are divided by a great number of membranous transverse partitions into a series of compartments placed one above another. Each of the latter contains a layer of gelatinous tissue, and a finely granular plate containing nerve endings and large nuclei (*electrical plate*). The latter corresponds in a certain degree to the copper and zinc elements of the Voltaic pile, the former to the moist intermediate layers; while the connective tissue framework seems to serve only to carry the nerves and blood-vessels. Each transverse partition contains a rich network of nerves, which is distributed on the electrical plates. The face on which the nerves ramify is the same in all the columns of the same

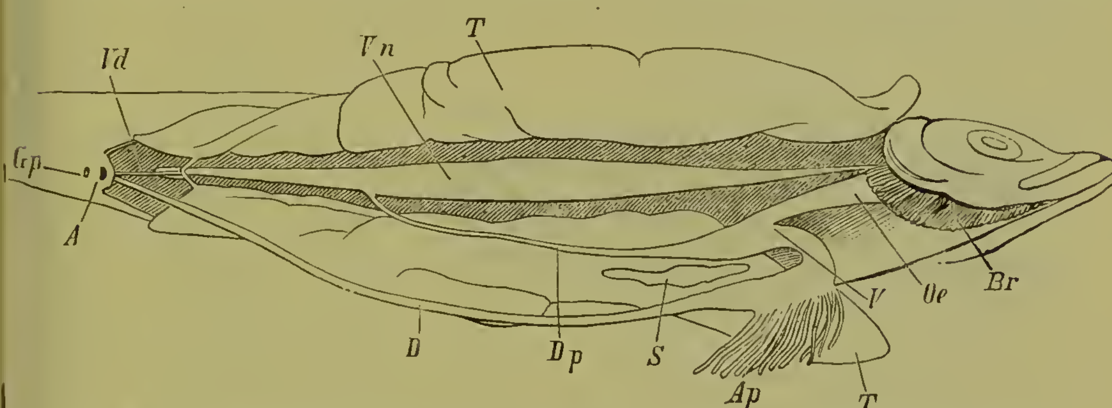



FIG. 591.—Alimentary canal and generative organs of *Clupea Harengus* (after Brandt). *Br*, gills; *Oe*, œsophagus; *V*, stomach; *Ap*, pyloric appendages; *D*, intestine; *A*, anus; *Vn*, swimming bladder; *Dp*, pneumatic duct; *S*, spleen; *T*, testis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *Gp*, genital pore.

organ, and is always electro-negative, the opposite free surface being positive. In *Malapterurus*, the other surface of the plate (the posterior surface) on which the nerves enter is electro-positive, but this apparent exception is explained by the fact that the nerves pass through the plate and are distributed on the anterior surface, which is electro-negative. In the electric Eel (*Gymnotus electricus*) the electric organ lies at the side of the tail and consists of long horizontal columns; in *Malapterurus* it lies along the body beneath the skin. Similar organs in *Mormyrus* are distinguished as pseudelectric organs, since although they have a similar structure, they give rise to no electric phenomena.

The **digestive organs** vary much in structure. The mouth, which is placed at the anterior end of the head, usually has the form of a transverse slit, and can sometimes be extended forward by means of the moveable supporting bones of the upper and lower jaws (*Labroidea*). The buccal cavity is distinguished by its width, and by the great number of teeth it contains, which are developed from the papillæ of the mucous membrane by dentinal ossification. There are often two curved parallel rows of teeth on the upper jaw; an outer row on the premaxilla, and an inner row on the palatine, and there may also be a median unpaired row on the vomer. On the lower jaw there is only one curved row of teeth. There may also be teeth on the hyoid arch and on the upper jaw (maxillæ) and parasphenoid, and, as a rule, on the branchial arches also, especially on the upper and lower pharyngeal bones. The teeth are distinguished according to their shape into pointed conical *prehensile* teeth and *grinding* teeth.

A small, hardly moveable tongue is developed on the floor of the buccal cavity, and the lateral walls of the pharynx are pierced by the gill slits. Following the pharyngeal cavity, there is a usually short, funnel-shaped œsophagus, and a large stomach, which is frequently drawn out into a cæcum of considerable size (fig 591). Cæcal appendages (*pyloric appendages*) are not unfrequently met with at the entrance to the longer mid-gut (small intestine) which is marked off by a valve; they probably serve the purpose of increasing the extent of the secreting surface of the alimentary canal. The intestine is usually several times coiled, and its internal surface is remarkable for the longitudinal folds of the mucous membrane; villi such as are found in the higher Vertebrates are only rarely present; but in the Selachians, Ganoids, and Dipnoi there is a peculiar spirally-coiled longitudinal fold—the so-called spiral valve—which contributes essentially to the enlargement of the absorbent surfaces. A rectum is not always clearly marked off, and when present is always short, and in the *Selachians* it is furnished with a cæcal appendage. The anus is usually situated far back, and is always ventral and in front of the urinary and generative openings. In fishes with jugular fins, and in some Teleosteans without ventral

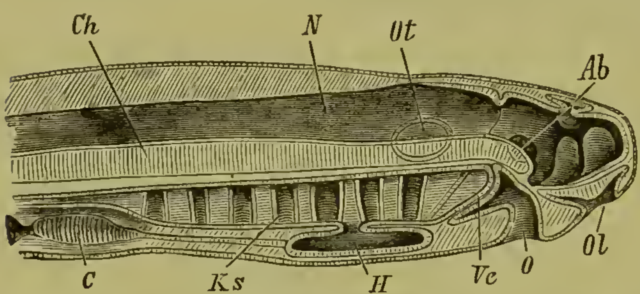



FIG. 592.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section through the head of a larva of *Petromyzon* (after Balfour). *N*, nervous system; *Ch*, notochord; *Ot*, auditory vesicle (represented as visible); *O*, mouth; *Ve*, velum; *H*, thyroid involution; *Ks*, branchial pouches; *C*, heart; *Ab*, optic vesicle; *Ol*, olfactory pit.

fins, it is situated very far forward, and may even be on the throat.

Salivary glands are absent in Fishes, but there is a large liver which is rich in fat and is usually provided with a gall-bladder; there is also usually a pancreas, which is by no means replaced by the pyloric appendages as was formerly believed.

In many fishes the **swimming bladder,** an organ which by its mode of origin corresponds to the lungs, is developed as a diverticulum of the alimentary canal. It is almost always an unpaired sac filled with air and placed on the ventral side of the vertebral column, dorsal to the alimentary canal: it is sometimes closed and sometimes

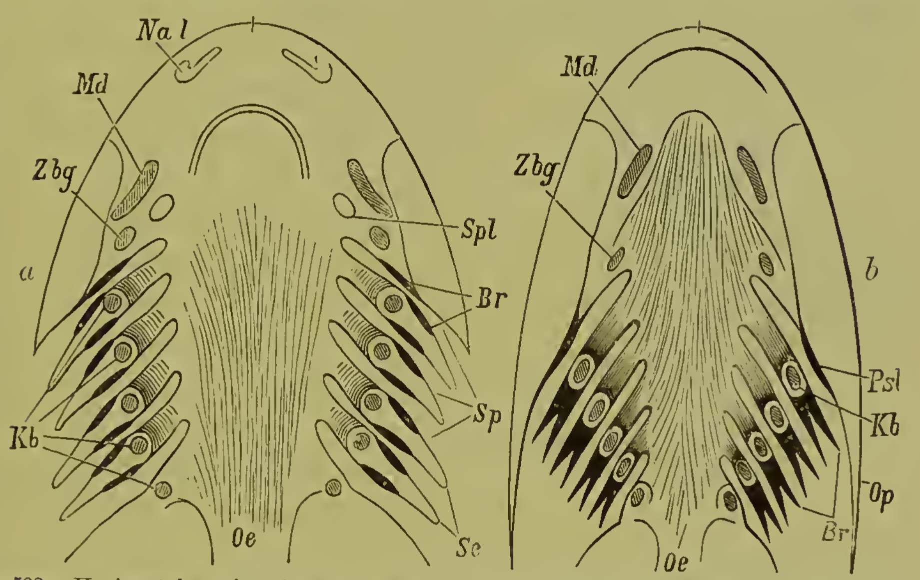



FIG. 593.—Horizontal section through the branchial cavity showing the roof. *a*, of one of the *Squalidæ*, *b*, of a Teleostean, (altered from Gegenbaur). *Nal*, nasal aperture; *Md*, mandible; *Zbg*, hyoid arch; *Kb*, branchial arches; *Oe*, œsophagus; *Spl*, spiracle; *Br*, gills; *Sp*, gill slits; *Se*, septa of branchial pouches; *Psb*, pseudobranch of the branchial operculum (hyoid pseudobranch); *Op*, operculum.

communicates by an air tube—the pneumatic duct—with the interior of the alimentary canal (*Physostomi*) (fig. 591 *Vn*). Its walls are formed of an external elastic membrane which is sometimes invested with muscles, and an internal mucous membrane. Glandular structures are sometimes present in the internal coat, and these may exert an influence on the enclosed air. The internal surface is usually smooth, but sometimes is provided with reticulated projections which lead to the origin of cellular cavities (*Ganoidei*). Physiologically the swimming bladder is a hydrostatic apparatus, the function of which seems to consist essentially in rendering the specific weight of the fish variable, and in facilitating the rapid change in the position of the centre of gravity. The fact that many fishes which swim very well are without the swimming bladder is by no means favourable to the interpretation of its function. When it is present the fish must have the power of compressing it, partly by the muscles in its walls and partly by the muscles of the body, and thus rendering the body specifically heavier so that it sinks. When the compression of the muscles is removed the compressed air will again expand, the specific gravity diminish and the fish will rise. If the pressure is unequal on the anterior and posterior parts then that half of the fish which is rendered specifically heavier will sink. Still more complicated relations, however, seem to exist according to the investigations of Bergmann.*

**Respiration** is in all cases effected by gills.

In the *Cyclostomes* (fig. 592) which have no visceral arches there are six or seven pairs of branchial pouches. These open into the œsophagus either by internal branchial passages or (*Petromyzon*) by a common canal which receives all the branchial passages. The water is expelled through external branchial passages round which a network of cartilaginous rods is developed.

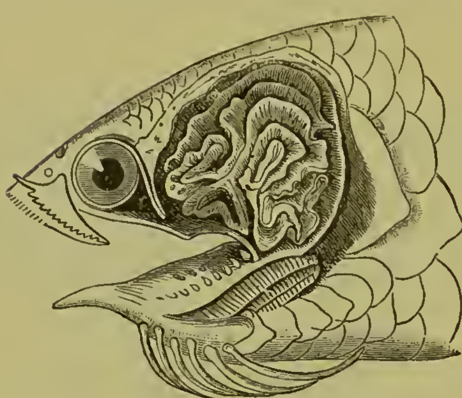


Fig. 594.—Head of *Anabas scandens* (règne animal). The operculum has been removed to shew the spacious upper pharyngeal bones (pharyngo-branchials).

In the *Plagiostomes* (fig. 593 *a*) there are saccular spaces the walls of which are supported by cartilaginous rods. These branchial sacs communicate with the exterior by lateral openings and contain the branchial leaflets which are attached to their walls: they are separated from one another by partition walls which are placed between the two rows of leaflets of each arch, and they are supported by an external framework of cartilaginous rods. In the Selachians there are, as a rule, five pairs of branchial sacs, of which the last has a row of leaflets on its anterior wall only, *i.e.*, on the posterior side of the fourth true branchial arch; while the first pouch has, in addition to the anterior gill of the first branchial arch, a gill on the hyoid arch corresponding to the accessory gill of *Chimæra* and the *Ganoidei*. The mandibular arch, however, sometimes bears a

* Compare Bergmann and Leuckart, "Anat. Phys. Uebersicht des Thierreichs." Stuttgart, 1852.

remnant of a gill—the *pseudobranch* of the spiracle—the vessels of which belong to the arterial circulation and form a rete mirabile.

In the Teleosteans (fig. 593 *b*) and the Ganoids the lancet-shaped lamellæ are arranged in double rows on the four visceral arches which function as branchial arches, and they form four comb-shaped gills on either side. These gills lie in a spacious branchial cavity covered by the branchial operculum and the branchial membrane. There is, however, an accessory gill on the inner side of the branchial operculum; this in many Ganoids and Chimæra functions as a gill, but in the Teleosteans has lost its respiratory function, and is then known as the pseudobranch of the operculum or of the hyoid arch.

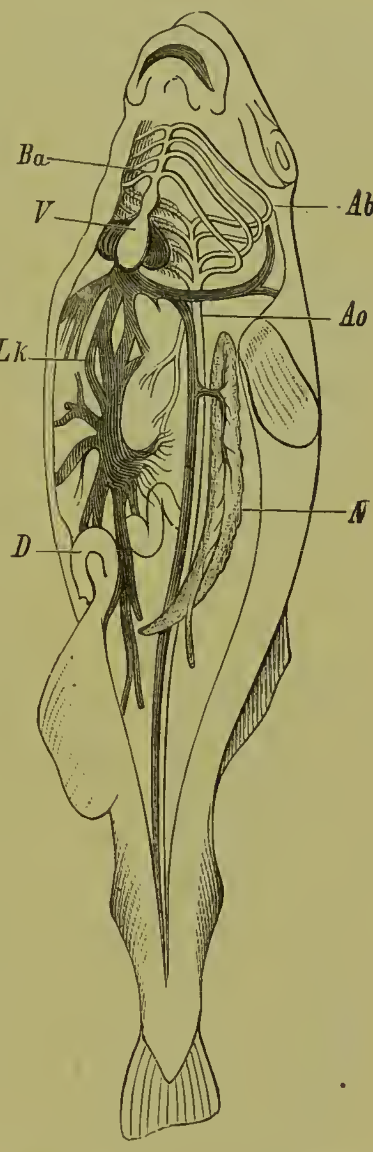


FIG. 595.—Diagram of the circulation of a Teleostean. *V*, ventricle; *Ba*, bulbus arteriosus with the arterial arches which carry the blood to the gills; *Ab*, arterial arches; *Ao*, aorta descendens into which the epibranchial arteries passing out from the gills unite; *N*, kidneys; *D*, intestine; *Lk*, portal circulation.

External gills projecting from the slits of the branchial pouches are found only in the embryos of the *Plagiostomes*. Rudiments of external gills are found in *Rhinocryptis annectens*.

Finally the secondary cavities, which are sometimes found annexed to the branchial cavity and increase the respiratory surfaces by the development of a capillary network, must be regarded as accessory organs of respiration. They consist either of labyrinthine cavities in the superior pharyngeal bones (fig. 594) or of saccular appendages of the branchial cavity (*Saccobranchus*, *Amphipnous*). True lungs derived from the swimming bladder, with internal cellular spaces, a short air-tube and glottis-like opening into the pharynx, are only found in the *Dipnoi* (according to Hyrtl the swimming bladder of *Gymnarchus* is also a lung).

**Vascular system.**—The blood is generally red; it is white only in *Amphioxus* and the *Leptocephalidæ*; it circulates in a closed vascular system, in which, except in *Amphioxus*, a muscular pulsating region or heart is present. The heart (fig. 595) is placed far forward on the throat, ventral to the branchial framework, and is enclosed in a pericardium, the cavity of which communicates with the body cavity in some *Plagiostomes*, *Chimæra*, *Acipenser*, etc. It is a simple venous branchial heart, and is composed of a thin-walled large auricle and a very powerful muscular ventricle. The auricle receives the venous blood returning from the body, and the ventricle forces it through an ascending aorta to the respiratory organs. The aorta begins with a bulbous swelling (*bulbus arteriosus*), which in the *Ganoids*, *Plagiostomes*, and *Dipnoi* is replaced by an independently pulsating part of the heart with rows of semi-lunar valves (*conus arteriosus*). While the fishes with a simple non-muscular *bulbus arteriosus* have but two semi-lunar valves at its origin, the above mentioned orders usually have two to four, or rarely five rows of three, four or more valves each in the conus arteriosus. The aorta at once divides into a number of paired vascular arches corresponding to the embryonic aortic arches. These are the branchial arteries; they pass into the branchial arches and give off branches to form the capillary networks of the gills. From the capillary networks small vessels pass out which unite to form a larger branchial vein in each branchial arch (epibranchial artery). The arrangement of these veins corresponds to that of the branchial arteries; they unite to form the large *aorta descendens* or dorsal aorta. Before they unite the cephalic arteries pass off from the epibranchial arteries of the anterior arch. The arrangement of the principal venous trunks in fishes is most nearly related to the embryonic condition. Corresponding to the four cardinal veins of the embryo, two anterior and two posterior vertebral * veins (jugular and cardinal veins) bring back the blood from the anterior and posterior part of the body respectively. These veins unite on each side to form two transverse veins—the *ductus Cuvieri*—which enter the sinus venosus of the heart. The course of the returning venous blood is complicated by the insertion of a double portal circulation. The caudal vein passes directly into the posterior cardinal veins only in Cyclostomes and Selachians: in all other fishes there is a renal-portal circulation, in that the caudal vein breaks up into capillaries in the kidneys, from which the blood passes into the posterior cardinal veins. For the hepatic portal circulation on the other hand the venous blood of the

* Often called the anterior and posterior cardinal veins.

intestine is used; this blood after passing through the capillaries of the liver is returned to the heart by one or more veins which correspond to the inferior vena cava and open into the sinus venosus between the two ductus Cuvieri. Such capillary systems must be a considerable hindrance to the circulation of the blood and explain the development of the so-called accessory hearts on the caudal vein of the eel and on the portal vein of *Myxine*.

The **urinary organs** of Fishes (fig. 596) consist of paired kidneys extending along the backbone from the head to the end of the body cavity, and giving off two ureters which unite into a common duct on which a bladder is usually developed. The urinary bladder and its duct always lie behind the intestinal canal. In most Teleosteans the efferent duct of the bladder opens by a common orifice with the sexual opening, or on a special papilla behind the sexual opening. In the *Plagiostomes* and *Dipnoi* on the other hand a cloaca is developed; in the former the ureters and the generative ducts open into the dilated terminal part of the intestine—*i.e.*, the cloaca—behind the rectum; while in the latter the ureters open into the cloaca separately on each side.

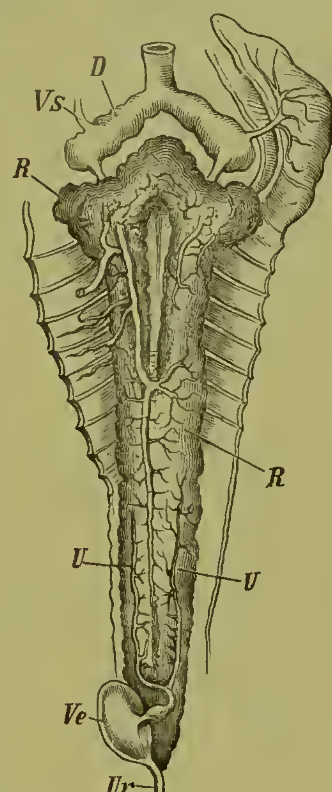


FIG. 596.—Kidneys of *Salmo fario* (after Hyrtl). *R*, kidneys; *U*, ureter; *Ve*, bladder-like dilation; *Ur*, efferent duct of bladder; *D*, ductus Cuvieri; *Vs*, subclavian vein.

**Generative organs.**—Excepting in certain forms, such as *Serranus* and *Chrysophrys*, which are hermaphrodite (also some carps), Fishes are of separate sexes; the two sexes often present more (*Macropodus*) or less (*Tinca*, *Cobitis*) considerable sexual differences. The male and female reproductive organs (fig. 591) often resemble one another so closely in form and position that it is necessary to investigate their contents in order to distinguish the sex, especially as external sexual differences are frequently absent.

The ovaries are paired (in the *Myxinoids* the *Squalidæ*, and certain Teleosteans, as *Perca*, *Blennius*, *Cobitis*, they are unpaired) elongated sacs, which lie ventral to the kidneys at the sides of the intestine and the liver. The ova originate on the internal transversely folded walls of the ovaries in closed follicles in which they receive a thick egg-capsule (with pores and micropyle), and escape thence into the cavity of the sac which becomes greatly swollen at the breeding time. The testes on the other hand are, except in the *Cyclostomes*, paired, and they are composed of transverse canals or vesicular cavities.

In the simplest case the testes and ovaries have no special ducts, but the genital products are dehisced from the wall of the gland into the body cavity, whence they pass out to the exterior through a genital pore situated behind the anus (in Cyclostomes, Eels, and female Salmon). As a rule, however, generative ducts are present; they may either be direct prolongations of the genital glands as in the Teleosteans, or as in the Ganoids, female Plagiostomes and Dipnoi independent canals which begin with a free funnel-shaped opening into the body cavity (Müllerian ducts). In the Teleosteans the two oviducts as well as the vasa deferentia unite to form an unpaired duct which opens to the exterior on the urogenital papilla between the openings of the anus and the urinary duct; in the Ganoids, on the other hand, as well as in the Plagiostomes and the Dipnoi a common cloaca is formed. Accessory external copulatory organs are only found in the male Plagiostomes, in the form of long grooved cartilaginous appendages of the ventral fins.

Most fishes are oviparous; only a few Teleosteans, as *Anableps*, *Zoarces*, the *Cyprinodonta*, etc., and a great number of the Sharks, bear living offspring, which for the most part undergo their embryonic development in a dilated part of the oviduct which serves as a uterus. Reproduction usually takes place only once in the year, most frequently in spring, more rarely in the summer, and exceptionally, as in many of the *Salmonidæ*, in winter. Many fishes, especially the males, undergo changes of colour and develop growths of skin at the spawning time. The two sexes often assemble in great shoals and seek out shallow places near the banks of rivers or near the sea coast (Herrings) for spawning. Some make more extended migrations and pass in great shoals over great distances along the sea coast (Tunny-Fish). Others leave the sea and pass up the mouths of rivers, and overcoming great obstacles (Salmon leaps) make their way up into the smaller streams in which they deposit their spawn in sheltered places where the food is plentiful (Salmon, Sturgeon, etc.). The Eels on the other hand migrate from the rivers into the sea, and in the following spring the young Eels enter the freshwater by millions and pass up the stream. The spawn is as a rule fertilized in the water, and thus artificial fertilization and pisciculture is rendered possible. In the viviparous fish, and in the Rays, *Chimæra*, and

Dog-fishes, which lay large eggs enclosed in a horny shell, a true copulation and an internal fertilization of the egg takes place. It is worthy of note that in a few exceptional cases the male undertakes the charge of the brood (*Hippocampus, Cottus, Gasterosteus*).

The **embryonic development** of the fishes is principally distinguished from that of the higher Vertebrates by the fact that neither *amnion* nor *allantois* are developed. Both the small eggs of the Teleosteans, which are provided with a micropyle, and the large eggs of the Plagiostomes, which are surrounded by a hard horny case, contain a large quantity of food yolk, and undergo a partial segmentation. The eggs of Amphioxus and of the Cyclostomes, however, undergo a total segmentation. As a rule the young fishes leave the egg-membranes tolerably early, with more or less distinct remains of the yolk-sac, which is by this time completely taken up into the interior of the body, but projects externally, like a hernia. Although the body-form of the just-hatched fish differs essentially from that of the adult animal, yet no true metamorphosis takes place save in a few exceptional cases.

Most fishes live in the sea, and the number of their species and genera increases as we approach the equator. But they are not all exclusively confined to fresh or salt water. Many, as the Plagiostomes, live almost entirely in the sea; others, as the *Cyprinoidei* and *Esocidæ*, are confined to fresh water, but there are also fish which periodically change their habitat, especially at spawning time. Some fish live in subterranean waters and are blind like the inhabitants of caves (*Amblyopsis spelæus*). Few fish are able to live any length of time out of water; as a rule the wider the gill-slits, the quicker does the fish die on dry land. Fishes with narrow gill-slits (Eels) possess an uncommon tenacity of life out of water. According to Hancock, a species of *Doras* migrates in great shoals over the surface of the ground from one piece of water to another. Except the *Dipnoi*, certain East Indian fresh-water fish, whose upper pharyngeal bones are hollowed out into the form of a labryinth and form a multicellular reservoir for water, are capable of living the longest time out of water (*Anabas scandens*). There are even fishes which can fly (*Exocœtus, Dactylopterus*).

Fishes are of great importance to our knowledge of the development of animal life on the earth owing to the frequent appearance of their fossil remains in all geological periods. In the palæozoic formations very singular fish-forms, as the *Cephalaspidæ* (*Cepalaspis, Coccosteus, Pterichthys*), constitute the oldest representatives of the

Vertebrata. From the palæozoic formations to the chalk we find almost exclusively cartilaginous fishes and Ganoids, amongst which the forms with persistent notochord and cartilaginous skull predominate. Ganoids, with a fully-developed bony skeleton, round scales and an externally homocercal caudal fin, appear for the first time in the Jura, where we also find the first Teleosteans. From the chalk onwards, in the more recent formations, the Teleosteans increase in number and variety of forms the nearer we approach to the fauna of the present time.

## Order 1.—LEPTOCARDII * (ACRANIA).

*Lanceolate Fishes without paired fins. The notochord is persistent; there is no skull-capsule. The blood is colourless, and there are pulsating vascular trunks.*

The body of *Amphioxus* (which was taken by Pallas for a slug) is about two inches long. It is shaped like a lancet, and is provided with dorsal and anal fin-like folds, which, however, are without rays, and are continued into the lancet-shaped caudal fin. In the place of the vertebral column the strong notochord persists; on the dorsal side of this is the spinal cord, the slightly swollen anterior extremity of which represents the rudiment of the brain. There is no capsule corresponding to the skull. There is a rudimentary eye, consisting of an unpaired pigment spot, situated at the anterior end of the central nervous system in the nervous tissue; also a small olfactory pit placed on the left side. There is no auditory organ.

The mouth, which is without jaws, is a long slit supported by a jointed horse-shoe-shaped cartilage, bearing ciliated cirri. It leads into a long and spacious sac (pharynx), which is pierced by a number of lateral slits, and serves the function of respiration. At the entrance of the pharynx there are two folds, and on either side three finger-shaped ciliated projections. The walls on each side are supported by

* Joh. Müller, "Ueber den Bau und die Lebenserscheinungen des Branchiostoma lubricum (Amphioxus lanceolatus)." *Abhandl. der Berliner Akad.*, 1842.

Kowalevski, "Entwickelungsgeschichte von Amphioxus lanceolatus." St. Petersburg, 1867.

Kowalevski, "Weitere Studien, etc." *Arch. für mikr. Anatomie*, Tom. XIII.

W. Rolph, "Untersuchungen über den Bau des Amphioxus lanceolatus." *Morph. Jahr.*, Tom. II., 1876.

P. Langerhans, "Zur Anatomie des Amphioxus lanceolatus." *Arch. für mikrosk. Anatomie*, Tom. XII.

B. Hatschek, "Studien über die Entwickelung des Amphioxus." *Arbeiten aus dem Zool. Institute in Wien*, Tom. IV., 1881.

obliquely directed rods, and form over the rods leaf-shaped, inwardly projecting branchial folds. Between the latter there are slit-like openings for the outflow of the water, which passes into a superficial cavity—the *atrial cavity*—produced secondarily by the growing over of a fold of the integument and opening to the exterior by a pore—the *atrial pore*—on the ventral side. The intestine begins at the posterior end of this branchio-pharyngeal sac, and passes in a straight course as far as the tail, where it opens by a somewhat laterally-placed anus. The intestinal tube is divided into two regions, of which the anterior receives a cæcal hepatic sac, which extends forwards on the left side of the pharynx.

The **vascular system** is without an independent heart, but in its place the principal vessels pulsate. The arrangement of the vessels permits of comparison with the vascular apparatus of the Invertebrata (Annelids), and at the same time it represents, in the simplest form, the arrangement typical of Vertebrates. A longitudinal trunk running beneath the respiratory sac gives off numerous vessels, which are contractile at their origin, to the gills. The anterior pair of these branchial arteries forms a contractile vascular arch placed behind the mouth, the two parts of which unite beneath the notochord to form the aorta, which receives the next following branchial arteries. The venous blood returning from the organs is collected in a vessel placed above the hepatic cæcum; this vessel becomes the subpharyngeal longitudinal trunk. The blood returned from the intestinal canal is collected in a vessel—the hepatic vein—which breaks up into fine branches on the hepatic cæcum. A second contractile vessel (vena cava) receives the blood from these branches, and conducts it back into the subpharyngeal longitudinal trunk. The blood corpuscles are colourless.

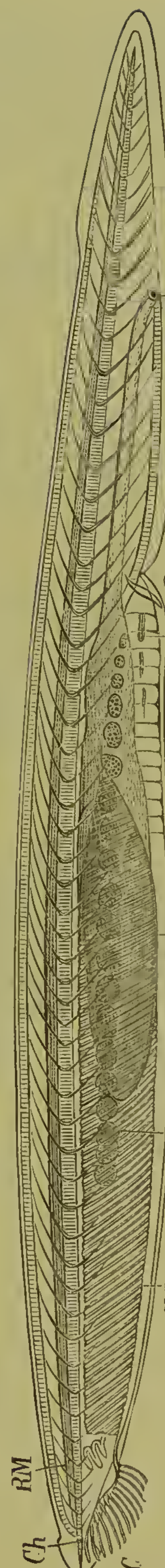



Fig. 597.—*Amphioxus lanceolatus.* *C*, oral cirri; *KS*, gills; *L*, liver; *A*, anal aperture; *N*, longitudinal folds said to function as kidneys; *P*, pore of the branchial chamber; *Ov*, ovary; *Ch*, notochord; *RM*, spinal cord.

**Generative Organs.**—The animals are diœcious. The ovaries and testes resemble each other externally, and consist of a series of paired bodies. They are arranged segmentally (in prolongations of the body cavity), one pair being found in each segment over the

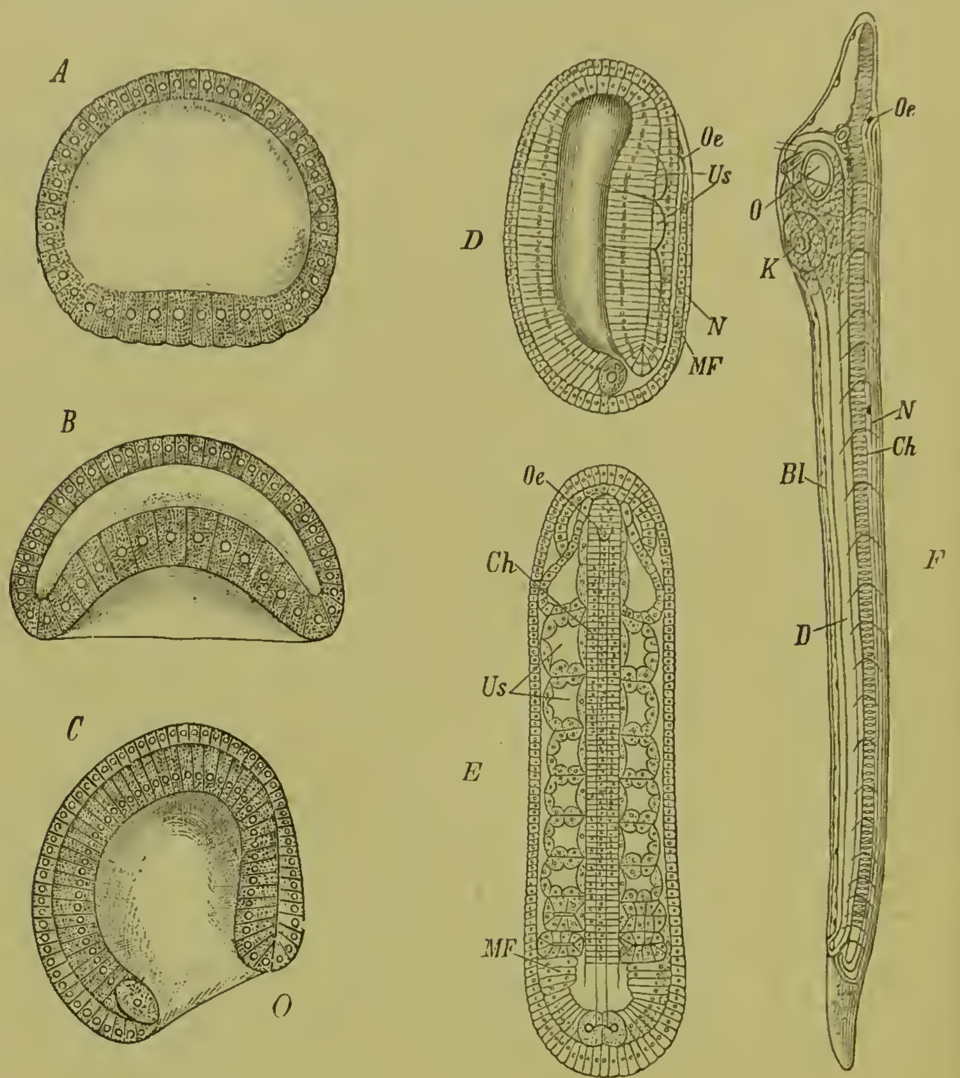



FIG. 598.—Development of *Amphioxus* (after B. Hatschek). *A*, Blastosphere. *B*, commencing invagination of the entoderm (gastrula). *C*, Later gastrula, the cilia of the ectoderm cells are not represented. *D*, Stage with two somites (primitive segments), seen in optical longitudinal section. *US*, Primitive segments or somites ; *MF*, mesoderm folds , *N*, medullary canal ; *Oe*, external opening of the latter. *E*, Stage with nine somites seen from the dorsal surface to shew the asymmetry of the somites, the notochord (*Ch*) is shown in section. *F*, Larva with mouth (*O*) and first gill slit (*K*) seen from the left side ; *D*, intestine ; *Bl*, ventral blood-vessel.

greater part of the length of the branchial sac (fig. 597, *Ov*). The generative products are dehisced into the atrial cavity, and pass thence through the pharynx and mouth to the exterior.

For a short distance in front of the atrial pore the epithelium of the ventral wall of the atrial cavity is thrown into a number of peculiar longitudinal folds which have been interpreted as **kidneys.**

**Development.**—The eggs undergo a total segmentation. The cells resulting from segmentation form a blastosphere, which by invagination is transformed into a ciliated gastrula larva (fig. 598, *A*, *B*, *C*). The mesoderm is developed from lateral folds of the entoderm, and at once segments into somites; and at the same time the medullary canal, which communicates with the alimentary canal behind and opens freely to the exterior in front (fig. 598, *D*), is formed from the ectoderm. Soon after the notochord arises from the endoderm. The changes, which take place in the larval life, are introduced by a considerable elongation of the body. In the further development the larva is remarkable for a striking asymmetry (of somites, mouth, anterior gill-slit, anus, olfactory organ). The branchial apparatus, which is at first free, is afterwards covered by a reduplication of the skin (formation of the atrial or peribranchial cavity).

The only genus of the *Leptocardii* is *Amphioxus* Yarrel (*Branchiostoma* Costa) including a single species distributed on the sandy coasts of the North Sea, of the Mediterranean, and of South America. *A. lanceolatus* Yarrel, Lancelet. The forms described as *A. Belcheri* Gray. from the Indian Ocean, and *A. elongatus* Sundev. probably belong to the same species.

## *Order* 2.—Cyclostomi* (Marsipobranchi).

*Vermiform Fishes without pectoral or pelvic fins; with cartilaginous skeleton and persistent notochord. There are six or seven pairs of pouch-like gills. The olfactory fossa is unpaired, and the circular or semicircular suctorial mouth is without jaws.*

Fig. 599.—*Myxine glutinosa* (règne animal).

The *Cyclostomi* have a cylindrical vermiform shape (fig. 599), and

* Joh. Müller, "Vergleichende Anatomie der Myxinoiden." Berlin, 1835-45.
Aug. Müller, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Neunaugen." *Müller's Archiv.*, 1856.
Max Schultze, "Die Entwickelungsgeschichte von P. Planeri." Haarlem, 1856.
P. Langerhans, "Untersuchungen über Petromyzon Planeri." Freiburg, 1873.
W. Müller, "Ueber das Urogenitalsystem des Amphioxus und der Cyclostomen." *Jen. naturwiss. Zeitschr.*, Tom. IX., 1875.
A. Schneider, "Beiträge zur vergleichenden Anatomie und Entwickelungsgeschichte der Wirbelthiere." Berlin, 1879.
Calberla, "Zur Entwickelung des Medullarrohrs und der Chorda dorsalis der Teleostier und der Petromyzonten." *Morphol. Jahrb.*, Tom. III., 1877.

their skin is without scales. They have no paired fins but the system of vertical fins is developed over the whole length of the dorsal surface and of the tail, and is usually supported by cartilaginous rays. The skeleton is confined to a cartilaginous rudiment of the vertebral column and skull. The notochord persists as the axial skeleton: its sheath presents traces of segmentation in the presence of rudimentary cartilaginous neural arches (fig. 600, *b*), and in the caudal region (*Petromyzon*) of the lower vertebral arches also.

At the anterior end of the notochord there is a cartilagino-membranous cranial capsule enclosing the brain. It has a bony basal region and lateral cartilaginous vesicles in which the auditory organs are enclosed (fig. 600). In place of the visceral skeleton there are cartilaginous pieces surrounding the palate and pharynx, various labial cartilages and a complicated frame work of cartilaginous rods, which form the so-called branchial basket round the branchial sacs, and are in part attached to the vertebral column.

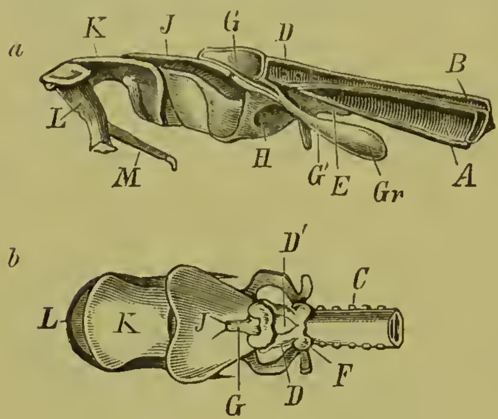



FIG. 600.—Skull and beginning of the vertebral column of *Petromyzon marinus* (after Joh. Müller). *a*, In longitudinal vertical section. *b*, Seen from above. *A*, notochord; *B*, neural canal; *C*, rudimentary vertebral arches; *D*, cartilaginous part, and *D'*, membranous part of the cranial roof; *E*, base of skull; *F*, auditory capsule; *G*, nasal capsule; *G'*, naso-palatine duct; *Gr*, blind end of *G'*; *H*, process of the bony palate; *J*, posterior plate covering the mouth; *K*, anterior plate covering the mouth; *L*, labial ring; *M*, styliform appendage of *L*.

The *Cyclostomi* possess a **brain** of the piscine type with three principal sense nerves and a reduced number of spinal-like nerves. Two **eyes** are always present, but they may be hidden under the skin or even covered by muscles (*Myxine*, larva of *Petromyzon*). The **olfactory organ** is an unpaired sac opening in the median line between the eyes. In the Myxinoids the olfactory capsule has in addition a posterior opening which pierces the palate and can be closed by a valvular apparatus. This communication between the nasal and pharyngeal cavities serves for the introduction of water into the branchial sac; for the mouth when performing its function as a suctorial organ is closed so far as the passage of water is concerned. The **auditory organ** is reduced to a simple membranous labyrinth which consists of the vestibulum and one or two semicircular canals.

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth, which is surrounded by fleshy lips and often by filamentous processes, is circular in shape, though the lips can be applied together so as to form a median longitudinal slit. It leads into a funnel-shaped buccal cavity, which is without jaws and is armed on the soft palate as well as on the floor with horny teeth (fig. 601). At the bottom of the funnel is the tongue, which, moving up and down like a piston, enables the animal to attach itself by its mouth as by a sucker. The pharynx, which follows the mouth, communicates with the branchial sacs either directly or by a special passage (*Petromyzon*). The intestinal canal passes straight to the rectum and is divided into stomach and intestine by a narrow region, the walls of which project so as to form a sort of valve. The liver is always well developed, but there is no swimming bladder.

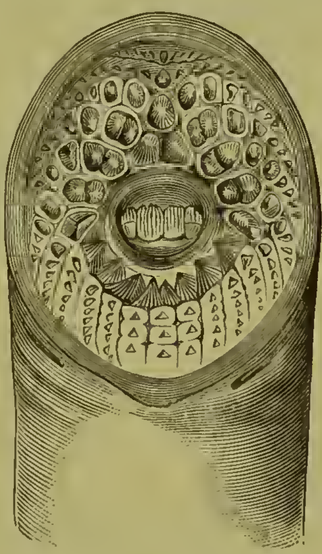


FIG. 601.—Head of *Petromyzon marinus*, seen from below Showing the horny teeth of the buccal cavity (after Heckel and Kner).

The **gills** (fig. 592) lie at the sides of the œsophagus in six or seven pairs of branchial sacs. These open on either side by external branchial passages into the same number of separate respiratory apertures. In Myxine on the other hand there is on each side, almost on the ventral surface, only one opening, into which all the external branchial passages of the same side open.

On the other side the sacs communicate with the œsophagus, but, except in *Ammocœtes*, never directly by simple openings but by internal branchial passages or, as in *Petromyzon*, by a common passage lying beneath the œsophagus into which passage all the other branchial passages open. The water flows in from the exterior through the external branchial openings or in Myxine through the nasal passage, and is driven by the contraction of the constrictor muscles of the branchial sacs either out by the same way (*Petromyzon*), or into the œsophagus, and from this to the exterior through a special unpaired canal on the left side.

The **heart** lies beneath and behind the branchial skeleton. Some of the vascular trunks pulsate, *e.g.*, the portal vein in *Myxine*. The aortic bulb has no muscular layer, and contains, as in the Teleosteans, only two valves.

The **urinary** and **genital** organs are of simple structure. In *Myxine* the kidneys retain the primitive segmental arrangement, there being a urinary tubule and Malpighian body in every segment. In *Myxine* the urinary ducts open with the genital pore, in *Petromyzon* into the intestine. In front of the kidneys, in the region of the heart, there is another part of the kidney which in the adult animal is no longer functional. This is the head-kidney or pronephros (Nebenniere of Joh. Müller). It consists of a number of glandular ducts, which begin with funnel-shaped openings into the body cavity (pericardial cavity), and in the young animal open into the urinary duct.

The genital glands are unpaired in both sexes. In *Myxine* they lie on the right side; in *Petromyzon* in the middle line. They never possess ducts, but the eggs and spermatozoa are at the breeding time dehisced into the body cavity, whence they pass out through a pair of genital pores placed behind the anus.

The *Petromyzontidæ* undergo a kind of metamorphosis, which was

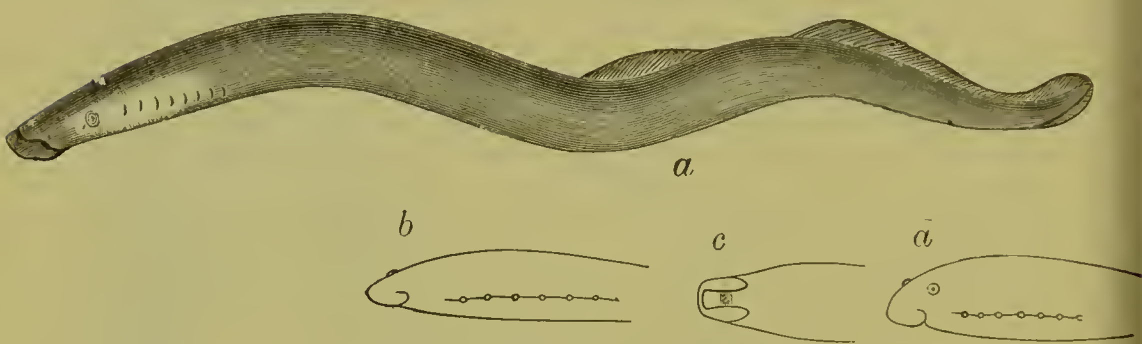



FIG. 602.—*a*, *Petromyzon fluviatilis* (after Heckel and Kner). *b*, *c*, *d*, stages in the transformation of *Ammocœtes branchialis* into *Petromyzon Planeri* (after v. Siebold). *b*, Head of an eyeless larva seen from the side; *c*, the same seen from underneath; *d*, later stage with small eyes, seen from the side.

discovered two hundred years ago by Baldner, a fisherman of Strasburg, but has only recently been rediscovered by Aug. Müller. The young larvæ (fig. 602, *b*, *c*, *d*) are blind and without teeth. They possess a small mouth, surrounded by a horseshoe-shaped upper lip, and were for a long time placed in a special genus—*Ammocœtes.*

The Cyclostomes live partly in the sea; they ascend rivers at spawning time, sometimes carried by the Salmon and Shad (*Alausa vulgaris*), and deposit their eggs in holes in the river-bed. Others are river-fish. They attach themselves to stones and to dead and living fish, which latter they may in this way kill. They also eat worms and small aquatic animals. The genus *Myxine* is exclusively parasitic on other fish and even makes its way into their body cavity, thus affording an example of an endoparasitic Vertebrate.

Fam. **Myxinoidæ** (Hags). Head obliquely truncated; suctorial mouth without lips, and surrounded by labial processes; eyes hidden beneath the skin. There is an opening from the nasal cavity into the mouth through the posterior part of the palate. The branchial pouches open to the exterior either by a common ventral aperture on each side (*Myxine*, *Gastrobranchus*) or by seven apertures on each side or asymmetrically by six apertures on one side and seven on the other (*Bdellostoma*). Marine. *Myxine glutinosa* L. (fig. 599). *Bdellostoma heptatrema* Joh. Müll., found at the Cape.

Fam. **Petromyzontidæ.** Lampreys—Nine-eyes. With seven external gill slits on each side of the neck, and a common internal branchial passage which opens anteriorly into the pharynx. The nasal cavity ends blindly. The round mouth, without labial processes, with fleshy lips, which can be approached so as to leave a slit-like opening. *Petromyzon marinus* L. Lamprey, two feet in length, ascends rivers with the Shad, in the spring, to spawn. *P. fluviatilis* L., River Nine-eye (fig. 602 *a*). *P. Planeri* Bloch, small river Nine-eye, with *Ammocœtes branchialis* as larva. It attains a length of 5 to 6 inches.

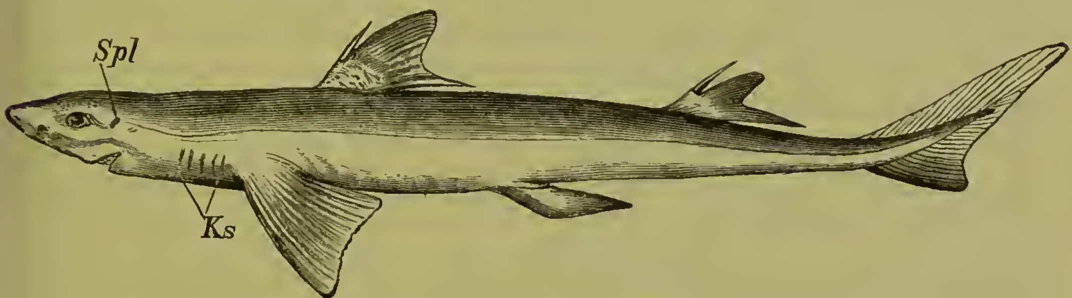



FIG. 603.—*Acanthias vulgaris* *Spl*, spiracle; *Ks*, gill slits.

## *Order* 3.—SELACHII* (CHONDROPTERYGII).

*Cartilaginous Fishes with large pectoral and pelvic fins, with transverse ventrally-placed mouth, usually with five (rarely six or seven) pairs of branchial pouches and branchial slits. They have a muscular conus arteriosus which contains several rows of valves. The intestine has a spiral valve.*

The Selachians differ strikingly in their outward appearance from all other Fishes (fig. 603), and present even among themselves great variations. The form and position of the mouth, which is a broad transverse slit placed on the under surface of the snout, is an important distinguishing character. The skin usually contains a number of bony granules (ossified dermal papillæ, *placoid* scales), and obtains

* Compare Joh. Müller and J. Henle, "Systematische Beschreibung der Plagiostomen," mit 60 Steindrucktafeln. Berlin, 1841.

Fr. Leydig, "Beiträge zur mikroskopischen Anatomie und Entwickelungsgeschichte der Rochen und Haie." Leipzig, 1852.

C. Gegenbaur, "Untersuchungen zur vergleichenden Anatomie der Wirbelthiere." Leipzig, 1872.

F. M. Balfour, "A monograph on the development of Elasmobranch Fishes." London, 1878.

C. Hasse, "Das natürliche System der Elasmobranchier." Jena, 1879.

thereby a rough shagreen-like surface. Sometimes, especially on the tail (*Raiidæ*), there are larger bony plates, arranged in rows and provided with pointed spinous processes, which serve for protection (*ichthyodorulites*). All the Selachians have large pectoral and pelvic fins. The former are attached by a cartilaginous shoulder-girdle to the posterior part of the skull, or to the anterior region of the vertebral column; they are either sharply marked off and have an almost vertical position on the anterior part of the body (*Chimæra* and *Squalidæ*), or they have the form of very large, horizontally-placed lateral expansions of the body (*Rays*). In the latter case they reach by means of the so-called cranial fin cartilages to the anterior end of the snout, and lean by posterior suspensors on the pelvic framework of the ventral fins; the latter are always placed near the anus, and in the male bear peculiar grooved cartilaginous appendages, which are the accessory copulatory organs (*claspers*). The unpaired fins also may be well developed, and, as their number and position varies in the different forms, they may be of systematic importance. A sharp bony spine is sometimes present in front of the dorsal fins, or completely isolated on the dorsal surface of the tail (*Trygon*), and this as well as the spinous and hooked processes of the dermal bony plates serve as a weapon of defence. The caudal fin is always markedly heterocercal externally.

The skull is an undivided, cartilaginous capsule, the base of which sometimes is articulated to the vertebral column (*Chimæra* and *Raiidæ*), while sometimes it is excavated like the body of a vertebra (fig. 571). On the facial region the cartilaginous mandibular arch persists, and is attached to the auditory region of its skull by the *hyomandibular*. The palatoquadrate bar is moveably connected to the cranial capsule (except in *Chimæra*). The palatoquadrate and the lower jaw are always cartilaginous, and as a rule are abundantly furnished with teeth. The vertebral column with its remains of the notochord is also principally cartilaginous, but separate biconcave vertebræ are developed, the form of which offers numerous variations. In all cases there are dorsal and ventral arches, which sometimes remain separate and sometimes fuse with the vertebral bodies. Ribs only appear as cartilaginous rudiments.

In the structure of the **gills** (fig. 593), the Selachians differ essentially from the Teleosteans in possessing five branchial pouches on either side; the branchial lamellæ are attached in their whole length to the partition walls, which are supported by the lateral cartilaginous rays of the branchial arches. The branchial pouches are placed relatively far back, and each of them has a separate external opening. These openings are in the *Squalidæ* on the sides, in the *Raiidæ* on the ventral surface of the body. In the *Chimæridæ* the branchial pouches open on either side into a common gill-slit, over which a cutaneous fold, arising from the suspensorium of the jaw and serving as a branchial operculum, is spread.

The **dentition** presents many variations. Sometimes (*Hexanchus, Acanthias*) the whole of the buccal cavity as far as the entrance to the œsophagus is covered with small teeth of the mucous membrane (*placoid scales* *); sometimes there are larger teeth, which also always belong to the mucous membrane, and are arranged in rows on the rounded edge of the jaw in such a manner that the younger posterior rows of teeth have their points turned inwards, while the teeth of the anterior rows, which are older and more or less worn, have their points turned upwards and outwards.

In the *Squalides*, dagger-shaped or saw-shaped serrated teeth preponderate, while conical or flat pavement-like molar teeth are characteristic of the greater number of *Raiides*.

**Spiracles** are frequently present on the upper surface of the head behind the eyes; they are used for the expulsion of the water from the pharyngeal cavity. The **digestive canal** is dilated to a spacious stomach, but is relatively short; the small intestine is furnished with a spirally coiled fold of the mucous membrane—the so-called spiral valve—which considerably increases the extent of the absorbing surface. A swimming bladder is always absent, though the rudiment of it is often discernible.

The **heart** * has a muscular *conus arteriosus;* it contains two to five rows of valves, and represents a part of the ventricle which has become independent.

In the structure of the **brain** and of the **sense organs**, the Selachians hold the highest place amongst the fishes (fig. 588). The hemispheres are of relatively considerable size, present longitudinal and transverse impressions, and traces of convolutions on their surface. The cerebellum, also, may be so well developed that the fourth ventricle is almost entirely covered by it. The two optic nerves always form a chiasma and some of their fibres cross. The eyes in the *Squalides* are not only protected by free lids, but often also by a moveable nictitating membrane.

* O. Hertwig, *Jen. naturwiss. Zeitschr.* Tom. VIII., 1874.

* C. Gegenbaur, "Zur vergleichenden Anatomie des Herzens." *Jen. naturwiss. Zeitschr.* Tom. II.

The **urinary organs** of the *Plagiostomi* are paired kidneys, which sometimes retain the ciliated funnels (*nephrostomata*).

The sexes can be easily distinguished by the form of the pelvic fins. A true copulation always takes place. The female genital organs consist of a large, single or double ovary and paired glandular oviducts, which are separate from the ovaries and begin with a common funnel-shaped ostium, and in their further course each of them possesses a uterus-like dilatation. The two oviducts open by a common aperture (in the *Chimæridæ* only by separate orifices) into the cloaca. The ova have a large amount of food-yolk, and are enclosed by a mass of albumen, and sometimes by a thin membranous folded chorion, sometimes by a tough, parchment-like, flat shell, which is prolonged into four horns, or into twisted strings, which serve to attach it to marine plants. In the latter case the eggs are laid (the true Rays and Dogfish); in the former (electric Rays and viviparous *Squalides*), on the other hand, they develop in the uterus.

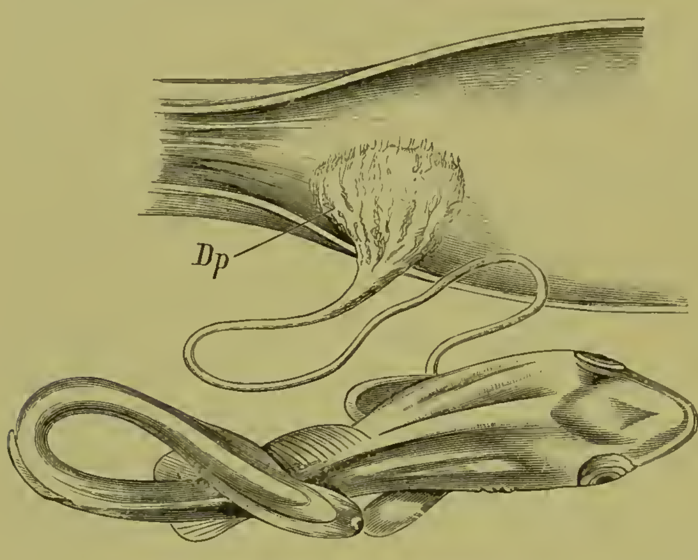


FIG. 604.—Embryo of *Mustelus lævis*, connected with the uterus by the umbilical placenta (*Dp*) (after Joh. Müller).

In this case the eggs are closely applied to the walls of the uterus during the development, the folds of the chorion interlocking with the ridges of the uterine walls. Thus the addition of nutriment is rendered possible. Sometimes the connection between the mother and the embryo is more intimate, and is effected by means of a true umbilical placenta, which was known to Aristotle in *Mustelus lævis* (fig. 604). As Joh. Müller * has shown, the long-stalked yolk-sac of the embryos of *Mustelis lævis* and species of *Carcharias* develops a great number of villi, which are covered by the delicate egg membrane, and like the cotyledons of Ruminants fit into corresponding depressions in the uterine mucous membrane. In other respects,

* Compare Joh. Müller, "Ueber den glatten Hai des Aristoteles." *Abhandl. der Berliner Akad.*, 1840.

also, the embryos of the Plagiostomes exhibit notable peculiarities, especially in the possession of external branchial filaments (fig. 605), which are lost long before birth.

Almost all the Plagiostomes are marine; only a few of them are found in the larger rivers of America and India. They are all carnivorous, and feed on large fishes, or crustacea and mollusca. Some few (*Torpedo*) possess an electric organ.

With the exception of *Pleuracanthus*, remains of spines and teeth only are preserved in the Palæozoic formations. From the secondary period onwards the remains are more complete and numerous.

### Sub-order 1. **Holocephali.**

*Selachians with maxillo-palatine apparatus firmly fused to the skull, with single external gill slit on each side and small opercular membrane.*

The thick strangely formed head is provided with large eyes which

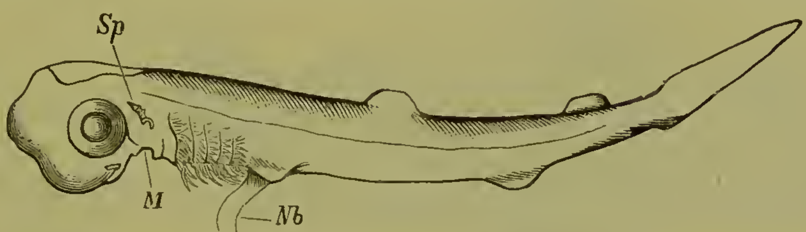



FIG. 605.—Embryo of *Acanthias* with external gills. *Sp*, spiracle; *M*, mouth; *Nb*, stalk of yolk-sac.

are without lids. The mouth is small and lies on the under surface of the snout. The maxillo-palatine (palato-quadrate) bar is firmly fused with the skull, while the lower jaw articulates with a styliform process of the skull (hyomandibular). The mandible has but few teeth (four above, two below). The naked skin is traversed by the large passages of the lateral sense organs. There are no spiracles. The vertebral bodies are replaced by thin calcareous annular incrustations in the sheath of the notochord. They lay eggs with horny shells.

Fam. **Chimæridæ** (Sea-cats). *Chimæra monstrosa* L. (fig. 606), Northern Seas and Mediterranean; *Callorhynchus antarcticus* Lac., Cape and Pacific.

### Sub-order 2. **Plagiostomi.**

*Selachians with wide transverse mouth, which is placed far back, separate vertebral bodies, and a more or less reduced notochord. There are five (exceptionally six or seven) external gill slits on each side.*

The nasal apertures are placed on the under surface of the snout, a little in front of the transversely arched mouth. The skin is rarely naked; it is usually shagreen-like in consequence of the osseous bodies which are embedded in it, or it may also be covered with osseous plates and scutes. The palato-quadrate bar is moveable and is separate from the cartilaginous cranial capsule.

Tribe 1. **Squalides** (Sharks). Spindle-shaped Plagiostomes, with lateral gill slits; eyelids with free edges; incomplete shoulder girdle, without cranial fin cartilages.

The body is spindle-shaped, carries the pectoral fins more or less vertically, and ends with a powerful tail, which is bent dorsalwards at the end. There are, however, forms which, with regard to their body shape, are allied to the Rays, and constitute forms of transition to the latter group, *e.g.*, the genus *Squatina*. The teeth are usually pointed and dagger-shaped, and placed in numerous rows. The

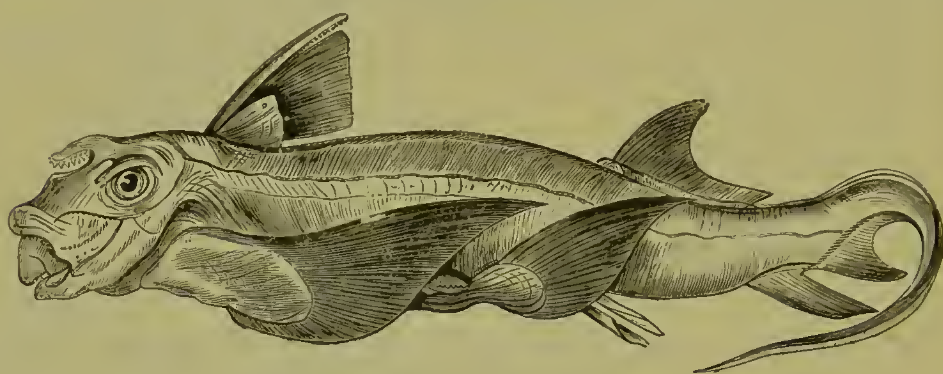


FIG. 606.—*Chimæra monstrosa* (règne animal).

families are distinguished principally by the number and position of the fins, by the presence or absence of spiracles and of a nictitating membrane, and also by the form and structure of the teeth.

Fam. **Scyllidæ** (Dog-fishes). *Scyllium canicula* L., the coasts of Europe.

Fam. **Cestraciontidæ**. *Cestracion Philippi* Blainv.

Fam. **Lamnidæ** (Porbeagles). *Lamna glauca* Müll., Henle; *Selache maxima* Gunn., reaches a length of thirty-two feet.

Fam. **Carchariidæ**. *Carcharias glaucus* Rond, the Blue Shark. with umbilical placenta. *C. lamia* Risso. These two last are found in the Mediterranean and the Ocean. *Zygæna malleus* Risso, the Hammer-headed shark.

Fam. **Galeidæ** (Topes). *Galeus canis* Rond., European seas; *Mustelus vulgaris* and *lævis* Rond., with umbilical placenta, both are found in the Mediterranean.

Fam. **Notidanidæ**. *Notidanus* (*Hexanchus*) *griseus* Gm. and *N.* (*Heptanchus*) *cinereus* Gm., Mediterranean and Ocean.

Fam. **Spinacidæ** (Spiny Dog-fishes). *Acanthias vulgaris* Risso (fig. 603), found from the northern seas to the South Sea.

Fam. **Squatinidæ** (Angel- or Monk-fishes). *Squatina vulgaris* Risso (*Squalus squatina* L.) European seas.

Tribe 2. **Rajides** (Skates and Rays). Plagiostomes, with flat bodies; with five gill slits opening on the ventral surface internal to the pectoral fins; with complete pectoral girdle and cranial fin cartilages, without anal fins.

In consequence of the size and horizontal expansion of the thoracic fins the flat body presents the form of a large disc, prolonged behind into the long thin tail, which is frequently armed with spines, rarely with one or two serrated stings. The mandibles are short and stout, and are furnished with teeth which may be either small and conical, and arranged near one another in rows, or broad and plate-like. The Rays live for the most part at the bottom of the sea, and feed principally on Crustaceans and Molluscs. The Torpedos have an electrical apparatus between the fin cartilages and the branchial pouches. By means of this organ (fig. 590) they can stun even larger fishes. Many Rays reach the considerable size of ten to twelve feet.

Fam. **Squatinorajidæ.** *Pristis antiquorum* Lath. Sawfish, Ocean and Mediterranean; *Rhinobatus granulatus* Cuv.

Fam. **Torpedidæ.** Electric Rays. *Torpedo marmorata* Risso. Mediterranean and Ocean: *Narcine brasiliensis* v. Ott.

Fam. **Rajidæ.** Skates and Rays. *Raja clavata* L.; *R. miraletus* L.

Fam. **Trygonidæ.** Sting Rays. *Trygon pastinaca* L. (*Pastinaca marina* Bell), Atlantic Ocean.

Fam. **Myliobatidæ.** Eagle Rays or Sea Devils. *Myliobatis aquilla* L., Mediterranean.

## Order 4.—Ganoidei.*

*Cartilaginous and bony Fishes, with enamelled scales, or with osseous dermal plates and fulcra, with muscular conus arteriosus containing rows of valves; with comb-shaped gills and spiral valve in the intestine.*

In former periods of the world's history this order was richly and variously represented (*Sauroidæ, Lepidoidæ, Pycnodonta*), while at the present day it contains only a few forms (*Lepidosteus, Polypterus, Calamoichthys, Amia, Acipenser, Scaphirhynchus, Spatularia*). It is difficult to establish the limit towards the Teleosteans, since there is

* Joh. Müller, "Ueber den Bau und die Grenzen der Ganoiden." *Abhandl. der Berliner Akad.*, 1846.

J. Hyrtl, "Ueber den Zusammenhang der Geschlechts-und Harnwerkzenge bei den Ganoiden. *Denkschr. der k. Akad. der Wissensch.*, Tom. VIII., Wien, 1854.

Lütken, "Ueber die Begrenzung und Eintheilung der Ganoiden." Uebersetzt von Willemoes-Suhm. Palæontographica, 1872.

no single differential character common to all the Ganoids (even the spiral valve of the intestine is rudimentary in *Amia* and *Lepidosteus*).

The scales from which the name of the order is derived are for the most part of a rhomboidal form, and are always covered with a smooth layer of enamel. They are connected together by articular processes, and encircle the body in obliquely directed rings (fig. 607).

As regards the structure of the skeleton, the Ganoids are partly cartilaginous and partly bony fishes. Both among the fossil Ganoids and those living at the present time (Sturgeon) there are forms which, by the persistence of the notochord and the formation of bony arches, are allied to the *Chimæridæ*. The cartilaginous cranial capsule is always covered with external membrane bones, and the mandibular suspensorium, the jaws, the branchial arches, and the operculum possess a bony consistency. In the so-called bony Ganoids, the primordial cranium is more or less completely replaced by a bony skull, and the vertebral column gradually becomes bony, inasmuch as the vertebræ acquire, through various intermediate steps,

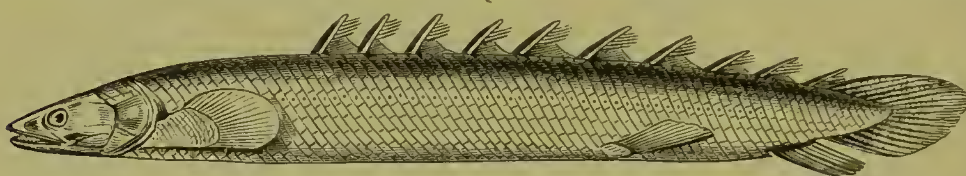


FIG. 607.—*Polypterus bichir.*

the biconcave form of the Teleostean vertebræ, and in *Lepidosteus* reach a phase of development in which, by the presence of an anterior articulating head, they resemble the opisthocœlous vertebræ of Amphibia. Bony ribs, also, are fairly frequently present.

The caudal fin is usually heterocercal, and the end of the vertebral column is sometimes continued into its superior lobe; there are, however, forms which are transitional in this respect, and lead to the homocercal (*diphycercal*) form. The spine-like splints known as *fulcra*, which are arranged in a single or double row on the upper edge and the first ray of the fins, particularly the caudal fin, are peculiar to Ganoids. ("Every fish with fulcra on the anterior edge of one or more fins is a Ganoid."—Joh. Müller.)

Anatomically the Ganoids present many points of resemblance to the Selachians. The anterior region of the ventricle is separated off as a rhythmically contractile *conus arteriosus*, and contains several longitudinal rows of valves, which extend as far as the anterior limit of the muscular investment, and prevent the blood flowing back from the artery into the conus during the diastole. The comb-shaped gills, on the other hand, lie, as in the Teleosteans, freely in a branchial cavity beneath a branchial operculum, to which a large gill containing venous blood is often attached. This respiratory accessory gill (opercular gill) is wanting in *Amia* and *Spatularia*, and must be distinguished from the pseudobranch of the spiracle, which may be present together with it.

All the Ganoids possess a swimming bladder with a *ductus pneumaticus* and two peritoneal canals (*abdominal pores*), which open at the sides of the anus (as in *Chimæra* and *Plagiostomi*). The optic nerves do not simply cross over one another, but form a chiasma with partial exchange of the fibres. The generative organs present many noteworthy peculiarities. There are two ovaries and the ripe eggs escape into the abdominal cavity. Thence they pass into an oviduct [Müllerian duct] which begins with a funnel-shaped opening into the body cavity and opens behind into the urinary duct or into the corresponding cornu of the urinary bladder (*Spatularia*, *Lepi-*

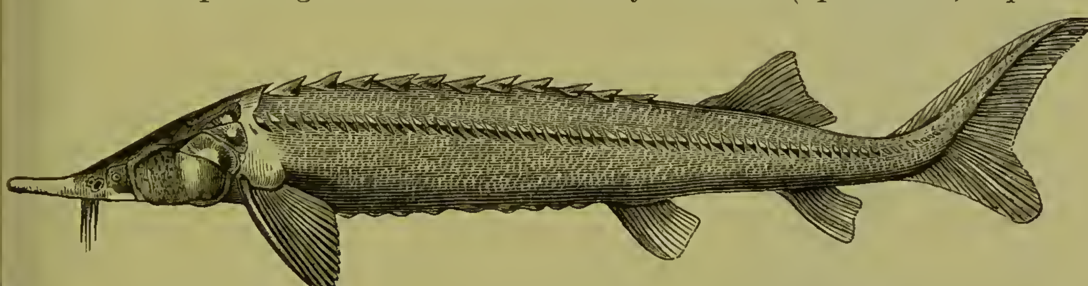


FIG. 608.—*Acipenser ruthenus* (after Heckel and Kner).

*dosteus*), or unites with the oviduct of the opposite side and opens behind the anus by a single genital pore into which the short urethra also opens. (Hyrtl.) In the two first cases a urogenital canal leads from the bladder to a urogenital pore placed behind the anus. In the male it is remarkable that the same abdominal funnels [Müllerian ducts] also function as seminal ducts. [It has been shown by Balfour and Parker (Structure and Development of Lepidosteus, Phil. Trans., 1882), that in *Lepidosteus* at any rate the testis is connected with the Wolffian body by a testicular network.]

Tribe 1. **Chondrostei.** Cartilaginous Ganoids with persistent notochord. Branchiostegal rays scanty or absent. Caudal fin heterocercal, with fulcra. Cranium cartilaginous, covered by dermal bones. The teeth are small or altogether absent. The skin is naked or has osseous plates instead of scales.

Fam. **Acipenseridæ** (Sturgeons). *Acipenser sturio* L., Sturgeon; *A. ruthenus* L., Sterlet (fig. 608); *A. huso* L. (Hausen), *Scaphirhynchus cataphractus* Gray, Mississippi.

Fam. **Spatularidæ** (Löffelstöre). *Spatularia* [*Polyodon*] *folium* Lac., Mississippi; *Sp. gladius* Martens, Yantsekiang.

Tribe 2. **Crossopterygii.** Ganoids with two broad jugular plates instead of the branchiostegal rays, and usually with a pointed (diphycercal) caudal fin. The shafts of the pectoral as well as of the pelvic fins, which are placed far back, are invested with scales, which also cover the rays. The scales are sometimes thin and cycloid, sometimes strong and rhomboid. The Crossopterygii lead to the *Dipnoi* and *Amphibia*.

Fam. **Polypteridæ.** With rhomboid scales, and dorsal fins divided up into a number of small fins. *Polypterus bichir* Geoffr. (fig. 607), with from eight to sixteen small fins, rivers of Tropical Africa; *Calamoichthys calabaricus* Smith, Old Calabar.

Tribe 3. **Euganoides** (Bony Ganoids). Ganoids with rhomboidal scales, and usually with fulcra on the anterior border of the fins. They have numerous branchiostegal rays. The pelvic fins are placed between the pectoral and anal fins.

Fam. **Lepidosteidæ** (Gar-Pikes, Bony Pikes). Form of body elongated, pike-like. The dorsal fins are placed far back; the caudal fin heterocercal and sharply cut off. Fresh waters of Cuba, Central and North America. *Lepidosteus platystomus* Raf.; *L. osseus* L.; *L. spatula* Lac.

Tribe 4. **Amiades.** Bony Ganoids, with large round enamelled scales, bony branchiostegal rays, and heterocercal caudal fin. There are no fulcra.

Fam. **Amiadæ.** *Amia calva* Bonap., rivers of Carolina; most nearly allied to the bony fishes (*Clupeidæ* and *Salmonidæ*).

## Order 5.—Teleostei (Bony Fishes).

*Fishes with bony skeleton, with free gills (usually four on each side) and an external branchial operculum. There is a bulbus arteriosus with two valves at its base. The optic nerves do not form a chiasma.*

The Teleosteans comprise by far the greatest number of all fishes, and are distinguished from the cartilaginous fishes and Ganoids by a number of anatomical characters. They possess a simple bulbus arteriosus with only two valves, which are placed opposite to each other at the origin of the bulbus. The bulbus arteriosus is not a separate part of the heart with independent pulsation, but the thickened commencement of the cardiac aorta. Spiracles and a spiral valve of the intestine are never found. The optic nerves simply cross one another, or the fibres of the one pass between the fibres of the other without forming a chiasma. The gills are usually comb-shaped, and, as in the Ganoids, lie freely in a branchial cavity under a branchial operculum, to which is added a a branchiostegal membrane, supported by branchiostegal rays. The skeleton is characterised by the well separated, usually bony vertebræ, and by the bony skull, beneath which remains of the primitive cartilaginous cranium often persist. The skin is only rarely naked or apparently without scales. In such cases the scales are very small and do not project from the surface; more frequently bony plates and scutes are present in it, especially behind the head. As a rule the skin is covered by cycloid or ctenoid scales which overlap one another.

The urinary and genital organs open behind the anus either separately or by a common aperture on a urogenital papilla. [The kidney is dilated in front to form a head-kidney, which, however, is in the adult, sometimes if not always, largely composed of a tissue resembling lymphatic tissue (Balfour). The generative ducts are continuous with the investments of the generative glands in *both* sexes, and in the male there is no connection between the testis and the kidney.]

Only a few Teleosteans are viviparous; they almost all lay small eggs in enormous numbers in protected places.

Sub-order 1. **Lophobranchii.** Teleosteans with armoured skin, elongated tubular snout which is without teeth. The gills are in the form of tufts and the gill slits are very narrow.

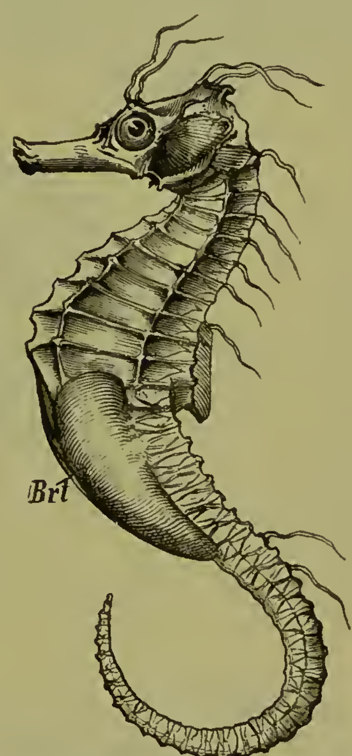



FIG. 609.—Male of *Hippocampus* with the brood-pouch (*Brt*).

Fam. **Pegasidæ.** The body is flattened: pectoral fins large, spread out like wings; pelvic fins small. *Pegasus volans* L., East Indies.

Fam. **Syngnathidæ.** The body is cylindrical or laterally compressed. The gill openings narrow, and pectoral fins small; males with brood-pouches (fig. 609). *Syngnathus acus* L., Pipe-fish; *Hippocampus antiquorum* Leach., Sea-horse, Mediterranean.

Sub-order 2. **Plectognathi.** Globular or laterally compressed Teleosteans, with immovably fused maxilla and præmaxilla, and narrow mouth. The dermal armour is strong and often bears spines. There are usually no pelvic fins. The gills are comb-shaped.

Tribe 1. **Sclerodermi.** Jaws with separated teeth.

Fam. **Ostracionidæ** (Trunk-fishes). Body coffer-like, triangular or quadrangular, often prolonged into horn-like processes; with firm dermal armour consisting of polyhedral bony plates, on which only the fins and tail are movable. *Ostracion triqueter* L. (fig. 610), West Indies; *O. quadricornis* L., West Africa.

Fam. **Balistidæ** (File-fishes). The body is laterally compressed, and the skin is covered with rough granules, or with hard rhomboid scales, and is often beautifully coloured. *Balistes maculatus* L., Atlantic and Indian Oceans.

Tribe 2. **Gymnodontes.** The jaws modified into a beak, with cutting undivided or double dental plate. Dorsal spines absent.

Fam. **Molidæ.** *Orthagoriscus mola* Bl. Sunfish.

Fam. **Tetrodontidæ** [Globefishes, Sea-Hedgehogs.] *Diodon hystrix* L., Atlantic and Indian Oceans; *Tetrodon cutaneus* Gthr., St. Helena.

Sub-order 3. **Physostomi.** With soft fins (malacopterygians), with

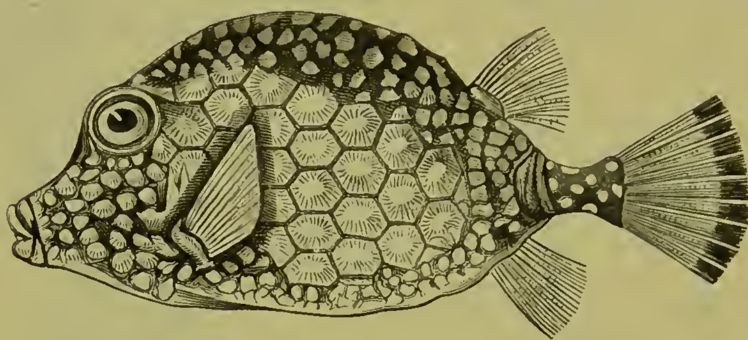


FIG. 610. —*Ostracion triqueter* (règne animal).

comb-shaped gills and separated jaw bones. Pelvic fins abdominal or absent. Swimming bladder always with a ductus pneumaticus.

Fam. **Murænidæ** (Eels). *Muræna helena* L.; *Anguilla anguilla* L. (*vulgaris*), Europe. At the breeding season in autumn they migrate from the rivers into the sea, and there first attain sexual maturity. The reproductive processes are not perfectly known, though male and female have been distinguished from one another, and the presence of both kinds of sexual organs has been shown. In the spring the young eels migrate from the sea into the rivers. *Conger vulgaris* Cuv., coasts of Europe.

Fam. **Gymnotidæ.** *Gymnotus electricus* L. (Electric eel). Lives in the swamps and rivers of South America, attains a length of six feet, and can, by means of its electric discharge, knock down even large animals, *e.g.*, horses. Celebrated by the experiments of A. v. Humboldt.

Fam. **Clupeidæ** (Herrings). With tolerably compressed body, which with the exception of the head is covered by large, thin, easily-detached scales. *Clupea harengus* L., the Herring of the northern seas. It appears every year at certain times, in enormous shoals, on the Scottish and Norwegian coasts. The principal takes occur in September and October. *C.* (*Harengula*) *sprattus* L., the Sprat, North Sea and Baltic; *Engraulis encrasicholus* Rond., Anchovy;

*Alausa vulgaris* Cuv., Val., the Shad; migrates in May at the spawning season from the sea into the rivers, *e.g.*, up the Rhine to Basel, and in the Main to Würzburg. Attains a length of three feet. *A. pilchardus* Bloch. Sardine, Mediterranean.

Fam. **Esocidæ** (Pikes). The head is broad and depressed; the dorsal fins are placed far back. Pseudobranch glandular, hidden. Voracious carnivorous fish, with wide throat and powerful dental armature. *Esox lucius* L., Pike; *Umbra Krameri* Joh. Müll.

Fam. **Salmonidæ.** With adipose fin, simple swimming bladder, and numerous pyloric appendages. The ovaries are sacs from which the eggs fall into the abdominal cavity. At spawning time, which is usually in the winter months, the two sexes often exhibit striking differences. They are large predatory fishes, and belong principally to the rivers, mountain streams, and lakes of the northern regions. They like clear cold waters with stony bottom; but they have, also, representatives in the sea, which ascend the rivers and their tributaries to spawn. *Coregonus Wartmanni* Bloch, Blaufelchen; in the Alpine lakes. *Thymallus vulgaris* Nilss. (*vexillifer*), Grayling; *Salmo salvelinus* L., Saibling; *S. hucho* L., Huchen, in the region of the Danube, a large predatory fish. *S. salar.*, Salmon; *S. lacustris* L. (Seeforelle, Schwebforelle), in the lakes of the Alps of Central Europe. *S. trutta* L., Salmon or Sea trout; *S. fario* L., Trout.

FIG. 611.—Lower pharyngeal bones with the teeth of a carp (after Heckel and Kner).

Fam. **Cyprinidæ** (Carps). Fresh-water fish, with narrow mouth, often provided with barbules. The jaws are weak and without teeth, but the lower pharyngeal bones are abundantly furnished with teeth (fig. 611). *Cyprinus carpio* L., the Carp; *Carassius vulgaris* Nilss., Crucian and Prussian Carps (Karausche); *Tinca vulgaris* Cuv., Tench; *Barbus fluviatilis* Ag., the Barbel;

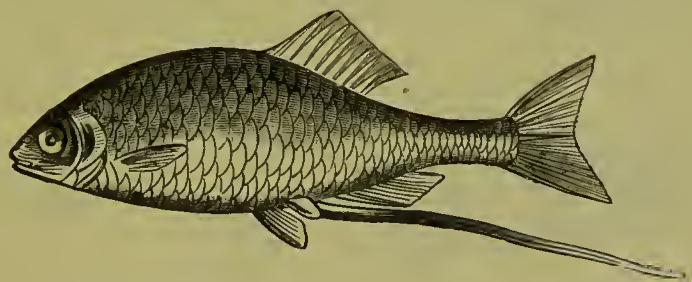


FIG. 612.—*Rhodeus amarus.* Female (after v. Siebold).

*Gobio fluviatilis* Flem., the Gudgeon; *Rhodeus amarus* Bloch. (Bitterling). The female has an ovipositor with which she deposits the ova in the gills of the fresh-water mussel (fig. 612). *Alburnus lucidus* Heck. Kner, the Bleak; *Leuciscus rutilus* L., the Roach; *L. cephalus* L., the Chub; *Chondrostoma nasus* L., (Näsling); *Arbramis brama* Flem., Bream; *Phoxinus lævis* L. Ag., Minnow.

Fam. **Acanthopsidæ.** The swimming bladder is contained in a bony capsule. *Cobitis fossilis* L.; *C. barbatula* L., Loach; *C. tænia* L., Spined Loach or Groundling.

Fam. **Cyprinodontidæ** (Toothed Carps). Viviparous. *Cyprinodon* (*Lebias* Cuv.) *calaritanus* Cuv., South Europe; *Anableps tetrophthalmus* Bl., Guiana.

Fam. **Siluridæ**. Fresh-water fish, usually with broad depressed head, strong dental armature, and skin naked or covered with an armour of bony plates. *Silurus glanis* L. (Wels, Waller). The largest river fish of Europe. *Hypostomus* Lac. (Panzerwels): *Malapterurus electricus* L. (Zitterwells), Nile.

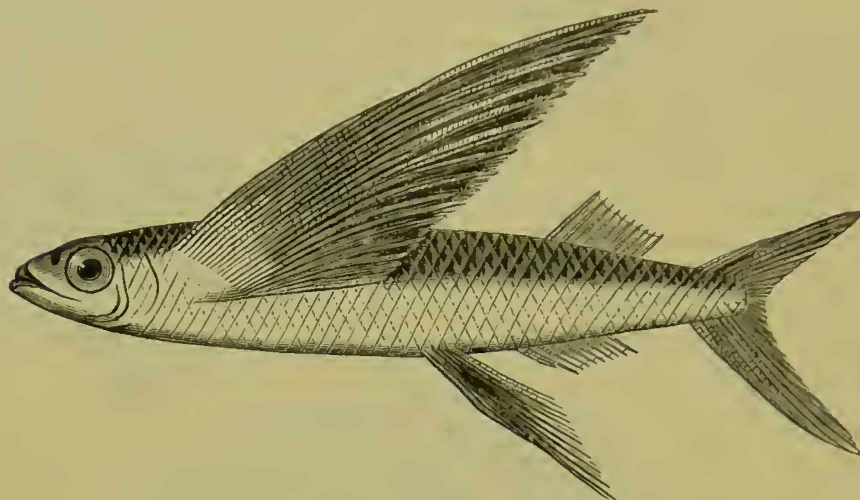


FIG. 613.—*Exocoetus Rondeletii* (after Cuvier and Valenciennes).

Sub-order 4. **Anacanthini.** Malacopterygians (soft fins), which with regard to their internal anatomy are allied to the Acanthopteri by the absence of a ductus pneumaticus; usually with jugular pelvic fins.

Fam. *Ophidiidæ*. *Ophidium barbatum* L., Mediterranean; *Ammodytes tobianus* L., Sand-eel, North Sea.

Fam. **Gadidæ**, *Gadus morrhua* (the Cod). In Germany dried cod is called Stockfisch, salted cod Laberdan. Cod-liver oil is prepared from its liver. Its

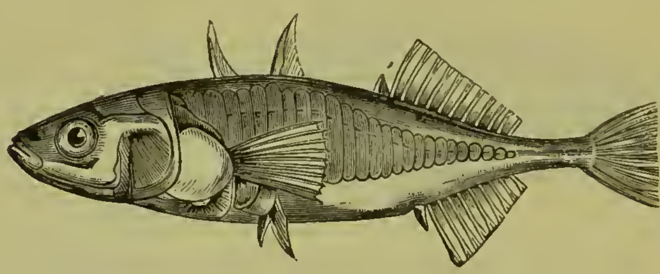


FIG. 614.—*Gasterosteus aculeatus* (after Heckel and Kner).

young (Dorsch) were for a long time considered as a separate species (*G. callarias*). *G. æglefinus* L. Haddock, with a black spot behind the pectoral fin. *G. merlangus* L., Whiting, coasts of North Europe: *Merluccius vulgaris* Flem., Hake, Mediterranean and Northern Seas; *Lota vulgaris* Cuv., Burbot, Eel-pout, Cony fish. Predatory fresh-water fish.

Fam. **Pleuronectidæ**. Flat fishes. The body is compressed, disc-shaped, and strikingly asymmetrical. The side which is directed upwards towards the light is pigmented (with change of colours); the other is free from pigment. Both eyes are placed on the pigmented side, towards which the head is turned and the arrangement of its bones shifted to correspond with this asymmetry. *Hippoglossus vulgaris*, Flem. the Holibut, coasts of North Europe; *Rhombus maximus* L., the Turbot; *Rh. lævis* Rond., the Brill, European coasts; *Pleuronectes platessa* L.. the Plaice; *Pl. limanda* L., the Dab; *Pl. flesus* L., the Flounder, ascends rivers; *Solea vulgaris* Quens., the Sole.

Fam. **Scomberesocidæ.** Marine Malacopterygians, with cycloid scales. The lower pharyngeal bones are fused (*Pharyngognathi*). *Belone acus* Rond., Gar-pike; *Scombresox saurus* Walb.; *Exocætus evolans* L., the Flying fish. The pectoral fins are strengthened so as to form flying organs. *E. exiliens* L., European Seas; *E. Rondeletii* Cuv. Val., Mediterranean (fig. 613).

Sub-order 5. **Acanthopteri.** Spiny-rayed fishes with comb-shaped gills; lower pharyngeal bones usually separate; thoracic, rarely jugular or abdominal pelvic fins. Swimming bladder closed, without ductus pneumaticus.

Tribe 1. **Pharyngognathi.** The lower pharyngeal bones are fused.

Fam. **Pomacentridæ.** *Amphiprion bifasciatus* Bl., New Guinea; *Pomacentrus fasciatus* Bloch., East Indies.

Fam. **Labridæ.** The Wrasses (Lippfische). Brightly-coloured fish, with fleshy protrusible lips. *Labrus maculatus* Bl., coasts of Europe: *Crenilabrus pavo* Brünn; *Julis pavo* Hassq., Mediterranean; *Scarus cretensis* Aldr., Parrot-fish, Mediterranean.

FIG. 615.—Nest of *Gasterosteus pungitius* (after Landois).

Tribe 2. **Acanthopteri** (s. str.). The lower pharyngeal bones are not fused.

Fam. **Percidæ.** Perches. Fins thoracic: scales ctenoid; edge of branchial operculum or præoperculum serrated or spinous. There are teeth on the præmaxilla, lower jaw, vomer and palatine. *Perca fluviatilis* Rond., Common Perch (fig. 583). A voracious fish, especially pursues small Cyprinoids. *Labrax lupus* Cuv., the Bass, Mediterranean; *Acerina cernua* L., the Pope, river fish; *Lucioperca sandra* Cuv., river fish of South Europe; *Serranus scriba* L., hermaphrodite, Mediterranean; *Gasterosteus aculeatus* L., the Stickleback (fig. 614), remarkable for forming a nest and protecting the eggs and young; *G. pungitius* L., ten-spined Stickleback (the Tinker) (fig. 615); *G. spinachia* L., fifteen-spined Stickleback.

Fam. **Mullidæ**, Mullets. *Mullus barbatus* L., red Mullet.

Fam. **Sparidæ**, Sea-breams. *Sargus Rondeletii* Cuv. Val.; *Pagellus erythrinus* L.; *Chrysophrys aurata* L., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Triglidæ.** *Cottus gobio* L., River Bullhead or Miller's Thumb. A small fish found in clear brooks and streams. It hides beneath stones, and defends itself by expanding its branchial operculum. The male undertakes the care of the brood. *C. scorpius* L., Sea-scorpion; *Trigla gunardus* L., Grey

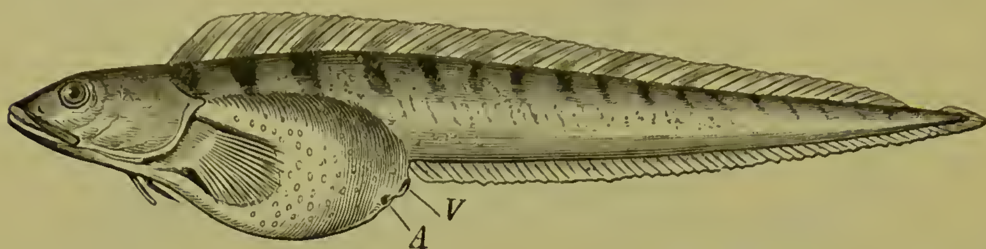



FIG. 616.—*Zoarces viviparus.* *A*, anus; *V*, urogenital opening.

Gurnard; *Dactylopterus volitans* L., Flying Gurnard; *Uranoscopus scaber* L. (Sternseher), Mediterranean; *Scorpæna porcus* L.; *Trachinus draco* L.

Fam. **Sciænidæ** (Umberfische). *Umbrina cirrhosa* L., Mediterranean; *Corvina nigra* Salv., Mediterranean; *Sciæna aquilla* Risso., Mediterranean.

Fam. **Scomberidæ.** Mackerels. Body elongated, more or less compressed, sometimes very high. The skin is often silvery, and sometimes naked, sometimes covered with small scales. There are keeled bony plates in places,

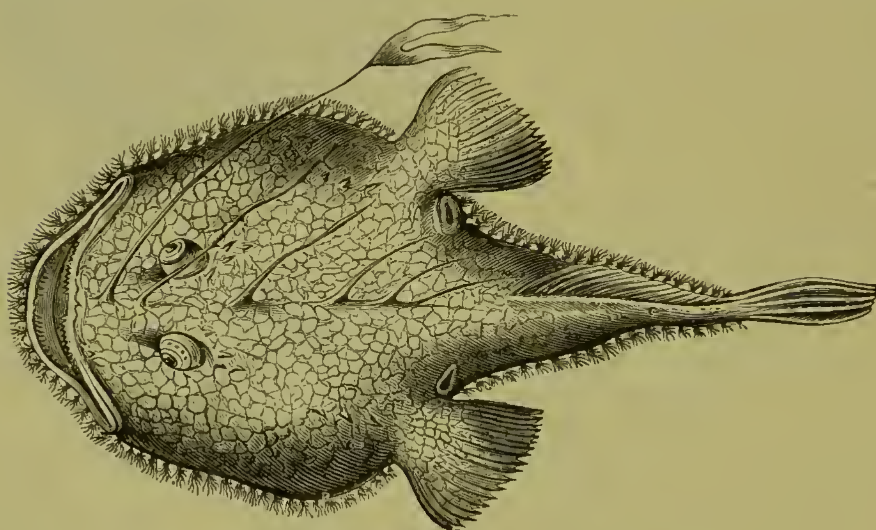


FIG. 617.—*Lophius piscatorius* (after Cuvier and Valenciennes).

especially near the lateral line. The caudal fin usually has a semilunar shape. They constitute, on account of their tasteful flesh, an important object of the fishing industry—the Mackerel in the North Sea and the Channel, the Tunny Fish in the Mediterranean. *Scomber scombrus* L., Mackerel; *Zeus faber* L., the Dory; *Thynnus vulgaris* Cuv., Val., Tunny Fish; *Pelamys sarda* Bl., Mediterranean; *Caranx trachurus* L., Horse-Mackerel, coasts of Europe; *Xiphias gladius* L., Sword-fish; *Echeneis naucrates* L., Sucking-fish.

Fam. **Gobiidæ.** Gobies. *Gobius niger* Rond. ; *G. fluviatilis* Pall., Rivers of Italy and of South-west Russia.

Fam. **Blenniidæ.** Blennies. *Annarhichas lupus* L., Wolf-fish ; *Blennius ocellaris* L., Butterfly-fish, Mediterranean ; *Zoarces viviparus* Cuv. (fig. 616), viviparous.

Fam. **Tænioidæ.** Silvery marine-fish, with compressed, ribbon-like, elongated-like body. *Trachypterus falx* Cuv., Val. = *Tr. tænia* Bl., Schn., Nice ; *Cepola rubescens* L., Band-fish, coasts of Europe.

Fam. **Labyrinthici.** The upper pharyngeal bones are hollowed out so as to have the form of coiled (meandering) lamellæ (fig. 594), in the spaces between which the water required to keep the gills moist is retained. *Anabas scandens* Dald., Climbing Perch, East Indies.

Fam. **Pediculati.** Of stout clumsy shape. The skin is naked, or covered with rough prominences. The pelvic fins, which are small and placed on the throat (jugular), have their so-called carpal pieces elongated, so that they form movable arm-like supports for the body, and are in fact used for hopping and creeping. *Lophius piscatorius* L., Angler, Frog-fish, etc. (*βάτραχος* of the Greeks), coasts of Europe (fig. 617) ; *Chironectes pictus* Cuv.

## Order 6.—Dipnoi.*

*Scaly Fishes with branchial and pulmonary respiration, with persistent notochord, muscular conus arteriosus and spiral valve in the intestine.*

The *Dipnoi* (fig. 618) form a group so strikingly transitional between Fishes and Amphibians that their first discoverer regarded

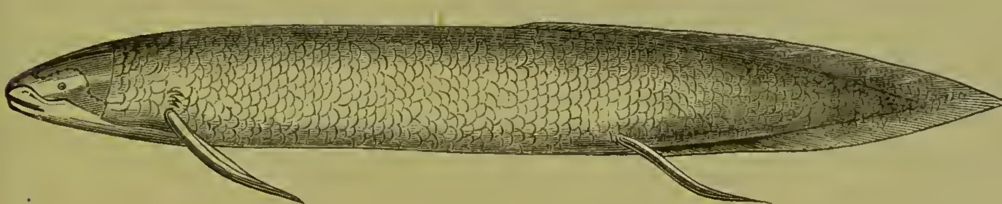


Fig. 618.—*Protopterus annectens.*

them as fish-like Reptiles, and in more recent times they have been regarded as scaly Amphibians. In their external form they decidedly resemble Fishes. The head is broad and flat, and has small, laterally placed eyes and a fairly widely-split snout, at the extremity of which are placed the two nasal openings. Directly behind the head are two thoracic fins, which, like the similarly-formed pelvic fins, possess

* J. Hyrtl, "Lepidosiren paradoxa. Eine Monographie." Prag, 1845.
G. Krefft, "Beschreibung eines gigantischen Amphibiums aus dem Wide-Bay-District in Queensland."
A. Günther, "Ceratodus und seine Stelle im System." *Arch. für Naturgesch.*, Tom. XXXVII., 1871.
A. Günther, "Description of Ceratodus, a genus of Ganoid Fishes." *Phil. Transact.*, 1871.

a membranous border supported by rays, or (*Ceratodus*), like the fins of the Crossopterygians, consist of a central shaft covered by scaly skin, and of a border provided with rays. The pelvic fins are placed far back. In front of the anterior pair of fins there is a gill slit on either side, above which in the African genus *Protopterus* (*Rhinocryptis*) three external gill tufts are retained till late in life. In the Brazilian genus *Lepidosiren* external gills are absent.

The Dipnoi show themselves to be fishes by the possession of gills as well as by the external form. There are either four gills (*Ceratodus*) as in fishes, or their number is reduced. The structure of the skeleton points decidedly to the Ganoids, to which the *Dipnoi* are in other respects closely related. In *Lepidosiren* the notochord persists as a continuous cartilaginous cord, from the fibrous sheath of which dorsal and ventral bony arches with ribs project. In front the notochord is prolonged into the base of the skull, which remains at the stage of the primitive cartilaginous cranium. It is, however, covered by some osseous pieces. The facial bones of the head are much more developed, especially the jaws, whose teeth consist, as in *Chimæra*, of perpendicularly-placed cutting plates or (*Ceratodus*) recall those of *Cestracion*. The intestine contains a spiral valve, which terminates at some distance from the cloaca. The cloaca contains the sexual opening, and the openings of the ureters in its side walls: it opens to the exterior—sometimes to the right side, and sometimes to the left, and on its posterior side there is in *Lepidosiren* an independent urinary bladder.

On the other hand, the respiration by means of lungs and the structure of the heart indicate a relationship to the naked Amphibia. The cartilaginous nasal capsules, as in all lung-breathing animals, open behind into the mouth by apertures, which perforate the roof of the mouth, and are placed far forward, directly behind the extremity of the snout. The swimming-bladder is represented by two sacs (in Ceratodus only one) placed outside the body cavity, ventral to the kidney, and opening into the ventral wall of the pharynx by means of a short common duct. These sacs function as lungs, inasmuch as they obtain venous blood from a branch of the posterior aortic arch and return arterial blood to the heart by pulmonary veins. To this agreement with the Amphibia may be added the similar arrangement of the heart and the principal trunks of the vascular system, the incompletely divided right and left auricles and the double circulation. There is a muscular conus arteriosus which either has an arrangement of valves like that in the Ganoids

(*Ceratodus*) or contains, as in the frogs, two lateral spiral longitudinal folds, which fuse at their anterior end and effect the division of the lumen into two (for the branchial arteries and the pulmonary vessels).

Sub-order 1. **Monopneumona.** The body is covered with large cycloid scales (fig. 619 *a*). Vomer with two oblique incisor-like dental lamellæ. Palate armed with a pair of large and long dental plates (molars), which have a flat undulated surface and five or six sharp prongs on the outer side. Lower jaw with two similar dental plates (fig. 619, *c*). Fins as in the *Crossopterygii*, with scaly shaft and rayed border on each side (fig. 619, *b*). The valves in the conus arteriosus rather resemble those of the Ganoids.

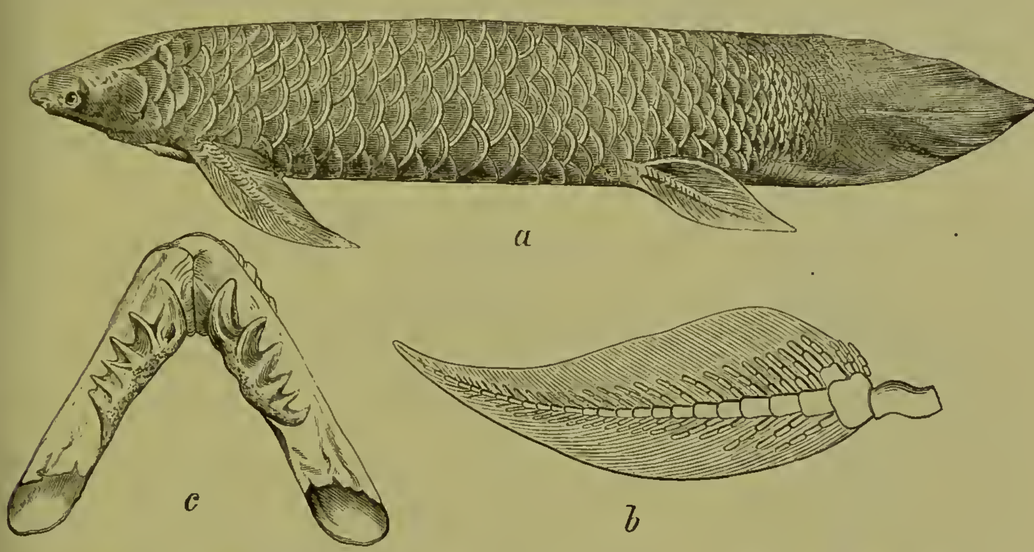



FIG. 619.—*a*, *Ceratodus miolepis*. *b*, its pectoral fin (after Günther). *c*, lower jaw with dental plates of *Ceratodus Forsteri* (after Krefft).

Branchial apparatus formed of five cartilaginous arches and four gills. Pseudobranchs (hyoidean) are present. The lung is composed of two symmetrical cellular halves. The two ureters open on the dorsal side of the cloaca by a common opening. There is a pair of wide peritoneal slits (abdominal pores) behind the anus. The *Monopneumona* feed on leaves, which they tear off with their incisor teeth and masticate with their molars. They make use of the lungs in respiration principally when the muddy water is saturated with gases from organic matter. They have existed since the Triassic period.

Fam. **Ceratodidæ**, with the single genus *Ceratodus* Ag. *C. Forsteri* Krefft, (and *miolepis* Günth.), the Barramunda, Queensland; reaches a length of six feet. Its flesh is salmon-like and much esteemed as food.

Sub-order 2. **Dipneumona.** Fins narrow, with jointed cartilaginous shaft and rays only on one side. Gills more reduced. Valvular arrangement of conus arteriosus like that in the Batrachians. Lungs paired.

Fam. **Lepidosirenidæ.** *Protopterus annectens* (fig. 618) Owen, tropical Africa; *Lepidosiren paradoxus* Fitzg., Brazil.

---

# CHAPTER VI.

## Class II.—AMPHIBIA.*

*Cold-blooded animals usually with a naked skin, with pulmonary and branchial respiration, and incompletely double circulation. The embryos have neither amnion nor allantois.*

The external form of the body is adapted both for an aquatic and a terrestrial life. It presents, however, considerable variations lead-

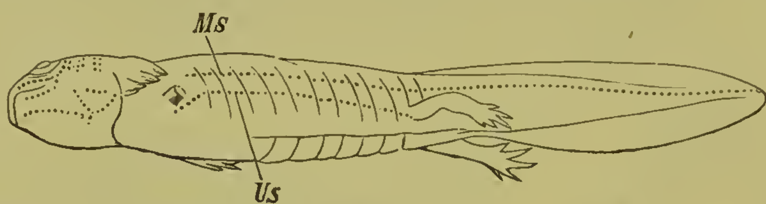



FIG. 620.—Larva of *Salamandra maculata* (after Malbranc). *Ms*, median, *Us*, lower lateral line.

ing to the creeping, climbing, and jumping land animals. An elongated, cylindrical, or more compressed form is the most frequent, and the body often ends with a large compressed swimming tail. Limbs may be absent, as in the cylindrical *Cæciliidæ*, which live underground in damp earth. In other cases there are only short anterior limbs (*Siren*), or anterior and posterior stumps, which have a reduced number of toes and are unable to raise the serpentining body from the ground. Even when the extremities have a considerable size and end with four or five digits, they act rather as pushing organs in the movement of the elongated and flexible body. The Batrachians, which have short and stout bodies and are without a tail in the adult state, alone possess powerful limbs adapted for running and jumping, and even for climbing.

The **skin,*** which is of great importance not only as a secretory

* Wagner, "Natürliches System der Amphibien." Munich, 1830.
Duméril et Bibron. "Erpétologie générale. etc." Paris, 1834-1854.

* Fr. E. Schulze, "Epithel-und Drüsenzellen. I. Die Oberhaut der Fische und Amphibien." *Arch. für mikrosk. Anatomie*, Tom. III.

but also as a respiratory organ, is as a rule naked and slimy. The *Cœciliidæ* alone possess thickened cutaneous rings, in which scales are imbedded. The sense organs of the lateral line (fig. 620) also are present in the aquatic forms, especially in the larval condition. Glands and pigments are very generally present in the integument. The former often secrete strongly smelling and caustic juices, which act as poisons on other organisms (*parotid* glands, as well as glands on the sides and posterior extremities). The various colourings of the skin are principally due to branched pigment cells of the cutis. The change of colour in the Frogs—a phenomenon which has been known for some time—is caused by changes in the form of these cells.

**Skeleton.**—Although a notochord may persist (*Cœciliidæ, Proteus*), yet bony, at first biconcave vertebræ,* are always developed, and are separated by intervertebral cartilages. In the *Salamandrina* the cartilage in the intervertebral regions grows considerably and gradually supplants the notochord, the remains of which become cartilaginous. As the result of further differentiation of the intervertebral cartilages, the rudiments of an articular head and an articular cup are developed, which, however, are only completely separated in the Batrachians provided with procœlous

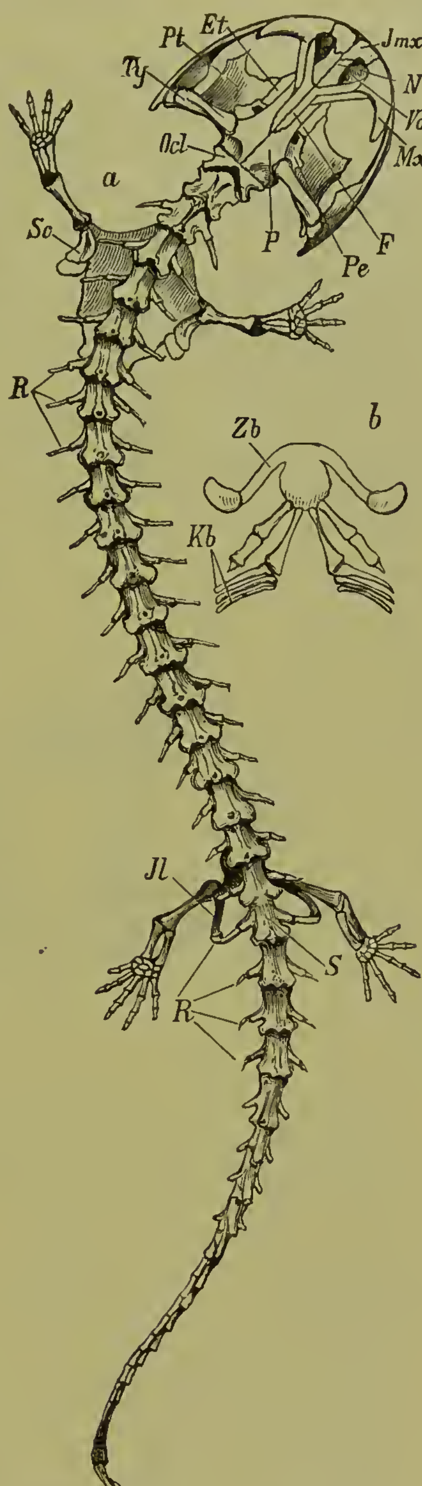



Fig. 621.—Skeleton of *Menopoma alleghaniense*. *Ocl*, Exoccipital; *P*, parietal; *F*, frontal; *Ty*, tympanic; *Pe*, petrous (prootic); *Mx*, maxilla; *Jmx*, præmaxilla; *N*, nasal; *Vo*, vomer; *Et*, girdle bone (sphen-ethmoid); *Pt*, pterygoid; *Sc*, pectoral arch; *Jl*, pelvic arch; *S*, sacral vertebra; *R*, ribs. *b*, hyoid aparatus (remains of hyoid (*Zb*) and branchial arches (*Kb*).

* Compare especially C. Gegenbaur, "Untersuchungen zur vergleichenden Anatomie der Wirbelsaüle bei Amphibien und Reptilien," Leipzig, 1862.

vertebræ.* The number of vertebræ is usually considerable, in accordance with the elongated form of body; but in the *Batrachia* the vertebral column consists of only ten vertebræ with very long transverse processes, which usually at the same time represent the ribs; while, with the exception of the first vertebra which is modified to form the atlas, almost all the vertebræ of the trunk possess small cartilaginous rudiments of ribs. The sacral region is formed by a single vertebra (fig. 621).

**Skull.**—The primordial cartilaginous cranium persists, but usually loses its roof and floor, and is partly replaced by bony pieces, some of which are ossifications of the cartilaginous capsule (*exoccipitals, auditory capsules, sphen-ethmoid, quadrate*), while others are

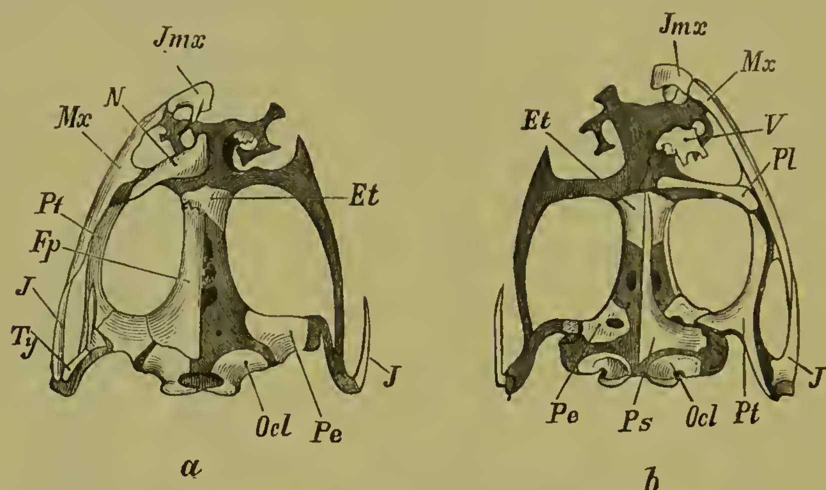



Fig. 622.—Skull of *Rana esculenta* (after Ecker). *a*, from the dorsal, *b*, from the ventral side; [Membrane bones of one side removed in each case]. *Ocl*, exoccipital; *Pe*, petrosal (prootic); *Et*, girdle-bone or sphen-ethmoid; *Ty*, tympanic; *Fp*, fronto-parietal; *J*, quadrato-jugal (jugal); *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, præmaxillary; *N*, nasal; *Ps*, parasphenoid; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Pl*, palatine; *V*, vomer.

investing bones (*parietals, frontals, nasals, vomer, parasphenoid*) (fig. 622). As in *Lepidosiren* the basi- and supra-occipital remain as small cartilaginous tracts. There is also a parasphenoid on the base of the skull (fig. 622, *Ps*). The large exoccipitals (*Ocl*) (fused with the *opisthotic*) articulate by means of two condyles with the first vertebra, as in the Mammalia. The projecting auditory region is pierced by the *fenestra ovalis*, and the bone in its anterior part corresponds to the prootic (*Pe*). The lateral walls of the skull remain cartilaginous, but in the ethmoid region there is a ring-shaped bone—the girdle bone, or sphen-ethmoid.

* [For a fuller account of the development of the Amphibian vertebral column, *vide* Balfour, "Comparative Embryology," vol. ii., p. 456 *et seq.*]

As in *Lepidosiren* the mandibular arch is firmly connected with the skull. The *mandibular suspensorium* and the *palato-quadrate* are in direct connection with the cartilaginous cranium, and form on either side a wide outstanding infra-orbital arch, the anterior end of which either remains free or fuses with the ethmoid cartilage. The ossification appearing at the end of the suspensorium gives rise to the *quadrate*, while a membrane bone, almost hammer-shaped and overlying the suspensorial cartilage, is called the *squamosal* or perhaps more correctly *tympanic* (*Ty*). Two membrane bones extend forward along the lower side of the palato-quadrate bar—the *pterygoid* (*Pt*) behind and the *palatine* (*Pl*) in front. The palatine is transversely placed behind the *vomer*. The outer arch of the upper jaw, formed by the *præmaxillary* and *maxillary* bones (*Jmx, Mx*) may by means of a third posterior bone—the *quadrato-jugal* (*J*)—be continued back to the quadrate, but in many *Perennibranchiata* it is incomplete, the maxillaries being absent. The skeleton of the visceral arches is more or less considerably reduced in correspondence with the retrogression of branchial respiration. In the perennibranchiate Amphibia (Amphibia with gills throughout life) the visceral arches are more numerous, and present an arrangement similar to that found only transitorily in the larvæ of the other forms. In the *Salamandrina*, in addition to the hyoid arch, the remains of two branchial arches persist; while in adult Batrachians only a single pair of arches is retained on the hyoid bone. This branchial rudiment is attached to the posterior edge of the body of the hyoid bone, and serves as a suspensorium for the larynx.

In the pectoral girdle three parts may be distinguished—the *scapula*, the *præcoracoid*, and the *coracoid*, to which a dorsal cartilaginous *supra-scapula* is added. While in the tailed *Amphibia* (*Urodela*), the arch is interrupted below, in the *Batrachia* the two halves are joined to each other in the middle ventral line, as well as to a posterior plate which has the value of a *sternum*, and an anterior plate known as the *episternum*. The pelvic girdle is characterised by the narrow form of the iliac bones, which are attached to the strong transverse processes of a single vertebra, and at their posterior end are fused with the ischiac and pubic bones.

The **nervous system** is higher in several respects than that of the fishes. The brain (vol. i., fig. 80) is certainly in all cases small, but the hemispheres are large and the differentiation of the thalamencephalon and mesencephalon is further advanced. The optic lobes reach a considerable size, and the medulla oblongata encloses a wide fourth ventricle. The cranial nerves have the same relations as in the Fishes, since not only are the *facial* nerves and the nerves supplying the muscles of the eye often connected with the *trigeminal*, but the *glossopharyngeal* and the *spinal accessory* are represented by branches of the *vagus*. The *hypoglossal* is, as in the Fishes, the first spinal nerve.

With regard to the sense organs the two eyes may be rudimentary and concealed beneath the skin (*Proteus*, *Cæciliidæ*). In the *Perennibranchiata* eye-lids are completely absent, while the *Salamandrina* have an upper and lower eye-lid, and the *Batrachians*, except *Pipa*, have, besides the upper eye-lid, a large very movable nictitating membrane, with which a rudimentary lower eye-lid co-exists only in *Bufo*. In the Batrachians there is a retractor muscle by means of which the large bulb of the eye can be drawn back. The structure of the *auditory organ* * of the Amphibia resembles that of Fishes. It is usually confined to the labyrinth with three semi-circular canals; in the Batrachians alone there is a tympanic cavity, which communicates with the pharynx by means of a wide Eustachian tube, and is closed externally by a tympanic membrane, which is sometimes freely exposed on the surface and sometimes covered by the skin. The tympanic membrane is connected with the fenestra ovalis by a small cartilaginous rod (remains of the hyomandibular) with a cartilaginous plate (*columella* with *operculum*). When there is no tympanic cavity these structures are covered by muscles and skin. The cochlea, which was first discovered by Deiters in the frog, is probably present in all *Amphibia*. The *olfactory* organs are always paired nasal cavities, which are provided with folds of the mucous membrane and open internally either anteriorly within the lips, or, in the Batrachians and Salamandrines, further back between the maxillaries and palatines. The external skin, which is richly supplied with nerves, is to be regarded as the seat of the *tactile sense*. The possession of the *sense of taste* is indicated by the presence of taste papillæ on the tongue of the Batrachians. The *Amphibia* certainly swallow their food unmasticated, and the tongue also subserves other functions; for instance, in the *Batrachia* it is used as a prehensile organ.

**Alimentary canal.**—The mouth is a wide slit. The vomers, palatines, and jaws are usually armed with sharp backwardly curved teeth, which are used not for mastication, but for holding the prey. Teeth are seldom absent, as in *Pipa* and some Toads; but in the Frogs they are always present on the upper jaw and palate.

* Compare especially the works of Deiters, Hasse, and Retzius.

The **respiratory** and **circulatory** organs resemble, in essential points, those of the Dipnoi, and stamp the *Amphibia* as connecting links between the aquatic animals which breathe by gills and the higher Vertebrates with pulmonary respiration. In all cases there are two lung sacs, either simple or provided with cellular spaces; but in addition to these there are, either in the larva or in the adult animal (*Perennibranchiata*, fig. 58), three (or four) pairs of gills, which sometimes lie in a cavity covered by a reduplication of the skin and provided with an external opening, and sometimes project freely on the neck as branched or tufted cutaneous appendages. The respiratory movements are effected, in the absence of a thorax capable of distension and contraction, by the muscles of the hyoid bone and by the abdominal muscles. The unpaired air-tube (trachea), which is supported by cartilaginous rods, is usually exceedingly short and wide, like a larynx, and in the *Anura* alone is developed to form a vocal organ, which produces loud croaking sounds and is in the male sex frequently reinforced by a resonating apparatus, consisting of one or two sacs communicating with the buccal cavity.

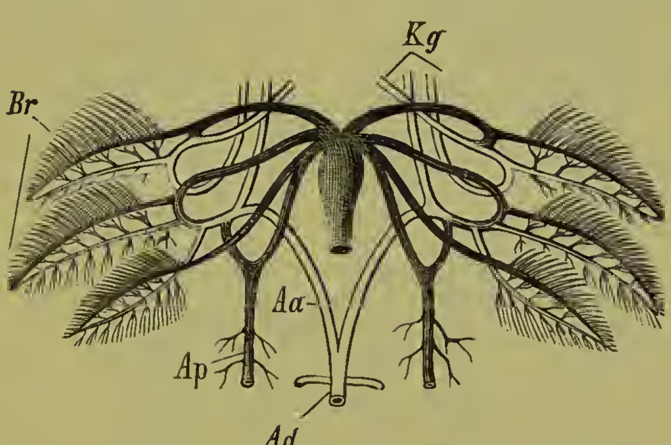


Fig. 623.—Aortic arches of an old frog larva (from Bergmann and Leuckart). *Aa*, the aortic arches uniting into the descending aorta (*Ad*); *Ap*, pulmonary artery; *Kg*, cephalic arteries; *Br*, gills.

As long as the respiration is carried on entirely by means of gills the structure of the heart and the arrangement of the principal arterial trunks are the same as in Fishes. Later, when the pulmonary respiration begins, the circulation becomes double and the auricle becomes divided by a septum into a right and left chamber, of which the right receives the veins from the body, the left those from the lungs. The ventricle, on the contrary, still remains single, and therefore contains mixed blood. It leads by a muscular rhythmically pulsating conus arteriosus into the ascending aorta with the reduced vascular arches.

In the first period of larval life there are four pairs of vascular arches, which surround the pharynx without dividing into capillaries and unite beneath the vertebral column to form the two roots of the descending aorta. With the appearance of gills the three anterior pairs of arches give off vascular loops, which form the system of the branchial capillaries, while the dorsal parts of the arches unite with one another in various ways to form the roots of the descending aorta (fig. 623).

The fourth vascular arch, which, moreover, is frequently a branch of the third (Batrachians), or arises in a common ostium with the latter on the bulbus (Salamander), has no relation to the branchial respiration, and leads directly into the root of the aorta. It is this posterior vascular arch which sends a branch, one on each side, to the developing lungs (fig. 624, *Ap*), and so constitutes the first rudiments of the pulmonary arteries, which soon increase in size and importance. In the Perennibranchiates these arrangements persist in essentials through life, but in Batrachians and Salamanders the disappearance of the gills is followed by further reductions, which lead to the arrangement of vessels found in the higher Vertebrates.

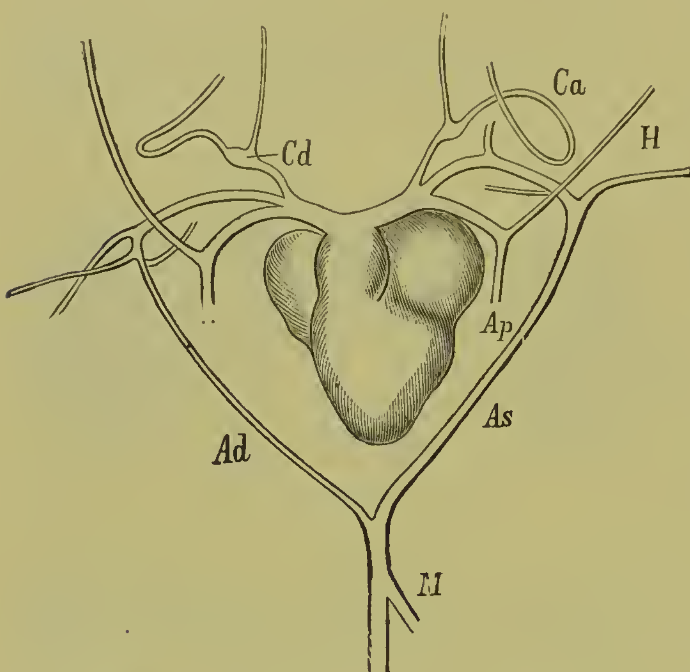



FIG. 624.—Heart and principal arteries of a toad. *Ad*, Right aortic arch; *As*, left aortic arch; *Ca*, carotid; *Cd*, carotid gland; *Ap*, pulmonary artery; *H*, cutaneous artery; *M*, mesenteric artery.

With the atrophy of the branchial capillaries the connection between the bulbus arteriosus and the descending aorta is again represented by simple arches, which are in part reduced to narrow canals or even to solid cords of tissue (ductus Botalli) (fig. 624 and fig. 59). The anterior arch sends off branches to the tongue, and also the carotids, at the origin of which there is a swelling—the so-called *carotid gland* (fig. 624). The two middle arches form the roots of the descending aorta and branches may be also given off from them to the head. The posterior arches, which at their origin are often fused with the preceding, give rise to the pulmonary arteries, a narrow ductus Botalli, the lumen of which is sometimes obliterated, being usually retained. Vessels for the head and occipital region are often given off from the roots of the aorta. In the Batrachians, which, in consequence of the union of the two posterior branchial arches, possess only three vascular arches, the aortic root is the prolongation of the middle arch on each side, and gives off the vessels of the scapular region and the anterior extremity, and often, also, on one side an artery to the viscera (mesenteric artery). The posterior arch sends off the pulmonary arteries and a strong trunk to the skin of the back, but does not retain its connection with the roots of the aorta. As in Fishes, there is a renal-portal system, as well as an hepatic-portal system.

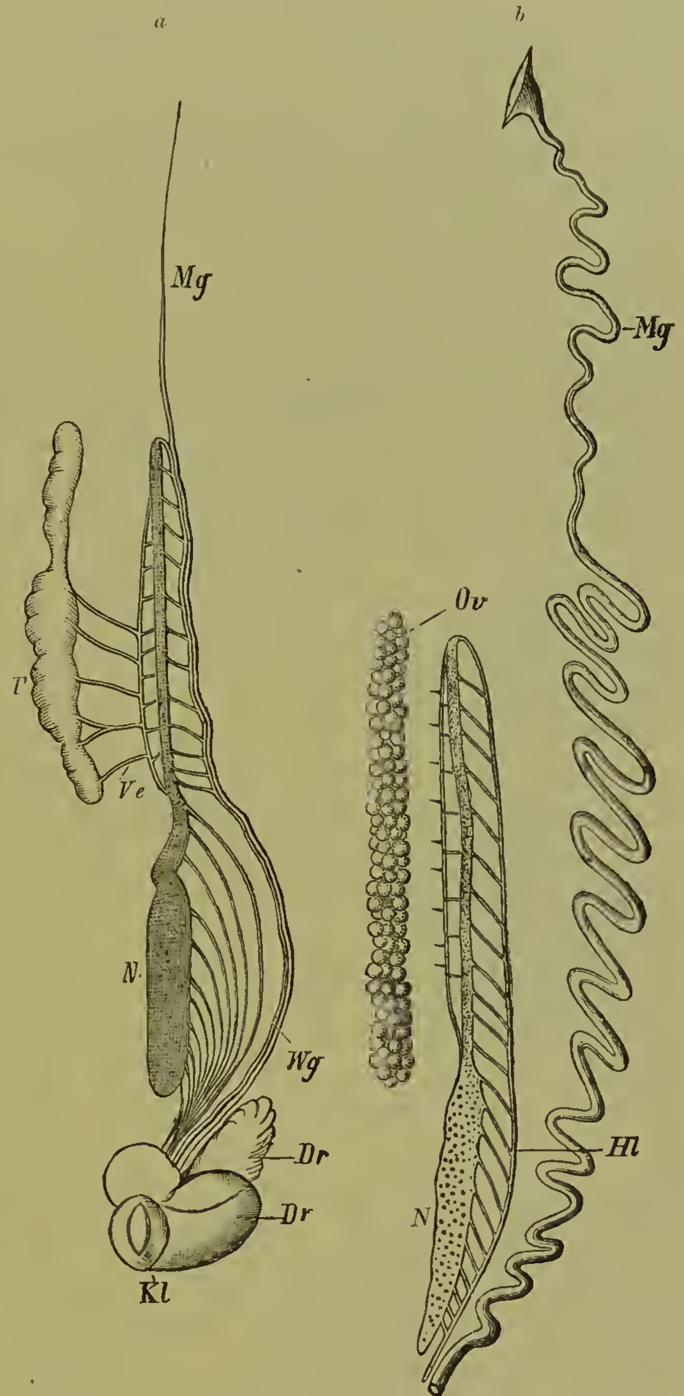



FIG. 625.—*a*, Urinary and genital apparatus of the left side from a male Salamander, partly diagrammatic. *T*, testes; *Ve*, vasa efferentia; *N*, kidney with collecting urinary tubules; *Mg*, Müllerian duct; *Wg*, Wolffian duct or vas deferens; *Kl*, cloaca; *Dr*, prostate glands. *b*, Urinary and genital apparatus of the left side of a female Salamander without the cloacal part. *Ov*, Ovary; *N*, kidney; *Hl*, the urinary duct corresponding to the Wolffian duct; *Mg*, oviduct or Müllerian duct.

The **lymphatic vessels** of the Amphibia accompany the blood-vessels as plexuses, or as wide lymphatic sinuses. In certain places the lymph receptacles are rhythmically contractile, and have the value of lymph hearts. In the Salamanders and Frogs there are two lymph hearts beneath the dorsal integument in the scapular region, and two close behind the ileum. Of the vascular glands the most noteworthy are the *thymus*, which is always paired, and the *spleen*, which is never absent.

The **urinary organs** (fig. 625) are paired kidneys, the numerous collecting tubules of which enter the ducts of the primitive kidney; these open on wart-like protuberances on the dorsal wall of the cloaca. The urinary bladder is an unpaired diverticulum of the ventral wall of the cloaca; it is usually bifid at its free end.

In all cases there is a close relation between the urinary organs and the efferent ducts of the **generative organs** (fig. 625). As in the higher Vertebrates the primitive kidney (Wolffian body or mesonephros) in part becomes the epididymis and the efferent apparatus of the testis, so also in the *Amphibia* a part at least of the primitive kidney, which in these animals persists as a urinary organ, functions as epididymis. The vasa efferentia sink into the kidneys and become connected with the urinary tubules, and thus conduct their contents, usually by means of a common duct, into the terminal portion of the duct of the primitive kidney, which functions as a urogenital duct. In the *Salamanders* there are, in addition, glands called prostate glands on the wall of the cloaca. In the female sex the Müllerian duct, which is rudimentary in the male, assumes the function of *oviduct*. This duct begins with a free funnel-shaped dilated opening into the body cavity, takes a sinuous course, and opens, often after forming a uterus-like dilation, with the urinary duct laterally into the cloaca, in the wall of which, in the *Salamandrina* according to v. Siebold's discovery, saccular glands functioning as seminal receptacles are placed. A complete hermaphroditism seems never to occur, although in the male Toad, especially in *Bufo variabilis*, rudiments of the ovaries have been found near the testes.

Males and females are often distinguished by their size and colour, and also by other peculiarities (vocal sacs), which are especially prominent at the breeding season in spring and summer. In spite of the absence of external organs of copulation, sexual intercourse takes place, but it usually consists merely of an external approximation of the two sexes (Batrachians), and has for its consequence a fertilisation of the eggs outside the body of the mother. The male Salamanders alone have copulatory organs in the form of the swollen lips of the cloaca, which during copulation clasp the cloacal aperture of the female, and thus render an internal fertilization possible. In this case the eggs can undergo their development within the body of the female, and the young be born at a more or less advanced stage of development.

It is only in exceptional cases that the parents have an instinct which leads them to watch over the further fate of their brood, as for example *Alytes* (fig. 626) and the South American Surinam Toad (*Pipa dorsigera*). The male of *Alytes* winds the string of eggs round its hind legs and burrows into the damp earth, and only gets rid of his load when the embryonic development is completed. The male of *Pipa* places the eggs when laid on the back of the female, which then develops a cell-like pouch round each egg. The larvæ are hatched and undergo their metamorphosis in these pouches. In other genera, as *Notodelphys*, the females possess a spacious brood-sac beneath the dorsal integument. Except in these cases, the eggs are either attached singly to water plants (*Tritonidæ*) or laid in strings or irregular clumps.

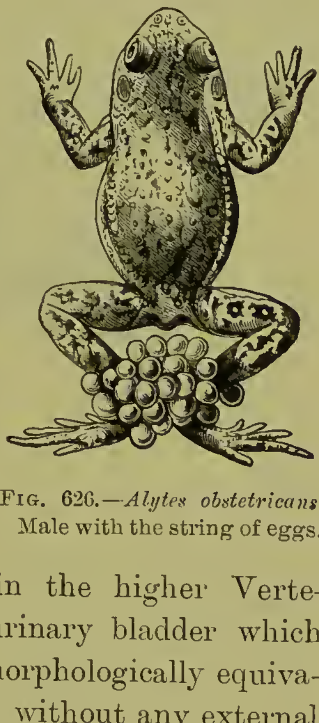


Fig. 626.—*Alytes obstetricans*. Male with the string of eggs.

**Development.**—The eggs, which are relatively small,* undergo an unequal segmentation (vol. i., fig. 104) after fertilization. The Amphibia agree with the Fishes in not developing an *amnion* or *allantois* — the embryonic membranes of such importance in the higher Vertebrates. In the Amphibians, however, the urinary bladder which arises from the ventral wall of the cloaca is morphologically equivalent to the allantois. The embryos are also without any external yolk-sac constricted off from the body, the yolk being enclosed at an early period by the ventral plates. As respiratory organs gills are

* C. E. v. Baer, "Ueber die Entwickelungsgeschichte der Thiere," II., Königsberg, 1837.

Reichert, "Das Entwickelungsleben im Thierreich," Berlin, 1840.

C. Vogt, "Untersuchungen über die Entwickelungsgeschichte der Geburtshelferkröte," Solothurn, 1842.

Rusconi, "Histoire naturelle, développement et métamorphose de la Salamandre terrestre," Paris, 1854.

A. Götte, "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Unke," Leipzig, 1874.

O. Hertwig, "Die Entwickelung des mittleren Keimblattes der Wirbelthiere," *Jen. naturwiss. Zeitschr.*, Tom. XV., 1881.

developed on the visceral arches; they usually only reach their full development in larval life. The young are always hatched at an early stage, and undergo a metamorphosis. The larva when hatched recalls the piscine type by the laterally compressed swimming tail, and by the possession of external gills (fig. 627); it is still without the two pairs of limbs, which only sprout out as the growth of the body progresses. During these processes the lung sacs which have grown out on the pharynx begin to function, sometimes (*Batrachia*) after the external gills have been replaced by internal branchial leaflets covered by the skin, and a branchial slit has been formed on the side of the neck to allow of the exit of the water (fig. 111). Finally the branchial respiration is completely lost in consequence of the atrophy of the gills and their vessels, the tail becomes shorter and shorter and finally, in the *Batrachia* at least, completely vanishes. In the other groups the later or earlier phases of the developmental series are maintained throughout the whole life; thus in the

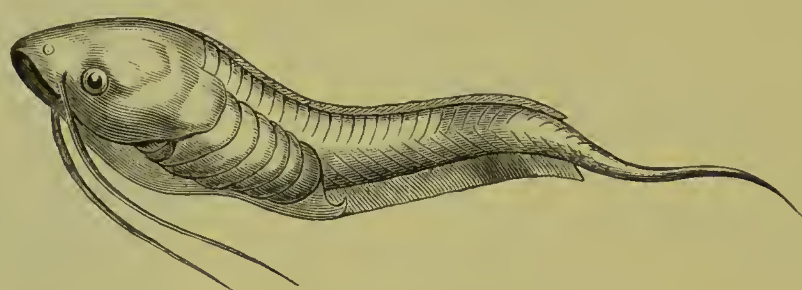


FIG. 627.—Larva of *Dactylethra* (after Parker).

*Salamandrinæ* the tail, and in the *Perennibranchiata* the gills also, or at least the external gill slits (*Derotrema*) persist, and the extremities remain rudimentary, or even the anterior pair alone are developed. Accordingly the series of forms indicated by the classification of these animals offers a strikingly close parallel to the successive phases of the developmental history of the individual forms.

The Amphibia frequently live in water only during larval life; as terrestrial animals in the adult state they choose damp shady places near water, since the cutaneous respiration necessitates in all a moist atmosphere. The food almost always consists of insects and worms, but in larval life principally of vegetable matters. The need of food is, however, relatively small, in correspondence with the low energy of the vital processes, with the sluggishness of their movements and psychical manifestations. The *Amphibia* can live for months without food, and, as for example the *Batrachia*, hibernate buried in the mud.

Fossil remains of this group first appear in the Tertiary period, with the exception of the extinct family of the *Labyrinthodonta* (*Mastodonsaurus*) which belongs to the Trias.

## Order 1.—Apoda* (Gymnophiona).

*Vermiform Amphibia covered with small scales, without limbs, with biconcave vertebræ.*

The external skin of the *Gymnophiona*, which were for a long time classed with the Snakes, contains small scales which are arranged in transverse rings (fig. 628). The internal organisation and the transitory branchial respiration, however, places them amongst the Amphibia, of which group they are in many respects, the most lowly organised. This is especially the case with the skeleton, which is

Fig. 628.—*Siphonops mexicana* (règne animal).

distinguished by the biconcave form of the vertebræ and the persistent notochord. The bony skull, which has two condyles, is firmly united to the facial bones, of which the maxillæ and palatines bear small backwardly-curved teeth. Pectoral and pelvic girdles and limbs are entirely wanting. The small slit-like mouth lies on the lower side of the conical head. The two nares are placed in front on the snout, and near them a blind pit on each side is visible in several genera. These so-called false nares (like the cephalic pits of snakes) lead into canals, which are regarded by Leydig † as sense organs.

The eyes are always small in correspondence with the subterranean mode of life, and are only visible through the skin as small specks. There is neither tympanic membrane nor tympanic cavity.

The *Gymnophiona* live in South America and the East Indies, and feed principally on Worms and Insect-larvæ. Joh. Müller was the first to show that *Cœcilia glutinosa* possesses, in the larval period, a gill slit on each side, which leads to the internal gills. According to Gervais, *Cœcilia compressicauda* is born without a trace of branchial apertures, and Peters has recently confirmed this assertion. Peters,

* Joh. Müller, "Beiträge zur Anatomie und Naturgeschichte der Amphibien," Treviranus; *Zeitschr. für Phys.*, Tom. IV., 1832.
R. Wiedersheim, "Die Anatomie der Gymnophionen," Jena, 1879.
† Fr. Leydig, "Ueber die Schleichlurche (Cœcilia). Ein Beiträg zur anatomischen Kenntniss der Amphibien," *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*, Tom. XVIII.

however, observed on the neck of the recently-born young, which are deposited in water, large vesicles which he regarded as gills.

Fam. **Cœciliidæ.** *Cæcilia lumbricoidea* Daud., South America; *Siphonops mexicana* Dum. Bibr. (fig. 628); *S. annulata* Wagl., Brazil; *Epicrium* Wagl., Ceylon.

The extinct **Labyrinthodonta** of the Triassic, the Permian, and the Carboniferous formations must be regarded as a special order of *Amphibia.* They unite in a remarkable manner the characters of the Ganoids and those of the urodele Amphibians. They possessed an external dermal skeleton, consisting of three broad bony thoracic plates and small scutes on the abdomen, amphicœlous vertebræ and peculiar folded teeth (hence the name of the group) in the Crocodile-like jaws. It has also been shown that they possessed branchial arches in the young state (*Archegosaurus*). The footmarks of gigantic animals (*Chirotherium*), which have been discovered in the Buntersandstein in England and Germany (Hildburghausen), and which some have ascribed to *Chelonia* and others to *Marsupials*, are probably due to the *Labyrinthodonta.* Owen has distinguished the oldest forms with armoured skull as *Ganocephala. Archegosaurus Dechenii* Goldf., *Labyrinthodon Rütimeyeri* Wied.

## Order 2.—Caudata * (Urodela).

*Elongated Amphibia with naked skin, usually with four short limbs and persistent tail, with or without external gills.*

The body, which is naked, ends with a long, usually laterally compressed, swimming tail, and possesses as a rule two pairs of short extremities far removed from one another. These limbs effect the relatively clumsy movements of the animals on land, but in swimming are used in a much more effective manner as oars. The posterior limbs are completely absent only in exceptional cases (*Siren*) while the anterior limbs remain as short stumps.

Some Urodeles (*Perennibranchiata*) possess throughout life three pairs of branched external gills, in addition to the lungs. Others indeed cast off the gills in the course of their development, but retain throughout life an external gill slit on each side of the neck

* Daudin, "Histoire naturelle gén. et partic. des Reptiles." Paris, 1802 to 1804.

Aug. Duméril, "Observations sur la reproduction dans la ménagerie des Reptiles du Musée d'hist. nat. des Axolots, etc., sur leur développement et sur leurs métamorphoses." *Nouv. Arch. du Musée d'hist. nat. de Paris*, II., 1860.

Alex. Strauch, "Revision der Salamandridengattungen," Petersburg, 1870.

(*Derotrema*). Many, however, even completely lose the latter, and show themselves by their whole organisation to be the highest members of the order (*Salamandrina*). In the two first cases the vertebræ are biconcave, like those of the Fishes, and enclose well-preserved remains of the notochord. The fully-developed *Salamandrina*, on the contrary, have vertebræ with an articular head in front and a concavity behind (*i.e.*, are opisthocœlous).

The eyes, which are small and sometimes rudimentary, are placed beneath the transparent skin, and except in the *Salamandrina* are without distinct lids. In all cases the auditory organ is without a tympanic membrane and tympanic cavity. The nasal apertures are placed at the end of the projecting snout, and lead into slightly developed nasal cavities, which communicate with the buccal cavity by openings placed far forward in the roof of the mouth immediately behind the maxillæ. The buccal cavity is armed with small sharp hooked teeth, which on the lower jaw are arranged in single rows, but on the upper jaw and often on the palatine bone are in double rows. Almost the whole lower surface of the tongue is attached to the floor of the buccal cavity.

The life history of the Axolotl, which was taken by Baird, Cuvier, and others for the larva of a Salamandrine, is very remarkable. According to the observations which were made by Duméril in the Jardin des Plantes at Paris, the young reared from the eggs of the Axolotl under suitable conditions lose the gill tufts and develop into a form which agrees with the Salamandrine genus *Amblystoma*, while the specimens which were originally introduced from Mexico preserve the Perennibranchiate form in the sexually adult condition. Species of *Triton* also have occasionally been found with perfectly developed gill tufts in the sexually adult state.

Sub-order 1. **Ichthyoidea.***

*Urodela with three pairs of external gills or without them, but with persisting branchial aperture; with fish-like biconcave vertebræ and well-preserved notochord.*

The *Ichthyoidea* represent the lowest grade among the *Urodela* with regard to their respiration, the structure of their skeleton, and their whole organisation; and to a certain extent represent persistent developmental stages of the *Salamandrina*. The eyes are small, and

* Configliachi and Rusconi, "Del Proteo anguino di Laurenti," Paris, 1819.
Hyrtl, "Cryptobranchus japonicus," Wien, 1868.

are covered by the transparent integument. The palatal teeth (*Siren*) are arranged in rows like the teeth of some Fishes, or form a curved arch at the anterior end of the palatine bones. The extremities also are weak and reduced; the anterior end with three or four digits, and the posterior with two to five jointed digits. The digits may, however, be rudimentary and be without distinct joints.

Amongst the Tertiary remains of this group the gigantic *Andrias Scheuchzeri*, which became famous as *Homo diluvii testis*, is worthy of remark.

Tribe 1. **Perennibranchiata.** With persistent gills, usually without maxillary bones. The vomer and palatine bone with rows of teeth.

Fam. **Sirenidæ** (Armmolche). With elongated eel-like body and rudimentary anterior limbs, without posterior limbs. *Siren lacertina* L., South Carolina.

Fam. **Proteidæ** (Olme). Body elongated and cylindrical; anterior limbs short, with three digits; hind limbs placed far back, with two digits. Only

Fig. 629.—*Menobranchus lateralis* (règne animal).

two gill slits on each side. *Proteus anguineus* Laur. Flesh-coloured and living in the subterranean waters of Carniola and Dalmatia.

Fam. **Menobranchidæ.** Body elongated, with tolerably broad head and four-toed limbs. There are four gill slits on each side. *Menobranchus lateralis* Say, Mississippi (fig. 629). Probably holds the same relation to the genus *Batrachoseps* Bonap. that *Siredon* does to *Amblystoma* (Cope). *Siredon pisciformis* Shaw, and *maculatus* Baird., Axolotl. The eggs are laid in the water either singly or in masses. The larvæ, when hatched, are from fourteen to sixteen mm. long, have three pairs of gills, and are still without limbs. Under suitable conditions they lose in the course of further development (according to Duméril, whose observations have been several times confirmed) the gill tufts, the dorsal and caudal crests, and assume the form of *Amblystoma* (second sexual form).

Tribe 2. **Derotrema.** Without gill tufts, usually with a branchial aperture on each side of the neck, with maxillary bones, and teeth which are usually arranged in one row.

Fam. **Amphiumidæ** (Aalmolche). Body elongated eel-shaped, with short extremities far apart from one another. *Amphiuma* L., *A. tridactylum* Cuv. (*A. means* L., with but two digits), Florida.

Fam. **Menopomidæ.** Of Salamander-like appearance, with four anterior and five posterior digits. *Menopoma alleghaniense* Harl.. Pennsylvania and Virginia; *Cryptobranchus japonicus* v. d. Hoev., more than three feet long. Japan.

Sub-order 2. **Salamandrina.***

*Without gills or gill aperture, with valve-like eye-lids and opisthocœlous vertebræ.*

The body, which is shaped more or less like that of a Lizard, is without external gills and gill-slits in the adult state, and always possesses anterior and posterior extremities, of which the first usually have four and the latter five digits. Well-developed eyelids are always present. The palatal teeth form two rows, which unite in the middle line at the posterior margin of the palatine bone. The skin is moist and slimy, and has a more or less uneven warty appearance, owing to the presence of a number of glands which secrete a pungent and irritating milky fluid. These glands are sometimes especially aggregated in the region of the ear.

The Aquatic Salamanders (Newts) lay fertilized eggs on plants. The Land Salamanders, on the contrary, are viviparous and deposit their offspring, which pass through their metamorphosis more or less completely in the uterus of the mother, in water. The spotted Land Salamander produces thirty to forty larvæ, each twelve to fifteen mm. long, with four legs and external gill tufts, while the black Land Salamander of the higher Alpine regions bears only one [two ?] completely-developed offspring. In the latter case, of the numerous eggs which enter the two uteri, only the lowest on each side develops into an embryo, which derives its nourishment from the rest of the eggs which run together so as to form a common mass, and is able to undergo all the stages of development within the uterus.

Fam. **Tritonidæ.** Aquatic Salamanders or Newts. Of slender form, with laterally compressed swimming tail. *Triton cristatus* Laur., large Newt. *Tr. alpestris* Laur. (*igneus* Bechst.), (Bergsalamander). *Tr. tæniatus*, Schn., small Newt.

Fam. **Salamandrinæ.** Land-Salamanders. Clumsy body, with cylindrical tail. *Salamandra maculosa* Laur., the Spotted Salamander; distributed over almost all Europe to North Africa. *S. atra* Laur., Black Salamander, in the high mountains of South Germany, France and Switzerland.

* Rusconi, "Amours des Salamandres aquatiques," Milano. 1821.

Rusconi, "Histoire naturelle, développement et métamorphose de la Salamandre terrestre," Paris, 1854.

v. Siebold, "Ueber das Receptaculum seminis der weiblichen Urodelen." *Zeitschr. für wiss. Zool.*. 1858.

Fr. Leydig. "Ueber die Molche der würtembergischen Fauna," *Archiv für Naturgesch.*, 1867.

R. Wiedersheim, "Salamandrina perspicillata und Geotriton fuscus, etc., Genua, 1875.

## Order 3.—Batrachia* = Anura.

*Amphibia of stout form, with naked skin, without tail, with procœlous vertebræ and well-developed extremities.*

The body is short and stout and is without a tail. On the head are the wide mouth and the large eyes, the iris of which has usually a golden lustre. The eye-lids are well developed, and the lower, which is transparent, can be drawn as a nictitating membrane completely over the eye. The nasal apertures are placed far forward on the extremity of the snout, and can be closed by membranous valves. In the auditory organ there is generally a tympanic cavity, which communicates with the buccal cavity by means of a short wide Eustachian tube and is bound externally by a large tympanic membrane, which is sometimes free and is sometimes concealed beneath the skin.

Only a few of the Batrachia are without teeth (*Pipa*, *Bufo*); as a rule there are small hooked teeth arranged in simple rows at least on the vomer, in the Frogs and *Pelobatidæ*, on the maxillaries and præmaxillaries also. The tongue is absent only in a small group of exotic forms; it is usually attached between the rami of the lower jaw in such a way that its posterior part is completely free, and can be protruded as a prehensile organ from the wide mouth.

Ribs are, as a rule, absent, but the transverse processes of the dorsal vertebræ attain a considerable length. A pectoral and pelvic girdle is in all cases present. The former is distinguished by firm connection with the sternum, the latter by the styliform elongation of the ilium. The hyoid bone in its definitive form is considerably simplified; the body, is supported by large anterior horns, while the branchial arches on each side are reduced to a single posterior horn.

In the skin, which is usually naked, glands with an acrid milky secretion are often aggregated in many places, especially in the region of the ear, where they form large glandular projections (*parotid*). Glandular aggregations occur also on the middle division of the hind legs (*Bufo calamita*) and on the sides of the body.

* Rösel von Rosenhof, "Historia naturalis ranarum nostratium," Nürnberg 1758.

Daudin, "Histoire naturelle des Rainettes, des Grenouilles et des Crapauds." Paris, 1802.

Rusconi, "Développement de la grenouille commune," Milano, 1826.

C. Bruch, "Beiträge zur Naturgeschichte und Classification der nackten Amphibien," *Würzb. naturwiss. Zeitschr.*, 1862.

C. Bruch, "Neue Beobachtungen zur Naturgeschichte der einheimischen Batrachier," *Würzb. naturwis. Zeitshr.*, 1863.

A. Ecker, "Die Anatomie des Frosches," Braunschweig, 1864.

Reproduction takes place in the spring. Copulation is confined to an external approximation of the two sexes, and almost always takes place in the water. The male, which sometimes has a wart-like elevation on the thumb (*Rana*) or gland on the arm (*Pelobates*) embraces the female from the back, usually behind the front limbs, and pours out the seminal fluid over the spawn as it issues in strings or in clumps. The individual eggs are surrounded by a viscous layer of albumen which swells up in the water.

The upper half of the ovum is of a darker colour than the lower. The process of segmentation begins in the upper part, and the constrictions which lead to the formation of the segmentation spheres proceed more rapidly in this region than at the lower pole. With the end of segmentation a cavity—the segmentation cavity—appears in the mass of cells; it is placed nearer to the upper pole than to the specifically heavier lower pole. The germ [blastoderm], with medullary plate and folds, arises on the upper half; it quickly, even before the closure of the medullary canal to form the medullary tube, grows round the yolk. After development of the branchial arches and before the mouth is formed, the embryos which have a short tail leave their egg membranes as tadpoles at a stage of development which varies with the species. They then attach themselves by means of two suckers to the gelatinous remains of the spawn (similar suckers are present on the throat of the Triton-larvæ, where however they are stalked). Most larvæ leave the egg membranes with more or less developed rudiments of three pairs of branched external gills (vol. i., fig. 111). The body gradually increases in length and the fin-like tail developes. Later the mouth is formed and the larva begins to feed. Soon the external branchial appendages disappear, while the skin grows over the gill slits like an operculum in such a manner that only one gill aperture is left, through which the water flows out of the branchial chambers on either side.

During these processes fresh lancet-shaped gill-plates are developed in double rows along each branchial arch. The mouth is armed with a horny beak, which is used in gnawing vegetable and also animal substances. The intestine has become very long and much coiled, and the lungs have grown out of the pharynx in the form of long sacs. As development proceeds the hinder extremities first make their appearance on the body of the Tadpole close to the attachment of the strongly-developed swimming tail. As the pulmonary respiration increases, the branchial apparatus becomes more and more reduced, and the animal undergoes an ecdysis, with which is connected not only the loss of the internal gills, but also the appearance of the anterior extremities which have been long concealed beneath the skin. The horny beak is now cast off, and the eyes, which have hitherto been concealed beneath the skin, appear on the surface, and are of considerable size. The larva has now become an exclusively air-breathing, four-legged Frog, which has only to lose its swimming tail in order to acquire its definitive form and be fitted for its terrestrial life (vol. i., fig. 112).

Some *Batrachia* are true land animals (Toads and Tree-Frogs), which especially love dark and damp hiding places; others live indifferently on land or in water. In the first case the five toes of the hind feet are either entirely without a connecting membrane or only have an incomplete one; exceptionally (*Pelobates*), however, they are completely webbed. In the second case, on the contrary, the hind feet are, as a rule, completely webbed. The land Frogs usually seek the water only at spawning time; they crawl, run, and hop on the land, or dig passages and holes in the earth (*Pelobates*, *Alytes*), or they are able to climb up shrubs and trees by means of suctorial discs on the ends of their toes (*Dendrobates*, *Hyla*).

Fig. 630.—*Dactylethra capensis*.

Tribe 1. **Aglossa.** Batrachia without tongue. The tympanic membrane is not exposed. The eyes are placed anteriorly near the angles of the mouth. The hind feet have entire webs. They live in hot localities, especially of the New World.

Fam. **Pipidæ.** Body toad-like, flat, without teeth on jaws and palate. *Pipa dorsigera* Schn., Surinam Toad.

Fam. **Dactylethridæ.** The body is more frog-like, with teeth on the maxillaries and præmaxillaries. *Xenopus* (*Dactylethra*) *capensis* Cuv. (Krallenfrosch), (fig. 630); *Myobatrachus paradoxus* Schleg.

Tribe 2. **Oxydactylia.** *Batrachia* with freely movable tongue and pointed fingers and toes.

Fam. **Ranidæ.** Water-Frogs. Batrachians with long hind limbs, which are adapted for jumping, and the toes of which are usually connected by entire swimming membranes. There are small hooked teeth on the maxillaries. præmaxillaries, and usually also on the vomer. *Rana esculenta* L., the green Frog. Green with dark spots and yellow longitudinal streaks on the back. The male has two vocal sacs. Leaves its place of concealment at the end of April, and spawns at the end of May or the beginning of June. On the banks of stagnant water. *R. temporaria* L., the brown frog, with dark spots on the head in the auditory region. It appears very early, and copulates in March; but only remains in the water to spawn, and then frequents meadows and fields. Steenstrup has divided this frog, which is widely divided over Europe, into two species (*R. oxyrhina, platyrhina*). *R. mugiens* Daud., Bull-frog, North America; *Pseudis paradoxa* L., South America, distinguished by the size of its larvæ.

Fam. **Pelobatidæ.** Land-frogs, Toad-frogs. With more or less warty, rough, and richly glandular skin, and clumsy toad-like form; with teeth on the maxillaries. *Alytes obstetricans* Laur. (fig. 626); *Pelobates fuscus* Laur.; *Bombinator igneus* Rös. (Unke, Feuerkröte).

Fam. **Bufonidæ.** Toads. Of clumsy build, with warty glandular skin (ear-glands) and toothless jaws. The posterior feet have five digits, and are but little longer than the anterior, so that the animal is unable to spring with the same agility as the Frogs; but they can in many cases run with great speed. *Bufo vulgaris* Laur., the common Toad; *B. viridis* Laur. (*variabilis*), the green Toad; *B. calamita* Laur. (Kreuzkröte).

Tribe 3. **Discodactylia.** Batrachians with tongue and with broad digits, the points of which are provided with suctorial discs.

Fam. **Hylidæ.** Tree-frogs. With maxillary teeth and without parotids. *Hyla arborea* L., Tree-frog, cosmopolitan; *Notodelphys ovifera* Weinl., Mexico. The female has a brood-pouch on the posterior part of the back. The larvæ have bell-shaped external branchial vesicles. *Phyllomedusa bicolor* Bodd., South America; *Dendrobates tinctorius* Schn., Cayenne.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Class III.—REPTILIA.*

*Scaly or armoured cold-blooded animals with exclusively pulmonary respiration and two ventricles incompletely separated from one another. Embryos with an amnion and an allantois.*

The body-form of the *Reptilia* varies far more than does that of the *Amphibia*, but repeats on the whole the types described for the latter class. The trunk still plays the principal part in locomotion, and accordingly the vertebral column presents a uniform segmentation adapted for serpentine movements. The body, except in the

* J. G. Schneider, "Historia Amphibiorum naturalis et literaria," 1799 to 1801.
A. Günther, "The Reptiles of British India," London, 1864.
E. Schreiber, "Herpetologia europæa," Braunschweig, 1875.

Tortoises, is elongated and more or less cylindrical, and is either altogether apodal, as in the Snakes, or is provided with two or four extremities, which as a rule serve only to support and push on the body which glides along the ground on its belly. In correspondence with this mode of locomotion a cervical region is scarcely at all marked, and even when more developed is always relatively rigid; the tail on the other hand is long and movable.

The skin, as opposed to the predominating soft and naked skin of the *Amphibia*, is tough and firm, in consequence of ossifications of the cutis as well as of a cornification of the epidermis. The former may give rise to bony scutes, overlapping one another in a tectiform manner (*Scincoidea*), or to larger bony plates, which constitute a hard, more or less continuous, dermal armour (*Crocodiles, Tortoises*).

In general pigments are present in the dermis as well as in the deeper layer of the epidermis; they determine the diverse colouring of the skin, and sometimes cause a true change of colour (green Tree Snake, *Chamæleon*). Cutaneous glands are also widely distributed among the *Reptilia*. Many Lizards in particular possess rows of glands on the inside of the femur and in the anal region, which open by distinct pores sometimes on wart-like protuberances (femoral pores, anal pores). In the Crocodiles, too, larger groups of glands are placed beneath the dermal armour both at the sides of the anus and on the sides of the rami of the lower jaw.

The **skeleton** only exceptionally presents the embryonic form of a cartilaginous cranial base and persistent notochord. The vertebral column is more distinctly divided into regions than is that of the *Amphibia*, although the thoracic and lumbar regions still allow of no sharp limitation. In the cervical region the first vertebra becomes the atlas and the second the axis. While fossil Hydrosaurians and the *Ascalabota* possess biconcave vertebræ, the vertebral bodies of other Reptiles are always bony and generally procœlous.

Ribs are very generally present, often along the whole length of the trunk. In the Snakes and the snake-like Lizards, in which a sternum is absent, all the vertebræ of the trunk with the exception of the atlas bear ribs, which, to compensate for the absence of limbs, are capable of free movements. In the Lizards and Crocodiles (fig. 573) there are short cervical ribs. The thoracic ribs are joined to a sternum by means of special sternocostal pieces. In the Crocodiles there is in addition an *abdominal sternum*, which extends over the belly to the pelvic region, and is composed of a number of ventral ribs (without dorsal part). The sacral vertebræ, of which there are usually two, have very large transverse processes and ribs.

The skull (fig. 631) articulates with the atlas by means of an unpaired, often trifid condyle of the occipital bone, and presents a complete ossification of nearly all its parts, the primordial cranium being almost completely replaced. In the occipital region all four elements are present as bones; but the basi-occipital (Tortoises) and the supra-occipital (Crocodiles and Snakes) may be excluded from the boundary of the *foramen magnum*. In the periotic capsule there is a *fenestra rotunda*, as well as the *fenestra ovalis* with the columella. The *opisthotic*, which usually fuses with the exoccipital, takes part in bounding the *fenestra ovalis* (in the Tortoises the exoccipital and the opisthotic are separate).

The *prootic*, on the other hand, is separate in all Reptiles; at its anterior there is in front of the lateral parts of the occipital region a separate *prootic*, at the front margin of which is the foramen for the third branch of the trigeminus. The *epiotic* is fused with the supra-occipital. The anterior expansion of the cranial capsule, and the development of the sphenoidal region, present considerable differences. At the base of the skull there is a *basisphenoid* in place of the *parasphenoid*. The *alisphenoids* and the *orbitosphenoids* are as a rule wanting, and are often replaced by processes of the parietals (*Chelonia*) or of the fronto-parietals (*Ophidia*). In the *Chelonia* and Lizards there is a large membranous interorbital septum, which may also contain ossifications. The bones of the roof of the cranium are always very large—sometimes paired, sometimes

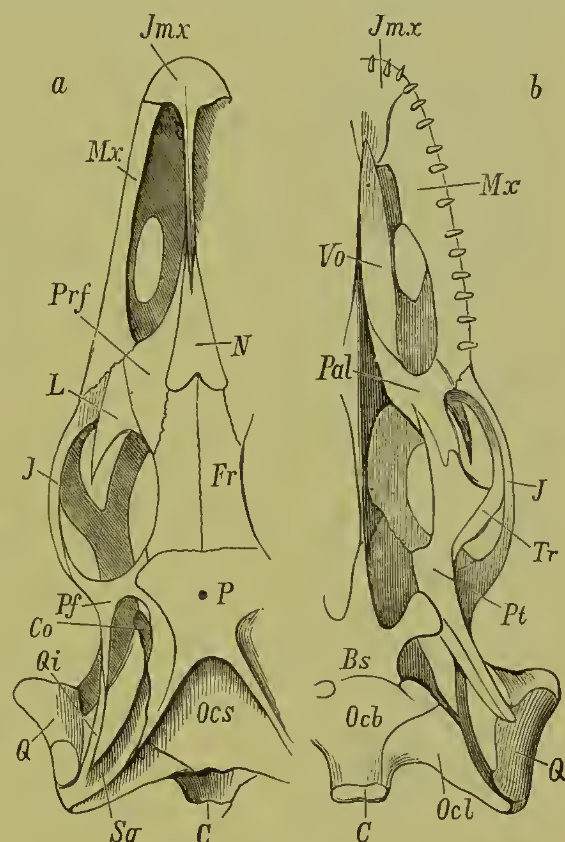


FIG. 631.– Skull of *Monitor* (after Gegenbaur). *a*, from above. *b*, from below. *C*, occipital condyle; *Ocs*, supra-occipital; *Ocl*, exoccipital; *Ocb*, basi-occipital; *P*, parietal; *Fr*, frontal; *Pf*, post-frontal; *Prf*, præfrontal; *L*, lacrymal; *N*, nasal; *Sq*, squamosal; *Q*, quadrate; *Qi*, quadratojugal; *J*, jugal; *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, præmaxillary; *Co*, columella; *Bs*, basi-sphenoid; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Pal*, palatine; *Vo*, vomer; *Tr*, os transversum.

unpaired. The frontal bone in many cases takes no part in the formation of the roof of the cranial cavity, and only lies on the interorbital septum. Behind the lateral parts of the frontal in the temporal region are the *postfrontals* (*Pf*). In the ethmoidal region the median part remains in part cartilaginous, and is covered above by the paired *nasal* bones (*N*), and at the base by the *vomer* (*Vo*), which in the Snakes and Lizards is paired. The lateral parts are always separate from the median, and are known as the lateral ethmoids or præfrontals (*Prf*). In the Lizards and Crocodiles *lachrymals* (*L*) are present on the outer side of the præfrontals, bounding the anterior margin of the orbits.

The *squamosal* (*Sq*) is more intimately applied to the cranium, and the *quadrate* (*Q*) is always a strongly developed bone. In *Chelonia* and *Crocodilia* the quadrate and maxillo-palatine apparatus are immovably united with the wall of the skull; in Snakes and Lizards, on the other hand, they are more or less freely movable. In the first case not only are the large pterygoid and palatine bones fused with the sphenoid, but the quadrate bone is very firmly connected with the superior maxillary (*i.e.* jugal) arcade. In the Crocodiles a transverse bone (*os transversum*) is developed between the pterygoid and maxillary, and also a superior temporal arcade by which the squamosal is connected with the postfrontal on either side. In the Lizards, in which the maxillo-palatine apparatus and quadrate are movably articulated to the skull, the jugal arch is completely absent [*i.e.*, the jugal is not connected with the quadrate by bone]. On the other hand, these animals possess not only a transverse bone (os transversum) (fig. 631, *Tr*), already mentioned for the Crocodiles, but also a column-like bone—the *columella*—which extends between the parietal and pterygoid. The facial bones are, however, most movable upon one another in the *Ophidia*, which are without the jugal arcade, but present a large os transversum. The two rami of the mandible, which in all *Reptilia* and lower Vertebrates are composed of several pieces, are in these animals connected at the symphysis by an elastic band, an arrangement which permits of considerable extension towards the sides.

The visceral skeleton is reduced to the hyoid bone, from the anterior arch of which the dorsal element (*hyomandibular*) is separated off, enters into relation with the auditory apparatus, and is known as the *columella*. The hyoid bone is most reduced in the Snakes.

The limbs and their girdles are completely absent in most Snakes. In the *Peropoda* and *Tortricidæ*, however, traces of hind limbs are found in the anal region, but they are hidden beneath the skin, except the terminal part, which bears a claw. In the *Lacertilia* the extremities present very various grades of development; while the pectoral and pelvic girdles are without exception present, though they are sometimes very rudimentary, the anterior and posterior limbs may be completely absent (Blindworms), or the one pair may be present without the other as small rudiments. In most cases, however, both pairs of extremities are completely developed, and provided with five digits. Sometimes the digits are connected by swimming membranes (Crocodiles), or the extremities are modified to form flat swimming fins (fossil Hydrosaurians and Turtles).

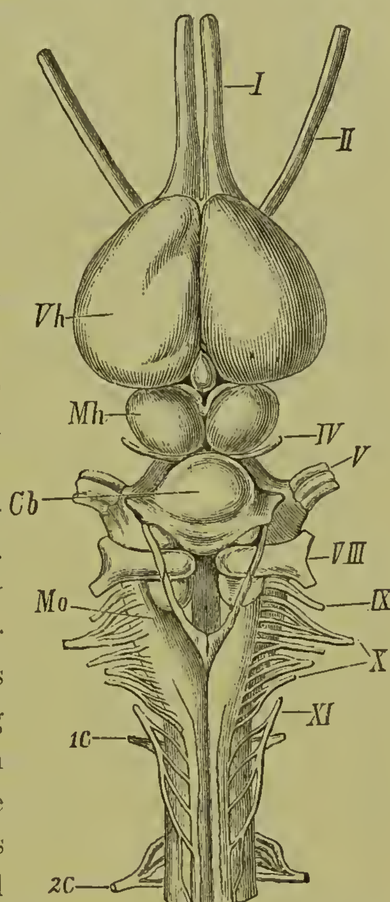



FIG. 632.—Brain of the *Alligator* seen from above (after Rabl-Rückhard). *Vh*, prosencephalon (cerebral hemispheres); *Mh*, mesencephalon (corpora bigemina); *Cb*, cerebellum; *Mo*, medulla oblongata; *I*, olfactory nerve; *II*, optic; *IV*, trochlear (fourth); *V*, trigeminus (fifth); *VIII*, auditory nerve; *IX*, glossopharyngeal (ninth); *X*, vagus (tenth); *XI*, spinal accessory (eleventh); 1*C*, first spinal nerve; 2*C*, second spinal nerve.

The **nervous system** (fig. 632) is decidedly higher than that of the *Amphibia*. The hemispheres are distinguished by their considerable size, and begin to cover the mesencephalon. The cerebellum shows various grades of development progressing from the Snakes to the Crocodiles, and in the latter recalls that of Birds by the contrast of its large median lobe and its small lateral appendages. Of the cranial nerves the facial is no longer united with the trigeminal, and the glossopharyngeal appears as an independent nerve, which has, however, several connections with the vagus. The spinal accessory also arises independently except in the Snakes. Finally the hypoglossal, which passes out through a single or double opening in the skull, enters the category of the cranial nerves.

The eyes are without lids in the Snakes, Geckos, and Amphisbænas, but are protected in these animals by a transparent capsule, which is separated from the cornea by a space filled with lachrymal fluid. In all other cases there is an upper and lower eyelid. An independent nictitating membrane at the inner angle of the eye is always accompanied by the appearance of a special gland (*Harderian gland*). Peculiar folds of the choroid, which correspond to the processus falciformis of the eyes of Fishes and to the so-called pecten of the eye of Birds, are present in the eye of Lizards.

The auditory organ has a simple tubular cochlea and a corresponding fenestra (*fenestra rotunda*). A tympanic cavity with *Eustachian tube* and tympanic membrane is wanting only in the Snakes and apodal Lizards. In these cases the operculum, which covers the *fenestra ovalis*, and the columella which is attached to the operculum, are buried among the muscles, as in numerous *Amphibia*. When a tympanic cavity is present, the columella is applied by its cartilaginous end to the tympanic membrane, which in many Lizards is still concealed beneath the skin, while a wide Eustachian tube leads into the pharynx. A cutaneous fold above the tympanic membrane of the Crocodiles may be regarded as the first rudiment of an external ear.

The olfactory organ of the *Reptilia* shows, principally in the *Chelonia* and *Crocodilia*, a considerable augmentation of the surface of the mucous membrane, the folds of which are supported by cartilaginous turbinals. The external nares can be closed only in the Water-Snakes and the Crocodiles by an arrangement of valves. In the Crocodiles and Chelonians the internal nares open far back on the palatal part of the mouth. In the Snakes and Saurians there is also a second olfactory organ embedded between the turbinals and the vomer (*nasal glands*, Rathke, *Jacobson's organ*, Leydig), the nerve of which arises at the end of the olfactory lobe, and is spread out like a cup around a cartilaginous papilla.

The sense of taste is by no means always located in the tongue, since in Snakes and many Lizards this organ serves for feeling, and in other cases—*e.g.*, the Chamæleon—is used as a prehensile organ. Leydig * has recently discovered cup-shaped sense-organs in the buccal cavity of Snakes and Saurians. In the Snakes they are arranged alongside the rows of maxillary teeth, in Saurians they are embedded in small pits of the connective tissue.

**Alimentary canal.**—Excepting in the *Chelonia*, whose jaws possess a horny cutting investment, which constitutes a kind of beak, the jaws are provided with conical or hooked prehensile teeth, which hold fast the prey, but cannot masticate it. As a rule, the teeth are confined to the jaws, and are always arranged

* Fr. Leydig, "Zur Kenntniss der Sinnesorgane der Schlangen," *Arch. für mikr. Anatomie*, Bonn, 1872.

in a single row; sometimes they are fastened to the upper edge (*acrodont*), sometimes to an external, strongly projecting ledge of the flat dental groove (*pleurodont*), rarely, as in Crocodiles, they are wedged into special alveoli. Hooked teeth may also be present on the palatine and pterygoid bones, and in this case they frequently (*e.g.*, in non-poisonous Snakes) form an inner arched row on the roof of the mouth. In the poisonous Snakes special teeth of the upper jaw are traversed by a groove or canal, and enter into close relation with the ducts of poison glands, the secretion of which passes into the wound through the groove or canal in the poison teeth. Salivary glands are found in Snakes and Lizards, both in the lips and on the lower jaw, and a sublingual gland may also be present. The possession of the latter is characteristic of the *Chelonia*.

The œsophagus is very long, and is capable of an extraordinary degree of dilatation. Its walls are usually folded longitudinally, but they may also be beset with large papillæ, as in the Turtles. The stomach is usually arranged longitudinally, except in the *Chelonia*, which possess like the Frogs a transversely-placed stomach. The stomach of the Crocodiles resembles that of Birds, both by its rounded form and by the strength of its muscular walls. The small intestine is but little coiled, and remains relatively short; in the Land-Tortoises alone, which live on vegetable matter, is the intestine more than six or eight times longer than the body. The broad large intestine (rectum) usually begins with an annular valve, and often with a cæcum, and leads into the cloaca, which opens beneath the root of the tail by a round opening, or as in the Snakes and Lizards by a transverse slit (*Plagiotrema*). Liver and pancreas are never absent.

The *Reptilia* breathe exclusively by lungs, which have the form of spacious sacs, with alveolar projections of the walls, or with wide spongy cavities (Tortoises and Crocodiles). In the Snakes and snake-like Lizards the lung on one side is more or less reduced, while the other obtains a correspondingly greater size. The posterior end of the latter loses not only the cellular alveolar spaces, but also the respiratory vessels, and has the form of an air-reservoir (foreshadowing the air-sacs of Birds), which renders respiration possible during the slow process of swallowing. The afferent air-passages are always differentiated into a larynx beginning with a slit-like glottis, and into a long trachea and bronchial tubes, supported by cartilaginous and often bony rings. A membranous or cartilaginous epiglottis is present in many Tortoises, Snakes, and Lizards. The Geckos and Chamæleons alone have a vocal apparatus. The renewal of the air necessary for respiration is, except in the Chelonia, always effected by aid of the ribs.

The **circulatory organs** (fig. 60) present various grades of development, even to the complete division of the heart, and to the separation of the venous and arterial blood. Not only are there two auricles which are distinct even externally, but the ventricle also is divided into a right and left chamber. The partition wall of the ventricles is indeed perforated in Snakes, Lizards, and Chelonians; but in the Crocodiles it is complete, and effects the separation into a right and left ventricle. In the first cases the pulmonary arteries and the aortic trunks arise from the wide thin-walled right division of the ventricle. In the Crocodiles, on the other hand, the pulmonary arteries and the aortic trunks have a separate origin (fig. 633). The complete number of aortic arches is present only during the fœtal life; in later life their number becomes much reduced. Originally five pairs of vascular arches—as also in Birds and Mammals—are present; they embrace the gullet and join to form the two roots of the aorta. Most of them, however, undergo reduction, losing their connections with each other, so that finally each aortic root (Saurians) arises from two vascular arches, or is the prolongation of a single aortic arch. The aorta, which passes out from the heart, is divided into three trunks—a right and left aorta and a pulmonary artery—each with a separate opening into the ventricle [*i.e.*, three distinct arterial trunks leave the

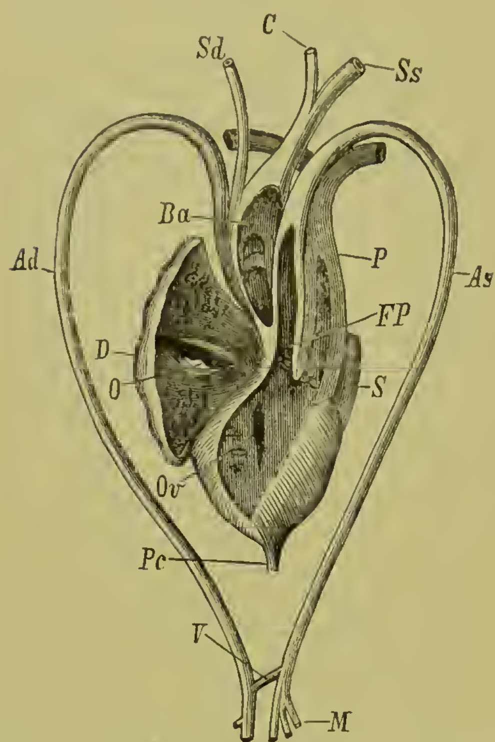



Fig. 633.—Heart and large vascular trunks of *Alligator lucius* seen from the ventral side and partly opened (after Gegenbaur). *D*, right auricle; *S*, left auricle; *O*, ostium venosum of the right auricle; *Ov*, auriculo-ventricular aperture; *Ba*, bulbus arteriosus; *C*, carotis primaria; *Sd*, *Ss*, subclavian arteries; *Ad*, right aortic arch; *As*, left aortic arch; *P*, pulmonary artery; *V*, connection of right with left aortic arch; *M*, mesenteric artery; *Pc*, connection of the heart with the pericardium; *FP*, position of the foramen Panizzæ.

ventricle or ventricles, and not one only as in the Ichthyopsida]. In the Snakes and Lizards the left arterial trunk is prolonged into the left aortic root without giving off vessels (fig. 60, *Aos*), while the right and larger before being prolonged into the right aortic root gives off a common stem for the two carotids (fig. 60, *l*), between which and the corresponding aortic roots a connecting vessel (ductus Botalli), constituting a second persistent aortic arch, may be retained (many Lizards). In the *Chelonia* the right aortic arch likewise gives off the carotids and subclavians, while the left gives off the visceral arteries. In consequence of the very small size of the aortic root of the latter, the aorta appears to be mainly a prolongation of the right aortic arch. Crocodiles present the same arrangements, but in them the right arterial trunk arises from the left ventricle and receives arterial blood from the latter. In this case also, in spite of the complete division of the heart, the mixture of venous and arterial blood is not wholly avoided, since there is a communication—the *foramen Panizzæ*—between the right and left aortic arches. When the separation of the two ventricles is incomplete, mixture of the two kinds of blood takes place in part in the heart, although the entrance into the pulmonary vessels can by special valvular arrangements be separated from the ostia of the arterial trunks in such a manner that the arterial blood principally flows into the latter, and the venous into the former (Brücke). In the venous system there is, as in the *Amphibia*, a renal-portal as well as an hepatic-portal circulation. In the *Chelonia* and *Crocodilia*, however, the renal-portal system is more and more reduced, for the greater part of the blood of the iliac veins passes to the liver. The system of lymphatic vessels presents extraordinarily numerous and wide lymph spaces, and is arranged exactly like that of the *Amphibia*. Contractile lymph hearts have only been discovered in the posterior part of the body at the junction of the trunk and tail. They are paired and situated on the transverse processes or ribs.

The **kidneys** of Reptiles belong, as in Birds and Mammals, to the hinder region of the trunk, and correspond accordingly only to the posterior broad part of the Amphibian kidney. In Lizards and Chelonians a urinary bladder projects on the anterior wall of the cloaca. The urine is not by any means always fluid, but is often a whitish mass of firm consistency, and contains uric acid.

The **generative organs** (fig 634) resemble those of Birds. The morphological relations of the generative organs of the higher vertebrates are attained, inasmuch as the anterior region of the kidney (primordial kidney and Wolffian duct), which in the *Amphibia* still functions as a urinary organ, is here transformed into the efferent apparatus of the testis (epididymis and vas deferens), and in the female sex vanishes or rarely persists as a rudiment (*Rosenmüller's* organ, canal of *Gärtner*), while in the female the Müllerian

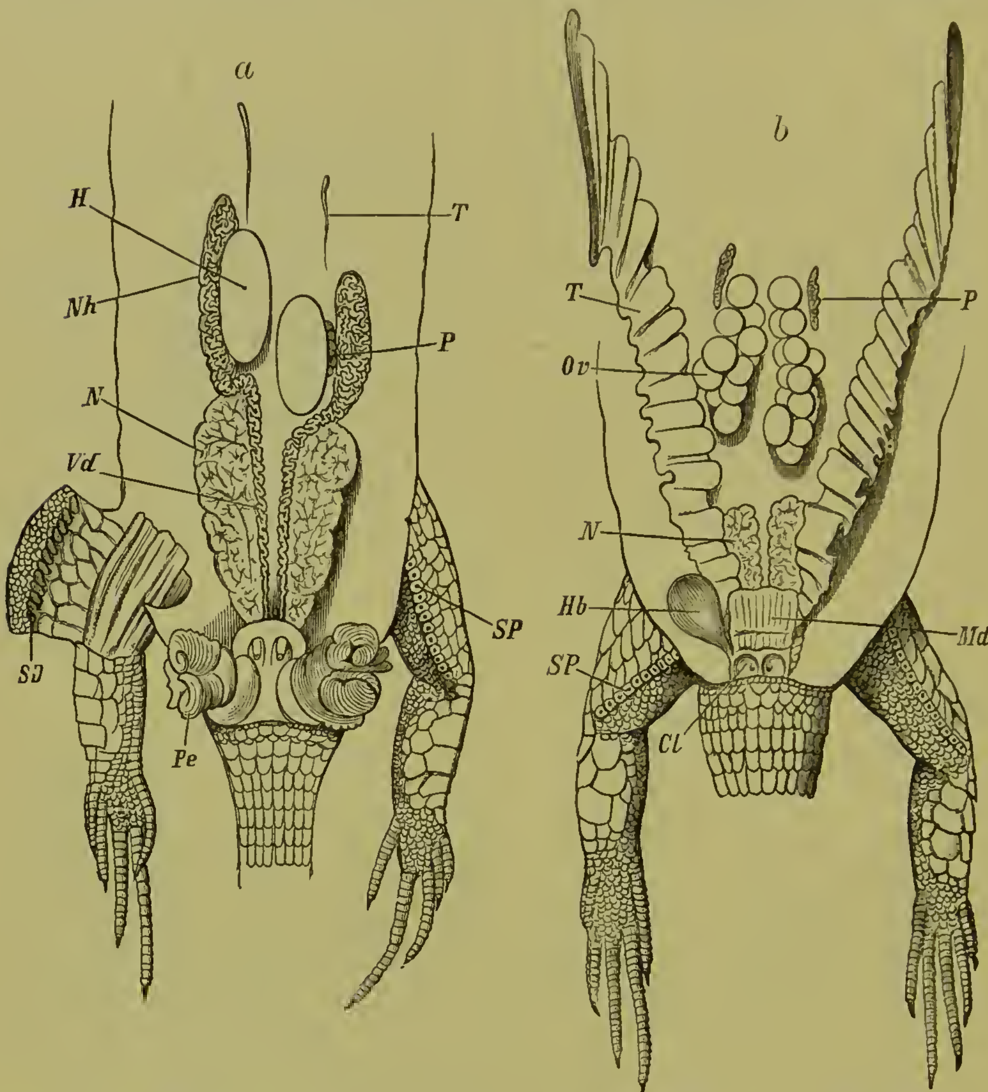



FIG. 634.—Urogenital apparatus of *Lacerta agilis* (after C. Heider). *a*, of the male. *N*, kidney; *H*, testis; *Nh*, epididymis; *Vd*, vas deferens; *P*, remains of the primordial kidney (Wolffian body); *T*, remains of the Müllerian duct; *Pe*, penis; *SP*, pores of femoral glands; *SD*, femoral glands.—*b*, Of the female. *Hb*, urinary bladder; *Md*, rectum (cut); *Cl*, cloaca *Ov*, ovary; *T*, Müllerian duct developed into oviduct.

duct becomes the oviduct. The oviducts as well as the vasa deferentia open separately into the cloaca. The oviducts begin with a wide peritoneal ostium, have a sinuous course, and secrete the calcareous and usually membranous egg shells. The eggs in many cases remain a long time in the terminal part of the oviduct (which may then be termed the uterus), sometimes till the embryonic development is completed.

The males always possess external organs of copulation, to which in the females similarly arranged rudiments (*clitoris*) correspond In Snakes and Lizards (*Plagiotrema*) these organs consist of two protrusible hollow tubes, which are either smooth or covered with spines and lie retracted in a pouch-like cavity behind the cloaca. When protuded their surface is traversed by a groove which conveys the sperm from the genital openings of the cloaca. In the *Chelonia* and *Crocodilia*, on the other hand, an erectile penis supported by fibrous bodies projects on the anterior wall of the cloaca. This penis also has a groove in which the semen is received and passed on, but it cannot be invaginated like the two penises of Snakes and Lizards. Copulation always leads to the fertilization of the ova within the body of the mother. But few Reptiles, e.g., *Pelias berus* amongst the Snakes, and the Blindworm amongst the Lizards, are viviparous. Most forms are oviparous, and bury their eggs in damp earth in sheltered warm spots, and take no further trouble about their fate. Some of the Pythons, however, are an exception to this; inasmuch as they coil their body together over the eggs which they have laid, and afford warmth and shelter to the developing brood.

The developmental history * of the Reptiles is very similar in its general features to that of Birds. The ovum is relatively large, and is sometimes surrounded by a layer of albumen within the shell. The segmentation is partial and leads to the formation of a discoidal blastoderm, with primitive groove and medullary folds. Before the medullary folds have closed, a transverse depression appears at the dilated anterior end of the medullary groove; this depression is the head fold, which leads to the origin of the cranial flexure, a feature always found in the higher vertebrates. [The cranial flexure is found in all vertebrates except Amphioxus.] The embryo which at first lies flat on the yolk, becomes gradually more and more sharply marked off from the latter, for the ventral walls of the boat-shaped body grow together, and leave only a small opening (*umbilicus*).

* C. E. v. Baer, "Ueber Entwickelungsgeschichte der Thiere," II., Königsberg, 1837.

H. Rathke, "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Natter," Königsberg, 1839.

H. Rathke, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Schildkröten," Braunschweig, 1848.

H. Rathke, "Untersuchungen über die Entwickelung und den Körperbau der Crocodile," Braunschweig, 1866.

L. Agassiz, "Embryology of the Turtle," *Contributions to the Nat. Hist., etc.* II., Boston, 1857.

Thus it happens that the central digestive canal, which at first has the form of a shallow groove, becomes converted into a tube which remains for some time connected with the yolk at the umbilicus by a narrow duct.

The appearance of a membrane enclosing the embryo and known as the *amnion* (fig. 635) is characteristic. The amnion arises in the following way. The outer layer (somatopleure) of the blastoderm is raised at the anterior and posterior end of the embryo, and forms two folds covering the head and tail end. These folds soon extend over the lateral portions, and fuse over the body of the embryo, so as to form a closed sac filled with fluid. Another organ which is characteristic of the higher vertebrates is the *allantois*. This arises at the posterior end of the body as a vesicular evagination of the ventral wall of the alimentary canal, and grows out to a sac of considerable size. The walls of this sac, which is filled with fluid, are, unlike those of the amnion which is entirely without vessels, extraordinarily vascular and represent an embryonic respiratory organ, which in the long duration and complicated developmental processes of embryonic life is of great importance. The appearance of the allantois is correlated, not only with the disappearance of branchial respiration, but also with the complete absence of a metamorphosis; the young animal being completely organised when it leaves the egg.

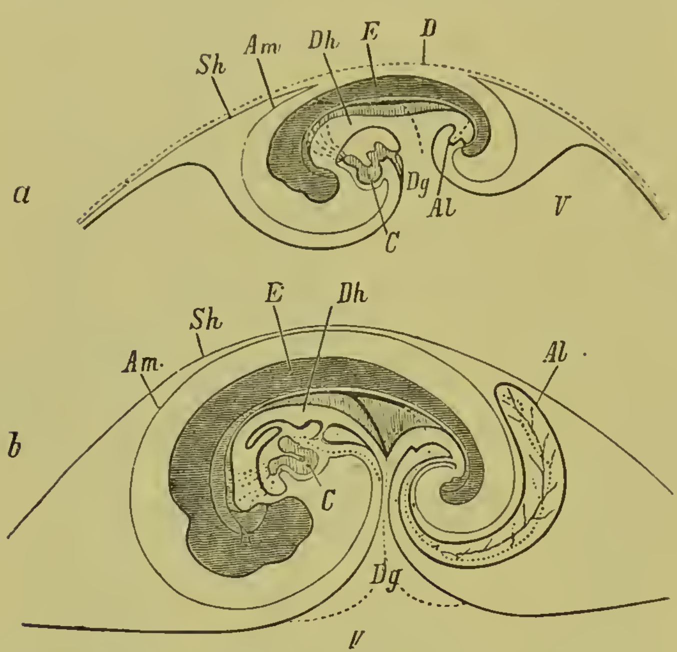



Fig. 635.—Two stages in the development of the chick (after v. Baer) to show the development of the amnion and the allantois.—*a*, The two folds of the amnion are still widely separate from one another; only the first rudiments of the allantois are visible.—*b*, Later stage with closed amnion. *E*, embryo; *D*, vitelline membrane; *Am*, amnion; *Sh*, Serous membrane; *Dh*, alimentary cavity; *Dg*, umbilical passage; *V*, Yolk; *C*, heart; *Al*, allantois.

Some Snakes and Lizards extend far north, while the *Crocodilia* are confined to the torrid zone, and only isolated examples of the *Chelonia* belong to the torrid zone.

The *Reptilia* of the cold and temperate regions fall into a sort of winter sleep, and in the hot climates there is a summer sleep which comes to an end with the beginning of the rainy season.

Most Reptiles are very tenacious of life, and can exist a long time without food and with limited respiration, and are capable, though in a less degree than the *Amphibia*, of reproducing injured or lost parts of the body.

The oldest fossil remains of Reptiles belong to the Primary period, but appear only very sparingly in this period, being confined to the Kupferschiefer formation (*Proterosaurus Speneri*). The Secondary period (Trias and Jura) can show a far greater variety of forms. At this time the Saurians and Hydrosaurians were predominant. The scaly Lizards first appear in the upper strata of the Jura, and are most abundant in the Tertiary period, which also presents a few remains of Snakes. *Chelonia* first appear—excepting the doubtful footprints of the Trias—in the Jura. Land-Tortoises are first met with in the Tertiary formations.

## Sub-class 1.—PLAGIOTREMATA (LEPIDOSAURIA).

*Reptiles with scales and dermal shields, either apodal or provided with extremities. They have a transverse anal slit and a double penis.*

### Order 1.—Ophidia * (Snakes).

*Apodal Plagiostremata without pectoral girdle; with bifid protrusible tongue; usually with freely movable, always displaceable, maxillary and palatine bones; without urinary bladder.*

The Snakes are chiefly characterized by the absence of extremities, and by the distensibility, sometimes extraordinary, of the mouth and pharynx. They cannot, however, be sharply separated from the Lizards. Formerly the limitations of this order rested entirely on the absence of extremities, and thus not only were the *Cœciliadœ* amongst the *Amphibia*, but also the Blindworms and other genera of apodal Lizards, included in it. The *Amphisbœnidœ* also were

* Gray, "Catalogue of Reptiles in the collection of the British Museum," Part III., Snakes. London, 1849.

Günther, "Catalogue of Colubrine Snakes in the collection of the British Museum," London, 1858.

Jan, "Iconographie générale des Ophidiens," Livr. I.—XXVII. Paris, 1860—1868.

Lenz, "Schlangenkunde," 2 Auflage, Gotha, 1870.

formerly regarded as Ophidia. Moreover, many Snakes have the rudiments of posterior extremities, which are placed at the root of the tail and have a conical claw projecting at the side of the anus. No Snake has a pectoral girdle or any trace of an anterior pair of extremities.

In the skull of the Snakes (fig. 636) the temporal arcades are absent [*i.e.*, the postfrontal is not directly connected with the squamosal, and there is no jugal or quadrato-jugal connecting the maxilla with the quadrate]. The cranial cavity is very long. The anterior and middle parts of its lateral walls are formed by descending wing-like processes of the parietal and frontal bones. The maxilla is connected with the palato-pterygoid arcade by an os transversum, and these bones are so completely movable upon one another and the cranium, that the mouth is capable of being considerably dilated and laterally extended. The quadrate bone is very movably articulated with the squamosal, which is also movably attached on the occipital region. The two rami of the lower jaw are as movable as are the parts of the maxillo-palatine apparatus. They are connected at the symphysis by an elastic ligament, which permits of a considerable amount of lateral movement.

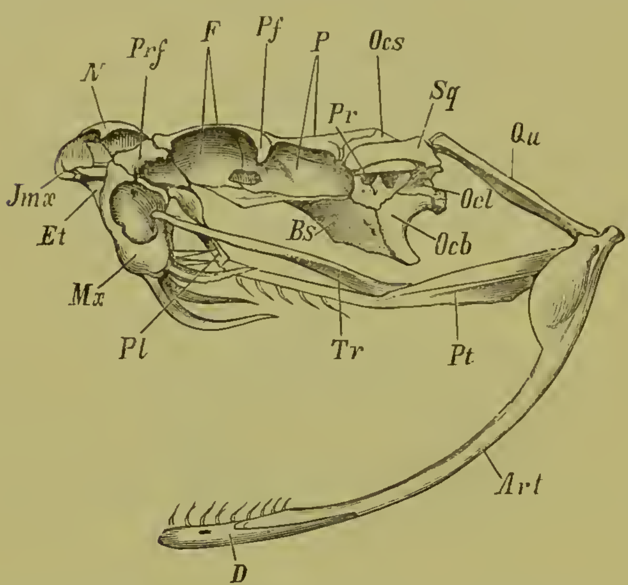



FIG. 636.—Skull of *Crotalus horridus*. *Ocb*, Basioccipital; *Ocl*, exoccipital; *Ocs*, supraoccipital; *Pr*, prootic; *Bs*, Basi-sphenoid; *Sq*, squamosal; *P*, parietal; *F*, frontal; *Pf*, post-frontal; *Prf*, præ-frontal; *Et*, median ethnoid; *N*, nasal; *Qu*, quadrate; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Pl*. palatine; *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, præ-maxillary; *Tr*, transverse; *D*, dentary; *Art*, articulare of the lower jaw.

The armature of the jaws consists of a number of recurved prehensile teeth, which are arranged in a single row on the lower jaw, and usually in a double row on the maxillo-palatine apparatus; they chiefly serve to hold the prey fast while it is being swallowed. Hooked teeth may also be present on the præmaxillæ (*Python*). Only in the *Opoterodonta* are the teeth confined to the upper jaw or to the lower jaw. Besides these solid hooked teeth many snakes possess in the upper jaw grooved teeth, or hollow poison teeth, which are traversed by a canal; the canal is connected with the duct of a poison gland, and through it the secretion of the latter is poured. Frequently the maxilla is much reduced, and contains on each side only one large perforated poison-tooth, near which, however, other larger and smaller supplementary teeth are always placed (*Solenoglypha*). The grooved teeth are rarely more numerous, and are attached to the maxillaries either quite in front (*Proteroglypha*), or behind a row of hooked teeth (*Opisthoglypha*). In both cases the maxilla is larger than that of the *Solenoglypha*. In the *Aglyphodonta*, however, where there are no grooved teeth, the maxilla attains the greatest size and the richest dentition. While the grooved teeth are immovably fixed, the tubular poison teeth are erected, with the maxillaries to which they are attached, when the mouth is opened, and are, when the snake strikes, driven into the flesh of the prey. Simultaneously the secretion of the poison gland, which is forced out by the pressure caused by the contraction of the temporal muscles, is injected into the wound; it is thus mixed with the blood, and quickly causes the death of the victim.

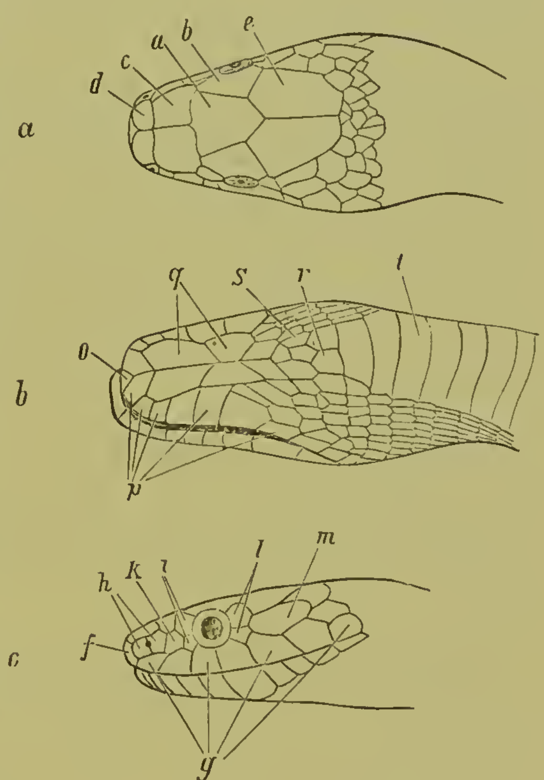



FIG. 637.—Head of *Calopeltis Aesculapii*. *a*, Dorsal view, *b*, ventral. *c*, Lateral view of head of *Tropidonotus viperinus* (after E. Schreiber). *a*, Frontal scute; *b*, supra-ciliary scutes; *c*, posterior nasal scute; *d*, anterior nasal scute; *e*, parietal scute; *f*, rostral scute; *g*, upper labial scutes; *h*, nasal scute; *i*, præorbital scutes; *k*, loreal scute; *l*, postorbital; *m*, temporal scutes: *o*, chin scute; *p*, lower labial scutes; *q*, mental scute; *r*, cervical scutes; *s*, cervical scales; *t*, ventral scutes.

The hard structures of the integument, which have the form of scales, scutes, and splints, vary much in form, number, and arrangement. While the dorsal surface of the trunk is always covered with smooth or keeled scales; the head is covered with scales as well as with scutes and plates, which, like those of the Lizards, are distinguished according to their special position as frontal, parietal, and occipital scutes; also as rostral, nasal, temporal, and labial scutes, etc.

(fig. 637). The mental scutes—*i.e.*, the scutes in the mental groove on the ventral surface between the rami of the lower jaw (fig. 637, *g*) —may be mentioned as peculiar to most snakes; in front of these two accessory labial scutes on either side form with the median labial scute (*o*) the anterior boundary of the mental groove. The scutes on the abdomen are for the most part broad, and invest the trunk like transverse bands (fig. 637 *b*, *t*); but scales and small median scutes may also be present here. The ventral surface of the tail, on the other hand, is, as a rule, covered by a double, or rarely by a single, row of scutes. Snakes moult several times in the course of the year; they strip off the whole of the epidermis on which the sculpture of the cutis is repeated.

The internal organisation corresponds with the requirements of the elongated form of the body, as well as with the mode of locomotion and nourishment. A long and extensible gullet with thin walls leads into the dilated saccular stomach, which is followed by a relatively short small intestine. The larynx is placed extraordinarily far forward, and can be projected into the mouth during the long and difficult act of swallowing. The trachea is extremely long, and often contains respiratory air-cells in its course. The left lung is usually entirely rudimentary, while the right lung is correspondingly large, and is transformed at its posterior end into a vesicular air-reservoir.

The auditory organ is without an apparatus for conducting sound, and the eyes have no movable lids. The eye-ball, with its usually vertical pupil, is covered by the skin, which is here transparent, and behind which it is bathed by the lacrymal fluid. The nasal apertures are usually placed quite at the apex or on the lateral margins of the snout. The forked horny tongue serves not as an organ of taste, but as a tactile organ, and is enclosed in a sheath, from which it can be protruded through an indentation of the extremity of the snout, even when the mouth is closed.

The Snakes move principally by means of lateral flexions of the vertebral column. The vertebræ are very numerous, and almost always bear ribs in the region of the trunk. The centra are concave in front and convex behind; they are connected with one another by free ball and socket joints, and by horizontal articular surfaces of the transverse processes in such a manner that dorso-ventral movements are impossible. The ribs are also freely articulated with the vertebral bodies, and can be moved backwards and forwards, movements which are of great use in assisting locomotion. The Snakes run in a certain sense on the extreme points of their ribs, which are attached to dermal scutes; for they move by alternately pushing the ribs forward, and drawing after them the ventral scutes, which are attached to one another and to the ribs by muscles.

The Snakes feed exclusively on living animals, both warm-blooded and cold-blooded, which they attack suddenly, kill and swallow whole without mastication. Swallowing is effected thus: the teeth on the jaws are alternately hooked further and further forwards into the body of the prey, as a result of which the mouth and pharynx of the snake are in a sense gradually drawn over the animal, whose surface is at the same time made slippery by the abundant secretion of the salivary glands. During this process the larynx is projected forward between the rami of the jaws, so that respiration can be maintained. After the completion of this laborious operation of swallowing, the animal appears entirely prostrated, and passes a long period in inactivity, during which the very slow but complete digestion takes place.

Snakes copulate, and are for the most part oviparous. They lay a small number of large eggs, in which the embryonic development may be already far advanced. There are, however, also viviparous Snakes; for example, the sea-snakes (*Hydrophidæ*) and the vipers (*Pelias berus*).

Most of the species distinguished by size and beauty of colour belong to the warmer zones, only the smaller forms extend into northern temperate climates. Many Snakes are fond of the water and are truly amphibious. Others live for the most part on trees and shrubs, or on sandy ground; others exclusively in the sea. In the temperate countries they fall into a kind of winter sleep, in the hot countries they undergo a summer sleep in the dry season.

Sub-order 1. **Opoterodonta.** With narrow, non-distensible, slit-like mouth, and immovably connected facial bones, without or with only a short tail. They have solid hooked teeth only in the upper jaw or in the lower jaw. Posterior limbs present as rudiments. They live beneath stones, or in passages in the earth, and feed on insects.

Fam. **Typhlopidæ.** *Typhlops lumbricalis* Merr. (fig. 638), Antilles. *T. vermicularis* L., Greece. *Stenostoma nigricans* Dum. Bibr., South Africa.

Sub-order 2. **Colubriformia.** Both jaws armed with solid hooked teeth. In the upper jaw the last tooth may be grooved, and then may be either without poison glands, or may be connected with the duct of a small poison gland. This sub-order includes the **Aglyphodonta** and the **Opisthoglypha**.

Fam. **Uropeltidæ**. With short pointed head, mouth not distensible, but with teeth in both jaws. *Uropeltis philippinus* Cuv.

Fam. **Tortricidæ**. With small hardly discernible head and short conical tail. The teeth are small, and there are teeth on the palatine bones. They have a rudiment of the pelvis with small anal claws. *Tortrix scytale* Hmpr., South America; *Cylindrophis rufa* Gray, Java.

FIG. 638.—*Typhlops lumbricalis* (règne animal).

Fam. **Pythonidæ**. With long oval heads covered with scutes or scales, with rudiments of hind limbs which terminate with an anal claw at the sides of the cloaca. *Eryx jaculus* Wagl., South Europe; *Boa constrictor* L., Brazil; *Python reticulatus* Schn., Sumatra.

Fam. **Colubridæ**. The head is not very broad, and is distinct; it is covered with scutes. The dentition is complete. The tail has a double row of scutes on the under surface. *Coronella austriaca* Laur.=*C. lævis* Lac., widely distributed in Europe; *Liophis cobella* L. Brazil; *Tropidonotus natrix* Gesn., Ringed snake. With obliquely keeled scutes. The species is widely distributed in Europe. *Tr. tesselatus* Meyr.; *Coluber* (*Calopeltis*) *Æsculapii* Gesn.=*C. flavescens* Gm., the snake of Æsculapius. South Europe, Schlangenbad, Austria; *Zamenis atrovirens* Shaw, South Europe; *Herpetodryas carinatus* L., Brazil.

Fam. **Dendrophidæ**. Tree snakes. Body thin and slender, head usually long, flat and distinct from the neck. The ventral scutes usually with two keels. Ventral caudal scutes in two rows. *Dendrophis picta* Gm., East Indies; *Ahætulla smaragdina* Boie, West Africa.

Fam. **Dryophidæ**. Body very long and slender, as is the head; snout thin and sometimes prolonged into a flexible appendage. *Dryophis argentea* Daud., Cayenne.

Fam. **Psammophidæ**. Sand snakes. The posterior tooth of the upper jaw is grooved. *Psammophis lineatus* Dum. Bibr., Mexico; *Cœlopeltis lacertina* Wagl., Egypt.

Fam. **Dipsadidæ**. The body tolerably slender, strongly compressed: with short tail, broad at the end, and very distinct. There are usually posterior grooved teeth. *Dipsas dendrophila* Reinw., East Indies; *D. fasciata* Fisch., West Africa.

Fam. **Scytalidæ**. The hindmost tooth in the upper jaw is the longest, and is grooved. *Scytale coronatum* Dum. Bibr., Brazil. *Oxyrhopus plumbeus* Wied., South America.

Sub-order 3. **Proteroglypha**. Poisonous snakes with large grooved teeth, which are placed anteriorly in the upper jaw, and behind which there are usually solid hooked teeth. The palatine and pterygoid bones, as well as the lower jaw, are armed with hooked teeth.

Fam. **Elapidæ**. Resemble the *Colubridæ*. Head covered with scales; usually with two rows of sub-caudal scutes. *Naja tripudians* Merr., the Cobra, Bengal; *N. haje* L. Cleopatra's Snake, Egypt; *Elaps corallinus* L., the coral Snake, South America. (Fig. 639.)

Fam. **Hydrophidæ**, Sea-Snakes. With scarcely distinct head which is covered with scutes, and compressed body which is prolonged into a strongly compressed

FIG. 639.—*Elaps corallinus* (règne animal).

swimming-tail. They are viviparous. *Platurus fasciatus* Daud., Indian Ocean *Hydrophis* (*Pelamis*) *bicolor* Daud. (fig. 640), Indian Ocean.

Sub-order 4. **Solenoglypha**. Snakes with triangular head and relatively short tail. The small upper jaw has a hollow poison tooth on either side, and one or more reserve teeth. Small solid hooked teeth are also present on the palate and in the under jaw.

Fam. **Viperidæ** (Vipers). Head strongly marked off and broad, without pits between the nares and eyes. There are usually two rows of scales on the under side of the short tail. *Vipera aspis* Merr. In wooded mountain regions of South Europe. *V. ammodytes* Dum. Bibr. The sand viper, with a soft horny prominence on the tip of the snout. Italy and Dalmatia. *Pelias berus*.

(Kreuzotter). Common Viper, distinguished by the black-brown zigzag band on the back. Found in the mountain forests of Europe.

Fam. **Crotalidæ.** With a pit between the eyes and nose. *Crotalus durissus* L. Rattlesnake of south-east of North America; *C. horridus* L. South America *Bothrops atrox* L. Brazil.

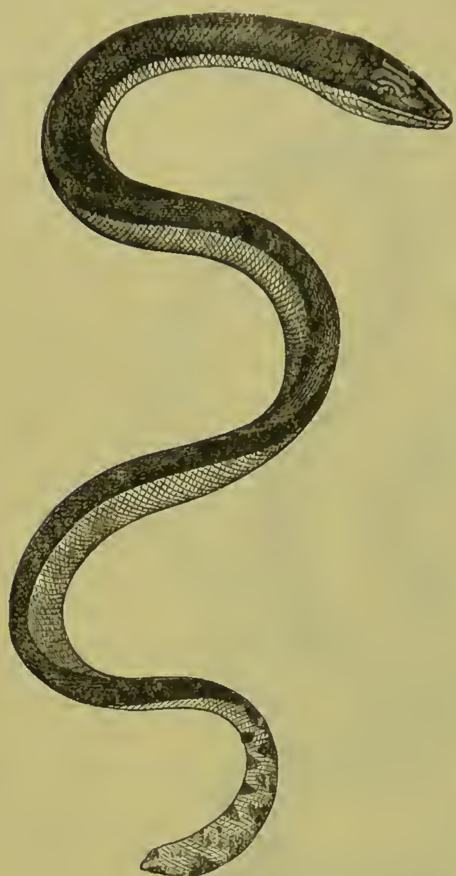


Fig. 640.—*Hydrophis bicolor* (règne animal).

Fig. 641.—*Pygopus (Bipes) lepidopus* (règne animal).

## Order 2.—Saurii * (Lacertilia)—Lizards.

*Plagiotrema with pectoral girdle and sternum, usually with tympanic cavity and movable eyelids; with a non-extensible mouth and with urinary bladder.*

The Lizards always have an elongated and sometimes a snake-like body. As a rule there are four extremities, which, however, scarcely

* Tiedemann, "Anatomie und Naturgeschichte der Drachen." Nürnberg, 1811.
J. E. Gray, "Catalogue of the specimens of Lizards in the Collection of the British Museum." London, 1845.
Fr. Leydig, "Die in Deutschland lebenden Arten der Saurier." Tübingen, 1872.

carry the body raised from the ground; but in locomotion are used principally for pushing the body forward; they may also be used for clinging (Chamælion), climbing (Geckos), and digging. They usually end with five clawed digits. They are sometimes so short and rudimentary, that they have the appearance of stumps applied to the serpent-like body, and are without separated digits (*Chamæsaura*). In other cases rudiments of the posterior limbs alone exist (*Pseudopus*) (fig. 641), or anterior limbs only are present (*Chirotes*); or finally external limbs may be entirely absent (*Anguis, Acontias, Ophisaurus*). The pectoral and pelvic girdles are however present, and in all Lizards except *Amphisbæna* there is at least a rudiment of the sternum, which increases in size as the anterior limbs become more developed, and then serves for the attachment of a correspondingly greater number of ribs. The ribs are only wanting on the most anterior cervical vertebræ, and sometimes on some of the lumbar as well as on the caudal vertebræ. The anterior ribs present a peculiar modification in *Draco*, being extremely long and serving to support lateral expansions of the skin, which can be used as wings.

The cranial capsule (fig. 631) does not usually extend into the orbital region, behind which it is imperfectly closed by membranous structures (membranous *interorbital septum*). The squamosal is firmly attached to a strongly projecting process (*parotic process*) of the posterior temporal region. The hinder end of the maxilla is frequently connected with the postfrontral (*Pf*) by a bony bridge, the jugal (fig. 631 *J*), which encloses the orbit; while a bone (quadrato-jugal) passes from the jugal to the quadrate, bridging over the temporal region.

An important character of the Lizards as opposed to the Snakes consists in the fact that the bones of the jaws are not movable upon one another. Parts of the maxillo-palatine apparatus are indeed movably connected with the skull (*Hatteria = Sphenodon* excepted), especially the pterygoids, which are applied to the articular processes of the basisphenoid, and usually articulate with the quadrate; but the individual bones of the maxillo-palatine apparatus are firmly connected with one another, and with the anterior part of the skull. The pterygoids are firmly attached to the maxillaries by a transverse bone, and serve to support the parietal bones by a rod-shaped *columella* [a bone which extends from the parietal to the pterygoid on each side]. On the top of the skull the parietal bones and the occipital segment are connected by fibrous tissue, and in consequence are slightly movable upon one another. The quadrate bone is movably articulated with the parotic process of the temporal region and supports the lower jaw, the rami of which are firmly connected at the symphysis.

The dentition of the Lizards in form, structure and mode of fixture of the teeth, presents far greater diversity than does that of the Snakes; it is however not so complete since the palate has never an inner row of teeth, but only small lateral groups on the pterygoids. The teeth are almost always attached directly to the bone, either on the edge of the jaw (*Acrodont*), or on the inner side of the jaw (*Pleurodont*). This distinction corresponds to the geographical distribution of the *Iguanas*, those found in the eastern hemisphere being Acrodonts, and those in the western Pleurodonts. The shape of the tongue seems important, and the principal groups are distinguished and named according to this characteristic.

Most Lizards have eyelids, an exposed tympanic membrane and a tympanic cavity. Only the *Amphisbænas* and *Geckos* are without eyelids, and have the same arrangement for covering the eyes as have the Snakes. In the *Scincoideæ* the lower eyelid can be raised like a transparent curtain without hindering the sight. In the *Chamælionidæ* the single eyelid is a muscular cutaneous ring of skin with circular opening.

The integument of Lizards resembles in its general features that of Snakes, but presents much greater variety. Sometimes there are flat or keeled scales, sometimes scutes and larger plates, for the distribution of which on the head the terminology already described for Snakes is used. In addition, more irregular hardenings of the skin may occur—warty protuberances which give the skin an appearance similar to that of the Toads (*Geckonidæ*). On the other hand there are often cutaneous lobes on the throat, crests on the back and on the top of the head, also folds of skin on the sides of the trunk, on the neck, etc. Although the skin of Lizards is in general poor in glands, yet in many forms cutaneous glands and corresponding rows of pores along the inner side of the thigh (fig. 634, *SP*) and in front of the anus are constantly present.

As a rule, the females after copulation (which in temperate regions takes place in summer) lay a small number of eggs; some genera are viviparous (*Anguis, Seps*). Most are harmless, and are useful by destroying Insects and Worms; larger species, as the *Iguana*, are hunted for the sake of their flesh. By far the greater number, and all the larger and more beautifully coloured species inhabit the warmer and hot countries.

Fossil remains of Lizards have been found in great numbers, the oldest from the uppermost strata of the Jura. The Lizards of the chalk (*Mosasaurus*, etc.), which are most nearly related to the Monitors, were of gigantic size.

Sub-order 1. **Annulata.** Body snake-like, with hard scaleless skin, which is divided into rings by transverse furrows (fig. 642). These rings are again crossed by longitudinal furrows in such a way that the surface has an elegantly plated, mosaic-like appearance. There are large scutes only on the head and throat. There is no sternum, and the pectoral girdle, except in *Chirotes*, remains very rudimentary.

Rudiments of a pelvis are in all cases present. As a rule extremities are wanting, but small front feet (*Chirotes*) may be present. Eye-lids and tympanic membrane are absent; the small eyes are covered by the integument. A columella is also absent. The tongue is short and thick, without sheath, and the dentition, as in the scaly Lizards, is either acrodont or pleurodont. They are harmless animals, and live for the most part in America, like the *Cæciliadæ*, beneath the ground, usually in ant-hills, and feed on Insects and Worms.

Fam. **Amphisbænidæ.** *Amphisbæna alba* L., Brazil; *A. fuliginosa* L., South America (fig. 642). *Chirotes lumbricoides* Flem. Mexico.

Fig. 642.—*Amphisbaena fuliginosa* (règne animal).

Sub-order 2. **Vermilinguia.** Lizards of the Old World, with vermiform tongue, which can be protruded with great rapidity to a great distance, and deep laterally compressed body, which is covered with a shagreen-like skin. The structure of the skull differs considerably from that of the other Lizards, in that the parietal bones are not movable on the occipital, but are firmly united to the latter and to the occipital crest, which is continued over the parietals.

Fam. **Chamæleonidæ.** The feet are prehensile, and end with five digits, which are arranged in bundles of two and three. The digits of each bundle are connected together as far as the claws, and the two bundles work on one another like the arms of a pair of pincers. The long and slender tail is prehensile, coiling round twigs and branches to attach the animal. They are all *acrodont*. The tympanic membrane is hidden, being covered by the integument. The Chamæleons possess the remarkable power of changing the colour of their skin; the change is dependent on the light-stimulus of surrounding objects, and is subordinated to the will of the animal. Recent researches, especially those of Brücke,* have contributed to the explanation of this phenomenon. Two different layers of pigment are placed beneath the thin epidermis—a superficial layer of clear, yellow pigment, and a deeper layer of dark-brown to black, the mutual extension and position of which varies. *Chamæleon vulgaris* Cuv., South Spain and Africa.

Sub-order 3. **Crassilinguia.** With thick and short fleshy tongue, which is hardly indented at the point; as a rule it is rather rounded, and cannot be protruded. Eyelids are usually present. The tympanic membrane is usually exposed. In all cases there are four limbs, with digits directed forwards. They live exclusively in the hotter regions of the Old and New Worlds. The eastern and western hemispheres contain types surprisingly alike, which, however (with the exception of the Geckos) can be sharply distinguished by their dentition; all those found in America are pleurodont, those of the Old World are acrodont.

Fig. 643.—*Platydactylus mauritanicus.*

Fam. **Ascalabotæ.** Geckos. Lizards of clumsy Salamander-like form, and of small size; with viscous lobes on the digits for attachment, and with biconcave vertebræ. They are all pleurodont, and without palatal teeth. They are shy, nocturnal animals, and their eyes are large and without lids. They climb and run very skilfully on smooth and steep walls, with the help of their retractile claws and the lobes on their digits. They live for the most part in hot countries; only a few are found in South Europe. They are harmless, but are erroneously considered as poisonous on account of the acrid fluid of their clinging digits. At night they make a loud cry, sounding like the word "Gecko." *Platydactylus mauritanicus* L. (fig. 643); *Pl. muralis* Dum. Bibr. Mediterranean coasts; *Hemidactylus verruculatus* Cuv. Mediterranean coasts; *Ptychozon homalocephalum* Kuhl., Java.

Fam **Iguanidæ.** Leguana. The body, which is somewhat laterally compressed, is supported by long slender legs, which are pre-eminently adapted for climbing. The head is more or less pyramidal, and often raised like a helmet, and of a peculiar shape, in consequence of the possession of a membranous jugular sac.

* E. Brücke, "Untersuchungen über den Farbenwechsel des afrikanischen Chamaeleons," *Denkschr. der k. Akad. der Wissensch.*, *Wien.* 1852.

Tympanic membrane usually exposed. Many of them have a spiny dorsal crest, and change their colour like the Chamæleons.

The following Iguanas belong to the western hemisphere, and are pleurodont: *Polychrus marmoratus* Cuv., Brazil; *Iguana tuberculata* Laur.=*sapidissima* Merr., West Indies; *I. delicatissima* Laur., tropical America; *Cyclura carinata* Gray, Cuba; *Basiliscus mitratus* Daud., South America.

The following belong to the eastern hemisphere, and are acrodont: *Calotes ophiomachus* Merr., East Indies; *Draco volans* L., Java; *Lophiura amboinensis* Schloss.

The New Zealand genus, *Hatteria = Sphenodon*, which was formerly reckoned among the *Iguanidæ*, shows such considerable differences in its organization that Günther established for it a third order of scaly Reptiles under the name of **Rhynchocephalia**,* which Huxley holds to be allied to the extinct Triassic Lacertilian genera *Hyperodapedon* and *Rhynchosaurus*.

Fam. **Humivagæ.** Lizards with broad flat body, supported by shorter limbs; of almost toad-like aspect. The skin is not unfrequently covered with spiny scales. They live on the ground in stony and sandy places, where they hide themselves in pits and holes.

To the *Humivagæ* of America, which are all pleurodont, belong *Phrynosoma orbiculare* Wiegm., Tapayaxin, Mexico; *Tropidurus cyclurus* Wied., Brazil.

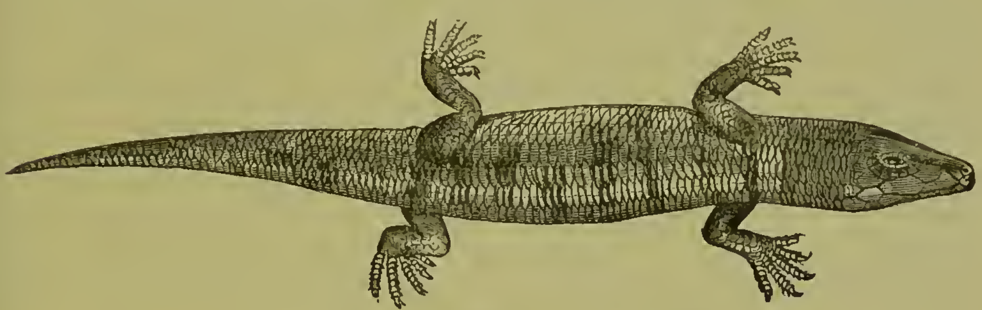


Fig. 644.—*Scincus officinalis* (règne animal).

To the *Humivagæ* of East India and Africa, which are acrodont, and possess canine teeth, belong *Phrynocephalus helioscopus* Kp., Siberia; *Uromastix spinipes* Merr., Egypt; *Agama colonorum* Daud., Egypt; *Stellio vulgaris* Latr., Hardun, Egypt.

Sub-order 4. **Brevilinguia.** Scaly Lizards, with elongated, often snake-like body. The limbs are very diversely developed. The tongue is short and thick, without sheath, more or less indented at the thinner anterior end, and but slightly protrusible. Eyelids are, as a rule, present. The tympanic membrane is often concealed beneath the skin.

Fam. **Scincoideæ.** Sand-Lizards. The more or less snake-like body is covered with smooth bony scales. The crown of the head is invested with larger scutes. *Anguis fragilis* L., Blindworm, Europe; *Scincus officinalis* Laur. (fig. 644) Egypt; *Seps chalcidica* Merr., Dalmatia; *Acontias maleagris* Cuv., Cape.

* A. Günther, "Contribution of the Anatomy of *Hatteria* (*Rhynchocephalus*) Gray." *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc.*, London, vol. 157. ii., 1867.

Fam. **Ptychopleuræ.** The body is provided with two lateral folds of skin, covered with small scales. These folds extend from the region of the ear to near the anus, and form the boundary between the dorsal and ventral surfaces. *Zonurus Cordylus* Merr. = *griseus* Cuv., South Africa; *Pseudopus Pallasii*, Cuv., South-east Europe, and in lower Austria; *Pygopus (Bipes) lepidopus* Lacep., New Holland (fig. 641); *Chamæsaura anguina* Schn., Cape; *Ophisaurus ventralis* Daud., North America.

Sub-order 5. **Fissilinguia.** *Pleurodonta*, with long and thin, protrusible bifid tongue, usually with complete eyelids, and always with exposed tympanic membrane. The scales of the trunk are small and imbricated, those of the long tail mostly lozenge-shaped.

Fam. **Lacertidæ.** Mostly brightly coloured, very agile Lizards, with long tail and head covered with scutes. The ventral surface is covered with usually rhomboidal scales, arranged in oblique rows. *Lacerta vivipara* L., Germany and South Europe, viviparous; *L. ocellata* Daud.; *L. viridis*, green with black spots in front, Dalmatia; *L. agilis* L. = *stirpium* Daud., common Lizard; *L. muralis* Merr., South Europe; *Heloderma horridum* Wiegm., Mexico.

Fam. **Ameividæ.** Lizards of the New World whose head is covered with scutes, as in the *Lacertidæ*, while the abdomen is covered with rhomboidal scutes, arranged in transverse rows. *Tejus monitor* Merr. = *T. Tejuexin* L., Brazil, live in holes in the earth and in hollow trunks of trees. Feed on Mice, Insects, and Worms, and are, including the long tail, four or five feet long. They are hunted and eaten. *Ameiva vulgaris* Licht., West Indies.

Fam. **Monitoridæ.** Elongated Lizards of large size, without femoral pores. The crown of the head, the back and the abdomen, are covered with small plate-like scales. The separation of the ventricles of the heart is the most complete in the whole order. *Psammosaurus scincus* Merr. = *Varanus arenarius* Dum. Bibr., Egypt; the Land Crocodile of Herodotus; *Monitor niloticus* Hassl., eats the eggs of the Crocodile.

The **Proterosauria** and **Thecodontia** are fossil groups of Saurians. The former represent the oldest Lizards, and are distinguished by the possession of biconcave vertebral bodies and bifid spinous processes. They are found in the Kupferschiefer. The *Thecodontia*, also with biconcave vertebræ, possessed compressed teeth wedged into alveoli, with their crowns covered with finely serrated striæ; they belonged to the Triassic period.

The fossil **Dinosauria** must be mentioned as a special order of Reptiles. These were the colossal terrestrial inhabitants of the Jura, Weald, and lower chalk; in several features of their structure they recall Mammals, especially the Pachydermata.

Other orders of fossil Saurians, as the **Ornithoscelida**, present modifications which point in various ways to the organisation of birds. Characterised by the præacetabular extension of the ilium and the downward direction of the elongated pubis and ischium, they possessed, at least in the group which includes the Jurassic genus

*Compsognathus*, very long cervical vertebræ, an almost bird-like head, a very long neck, short anterior and very long posterior ribs. The astragalus is fused with the long tibia, as in birds.

The **Pterosauria** or **Pterodactyls**, which likewise lived principally in the Jurassic period, were flying Saurians. The external finger of the hand was elongated in the form of a sabre, and of considerable strength (fig. 118); it probably supported an expansion of the integument, which enabled the animal to float along in the air, or even to fly.

*Rhamphorhynchus Gemmingii* H. v. M., lithographic slate. *Pterodactylus longirostris* Cuv., Jura.

## Sub-class 2.—Hydrosauria.*

*Aquatic Reptiles of considerable size, with teeth wedged into the jaws, and leathery or armoured skin, with swimming fins or powerful feet, the digits of which are connected by webs.*

The Hydrosaurians, represented at the present time by the Crocodiles, are characterised by their usually gigantic size, by an organisation corresponding to their aquatic habits, and by their high development.

The numerous fossil forms were exclusively inhabitants of the sea, and had swimming fins resembling those of Whales; the bones of the arm were short, the carpal bones and the phalanges were numerous, and the digits were connected. The vertebral column, which was movable in its individual regions, and still composed of broad amphicœlous vertebræ, was prolonged into a tail of considerable size, which was probably surrounded by a membranous fin. At a higher grade of development the vertebral column consists of opisthocœlous reptilian vertebræ, and ends with a swimming-tail, surrounded by a cutaneous fold. The extremities become more and more like feet, and the distinctly separated digits are still webbed. Such forms no longer inhabit the high sea, but are found on the coast in lagoons, and near the mouths of rivers. They go up on to the land, and move quickly upon it, but they are unable to turn quickly and easily.

The dentition shows that the *Hydrosaurians* are powerful preda-

* R. Owen, "Palæontology." London, 1860.
Huxley. "On the dermal armour of Jacare and Caiman, etc." *Journ. Proceed. Linn. Soc.*, vol. iv., 1860.
Rathke, "Untersuchungen über die Entwickelung und den Körperbau der Crocodile." Braunschweig, 1866.

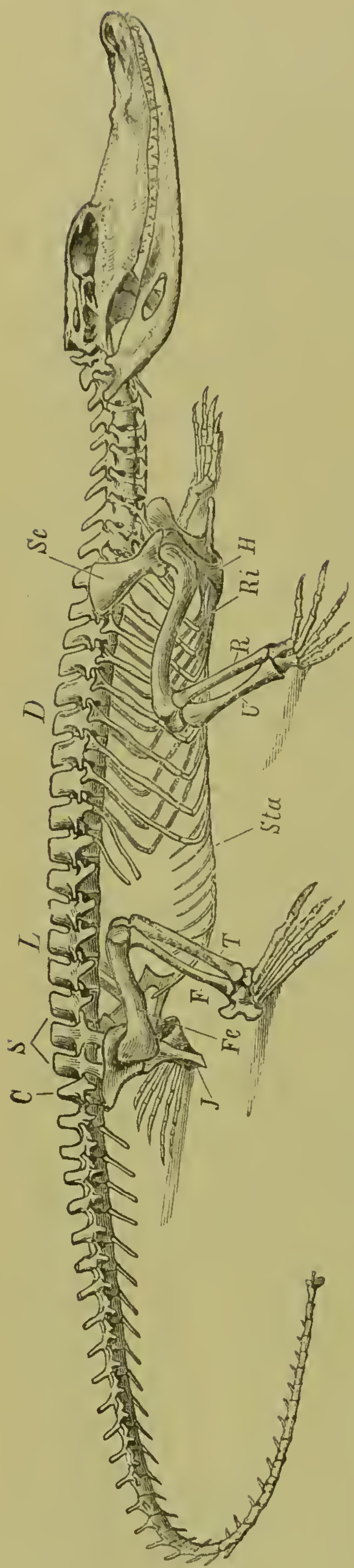



Fig. 645.—Skeleton of Crocodile. *D*, dorsal region; *L*, lumbar region; *Sa*, sacral region; *Ri*, ribs; *Sc*, scapula; *H*, humerus; *R*, radius; *U*, ulna; *Sta*, sternum abdominale; *Fe*, femur; *T*, tibia; *J*, ischium; *C*, caudal vertebræ.

tory animals. The flat head is prolonged into a long snout; the long jaws are armed with sharp conical prehensile teeth, which are wedged into deep alveoli; the crowns of the teeth are sometimes smooth, sometimes striated or superficially folded, and are gradually replaced by succeeding supplementary teeth. Ribs are present in great numbers, not only in the very long thoracic region, but also in the cervical and abdominal regions.

In the Crocodiles there is, in the abdominal region, a narrow *sternum abdominale*, which is prolonged to the pelvic girdle, and bears on its sides, a number of abdominal ribs. the upper ends of which do not reach the vertebral column (fig. 645). The internal organisation probably presented different grades of perfection in the various groups, of which only the highest—viz., that found in living Crocodiles—can be known to us.

### Order 1.—Enaliosauria.

*Hydrosauria with naked leathery skin, biconcave vertebræ and swimming fins* (*confined to the secondary period*).

The remains of these gigantic inhabitants of the sea, which lived through the secondary period from its beginning to its end, show that they were the most powerful marine animals of that time. They were of extreme length, and possessed a usually elongated, flat snout with numerous conical prehensile teeth, a very long mobile trunk, and fin-like extremities as in the Whales.

Fam. **Nothosaurii** (*Sauropterygii* Owen). With elongated bones of the upper jaw which reach to the point of the long snout; without superior temporal bones; with simple conical teeth. Belong to the Trias. *Nothosaurus mirabilis* Münst.; *Simosaurus* H. v. M., and others.

Fam. **Plesiosaurii** (*Sauropterygii* Owen). With long snake-like neck, short head and tail, and elongated swimming fins. They lived in the Jura and the chalk. *Plesiosaurus* Conyb.

Fam. **Ichthyosaurii** (*Ichthyopterygii* Owen). With very short neck, thick elongated body, short swimming fins, and long tail probably surrounded by a fin. The snout, pointed and elongated like a beak, is principally formed by the præmaxillary bones. The teeth present a striated and folded surface, and are closely crowded together. They are found principally in the Jura, rarely in the chalk. *Ichthyosaurus communis* De la Beche, etc.

## Order 2.—Crocodilia (Loricata).

*Hydrosauria, with bony dermal plates and teeth wedged into the bones of the jaws, to which they are confined; with four partly clawed feet and long, keeled swimming tail.*

The extremities no longer have the form of swimming fins, but of freely articulated legs and feet with separated digits. The integument is granular and leathery, and contains, especially on the dorsal surface, large and in part keeled, osseous plates. On the tail these plates form a dentated crest, paired in front, but in its hinder part simple.

The broad flat skull is distinguished by the corroded appearance of the surface of the bones, and possesses separated alisphenoids, and above the maxillo-jugal arcade a supra-temporal arcade, which is separated from the orbit by a bony bridge (process of the post-frontal and jugal). The roof of the skull is formed by an unpaired parietal and frontal, to which are joined the paired nasal bones. The upper jaws are firmly united with the skull and are elongated so as to form a long snout, at the end of which the paired præmaxillary bones are wedged in. The sides of the snout are formed by the maxillary bones which are very large. The præmaxillaries, which bound the nasal apertures, and the maxillaries develop horizontal palatal plates, which meet in the middle line and form the anterior part of the hard palate. The lacrymal is always of considerable size. Behind, the palatine and pterygoid develop palatal plates which unite suturally in the median line, and constitute a completely closed roof for the buccal cavity. The posterior nares which are surrounded by the paired vomers open at the posterior margin of the buccal cavity. The conical teeth, which are completely confined to the bones of the jaws [præmaxillæ, maxillæ, and mandible], are deeply wedged into alveoli, and they present slightly compressed striated crowns. The fourth tooth of the mandible is usually distinguished by its great size as a prehensile tooth, and, when the jaws are shut, fits into a gap or an excavation in the upper jaw. In the *Teleosauria* the vertebræ are amphicœlous; in the *Steneosauria*, which are also extinct, they are opisthocœlous, and in the Crocodiles of the present day procœlous.

The internal organisation of the living Crocodiles is the highest amongst all Reptiles. The eyes have vertical pupils and two lids as well as a nictitating membrane. The nasal openings lie far forward on the point of the snout, and, as well as the ears which are placed far back, can be closed by cutaneous valves. The buccal cavity, to the floor of which is attached a flat non-protractile tongue, is without salivary glands, and leads by a wide œsophagus into the rounded muscular stomach, which resembles that of Birds in form and structure, and specially in the aponeurotic discs of its internal lining. The stomach is followed by a thin-walled duodenum, which is beset with papillæ, and passes into the small intestine, which is folded in a zigzag fashion. There is no cæcal appendage to the short wide large intestine. The latter becomes narrow and almost funnel-shaped, before it opens into the cloaca, from the anterior wall of which arises the erectile copulatory organ. The structure of the heart is the most perfect found in all Reptiles, and, in the complete separation of a right venous and a left arterial portion, affords a direct transition to that of the warm-blooded animals. Finally, the free communication of the body cavity by openings of the so-called peritoneal canals, which recall the abdominal pores of the Ganoids and Selachians, deserves to be mentioned as peculiarities of the Crocodilia.

Three groups of Crocodiles are to be distinguished; two of these the *Teleosauria* (*Amphicœlia*) and *Steneosauria* (*Opisthocœlia*) are extinct. The former with the genera *Mystriosaurus* Kp. and *Teleosaurus* Geoffr. are confined to the Jurassic formation, the latter with *Steneosaurus* Geoffr. *Cetiosaurus* Owen, etc., occur in the Jura and in the chalk. Only the third group of the Crocodiles or *Procœlia* has persisted from the chalk onwards through the tertiary period to our own time.

### Sub-order **Procœlia = Crocodilia**, *s.str.*

With procœlous vertebræ and long compressed swimming tail, the dorsal side of which bears a double cutaneous crest, which becomes single at the posterior end. The anterior feet with five free digits; the posterior with four digits, which are more or less united by webs. Live in the mouths and lagoons of great rivers in the warmer climates of the Old and New Worlds, and seek their prey by night. The hard-shelled eggs are laid in the sand and in holes on the banks.

Fam. **Crocodilidæ.** The so-called canine teeth (fourth tooth of the lower jaw) fit into a notch of the margin of the upper jaw. Hind feet with complete swimming membrane. *Crocodilus vulgaris* Cuv., Nile. *C. rhombifer* Cuv., Cuba.

Fam. **Alligatoridæ.** The snout is broad and without notch for the so-called canines of the mandible. Swimming membranes only partially developed or rudimentary. [Found only in Amcriea.] *Alligator lucius* Cuv.; *Caiman* (*Jacare*) *sclerops* Schn.

Fam. **Gavialidæ.** *Rhamphostoma gangeticum* Geoffr.. East Indies; *Rhynchosuchus Schlegelii* Gray, Australia.

## Sub-class 3.—Chelonia.*

*Reptilia of short, stout form of body, with an upper and lower osseous shield which covers the dorsal and ventral surfaces. There are four feet, and the jaws are without teeth.*

No other group of Reptiles is so clearly defined and characterised to the same extent by peculiarities of form and organisation as is that of the Chelonia. The investment of the body by an upper, more or less arched and usually osseous dorsal shield (*carapace*), and by a lower ventral shield (*plastron*), joined to the former by lateral arches, forms a character as distinctive of the Chelonia as is the possession of wings and feathers of the class Aves.

The shield-like, dermal armour (fig. 646) beneath which the head extremities and tail can often be retracted, owes its origin partly to osseous parts of the vertebral column and partly to the accessory dermal bones, which are intimately connected with the former. The flat plastron contains nine more or less developed osseous pieces, an anterior unpaired *interclavicular*, and four pairs of lateral pieces (the anterior being distinguished as *clavicularia*) between which there

* H. Rathke, "Ueber die Entwickelung der Schildkröten," Braunschweig. 1848.

Gray, "Catalogue of the Shield Reptiles in the Collection of the British Museum, Part I.. London 1855, Suppl., 1870, Append., 1872.

L. Agassiz, "Embryology of the Turtle." Natural History of the United States, vol. III., part III., 1857.

may be left a median space, closed by skin or cartilage (*Trionyx*, *Chelonia*, etc.). The spinous processes and ribs of the thoracic vertebræ take part in the formation of the large carapace, as well as a number of paired and unpaired osseous dermal plates, which are placed partly

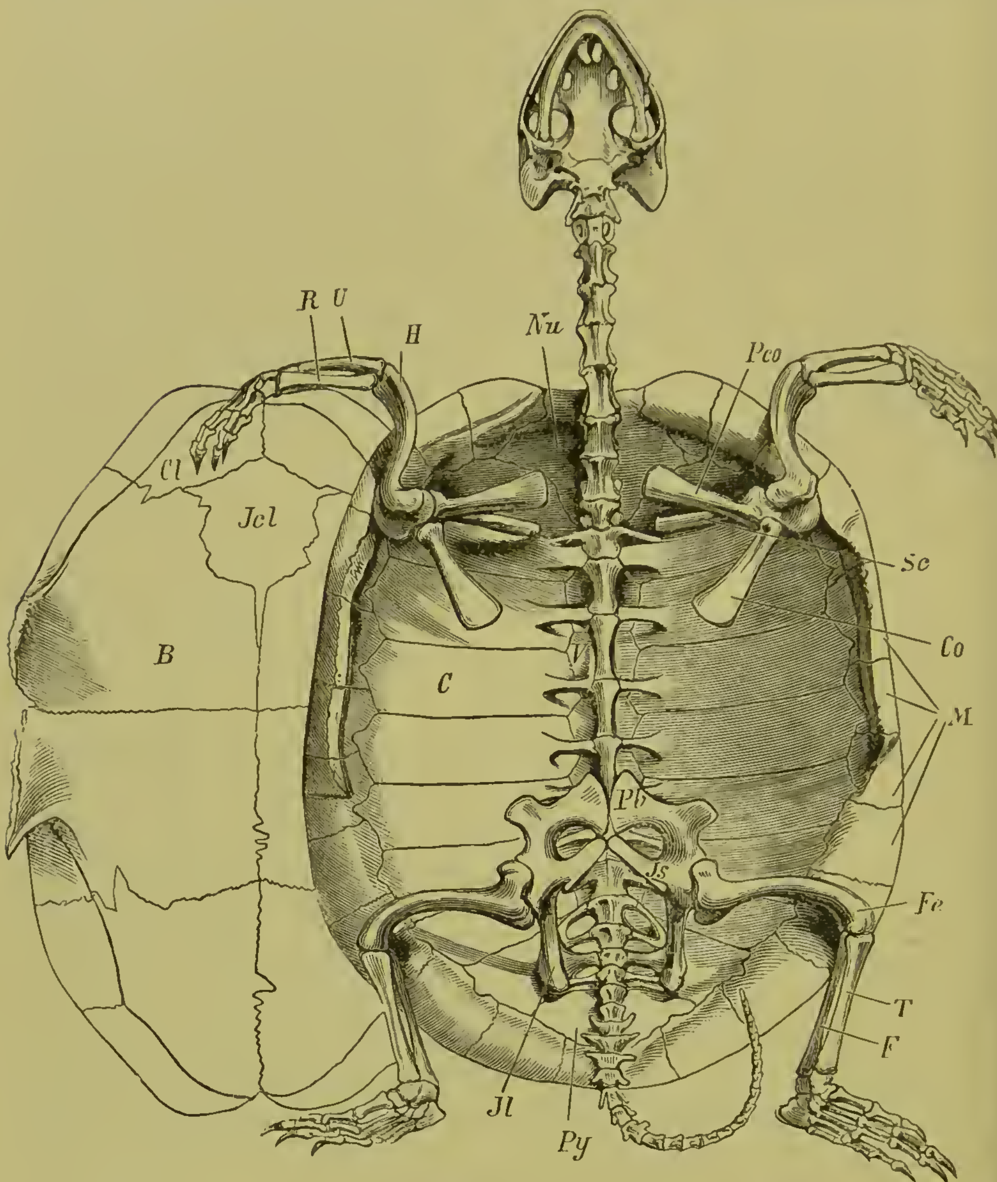



FIG. 646.—Skeleton of *Cistudo* (*Emys*) *europaea*. *V*, vertebral (neural) plates; *C*, costal plates; *M*, marginal plates; *Nu*, nuchal plate; *Py*, pygal plate; *B*, plastron (ventral shield); *Cl*, clavicle; *Jcl*, inter-clavicle; *Sc*, scapula; *Co*, coracoid; *Pco*, acromial process (pro-coracoid); *Pb*, pubis; *Js*, ischium; *Jl*, ilium; *H*, humerus; *R*, radius; *U*, ulna; *Fe*, femur; *T*, tibia; *F*, fibula.

in the median line in the neck (*nuchal plate*), and in the sacral region (*pygal plate*), and partly laterally at the edge of the shield (22 marginal plates).

While the spinous processes of eight of the thoracic vertebræ (2nd to 9th) appear in the median line as horizontal plates [*neural plates*], the ribs of the same vertebræ (2nd to 9th, these ribs are distinguished from the first and last ribs by their greater length) are transformed into broad transverse plates [*costal plates*], which are joined with one another by indented sutures, and present the special peculiarity of giving off broad processes, which arch over the muscles of the back, and are connected with the neural plates (expanded spinous processes). In addition, larger plates, which owe their origin to cornifications of the epidermis, are usually present. They are applied to the outer surface of both the dorsal and ventral shields and are used, in the case of some of the larger species, as tortoise-shell. They by no means correspond with the subjacent bony pieces, but are very regularly arranged in such a manner, that in the dorsal shield a median and two lateral rows of plates can be distinguished, and round the periphery a circle of marginal plates. On the ventral surface, on the other hand, there is a double row of such plates.

Unlike the middle (thoracic) region of the vertebral column, the vertebræ of which are firmly connected with the dorsal shield, the cervical and caudal vertebræ are always movable upon one another. The cervical region is exceedingly flexible, and can be more or less completely retracted within the shell; it consists of eight long vertebræ, which are without ribs. The ten rib-bearing vertebræ are followed by two or three sacral vertebræ, which project beneath the carapace, and by a considerable number of very movable caudal vertebræ.

The head is tolerably arched: the bones of the skull are firmly united to one another by sutures, and form a broad roof, which is prolonged into a strongly developed occipital crest. The skull is characterised by the possession of a pair of parietal bones and of large anterior frontals. Descending lamellar processes of the parietal bones extend along the sides of the cartilaginous cranial capsule as far as the short basisphenoid. The temporal fossa is most completely roofed in in the marine *Chelonia* by broad osseous plates which are formed by the postfrontal, jugal, quadrato-jugal, and the squamosal. The opisthotic remains as an independent bone behind the prootic, which forms the lateral walls of the cranial cavity. All the parts of the maxillo-palatine apparatus as well as the quadrate are firmly connected with the bones of the skull, and are marked off from one another by serrated sutures. The facial parts of the skull are strikingly short, and the nasal bones are absent. The bony palate is formed by the broad palatine and the unpaired vomer, behind the palatine plates of which the posterior nares open. The pterygoids are very broad and lamellar. Teeth are completely absent, both on the palatal bones and on the high, relatively short bones of the jaws, but the edges of the latter are covered, like the beak of a bird, by sharp cutting, serrated horny plates, which enable certain species to bite with great vigour and to inflict sensible wounds.

The four limbs enable the *Chelonia* to creep and run on land: in the aquatic forms, however, they are swimming feet or fins. The position of the pectoral and pelvic girdles, and of the corresponding muscles, between the dorsal and ventral shields, is remarkable; but is fully explained developmentally by the growth of the anterior and posterior ribs. The scapula is formed of an ascending rod-like bone, the upper end of which is attached to the transverse process of the anterior thoracic vertebra by a ligamentous or cartilaginous connection. A strong acromial process (procoracoid) reaches from the scapula to the unpaired portion of the ventral shield, to which it is likewise attached by a ligamentous or cartilaginous connection. The pelvis closely resembles that of the Saurians, and except in the Land Tortoises is not firmly connected with the carapace.

In the organs of digestion and reproduction Chelonians partly resemble Crocodiles and partly Birds. They especially resemble the former in the structure of the male generative organs, and in the possession of peritoneal canals, which are, however, closed. The opening of the genital ducts and the ureters into the neck of the urinary bladder, which accordingly functions as a urogenital sinus, is worthy of remark. The eyes are placed in closed orbits, and have lids and a nictitating membrane. There is always a tympanic cavity with a wide Eustachian tube, a long columella and a tympanic membrane, which is visible externally. The tongue is attached to the floor of the buccal cavity, and is not protrusible; in the Land Tortoises it is beset with long papillæ.

The copulation lasts a day, and during that time the male is carried on the back of the female. The eggs are laid in small number, except in the marine Chelonia, in which they are more numerous. They contain within the shell a layer of albumen, surrounding the yolk, and are buried in the earth, in the aquatic Chelonians near the shore. According to Agassiz the North American Marsh Tortoises lay eggs only once in the year, while they copulate twice (in the spring and autumn). The first copulation, according to this investigator, takes place in *Emys picta* in the seventh year, the first deposition of eggs in the eleventh year of the animal's life.

These facts agree with the slow growth of the body of the Tortoises, and the great age which they attain.

The Chelonians belong mainly to warmer climates, and live principally on vegetables; many of them, however, also live on Mollusca, Crustacea, and Fishes.

Fossil remains are first found, but rarely, in the upper white Jura. More numerous remains are found in the Tertiary period.

Fam. **Cheloniadæ.** Turtles. With flat dorsal and often cartilaginous ventral shield, between which the head and extremities cannot be retracted. The latter are fin-like feet, with immovably connected digits, which are usually without nails, and are covered by a common skin. The anterior limbs are much longer than the posterior. *Chelonia esculenta* Merr.; *Ch.* (*Caretta*) *imbricata*

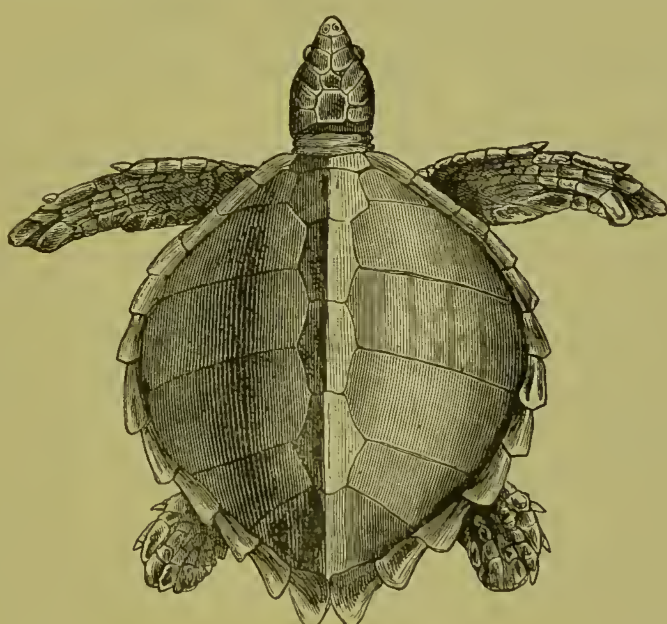


FIG. 647.—*Thalassochelys caretta* (règne animal).

L., Atlantic and Indian Ocean; *Thalassochelys caretta* L. = *corticata* Rond. (fig. 647), Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean; *Sphargis coriacea* Gray. Rare in the Mediterranean, more common in the Atlantic Ocean and South Sea.

Fam. **Trionycidæ.** Soft or Mud Tortoises. With flat, oval, incompletely ossified dorsal shield, and long retractile neck. Jaws with cutting edges, surrounded by fleshy lips. The head and feet are not retractile. The nasal openings are on the long snout. *Trionyx ferox* Merr. A fierce animal. Found in the rivers of Georgia and Carolina. Good to eat.

Fam. **Chelydæ.** Head and feet not retractile. Latter end with free digits, which are webbed and furnished with claws. *Chelys fimbriata* Schweig., Matamata. South America.

Fam. **Emydæ.** Freshwater Tortoises. Dorsal shield flat, plastron usually small. Feet thick, with freely movable digits, which are connected by a web. They swim excellently, and move also with great facility on land. They principally inhabit sluggish rivers and ponds. *Cistudo europæa* Schneid. = *lutaria* Gesn., the common Tortoise of South Europe and East Germany; *Emys caspica*, on the Caspian Sea, in Dalmatia and Greece; *Chelydra serpentina* L., with very sharp jaws, in North America.

Fam. **Chersidæ.** Land Tortoises. With high, arched, ossified carapace; head and feet retractile. The digits are immovably connected as far as the nails to thick club-feet, with indurated soles. They live in damp and shady localities in warm and hot climates, and feed on plants. *Testudo græca* L., *nemoralis* Aldr., = *marginata*, South Italy; *T. tabulata* Daud., in America.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Class IV.—AVES,* BIRDS.

*Warm-blooded oviparous animals, covered with feathers. The chambers of the heart are completely separated. The right aortic arch persists. There is a single occipital condyle, and the anterior limbs are transformed into wings.*

As opposed to the poikilothermic Vertebrates (*i.e.*, Vertebrates whose temperature varies with that of the external medium) the blood of *Aves* and *Mammalia* possesses a high temperature, which remains tolerably constant in spite of the changing temperature of the external medium. This maintenance of a constant temperature demands above everything a great energy of metabolism. The surface of all the vegetative organs, especially of the lungs, kidneys, and alimentary canal, has a relatively greater extension in the warm-blooded than in the cold-blooded animals. The operations of digestion, preparation of blood, circulation and respiration are carried on with much greater energy. With the need of a richer nourishment, the processes of vegetative life take a disproportionately more rapid course, and as the high and uniform temperature of the blood is a

Joh. F. Naumann, "Naturgeschichte der Vögel Deutschlands," 13 Bde., Stuttgart, 1822-1860.
"Naumannia, Archiv für Ornithologie," Herausgegeben von Ed. Baldamus. Köthen, 1849.
"Journal für Ornithologie." Herausgegeben von J. Cabanis. Cassel, 1853—.
"The Ibis," 1859.
Tiedemann, "Anatomie und Naturgeschichte der Vögel," Heidelberg. 1810-1814.
C. E. v. Baer, "Entwickelungsgeschichte der Thiere," I. und II., 1828-1837.
Remak, "Untersuch. über die Entwick. der Wirbelthiere," Berlin. 1850-55.
Huxley, "On the Classification of Birds," Proceed. Zool. Soc., 1867.
Gray and Mitchell, "The Genera of Birds," London, 1841-49.
C. Sundevall, "Tentamen." Stockholm, 1872-73.

condition necessary to their very maintenance, they seem to be the principal source of warmth produced. Since the loss of heat is greater when the temperature of the external medium is lowered, the activity of the vegetative organs must considerably increase in the colder season of the year, and in the northern climates.

In addition to the continual addition of new quantities of heat, a second cause contributes to the maintenance of the constant temperature of the warm-blooded animals. This is the protection afforded by the special nature of the covering of the body. While the Vertebrates with a variable temperature have a naked or armoured skin, Birds and Mammals have a more or less close covering of hairs or feathers, which limits to a great extent the loss of heat by radiation. The large aquatic animals, on the other hand, have a scanty covering of hair, but they develop thick layers of fat beneath the cutis, which serve for the retention of heat, and at the same time for hydrostatic purposes.

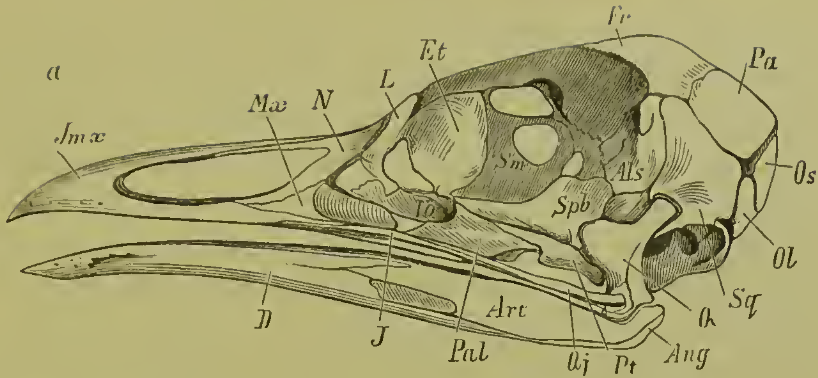
There is in all cases a mutual relation of a complicated kind between the factors which favour the withdrawal of heat and the conditions of the retention and the formation of heat, a relation which in spite of many variations in its individual factors results in the equalization of the heat generated and the heat lost. Some Mammals are able to maintain their proper temperature only within certain limits of the external temperature; these animals are to a certain extent incompletely homothermic, and when the temperature sinks below a certain point they fall into the so-called winter-sleep (*hibernation*), *i.e.*, a state of rest characterised by an almost complete absence of movement, and by a diminution in the energy of all the vital processes. In the class of Birds, whose higher temperature permits of no interruption or limitation of the vital functions, there is no example of hibernation. But these animals have numerous means of heat adjustment at their disposal; in particular, the swiftness of their flight enables them to leave their homes at the approach of the cold season, and to betake themselves to warmer climates, where food is abundant. The common migrations of the migratory birds, migrations which sometimes extend over great distances, to a certain extent take the place of the winter-sleep of the hibernating animals; in the Mammalia whose organisation permits of hibernation migrations like those of Birds are very rare.

The most essential peculiarity of Birds, and one with which many characteristics both of external appearance and of internal organisation are correlated, is their power of flight. This peculiarity in connection with these characters determines the sharp definition as well as the relatively great uniformity of the class, which, indeed, is descended from the Saurians, but exists at the present day without any forms transitional to other groups. On the other hand, the remains of a group of Saurians (*Archaeopteryx lithographica*) have been discovered in the Sohlenhofen lithographic slate which combine characters of the Pterodactyls with those of the Birds.

The entire structure of the body of Birds corresponds with the two principal modes of locomotion—on the one hand flight, and on the other walking and hopping on the earth. The trunk, which is oval, is supported in an obliquely horizontal position on the two hind legs, the pedal surface of which stretches over a relatively large area. Posteriorly the body is prolonged into a short rudimentary tail, the last vertebra of which serves for the support of a group of stiff steering, or tail feathers (*rectrices*). In front it is prolonged into a movable neck, on which is balanced a light, rounded head, with a projecting, horny beak. The anterior extremities, which are transformed into wings, lie folded together at the sides of the body.

Arrangements for lessening the weight of the body are discernible in the special structure of all the systems of organs; these are especially noticeable in the structure of the osseous skeleton. The bones contain air-spaces (*pneumaticity*), which communicate with the air-sacs of the body through openings in the dense and firm osseous substance, which is however confined to a relatively thin layer. This pneumaticity is most highly developed in those birds which combine a quick and enduring power of flight, with a considerable size of body (Albatross, Hornbill, Pelican). In these cases all the bones except the quadrato-jugal and the scapula appear to be pneumatic, while on the other hand in the *Ratitæ* (Ostrich), which have lost the power of flight, all the bones except some of the cranial bones are filled with marrow.

**The Skeleton.**—Except in the Ostrich-like birds, the cranial bones very early fuse together to form a light and firm skull, which articulates with the atlas by means of a single condyle. The squamosal and periotic bones (prootic, epiotic and opisthotic) fuse to form a single bone which is united with the occipital and with which the quadrate articulates. The large frontal bones take the principal part in the formation of the cranial roof. Almost the whole of the upper edge of the large orbit, which in the Parrots is closed by a lower ring, is formed by the frontal bones. An independent lachrymal is present at the anterior margin of the orbit. The ethmoid region and the cranial capsule are widely separated by an interobital septum of considerable size. The latter, sometimes together with the remains of the fused orbitosphenoids, frequently remains membranous and unossified in its median part, and rests on an elongated bony rod corresponding to the basisphenoid. At the base of the temporal region there are two bones—the basitemporals (Parker)—which are ankylosed with one another, and are probably to be referred to a parasphenoid. In all cases independent alisphenoids are present. The ethmoid region is composed of a vertically placed, unpaired ethmoid, situated in the anterior prolongation of the interorbital septum, and of lateral ethmoids which separate the eyes and nasal cavities, and through which the olfactory nerves pass into the nasal cavities. The lateral ethmoids may be swollen and contain ethmoidal cells. In front of them are developed the two nasal cavities with their bony or cartilaginous septum, which is the prolongation of the unpaired ethmoid, and affords a support to the rolled-up turbinal bones, which are sometimes also attached to the vomer. The facial bones unite to form a projecting beak, the margins of which are covered with horny substance, and which is often movably connected with the skull. The suspensorium



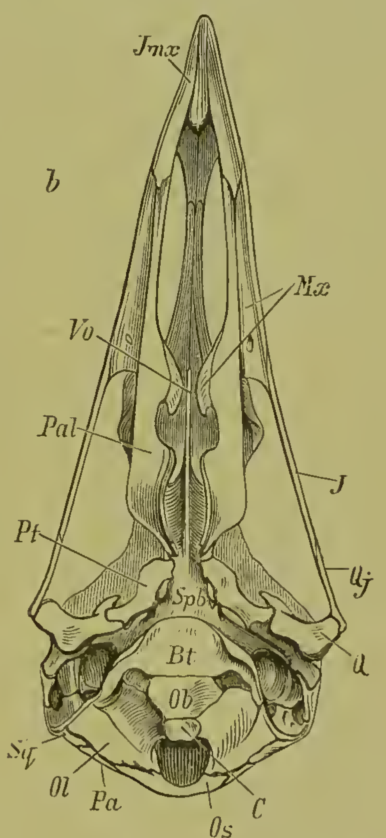




FIG. 648.—Skull of *Otis tarda* (bustard). *a*, From the side; *b*, from beneath. *Ob*, basi-occipital; *C*, condyle; *Ol*, ex-occipital; *Os*, supra-occipital; *Sq*, squamosal; *Bt*, basi-temporal (parasphenoid); *Spb*, basi-sphenoid; *Als*, alisphenoid; *Sm*, inter-orbital septum; *Et*, median ethmoid; *Pa*, parietal; *Fr*, frontal; *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, præmaxillary; *N*, nasal; *L*, lachrymal; *J*, jugal; *Qj*, quadrato-jugal; *Q*, quadrate; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Pal*, palatine; *Vo*, vomer; *D*, dentary; *Art*, articulare; *Ang*, angulare.

of the lower jaw and the maxillo-palatine apparatus are enabled by special articular arrangements to move on the temporal bone and on corresponding processes of the basisphenoid. The quadrate, which is articulated to the temporal bone, has, besides the articular surface of the lower jaw, movable connections with the long rod-like quadrato-jugal, and with the usually styliform pterygoid which runs obliquely inwards, while the base of the upper beak presents a thin elastic place below the frontal bone, or is separated from the frontal bone by a transverse movable suture. When the beak is opened, and the lower jaw is moved downwards, the pressure on the quadrate bone is transferred to the rod-like quadrato-jugal and the pterygoid bones, and from these is transmitted partly directly and partly by means of the palatine bones to the upper beak, so that the latter must be more or less raised at that point. Therefore, when the mouth is opened, the end of the beak is raised. The greater part of the upper beak is formed by the unpaired præmaxilla, with the sides of which the maxillæ are fused, while an upper median process ascends between the nares and unites with the frontal on the inside of the nasal bones.

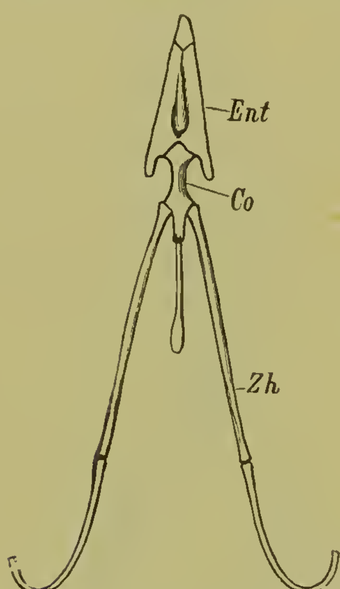


Fig. 649.—Hyoid apparatus of *Corvus cornix*. *Co*, body of hyoid; *Zh*, cornua; *Ent*, entoglossal bone.

The hyoid bone (fig. 649) is prolonged into a posterior rod; its anterior * cornua are usually two-jointed and are not connected with the skull, but in some cases they are much elongated and arch over the skull as far as the forehead (Woodpecker). They then constitute in connection with the muscles of their sheath a mechanism for the protrusion of the tongue.

In the **vertebral column** (fig. 650), a very long movable cervical region, a rigid dorsal and pelvic region and a rudimentary, only slightly movable caudal region can be distinguished. In Birds there is no separation of thoracic and lumbar regions as in Mammals, since all the dorsal vertebræ bear ribs and the region corresponding with the lumbar region takes a share in the formation of the sacrum. The cervical and dorsal regions also are not sharply distinct from

* Usually described as the posterior cornua. Ed.

one another, since the cervical vertebræ, as in the Crocodiles, bear ribs, which unite with the transverse processes to form a foramen transversarium. The neck is long and always freely movable, and contains 9 to 23 vertebræ (Swan). The shorter dorsal vertebræ are always less numerous; they have superior and inferior spinous processes and all bear ribs, to the ventral ends of which sterno-costal bones are articulated at an angle which projects backwards (fig. 650, *Stc*). The sternocostals also articulate with the margin of the sternum, and serve when they are extended to increase the distance between the latter and the vertebral column. But, since the ribs are firmly applied to one another by means of posterior processes (*processus uncinati*), the movement of the sternocostal ribs must necessarily affect the thorax as a whole, and dilate it (inspiration). The **sternum** is a broad flat bone which covers not only the thorax but a great part of the abdomen, and bears a projecting keel-like crest which serves for the attachment of the muscles of flight (*Carinatæ*). The sternal crest is reduced or obsolete only when the power of flight is feeble or entirely absent (*Ratitæ*).

The rib-bearing dorsal vertebræ are followed by a tolerably extensive division of the vertebral column, which corresponds to the lumbar and sacral regions, and which, by the fusion of a number of vertebræ with each other, and with the long iliac bones of the pelvic girdle, presents the characters of the sacrum. The **sacrum** is much elongated, and includes sixteen to twenty and more vertebræ; of these a certain number can be shown to be lumbar (præsacral), and are almost always preceded by two to three rib-bearing dorsal vertebræ. Then follows the true sacrum; it consists of two vertebræ, which are equivalent to the sacral vertebræ of Lizards and Crocodiles, and constitute by means of their transverse processes (with fused ribs) the main support of the pelvis near the cup of the hip-joint (*acetabular vertebræ*). Finally the true sacrum is followed by a postsacral region, which is composed of from three to seven of the anterior caudal vertebræ. The short caudal region, which succeeds the postsacral, consists, as a rule, of from seven to eight movable vertebræ, of which the last is represented by a vertical, laterally compressed plate—the *pygostyle*—to which the muscles for the movement of the steering feathers (*rectrices*) of the tail are attached. This deep ploughshare-shaped terminal body is composed of from four to six vertebræ, so that the reduction of the number of the caudal vertebræ, as compared with that of the *Saururæ* (*Archæopteryx*), is by no means so considerable.

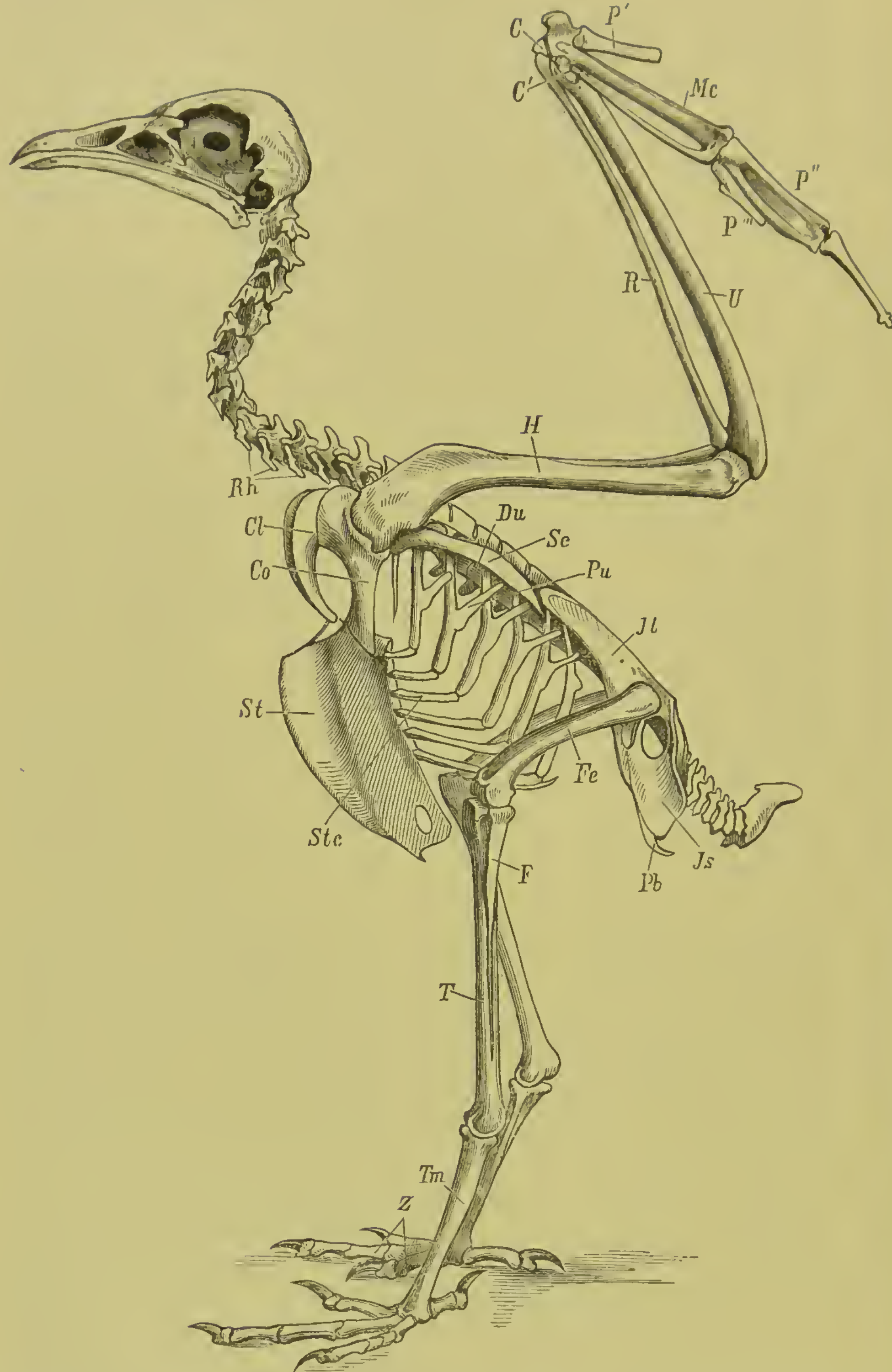



FIG. 650.—Skeleton of *Neophron percnopterus.* *Rh*, cervical ribs; *Du*, inferior spinous process of the thoracic vertebræ; *Cl*, clavicle; *Co*, coracoid; *Sc*, scapula; *St*, sternum; *Stc*, sternocostal bones (sternal ribs); *Pu*, uncinate process of the thoracic ribs; *Jl*, ilium; *Js*, ischium; *Pb*, pubis; *H*, humerus; *R*, radius; *U*, ulna; *C C′*, carpus; *Mc*, metacarpus; *P′ P″ P‴*, phalanges of the three fingers; *Fe*, femur; *T*, tibia; *F*, fibula; *Tm*, tarso-metatarsus; *Z*, toes.

**Shoulder girdle and wings.**—The peculiarities of the anterior extremities are connected with their transformation into wings. Their connection with the thorax is always a firm one, since flying organs, whose movement pre-supposes a great expenditure of muscular power, require the necessary support on the trunk. While the scapula, which is a long, sabre-shaped bone, lies along the dorsal side of the thoracic framework, the clavicle and coracoid, as pillar-like supports for the shoulder-joint, are attached to the sternum. The two clavicles are fused so as to form a fork (*furcula*). The anterior extremity consists of a humerus, a longer forearm composed of radius and ulna, and the reduced hand. The latter contains only two carpal bones, an elongated metacarpus and three fingers—viz., the pollex or thumb, bearing the so-called bastard wing (*alula*), a middle finger, and a little finger. The humerus, the forearm, and the hand are so placed when at rest, that the humerus is directed backwards, the long forearm lies tolerably parallel to it and is directed forwards, while the hand is again bent backwards.

**Pelvic girdle and legs.**—The girdle of the hind limbs has the form of an elongated pelvis connected with a great number of lumbar and sacral vertebræ, and except in the ostrich (*Struthio camelus*) is without a symphysis pubis. The short and powerful femur is directed obliquely horizontally forwards, and concealed beneath the flesh and feathers of the abdomen, in such a manner that the knee-joint is not visible externally. The crus, which is much longer and more extensive, is chiefly composed of the *tibia*, the *fibula* being quite rudimentary and represented by a styliform bone on the outer side of the tibia. The crus is always followed by a long forwardly directed bone—the *tarso-metatarsus*—which is composed of the fused tarsal bones of the distal row (*intertarsal joint*), and of the metatarsal bones. The tarso-metatarsus varies much in length, and is the cause of the differences in the length of leg. At its lower end it divides into three processes, which are provided with articulating heads, for the attachment of the same number of toes. When a fourth toe is present, there is always a small bone on the inner side of the metatarsus, and to this bone the fourth inner toe is attached. The three or four toes (only in one case is the number reduced to two) are composed of several phalanges, the number of which increases from within outwards in such a manner that the first toe has two, the fourth (external) five joints.

[The digits present in the Avian pes are Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, or 2, 3, 4, or in the Ostrich 3, 4. Digit No. 5 is never present.]

The muscles of the thorax are powerfully developed in connection with the power of flight, and a peculiar muscular arrangement, in consequence of which the toes are mechanically bent when the animal sits, deserves mention.

**Exoskeleton.**—The most important character in the external appearance of Birds is their covering of feathers. The skin is only naked in a few places—as on the beak, the toes, usually on the tarso-metatarsus, and sometimes on the neck (Vulture), or even on the abdomen (Ostrich); and also on the cutaneous outgrowths of the head and neck (Gallinaceous birds and Vulture). While the naked skin at the base of the beak is soft (so-called *cere*), the edges of the beak are usually cornified, and are only exceptionally soft (Ducks, Snipe), and then are richly innervated and serve as a fine tactile organ. The skin on the toes and tarso-metatarsus is also cornified, so as to form a firm horny covering, which is sometimes granular, more often divided into scales, and which may afford important systematic characters. When this integument forms a long continuous horny sheath on the anterior and lateral surfaces of the metatarsus, the latter is termed *laminiplantar* (Thrushes and singing-birds). The following special horny structures may be mentioned—the claws on the toes, the so-called spurs on the posterior and internal edge of the metatarsus in the male *Gallinaceæ*, and sometimes on the thumb-joint of the wing (*Parra*).

The **feathers** of Birds correspond to the hairs of *Mammalia*, and like them arise in pits of the dermis lined by the epidermis. At the bottom of the pit there is a vascular papilla, the epidermal investment of which gives rise by its rapid growth to the first rudiment of the hair or feather, around which the epidermal lining of the pit lies like a sheath. In the feather the axial part or stem with the *calamus* and shaft (*rhachis*) is to be distinguished from the vane (*vexillum*). The cylindrical hollow calamus is partly embedded in the skin, and encloses the dried-up papilla (pith); the rhachis is the projecting part of the stem, and bears a number of lateral processes—the *barbs*—which with their attached parts (*barbules*) constitute the vane (*vexillum*). The lower slightly concave side of the rhachis presents along its whole length, from the end of the calamus to the point of the feathers, a deep longitudinal groove, at the base of which a second feather—the *aftershaft* (*hyporhachis*)—arises, which, as well as the main-shaft, gives off two rows of barbs, but only in rare cases (Cassowary) reaches the length of the main shaft. and is sometimes (wing and tail quills) completely absent. The barbs (*rami*) send off barbules (*radii*) arranged in two rows, and the barbules (at any rate of the front row) bear barbicels and hooklets, which by their mutual interlocking effect the firm connection of the whole *vexillum*.

According to the nature of the stem and barbs, the following kinds of feather can be distinguished—*contour feathers* (*pennæ*), with stiff shaft and firm *vexillum*; *down feathers* (*plumæ*), with soft shaft and vane, the barbs of which bear round, or knotty barbules without hooklets; and finally *filoplumes* (*filoplumæ*), with slender bristle-like shaft, the vane of which is reduced or absent. The *pennæ* determine the external outline of the plumage, and attain their greatest size as *remiges* in the wings and as *rectrices* in the tail. The *plumæ* form the deep layer of the plumage, and are covered by the contour feathers; they serve for the retention of warmth. The filoplumes, on the other hand, are distributed more among the *pennæ*, and at the angle of the mouth have the appearance of stiff bristles (*vibrissæ*). There are, moreover, many forms of feathers intermediate between these principal forms. In the autumn there is a complete change of feathers (*autumnal moult*), whereas the *spring moult* by which the bird acquires its breeding plumage is only rarely connected with a complete new formation of the plumage. As a rule, the spring moult consists in a colouring of the feathers (probably by chemical change in the pigments already present), and sometimes in a mechanical breaking off of certain parts of the feathers.

Birds have no sebaceous or sweat-glands, but there is often a bilobed gland above the last caudal vertebra. This gland (the *uropygial* gland, or oil-gland) has a simple duct, and its oily secretion serves to anoint the feathers.

The plumage is only rarely distributed evenly over the whole of the body (*Aptenodytes*). Usually the contour feathers are arranged in rows—the so-called *pterylæ*—between which there are spaces—the *apteria*—which are naked or only covered with down (fig. 651). The form and distribution of these spaces present modifications which can be used in classification.

The grouping of the feathers on the anterior limbs and on the tail determines the utility of these organs as wings and steering apparatus respectively. The wing has to a certain extent the form of a fan, which can be folded at two points—viz., the elbow joint and the carpal joint; its surface is formed by the large *remiges* on the under surface of the hand and forearm, but partly also by special folds of the skin, which stretch between the body and humerus, and between the humerus and forearm. The posterior of these folds is of importance in connecting the wing with the body; the anterior has a relation to the mechanism by which the wing is unfolded, inasmuch as it contains an elastic band which extends along its outer edge from the humerus to the articulation of the hand, and which, when the forearm is extended, exercises a traction on the thumb side of the carpal joint, and so causes the simultaneous extension of the hand.

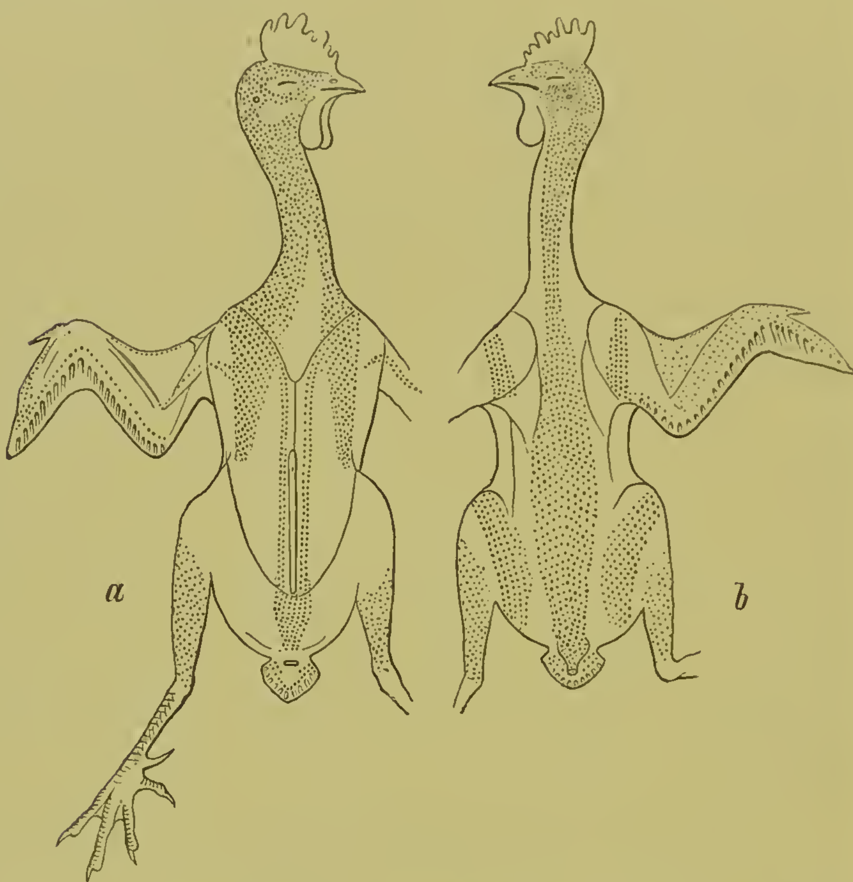



FIG. 651.—*Pterylæ* and *apteria* of *Gallus Bankiva* (after Nitzsch). *a*, ventral side; *b*, dorsal side.

The large wing-feathers (*remiges*) are attached along the lower edge of the hand and forearm. Those which are attached to the hand, from the extremity of the wing to the carpal joint, are known as *primary* remiges (fig. 652, *H S*), while those attached to the forearm as far as the elbow joint are called *secondary* remiges (*A S*). There are usually ten primaries, and a greater but variable number of smaller secondaries.

A number of feathers (*coverts*) attached to the upper end of the humerus are called *scapulars* (*parapterum*), and some feathers fastened to the thumb-joint (sometimes replaced by a spur) are called the bastard-wing (*alula*). All the remiges are covered at their base by shorter feathers, which are arranged in overlapping rows, and are known as coverts (*tectrices*, fig. 652, *T*). In certain cases the wings may become so much reduced that the power of flight is almost or quite lost, a condition which is met with in some running and land birds (*Dinornithidæ*, Kiwi and Ostrich), and also in certain water (Penguin).

The great contour-feathers of the tail are called *rectrices* (*Rt*), because during flight they are used for altering the direction and for steering. There are, as a rule, twelve (sometimes ten or twenty and more) rectrices attached to the last caudal vertebra in such a way that they can be moved singly, and unfolded laterally like a fan, as well as be all raised or depressed together. The roots of the tail quills are covered by a number of coverts, which in some cases attain an extraordinary size and shape, and constitute an ornament to the Bird (Peacock). When the power of flight is absent the tail loses its significance as a steering apparatus, and the tail quills are reduced or completely absent. In such cases, however, some of the coverts may attain a considerable size as ornamental feathers.

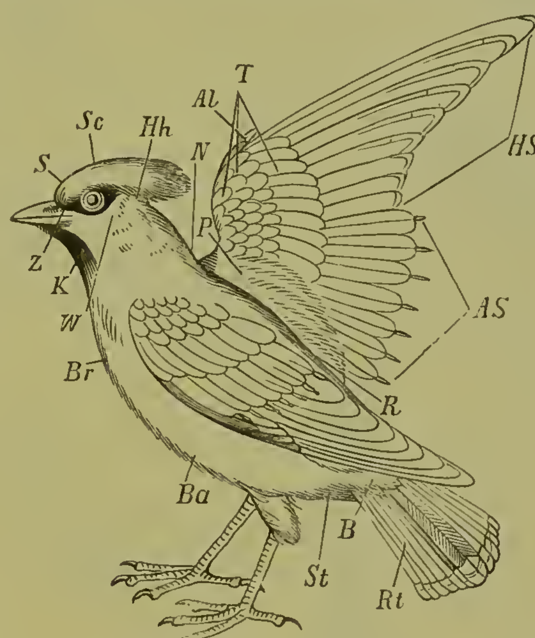



Fig. 652.—Nomenclature of the plumage and regions of *Bombycilla garrula* (wax-wing) (slightly modified after Reichenbach). *S*, forehead; *Sc*, occiput; *Hh*, hind-head; *Z*, lore; *W*, cheek; *N*, nape; *R*, back; *K*, throat; *Br*, breast; *Ba*, belly; *St*, vent; *B*, tail coverts; *Rt*, tail, with tail quills (rectrices); *Hs*, primaries; *As*, secondaries; *T*, coverts (tectrices); *P*, scapulars (parapterum); *Al*, bastard wing (alula).

The hind limbs, which are principally used in the locomotion of the animal on firm ground present numerous varieties, according to the mode of locomotion of the Bird. In the first place, walking legs, or *pedes gradarii*, and wading legs, or *pedes vadantes*, are to be distinguished (fig. 653). The former are much more completely feathered, being covered at least as far as the articulation of the heel; but they vary considerably, The following varieties may be distinguished (fig. 653) :—*pedes adhamantes*, with four toes directed forwards, *Cypselus* (*a*); *pedes scansorii*, with two toes directed forwards and two backwards, *Picus* (*b*); *pedes fissi*, with three toes directed forwards and one back, the anterior toes being free to their

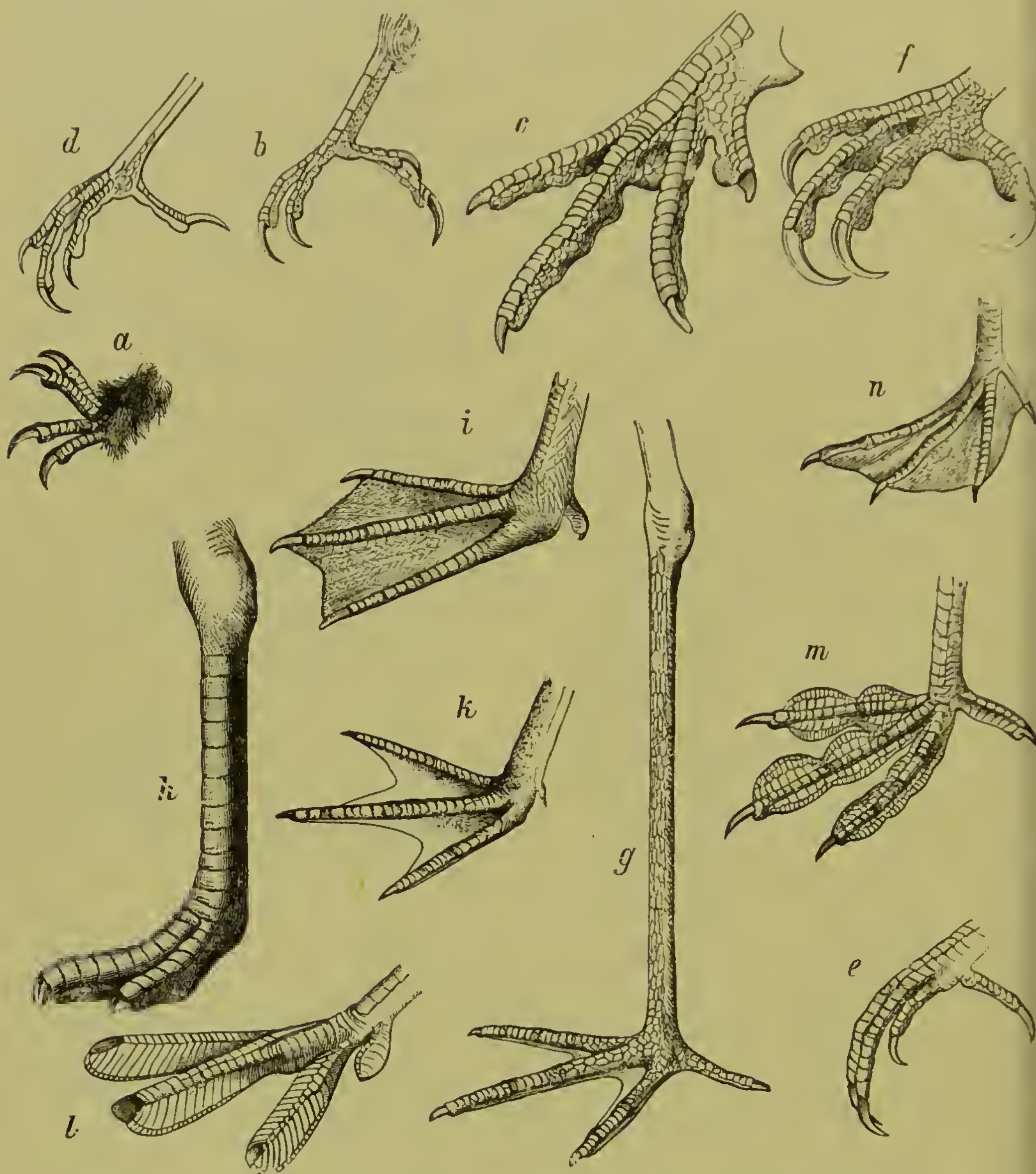



FIG. 653.—The most important forms of Birds' feet (*b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *n*, from the règne animal). *a*, pes adhamans of *Cypselus apus*; *b*, P. scansorius of *Picus capensis*; *c*, P. ambulatorius of *Phasianus colchicus*; *d*, P. fissus of *Turdus torquatus*; *e*, P. gressorius of *Alcedo ispida*; *f*, P. insidens of *Falco biarmicus*; *g*, P. colligatus of *Mycteria senegalensis*; *h*, P. cursorius of *Struthio camelus*; *i*, P. palmatus of *Mergus merganser*; *k*, P. semi-palmatus of *Recurvirostra avocetta*; *l*, P. fissi-palmatus of *Podiceps cristatus*; *m*, P. lobatus of *Fulica atra*; *n*, P. steganus of *Phaëton æthereus*.

roots, *Turdus* (*d*); *pedes ambulatorii*, with three toes directed forward, the inner toe backwards, the middle and outer toes united at their roots, *Phasianus* (*c*); *pedes gressorii*, the inner toe is placed behind; of the three anteriorly directed toes, the middle and outer are fused as far as the middle, *Alcedo* (*e*); *pedes insidentes* (*f*), the inner toe is behind, the three anteriorly directed toes are united by a short membrane, *Falco* (*f*). Sometimes the outer toes of the *pes scansorius* (*Cuculus*), and the inner toe of the *pes adhamans* (*Colius*) can be turned both forwards and backwards. The wading legs (*p. vadantes*) as opposed to the walking legs (*p. gradarii*) are characterised by the partly or completely naked, unfeathered tibial region; they are found principally in Water Birds, amongst which the *Grallatores* have wading legs with a very long metatarsus—the so-called *pedes grallarii.* The *p. grallarii* may be distinguished into *p. colligati,* in which the anterior toes are united at their roots by a short membrane, *Ciconia* (*g*); and the *p. semicolligati,* in which this membranous connection is confined to the middle and outer toes, *Limosa.* The running legs (*p. cursorii*) are powerful *pedes grallarii* without hind toes, and with three (*Rhea*) or two *Struthio* (*h*) strong front toes. The short wading legs of the swimming birds, as well as the longer legs of the *Grallatores,* present with regard to the structure of their feet the following types:—Swimming feet, or *pedes palmati,* when the three anteriorly directed toes are connected as far as their extremities by an undivided swimming membrane or web, *Anas* (*i*); half swimming feet, or *p. semipalmati,* when the web only reaches to the middle of the toes, *Recurvirostra* (*k*); split swimming feet, or *p. fissipalmati,* when the toes have an entire cutaneous border, *Podiceps* (*l*); lobed feet, or *p. lobati,* when the border is lobed on each joint, *Fulica* (*m*). When the hind toe is also included in the web membrane the feet are termed *p. stegani, Halieus* [*Phalacrocorax*] (*n*). Finally, the hind toe may be reduced or completely absent in the *Natatores* and *Grallatores.*

The **Brain** of Birds (fig. 79) is much more highly developed than that of Reptiles, and completely fills the roomy cranial cavity. The hemispheres are, indeed, still without superficial convolutions, but already possess a rudimentary corpus callosum (Meckel). They cover not only the thalamencephalon, but also the two large, laterally displaced *corpora bigemina.* The differentiation of the *cerebellum* is still further advanced, since there is a median part corresponding to the so-called *vermis* of Mammalia, and small lateral appendages.

In consequence of the cervical flexure of the embryo the medulla oblongata forms an angle with the spinal cord, the posterior columns of which diverge from one another in the posterior enlargement of the lumbar region so as to form a second sinus rhomboidalis. The cranial nerves are all separate and their distribution is essentially the same as in the *Mammalia*. The spinal cord reaches almost to the end of the neural canal of the vertebral column.

**Sense Organs.**—The eyes always attain a considerable size and a high development. The eyelids are always movable, especially the lower lid and the transparent nictitating membrane, which is drawn over the eye by a peculiar muscular apparatus. The eyeball (fig. 654) of the Bird has an unusual form, in that the hind part on which the retina is spread is a segment of a much larger sphere than is the small anterior part. The two parts are connected by a median portion, which has the shape of a short truncated cone, with the smallest end directed forwards. This form of the eyeball is most marked in the nocturnal birds of prey, and least in the aquatic Birds in which the axis of the eye is shorter. There is always a bony sclerotic ring behind the edge of the cornea. The cornea, except in the swimming Birds, is strongly arched, while the anterior surface of the lens in the nocturnal Birds alone possesses a considerable convexity. The *pecten* (wanting only in *Apteryx*) is a peculiar structure of the avian eye. It consists of a process of the choroid, which traverses the retina and passes obliquely through the vitreous humour to the lens. It corresponds to the falciform process of the piscine and reptilian eye. The avian eye is characterised not only by the sharpness of vision consequent on the large size and complicated structure of the retina, but also by the highly-developed power of accommodation, which is principally due to the muscle of the so-called *ciliary ligament* (Krampton's muscle), and also to the great mobility of the muscular iris (dilatation and contraction of the pupil).

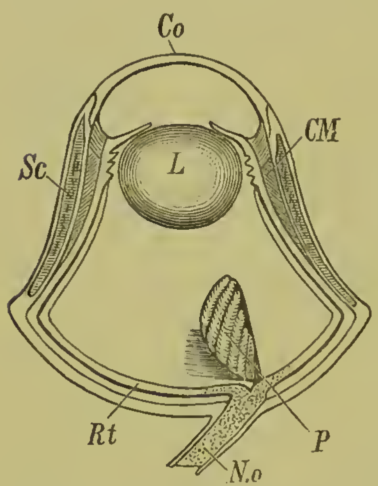



Fig. 654.—Eye of a nocturnal bird of prey (after Wiedersheim). *Co*, cornea; *L*, lens; *Rt*, retina; *P*, pecten; *No*, optic nerve; *Sc*, ossifications of the sclerotic; *CM*, ciliary muscle.

The **auditory organ** (fig. 578 *II.*) is enclosed by spongy masses of bone. It possesses three large semicircular canals and a dilated cochlea (*lagena*). The vestibule, which on account of its small size may also be regarded as the lower dilated part of the cochlea, has two openings: the *foramen ovale* which is closed by the terminal piece (*operculum*) of the columella and looks into the tympanic cavity, and a second more rounded opening, the *foramen rotundum*, which is closed by membrane. In addition to the labyrinth there is always a tympanic cavity which communicates with the air-spaces in the neighbouring bones of the skull, and with the pharynx close behind the posterior nares by means of the Eustachian tubes. Towards the exterior the tympanic cavity is closed by a tympanic membrane, to which the long rod-shaped auditory ossicle (*columella*), corresponding to the stapes of Mammalia, is fastened. On the outer side of the tympanic membrane there is a short external auditory meatus, the opening of which is often surrounded by a circle of larger feathers, and in the Owls is overlapped by a cutaneous valve which is likewise beset with feathers, and constitutes a rudimentary pinna.

The **olfactory organ** has three pairs of turbinal bones in the spacious nasal cavities, which are separated by an incomplete septum (*nares perviæ*). The two nasal apertures, except in *Apteryx*, lie more or less near the root of the upper beak; sometimes (Crows) they are covered and protected by stiff hairs; in the *Procellaridæ* they are elongated into a tube and join one another. A so-called nasal gland usually lies on the frontal bone, more rarely beneath the nasal bone or at the inner corner of the eye; it opens by a simple duct into the nasal cavity.

The sense of **taste** is connected with the soft base of the tongue which is rich in papillæ. The tongue is soft throughout its whole extent only in the Parrots. In most other cases it has a firmer covering, and in many cases lends important aid in mastication. In general the **tongue** as well as the beak may be regarded as a tactile organ. In rare cases (Snipe, Duck) the beak is the seat of a finer tactile sensibility, owing to the possession of a soft skin rich in nerves and in the end-corpuscles of Vater.

**Alimentary canal.**—In spite of great differences in the mode of nourishment the avian digestive organs present a fairly uniform structure; their peculiarities have relation to the power of flight. The jaws are covered by a hard horny sheath and transformed into the beak. True teeth are entirely absent, at least in living Birds as opposed to the fossil *Odontornithes* (*Ichthyornis*, *Hesperornis*); dental papillæ were however discovered by Etienne Geoffroy St. Hilaire in the jaws of the embryo Parrot. While the upper beak is formed by the fused præmaxillæ, the maxillæ and the nasal bones, the lower corresponds to the two rami of the lower jaw, the fused extremities of which are known as the *myxa*. The lower edge reaching from the angle of the chin to the extremity is termed the *gonys*, the edge of the upper beak is the *culmen*, the region between the eye and the base of the beak which is covered by the cere (*ceroma*) is the lore. The form and development of the beak vary extremely according to the special mode of subsistence (fig. 655).

The tongue, which is always movable, lies on the floor of the

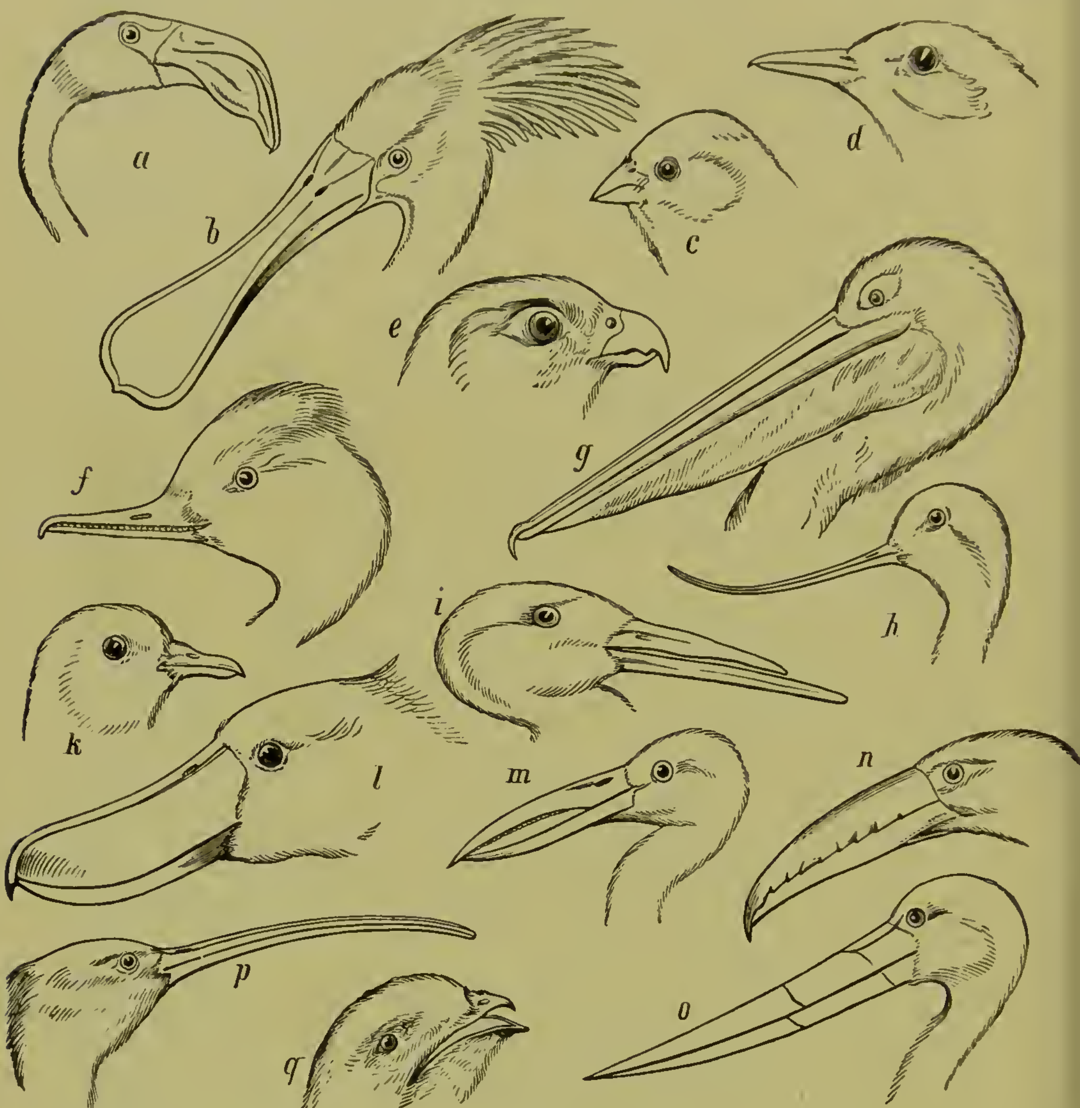



Fig. 655.—Forms of beaks (*a, b, c, d, k,* after Naumann; *g, i, m, o,* règne animal; *l,* from Brehm). *a, Phœnicopterus antiquorum; b, Platalea leucorodia; c, Emberiza citrinella; d, Turdus cyanus; e, Falco candicans; f, Mergus merganser; g, Pelecanus perspicillatus; h, Recurvirostra avocetta; i, Rhynchops nigra; k, Columba livia; l, Balæniceps rex; m, Anastomos coromandelianus; n, Pteroglossus discolor; o, Mycteria senegalensis; p, Falcinellus igneus; q, Cypselus apus.*

buccal cavity. It consists of the horny or fleshy covering of two cartilages attached to the anterior end of the hyoid bone, and serves for deglutition, and frequently for seizing food. The buccal cavity, which in the Pelicans is dilated into a large cervical sac supported by the rami of the lower jaw, receives the secretion of a number of salivary glands. There is no velum palati. The muscular, longitudinally folded œsophagus, the length of which in general depends on that of the neck, frequently possesses—especially in the birds of prey, but also in the larger granivorous birds (Pigeons, Fowls, Parrots)—a crop-like dilatation, in which the food is softened (fig. 656). In the Pigeons the crop bears two small round accessory sacs, the walls of which secrete in the breeding season a cheesy substance used in feeding the young.

The lower end of the œsophagus is dilated into a glandular *proventriculus,* which is followed by the wide muscular stomach (*gizzard*). While the proventriculus has, as a rule, an oval form and is smaller than the gizzard, the latter is provided with muscular walls, which are weaker (birds of prey) or stronger (granivorous birds), according to the kind of food eaten. In the granivorous birds the gizzard is excellently adapted for the mechanical preparation of the softened food material by the possession of two solid plates, which form the horny internal wall, and work against one another. The first loop of the small intestine (corresponding to the duodenum) surrounds the elongated *pancreas,* the ducts of which, as well as the usually double bile ducts, open in this region. The beginning of the short large intestine is marked by a circular valve, and by the origin of two cæca; it presents no distinction into colon and rectum, and passes into the cloaca, into which the urinogenital apparatus also opens. At its entrance into the cloaca it presents a sphincter-like circular fold. A peculiar glandular sac—the *bursa Fabricii*—opens into the dorsal wall of the cloaca.

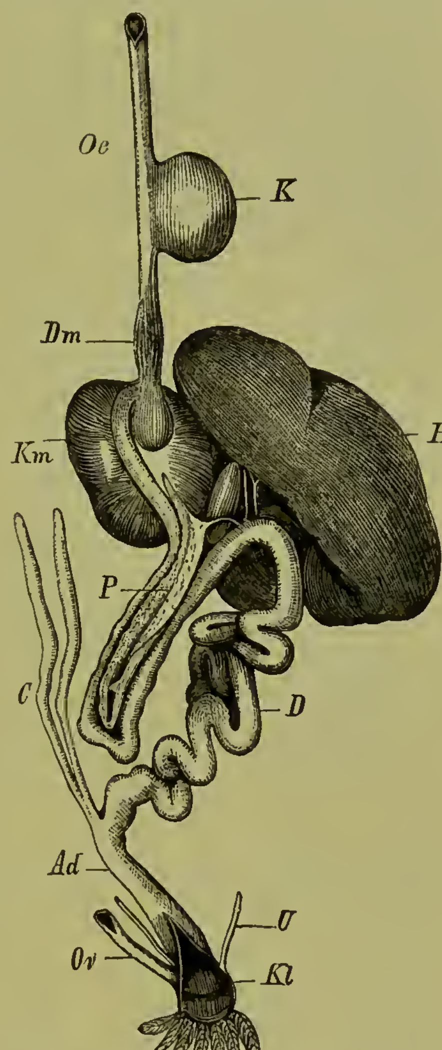


FIG. 656.—Digestive canal of a bird. *Oe*, œsophagus; *K*, crop; *Dm*, proventriculus; *Km*, gizzard; *D*, small intestine; *P*, pancreas (placed in the duodenal loop); *H*, liver; *C*, the two cæca; *Ad*, large intestine; *U*, ureter; *Ov*, oviduct; *Kl*, cloaca.

The large elongated **kidneys** are placed in excavations of the sacrum, and are divided by indentations into a number of lobes. The ureters run behind the rectum and open into the cloaca internally to the genital apertures. The urinary secretion is not fluid, as in the *Mammalia*, but is a white semi-fluid mass, which soon hardens.

The **heart** is completely divided into a right and left half, and lies in the median line, enclosed by the pericardium. As a peculiarity of the heart may be mentioned, the special development of the right atrioventricular valve, which, unlike the tricuspid valve of the Mammalian heart, is a simple strong muscular fold. Since the diaphragm is rudimentary, the thoracic cavity is directly continuous with the abdominal. The pulsations of the heart, in correspondence with the more active respiration, are repeated more rapidly than in *Mammalia*. The right aortic arch persists. The veins open by two superior and one inferior vena cava into the right auricle. The renal-portal circulation still persists in Birds, though it is but slightly developed.

The **lymphatic system** opens by two thoracic ducts (*ductus thoracici*) into the superior venæ cavæ, but also very generally communicates with the veins of the pelvic region. Lymph hearts are only found at the side of the coccygeal bone in the Ostrich and Cassowary, and in some wading and swimming Birds. They are, however, often replaced by vesicular non-contractile dilatations.

**Respiratory organs.**—The glottis is placed behind the root of the tongue, and leads into a long trachea, which is supported by bony rings. The trachea is not unfrequently longer than the neck, and in such cases, principally in the male sex, is thrown into a number of coils, which either lie beneath the skin (Capercally) or even penetrate into the hollow crest of the sternum (Whooper Swan).

**The lower larynx or syrinx.**—Except in the Ostrich, the Stork, and some Vultures, the vocal organ is developed at the point where the trachea divides into the bronchi, so that both divisions take part in its formation (fig. 657). The last tracheal rings and the anterior bronchial rings have a modified form, and are often intimately connected with each other; the end of the trachea and the beginning of the bronchi are compressed or dilated into a vesicular form and transformed into the so-called tympanum, which in the males of many Ducks and Divers is dilated into unsymmetrical secondary cavities (tympanic cavity and labyrinth), which serve as resonating apparatuses. The part of the trachea from which the bronchi pass off (*i.e.*, tympanum) is traversed in a horizontal direction by a projecting osseous band—the *pessulus*—which forms a vertical septum between the anterior apertures of the two bronchi. This septum, at its anterior (ventral) and posterior (dorsal) ends, gives off on each side two arched processes, which pass downwards—one along the dorsal, and the other along the ventral edge of the bronchus of its side; and between these cornua the internal wall of each bronchus, which is here membranous, is stretched, and constitutes the *membrana tympaniformis interna.* In the Singing Birds there is in addition a semi-lunar fold (*membrana semilunaris*) on the pessulus, as a prolongation of the membrana tympaniformis interna. In many cases a membranous fold—the *membrana tympaniformis externa*—is developed

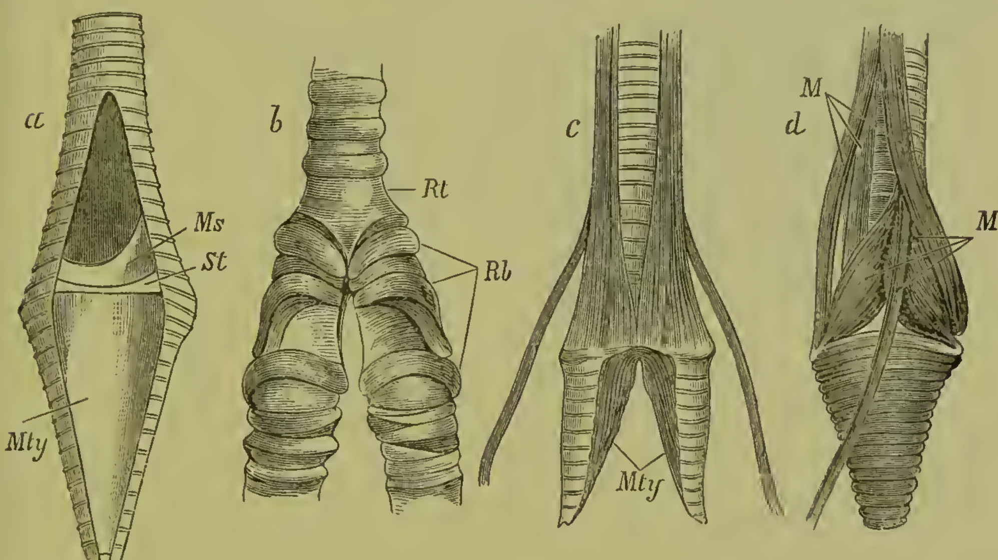



FIG. 657.—Lower larynx of Raven (from Owen). *a*, Side view of larynx laid open.—*b*, Larynx after removal of muscles.—*c*, Larynx with muscles, from the front; *d*, from the side. *St*, pessulus; *Mty*, membrana tympaniformis interna; *Ms*, membrana semilunaris; *Rt*, modified last tracheal ring; *Rb*, the modified three first bronchial rings; *M*, muscles.

on the external side of the tympanum, and forms with the free edge of the internal tympaniform membrane (*i.e.*, with the *membrana semilunaris*), a vocal slit or glottis on either side. The tension of these folds, which function as vocal cords, is regulated by a muscular apparatus, which connects the trachea with the lateral parts of the tympanum, or also with the anterior bronchial rings, and is most highly developed in the singing birds, in which the syrinx may possess five or six pairs of such muscles.

The bronchi are relatively short and lead, at their entrance into the lungs, into a number of wide membranous bronchial tubes, which traverse the pulmonary tissue. The lungs are not, as in Mammals, freely suspended in a closed thoracic cavity and invested by a pleural sac, but are attached to the dorsal wall of the body cavity by cellular tissue, and sunk in the interspaces between the ribs at the sides of the vertebral column. The behaviour of the bronchial tubes and the structure of the finer respiratory air-spaces of the lungs present essential differences from those of the *Mammalia*. The large **air-sacs** are diverticula of the lungs (fig. 658); they have a fairly constant arrangement, extending forwards between the clavicles (*peritracheal* or *interclavicular* air-sac), and also into the anterior and lateral regions of the thorax (*thoracic* air-sacs), and backwards among the viscera, into the pelvic region of the abdominal cavity (*abdominal* air-sacs). The abdominal sacs lead into the cavities of the femora and pelvic bones, while the smaller anterior sacs are prolonged into the air-spaces of the bones of the arm, and into those of the skin, which are sometimes, especially in the large swimming Birds, which fly well (*Sula, Pelecanus*), so numerous that the skin emits a crackling sound when touched (maintenance of temperature, reduction of specific gravity, air reservoirs for respiration). With such arrangements combined with the rudimentary form of the diaphragm already mentioned, and the peculiar structure of the thorax, the mechanism of respiration must be quite unlike that of the Mammalia. The dilatation of the thoracic framework, which also encloses the abdominal cavity, is the result of the extension of the sternocostal bones and the consequent increase in the distance

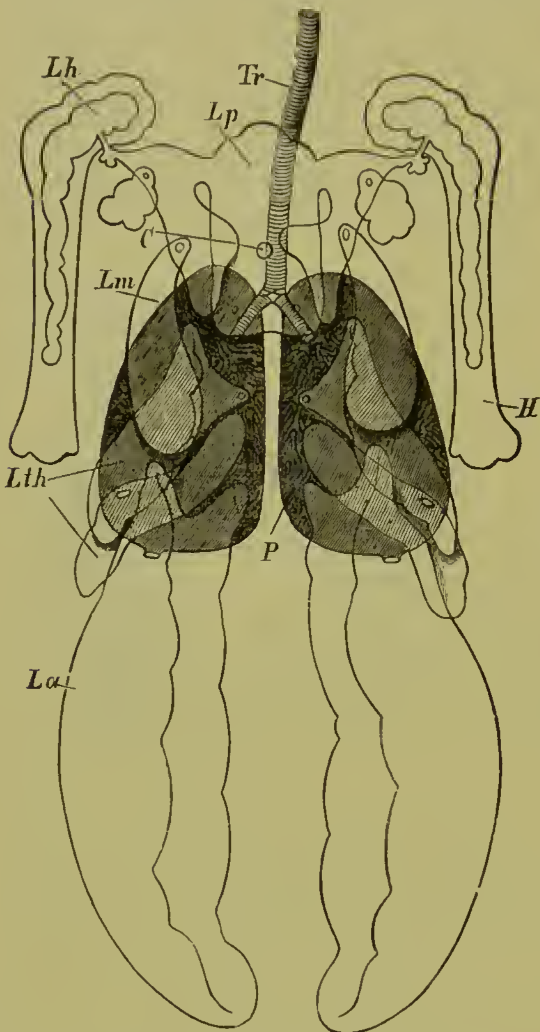



FIG. 658.—Lungs and air-sacs of the pigeon (diagrammatic, after C. Heider). *Tr*, trachea; *P*, lungs; *Lp*, peritracheal air-sac with its diverticula (*Lh* and *Lm*) into the humerus (*H*) and between the pectoral muscles; *C*, their connection with the sternal air-spaces; *Lth*, thoracic air-sacs; *La*, abdominal air-sacs.

between the sternum and the vertebral column. The respiratory movements are therefore mainly effected by the sternocostal muscles and the elevators of the ribs, which function as inspiratory muscles.

The **generative organs** closely resemble those of the *Reptilia*. The males are distinguished, not only by their superior strength, but also by the brighter colour of their plumage and the greater variety of their song. There are two oval testes on the anterior side of the kidneys; they become much enlarged at the breeding season, and the left is usually the larger. The epididymis, which is but little developed, leads into the vas deferens, which passes back along the outside of the ureter. The ends of the vasa deferentia are frequently swollen so as to form seminal vesicles, and open on two conical papillæ placed on the hinder (dorsal) wall of the cloaca.

A copulatory organ is, as a rule, wanting; in some of the larger water birds, however (*Ciconia*, *Platalea*, etc.) a rudimentary penis is present as a wart-like process on the front (ventral) wall of the cloaca. It is larger in most of the *Struthionidæ*, the Ducks, Geese, Swans, and in the Curassows and Guans (*Penelope*, *Urax*, *Crax*). In these Birds a curved tube, supported by two fibrous bodies, is attached to the ventral wall of the cloaca. The end of the tube can be retracted by an elastic band. A superficial groove serves to conduct the sperm during copulation. In the two-toed Ostrich, the penis attains a still higher structure, analagous to that of the male copulatory parts of the *Chelonia* and *Crocodilia*. Below the two fibrous bodies, the broad bases of which arise from the front wall of the cloaca, there is a third cavernous body the extremity of which is non-retractile and passes into an erectile bulb—the rudiment of a *glans penis*.

In the female generative organs the ovary and oviduct of the right side are reduced or entirely absent. The generative organs of the left side, however, are correspondingly larger at the breeding season. The ovary is racemose; the oviduct is much coiled, and is divided into three regions: (1) The wide abdominal ostium in front; (2) the coiled glandular part which secretes, from the glands of its longitudinally folded mucous membrane, the albumen which is added in layers and is twisted together at the ends to form the *chalazæ*; (3) a posterior short and wide portion—the so-called uterus—which serves to produce the variously coloured egg-shell, and opens by a short and narrow terminal region into the cloaca on the outer side of the corresponding ureter. When there are copulatory parts in the male, there are also clitoris-like structures at the same place in the female.

**Development.**—Birds are, without exception, oviparous (relation to power of flight). The egg is remarkable for the large amount of yolk (distinguishable into white and yellow yolk), and its porous calcareous shell (fig. 659). The development requires a high temperature, at least equal to that of the blood. The necessary heat is usually supplied by the bird during incubation.

Fertilization takes place in the upper region of the oviduct before the secretion of the albumen and of the shell membrane, and is at once followed by the partial (discoidal) segmentation which only implicates the clear part of the yolk (formative yolk) around the germinal vesicle—the so-called tread of the cock (*cicatricula*).

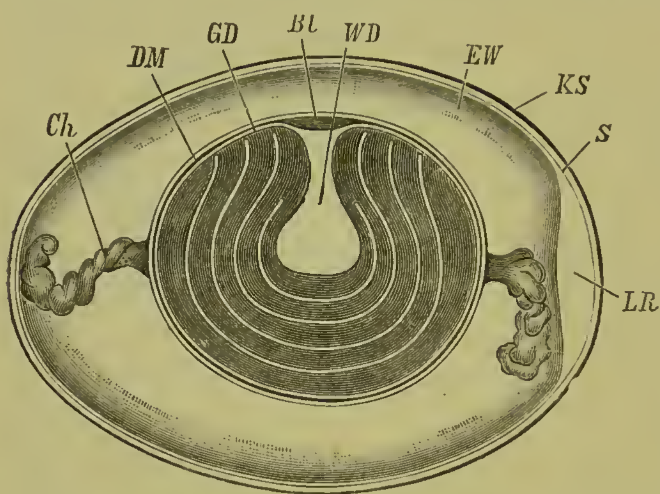



Fig. 659.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section through an undeveloped hen's egg (after Allen Thomson). *Bl*, germinal disc; *GD*, yellow yolk; *WD*, white yolk; *DM*, vitelline membrane; *EW*, albumen; *Ch*, chalazæ; *S*, shell membrane; *KS*, calcareous shell; *LR*, air-chamber.

When the egg is laid, the segmentation is already completed, and the cicatricula has developed into the *germinal disc* or *blastoderm*. The embryo, which later projects from the yolk, developes, as in Reptiles, the characteristic fœtal membranes—the *amnion* and *allantois* (fig. 635). The duration of the embryonic development varies according to the size of the egg and the relative development of the young when hatched. The Bird, when ready to creep out, breaks the blunt end of the shell by means of a sharp tooth placed at the extremity of the upper beak.

The young when hatched have essentially the organisation of the adult animal, although they may still be far inferior to it in the degree of their bodily development. While the *Gallinacei* and the *Cursores*, and most *Grallatores* and *Natatores* have when hatched a complete covering of down, and are so far advanced in development, that they at once follow the mother on land or into water and there seek their own food (**præcoces**); others like the

*Passeres, Scansores, Columbinae* and *Raptores* leave the egg membranes very early (altrices); they are naked, or only covered with down in places, and incapable of free locomotion or of feeding themselves, and remain for some time in the nest, in which they are fed and tended by their parents.

The mental qualities of Birds are incomparably higher than those of Reptiles. The high development of the senses (sight) renders them capable of a sharp discernment, with which is combined a good memory. Under the guidance of its parents the Bird gradually learns to fly and sing; it collects experiences, which it combines so as to arrive at judgments and conclusions; it recognises the surroundings of its nest, distinguishes between friends and foes, and selects the proper means both for the preservation of its existence and for the care of its brood. In some Birds the capacity for profiting by instruction and the faculty of imitation are extraordinarily developed (Starling, Parrot). The emotional side appears no less developed, as may be inferred not only from their general behaviour and the varying expression of their song, but especially from the behaviour of the two sexes at the breeding season. Their instinctive actions are directed to the preservation of the individual, and as in Insects, but in a far higher degree, to the care of their offspring.

In general the manifestations of intelligence as well as of instinct attain their maximum at the time of reproduction, which in the temperate and colder climates usually takes place in the spring (in the Crossbill exceptionally in the middle of winter, *winter plumage, breeding plumage*). The voice* is clearer and richer in the breeding season; the male endeavours to excite the female by his song and the beauty of his plumage. In addition to the changes of plumage and song, the whole behaviour of Birds is modified under the influence of sexual excitement (love-gestures, etc).

With the exception of Fowls, Pheasants, etc., Birds are monogamous; they pair only for the breeding time, and collect together later, and migrate in larger flocks. There are, however, some instances of the migration of single pairs.

Most Birds build nests, and seek for this purpose a suitable place in the district they inhabit. Only a few Birds (Goat-suckers, etc.) are content simply to lay their eggs on the ground, others (Skua, Terns, Ostrich) scoop out a pit or make a depression in moss and grass (*Tetraonidae*). The most skilfully constructed, however, are the

* Cf. A. E. Brehm's "Illustrirtes Thierleben," Tom IV., V. and VI.

nests of those Birds which glue particles of extraneous matter together with their sticky saliva or which weave fine tressworks of moss, wool and grass-stalks (Weavers). As a rule it is the female alone which builds the nest, the male merely helping in collecting the materials. There are, however, instances in which the male takes a share in the construction (Swallows, Weavers); while in other cases (*Gallinacei*, Chaffinch) the male takes no share at all in building the nest. Many sea Birds, as the Auks and Penguins, lay but one egg, the large Birds of prey, Pigeons, Swifts, and Humming-birds, lay two eggs. The number of eggs is larger in the singing Birds and still greater in the swimming Birds of ponds and rivers, and in the Fowls and Ostriches. The duration of the period of incubation is equally various; it depends upon the size of the egg and the degree of development of the young when hatched.

While the Humming-birds and golden-crested Wrens incubate for eleven to twelve days, and the singing Birds fifteen to eighteen days, Fowls require three weeks, Swans double that time, and Ostriches seven to eight weeks. Incubation essentially consists in keeping the eggs at a warm, uniform temperature; this is effected by the body of the sitting bird, and is often facilitated by the presence of naked places on the body. As a rule, the mother alone sits, and the male occupies himself with bringing her food. Not unfrequently, however, as in the Pigeons, Peewits, and many swimming birds, the two parents relieve one another regularly; the male in such cases certainly sits only for a shorter time during the day, while the female sits through the whole night. In the Ostrich the female only sits during the first period of incubation; later the parts are changed, and the male undertakes the chief part of the incubation, especially sitting almost all night. The behaviour of numerous Cuckoos, and especially of our native species, is very remarkable; they leave the building of nests and the care of their brood to other Birds, and lay their small eggs, singly and at intervals of about eight days, amongst the eggs of different singing Birds.

The care and nurture of the young usually falls entirely or mostly on the hen bird. On the other hand, as a rule, both parents take an equal part in the protection of the brood.

Leaving out of consideration the activities which relate to reproduction, the instinct of Birds manifests itself, principally in late summer and autumn, as an impulse to migrate, and still more mysteriously as a true guide on the journey. Few birds of the colder and temperate climates pass the winter in the places where they breed (*Resident birds;* Eagles, Owls, Ravens, Woodpeckers, Magpies, Sparrows, Titmice, Grouse, etc.) Many of them rove over larger and smaller regions in search of food (*Strichvögel;* Thrushes, Bramblings, and Chaffinches, Woodpeckers, Yellow Bunting, Finches, and crested Lark). Others migrate before the beginning of the cold season of the year, when nourishment is deficient, from the northern climates to the temperate, from these to southern regions (*Zugvögel;* Swallows, Storks, Jackdaws, Crows, Starlings, Wildgeese, Cranes, etc.)

There are but scanty materials for the geological history of this class. Leaving out of consideration the feather-tailed *Archæopteryx lithographica** (fig. 119) of the Jura (*Saururæ*), the oldest remains of the swimming and wading birds belong to the chalk. In the tertiary period the remains are indeed more frequent, but are nevertheless insufficient for a more accurate definition. In the Diluvium, on the other hand, numerous types of species still living are found, as well as remarkable gigantic forms which have become extinct within the historical period (*Palæornis, Dinornis, Palapteryx, Didus*).

## I. CARINATÆ.

The sternum has a keel (*carina*) for the insertion of the powerfully developed muscles of flight. The remiges of the wing and the rectrices of the tail are usually well developed. Almost all are able to fly.

### Order 1.—Natatores (Swimming Birds).

*Aquatic Birds with short legs often placed far back; feet either pedes palmati or p. stegani.*

The form of the body of the swimming Birds varies extraordinarily, according to the special adaptation to their aquatic habitat. They all have a thick compact plumage, a very rich clothing of down, and a large uropygial gland. The legs are short and are placed far back, and usually feathered as far as the ankle. They end with swimming feet, either *pedes palmati*, or *fissipalmati*, or *stegani*. The Natatores are all excellent swimmers; many are strong flyers, while others are

* This group, which is allied to the reptilian genus *Compsognatus* (*Ornithoscelida*) is especially characterised by the fact that the caudal part of the vertebral column is as long as the body, and was furnished with feathers, arranged in pairs. Since the metatarsal bones are not fused, there is no true avian tarsometatarsus.

incapable of flight, and are almost entirely confined to the water. Most of them also dive with great skill, either shooting down into the water from the air or suddenly diving beneath the water while swimming. The form of the beak varies as much as does the structure of the wings. Sometimes the beak is much arched and armed with cutting edges, and sometimes flat and broad; sometimes elongated and pointed. The form of the beak is correlated with the mode of subsistence: in the first case we have to do with predatory birds, which especially prey on fishes, in the last case with birds, which live on worms and small aquatic animals, but also on fishes. The swimming Birds, with broad soft-skinned beak, search in the mud and feed not only on worms and small aquatic animals, but also on seeds and vegetable matters. The *Natatores* are gregarious, and exist in great flocks on the sea coasts or on inland waters, but some of them are also found on the high seas, far from land. Most of them are migratory. They nest near the water, often in common breeding places, and lay a few eggs either directly on the ground, or in holes, or in simple, rudely-made nests. Many of them are of great importance to man, partly on account of their flesh and eggs, and partly of their down and skins, and partly also on account of their excrements, which are used as manure (guano).

FIG. 660.—*Aptenodytes patagonica* (from Brehm).

Fam. **Impennes** (Penguins). The wings are fin-like, without remiges, covered with small scale-like feathers. The tail is short, with stiff feathers. The short swimming-feet have a reduced forwardly-directed hind toe, and are placed so far back that on land the body must be carried almost vertically. They are excellent divers. In the breeding season they stand upright and arranged in long rows—the so-called schools. They lay only one egg in a depression in the ground, and keep it in a vertically upright position during incubation; but they can also carry it about buried in the down between the legs. Both sexes participate in incubation. *Aptenodytes patagonica*, Forst., King-Penguin (fig. 660); *Spheniscus demersus* L., Black-footed Penguin, South Africa and America; *Eudyptes chrysocoma* L., South Sea, Patagonia.

Fam. **Alcidæ** (Auks). The wings are short and ill-adapted for flight. There are, however, small remiges. The swimming-feet with rudimentary or without hind toe. Their common breeding-places are on the coasts (*Vogelberge*), where they lay their eggs singly in holes in the earth or in nests, and bring up their young. *Alca impennis* L., Great Auk; now extirpated. *A. torda* L., Razorbill; *Mormon arcticus* Ill. (*fratercula* Temm.), Puffin; *Uria troile* Lath., Guillemot; *U. grylle* Cuv., Black Guillemot.

Fam. **Colymbidæ** (Divers). The head has a pointed straight beak. The freely projecting metatarsus is strongly laterally compressed. The feet are palmate or fissipalmate. *Podiceps cristatus* L., Great crested Grebe; *P. minor* Gm.; *Colymbus glacialis* L., Great Northern Diver.

Fam. **Lamellirostres.** Beak broad, deep at the base, covered with a soft, richly innervated skin, with transverse lamellæ on its edges (dentated appearance), and ends with a nail-like extremity. The feet are palmate (*p. palmati*), with rudimentary hind toe, which is sometimes naked, sometimes fringed with membrane. *Phœnicopterus antiquorum* L., Flamingo, North Africa: *Cygnus olor* L., Mute Swan; *C. musicus* Bechst., Whooper; *Anser cinereus* Meyer, Gray Goose; *A. hyperboreus* L., Snow Goose; *A. segetum* L., Bean Goose; *Anas boschas* L., Wild Duck, the ancestral species of the various races of domestic ducks; *A. (Tadorna) tadorna* L., Sheldrake; *Mergus merganser* L., Goosander; *M. serrator* L., Redbreasted Merganser; *M. albellus* L., Smew.

Fam. **Steganopodes.** Large swimming birds, with small head, well developed, often long and pointed wings, with swimming feet (*p. stegani*). *Pelecanus onocrotalus* L., Pelican; *Halieus carbo*, Cormorant; *Tachypetes aquila* L., Frigate Bird; *Sula bassana* L., Gannet, North Europe; *Phaëton ætherius* L., Tropicbird.

Fam. **Laridæ** (Gulls). Lightly built Swallow- or Pigeon-like swimming-birds, with long pointed wings and often forked tail, relatively high, three-toed swimming-feet and free hind toe. They dive from the air (Stosstaucher). *Sterna hirundo* L., Tern; *Larus minutus* Pall., Little Gull; *L. ridibundus* L., Blackheaded Gull; *L. canus* L., Common Gull; *Lestris parasitica* L., Skua, North German Coasts; *Rhynchops nigra* L., Skimmer.

Fam. **Procellariidæ** (Sturmvögel). Gull-like birds, with rostrum compositum. Feet palmate, hind toe absent or reduced to a stump. They select rocky and precipitous coasts for their common breeding-places. The female lays one egg and takes turn with the male in incubation. The young are nurtured for a long time. *Diomedea exulans* L., Albatross, South Sea; *Procellaria glacialis* L., Fulmar Petrel, from the Arctic Seas to North German Coasts; *Thalassidroma pelagica* L., Stormy Petrel, Atlantic Ocean.

## Order 2.—Grallatores (Waders).

*Birds with long thin neck and long beak, with elongated wading legs (p. vadantes).*

The *Grallatores* are adapted for an aquatic life, since they have to seek their food in water, but their adaptations are of a different kind to those of the *Natatores*. They live more in swampy places, on the banks of rivers and seas, and wade through shallow water in order to seek snails and worms, or frogs and fishes. They therefore possess, with some exceptions, long wading legs, with usually naked tibiæ projecting freely from the body, and very long metatarsus often covered with scales. But few have running legs (*p. cursorii*) and are land birds (Bustards). Some (Rails) are similar in their mode of life, the shortness of their legs and the structure of their toes, to the swimming birds (*Natatores*), and swim and dive well, but fly badly. Corresponding with the considerable length of the legs, there is a long neck and usually also a long beak. The size and form of the beak varies exceedingly. When small worms, Insect larvæ and Molluscs are sought in mud and loose earth, the beak is long, but relatively weak and soft, and has a sensitive richly innervated extremity; in other cases the beak is very strong, angular, and adapted for the capture of fishes and frogs, and even of small Mammals; and finally in the transitional groups before mentioned it is short and strong, like that of a fowl, with a somewhat arched *culmen*, and adapted for an omnivorous diet. The feet also present great differences in the size and connection of the toes. The wings usually attain a medium size. The tail, on the other hand, is short. The plumage is more uniform and simple, and but rarely presents beautiful and glittering colours. Most *Grallatores* are migratory birds of the temperate regions, and live in pairs, in a monogamous state. They build rude nests on the ground, on the shore, or on trees and houses, more rarely on water. The young are sometimes *altrices*, and sometimes *præcoces*.

Fam. **Charadriidæ.** Plovers. With tolerably thick head, short neck, and hard-edged beak of medium length. *Cursorius europæus* = *C. isabellinus* M., North Africa and South Europe; *Oedicnemus crepitans* Temm., Steppes in South Europe, Africa and West Asia, also on the great fallow lands in Germany. *Charadrius pluvialis* L., Golden-plover, inhabits the Tundra; *Vanellus cristatus* M., Peewit, Germany and Holland.

Fam. **Scolopacidæ.** Snipe. Head of medium size, strongly arched with a long, thin, usually soft beak, covered with a richly innervated skin. *Totanus hypoleucus* Temm., Sandpiper; *Recurvirostra avocetta* L., Avocet; *Tringa cinerea* Gm., *Machetes pugnax* Cuv., Ruff; *Scolopax rusticola* L., Woodcock; *Gallinago media* Gray, Snipe; *G. gallinula* L., Jack Snipe; *Numenius arquata* L., Curlew.

Fam. **Herodii** = **Ardeidæ.** Herons and Storks. Large *Grallatores* with powerful body, long neck, and small, partly naked head: beak powerful, without cere, with sharp hard edges, sometimes curved at the point, rarely spoon-shaped. Legs long, and naked far above the intertarsal joint: feet usually *p. colligati*; hind toe rests on the ground. *Ibis rubra* Vieill., the scarlet Ibis of Central America. *I. religiosa* Cuv., the sacred Ibis; *Falcinellus igneus* Gray, Glossy Ibis; *Platalea leucorodia* L., Spoonbill; *Balæniceps* *rex* Gould; *Ardea cinerea* L.; *A. purpurea* L., South Europe; *Ciconia alba* L., Stork; *Mycteria senegalensis*; *Leptoptilus argala* Temm., (Marabu): *Anastomus lamelligerus* Temm., East Indies; *Grus cinerea* Bechst., Common Crane.

Fam. **Rallidæ.** Water-hens, Rails. Intermediate between the *Natatores* and the *Gallinacei*. *Rallus aquaticus* L., Water Rail, Northern and Central Europe to Central Asia: *Crex pratensis* L., Corncrake; *Cr. porzana* L., Europe, Spotted crake: *Parra jacana* L., America; *Galinula chloropus* L., Moorhen; *Fulica atra* L., Coot. On the reedy lakes and ponds of Europe.

Fam. **Alectoridæ.** Transitional between the *Grallatores* and *Gallinacei*.

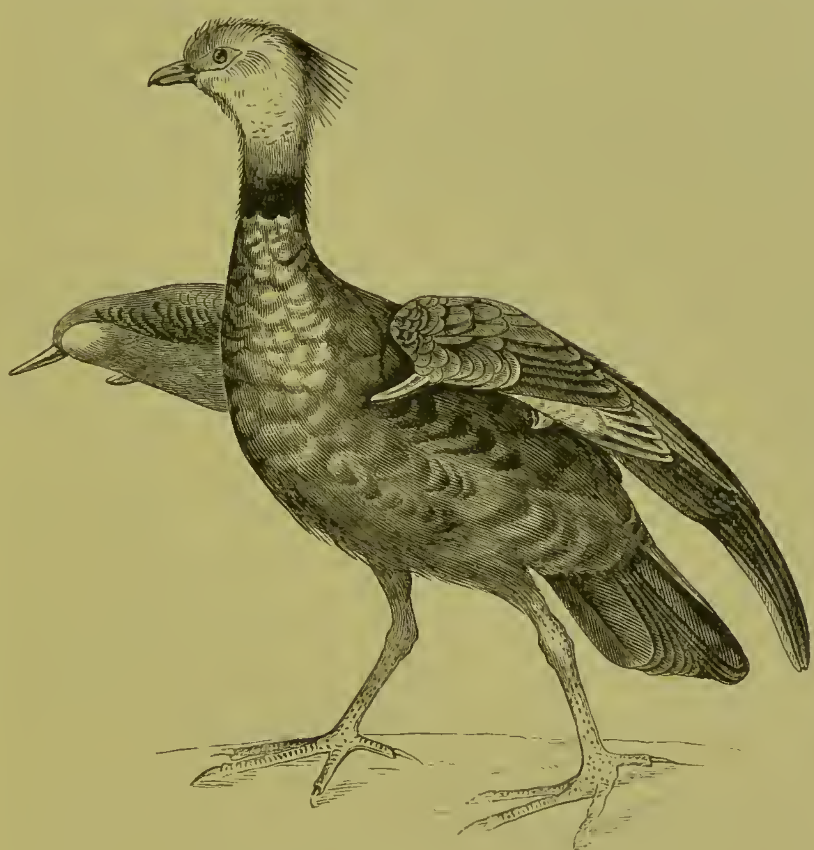


FIG. 661.—*Chauna chavaria* (règne animal).

They resemble the former in the length of their legs, and the latter in their mode of life and in the form of their beak. *Otis tarda* L., Bustard. Lives as a migratory bird (Strichvogel) in the plains of South-east Europe with one or two females to each male. *O. tetrax* L., more in the South: *Dicholophus cristatus* Ill., Cariama [Seriema], in Brazil, lives on Lizards and Snakes like the Secretary-bird of South Africa. *Psophia crepitans* L., Trumpeter, South America; *Palamedea cornuta* L., with spurs on the wings. *Chauna chavaria* Ill., Screamers (fig. 661). With spurs on the wings. Is domesticated. Receives in German the name of Shepherd's bird from its use as keeper and defender of flocks of hens and geese in South America.

## Order 3.—Gallinacei = Rasores.

*Terrestrial birds of medium and sometimes considerable size, of stout build, with short, rounded wings, strong beak, usually arched and bent downwards at the point, and with powerful feet adapted for perching (p. insidentes), usually præcoces.*

The *Gallinacei* possess in general a stout body with thick plumage, small head and powerful beak, short or moderately long neck, usually short and rounded wings, legs of medium length and well-developed tail, composed of numerous rectrices. There are often naked places on the head, as well as erectile combs and cutaneous folds (wattles), the latter principally as distinctions of the male sex. The beak is usually short, broad and high, and is characterized both by the overlapping cutting edges and by the depressed extremity of the upper beak. Its base is soft and membranous, and covered with feathers, among which a membranous or cartilaginous scale projects over the nasal apertures. The plumage of the *Gallinacei* is close and stiff, and often beautifully marked and ornamented with rich colours and a metallic lustre (male). The tail quills are usually more than twelve in number, and there may be as many as eighteen or twenty. The wings are as a rule short and rounded, with ten primary remiges and twelve to eighteen secondary. The flight, therefore, is clumsy: only the *Pteroclidæ* fly quickly and with skilful turnings. The legs are powerful and short, or of medium length; they are usually feathered as far as the foot-joint, rarely up to the toes. There is often a sharp spur, which serves as a weapon, on the metatarsus of the male above the hind toe, which is articulated high up. The *Gallinacei* live for the most part on the ground, either in forests or in fields, on grassy plains from high mountains down to the sea coast. They are good runners, and seek their food on the ground, feeding specially on berries, buds and seeds, also on insects and worms. They form their rude nests for the most part on the surface of the ground, or in low bushes; more rarely on high trees, and lay a great number of eggs. As a rule the cock lives with a number of hens, and takes no part either in the building of the nest or in the care of the brood. The young are for the most part *præcoces.* The hens are easily domesticated, and on account of their eggs and their well-flavoured flesh, have been made useful as domestic animals from the earliest times.

Fam. **Penelopidæ.** Large, long-legged *Gallinacei,* with well-developed remiges and long, rounded tail, resembling the three-toed Ostrich in the structure of the protrusible penis. *Crax alector* L., Curassow, South America; *Urax pauxi* L., *U. galeata* Cuv., Mexico; *Penelope cristata* Gm., Guan, Brazil; *Meleagris mexicana*, Gould., ancestral form of *M. gallopavo*, the Turkey.

Here are allied the **Crypturidæ (Tinamidæ)**, Tinamous, and **Opisthocomidæ**, Hoazin.

Fam. **Megapodiidæ** (Mound-birds). Long-legged *Gallinacei*, of medium size, with short, broad tail and large, strongly-clawed, ambulatory foot (pes ambulatorius), the hind toe of which is articulated at the same level as the front toes. *Megacephalon maleo* Temm., Celebes; *Megapodius tumulus*, North East of Australia.

Fam. **Phasianidæ** (True fowls). The head is partially bare of feathers, especially in the cheek region; it is often adorned with coloured combs, cutaneous lobes or tufts of feathers, and has a strongly-arched beak of medium length, with the point curved downwards. The two sexes are strikingly different, the male being larger and more richly adorned. They are inhabitants of the Old World. *Gallus bankiva* Temm., Island of Sunda; *Lophophorus refulgens* Temm., Himalayas; *Phasianus colchicus* L., Common Pheasant; *Ph. pictus* L., Golden Pheasant; *Ph.* (*Gallophasis*) *nycthemerus* L., Silver Pheasant, China; *Pavo cristatus* L., Peacock; *Argus giganteus* Temm., Argus Pheasant, Malacca, Borneo; *Numida meleagris* L., Guinea Fowl, North Africa.

Fam. **Tetraonidæ**. The body is stout, the neck short, the head small and feathered, with at most one naked stripe above the eyes. The legs are short, and are usually feathered down to the toes. *Tetrao urogallus* L., Capercally; *T. tetrix* L., Black Grouse. The hybrid between these two species is called *T. medius*, by Meyer. *T. bonasia* L., Hazel Grouse; *Lagopus albus* Vieill., Willow Grouse, Scandinavia; *L. alpinus* Nilss.; *Perdrix cinerea*, Briss., Partridge; *P. saxatilis* M.W.; *P. rubra* Temm., Red-legged Partridge; *Coturnix dactylisonans* Meyer, Quail.

Fam. **Pteroclidæ** (Sand-grouse). Small *Gallinacei*, with small head, short beak, short, weak legs, long-pointed wings and wedge-shaped tail. Feet with short toes; hind toe when present rudimentary and attached high up; it may be absent. *Pterocles alchata* Gray, in Asia Minor and Africa; *Syrrhaptes paradoxus* Pall., in the steppes of Tartary, and lately in North Germany.

## Order 4.—Columbinæ (Pigeons).

*Birds with weak soft beak, swollen round the nasal apertures, with pointed wings of medium size, and short cloven feet (pedes fissi). The young are altrices.*

The *Columbinæ* are most nearly allied to the *Pteroclidæ*. They are of medium size, with small head, short neck and short legs. The beak is longer than in the *Gallinacei*, but weaker, and gently arched at the horny, somewhat turned-up extremity. At the base of the beak the scaly cover of the nasal openings is swollen, naked, and membranous. The rather long, pointed wings enable the bird to fly quickly and skilfully. The tail is weak and rounded, and contains usually twelve, rarely fourteen, or sixteen rectrices.

The stiff, beautifully coloured plumage lies smoothly on the body, and presents hardly any difference in the two sexes. The short legs are unfitted for rapid and constant locomotion. The feet are cloven (*p. fissi*) or ambulatory (*p. ambulatorii*), and the well-developed hind toe rests on the ground. The *Columbinæ* have a paired crop, which at the breeding season in both sexes secretes a creamy fluid for the nourishment of the young. They are distributed over all parts of the world. They live in pairs or in flocks in forests, and feed almost exclusively on grain and seeds. The species which live in the north are migratory (Zugvögel); others make short migration (Strichvögel), while others are resident birds. They live in a state of monogamy, and lay two, rarely three, eggs in a rudely-constructed nest. Both

Fig. 662.—*Columba livia* (after Naumann).

sexes take part in hatching and bringing up the young. The young leave the egg almost entirely naked, with closed eyelids, and, as altrices, require the care of the mother for a considerable time.

Fam. **Columbidæ.** The beak, with smooth edges, never dentated. *Columba livia* L., Rock-Dove (fig. 662). Slate-blue, with white wing-coverts and two black bands on the wings and tail. It is the ancestral form of the numerous races of domestic pigeon. It nests on rocks and ruins, and is distributed from the coasts of the Mediterranean over a great part of Europe and Asia. *C.* (*Palumbœnas*) *œnas* L., Stock-Dove: *Palumbus torquatus*, Leach, Ring-dove; *Ectopistes migratorius* L., Passenger Pigeon, North America; *Turtur auritus* Bp., Turtle-Dove; *T. risorius* Sws.; *Goura coronata*, Flem., New Guinea.

Fam. **Didunculidæ.** Beak compressed, lower jaw dentated, with hooked extremity. *Didunculus strigirostris* Gould, Samoa Islands.

The extinct Dodos (**Ineptæ**) were allied to this last family, and have been placed among the pigeon-like birds. They were living in Vasco di Gama's time on small islands on the East Coast of Africa (the Mascarenes), and were still plentiful; they became extinct two hundred years ago. As far as we can judge of the appearance of this bird from the preserved remains (in [London] Oxford and Copenhagen) of skulls, beaks, and legs, and from the old descriptions, and especially from an old oil painting preserved in the British Museum, the *Dodo*, *Didus ineptus* L., was an unwieldy bird, larger than the Swan, with lax plumage, powerful, four-toed, scraping feet, and strong, deeply-cleft beak.

## Order 5.—Scansores.

*Birds with powerful beak, stiff plumage having but little down, and scansorial feet. The young are altrices.*

Within the artificial limits of this order is included a number of groups of very different birds which essentially agree only in the structure of the feet, which are adapted principally for climbing; they present, however, considerable differences in the manner of locomotion, and find their nearest allies in several families of *Passeres*. The beak is always powerful; it is sometimes long, straight, and angular, adapted for hammering and chiseling on trees (Woodpecker); sometimes short and curved like a hook (Parrot), or of colossal size and with dentated edges (Toucan). The legs end with long-toed, scansorial feet, the outer toe of which can in some cases be directed forward. The metatarsus is seldom feathered, more frequently beset with semirings and scutes in front and small scales behind. The wings contain very generally ten primaries. The tail is sometimes used as a support in climbing. Most of the Scansores inhabit forests, nest in hollow trees, and feed on insects, some of them, however, on small birds, and others on fruit and vegetable matters.

Fam. **Ramphastidæ** (Toucans). Raven-like birds, with colossal, marginally serrated beak, and horny, brush-like tongue. *Ramphastus toco* L.; *Pteroglossus Aracari* Ill.

Fam. **Trogonidæ**. Beak short and strong, with usually serrated edges and wide, slit-like mouth, with bristles at the corner of the mouth. The plumage of the male has a metallic lustre. *Trogon curucui* L., Brazil; *Calurus resplendens* Gould, the Quesal, in Central America. Here are allied the Jacamar (*Galbula*) and Puff-bird (*Bucco*).

Fam. **Cuculidæ** (Cuckoos). With gently-curved, deeply-cleft beak, long pointed wings, and wedge-shaped, pointed tail. The feet are scansorial, and the outer toe can be directed forward. *Cuculus canorus* L., European Cuckoo, sparrowhawk-like, with barred plumage; *Coccystes glandarius* L., Great Spotted Cuckoo of South Europe.

Here are allied the **Musophagidæ** (Plaintain-eaters). *Corythaix persa* L., Guinea; *Musophaga violacea* Isert, Plaintain-eater, West Africa. In *Colius* the outer and inner toes can be turned backwards or forwards.

Fam. **Picidæ** (Woodpeckers). Powerfully-built *Scansores*, with strong, chisel-shaped beak, pointed in front, without cere. Metatarsus with transverse scales; feet with strong claws; with firm tail. The tongue is long, flat and horny, and bears at its end arrow-like, short, recurved hooks; it can be rapidly protruded to a considerable distance in consequence of a peculiar mechanism of the hyoid bone. The cornua of the hyoid are bent into wide arches, and extend over the skull to the base of the beak. *Picus martius* L., Black Woodpecker, Europe and Asia; *P. major* L.; *P. medius* L.; *P. (Piculus) minor* L., Lesser Spotted Woodpecker, Europe; *P. tridactylus* L.; *P. viridis* L., Green Woodpecker; *P. canus* Gm., Greyheaded Green Woodpecker; *Iynx torquilla* L., Wryneck.

Fam. **Psittacidæ** (Parrots). Scansores of the warmer climates, with stout, strongly-bent beak, fleshy tongue, and powerful legs with short metatarsus. The feet, with toes arranged in pairs, are used like a hand to seize the food. The upper beak, which is dentated and covered at its base by a cere, is articulated with the frontal, and its long hooked extremity overlaps the short and broad lower beak. Most of the Parrots belong to America, many also to the Moluccas and Australia. A few are found in Polynesia, New Zealand, and Africa.

*Plictolophinæ.* Cockatoos. Head usually with movable crest. *Plictolophus leucocephalus* Less.; *Nymphicus Novæ Hollandiæ* Gray; *Calyptorhynchus galeatus* Lath., Van Diemen's Land.

*Platycercinæ.* Parrakeets. With moderately pointed, rarely rounded wing, and long, graduated, wedge-shaped tail. *Sittace militaris* L., Macaw, Mexico: *Palæornis Alexandri* L., Ceylon; *Melopsittacus undulatus* Shaw (Wellenpapagei), Australia; *Pezoporus formosus* Lath., Ground-Parrakeet, Australia; *Platycercus Pennantii* Lath., Australia.

*Psittacinæ.* Tail truncated, or rounded. *Psittacus erithacus* L., Grey Parrot, West Africa; *Psittacula passerina* L., Love-bird, Brazil.

*Trichoglossinæ.* Lories. The tip of the tongue is pencil-shaped, with feathery, horny papillæ. *Trichoglossus papuensis* L., New Guinea; *Nestor meridionalis* L., New Zealand.

*Strigopinæ.* Kakapos. Of owl-like appearance, with incomplete feather-disc. *Strigops habroptilus* Gray, New Zealand.

## Order 6.—PASSERES (INSESSORES). PASSERINE BIRDS.

*Birds with horny beak, without cere. Metatarsus covered with laminæ, or scales. The feet are pedes ambulatorii, p. gressorii, or p. adhamantes. The young are altrices. A vocal apparatus with muscles is frequently present.*

The birds included in this large order are of small size, and present great differences in the form of their beak; they fly exceedingly well. When on the ground they hop, or more rarely walk, and they remain by preference on trees and in bushes. They are usually divided according to their vocal apparatus into two orders—the singing birds or **Oscines**, and the shrieking birds or **Clamatores**; a division which seems the more artificial because the same types of form of beak and of the whole structure of the body are repeated in the two groups. An arrangement based on the form of the beak might lead to less artificial groups. By far the greater number of Passeres live in monogamy, often united in large flocks. Many of them build skilfully-constructed nests, and are migratory.

Tribe 1. **Levirostres.** *Clamatores*, with large, but light beak, short, weak legs, and gressorial or fissate feet, which are adapted for clinging to branches.

Fam. **Buceridæ** (Hornbills). Raven-like birds, of considerable size, with colossal, but always light, dentated, and downwardly-curved beak and horn-like head-dress at the base of the upper beak. *Bucorvus abyssinicus* Gm.; *Buceros rhinoceros* L., Sumatra.

Fam. **Halcyonidæ** (Kingfishers). *Passeres*, with large head and long, keeled, angular beak, relatively short wings and short tail. Metatarsus short; feet gressorial. *Alcedo ispida* L., Europe: *Ceryle rudis* L., Black and white Kingfisher, Africa; *Dacelo gigas* Glog., Australia.

Fam. **Meropidæ.** Bee-eaters. The beak is compressed and gently curved downwards. The plumage is variegated; the legs are weak. The wings are pointed, with long coverts. *Merops apiaster* L., South Europe.

Fam. **Coracidæ.** Rollers. Large, beautifully coloured birds, with deeply-cleft beak with sharp edges and recurved extremity. The wings are long and the feet cloven (*p. fissi*). *Coracias garrula* L., Roller.

Tribe 2. **Tenuirostres.** *Clamatores* and *Oscines* with long, thin beak and ambulatory or cloven feet (*p. ambulatorii* or *fissi*), with long hind toe.

Fam. **Upupidæ.** Hoopoes. Beautifully coloured Clamatores with long, laterally compressed beak; short, triangular tongue and long, strongly rounded wings. *Upupa epops* L., Hoopoe.

Fam. **Trochilidæ.** Humming birds. The smallest of all birds. Variegated plumage with metallic lustre. Slender feet (*p. ambulatorii or fissi*). The long, awl-shaped beak has, in consequence of the projecting edges of the upper beak, the form of a tube, from which the long tongue, which is cleft up to the root, can be rapidly projected. *Rhamphodon nævius* Less., Brazil; *Phaëthornis superciliosus* Sws., Brazil: *Trochilus colubris* L.; *Lophornis magnifica* Vp., Brazil.

Fam. **Meliphagidæ.** Honey suckers. Small, beautifully coloured birds, of stout build, with muscular vocal apparatus, with long gently-curved beak, long metatarsus, wings of medium length and long tail. *Meliphaga auricomis* Sws., Australia; *Nectarinia famosa* Ill.; *N. (Cinnyris) splendida* Cuv., South Africa.

Fam. **Certhiidæ.** Tree-creepers. *Oscines* with long, slightly-curved beak, pointed, horny tongue, metatarsus covered with scales, and long hind toe with a sharp claw. *Certhia familiaris* L., Common creeper; *Tichodroma muraria* Ill., Wall creeper.

Tribe 3. **Fissirostres.** With short neck, flattened head, and deeply-cleft beak, with long, pointed wings and weak feet (*p. ambulatorii* or *adhamantes*). They all fly with rapidity and dexterity. They catch their food, especially flies, *Neuroptera* and butterflies, during flight with open beak. They live for the most part in warmer climates.

Fam. **Hirundinidæ.** Swallows. Small, delicately-formed *Oscines* with broad, triangular beak, compressed at the point, nine primary rectrices and long, forked tail. They are distributed over all parts of the earth, and construct their nests with skill. The European species pass the winter in Central Africa. *Hirundo* L. Beak short and triangular; metatarsus naked. The first and second remiges of equal length. *H. rustica* L., Swallow. *H.* (*Chelidon* Boie. with feathered metatarsus) *urbica* L., Martin. *H.* (*Cotile* Boie. The nasal apertures free, the tail slightly excavated and moderately long) *riparia* L., Sand Martin. Nests in holes in the earth, which it digs for itself in banks. *H. rupestris* Scop., Crag Swallow, South of France.

Fam. **Cypselidæ.** Swifts. Swallow-like Clamatores, with narrow wings curved in the form of a sabre; short feathered metatarsus and strongly clawed feet (*pedes adhamantes*); sometimes with inwardly directed hind toe *Collocalia esculenta* L., (Salangane), East Indies; *Cypselus apus* L., Swift; *C. melba* L., (*alpinus*), Alpine Swift.

Fam. **Caprimulgidæ.** Goatsuckers. *Clamatores*, with short, uncommonly flat, triangular beak. Their size varies from that of a lark to that of a raven. Plumage soft, owl-like, and of the colour of the bark of trees. The legs are very weak and short. Hind toes half turned inwards, but can also be turned forwards. The middle toe is long, and sometimes has a serrated claw. They live for the most part in forests, and feed especially on moths, which they catch in their open mouth, during their swift, silent flight. As a rule they lay two eggs on the bare ground, without even scraping a hole for their reception. *Caprimulgus* L., the buccal slit extends to close below the eyes. Edge of beak not dentated, is fringed with stiff bristles. *C. europæus* L.; *C. ruficollis* Temm., Spain.

Tribe 4. **Dentirostres.** Principally *Oscines* with variously-shaped, often thin and pointed, sometimes slightly curved beak; upper beak is more or less notched at the point. In the wings, which are of medium length, the first of the ten primary remiges is reduced, and may be entirely absent.

Fam. **Corvidæ.** Beak strong and thick, somewhat curved anteriorly and slightly notched. *Corvus corax* L., Raven; *C. cornix* L., Hooded Crow; *C. corone* L., Carrion Crow; *C. frugilegus* L., Rook; *C. monedula* L., Jackdaw; *Pica caudata* Ray, Magpie; *Garrulus glandarius* L., Jay; *Oriolus galbula* L., Golden Oriole.

Fam. **Paradiseidæ.** Birds of Paradise. With slightly curved, compressed beak. Feet very strong and toes large. The two middle rectrices are often elongated and filiform, with small vane only at the extremity. Male with tufts of lax feathers at the sides of the body, and also on the neck and breast. *Paradisea apoda* L.; *Cincinnurus regius* L., New Guinea, (fig. 663.)

Fam. **Sturnidæ.** Starlings. *Oscines* with straight or slightly curved, strong beak, the point of which is rarely only slightly notched, without rictal vibrissæ. *Sturnus vulgaris* L., Starling; *Pastor roseus* Temm., Rose-coloured Starling; *Buphaga africana* L., Oxpecker.

Here are allied *Pipra aureola* L., Cayenne; *Rupicola crocea* Bp., Cock of the Rock, South America, and the **Cotingidæ.**

Fam. **Laniidæ.** Shrikes. Large, powerful *Oscines* with hooked, strongly serrated beak, strong rictal vibrissæ, and tolerably long, sharply clawed feet. *Lanius excubitor* L., Grey Shrike; *L. minor* L., Lesser Grey Shrike; *L. rufus* Briss., Woodchat Shrike; *L. collurio* L., Red-backed Shrike.

Fam. **Muscicapidæ.** Flycatchers. Beak short, broad and depressed at the

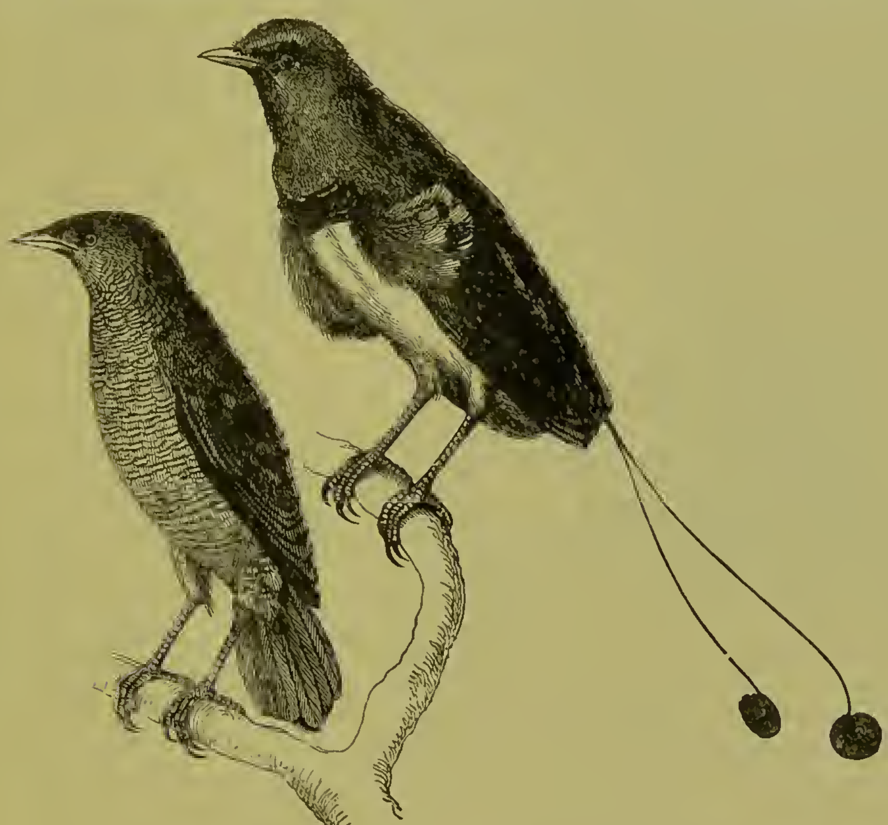


FIG. 663.—*Cicinnurus regius* (male and female).

base, somewhat compressed anteriorly, with hooked curved point. *Muscicapa grisola* L.; *M. atricapilla* L.; *M. collaris* Bechst., (*albicollis*): *Bombycilla garrula* L., Waxwing.

Fam. **Paridæ.** Titmice. Small, beautifully coloured, and very agile *Oscines*, of stout build, with sharp, short, almost conical beak. *Parus major* L., Great Titmouse: *P. ater* L., Coal Titmouse; *P. cæruleus* L., Blue Titmouse; *P. cristatus* L., Crested Titmouse; *P. palustris* L., Marsh Titmouse; *P. caudatus* L., Long-tailed Titmouse; *Aegithalus pendulinus* L., Penduline Titmouse; *Sitta europæa* L., Nuthatch.

Fam. **Motacillidæ.** Wagtails. Slender body; beak tolerably long, and notched at the point. *Anthus pratensis* Bechst., Meadow Pipit; *Motacilla alba* L.; *M. flava* L.; *M. sulphura* Bechst.; *Accentor alpinus* Bechst., Alpine Accentor.

Fam. **Sylviidæ.** Small *Oscines*, with thin and pointed beak and metatarsus covered with scales in front. *Sylvia nisoria* Bechst., Barred Warbler; *S. atricapilla* Lath., Blackcap; *Phyllopneuste hypolais* Bechst.; *Troglodytes parvulus* Koch, Wren; *Regulus cristatus* Koch; *R. ignicapillus* Naum., Fire-crested Wren.

Fam. **Turdidæ.** Thrushes. The beak is tolerably long, somewhat compressed, and slightly notched before the point, and furnished with vibrissæ at its base. The metatarsus is long, and covered with an anterior and two lateral scales, laminiplantar. *Cinclus aquaticus* Bechst., Dipper; *Luscinia philomela* Bechst., Thrush Nightingale, large nightingale in East Europe; *L. luscinia* L., Nightingale; *L. suecica* L., Blue-throat; *L. rubicula* L., Robin; *Turdus pilaris* L., Fieldfare; *T. musicus* L., Thrush; *T. iliacus* L., Redwing; *T. torquatus* L., Ring-ouzel; *T. merula* L., Blackbird; *T. saxatilis* L., Rock Thrush; *T. migratorius* L., American Robin; *T. cyanus* L., Blue Thrush. The Lyre-bird (*Menura superba*, Dav.)—a large bird found in New Holland—is allied to the Thrushes in the form of its beak.

Tribe 5. **Conirostres.** *Oscines* of small size, with thick head and powerful, conical beak, with short neck, wings of medium length and ambulatory feet (*p. ambulatorii*). The metatarsus is short, and is covered with scales in front. They feed on corn and seeds, berries and fruits, but do not despise insects.

Fam. **Alaudidæ.** Larks. The plumage is earth-coloured; the beak is of medium length, the wings broad and long, and the tail short. *Alauda arvensis* L., Skylark; *A. arborea* L., Woodlark; *A. cristata* L., Crested Lark; *A. alpestris* L., Shore Lark; *A. calandra*, Calandra Lark, South Europe.

Fam. **Fringillidæ.** Finches. With short, thick, conical beak, without notch, but with a basal swelling. *Emberiza citrinella* L., Yellow Bunting; *E. cia* L., Meadow Bunting; *E. nivalis* L., Snow Bunting; *Fringilla cœlebs* L., Chaffinch; *F. spinus* L., Siskin; *F. carduelis* L., Goldfinch; *Passer domesticus* L., House-sparrow; *P. montanus* L., Tree-sparrow; *Coccothraustes vulgaris* Pall., Hawfinch; *Pyrrhula vulgaris* Briss., Bullfinch; *P. canaria* L., Canary; *Loxia curvirostra* Gm., Crossbill.

Fam. **Ploceidæ.** Weaver-birds. Build purse-shaped nests. Live in Africa, East India, and Australia. *Ploceus textor* Gray; *Pl. socius* Gray.

## Order 7.—Raptatores (Birds of Prey).

*Powerfully-built birds, with curved beak, hooked at the extremity, and strongly clawed feet (p. insidentes). They feed principally on warm-blooded animals.*

The *Raptatores* are characterised by their powerful build, by the high development of their sense organs, and by the special development of their beak and of the armature of the feet, by which they are fitted for their peculiar mode of existence. The compressed root of the beak is covered by a soft cere, which surrounds the nasal apertures. The cutting edges, and the hooked and downwardly-curved point of the upper beak are always hard and horny. The strong toes, of which the outer can be turned backwards or forwards, are always armed with powerful claws, which are admirably adapted for the seizure of prey. The feet are *p. insidentes*, and are feathered to the intertarsal joint, rarely to the toes. Before the digestion the food is softened in the crop, from which the feathers and hairs rolled together in balls are ejected as the "castings." As a rule the female alone incubates, but the male assists in procuring food for the helpless young. Some genera of Owls and Falcons are cosmopolitan.

Fam. **Strigidæ.** Owls. With large, anteriorly directed eyes, which are surrounded by a circle of stiff feathers, sometimes in a veil-like manner; with strong, hooked beak, bent downwards from the base. The ear has usually a membranous operculum and external cutaneous fold, on which the feathers may be grouped, so as to give the appearance of a concha. *Strix flammea* L., Barn Owl (fig. 664); *Syrnium aluco* L., Tawny Owl; *Otus vulgaris* L., Long-eared Owl; *O. brachyotus* Gm., Short-eared Owl; *Bubo maximus* Sibb., Eagle Owl; *Ephialtes scops* L., Scops Owl, South Europe; *Surnia passerina* Blas., Sparrow Owl; *Nyctea nivea* Daud., Snowy Owl.

FIG. 664.—Head of *Strix flammea*.

Fam. **Vulturidæ.** Vultures. *Raptatores* of large size, with long, straight beak, only bent downwards at the tip. Nares often pervious (*Cathartinæ*). Head and neck often in great part naked. The head sometimes bears lobed appendages; the neck is often surrounded by a collar of down and feathers. *Sarcorhamphus gryphus* Geoffr., Condor; *S. papa* Dum., King-Vulture, South America; *Cathartes aura* Ill.; *C. atratus* Baird, Turkey Buzzard, South America; *Neophron percnopterus* Sav., Egyptian Vulture; *Vultur cinereus* Gm., South Europe; *Gyps fulvus* Briss.; *Gypaëtus barbatus* Cuv., Lämmergeier, South Europe.

Fam. **Accipitridæ = Falconidæ.** With shorter and usually dentated beak, feathered head (rarely with naked cheeks) and neck. Metatarsus of medium length, and sometimes feathered.

*Aquila chrysaëtos* L., Golden Eagle, South Germany; *B. imperialis* Kais. Blas., Imperial Eagle, South Europe; *A. fulva* M.W., Golden Eagle, Tyrol; *A. naevia* Briss., Spotted Eagle; *Haliaëtos albicilla* Briss. (*ossifragus* L.), Sea Eagle, Europe, North Africa; *Pandion haliaëtos*, Cuv., Osprey, Northern hemisphere.

*Milvus regalis* Briss., Red Kite. Seizes its prey from other birds, and only takes small animals—as hamster-rats, moles, and mice; *M. ater* Daud., Black Kite.

*Buteo vulgaris* L., Buzzard; *B. lagopus* L., Rough-legged Buzzard: *Pernis apivorus* Cuv., Honey Buzzard.

*Astur palumbarius* L., Goshawk; *Nisus communis* Cuv., Sparrowhawk.

*Falco tinnunculus* L., Kestrel; *F. peregrinus* L., Peregrine-falcon; *F. candidus* Gm. = *gyrfalco* L., Jer-falcon.

*Circus rufus* L. (*æruginosus*), Marsh Harrier; *C. cyaneus* L., Hen Harrier.

Fam. **Gypogeranidæ.** Slender body, with long neck, long wings and tail, and much elongated metatarsus. Beak with extended cere, laterally compressed and strongly curved. *Gypogeranus serpentarius* Ill., Secretary bird. Flies badly, but runs well; preys on snakes in Africa.

## II. RATITÆ.

Birds incapable of flight, without sternal keel, and without firm remiges or rectrices.

### Order 1. Cursores.

*Ratitæ of considerable body size, with three-toed or exceptionally with two-toed cursorial feet.*

The Ostriches, which are the largest of living birds, possess a broad and flat, deeply-slit beak with a blunt point, a relatively small, in part naked, head, a long, slightly feathered neck and long powerful cursorial legs. Besides the reduction of the wing-bones, there are other peculiarities of skeletal structure which characterise these birds as being exclusively cursorial. Almost all the bones are heavy and massive, with much reduced pneumaticity. The sternum has the form of a broad, slightly arched plate, without any trace of a keel. The clavicle also is undeveloped, and the uncinate processes of the ribs are rudimentary or entirely absent. The plumage covers the body with tolerable uniformity, except that there are naked places on the head, the neck, the extremities, and the abdomen; but does not present any regular arrangement of *pterylæ;* it approximates in its special structure to the hairy covering of *Mammalia* (Cassowary). While the down is much reduced, the contour-feathers have a more down-like appearance on account of their flexible shaft and lax vane, or they may be stiff and hair-like with setiform barbs, or sometimes, as in the wings of the Cassowary, they are spine-like.

Fam. **Struthionidæ.** Two-toed Ostriches. With naked head and neck, pubic symphysis and long, completely naked, two-toed legs. They inhabit the plains and deserts of Africa. They live in companies, and are polygamous. *Struthio camelus* L., Ostrich.

Fam. **Rheidæ.** Three-toed Ostriches. With partially feathered head and neck, and three-toed feet. They inhabit America. *Rhea americana* Lam., Rhea.

Fam. **Casuariidæ** With high, almost compressed beak, and usually a helmet-shaped, bony knob on the head, with short neck and three-toed legs. *Dromæus Novæ Hollandiæ* Gray, Emeu, Australia; *Casuarius galeatus* Vieill., Cassowary, New Guinea [Ceram].

The reduction of the wings in terrestrial birds is not confined to the Ostriches; but is also characteristic of a number of very strangely organised forms which differ so much from each other that they deserve to be separated into several orders. These birds belong principally to New Zealand; also to Madagascar and the Mascarenes. Some of them are extinct, but have only become so within historic times.

In the uninhabited forest regions of the north island of New Zealand there still lives, though gradually approaching extinction,

FIG. 665.—*Apteryx Owenii.*

an extremely remarkable bird—the Kiwi (**Apteryx Mantelli** = **Australis** Shaw), which is sometimes placed among the ostriches and called the Dwarf Ostrich. A second species of the same genus (*A. Owenii*) belongs to the south island, on which another larger form (*Roaroa*) is said to exist, and has been distinguished as a third species (*A. maxima.* Verr.). These birds (**Apterygia**), which are about the size of a large hen, are entirely covered with long, hair-like feathers, which hang down loosely and completely hide the rudimentary wings. The short, powerful legs are covered with scales; the three anteriorly directed toes are armed with claws adapted for scratching; the hind toe is short and raised from the ground. The head, which is borne on a short neck, is prolonged into a long and rounded, snipe-like beak, at the extreme point of which are the nasal apertures. The Kiwis are nocturnal birds, which by day remain concealed in holes in the earth and go out at night to seek their food. They feed on insect-larvæ and worms, live in pairs, and at the breeding time, which seems to come twice in the year, they lay, in holes scraped in the earth, a strikingly large egg, which according to some is incubated by the female, and according to others by the male and female in turn.

A second group of terrestrial birds of New Zealand, which are incapable of flight, includes a number of forms which are in great part extinct, and some of which attained an enormous size (up to ten feet high). These are the **Dinornithidæ**. Of heavy, unwieldy build, and incapable of raising themselves from the ground, they were unable to resist the pursuit of the natives of New Zealand. The remains of some have been found in the diluvium, and in some cases the bones appear so recent, that it cannot be doubted that they co-existed with man. The traditions of the natives about the gigantic *Moa*, and numerous discoveries of the fragments of eggs in graves, also point to the fact that these gigantic birds have lived in historic times; while, on the other hand, recent discoveries have rendered probable the existence of smaller species at the present day. Recently in the exploration of the mountain chains, between the Rewaki and Tabaka rivers, the footprints of a gigantic bird, the bones of which were already known from the volcanic sand of the north island, have been discovered. The restoration of the skeleton of gigantic species (*Palapteryx ingens*, *Dinornis giganteus*, *elephantopus*, etc.) has been partially effected from the bones which have been collected. A skeleton of *Dinornis elephantopus* is in the British Museum, and one of *P. ingens* has been set up in Vienna by Hochstetter (Voyage of the Novara). In Madagascar pieces of the tarsal bones of a gigantic bird have been found in the alluvium (*Æpyornis maximus*—the Reek of Marco Polo), and well-preserved, colossal eggs have been discovered in the mud, the contents of which would have been equal to about 150 hen's eggs.

# CHAPTER IX.

## Class V.—MAMMALIA.*

*Warm-blooded, hairy animals with double occipital condyle. They are viviparous and suckle their young with the secretion of milk (mammary) glands.*

As opposed to Birds, Mammals are adapted, by the similar structure of the two pairs of extremities, to live principally on land. There are, however, in this class also forms which are fitted in various degrees for an aquatic life, and even live entirely in water, and again forms which move and find their food in the air.

The surface of the skin is rarely quite smooth as in the *Cetacea*, but is traversed by numerous curved, spiral, and partly crossing furrows, and in many places (sole of foot, ischial callosities) is thickened and indurated, so as to form firm, horny plates.

The hairy covering is to Mammalia (named "*Haarthiere*" by Oken), what the plumage is to Birds. Hairs are never entirely absent; even the huge aquatic forms and the largest of the tropical terrestrial species which seem to be naked, possess hairs on certain parts of the body; *e.g.*, the *Cetacea* have short bristles, at least on the lips. Hairs, like feathers, are epidermal structures (fig. 666.) The bulbous root is placed on a vascular papilla (*pulpa*), at the bottom of a pit, which projects into the cutis and is lined by epidermal cells (hair-follicle) while the upper part, or shaft, projects freely on the surface of the skin. Two kinds of hairs may be distinguished, according to the strength and rigidity of the shaft, viz., contour hairs and woolly hairs. Woolly hairs are delicate and curled, and surround in larger or smaller numbers the base of each contour hair. The finer and warmer the fur, the more numerous are the woolly hairs (winter-fur). When the contour hairs have a greater strength they become bristles,

* Joh. Ch. D. v. Schreber, "Die Säugethiere in Abbildungen nach der Natur mit Beschreibungen, fortgesetzt von Joh. Andr. Wagner," Bd. I.—VII., und Suppl. I.—V. Erlangen und Leipzig. 1775—1855.

E. G. St. Hilaire et Fréd. Cuvier, "Histoire naturelle des Mammifères," Paris, 1819—1835.

C. J. Temminck, "Monographie de mammalogie." Leiden, 1825—1841.

R. Owen, "Odontography," 2 vol. London, 1840—1845.

Blasius, "Die Säugethiere Deutschlands" 1875.

G. Giebel, "Die Säugethiere in zoologisch-anatomischer und paläontologisches Hinsicht." Leipzig, 1850.

A. E. Brehm, "Illustrirtes Thierleben" I., II., und III.

And. Murray, "The Geographical Distribution of Mammalia." London, 1866.

and when still stronger and thicker they constitute spines (Hedgehog, Porcupine.) To the stronger hairs are attached smooth muscles of the dermis, by means of which each one of them can be moved singly, while the striped muscular system of the dermis causes the bristling of the hairy covering and the erection of the spines over larger extents of surface.

The epidermis may also give rise to smaller horny scales as well as to large overlapping scales: the former on the tails of Rodents and Marsupials, the latter upon the whole dorsal and lateral surfaces of the Pangolins (*Manis*), which thus possess a horny epidermal exoskeleton. Another form of exoskeleton is found in the Armadillos; it arises by ossification of the dermis, and consists of suturally united plates, and in the middle of the body of broad, movable, bony girdles. Amongst the dermal ossifications must also be reckoned the antlers of the Deer which are periodically renewed. The horny sheaths of the *Cavicornia*, the horns of the *Rhinocerida* and the various horny coverings of the extremities of the digits are epidermal structures. The latter may be distinguished into nails (*unguis lamnaris, unguis tegularis*), claws (*falcula*), and hoofs (*ungula.*)

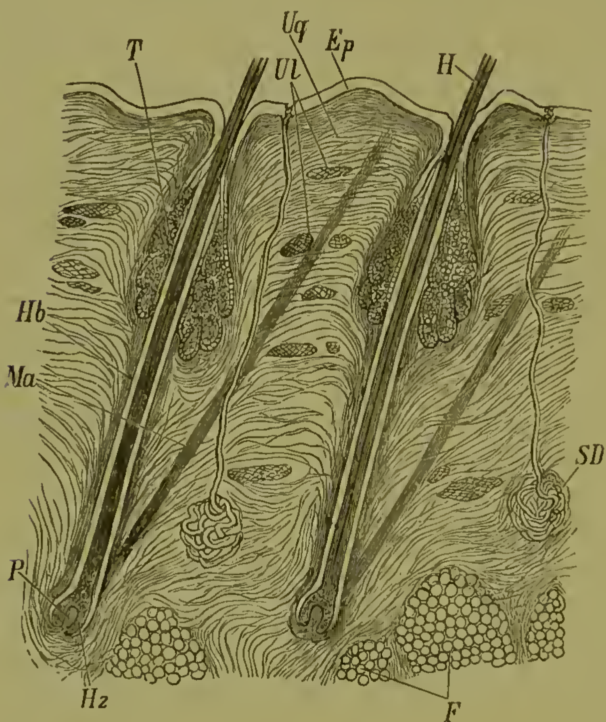



FIG. 666.—Section through the human scalp. *Ep*, Epidermis; *Ul*, transverse bands of the connective-tissue of the cutis; *Uq*, longitudinal bands of the same; *H*, hair; *Hz*, root of hair; *P*, hair papilla; *Hb*, Hair follicle; *Ma*, musculus erector pili; *T*, sebaceous gland; *SD*, sweat gland; *F*, fat body.

**Cutaneous glands.**—Sweat glands and sebaceous glands (fig. 666) are widely distributed. Sebaceous glands are invariable accompaniments of the hair follicles, but they are also found on naked parts of the skin; they secrete a fatty grease, which keeps the surface of the skin soft. The sweat glands have the form of coiled glandular tubes with sinuous ducts, and are only seldom absent (*Cetacea, Mus, Talpa*).

The larger glands, with strongly smelling secretions, which open on various parts of the integument of many mammals, are to be regarded as modified sebaceous or more rarely sweat glands. As examples of such glands may be mentioned—the occipital glands of the Camel, the glands which are placed in a depression of the lachrymal bone of *Cervus, Antilope, Ovis,* the temporal glands of the Elephant, the facial glands of the Bat, the pedal glands of Ruminants, the lateral glands of the Shrewmouse, the sacral gland of *Dicotyles,* the caudal glands of the Desman, the crural glands of the male Monotremes, etc. These excretory organs are most frequently found near the anus, or in the inguinal region, and are then often placed in special

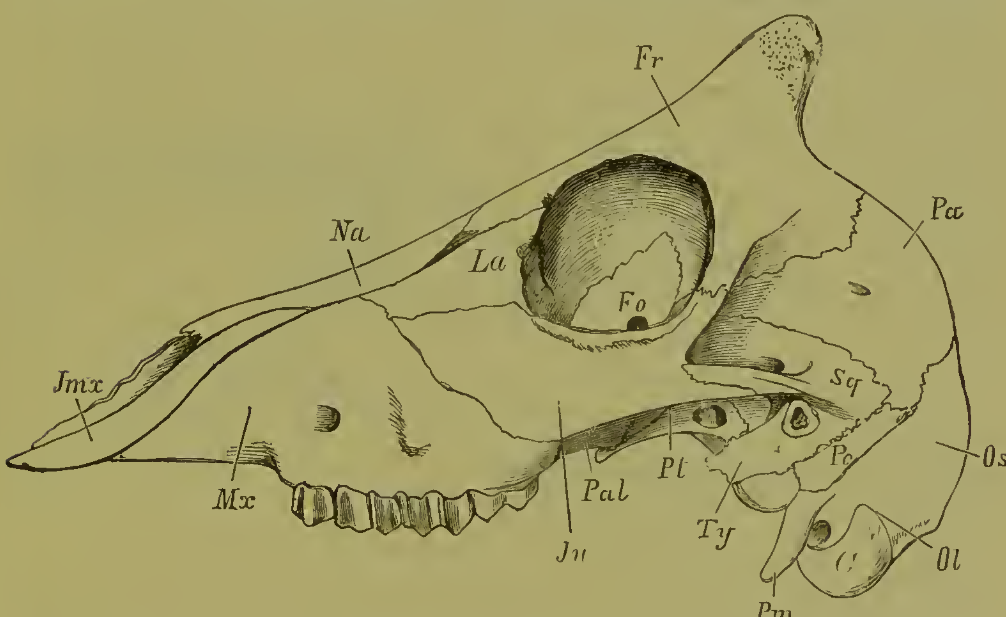



FIG. 667.—Skull of a goat, from the side. *Ol*, exoccipital; *C*. condyle; *Pm*, paramastoid process; *Os*, supra-occipital; *Sq*, squamosal; *Ty*, tympanic; *Pe*, petrous (mastoid portion); *Pa*, parietal; *Fr*, frontal; *La*, lachrymal; *Na*, nasal; *Fo*, optic foramen; *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, præmaxillary; *Ju*, jugal; *Pal*, palatine; *Pt*, pterygoid.

cutaneous pits—*e.g.*, the anal glands of many *Carnivora, Rodentia,* and *Edentata,* the civet gland of the *Viverridæ,* the musk pouch of *Moschus moschiferus,* and the preputial glands of the male Beaver.

The **skeleton** is formed of heavy bones containing marrow. The skull (fig. 667) is a spacious capsule, the bony pieces of which are only exceptionally (*Ornithorhynchus*) fused in early life, but as a rule they remain for the most part separated by suture throughout life. There are, however, many cases in which in the adult animals the sutures have partly or wholly vanished (Ape, Weasel). The great extension of the cranial capsule is due not only to the large size of the roof of the skull, but also to the fact that the lateral bones of the skull in place of the interorbital septum extend forward into the ethmoid region. Thus it happens that the ethmoid (*lamina cribrosa*) constitutes the boundary of the anterior and lower part of the skull (fig. 668). The temporal bones also take an essential part in bounding the cranial cavity, since not only the petrous and a part of the mastoid,* but also the large squamosal occupy the space remaining between the alisphenoids and exoccipitals. The occipital always articulates with the first cervical vertebra (*atlas*) by two condyles, and its lateral portions (exoccipitals) frequently present a pyramidal process on each side (*jugular* or *paramastoid process*). The præsphenoid and basisphenoid (fig. 668) often remain separate

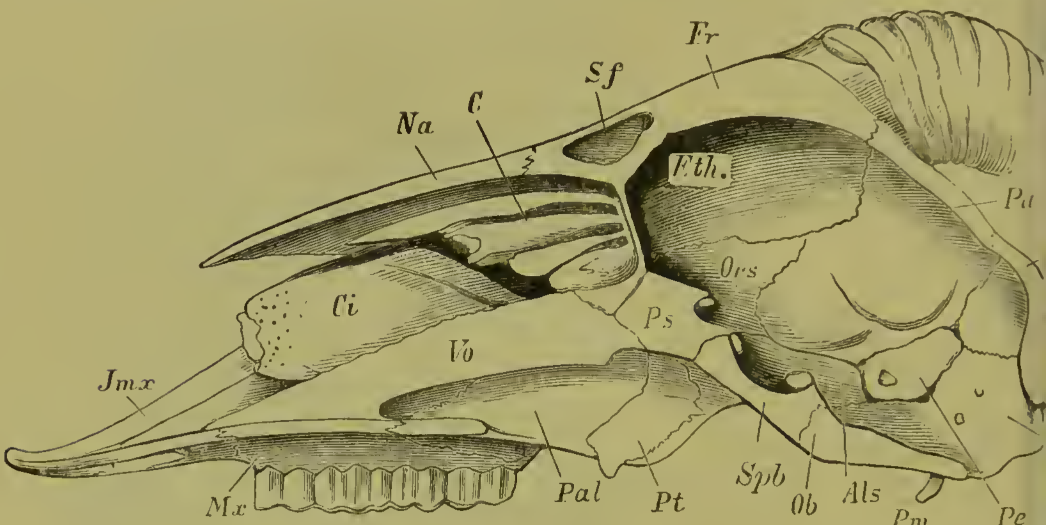



FIG 668.—Median longitudinal section of sheep's skull, from inside. *Ob*, Basi-occipital *Ol*, exoccipital; *Os*, supra-occipital; *Pe*, petrous; *Spb*, basi-sphenoid; *Ps*, præsphenoid; *Als*, alisphenoid; *Ors*, orbito-sphenoid; *Pa*, parietal; *Fr*, frontal; *Sf*, frontal sinus; *Eth*, ethmoid; *Na*, nasal; *C*, ethmoturbinal; *Ci*, inferior turbinal; *Pt*, pterygoid; *Pal*, palatine; *Vo*, vomer; *Mx*, maxillary; *Jmx*, præmaxillary.

for a long time. To the latter are applied the alisphenoids with the parietals, which belong to this region. An interparietal is often developed behind the parietal; it is, however, usually ankylosed with the supra-occipital, more rarely with the parietal. The frontal bones constitute the roof of the skull in the region of the orbitosphenoids; they are less frequently fused than are the parietals. The temporal bone has several constituents—(1) The petrous portion, which is composed of the three pieces of the periotic capsule—the *pro-*, *opistho-*, and *epiotic*; (2) the mastoid portion, which is a part of the epiotic; (3) the squamous portion or squamosal, which is a larger bony scale; (4) the tympanic bone, which is attached to the squamosal, bounds

* [The petrous and mastoid together constitute the periotic.]

the external auditory meatus, and is frequently dilated to a projecting capsule (*tympanic bulla*). Postfrontals are absent. The perforated *cribriform plate* (*lamina cribrosa*) of the ethmoid forms the anterior boundary of the cranial cavity. In the Apes and Man only, do the lateral parts of the ethmoid (the part known as *lamina papyracea*) take part in the formation of the inner wall of the orbit. In all other cases the ethmoid is placed in front of the orbit, and its sides are covered by the maxillaries; in such cases it has a considerable longitudinal extension. Two parts may be distinguished in the ethmoid—(1) A median plate—the *lamina perpendicularis*—which is continued in front into the cartilaginous internasal septum, and is underlaid by the vomer; (2) the lateral masses, with the *lamina cribrosa* and the labyrinth (ethmoidal cells and the two upper turbinals); the first corresponds to the unpaired ethmoid, the second to the præfrontals of the lower Vertebrates. Finally, in the anterior part of the nasal cavities there are, as independent ossifications, the inferior turbinals (maxillo-turbinals), which are attached to the inner surfaces of the maxillary bones. On the outer surface of the ethmoid region are placed, as membrane bones, the nasals above and the lachrymals to the sides. The lachrymal (absent as an independent bone in the *Pinnipedia* and most *Cetacea*) is placed in the anterior wall of the orbit; but usually also appears as a facial bone on the outer surface.

The firm fusion of the maxillo-palatine apparatus with the skull and the relation of the mandibular suspensorium to the tympanic cavity, are characteristic of the Mammalia. The lower jaw articulates directly with the temporal bone without the interposition of a quadrate, the morphological equivalent of which is shifted, in the course of development, into the tympanic cavity and transformed into the *incus*, while the upper part of Meckel's cartilage (*articulare* of the lower jaw) becomes the *malleus* (Reichert). The *stapes*, on the contrary, is said to be developed from the upper piece of the hyoid arch (*hyomandibular*). The maxillary, pterygoid, and palatine bones have similar relations to those of the *Chelonia* and *Crocodilia*, but a quadratojugal is always wanting, since the jugal is applied to the squamosal. A palatal roof (hard palate) separating the buccal and nasal cavities is always present; the posterior nares open at its hind end.

The cranial capsule is so completely filled by the brain in the Mammalia that its internal surface presents a relatively accurate impression of the surface of the brain. Owing to the considerable size of the brain the cranial capsule is far more spacious than in any other class of Vertebrates: but it presents great variations in this respect in the individual groups, more especially with regard to the development of the face, the prominence of which in general varies inversely with the development of the intellectual faculties (Camper's facial angle). The hyoid bone is reduced to a transverse, bridge-like piece (body of the hyoid), with two pairs of cornua. In *Mycetes* it is largely developed and excavated.

The vertebral column, except in the *Cetacea*, is divided into five regions, viz., cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral and caudal (fig. 669). In the aquatic *Cetacea*, which are without hind limbs, the lumbar

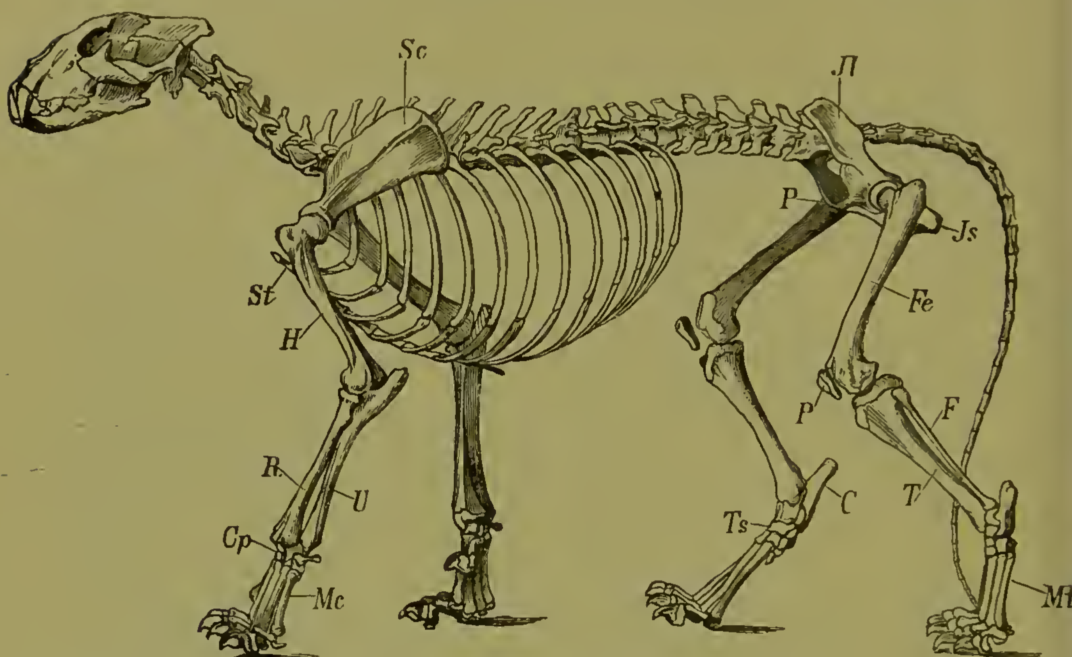



FIG. 669.—Skeleton of the Lion (after Giebel; Bronn's Classen und Ordnungen). *St*, sternum; *Sc*, scapula; *H*, humerus; *R*, radius; *U*, ulna; *Cp*, carpus; *Mc*, metacarpus; *Jl*, ilium; *P*, pubis; *Js*, ischium; *Fe*, femur; *T*, tibia; *F*, fibula; *P*, patella; *Ts*, tarsus; *Mt*, metatarsus; *C*, calcaneum.

region passes gradually into the caudal; on the other hand the cervical region is strikingly shortened, and the fusion of its anterior vertebræ renders it rigid and immovable. The vertebral bodies are only exceptionally (neck of Ungulates) connected by articular surfaces, but are usually joined by elastic discs (intervertebral ligaments). The first cervical vertebra (*atlas*) is a bony ring with broad, wing-like, transverse processes, on the articular surfaces of which the two occipital condyles rest and permit of the head being raised and depressed. The turning of the head to the right and left is effected by the movement of the atlas about a median process—the *odontoid process*—of the next vertebra, which is called the *axis* (*epistropheus*).

This process corresponds morphologically to the centrum of the atlas, which is separated from the latter and joined to the centrum of the axis.

The dorsal vertebræ are characterised by high, crest-like, spinous processes, and by the possession of ribs. The anterior ribs are attached by cartilage to the sternum, which is usually elongated and composed of a number of bony pieces arranged one behind another; the posterior ribs (the so-called "false ribs") do not reach the sternum. The ribs articulate with the vertebræ by means of a capitulum and a tuberculum. While the number of cervical vertebræ is almost constantly seven, that of the dorsal vertebræ is subject to a greater variation. As a rule there are thirteen, sometimes twelve dorsal vertebræ; but there is a less number in some Bats and Armadillos, while there are fifteen or more in some animals. The Horse has eighteen, the Rhinoceros and Elephant nineteen to twenty, and the three-toed Sloths have twenty-three to twenty-four. The lumbar vertebræ, which have long lateral processes in place of ribs, are usually seven in number. The number rarely sinks to two as in *Ornithorhynchus* and the two-toed Anteaters, and still more rarely rises to eight or nine (*Stenops*). The sacral vertebræ, which vary in number from two (Marsupials) to four, more rarely nine (Armadillo), are firmly united with one another, and by their transverse processes (with the rudiments of the ribs) with the iliac bones. The caudal vertebræ, which vary considerably in number and mobility, become narrower towards the end of the axis of the body, and often (Kangaroo and Anteaters) possess inferior spinous processes; but all the processes become less and less conspicuous towards the posterior extremity.

The anterior pair of extremities is never absent. The clavicle is absent when the anterior limbs serve only for the support of the anterior part of the body in locomotion, or perform simple, pendulum-like movements, as in swimming, walking, running, jumping, etc., (Whales, Ungulates, Carnivora). Otherwise the scapula is connected with the sternum by a more or less strong, rod-shaped clavicle. The coracoid is almost always reduced to the coracoid process of the scapula; in the *Monotremata* only is it a large bone which reaches the sternum. The posterior extremities are more firmly connected with the body than are the anterior. In the Whales alone is the pelvic girdle rudimentary, and is represented by two rib-like bones which are quite loosely connected with the vertebral column. In all other Mammals the pelvic girdle is fused with the lateral parts of the sacrum, and is closed ventrally by the symphysis of the pubis and sometimes also of the ischium. The appendages articulated to the pectoral and pelvic girdles are considerably shortened in the swimming Mammalia, and either constitute, as in the *Cetacea*, flat fins, the bones of which are immovable upon one another (in the *Sirenia* there is a joint at the elbow), and in which there are a great number of phalanges, or, as in the *Pinnipedia*, have the form of fin-like legs, which can also be used in locomotion on land. In the *Cheiroptera* (Bats), the anterior legs present a large surface in consequence of an expansion of the integument (*patagium*) uniting the fore-limbs with the sides of the body, and extended between the elongated fingers. The fins of the *Cetacea* and the wings of the *Cheiroptera* are, with the exception of the thumb of the latter which projects from the patagium and bears a claw, without nail-like structures.

In the land *Mammalia* the extremities present considerable variations both in their length and special structure. The length of the tubular *humerus* in general varies inversely with that of the metarcarpus of the anterior extremity. The *radius* and *ulna* in the fore-limb and the *tibia* and *fibula* in the hind-limb are almost always longer than the humerus and femur respectively. The *ulna* forms the hinge-joint of the elbow, and is prolonged at this point into a process called the *olecranon*; the radius, on the other hand, is connected with the carpus, and can often be rotated round the ulna (*pronation, supination*); in other cases it is fused with the ulna, which then constitutes a rudimentary, styliform rod as far as the articular process. In the hind-limb the knee-joint projects forwards, and is usually covered by a knee-cap, the *patella*; the fibula is sometimes (Marsupials) movable on the tibia, but as a rule these two bones are fused, and the fibula which is placed posteriorly and externally is usually reduced. The variations in the terminal parts of the limbs are far more striking (fig. 670). The number of digits is never greater than five, and is often less. The digits disappear in the following order: first, the inner digit or thumb (digit No. 1), which is composed of two phalanges, becomes rudimentary and vanishes; then the small outer digit (digit No. 5) and the second inner digit (digit No. 2) are reduced, sometimes remaining on the posterior surface of the foot (Ruminants) as small accessory claws which do not reach the ground, or totally vanish. Finally the second external digit (No. 4) is reduced or absent, so that the middle digit alone remains for the support of the limb (horse).

This gradual reduction of the digits is accompanied by a simplification and alteration of the carpal and tarsal, metacarpal and metatarsal bones; the metacarpals (metatarsals) of the rudimentary or absent digits are reduced to styliform bones or are entirely absent, while the two middle metacarpals (metatarsals) (3 and 4) are often united to form a strong and long tubular bone. The small carpal and tarsal bones which are employed in the formation of the foot-joint, and serve essentially to diminish the shock produced by the movements of the limbs when used in locomotion, are arranged usually in two, sometimes in three rows; in the tarsus, two bones—the *astragalus* and *calcaneum*—are usually much larger than the rest. The

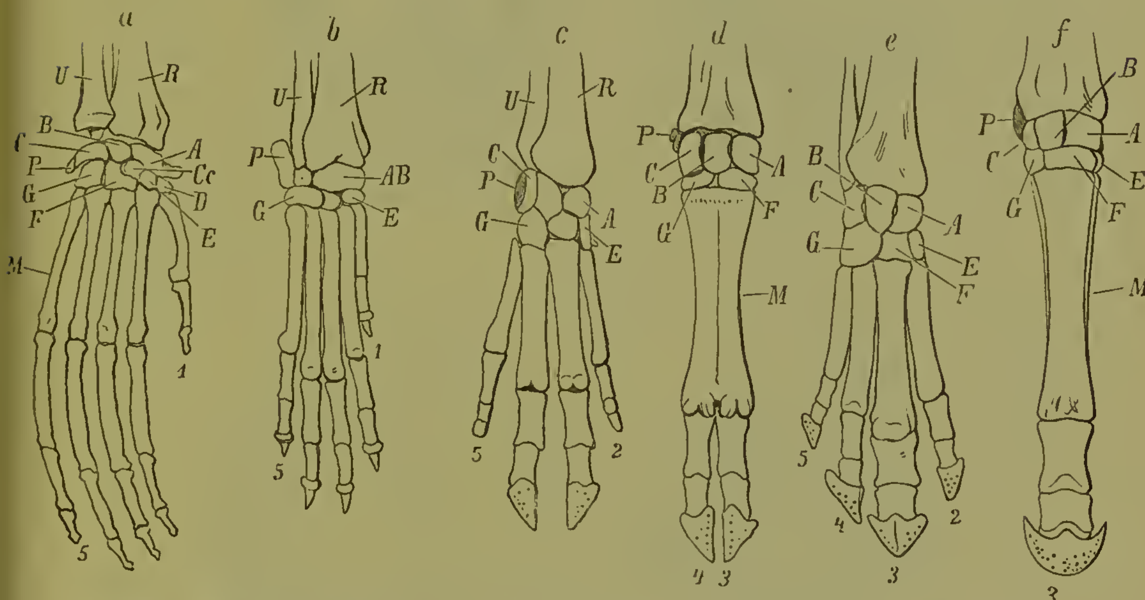



FIG. 670.—Skeleton of hand of—*a*, orang; *b*, dog; *c*, pig; *d*, ox; *e*, tapir; *f*, horse (*b*, *c*, *d*, after Gegenbaur). *R*, radius; *U*, ulna; *A*, scaphoid; *B*, semi-lunar; *C*, triquetrum (cuneiform); *D*, trapezium; *E*, trapezoid; *F*, capitatum (magnum); *G*, hamatum (unciform); *P*, pisiform; *C*, centrale carpi; *M*, metacarpus.

digits of the anterior foot may be called fingers after the analogy of the human hand. The anterior foot becomes a hand when the inner finger or thumb is opposable. The great toe of the posterior foot is also sometimes opposable, but the foot does not on this account become a hand, but only a prehensile foot (Apes); for the hand is characterised by the special arrangement of the carpal bones and muscles. According to the manner in which the foot rests on the ground in movement, animals are distinguished as plantigrades, digitigrades and unguligrades. In the last case the number of digits and metacarpals (and metatarsals) is reduced, and the limb is much elongated by the transformation of the metacarpal (metatarsal) bone into a long tubular bone.

The **nervous system** (fig. 671) is characterised by the size and high development of the brain, the hemispheres of which are so large that they not only fill the anterior part of the cranial cavity, but even

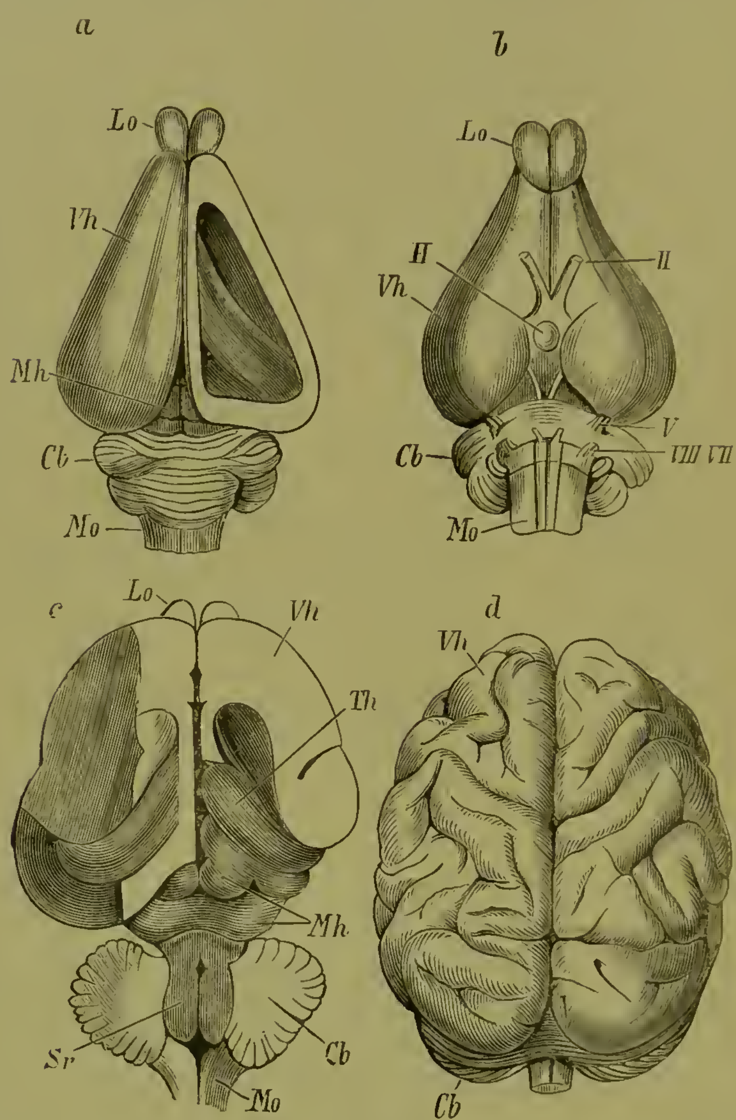



Fig. 671.—Brains of Mammalia. *a*, Brain of rabbit, from above; the roof of the right hemisphere is removed so as to expose the lateral ventricle. *b*, The same from below. *c*, Brain of cat; on the right side the lateral and posterior part of the hemisphere is removed, and almost as much on the left side, and the greater part of the hemispheres of the cerebellum have been removed. *d*, Brain of orang (*a*, *b*, *c*, after Gegenbaur; *d*, from the règne animal). *Vh*, cerebral hemispheres; *Mh*, corpus quadrigeminum; *Cb*, cerebellum; *Mo*, medulla oblongata; *Lo*, olfactory lobe; *II*, optic nerve; *V N*, trigeminal; *VII VIII*, facial and auditory nerves; *H*, hypophysis cerebri; *Th*, optic thalamus; *Sr*, sinus rhomboidalis.

partly cover the cerebellum. In the Marsupials and Monotremes the surface of the hemispheres is still smooth; but in the Edentates, Rodents, and Insectivores it is marked by depressions and ridges, which in the higher forms become regular furrows (*sulci*) and convolutions (*gyri*). A commissure (*corpus callosum*) connecting the two hemispheres is well-developed, and rudimentary only in the *Aplacentalia*. On the other hand the optic lobes, which are known as the *corpora quadrigemina*, and are the equivalents of the *corpora bigemina* of the lower forms, are reduced in size, and are in great part or entirely covered by the posterior lobes of the hemispheres. The pituitary body (*hypophysis*) and the pineal gland are never absent. The cerebellum in the *Aplacentalia* resembles that of the birds in the disproportionate development of its median lobe. There are, however, numerous intermediate stages between such a cerebellum and a cerebellum in which the lateral lobes are largely developed. The *pons Varolii* also is little developed in the lower forms, but in the higher Mammals is increased to a large swelling at the point where the brain is prolonged into the spinal cord. The twelve cranial nerves are completely separated. The spinal cord usually extends only as far as the sacral region, where it ends with a *cauda equina;* there is no posterior rhomboidal sinus.

**Sense organs.**—The olfactory organ presents, on account of the complication of the ethmoidal labyrinth, a greater development of the olfactory mucous membrane than in any other class. The two nasal cavities, which are separated by the median septum, often communicate with spaces in the neighbouring cranial and facial bones (*sinus frontales, sphenoidales, maxillares*), and open externally by paired apertures; in the *Cetacea*, which have no sense of smell, the latter may be fused to form a median opening (*Delphinidæ*). In this case the nasal passages serve only as air-passages. The nasal openings are, as a rule, supported by movable cartilaginous pieces, which in some cases are largely developed and lead to the formation of a proboscis, which is used as a burrowing and tactile organ, and when greatly developed (Elephant) as a prehensile organ. In the diving Mammals the nasal apertures can be closed by muscles (*Phocidæ*) or by valvular apparatuses. A nasal gland is often present on the external wall of the nares, or in the cavity of the upper jaw (*maxillary sinus*). The olfactory nerve is distributed as in the Birds on the superior turbinal bones, and on the upper parts of the nasal septum. The internal nares are always paired and open into the pharynx, far back at the end of the soft palate.

The **eyes** (vol. i., fig. 88) present various degrees of development; they are always small in the Mammals which live beneath the earth, and in some cases (*Spalax*, *Chrysochloris*) are quite hidden beneath the skin, and are incapable of receiving luminous impressions. They are usually placed at the sides of the head in an incompletely closed orbit (continuous with the temporal fossa). As a rule, each eye has a separate field of vision; a convergence of the optic axes is only possible when the eyes are placed on the front of the head (*Primates*). Besides the upper and lower eyelids there is an internal nictitating membrane (with the Harderian gland), which is, however, not fully developed, and is without the muscular apparatus of the Birds' nictitating membrane; it is sometimes reduced to a small rudiment (*plica semilunaris*) at the inner corner of the eye. The eyeball is more or less spherical (in the *Cetacea*, etc., with shortened axis), and

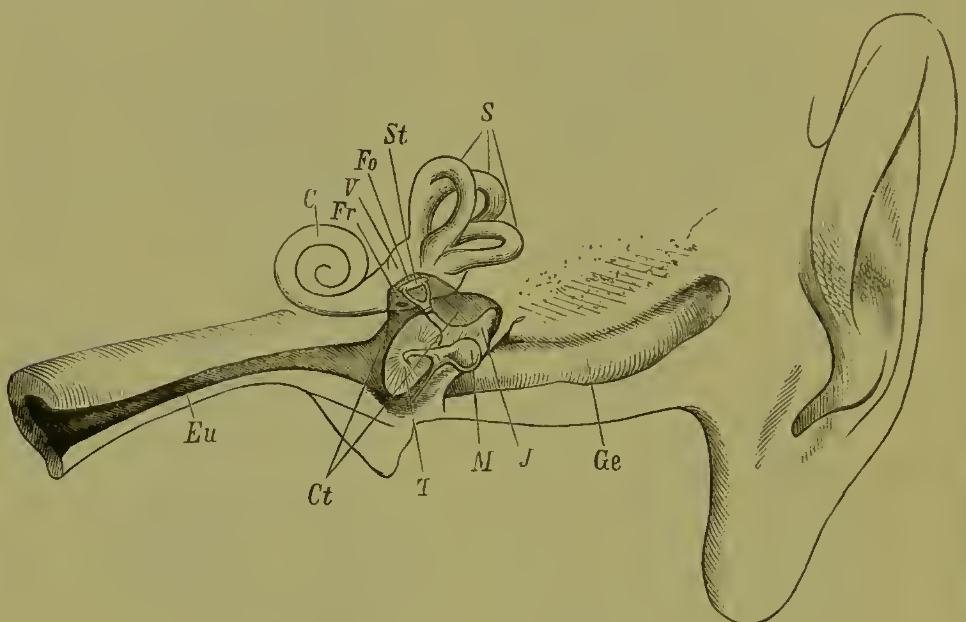



Fig. 672.—The human ear (combined representation) with view of the tympanic membrane from the tympanic cavity. *Ge*, External auditory meatus; *T*, membrana tympani; *Ct* tympanic cavity; *Eu*, Eustachian tube; *M*, malleus; *J*, incus; *St*, stapes closing the fenestra ovalis (*Fo*); *Fr*, fenestra rotunda; *V*, vestibule; *C*, cochlea; *S*, semicircular canals.

can often be retracted into the orbit by a *retractor bulbi*. The lachrymal gland with its duct, which opens into the nasal cavity, lies on the upper and outer side of the orbit. The choroid has a *tapetum* in the Carnivores, Pinnipedes, Dolphins, Ungulates, and some Marsupials.

The **auditory organ** (fig. 672, and fig. 578, iii.) differs from that of the bird principally in the more complicated development of the external ear, in the greater number of sound-conducting bones (*stapes*, *incus*, *malleus*), and in the form of the cochlea, which is usually coiled into two or three spiral passages. The tympanic cavity is also more spacious, and is by no means always confined to the space enclosed by the tympanic bone which often projects like a vesicle (tympanic bulla), but is in communication with cavities in the neighbouring cranial bones. The tympanic cavity is largest in the *Cetacea*, in which the sound is not transmitted, as in the terrestrial animals, by the tympanic membrane and the auditory ossicles to the fenestra ovalis of the vestibule, but is conducted mainly by means of the bones of the head through the air of the tympanic cavity to the fenestra (*f. rotunda*) of the unusually large cochlea, and thence by the perilymph of the scala tympani. The three semicircular canals, with the vestibule and cochlea, are very firmly embedded in the petrous bone, which in the *Cetacea* is only connected by ligaments with the neighbouring bones. The Eustachian tubes open in the *Cetacea* alone into the nasal passages, in all other Mammals into the pharynx. An external ear (*pinna*) is wanting in the Monotremes, many Pinnipedes, and in the *Cetacea*, in which the external meatus outside the convex tympanic membrane is represented by a solid cord; it is rudimentary in the aquatic animals which are able to close the external opening of the ear by a valvular apparatus, and in the burrowing Mammalia. In all other cases it consists of a very variously-shaped external appendage, supported by cartilaginous pieces and usually moved by special muscles.

The sense of **touch** is mainly located in the skin of the ends of the extremities (tactile corpuscles on the tips of the fingers and on the surface of the hand of Man and the Apes); also on the tongue, proboscis, and lips, in which long bristle-like tactile hairs (*vibrissæ*), embedded in follicles, with peculiar nervous ramifications, are very generally present.

The sense of **taste** has its seat principally at the root of the tongue (*papillæ circumvallatæ*, compare fig. 89, vol. i), but also on the soft palate, and is far more highly developed than in any other class of animals.

**Dentition.**—At the entrance to the digestive organs the jaws are almost always armed with teeth. Only individual genera—as *Echidna*, *Manis*, and *Myrmecophaga*—are entirely without teeth, while the whalebone Whales, which bear on the inner surface of the palate vertical horny plates (whale-bone), arranged in transverse rows (fig. 673), possess teeth, at least in the fœtal condition. Horny teeth, produced by hardening of papillæ of the buccal mucous membrane, are present in *Ornithorhynchus* and *Rhytina*.

The dentition of the Mammalia is never so much developed as that of Fishes and Reptiles; and the teeth, which are wedged into alveoli, are confined to the maxillæ, præmaxillæ, and mandible. The external part of the tooth (*i.e.*, the part which projects from the gum, and is called the *crown*, as opposed to the root) is covered with the harder enamel, which consists of prisms arranged at right angles to the cavity of the tooth (pulp cavity). Two kinds of teeth may be distinguished—(1) Simple teeth (*d. simplices*), in which the layer of enamel forms a simple cap; (2) complicated teeth (*d. complicati*), in which the enamel is folded and penetrates into the dentine. When simple or complicated teeth are connected together by osseous tissue (*cement*), they are called composite teeth (*d. compositi*—Hare, Elephant). Rarely, and only in those cases in which the dentition is used, as in the Crocodile, as a prehensile or cutting apparatus, are the teeth in all parts of the jaws alike, having the form and function

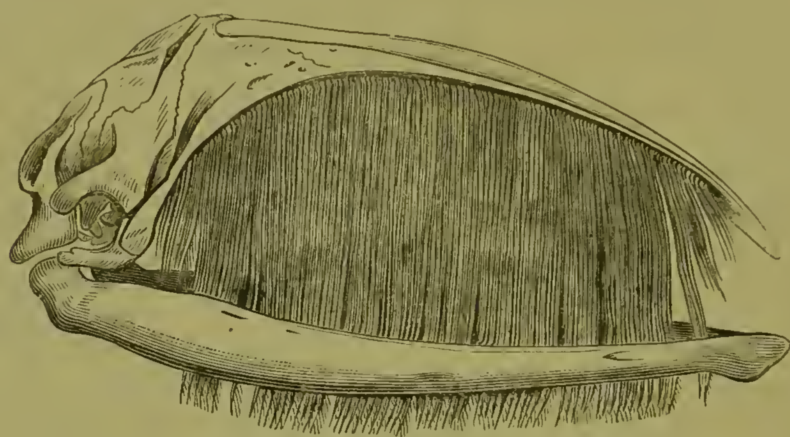


FIG. 673.—Skull of *Balaena mysticetus* with the whalebone (règne animal).

of prehensile conical teeth (Dolphin). As a rule, they are distinguished according to their position in the anterior, lateral, and posterior parts of the jaw as *incisors*, *canines*, and *grinders* (back teeth). The incisors are chisel-shaped, and serve to cut the food; in the upper jaw they belong exclusively to the præmaxillary bones. The canines, which are placed to the sides of the incisors, one in each half of the jaw, are conical or hooked, and serve principally as weapons for attack and defence; not unfrequently, however they are absent (Ruminants, Rodents), and there is a wide gap (*diastema*) between the incisors and the grinders. The latter are specially adapted for the finer mastication of the food, and their crowns are usually provided with a tuberculated or grinding surface. The teeth either last throughout life, and the dentition is not renewed (*Monophyodonta*: Edentates, Cetaceans), or there is a single change of teeth (*Diphyodonta*) (fig. 674). In the latter case the teeth which are changed constitute the *milk dentition.* The anterior grinders, which with the incisors and canines are replaced, are known as the *præmolars*, as opposed to the posterior, true *molars*, which belong to the permanent dentition, and are not replaced. The true molars only appear after the milk teeth have been replaced, and are distinguished by the size and number of their roots, as well as by the extent of their crowns. Formulæ, in which the numbers of incisors, canines, præmolars, and molars in the upper and lower jaws are given, are used to indicate in a simple manner the nature of the dentition, *e.g.*, the dental formula of man is

$$\frac{2}{2}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{2}{2}\,\Big|\,\frac{3}{3}\,.\quad\left[i.\,\frac{2\cdot2}{2\cdot2}\,c.\,\frac{1\cdot1}{1\cdot1}\,p.m.\,\frac{2\cdot2}{2\cdot2}\,m.\,\frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}\right].$$

**Alimentary canal.** In addition to the hard structures at the entrance to the digestive cavity, soft, movable lips which bound the mouth opening, and a fleshy tongue which is of very various form and lies on the floor of the buccal cavity, are of special importance for the introduction and preparation of the food (fig. 675). In the Monotremata the lips are replaced by the edges of the beak. The tongue, however, is never absent, but it may be immovable, and completely fused with the floor of the mouth, as in the Whales. Its front part is mainly tactile in function, but in some cases it is used to seize (Giraffe) or capture food (Ant-eaters). Variously shaped papillæ, which are often cornified and bear recurved hooks, project from its upper surface. The *papillæ circumvallatæ* alone have a relation to the sense of taste. The tongue is supported by the hyoid bone and by a cartilaginous rod, which represents the *os interglossum* (*Lytta*). The anterior cornua of the hyoid are attached to the styloid processes of the temporal bone, the posterior bear the larynx. Beneath the tongue there is sometimes (most developed in the *Insectivora*) a single or double projection, which is termed the lower tongue. The sides of the buccal cavity are soft and fleshy, and are not unfrequently in the Rodents, Apes, etc., dilated into wide sacs,—the so-called cheek-pouches. The soft palate (*palatum molle*) must be mentioned as a structure peculiar to the *Mammalia ;* it constitutes

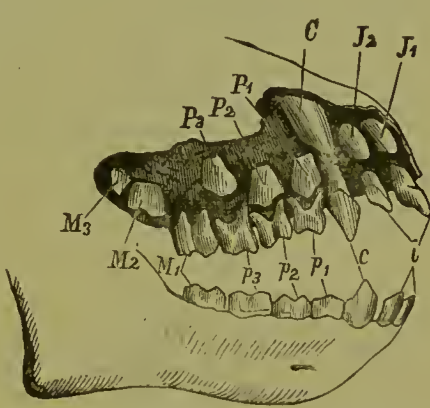



FIG. 674.—Dentition of *Cebus* (while changing the teeth) after Owen. *i*, Incisors; *c*, Canines; *p*1 *p*2 *p*3, Præmolars of the milk dentition; *J*1 *J*2 Incisors; *C*, Canine; *P*1 *P*2 *P*3, Præmolars of the permanent dentition *M*1 *M*2 *M*3, Molars.

the boundary between the buccal cavity and pharynx. All Mammals, with the exception of the carnivorous *Cetacea*, have salivary glands,—a parotid, a submaxillary, and a sublingual,—the fluid secretion of

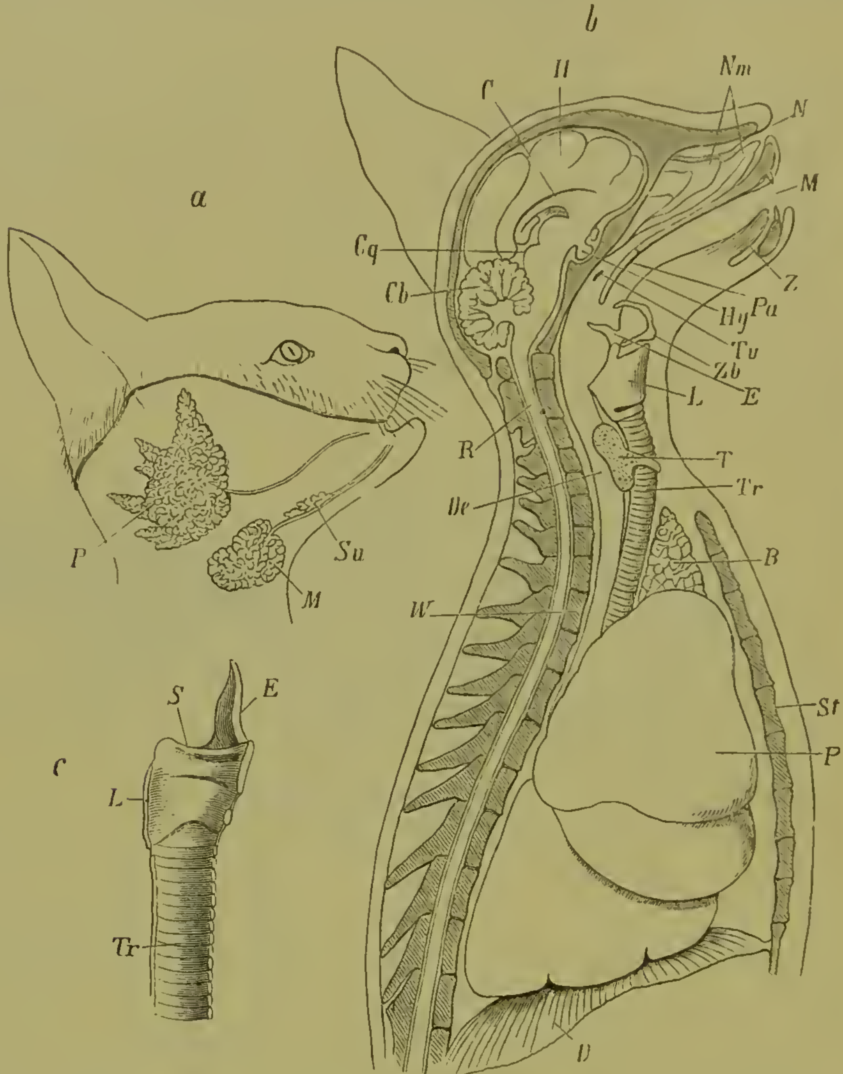



FIG. 675.—Entrance to the digestive apparatus and the respiratory organs of the Cat (after C. Heider). *a*, head with exposed salivary glands. *P*, Parotid; *M*, Sub-maxillary; *Su*, Sub-lingual. *b*, Longitudinal section through the Head and Thorax; the Respiratory organs are seen from the side. *N*, Nasal aperture; *Nm*, Turbinal bones; *M*, Mouth; *Z*, Tongue; *Pa*, Velum palati; *Oe*, Oesophagus; *L*, Larynx; *E*, Epiglottis; *Zb*, Hyoid; *Tr*, Trachea; *P*, Lung; *D*, Diaphragm; *T*, Thyroid; *B*, Thymus; *Tu*, Opening of Eustachian tube into the Pharynx; *H*, Cerebral hemispheres; *C*, Corpus callosum; *Cp*, Corpora quadrigemina; *Cb*, Cerebellum; *R*, Spinal cord; *Hy*, Hypophysis; *W*, Vertebral column; *St*, Sternum. *c*, Longitudinal section through the Larynx (*L*) and the first part of the Trachea (*Tr*). *S*, Vocal cord; *E*, Epiglottis.

which is poured out in large quantities, especially in the *Herbivora*. The œsophagus, which follows the wide gullet, only exceptionally presents crop-like dilations; it is usually of considerable length, and opens into the stomach behind the diaphragm (vol. i., fig. 50). The stomach is, as a rule, a simple transversely placed sac, but is frequently divided by the gradual differentiation and constriction of its anterior, lateral, and posterior regions into a number of parts, which are most completely separated in the Ruminants and distinguished as four separate stomachs. The pyloric region is principally distinguished by the presence of gastric glands, and is more or less sharply separated from the beginning of the small intestine by a sphincter muscle and by an inwardly projecting fold (*pyloric valve*). The intestine is divided into a small and a large intestine, the boundary between which is indicated by the presence of a valve and a cæcum, which is especially developed in herbivorous animals. The anterior part of the small intestine, or *duodenum*, contains the so-called Brunner's glands in its mucous membrane, and receives the secretion of the large liver and of the pancreas. The liver is multi-lobed, and is sometimes without a gall bladder. When a gall bladder is present the bile duct (*d. cysticus*), and the hepatic duct (*d. hepaticus*) unite to form a common duct (*d. choledochus*). The small intestine is longest in animals which eat grasses and leaves, and is characterised by the numerous folds (*valvulæ conniventes*) and villi of its mucous membrane, and by the possession of a great number of groups of glands (Lieberkühn's, Peyer's glands). The terminal region of the large intestine or rectum opens, except in the *Monotremata* which are characterised by the possession of a cloaca, behind the urogenital opening, though the two openings are sometimes surrounded by a common sphincter (*Marsupialia*).

The **heart** (fig. 676) of Mammalia, like that of Birds, is divided into a right venous and a left arterial portion, each with a ventricle and auricle (sometimes as in *Halicore* the division is marked externally). It is enclosed in a pericardium, and sends off an arterial trunk, which forms a left aortic arch, from which two vessels frequently arise, viz., (1) a right anonyma, with the two carotids and right subclavian; and (2) the left subclavian; or, as in man, three vascular trunks, viz., (1) a right anonyma, with the right carotid and right subclavian; (2) the left carotid; and (3) the left subclavian, all close to one another. As a rule, a superior and an inferior vena cava open into the right auricle; more rarely, as in the Rodents, Monotremes, and Elephants, there are two superior venæ cavæ. *Retia mirabilia* have been recognised principally for the arterial vessels, and are found on the extremities of burrowing and climbing animals (*Stenops*, *Myrmecophaga*, *Bradypus*, etc.); on the carotids round the hypophysis, and on the ophthalmic arteries in the orbit in Ruminants:

tinally on the intercostal arteries and the iliac veins of the Dolphin. A renal-portal system is always absent.

The **lymphatic system** is provided with numerous lymphatic glands, and its main trunk (*ductus thoracicus*), which is placed on the left, opens into the superior vena cava.

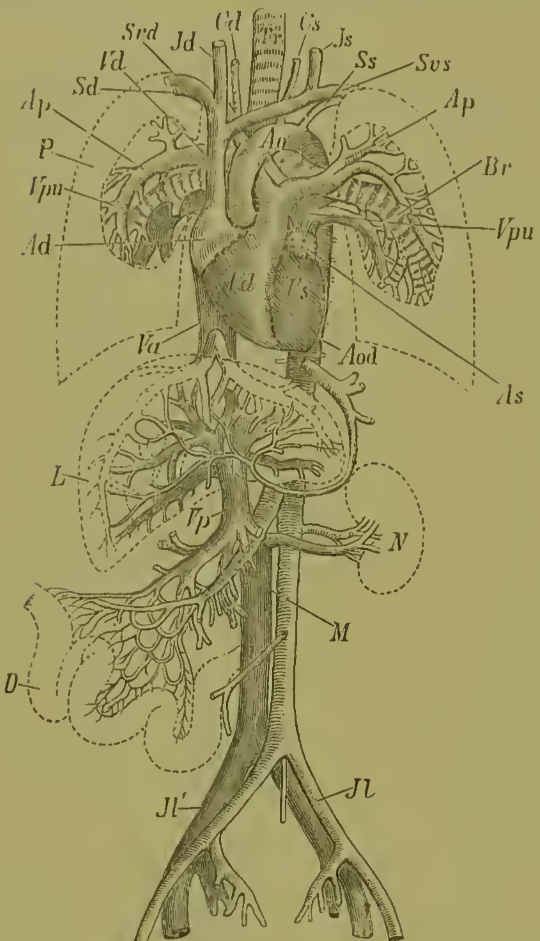



FIG. 676.—Circulatory apparatus of Man (from Owen after Allen Thomson). *Vd*, Right Ventricle; *Vs*, left Ventricle; *Ad*, right Auricle; *As*, left Auricle; *Ao*, Aortic arch; *Aod*, descending Aorta; *Cd*, right Carotid; *Cs*, left Carotid; *Sd*, right subclavian Artery; *Ss*, left subclavian Artery; *M*, Mesenteric Artery; *Jl*, common Iliac Artery; *Va*, inferior Vena Cava; *Vd*, superior Vena Cava; *Jl'*, common Iliac vein; *Vp*, Vena portæ; *Jd*, right Jugular; *Js*, left Jugular; *Svd*, right subclavian Vein; *Svs*, left subclavian; *Ap*, pulmonary Artery; *Vpu*, pulmonary Vein; *Tr*, Trachea; *Br*, Bronchi; *P*, Lungs; *L*, Liver; *N*, Kidney; *D*, Intestine.

Of the so-called vascular glands the **spleen**, the **thymus**, and the **thyroid**, which is especially developed in the young, are very generally present (fig. 675).

The paired lungs (fig. 675) are freely suspended in the thoracic cavity, and are distinguished by the numerous ramifications of the bronchial tubes, the finest branches of which end with conical, funnel-shaped dilatations (*infundibula*), which are provided on their lateral surfaces with swellings. Respiration is mainly effected by the movements of the diaphragm, which forms a complete, usually transversely placed, septum between the thoracic and abdominal cavities: by the contraction of its muscular parts it acts as an inspiratory muscle; that is, it dilates the thoracic cavity. The elevation and depression of the ribs also have an effect in dilating the thorax. The trachea is, as a rule, straight, without coils, and divides at its lower end into two bronchi leading to the lungs. There may be, in addition, a small accessory bronchus on the right side. The trachea is supported by cartilaginous half-rings which are open behind, and only exceptionally by complete rings of cartilage. The first part of the trachea, or larynx, is placed at the lower end of the pharynx, behind the root of the tongue; it is supported by the posterior horns of the hyoid bone, possesses lower vocal cords, complicated pieces of cartilage (cricoid, thyroid, and arytenoid cartilages) and muscles, and constitutes a vocal organ.

In the *Cetacea* alone is the larynx, which projects in the base of the pharynx as far as the posterior nares, used exclusively for respiration. A movable epiglottis (almost tubular in the *Cetacea*), attached to the upper edge of the thyroid cartilage, projects over the glottis. When food is being swallowed it sinks, and closes the glottis. Accessory cavities, with membranous or cartilaginous walls, are sometimes attached to the larynx. These sometimes function as air reservoirs, *e.g.*, the air-sacs of *Balæna*, sometimes as a resonating apparatus for the strengthening of the voice, as in many Monkeys (*Mycetes*).

The **kidneys** (fig. 677) still sometimes consist (Seals, Dolphins) of numerous lobes united together at the pelvis of the kidney. As a rule, however, they are compact bean-shaped glands, lying in the lumbar region, outside the peritoneum. The ureters arise from the so-called pelvis of the kidney, and always open into a urinary bladder, placed in front of (ventral to) the intestine. The duct of the bladder, or *urethra*, enters into a more or less close relation with the ducts of the generative organs, and leads into a *sinus* or *urogenital canal* opening in front of the anus. Above the kidney there is a glandular organ termed the *suprarenal body*.

The **male sexual organs** (fig. 677) of most *Mammalia* are characterised by the change in the position of the testes. In the *Monotremata* and *Cetacea* alone do the testes remain in their original position near the kidneys, in all other cases they descend in front of the pelvis, and, pushing the peritoneum before them, enter the inguinal canal (many Rodents), or, still more frequently, pass through the inguinal canal into a double cutaneous fold, which is transformed into the scrotum. Not unfrequently (Rodents, Bats, Insectivores) they pass back through the open inguinal canal into the abdominal cavity after the breeding season: this is effected by the *cremaster*, a slip of muscle separated from the oblique abdominal muscle. The *scrotum*, as a rule, lies behind the penis: but in the Marsupials it is formed by an invagination of the integument directly at the entrance of the inguinal canal in front of the male copulatory organ. The coiled excretory ducts of the testes, which are derived from the Wolffian body, constitute the *epididymis*, and lead into the two *vasa deferentia*, which, after forming glandular dilatations (seminal vesicles), open close together into the urethra. At this point open the ducts of the *prostates*, which differ much in form, and are often divided into several groups of glands. Further down a second pair of glands, known as *Cowper's glands*, opens into the urethra. Remains of the Müllerian ducts, which in the female are used as the oviducts, frequently persist between the openings of the vasa deferentia. They are called the organ of Weber (*uterus masculinus*), and in the so-called Hermaphrodites their parts are much enlarged, and may be differentiated in the manner peculiar to the female sex. In all cases the end of the urethra, which functions as a urogenital canal, is in connection with external copulatory organs: these always have the form of an erectile *penis*, which, in the *Monotremata*, is concealed in a pouch in the cloaca. The penis is supported by cavernous erectile bodies, which in the Monotremata are confined to paired *corpora cavernosa urethræ*; but in all other Mammalia there are, in addition to the *corpus cavernosum urethræ* (*c. spongiosum*) which is unpaired and surrounds the urethra, two upper *corpora cavernosa penis*, which are attached to the ischium, and only rarely fuse with one another. A cartilaginous, or bony support, the so-called *os penis* (*Carnivora, Rodents*), may also be developed, especially frequently in the *glans*, which is formed by the *corpus cavernosum urethræ* (fig. 677). The *glans*, which is bifid only in exceptional cases (*Monotremata, Marsupials*).

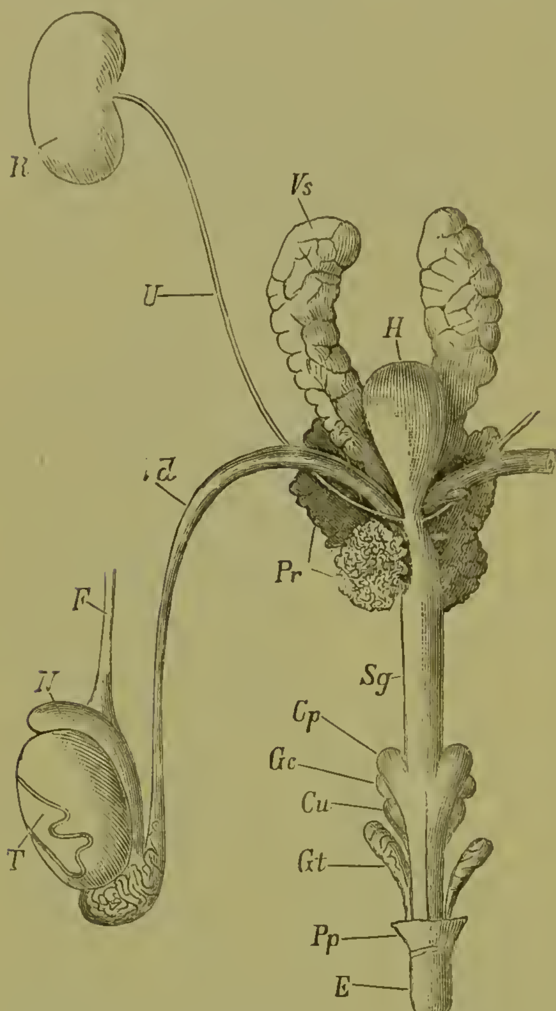



FIG. 677.—Urinary and sexual organs of *Cricetus vulgaris* (after Gegenbaur). *R*, Kidney; *U*, Ureter; *H*, Urinary bladder; *T*, Testis; *F*, Funiculus spermaticus (Spermatic cord); *N*, Epididymis; *Vd*, Vas deferens; *Vs*, Vesiculæ seminales; *Pr*, Prostate; *Sg*, Urogenital sinus (Urethra); *Gc*, Cowper's glands; *Gt*, Tyson's glands; *Cp*, Corpora cavernosa penis; *Cu*, Corpus cavernosum urethræ; *E*, Glans penis; *Pp*, Prepuce.

varies greatly in its form, and lies retracted in a reduplication of the skin (*foreskin* or *prepuce*) which is richly glandular (*gl. Tysonianæ*).

**Female sexual organs.** The ovaries (fig. 678) are unsymmetrical only in the *Monotremata*, in consequence of the reduction of the right ovary. In all other cases they are equally developed on either side; they are placed in folds of the peritoneum, close to the funnel-shaped dilated mouths of the oviducts, by which they are sometimes com-

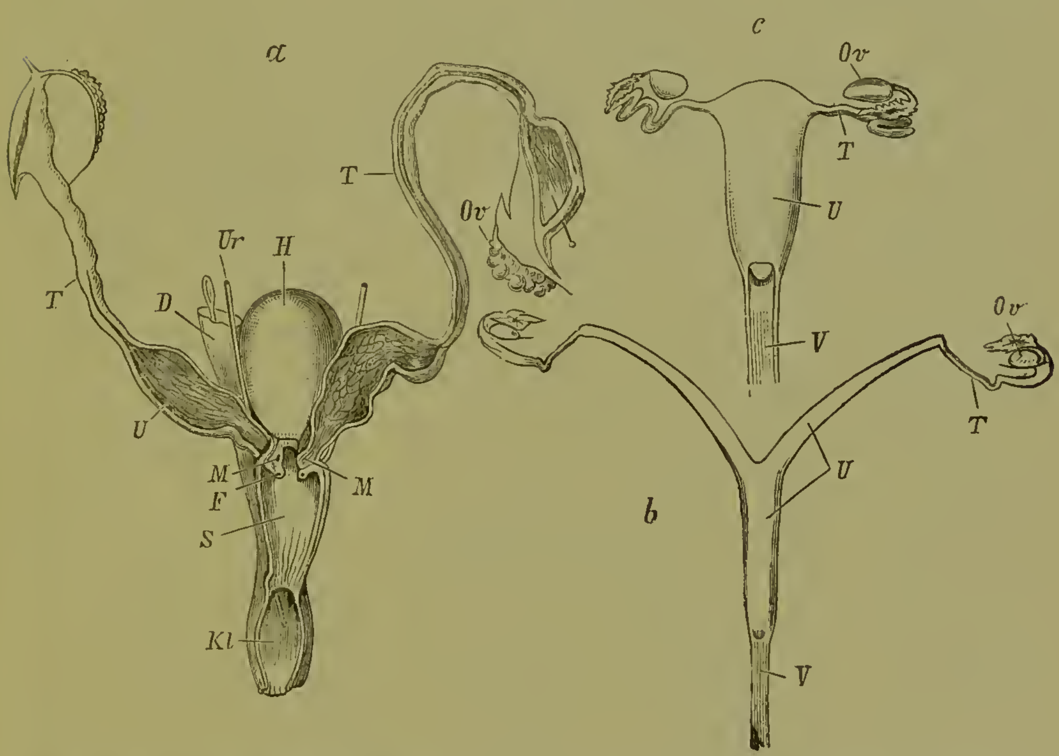



FIG. 678.—Female generative organs. *a*, of *Ornithorhynchus* (after Owen); *b*, of *Viverra genetta*; *c*, of *Cercopithecus nemestrinus*; *Ov*, Ovary; *T*, Oviduct; *U*, Uterus; *V*, Vagina; *H*, Urinary bladder; *Ur*, Ureter; *M*, Mouth of Uterus; *F*, opening of Ureter; *S*, urogenital Sinus; *Kl*, Cloaca; *D*, Intestine. A style is passed through the opening of the latter into the Cloaca.

pletely surrounded. The oviduct is divided into the *Fallopian tube*, which is always paired and begins with a free ostium; the dilated, sometimes paired, more frequently unpaired, middle portion—the *uterus*; and the terminal part, or *vagina*, which is unpaired, except in Marsupials, and opens behind the opening of the urethra into the short urogenital sinus, or vestibule. In the *Monotremata* the two tubular uteri open, without forming a vagina, on papilliform prominences into the urogenital sinus, which is still connected with the cloaca (fig. 678 *a*).

According to the different degrees of duplicity of the uterus (when a vagina is present), we may distinguish: the *uterus duplex*, with more or less complete external separation and double os uteri (Rodents, Marsupials); the *uterus bipartitus*, with single os uteri, but almost complete internal partition (Rodents); the *uterus bicornis* (fig. 678 *b*), in which the upper parts, or horns of the uterus are separate (*Ungulata, Carnivora, Cetacea, Insectivora*); and finally the *uterus simplex* (fig. 678 *c*) with single cavity and very muscular walls (*Primates*).

The vestibule, with its glands of Duvernoy (Bartholin), which correspond to the Cowperian glands of the male, is separated from the vagina by a constriction, and sometimes also by a fold of the mucous membrane, called the *hymen*. The external generative organs consist of the *labia majora* and *labia minora*, at the sides of the sexual opening, and of the *clitoris*. The *labia majora* are two external folds of skin, and are equivalent to the two halves of the scrotum: the *labia minora* are two smaller internal folds, and are not always present. The *clitoris* possesses erectile tissue and a *glans*, and is the equivalent of the penis. The clitoris may sometimes (as in *Ateles*) reach a considerable size, and be perforated by the urethra (Rodents, Moles, Lemurs). In such cases of perforated clitoris, there is, of course, no common urogenital sinus. Morphologically, the female genitalia represent an earlier stage of development of the male organs, which, in the cases of the so-called hermaphrodite formation, may in consequence of arrest of development preserve a more or less female structure. As a rule the two sexes are easily distinguished by the different form of the external generative organs. Frequently there is a marked dimorphism in the whole external appearance; the male being larger, having a different hairy covering, being possessed of a louder voice, and provided with stronger teeth or special weapons (horns). On the other hand, the milk glands, which are situate in the inguinal region, on the abdomen, and on the thorax, and which almost always project into teats or nipples, are rudimentary in the male sex.

The breeding time (rut) is usually in the spring, rarely towards the end of summer (Ruminants), or even in the winter (*Sus, Carnivora*). An important phenomenon, which accompanies the rut in the female, and is independent of copulation, is the passage of one or more ova from the Graafian follicles of the ovary into the oviduct. The ova of the Mammalia were first discovered by C. E. von Baer. They are extraordinarily small ($\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ line in diameter) and are surrounded by a strongly refractile membrane (*zona*

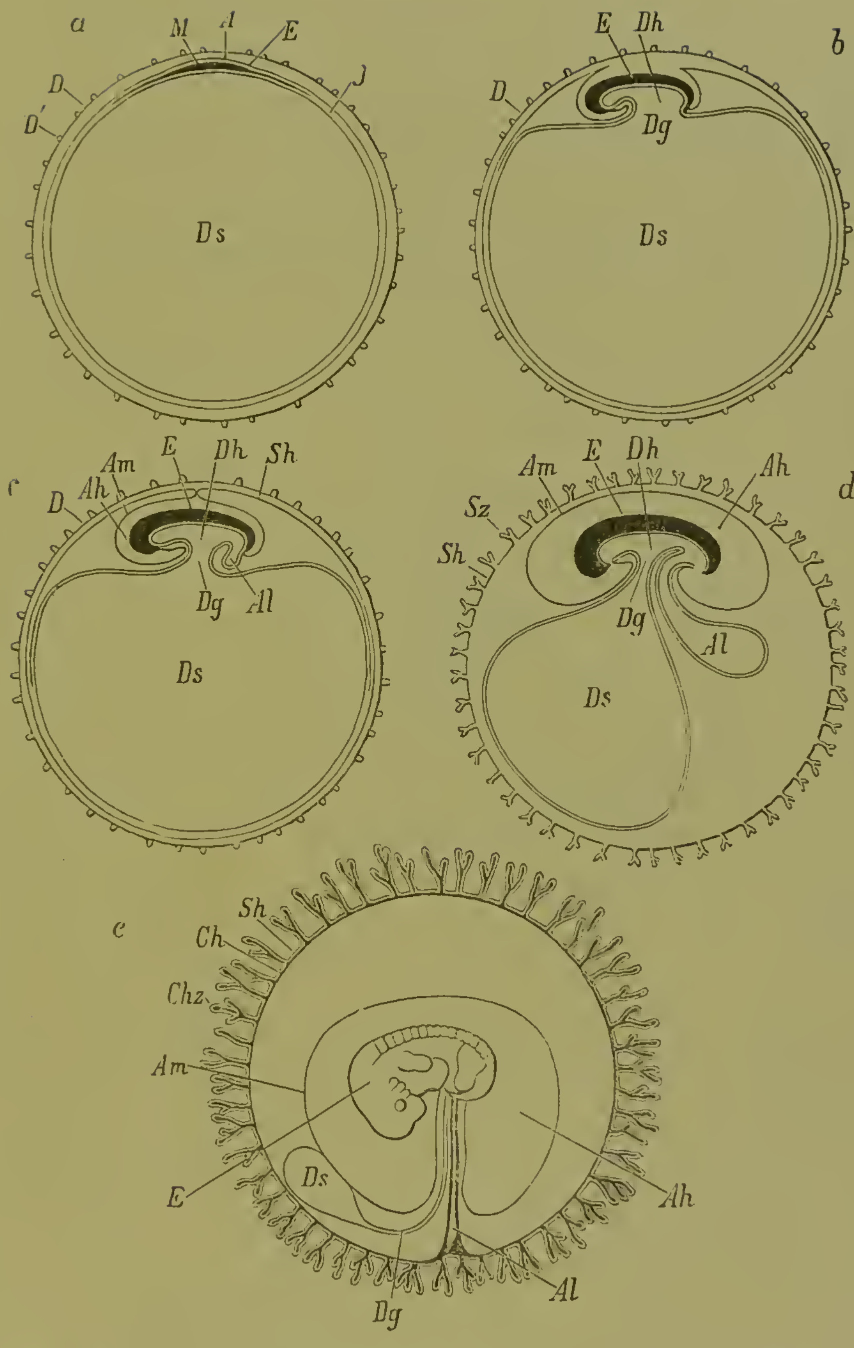



FIG. 679.—Diagramatic figures illustrating the formation of the fœtal membranes of a Mammal (after Kölliker). *a*, Ovum with first rudiments of embryo; *b*, Ovum with yolk-sac and developing amnion; *c*, Ovum with amnion closing and developing allantois; *d*, Ovum with villous serous envelope, embryo with mouth and anus; *e*, Ovum in which the vascular layer of the allantois is applied to the serous envelope and has grown into the villi of the latter, yolk-sac reduced, the amniotic cavity is increasing; *D*, Zona radiata; *D′*, Villi of zona; *Sh*, subzonal membrane (serous envelope); *Sz*, Villi of subzonal membrane; *Ch*, Chorion (vascular layer of Allantois); *Chz*, Chorionic villi (consisting of chorion and subzonal membrane); *Am*, Amnion; *Ah*, Amniotic cavity; *E*, Embryo; *A*, Embryonic thickening of the external layer; *M*, of the middle layer; *J*, of the inner layer; *Ds*, cavity of the embryonic (blastodermic) vesicle, later of the yolk-sac (umbilical vesicle); *Dh*, Intestinal cavity; *Dg*, Umbilical stalk; *Al*, Alla.

*pellucida*), round which a layer of albumen is often deposited in the oviduct.

The fertilization and total segmentation* of the ovum always take place in the oviduct (Fallopian tube). *Amnion* and *allantois* are present in *Mammalia*. In the uterus the ovum acquires a villous coat (*chorion*), derived from the original zona and from the subzonal membrane (so-called serous envelope), which is developed within the zona. It becomes attached to the uterine wall by means of the chorion (fig. 679). Later on, the peripheral part of the allantois also becomes applied to the chorion, and, as a rule, penetrates with its vessels into the villi (*secondary chorion*), so that there is developed a relatively large surface, permeated with branches from the fœtal vessels, the blood of which is in intimate endosmotic connection with the blood of the uterine wall. This connection of the allantois and chorion of the fœtus with the uterine walls gives rise to the **Placenta**, by means of which the nourishment and respiration of the fœtus are provided for in the body of the mother. The placenta is wanting only in the *Monotremata* and *Marsupialia*, which, therefore, are known as *Aplacentalia*, as opposed to the rest of the Mammalia, which have a placenta, and are called *Placentalia*. The placenta presents great variations in the individual orders, in its special development and in the mode of its connection with the uterine walls. Either the villi of the placenta are loosely connected with the uterine walls, and separate from the latter at birth (*Adeciduata*), or they become so intimately united with the glands of the uterine mucous membrane that the latter comes away with the embryo at birth, as the *decidua* or *after-birth* (*Deciduata*).† In the first case the allantois may grow completely round the ovum, and the villi be numerous and uniformly distributed over the whole chorion (*diffuse placenta* of *Ungulata*, *Cetacea*), or be aggregated in special places, forming small tufts, the so-called *cotyledons* (Ruminants). In the other case, the placenta with its villi is confined either to an annular zone on the chorion (*Pl. annularis*, or *zonary placenta* of *Carnivora*, *Pinnipedia*), or to a discoidal area (*discoidal placenta* of Man, Apes, Rodents, Insectivores, Bats).

* [According to Caldwell's recent discovery, which was communicated to the British Association at Montreal in September of the present year (1884), but of which no details have as yet come to hand, the Monotremata are oviparous and their ova meroblastic.]

† [For a fuller account of the structure and development of the various kinds of placenta, the reader is referred to Balfour's *Comparative Embryology*, vol. ii., p. 193.]

In the fœtus, respiration is effected through the placenta, and the lungs are functionless. In correspondence with this the circulation of the fœtus differs from that of the animal after birth (fig. 680). From the heart the blood is driven into the descending aorta, which sends off behind two large vessels to the placenta (*umbilical* or *allantoic* arteries). The blood, returning from the placenta in the allantoic vein, passes in great part through a connecting vessel (*ductus venosus Arantii*) into the inferior vena cava, and thence in part passes into the right auricle, but the greater part passes, in consequence of a special arrangement of valves, directly into the left auricle through an opening in the interauricular septum, called the *foramen ovale*. The blood which reaches the right ventricle passes through a vessel (*ductus arteriosus Botalli*), connecting the pulmonary artery with the aorta, directly into the systemic circulation, except a small portion which goes to the lungs. From this condition of the circulation, it results that all the arterial vessels, except the allantoic vein, contain mixed blood.

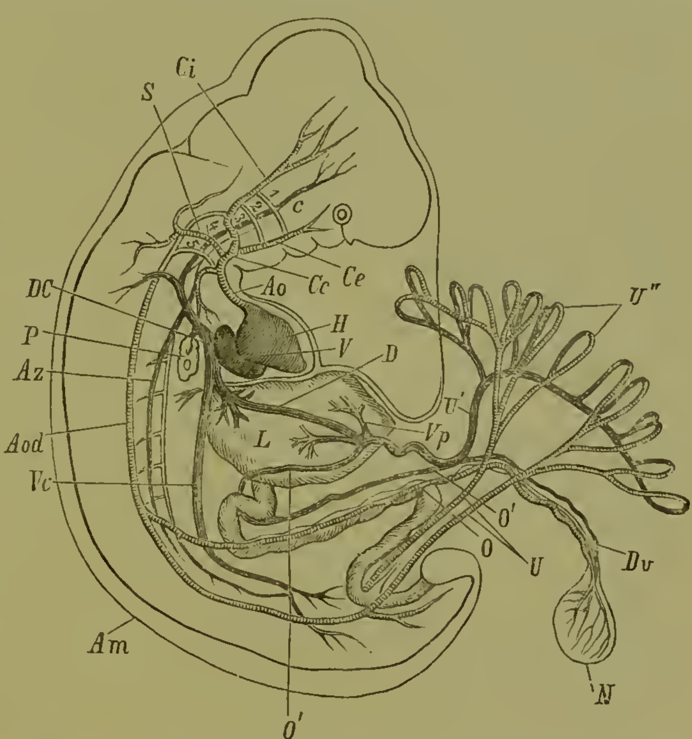



FIG. 680.—Diagram of the arrangement of the principal vessels in a human fœtus (after Huxley). *H*, Ventricle; *V*, Auricle; *Ao*, Aortic trunk; *Cc*, common Carotid; *Ce*, external Carotid; *Ci*, internal Carotid; *S*, subclavian artery; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, the arterial arches—the persistent left aortic arch is not visible; *Aod*, descending aorta; *O*, Omphalomeseräic (vitelline) Artery; *O'*, Omphalomeseräic (vitelline) Vein; *U*, Umbilical (allantoic) arteries with their placental ramifications (*U''*); *U'*, Umbilical (allantoic) vein; *Vp*, Portal vein; *Vc*, Vena cava inferior; *C*, anterior cardinal vein; *D*, Ductus venosus Arantii; *DC*, Ductus Cuvieri; *Az*, Azygos Vein; *P*, Lungs; *L*, Liver; *N*, Umbilical vesicle (yolk-sac); *Dv*, Vitelline duct (*Ductus omphalomeseraicus*); *Am*, Amnion.

As remains of the first stage of the circulation before the development of the placenta, the *omphalomeseräic vessels*—an artery and a vein—which belong to the umbilical vesicle, still persist.

The duration of gestation depends on the size of the body and the stage of development at which the young are born. It is longest in the large terrestrial, and the colossal aquatic animals (*Ungulata, Cetacea*), which live under favourable conditions of nourishment. The young of these animals are so far advanced in their bodily development at birth, that they are able to follow the mother (to a certain extent like *præcoces*). The period of gestation is relatively shorter in the *Carnivora*, the young of which are born naked and with closed eyes and, like *altrices*, are for a long time completely helpless, and need the care and protection of the mother. It is, however, shortest in the aplacental Monotremes* and Marsupials. In these animals the young, which are born at a very early stage (in the Kangaroo they are no larger than a nut), pass into a pouch formed by cutaneous folds in the inguinal region, and here adhere firmly to the nipples of the mammary glands. In this pouch, as in a second uterus, they are nourished by the secretion of the mammary glands, which assume at this early stage the nutrient function of the absent placenta. The number of the young, which are born, also varies very greatly in the different genera. The large *Mammalia*, of which the period of gestation is longer than six months, as a rule bear only one, more rarely two young; but in the smaller Mammals and some domestic animals (Pig) the number is considerably larger, so that twelve to sixteen, or even twenty young may be born at one time. The number of teats on the mother usually indicates the greater or smaller number of the progeny.

Many Mammals live a solitary life, and pair only at the breeding time; they are principally such carnivorous animals as find their subsistence by hunting in definite hunting grounds, like the Mole in its subterranean passages. Others live united in companies, in which the oldest and strongest males frequently undertake the care of protection and leadership. Most Mammals seek their food by day. Some, *e.g.*, the Bat, leave their hiding places in the twilight and at night. Most *Carnivora* and numerous *Ungulata* also sleep in the daytime. Some *Rodentia*, *Insectivora*, and *Carnivora* fall, during the cold season of the year when food is scarce, into an interrupted (Bear, Badger, Bat), or continuous (Dormouse, Hedgehog, Marmots) winter sleep in their hiding places which are often carefully protected, or in nests formed in the earth. During this time the temperature is lowered, the respiration is less active, the heart-beat is slowed, and they take up no food, but consume the fat masses which were stored up in the autumn. The following animals are known to migrate:

* *Vide* note on p. 296.

the Reindeer, the South American Antelopes, and the North-American Buffalo, the Seals, Whales, and Bats, but more especially the Lemmings, which migrate in enormous herds from the northern mountains southwards to the plains, are stopped by no obstacles on their journey, and even cross rivers and arms of the sea.

The intellectual faculties are more highly developed than in any other class of animals. The *Mammalia* possess the faculty of discrimination and memory: they form ideas, judgments, and conclusions; they exhibit affection and love to their benefactors, dislike, hate, and anger to their enemies; each individual has a definite character. Further, the intellectual faculties of Mammals are capable of being developed and improved, but to a relatively small extent on account of the absence of articulate speech. The more docile and intelligent of the Mammalia have been chosen by man as domestic animals, and in this capacity have played an important and indispensable part in the history of civilisation (Dog, Horse). Instinct, however, always occupies an important place in the life of Mammals. It leads many of them to construct spacious passages and ingenious nests above or below the earth, in which they rest and bring up their offspring. Almost all Mammals make special places for their brood, which they often line with soft materials; some even construct true nests, like those of birds, of grass and stalks on the earth. Many of those which inhabit subterranean holes and passages store up winter-provisions, which they consume in the sterile season, sometimes only in autumn and spring (winter-sleepers.)

**Geographical distribution.** Some orders, as the Rodents and Bats, are represented in all parts of the world. Of the *Cetacea* and *Pinnipedia* most species belong to the Polar regions. In general, the Old and New Worlds have each their own fauna. The mammalian fauna of Australia consists almost exclusively of Marsupials. The oldest fossil remains (lower jaw) of Mammals are found in the Trias (Keuper Sandstone and Oolite, Stonesfield slate) and are probably Marsupial. But it is not until the tertiary period that the mammalian fauna presents a rich development.

## I.—APLACENTALIA.

### Order I.—Monotremata.*

*The jaws are elongated to the form of a beak; the feet are short, five-toed, and furnished with strong claws. Marsupial bones and a cloaca are present [Oviparous ;† with meroblastic ovum.]*

The most important character of the Monotremes is the presence of a cloaca. The dilated end of the rectum receives the openings of the generative and urinary ducts (fig. 678 *a*). In addition to this character we must mention the simple condition of the female generative organs, the absence of teeth in the jaws, the possession of a large coracoid, and the slight development of the corpus callosum.

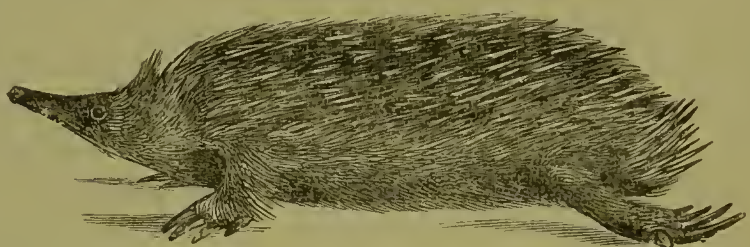


Fig. 681.—*Echidna hystrix.*

Fig. 682.—*Ornithorhynchus paradoxus.*

The form of the body and the mode of life of the Monotremes partly recall the Anteaters and Hedgehog (*Echidna hystrix*, fig. 681) and partly the Otters and Moles (*Ornithorhynchus*); in fact, *Ornithorhynchus* reeeived the appropriate name of "Watermole" from the Australian settlers (fig. 682). *Echidna* is covered with strong spines, and possesses an elongated edentulous snout, with a vermiform, protrusible tongue. The short five-toed legs end with powerful seratching elaws, whieh are excellently adapted for rapid burrowing. *Ornithorhynchus,* on the contrary, has a close, soft fur, a flattened

* R. Owen. Article "Monotremata," in Todd's "Cyclopædia of Anatomy," vol. iii., 1843.

† *Vide* note on p. 296.

body, and, as in the Beavers, a flat tail. The jaws, like the beak of a Duck, are adapted for burrowing in mud, but are armed on both sides with two horny teeth, and are surrounded by a horny integument, which, at the base of the beak, projects in a peculiar manner, so as to form a kind of shield. The legs of *Ornithorhynchus* are short; the five-toed feet end with strong claws, but are also furnished with very extensible webs, and are, therefore, equally well adapted for swimming and burrowing. Both sexes have, like the Marsupials, in front of the pubis the so-called marsupial bones, which in the female *Echidna* support a pouch. The testes remain inside the body cavity (*i.e.*, do not descend into a scrotum). The males in both the genera possess a hollow spur on the hind foot, which receives the duct of a gland, to which for a long time poisonous properties were erroneously attributed. It appears more probable that this spur serves only as a stimulant during copulation, since it fits into a pit in the thigh of the female. The embryos * are born at an early stage, and in *Echidna* pass into the marsupial pouch of the mother. On the abdomen of the latter there are two mammary glands, which are without a projecting nipple. Fossil remains are as yet unknown.

*Ornithorhynchus paradoxus* Blumb., The Duck-bill Platypus, Australia and Van Diemen's Land: *Echidna hystrix* Cuv., in the mountainous regions of south-east Australia: *E. setosa* Cuv., Van Diemen's Land.

## Order 2.—Marsupialia.†

*Mammalia with various dentition, with two marsupial bones supporting a marsupial pouch, which encloses the teats of the mammary glands.*

The principal characteristic of the Marsupials is the possession of a sac, or pouch (*marsupium*), which is supported by two marsupial bones (fig. 683), encloses the teats of the mammary glands, and receives the helpless young after birth. In the absence of a placenta, birth, as in the Monotremes, takes place at a very early stage. Even in *Macropus giganteus*, the males of which attain almost the height of a man, the period of gestation does not last more than thirty-nine days, and the embryo at birth is blind and naked, its extremities are

* Vide note. p. 296.

† R. Owen. "Marsupialia," in Todd's Cyclopædia of Anatomy, vol. iii., 1842. G. R. Waterhouse. "A Natural History of the Mammalia," vol. v., "Marsupialia," London. 1846.

scarcely visible, and it is not much more than an inch in length. It is placed in the pouch by the mother, sucks firmly on to one of the two or three teats, and remains in the pouch for eight or nine months.

In their external appearance, in their mode of nourishment, and in their habits, the Marsupials differ extraordinarily from each other. Many of them are herbivorous, and in their dentition approach the Rodents or the Ungulates; others are omnivorous; others, like true *Carnivora*, prey on Insects, Birds and Mammals. In their general appearance and mode of locomotion they repeat a series of types of different mammalian orders. The Wombats represent the Rodents,

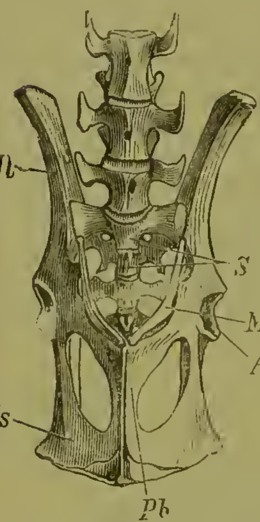



FIG. 683.—The pelvis and adjoining parts of the vertebral column of *Macropus*. *Jl*, Ilium; *Pb*, Pubis; *Js*, Ischium; *M*, Marsupial bones; *A*, Acetabulum; *S*, the two sacral vertebræ.

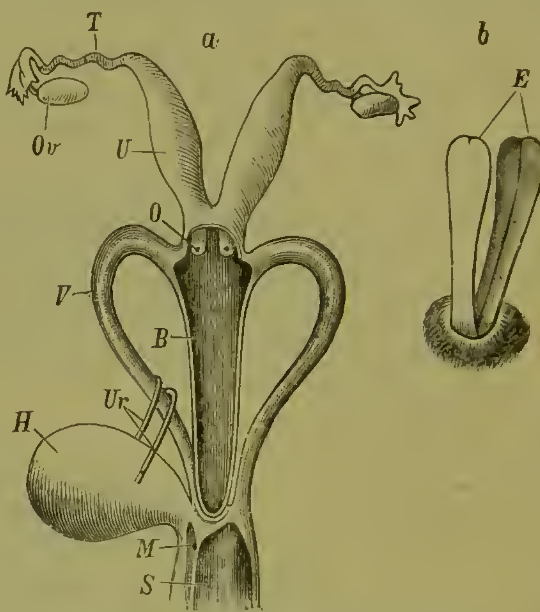



FIG. 684.—*a*, Female generative organs of *Halmaturus* (after Gegenbaur); *Ov*, Ovary; *T*, Oviduct; *U*, Uterus; *O*, Mouth of uterus; *V*, Vagina; *B*, Cæcum of vagina; *Ur*, Ureter; *H*, Urinary bladder; *M*, opening of bladder into the uro-genital sinus (*S*). *b*, Bifid penis of *Didelphys philander* (after Otto, from Gegenbaur); *E* the two halves of the glans.

the fleet Kangaroos, which move by huge bounds, correspond to the Ruminants, and represent, in a certain degree, game, which is absent in Australia. The flying Marsupials (*Petaurus*) resemble the flying Squirrels (*Pteromys*); the climbing Phalangers (*Phalangista*), in their shape and mode of life, recall the Lemurs (*Lemur*); while others, as the *Peramelidæ*, show a likeness to the Shrews (*Soricidæ*) and Insectivores. Finally, the carnivorous Marsupials approach in their dentition to the true *Carnivora* as well as the *Insectivora*, to which they scarcely yield in the large number of their small incisor teeth and tuberculated molars.

The female generative organs frequently present racemose ovaries; the two oviducts are prolonged into two completely separate uteri, which are followed by the peculiarly formed and likewise double vagina (fig. 684*a*); the two vaginæ are united at the point where they receive the openings of the uteri into a common portion, which gives off a long cæcal diverticulum, usually divided by a septum. From this part arise the two vaginal canals, which curve round and open into the urogenital canal. Since the external opening of the latter coincides more or less closely with the anus (the two openings are surrounded by a common sphincter), the Marsupials may be said to have a kind of cloaca. The penis ends as a rule with a bifid glans (fig. 684*b*), corresponding to the double vagina of the female.

Most Marsupials live in Australia, many also in islands of the Pacific Ocean and the Moluccas; *Didelphys* in South America. In Europe they are wholly absent at the present time, though they were distributed there in the tertiary period.

Tribe 1. **Glirina** (Rodent-like Marsupials). Unwieldy, heavy animals of the size of a Badger, with close soft fur, with Rodent dentition, short limbs, and rudimentary tail. The rudimentary inner toe of the hind foot alone is without the curved claw.

Fam. **Phascolomyidæ**. Dentition $i.\ \frac{1}{1}\ c.\ \frac{0}{0}\ p.m.\ \frac{1}{1}\ m.\ \frac{4}{4}$. *Phascolomys Wombat* Per. Les. (*fossor*), Van Diemen's Land and New South Wales.

Tribe 2. **Macropoda** (Jumping Marsupials). With small head and neck, weak, small, five-toed front legs, and hind part of the body unusually developed. The very long hind legs serve for jumping, and are aided by the long tail, the root of which is thickened. The powerful hind feet end with four toes with hoof-like claws; the two internal toes are united, and the median one is very long and powerful. The dentition recalls that of the Horse, though the number of incisors in the lower jaw (2) is smaller. The stomach is colon-like in shape, the cæcum is long. They feed on grass and plants.

Fam. **Halmaturidæ** (Kangaroos). Dental formula $i.\ \frac{3}{1}\ c.\ \frac{0\ (1)}{0}\ p.m.\ \frac{1}{1}\ m.\ \frac{4}{4}$. *Macropus giganteus* Shaw. Great Kangaroo, *Hypsiprymnus rufescens* Gould, Kangaroo Rat.

Tribe 3. **Scandentia (Carpophaga).** Climbing Marsupials. The second and third toes of the hind foot are fused, but the inner toe is without nail and opposable. The long tail is prehensile in accordance with the arboreal life. With respect to the dentition these animals are intermediate between the *Glirina* and *Halmaturidæ*.

Fam. **Phascolarctidæ.** Body stout, unwieldy, head thick, ears large, and tail quite rudimentary. *Phascolarctus cinereus* Goldf., Koala. Dentition $c. \frac{3}{1}\ i. \frac{1}{0}\ p.\,m. \frac{1}{1}\ m. \frac{4}{4}$. New South Wales.

Fam. **Phalangistidæ.** Of slender form, with prehensile tail. *Petaurus flaviventer* Desm.: *P. pygmæus* Desm., scarcely 4 inches long: *Phalangista ursina* Temm., Celebes; *P. (Trichosaurus) vulpina* Desm. (fig. 685): *P. viverrina*, New South Wales: *Tarsipes rostratus* Gerv.

FIG. 685.—*Trichosurus vulpinus.*

Tribe 4. **Rapacia** (carnivorous Marsupials). The dentition presents the characters of that of the *Insectivora* and *Carnivora*. Stomach without glandular apparatus. The cæcum is but slightly developed. Some are climbers, some jumpers and runners.

Fam. **Peramelidæ (Entomophaga)**. Bandicoots. With elongated hind legs and pointed snout, as in the *Insectivora*. They dig holes in the earth. *Perameles nasuta* Geoffr., New South Wales.

Fam. **Dasyuridæ.** Native cats, devils, etc. With distinct carnivorous characteristics and hairy tail, which is not prehensile. *Myrmecobius fasciatus* Waterh., Marsupial Ant-eater: *Phascogale penicillata* Temm. Bloodthirsty and bold carnivorous animal of the size of a squirrel, in a certain sense the Weasel of South and West Australia. *Ph. flavipes* Waterh., yellow-footed Marsupial mouse: *Dasyurus viverrinus* Geoffr., Dentition: $i. \frac{4}{3}\ c. \frac{1}{1}\ p.\,m. \frac{2}{2}\ m. \frac{4}{4}$: New South Wales; *Thylacinus cynocephalus* A. Wagn., Tasmanian Wolf.

Fam. **Didelphyidæ (Pedimana).** Opossums. Dentition: $i. \frac{5}{4}\ c. \frac{1}{1}\ p.\,m. \frac{3}{3}\ m. \frac{4}{3}$; with tolerably pointed snout, large eyes and ears, and usually long prehensile tail. The feet have five toes. On the hind foot the inner toe is opposable. *Didelphys virginiana* Shaw; *D. cancrivora* Gm., Brazil, with completely prehensile tail: *D. opossum* L.; *D. philander* L.; *D. dorsigera* L., Surinam.

# II.—PLACENTALIA.

## I.—Adeciduata.

### Order 3.—Edentata* (Bruta).

*Mammals with incomplete dentition, usually with numerous grinders without roots, and scratching or curved claws on the extremities.*

This group which includes but few genera is characterised by the relatively low grade of development of all the systems of organs and especially by the incomplete dentition, teeth being in exceptional cases altogether wanting. Except in the case of a single Dasypod the incisors are always absent (fig. 686). When canine teeth are present they are small, blunt, and conical. The grinders also are weak and of simple structure, being without roots and enamel. Many (*Vermilinguia* and *Dasypoda*) are insectivorous, others (*Bradypoda*) phytophagous. They are all sluggish, stupid animals, with small brain without convolutions; they climb or dig holes, and at the present time only inhabit the southern zones. Except the African *Orycteropus* and the genus *Manis*, which lives in Africa and Asia, they are all confined to South America.

Fig. 686.—Skull of *Bradypus torquatus*.

Fam. **Vermilinguia** (Ant-eaters). With very elongated, pointed snout, narrow mouth, from which the thin, vermiform tongue can be protruded to a great distance. The jaws are weak. Teeth are altogether absent, except in *Orycteropus*, which possesses numerous grinders formed of longitudinal hollow fibres and scarcely of the hardness of bone. The legs are short, strong, and adapted for digging; they are used for scraping up the nests of Ants and Termites. They extend their long viscous tongue into the ant-heaps thus broken into; the insects bite firmly hold of it, and by the rapid retraction of the tongue become the prey of the Ant-eater. *Myrmecophaga jubata* L.; *M. tetradactyla* L., (*tamandua* Desm.), *didactyla* L., South America. *Manis*, Pangolin; *M. macrura* Erxl., West coast of Africa; *M. brachyura* Erxl. and *javanica* Desm., both found in the East Indies. *Orycteropus capensis* Geoffr., Aardvark of South Africa.

Fam. **Dasypoda** (Armadillos). The body is covered with bony plates which

* Th. Bell, Article "Edentata," in Todd's "Cyclopædia of Anatomy," vol. ii. 1836.

W. v. Rapp, "Anatomische Untersuchungen über die Edentaten," Tübingen, 1852.

are arranged in transverse rows on the back and tail, so as to form a movable dermal armour (fig. 687). The limbs are short, and with their powerful scraping claws are well adapted for burrowing. Incisor teeth are absent, except in *Dasypus sexcinctus* and in the fossil *Chlamydotherium*. Both jaws have small cylindrical grinding teeth, the number of which varies in the different forms. They inhabit South America. *Dasypus novemcinctus* L., the long-tailed Armadillo, with eight to ten bands; *D. gigas*, with upwards of a hundred teeth; *Chlamydophorus truncatus*, Hart, the Pichyciego, in the neighbourhood of Mendoza.

Fam. **Bradypoda** (Sloths). With rounded head (fig. 686) and anteriorly directed eyes, with very long anterior limbs and pectoral mammæ. The incisor teeth, and sometimes also the canines, are absent; there are three to four grinders in each half of the jaw. The large process on the jugal, descending over the lower jaw, is worthy of remark. The Sloths are exclusively arboreal; they use the curved claws at the end of the two or three closely connected digits for hanging on to branches during their strong but slow movements. On the ground they can only drag themselves along extremely awkwardly and helplessly. The

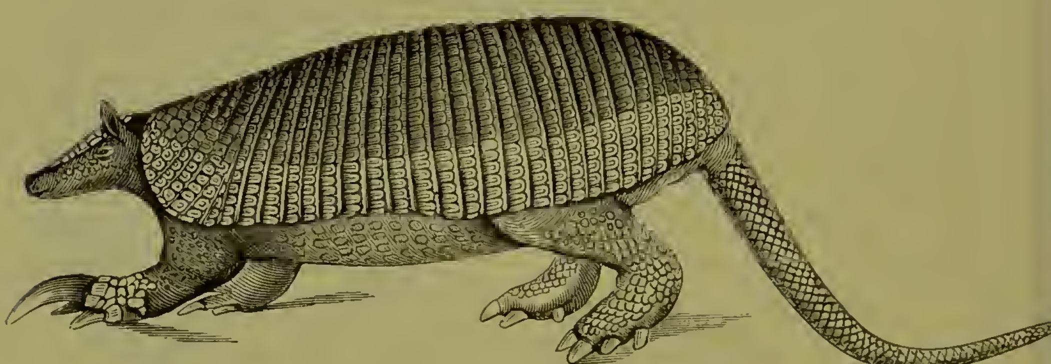


FIG. 687.—*Dasypus gigas.*

body is covered with long and coarse hair, like dry hay. They live in the forests of South America. *Bradypus tridactylus* Cuv., Aï or three-toed Sloth; *Br. torquatus* Ill., *Cholœpus didactylus* Ill., Unau, or two-toed Sloth.

## Order 4.—CETACEA.*

*Aquatic Mammalia with spindle-shaped body which is not covered with hair; with fin-like front limbs and horizontal caudal fin. The posterior limbs are absent.*

The Whales repeat the piscine type in the form of their body and in the articulation of their skeleton (Fig. 688). By their whole organisation they are true Mammals with warm blood and pulmonary respiration, and they are most nearly allied to the Ungulates, which they approach through the *Sirenia*. Some species attain a colossal

* D. F. Eschricht. "Zoologisch-anatomisch-physiologische Untersuchungen über die nordischen Walthiere," Leipzig, 1849.

D. F. Eschricht og J. Reinhardt. "Om Nordhvalen." Kjöbenhavn. 1861.

size, that only water can carry them, and the sea supply them with food. The cervical region is not visible externally, and the head passes directly into the cylindrical trunk, while the caudal end develops a horizontal fin, in addition to which there is often a fatty fin on the dorsal surface. Hairs are almost entirely absent in the larger forms; being only represented by bristle-like hairs on the upper lip, which are present during the whole of life, or only during the fœtal period. In the smaller species, and in the *Sirenia* there is a sparse covering of bristles. On the other hand, there is developed beneath the thick leathery skin in the subdermal cellular tissue a considerable layer of fat, which to a certain extent takes the place of fur, and serves both to prevent the loss of heat and to lower the specific gravity. The head is often elongated into the form of a snout, and is without an external ear. The eyes are strikingly small and are often placed near the angle of the mouth; the nasa apertures are shifted on to the forehead. The anterior limbs are represented by short, externally unjointed swimming fins, which can

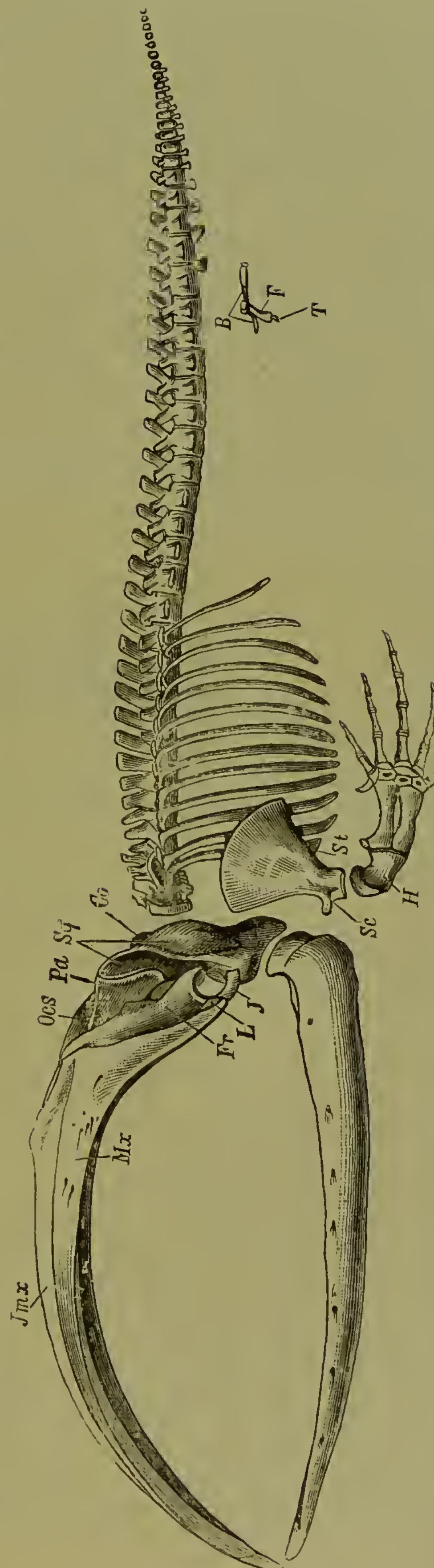



FIG. 683.—Skeleton of *Balæna mysticetus* (after Eschricht and Reinhardt). *Ocs*, Occipital bone; *Co*, Occipital condyle; *Sq*, Squamosal; *Pa*, Parietal; *Fr*, Frontal; *Jmx*, Præmaxillary; *Mx*, Maxillary; *J*, Jugal; *L*, Lachrymal; *St*, Sternum, which is only connected with the first rib; *Sc*, Scapula; *H*, Humerus; *B*, rudiment of pelvis; *F*, of femur, *T*, of tibia.

only be moved as a whole. The hind limbs are wholly wanting as external appendages.

The skull, as compared with the large facial part of the head, which is often elongated like a beak, is small and often asymmetrical, the right side being the largest. Its bones are separated by sutures and loosely connected. The parietals early fuse with the interparietals to a single bone. The hard petrous bone remains isolated from the other parts of the temporal bone. The nasal cavity, in connection with the great development of the premaxillaries, is shifted entirely on to the skull. Except in the *Sirenia*, the nasal bones are rudimentary. The jaws are frequently altogether without teeth. A change of dentition takes place only in the *Sirenia*. In the true *Cetacea* the dental germs are developed in fœtal life; but the teeth either fall out before birth (Whalebone Whales), or develope into the permanent teeth (Dolphins). Of the hind limbs traces are only sometimes found, as small bones which are interpreted as the rudiment of a pelvis; in *Balæna mysticetus* rudiments of a femur and tibia are also present (fig. 688). The single or double nasal aperture is placed more or less high up on the skull, and leads straight down into the nasal cavities, which descend as a paired, but posteriorly single, nasal canal, which at the soft palate can be shut off from the pharynx by a sphincter muscle. The view that the Whale spouts water through its nasal apertures has been proved to be erroneous. The expired aqueous vapour condenses into a cloud, and gave rise to the illusion that a column of water was ejected from the nostrils. The lungs are very spacious; they extend, like the swimming bladders of Fishes, far backward, and play an essential part in the maintainance of the horizontal position of the body in water; the diaphragm also has a corresponding horizontal position. Saccular dilatations on the aorta and pulmonary arteries, as well as the so-called arterial networks may serve as aids to respiration during diving.

The females bear a single (the smaller species rarely two) relatively far advanced young, which, however, need the care of the mother for a long time after birth. The two teats of the mammæ lie in the inguinal region, in the *Sirenia* on the thorax.

The Whales usually live together in herds. The smaller species frequent the coasts, and even enter the mouths of rivers. The larger species prefer the open sea and colder climates. They swim with great strength and speed, usually keeping near the surface. The gigantic whalebone Whales, which are entirely without teeth, but possess whalebone on the palate, feed on small marine animals, nudibranchiate Molluscs and Medusæ. The Dolphins, with their uniform carnivorous dentition, feed on larger fishes; the *Sirenia*, which are intermediate, so far as their form is concerned, between the Whales and Seals, are herbivorous. Fossil remains are found in the older tertiaries.

Sub-order 1. **Cetacea carnivora** (True Whales). Either with conical teeth in the jaws or with whalebone on the palate. The nasal apertures are placed on the forehead. The larynx projects like a pyramid into the posterior nares. The mammæ are placed on the inguinal region. The skin is devoid of hairs, and beneath it is a thick layer of fat. The limbs are movable at the shoulder joint only; their constituent bones are rigidly and immovably connected.

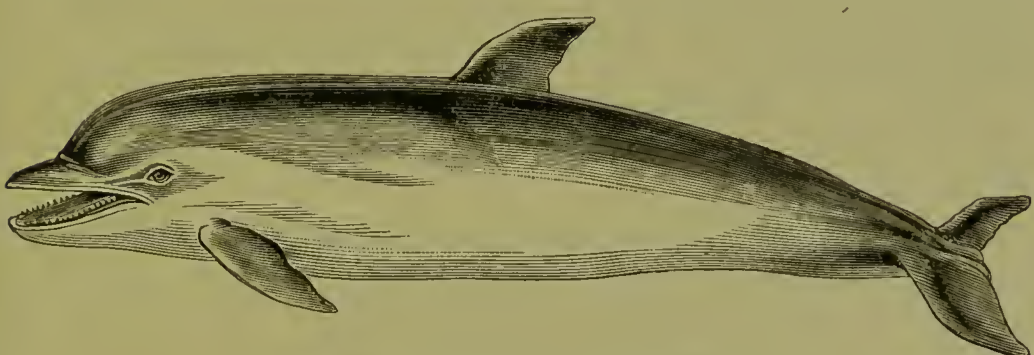


FIG. 689.—*Delphinus delphis* (règne animal).

Tribe 1. **Denticete** (Toothed Whales). Carnivorous Whales which feed principally on fish, with conical teeth in both or only in one jaw. Dentition *monophyodont*. Head of proportionate size. Nasal apertures often united to a single semilunar opening.

Fam. **Delphinidæ**. Both jaws with similar conical teeth, but not always armed along their whole length. Nasal apertures united to a semilunar spiracle. *Phocæna communis* Less., Common Porpoise, four to five feet long, ascends the mouths of rivers, lives on Fishes. European seas. *Beluga (Delphinapterus) leucas* Gray, White Fish; *Globiocephalus globiceps* Cuv., Black Fish, North Atlantic Ocean; *Delphinus delphis* L., Common Dolphin (fig. 689).

Fam. **Monodontidæ** (Narwhals). Upper jaw with only two anteriorly directed teeth which in the female are small; but in the male one of them (usually that of the left side) becomes a colossal, spirally grooved tusk. The other small teeth of both jaws fall out early. *Monodon monoceros* L., Narwhal, North Polar Sea, twenty feet long.

Fam. **Hyperoodontidæ**. With elongated beak-like snout, only one or two fully developed teeth on each side in the lower jaw. Facial bones, especially præmaxillaries, often asymmetrical. Spiracle semilunar. *Hyperoodon bidens* Flem., more than twenty feet long, North Atlantic Ocean.

Fam. **Catodontidæ—Physeteridæ** (Sperm-whales). Head of enormous size, being one third of the length of the body. Swollen to the extremity by the accumulation of fluid fat (spermaceti). Upper jaw without teeth. Rami of the lower jaw applied to one another and armed with a row of conical teeth. Spiracles separate. They live on Cephalopoda. *Catodon macrocephalus* Lac., Cachelot, forty to sixty feet long, North Sea; *Physeter tursio* Gray, North Atlantic Ocean.

Tribe 2. **Mysticete** (Whalebone Whales). Head very large, jaws without teeth, with whalebone (fig. 673). Œsophagus narrow; spiracles separate.

Fam. **Balænidæ.** *Cetacea* of considerable size, with enormous head, wide slit-like mouth without teeth, and double nasal openings; with very small eyes near the angle of the mouth. Two rows of horny transverse plates, frayed out at their lower edges, arise from the palate and upper jaw. These are the whalebone plates. They project vertically into the mouth, are closely packed together one behind the other, and decrease in size anteriorly and posteriorly They form a kind of sieve, which when the huge mouth is closed retains the small *Medusæ*, Nudibranchs, etc., which are taken in with the sea water, while the water flows out. *Balænoptera*, Rorquals; *B. rostrata* Fabr., North Sea; *Balæna mysticetus*, Greenland Whale, reaches a length of sixty feet.

Sub-order 2. **Cetacea herbivora, Sirenia.** With thick, sparsely bristled skin, swollen lips, and anterior nasal apertures, with pectoral mammæ. The large fins are movable at the elbow joint, and end like hands with traces of nails. Neck distinct. Dentition and internal organisation approximate to those of the Ungulates. The incisors are replaced. The grinders have a flat crown, and are always well developed in both jaws. There are no canine teeth. In the Dugong there are two tusk-like incisors in the upper jaw, while the lower incisors fall out early. They feed especially on fuci and seaweed on the sea coast.

Fam. **Sirenia.** Nasal openings placed far forward. *Manatus Australis* Tils., American Manatee. Found at the mouths of the Orinoco and Amazon; *M. senegalensis* Desm., African Manatee; *Halicore indica* Desm., Dugong, Indian Ocean and Red Sea; *Rhytina Stelleri* Cuv., Steller's Sea-cow, extinct.

## Order 5.—Perissodactyla (Odd-toed Ungulates).*

*Large Ungulates usually of unwieldy build; the middle digit is more developed than the others. The stomach is simple and the cæcum is very large. The dentition is usually complete.*

In the earlier tertiary times the Ungulates were already a well-defined group, the smaller species of which presented approximations to the *Insectivora* (*Microchoerus*) and Rodents. The *Ungulata* are either herbivorous or omnivorous. The dentition is highly differentiated; the grinders are traversed by folds of enamel, with transverse ridges and short tubercles, which are usually worn down to an even, masticating surface. Large chisel-shaped incisors, which, however, may fall out or in the lower jaw be completely absent, are often present. There is always a gap between the incisors and the præmolars. The canines are often absent, or only present in the upper jaw, principally in the males, and then are transformed into tusk-like weapons. Even when both upper and lower canines are present, they have this significance, and are much larger in the male sex.

Among the many differences which the Ungulates present in their whole organisation and mode of life, the difference in the number of hoofs (which corresponds with that of the toes) was held to have a special value, and accordingly Multiungulates, Biungulates, and Uniungulates were distinguished as separate orders. This division was, however, by no means a natural one, since it led not only to the union of widely divergent forms as Multiungulates, but also to the separation of the Uniungulates and Biungulates from their near allies. The progress of palæontological knowledge has shown that this division is untenable. Remains of extinct forms, which partly fill up the gaps between members of the supposed orders, have been discovered. Accordingly the order of Multiungulates has been recently broken up, and two members of it —the *Proboscidea* and the *Hyracoidea*—have been placed among the *Deciduata*; and further, two orders founded upon the odd or even number of the toes—a character which had already been used by

* G. Cuvier, "Recherches sur les ossements fossiles." Third edition, Paris, 1846.

T. Rymer Jones, Article "Pachydermata" in Todd's "Cyclopædia," with Supplement by F. Spencer Cobbold, 1859.

W. Kowalevski, "Monographie des Genus Anthracotherion Cuv., und Versuch einer natürlichen Classification der fossilen Hufthiere. Palæontographica," 1873.

Cuvier—were established; these are the *Perissodactyla* (Pachydermes à doigts impaires Cuv., and Solidungula Aut.) with an odd number of toes, and the *Artiodactyla* with an even number of toes. The names do not correspond strictly with the number of the toes since there are Perissodactyles—as the *Tapir* and *Eohippus*—which have four toes on the front feet; and on the other hand, there are Artiodactyles—as *Anoplotherium tridactyle*,—which have three toes on both front and hind feet. But, when applied in a limited sense with reference to the number of the pillar-like supporting bones of the middle digit or digits, the names are in all cases suitable. In the *Perissodactyla* the unpaired central digit serves as the principal support, which in the *Artiodactyla* is afforded by the third and fourth digits which are symmetrical and similar. In most *Perissodactyla* there are three digits of which the middle one is specially strongly developed. The forms which exist at the present time are confined to the families of the *Tapiridæ*, the *Rhinoceridæ*, and the *Equidæ*, of which the last were represented as far back as the eocene epoch (*Anchitherium*) by forms which constitute connecting links between the *Palæotheridæ* and *Tapiridæ* on the one hand, and the ancestral forms of living horses on the other.

Fam. **Tapiridæ.** Short-haired Ungulates of medium size, with movable proboscis. Dentition: $i. \frac{3 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 3}$ $c. \frac{1 \cdot 1}{1 \cdot 1}$ $p.m. \frac{4 \cdot 4}{3 \cdot 3}$ $m. \frac{3 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 3}$. The moderately-long front legs end with four (fig. 670 *c.*), the hind legs with three digits. *Tapirus indicus* Desm., East India; *T. americanus* L., South America.

Fam. **Rhinoceridæ.** Large unwieldy Pachyderms with one or two epidermal horns on the strongly-arched nasal bones. Dentition: $i. \frac{1 \cdot 1}{1 \cdot 1}$ $c. \frac{0 \cdot 0}{0 \cdot 0}$ $p.m. \frac{4 \cdot 4}{4 \cdot 4}$ $m. \frac{3 \cdot 3}{3 . 3}$. The four incisor teeth are rudimentary, and sometimes fall out in old age. Rhinoceroses appeared in the miocene, and are also found in the pliocene and diluvium of Europe. *Rhinoceros javanus* Cuv., Java; *Rh. sumatrensis* Cuv.; *Rh. africanus* Camp.; *Rh. tichorhinus* Cuv., with bony nasal septum, and hairy skin; diluvial, found well-preserved in ice. *Rh. leptorhinus* Cuv., upper tertiaries, in Italy and south of France.

Fam. **Equidæ (Solidungula** Aut.). Long-limbed, slender Ungulates of considerable size. The three-jointed middle digit alone treads upon the ground, and its strong terminal joint is surrounded by a broad hoof (fig. 690). The second and fourth digits are either present as small accessory digits (in fossil horses), or are reduced to the metatarsal (metacarpal) bones (splint bones).

The dentition (fig. 691) consists of six upper and six lower, large chisel-shaped incisors, which are arranged in a curved line, and are distinguished by the transversely oval pit on their biting surfaces. Canine teeth are as a rule present only in the male sex in both jaws, and are small and conical.

In the fossil forms there are seven grinders on each side in each jaw; in the recent species of the *Equidæ* the number is reduced to six, but there is a small tooth in front of the first præmolar which soon falls out (Wolfszahn, Bojanus). Fossil forms first appear in the eocene (*Orohippus* still with a rudimentary fifth digit, as well as the three other digits which rested on the ground, and *Anchitherium*). They persisted in the miocene and pliocene (*Hipparion*) and then pass into the diluvial genus *Equus*, to which the domestic horses of the present day belong. *Anchitherium Dumasii* Gerv. Feet with three digits, middle

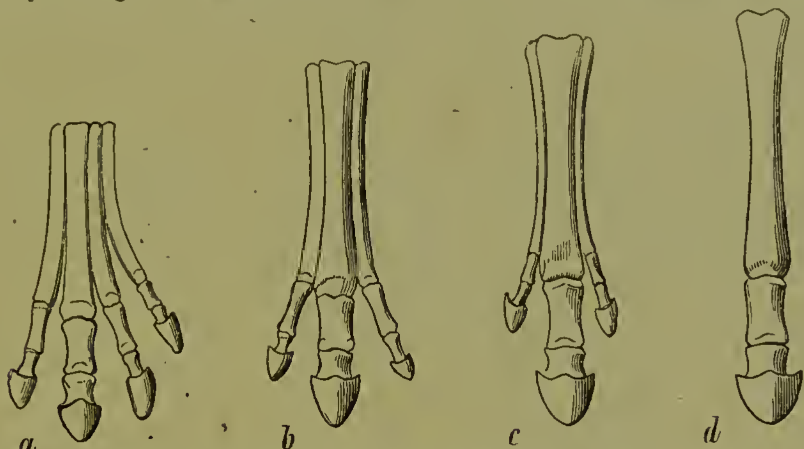


Fig. 690.—Pedal skeleton of different genera of *Equidæ* (after Marsh). *a*, Foot of *Orohippus* (Eocene); *b*, Foot of *Anchitherium* (Lower Miocene ; *c*, Foot of *Hipparion* (Pliocene) ; *d*, Foot of the recent genus *Equus*.

digit large, remains of fifth metacarpal on the anterior limbs. The grinders are $\frac{7}{7}\cdot\left[p.m.\ \frac{4\cdot4}{4\cdot4}\cdot\ m.\ \frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}\cdot\right]$ *Hipparion gracile* Kp., miocene. Of the seven grinders, the anterior is a simple prism with a semilunar transverse section ; it is lost with the milk dentition. *Equus caballus*. Foot composed of one digit, with remains of metatarsals (metacarpals) of second and fourth digits (splint

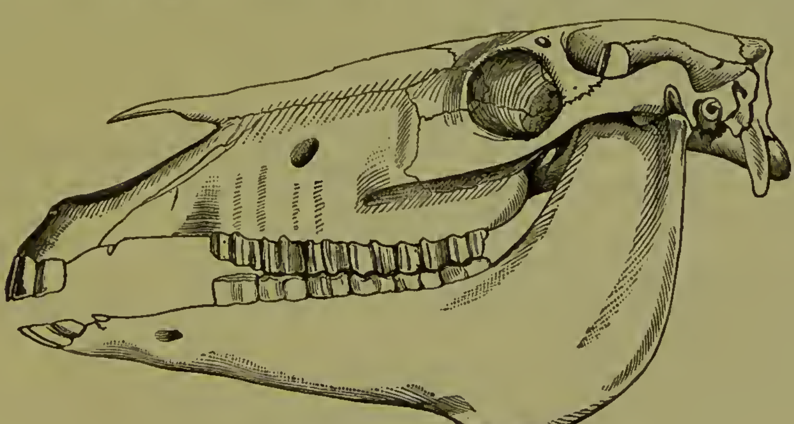


Fig. 691.—Skull of *Equus caballus*.

bones); grinders are $p.\ m.\ \frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}.\ m.\ \frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}$, with remains of an anterior seventh grinder in the milk dentition. This genus is only known in the domestic state, but is probably descended from one or several of the species of horses which lived in the diluvial period. *Asinus tæniopus* Heugl., the wild ass of South-East Asia, the ancestral form of the domestic ass (*E. asinus*); *A. hemionus* Pall., Dziguetai ; *A. onager* Pall., Kulan, Mongolia. The African species (placed with the sub-genus *Hippotigris* Sm.) are *E. quagga* Gm.; *E. zebra* L., Zebra; *E. Burchelli* Fisch., Burchell's Zebra.

## Order 6.—Artiodactyla (Paridigitata).

*Ungulates with paired digits, of which the two outer are usually rudimentary, the two middle of equal size and rest on the ground; often without canine and incisor teeth in the upper jaw; grinders always with folds of enamel.*

Some of the *Artiodactyla* are unwieldly and heavily built, some are slender and graceful animals, sometimes with short, sometimes with long limbs; the former with thick naked skin and a covering of stiff bristles, the latter with a thick fur. They walk mainly on the third and fourth digits, which are always larger than the two external digits, and touch the ground with their hoofs (fig. 670 *c d*). The second and fifth digits, when present, may also take part in supporting the body, but are usually rudimentary, placed behind, and do not reach the ground; they may be reduced to the remains of their metatarsals (metacarpals), and not be visible as external digits; this is the case with both of them in *Anoplotherium* and with the external one in the posterior three-toed limb of *Dicotyles*.

The animals belonging to this order may be arranged in two series:—the *Pachydermata* and the *Ruminantia*. The *Artiodactyla* were represented in the older tertiaries by forms, which with the *Palæotheridæ*, and perhaps descended from the same source as the latter, were the forerunners of the Suidæ and the Ruminants.

Sub-order 1. **Artiodactyla pachydermata.** With complete dentition, always with canine teeth and simple stomach. The metatarsal bones of the middle digits are never ankylosed.

Fam. **Anoplotheridæ.** Dentition with all three kinds of teeth which are arranged in a continuous row (*i.e.*, without diastema). *Anoplotherium commune* Cuv. Fossil.

Fam. **Suidæ** * (Setigera). With close covering of bristles, and a short proboscis-like snout. The dentition (fig. 692) includes all the kinds of teeth, but the rows of teeth are not perfectly continuous. The 4—6 incisors are placed in an obliquely horizontal position, and fall out in old age. Canines usually much elongated and triangular, and in the male as powerful weapons (tusks). There are 6—7 grinders with folded enamel in each jaw (on each side). Only the two middle digits rest on the ground, while the smaller external

* Herm. v. Nathusius, "Vorstudien für Geschichte und Zucht der Hausthiere, zunächst am Schweineschädel," Berlin, 1864; and "Die Racen des Schweines," 1860.

digits are placed behind (fig. 670 *c*). *Phacochœrus æthiopicus* Cuv., Wart-hog, South Africa; *Ph. Ælianus* Rüpp. (*Sus africanus* L.), found from Abyssinia to Guinea; *Porcus babyrussa* L., The Babyrussa, Moluccas; *Dicotyles*, Peccaries. *D. torquatus* Cuv.; *D. labiatus* Cuv., America; *Potamochœrus africanus* Schreb. (*larvatus* Fr. Cuv.), South-West Africa; *Sus europæus* Pall. (*S. scrofa* L.), Wild Boar. Dentition $i.\ \frac{3 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 3}.\ c.\ \frac{1 \cdot 1}{1 \cdot 1}.\ p.\ m.\ \frac{4 \cdot 4}{4 \cdot 4}.\ m.\ \frac{3 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 3}.$ is widely distributed from India to Western Europe and North Africa. Is the ancestral stock of a great number of races of our domestic pig; though on the other hand the pigs of China, Cochin-china, and Siam, and the Neapolitan, Hungarian, and Andalusian pigs, the small Bündtner pig and the Peat pig from the more recent stone period (neolithic) of the Swiss lake dwellings are derived (Nathusius) from a special ancestral species (*S. indicus*), which is not known with certainty in the wild state, but is allied to the *S. vittatus* Müll. Schl. from Java and Sumatra.

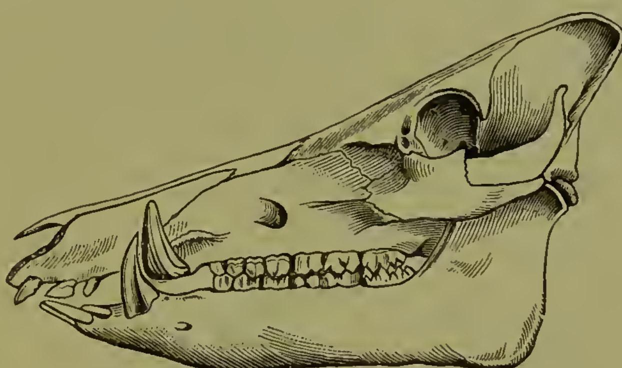


Fig. 692.—Skull of *Sus scrofa fera*.

Fam. **Obesa.** Of unwieldy shape, with large massive head, and broad truncated, swollen snout. *Hippopotamus amphibius* L. Dentition :—

$$i.\ \frac{2 \cdot 2}{2 \cdot 2}\ c.\ \frac{1 \cdot 1}{1 \cdot 1}\ p.\ m.\ \frac{4 \cdot 4}{4 \cdot 4}\ m.\ \frac{3 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 3}.$$

*H. major* Cuv., diluvium of Central and Southern Europe.

Sub-order 2. **Artiodactyla ruminantia.*** With incomplete dentition (fig. 693), in which the upper incisors and canines are usually not developed. On the other hand there are eight, rarely only six shovel-shaped incisors in the lower jaw. The general form of the grinders affords tolerably constant characteristics. The quad-

Fig. 693.—Skull of *Cervus canadensis*.

* Cf. especially G. J. Sundevall, "Methodische Uebersicht über die wiederkauenden Thiere," 2 Theile. 1847.

Rütimeyer, "Fauna der Pfahlbauten."

Rütimeyer, "Versuch einer natürlichen Geschichte des Rindes." In den *Denkschr. der Schweizer naturforsch. Gesellsch.*, Bd. 22 and 23.

rangular crown has four chief prominences, which are separated by deep valleys, which are not filled with cement, but are sometimes furnished with small accessory protuberances. The præmolars are small, and have usually only one or two protuberances. The metatarsal and metacarpal bones are always ankylosed, to form a cannon bone (fig. 670*d*).

The Ruminantia are characterised physiologically and anatomically by rumination and by the structure of the stomach and dentition which is correlated with this peculiarity. The food always consists mainly of vegetable substances, which contain only a small portion of albuminous matter, and must, therefore, be eaten in great quantities. In this relation, the division of labour between the acquisition and reception of food on the one hand, and its mastication on the other, is an advantageous arrangement, which is foreshadowed by the structure of the stomach of other Mammalia. The animal plucks and swallows its food while moving freely from place to place, and chews and masticates it when at rest. The act of rumination depends upon the complicated structure of the stomach, which is divided into four, more rarely into three, peculiarly connected divisions (fig. 694). The superficially masticated, coarse food passes through the lateral opening of the œsophageal groove, the lips of which are separate from one another, into the first and largest division of the stomach—the *paunch*, or *rumen* (fig. 694 *Ru*). Thence it passes into the small *reticulum* (*R*), a small rounded appendage of the rumen, which receives its name from the net-like folds of its inner surface. After the food is softened by the secretion which is poured into this division of the stomach, it ascends by a process resembling vomiting through the œsophagus into the mouth, and there undergoes a second, more thorough mastication; it is then returned in a semi-liquid form through the œsophageal groove, which is now closed by the coming

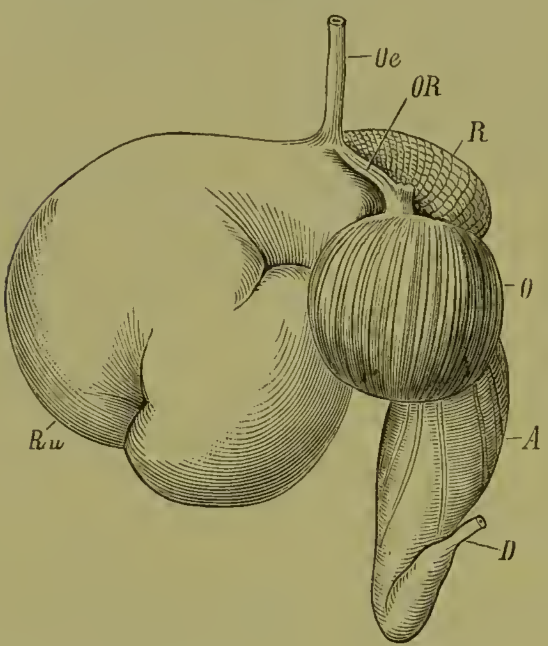


FIG. 694.—Stomach of a Calf. *Ru*, Paunch or rumen; *R*, Reticulum; *O*, Manyplies or psalterium; *A*, Abomasum or rennet stomach; *Oe*, End of œsophagus: *OR*, Œsophogeal groove; *D*, beginning of intestine.

together of its lips, into the small third division of the stomach, which is called the *psalterium* on account of the numerous leaf-like folds of its inner surface. From the psalterium the food enters the fourth stomach—the longitudinally folded *rennet stomach*, or *abomasum*, in which the digestion takes its further course under the influence of the secretion of the numerous peptic glands. In only a few cases,—in the Java Musk-deer and the *Tylopoda* (Camels and Llamas)—is the psalterium absent as a separate division.

Fam. **Tylopoda.** Ruminants without accessory digits, with a callous sole covering all three phalanges behind the small hoofs. The præmaxillaries bear two, in the young animal four or six incisor teeth, while the number of the lower incisors is reduced by two. There are also strong canines in both jaws. There is no separate psalterium. *Auchenia lama* L., Llama; *A. huanaco* H. Sm.; *A. Alpaco* Gm.; *A. vicugna* Gm. All on the west coast of South America. *Camelus dromedarius* L., Dromedary, Grinding teeth, $\frac{6}{5}$; *C. bactrianus* L. two-humped Camel of Tartary, Mongolia.

Fam. **Devexa = Camelopardalidæ,** Giraffes. With very long neck, long front legs; the hind legs are much shorter, and, therefore, the back slopes backwards *Camelopardalis giraffa* Gm., wooded plains of Central Africa.

Fam. **Moschidæ.** Small, slender Ruminants, without horns, with tusk-like, strongly-developed upper canine teeth in the male. The male has between the navel and the penis a glandular sac, in which strong-smelling musk accumulates. *Moschus moschiferus* L., high mountains of Central Asia, from Thibet to Siberia; *Tragulus javanicus* Pall., without musk-bag, Island of Sunda.

Fam. **Cervidæ** (Deer). Of slender build, with horns in the males, and two rudimentary digits. In almost all cases there is a brush of hairs on the inside of the hind foot, which affords a good means of distinguishing deer from the antelopes. Upper canines often present in the male. Grinding teeth :—$\frac{6}{6}$ The horns, which, except in the Reindeer, are confined to the male, are of systematic importance; they are solid dermal bones, which are attached to a bony process of the forehead, and are detached at regular periods from the thickened circular base, cast off, and renewed. They feed on leaves, buds, and shoots. The females have four mammæ, but usually bear only one young. Australia and South Africa only are without *Cervidæ*. Fossil species first appear in the middle tertiaries. *Cervus capreolus* L., Roe-deer; *C. elaphus*, L. Red-deer; *C. canadensis* Priss., North America; *C. campestris* Cuv.; *Dama vulgaris* Brook, Fallow-deer; *Megaceros hibernicus* Ow. (*euryceros*), extinct Irish elk of the diluvium; *Alces palmatus* Klein = *C. alces* L., Moose or Elk, in North Europe, Russia, and North America: *Rangifer tarandus* H., Sm., Reindeer, antlers in both sexes, with numerous broadly-projecting prongs; they are used as beasts of burden, and for draught and riding, by the Laps.

Fam. **Cavicornia.** Without canine teeth, with $\frac{6}{6}$ grinders and hollow horns in both sexes. All are gregarious, and most polygamous.

Sub-fam. **Antilopinæ.** *Antilope dorcas* Licht., Gazelle, Africa; *Saiga saiga* Wagn., steppes of Asia; *Hippotragus equinus* Geoffr., Blaubock of South Africa; *H. oryx* Blainv.; *H. addax* Wagn., Africa; *Strepsiceros Kudu* Gray, Africa; *Bubalis pygarga* Sundv., Buntbock, South Africa: *Catoblepas gnu*, the Gnu, plains of South Africa; *Rupicapra rupicapra* Pall., Chamois, Pyrenees and Alps.

Sub-fam. **Ovinæ.** *Ovis aries* L., domestic sheep, of which numerous races are distributed over the whole earth (German sheep, Haideschnucke, Merino, Zackelschaf, Fat-tailed sheep). There was a domesticated race of sheep in the stone age. The Mouflon, *O. musimon* Schreb., and the Argali, *O. argali* Pall., living in Northern and Central Asia have been often regarded as the wild ancestral species. *Capra*, Goats, and Ibexes. *C. ibex* L., Steinbock of the Alps; *C. ægagrus* L., Bezoar-goat, Caucasus: *C. hircus* L., Domestic Goat, numerous races, distributed everywhere.

Sub-fam. **Bovinæ.** *Ovibos moschatus* Blainv., Musk-ox of North America; *Bison europæus* Ow. (improperly called Auerochs); *B. americanus* Gm.; *Bubalus buffelus* L., Indian buffalo; *B. caffer* L.: *Pœphagus grunniens* L., Yak, Thibet and Mongolia, domesticated; *Bos gaurus* H., Sm., Gaur, East Indies: *B. indicus* L., Zebu; *B. primigenius* Boj., diluvial, lived in Cæsar's time in Germany (called "Ur" in the Nibelungen-Liede), still preserved in a semi-wild condition in Chillingham Park. Cuvier regarded them as the ancestral form of the domestic ox,—*B. taurus* L.,—and there can be no doubt that the Friesland or Holstein ox is to be referred to *B. primigenius*. Rütimeyer has recently shown that a second species, which existed in the diluvial period, *B. brachyceros* Ow., is to be regarded as the ancestral species of the domestic ox.

## 2. DECIDUATA.

### Order 7.—Proboscidea.

*Multiungulates of very large size, with long proboscis, which functions as a prehensile organ; with compound grinding teeth, and tusks in the præmaxillæ.*

The thick hide is folded, and is only sparsely covered with hairs. There is a tuft of hairs on the tail. The head is short and deep, is swollen by chambers in the frontal and parietal bones, and possesses a long movable proboscis. The occipital region descends abruptly, and almost perpendicularly. The perpendicularly-placed præmaxillæ with their large rootless tusks, are enormously developed. In the *Mastodonta* there are also two incisor teeth in the lower jaw, which soon fall out in the female, but in the male are retained as tusks. There are no canines. According to the age one, two, or sometimes even three grinding teeth are present in each jaw; they are composed of a number of parallel dental plates placed behind one another. In the genus *Elephas* these plates are connected with cement, and present on the masticatory surface transverse rhombic spaces, bounded by enamel substance. In the *Mastodonta* the cement is absent, and there are mammillary prominences on the masticatory surface. According to Owen, there are three præmolars, and the same number of molars. There are, however, never more than three, usually only two grinding teeth above the gum at the same time; for the hinder teeth, which increase in size and number of lamellæ, only appear after the anterior have fallen out. At first each half of the jaw has one grinder, behind which a second is soon developed. Later on the front one is worn out, and falls out, and then a new tooth makes its appearance behind the second. The cylindrical limbs end with five digits, which are connected as far as the small hoofs. The females have a two-horned uterus, and two thoracic mammæ. The placenta is zonary. Elephants live together in herds, and inhabit damp, shady places in the hot parts of Africa and India. They possess great intelligence, and when tamed are extremely useful animals. They were used even in antiquity as beasts of burden in war, and in the chase.

Fam. **Elephantidæ.** *Elephas indicus* Cuv. The transverse spaces of the molars in the form of narrow bands, with almost parallel, finely folded edges. Head very deep, with concave forehead and relatively small ears. Attains a height of ten to twelve feet. Ceylon and India. The Elephant of Sumatra, according to Temmink, belongs to a special species (*E. sumatranus*). *E. primigenius* Blumb., Mammoth, diluvial; *E.* (*Loxodon*) *Africanus* Blumb. The transverse spaces of the molars are lozenge-shaped and less numerous. Skull less deep. Ears very large. Central and South Africa. *Mastodon giganteum* Cuv. diluvial in North America.

The miocene genus **Dinotherium** Kp. is, according to its skull, closely allied (and therefore included with) the *Proboscidea.* Its extremities, however, have not yet been found, and the view that it is allied to the *Sirenia* cannot be directly contradicted. In the dentition there are no incisors in the præmaxillæ, while there are two large downwardly curved tusks in the lower jaw. Grinding teeth $\frac{5}{5}$, with two to three rows of transverse tubercles. *D. giganteum* Kp. Eppelsheim.

The **Lamnungia** are usually separated as a distinct order, and are placed near the Elephants. They are small and resemble the *Agouti;* in their dentition they are intermediate between the Rodents and Pachyderms, and in the formation of their feet show resemblances to the Tapirs and have, therefore, often been placed with the Pachyderms. The body is closely haired, the front feet have four digits, the posterior three, all of which are provided with small hoofs.

**Hyrax.** Dentition: $\frac{1\ 0\ 6\ (8)}{2\ 0\ 6\ (7)}\left[i.\ \frac{1\cdot1}{2\cdot2}\ c.\ \frac{0}{0}\ p.\ m.\ \frac{4\cdot4}{4\cdot4}\ m.\ \frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}\right]$. *H. capensis* Schreb., Daman, Dassy, Rock-rabbit; *H. syriacus* Schreb. (Fig. 695); probably the Coney (Saphan) of the Old Testament.

## Order 8. Rodentia = Glires.

*With freely movable, clawed digits. Dentition with* $\frac{1\ (2)}{1}$ *chisel-shaped incisors, grinding teeth with transverse enamel folds, and without canines.*

The *Rodentia* are a large group of small, active Mammalia. They are easily recognizable by the dentition and structure of the teeth. The order, nevertheless, includes many forms transitional to the *Insectivora*. Rodents are plantigrade animals, with freely movable digits, which are usually armed with claws, only rarely with arched nails, or even hoof-like nails. They all feed on vegetable, usually hard substances, especially on stalks, roots, seeds, and fruits. Only a few are omnivorous.

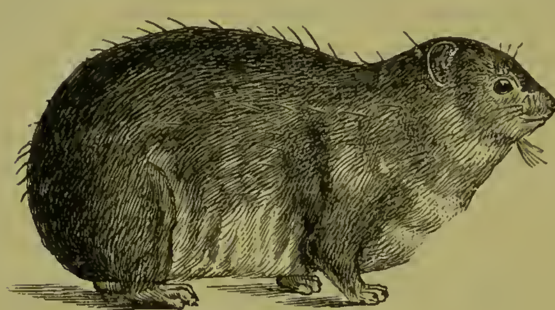


Fig. 695.—*Hyrax syriacus.*

There are two large chisel-shaped, somewhat curved incisors (fig. 696), which possess enamel only on their anterior surfaces. The posterior surface is, therefore, quickly worn away by use, and the more so since the arrangement of the narrow, laterally compressed glenoid cavity necessitates an antero-posterior movement of the lower jaw during mastication. The wearing away is compensated by a proportionate, continous growth of the tooth. The grinders, which are separated from the incisors by a wide gap, possess usually transversely arranged folds of enamel, and are only tuberculated when the animal is omnivorous. When these teeth are being used the lower jaw is drawn so far back that the incisors are not rubbed against one another, and the lower jaw is moved backwards and

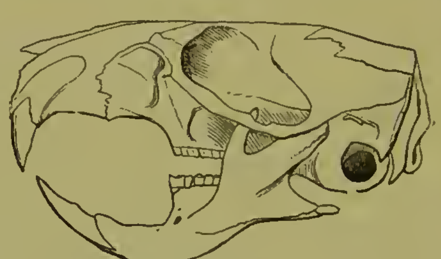


Fig. 696.—Skull of *Cricetus vulgaris* (after Giebel; Bronn's Classen und Ordnungen).

forwards in the longitudinal direction, in correspondence with the position of the transverse folds of enamel. Many of them build nests, dig out complicated burrows, and lay up stores for the winter. The latter usually possess cheek-pouches. Some fall into a deep winter sleep at the cold time of the year, others migrate in large flocks. They produce numerous young, some of them four or six litters in the year, and possess, accordingly, a great number of abdominal and thoracic mammæ. Uterus usually completely divided; placenta discoidal.

Fam. **Leporidæ.** With long ears, powerful hind legs, and short tail. Dentition : $\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{0}{0}\,\frac{5\ (6)}{5}\left[i.\ \frac{2\cdot 2}{1\cdot 1}\ c.\ \frac{0\cdot 0}{0\cdot 0}\ p.\ m.\ \frac{3\cdot 3}{}\ m.\ \frac{3\cdot 3}{3\cdot 3}\right]$. In the præmaxillæ there are two posterior accessory incisors (*Duplicidentata*). *Lepus timidus* L., Hare; *L. variabilis* Pall. Alpine hare; *L. cuniculus* K., Rabbit; *Lagomys*, Pikas. *L. alpinus* F. Cuv., barely a foot in length, Siberia: *L. princeps* Richards, Rocky Mountains.

Fam. **Subungulata.** Grinders, $\frac{4}{4}$. The feet have naked soles, and end in front with four, and behind usually with three toes. *Cavia aperea* L., Aperea, in Brazil and Paraguay; *C. cobaya* Schreb., the tame Guinea-pig; *Cœlogenys paca* L., the Paca, Brazil; *Dasyprocta aguti* L., the Agouti; *Hydrochœrus capybara* Erxl., the Capybara, four feet in length, the largest of living rodents.

Fam. **Aculeata.** With short, obtuse snout, and spines on the dorsal side of the body. *Cercolabes prehensilis* L., the Kuandu, Brazil; *Erethizon dorsatus* L., North America; *Hystrix cristatus* L., Porcupine, Italy and Spain.

Fam. **Octodontidæ.** *Octodon Cumingii* Benn., Chili; *Myopotamus coypus* Geoff., the Coypu, distributed from Brazil to Patagonia.

Fam. **Lagostomidæ**, Chinchillas. *Eriomys lanigera* Benn., the Chinchilla Chili; *Lagidium Cuvieri* Wagn.; *Lagostomus trichodactylus* Brookes, Viskatscha,

Fam. **Dipodæ.** Jerboas. With very long hind legs, which serve for jumping, and large, usually tufted, jumping tail. *Jaculus labradorius* Wagn.. Hüpfmaus; *Dipus Ægyptius* Hempr. Ehrnb., Arabia; *D. sagitta* Schreb., Sea of Aral; *Pedetes caffer* Ill., Cape jumping hare (Springhase), South Africa.

Fam. **Muridæ.** Mice. Grinders: $\frac{3}{3}$. With large eyes and ears, and long sometimes hairy, sometimes ringed, scaly tail. *Cricetus frumentarius* Pall., the Hamster; with internal cheek pouches; constructs subterranean passages and chambers, in which it accumulates winter provisions. It passes through a short winter sleep, and is very hurtful to corn-fields. *Mus rattus*, L.. House-rat, Black Rat; *M. decumanus* Pall., Grey Rat; *M. musculus* L., House Mouse; *M. minutus* Pall. (*pendulinus*); *Hydromys chrysogaster* Geoffr., Australia.

Fam. **Arvicolidæ.** Voles. With thick, broad head, rootless grinders, short, hairy ears and tail. *Arvicola amphibius* L., Water-rat; *A. arvalis* Pall., Field-mouse; *A. agrestis* L.; *Hypudæus glareolus* Schr.; *Myodes lemmus* L., the Lemming, on high mountains of Norway and Sweden, known by its migrations in immense flocks before the approach of the cold weather. *Fiber zibethicus* L., North America.

Fam. **Georhychidæ.** *Spalax typhlus* Pall., Blindmouse. South East Europe: *Georhychus capensis* Pall.

Fam. **Castoridæ.** Beavers. Grinders: $\frac{4}{4}$. With flat, scaled swimming-tail. Two glandular sacs which secrete the castoreum open into the prepuce. *Castor fiber* L., the common Beaver.

Fam. **Myoxidæ.** Dormice. Connecting links between the Mice and Squirrels. *Myoxus Glis* Schreb., Dormouse; *M.* (*Muscardinus*) *avellanarius* L.; *M.* (*Eliomys*) *nitela* Schreb.

Fam. **Sciuridæ.** Squirrels. Grinders: $\frac{5\,(4)}{4}$. *Sciurus vulgaris* L., Europe and North Asia; *Tamias striatus* L.; *Pteromys volans* L., Flying Squirrel, Siberia; *Spermophilus Citillus* L., East Europe; *Arctomys marmota* Schreb., the Marmot, Alps; *A. bobac* Schreb., Poland.

## Order 9.—Insectivora.

*Plantigrade Mammals with clawed digits, with complete dentition, small canines, and sharp-pointed grinders.*

Small Mammals, which resemble in their appearance different types of Rodents, but in structure and mode of life lead to the Carnivora. The head ends with a pointed snout, which is often elongated like a proboscis. The external ears are sometimes large, and sometimes reduced; the eyes are always small and reduced, and sometimes hidden beneath the fur. The dentition (fig. 697) is especially important, and resembles that of the insectivorous Bats. All the three kinds of teeth are present. The incisors are usually of considerable size, but of variable number. The canines are not always clearly distinguished from the incisors and the front grinders. The grinders are numerous, and have sharply-tuberculated crowns, and are divided into anterior præmolars, of which the posterior corresponds to the carnassial tooth of the true Carnivora, and into posterior molars, which are characterized by being composed of prismatic divisions. All are plantigrades, with naked soles, and usually five-toed feet, armed with strong claws. The mammæ are abdominal; the placenta is discoidal. They feed on small animals, principally on Insects and Worms, which they destroy in great numbers, thereby benefitting man.

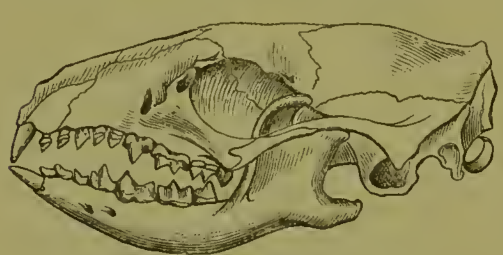


Fig. 697.—Skull of *Erinaceus europæus*.

Fam. **Erinaceidæ** (Hedgehogs). Back covered with stiff bristles and spines, which afford a complete protection to the animal when the body is rolled into a ball by the action of the strongly-developed cutaneous muscles. *Erinaceus europæus* L., Hedgehog, Urchin, with 36 teeth: $\frac{3}{3}\frac{7}{5}\left[i.\frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}\ c.\frac{0\cdot0}{0\cdot0}\ p.m.\frac{4\cdot4}{2\cdot2}\ m.\frac{3\cdot3}{3\cdot3}\right]$. Digs holes with two exits about a foot deep in the earth and hibernates. *E. fossilis* Schreb., Cave Hedgehog; *Centetes ecaudatus* Wagn., Tanrec, Madagascar; snout elongated like a proboscis.

Fam. **Soricidæ** (Shrews). With proboscis-like snout, soft fur, and tail covered with short hairs. Peculiar glands on the sides of the body or at the root of the tail give the true Shrews an unpleasant musty smell. *Cladobates tana* Wagn.; *Cl. murinus* Müll. Schl., Borneo; *Macroscelides typicus* Smith, South Africa. *Sorex*; with 28 to 33 teeth; *S. vulgaris* L., Common Shrew-mouse; *S. fodiens* Pall., Water Shrew-mouse; *S. pygmæus* Pall. *Myogale moschata* Pall., the Desman, as large as the Hamster, South East Russia.

Fam. **Talpidæ** (Moles). With short, laterally-directed digging feet, soft velvety fur, and proboscis. *Talpa*. Dentition: $\frac{3}{4}\ \frac{1}{1}\ \frac{3}{2}\ \Big|\ \frac{4}{4}\ \left(i.\frac{3\cdot3}{4\cdot4}\ c.\frac{1\cdot1}{1\cdot1}\ p.m.\frac{3\cdot3}{2\cdot2}\ m.\frac{4\cdot4}{4\cdot4} = 44\right)$. *T. europæa* L., Mole, constructs an ingenious subterranean dwelling, which communicates by a long gallery with the daily multiplying burrows which the animal makes in hunting for food. The nest consists of a softly-lined central chamber and two circular passages, of which the upper one is the smaller, and communicates by three passages with the central chamber, while the lower and larger lies in the same plane as the chamber. Five or six communicating passages pass from the upper circular passage into the lower, from which a number of horizontal passages radiate, and usually curve round and open into the common gallery. *T. cæca* L., the Blind Mole of South Europe; *Chrysochlorys inaurata* Schreb., Cape Golden Mole; *Condylura cristata* L., the North American Star-nosed Mole; *Scalops aquaticus* L., Water Mole, North America.

## Order 10.—Pinnipedia.

*Hairy aquatic Mammalia with five-toed fin-like feet, of which the posterior are directed backwards; with complete dentition; without caudal fin.*

The body is elongated, spindle-shaped, possesses four fin-like feet, and ends with a short conical tail. The head is very small in proportion to the body, of globular shape, with swollen lips, and usually without external ears. The surface of the body is covered with a short, but close, smooth fur. The short limbs end with broad swimming fins, which possess five digits, armed with blunt or sharp claws. The movements on land are effected in the following way: the animal raises the anterior part of its body, and throws it forward; it employs the two front feet as supports to fix the body, and then by bending its back drags the hinder part forward. In swimming the anterior extremities are applied to the body, and are used as rudders, while the hind feet serve as swimming fins.

The dentition, which is usually complete, indicates a predatory mode of life, resembling that of the true *Carnivora*, to which order the *Pinnipedia* are also allied in other anatomical characters, as in the possession of a two-horned uterus and a zonary placenta. With regard to the dentition, however, there are essential differences between the families of the Walruses and Seals. The Seals have $\frac{3}{2}$, more rarely $\frac{2}{1}$ chisel-shaped incisors, small canines in each jaw, and $\frac{6-5}{5}$ jagged grinders, of which one or two are true molars. The Walruses have a complete dentition only in the young stage; the incisors, which at first are $\frac{3}{3}$, are soon reduced to $\frac{1}{1}$ in the præmaxilla. The canines in the upper jaw are transformed into huge tusks, which are used when the animal crawls on land to fix the anterior part of the body. There are five grinders in the upper jaw and four in the lower, with masticatory surfaces which wear away, in course of time, obliquely from within outwards. The change of teeth usually takes place during embryonic life. The Seals live principally on fish; the Walruses on sea-weeds, Crustacea, and Molluscs, the shells of which they crush with their grinders.

Fam. **Phocidæ** (Seals). Pinnipedes with complete dentition, short canines, and jagged molars. *Halichœrus grypus* Nilss., Utsel. *Phoca vitulina* L., Common Seal, $\frac{3}{2}\frac{1}{1}\frac{5}{5}$; *Ph. grœnlandica* Nilss., Northern Seas; *Cystophora cristata* Fabr., Greenland; *Otaria jubata* Forst., Sea-lion of South America: *O.* (*Callorhinus*) *ursina* Per., Sea-bear, Greenland.

Fam. **Trichechidæ** (Walruses). The upper canines are large, rootless, downwardly-directed tusks. The grinders are at first bluntly pointed, but are gradually worn down, and eventually reduced to three in each ramus, while in the upper jaw there is an internally placed incisor. *Trichechus rosmarus* L., Walrus of the Polar Seas. Dentition: $\frac{2\,(1)}{2\,(0)}\,\frac{1}{0}\,\frac{3\,(4)}{3\,(4)}$.

## Order 11.—Carnivora = Feræ.

*Carnivorous Mammalia with predatory dentition, without or with a rudimentary clavicle, and with strongly-clawed digits.*

The Carnivora are distinguished from the Insectivora by their larger size, and by their genuine carnivorus dentition (fig. 698). The dentition contains all three kinds of teeth: above and below six small incisors with single roots, and at their sides a long, conical pointed canine tooth; then a number of grinders, which are distinguished into præmolars (*d. spurii*), a carnassial tooth (*d. sectorius*), and molars (*d. molares*). We never find prismatic grinders with needle-shaped points on the crown, as in the *Insectivora*. The compressed and sharp-edged præmolars are the least developed; the characteristic carnassial teeth are distinguished by the size of their cutting, usually two-or three-toothed crown, and often by the possession of a posterior bluntly-tuberculated lobe (upper carnassial tooth). The lower carnassial tooth is always the first molar, while the upper is the last præmolar. The true molars have several roots; they possess bluntly-tuberculated crowns, and vary in size and number. The external form of the skull and dentition, the high temporal crest of the skull for the attachment of the large temporal muscle, and the marked curvature of the zygomatic arch for the passage of the same, the transverse articular cavity (glenoid cavity) of the temporal bone, and the cylindrical articular head of the lower jaw, which restricts the motion of the jaw to the vertical plane and excludes lateral movements,—are characters which are common to all the Carnivora, and coincide with the form of the dentition.

FIG. 698.—Skull of *Felis Leo*.

The limbs end with four or five freely-movable digits, which are armed with strong cutting claws (accessory to the dental apparatus), and in the front limbs are also used for seizing the prey. Only a few Carnivora, as the Bears, are true plantigrades resting the whole sole of the foot on the ground; others, as the *Viverridæ*, only place the anterior part of the sole (the digits and metacarpals) on the ground; the most agile of the Carnivora, on the other hand, are digitigrade, *e.g.*, the *Felidæ* (fig. 699.) The uterus is two-horned, the placenta zonary. Most *Carnivora* have peculiar anal glands, which emit an intense odour. The Carnivora are found in all parts of the world, except Australia, where they are replaced by the carnivorous Marsupials. Fossil remains first appear in the Eocene.

Fam. **Ursidæ** (Bear-like Carnivora). Plantigrades of unwieldy form, with elongated snout, and broad, usually quite naked soles, and five digits. *Ursus* L., Bear. Of unwieldy build, with very short tail. Grinders: $\frac{3}{4}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{2}{2}$ $\left[i.e.\ p.m.\ \frac{3\cdot 3}{4\cdot 4}\ carnassial,\ \frac{1\cdot 1}{1\cdot 1}\ m.\ \frac{2\cdot 2}{2\cdot 2}\right]$. The front grinders fall out early. *U. maritimus* Desm., Polar Bear, Northern Polar Sea; *U. arctos* L., Brown Bear; *Procyon lotor* L., Washing Racoon, is wont to dip its food in water, North America; *Nasua rufa* Desm., the Coatimondi (Rüsselbär), Brazil; *Cercoleptes caudivolvulus* Ill., the Kinkajou (Wickelbär), Guiana and Peru.

Fam. **Mustelidæ** (Marten-like Carnivora). Some are plantigrade (Badger), some semiplantigrade; body elongated, with short legs, and five-toed feet with non-retractile claws; only one molar behind the large carnassial. *Meles taxus* Pall., Badger. *Mephitis mesomelas* Licht., Skunk (Stinkthier), North America. *Gulo borealis* Briss., Glutton; *Mustela martes* L., Pine-marten, grinders: $\frac{3}{4}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{1}{1}$; *M. foina* Briss., House-marten; *M. zibelina* L., Sable-marten, Siberia; *Putorius putorius* L.; *P. vulgaris* L., Weasel; *P. erminea* L., Ermine; *P. lutreola* L., (Nörz); *Lutra vulgaris* Erxl., Common Otter; *L. canadensis* Schreb., North America; *Enhydris marina* Erxl., Sea-otter, West islands of North America.

Fam. **Viverridæ** (Civets). Body elongated, sometimes cat-like, sometimes marten-like in form; with pointed snout and long tail, which is sometimes rolled up into the form of a ring; they are either plantigrade, semiplantigrade, or digitigrade. The feet have five digits, and the claws are usually entirely, or half retractile. Half the foot, or only the toes, are placed on the ground. *Viverra zibetha* L. Grinders: $\frac{3}{4}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{2}{2}$. With large glandular sac between the anus and external generatives, in which the oily secretion known as "Civet," and used as perfume and for external application in medicine, accumulates. *V. zivetta* Schreb., the African Civet-cat, domesticated in Egypt and Abyssinia; *V. genetta* L., the Genet, South Europe; *Herpestes ichneumon* L., the Mongoose or Ichneumon (Pharaonsratte), Egypt and South Europe.

Fam. **Canidæ** (Dogs). Digitigrades, with non-retractile claws, five-toed front feet, and four-toed hind feet. *Canis lupus* L., Wolf. Grinders: $\frac{3}{4}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{2}{2\,(1)}$. In Europe, especially Norway and Sweden, also in Asia; *C. latrans* Sm., the Prairie Wolf; *C. aureus* L., the Jackal; *C. familiaris* L., Dog (*cauda sinistrorsum recurvata* L.). The numerous races, which are known only in the domesticated and run-wild state, have certainly been derived from more than one ancestral species. *C. vulpes* L., Fox; *C. lagopus* L., Polar Fox, gray in summer, white in winter.

Fam. **Hyænidæ** (Hyæna-like Carnivora). Digitigrades with sloping back which bears a mane of elongated hairs. The dentition resembles that of the Cats in the small development of the molars, of which there is only one in the upper jaw. *Hyæna striata* Zimm., the striped Hyæna of Africa and parts of India. Grinders $\frac{3}{3}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{1}{0}$. *H. crocuta* Zimm., the spotted Hyæna of South Africa.

Fam. **Felidæ** (Cats). Digitigrades of slender build, adapted for jumping; with short jaws, and only few grinders—four in the upper, three in the lower jaw. Molars absent, except one small tooth above projecting transversely inwards. The canines and carnassials are, however, so much the more powerfully developed. The anterior of the two præmolars of the upper jaw is reduced. In walking, the last phalanx of each digit is raised vertically, so that it does not touch the ground, and the claws are protected from wear. *Felis leo* L., Lion; grinders, $\frac{2}{2}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{1}{0}$. *F. concolor* L., Puma; *F. tigris* L., Tiger, Asia; *F. onca* L., Jaguar, Paraguay and Uruguay; *F. pardalis* L., Panther-cat, South America; *F. pardus* L., Panther or Leopard, Africa and West Asia; *F. catus* L., Wild Cat, grey, with stripes, and transverse bars and vertical pupils, Central and Northern Europe; *F. maniculata* Rüpp., Nubian Cat; *F. domestica* L., the Domestic Cat, only known in domesticated state, probably descended from several species; *Cynailurus guttata* Herrm., and *jubata* Schreb. (Guepard); *F. serval* L., Serval, Senegal; *Lynx lynx* L., with a tuft of hairs on the ear; *L. caracal* Schreb., Asia and Persia.

## Order 12.—Chiroptera.

*Mammals with complete dentition; with a flying membrane (patagium) extending between the limbs and the sides of the body, and between the elongated fingers of the fore-limb; with two thoracic mammæ.*

Amongst the Marsupials (*Petaurus*), the Rodents (*Pteromys*), and the *Prosimiæ* (*Galeopithecus*), there are a number of forms which are assisted in jumping by a kind of parachute, which consists of a cutaneous expansion—the *patagium*—stretched between the limbs on each side. The patagium is much more completely developed in the Bats; in these animals it is continued over the extraordinarily elongated fingers of the hand, and in virtue of its enormous size and its great elasticity constitutes a true organ of flight, which, however, differs considerably from that of birds. The tail is included in the patagium, but the thumb and the foot are separate from it (fig. 699). The thumb has two phalanges, and is armed with a claw, as also are the five digits of the foot. Peculiar outgrowths of the skin of the head, lobe-like appendages of the nose and ear, often give the face a very strange expression. Except upon these appendages, and on the thin elastic patagia, both of which have a large supply of nerves and a delicate sense of touch, the surface of the body is closely covered with hair. The skeleton (fig. 699) is light, and displays in its structure the Mammalian type; it is, however, distinguished from that of other Mammalia by the rigidity of the thoracic framework, and by the length of the strongly developed sacrum, with which the ischia are united. The possession of a *crista sterni*, and the ossification of the sternocostal cartilages, and some other peculiarities recall the skeleton of the birds. The femur and crus (middle division of leg) are, unlike the corresponding parts of the arm, very short. A spurlike process, called the *calcar*, projects from the inner side of the ankle-joint, and serves for the support of the femoral and caudal part of the patagium. Of the sense organs the eyes are relatively slightly developed, but on the contrary, the senses of smell, of hearing, and of touch, are, in correspondence with the nocturnal habits, of great importance. Spallanzani has shown that Bats which have been made blind are able to avoid all obstacles in their flight with great skill. The sense of hearing is not less developed; it is essentially assisted by a large

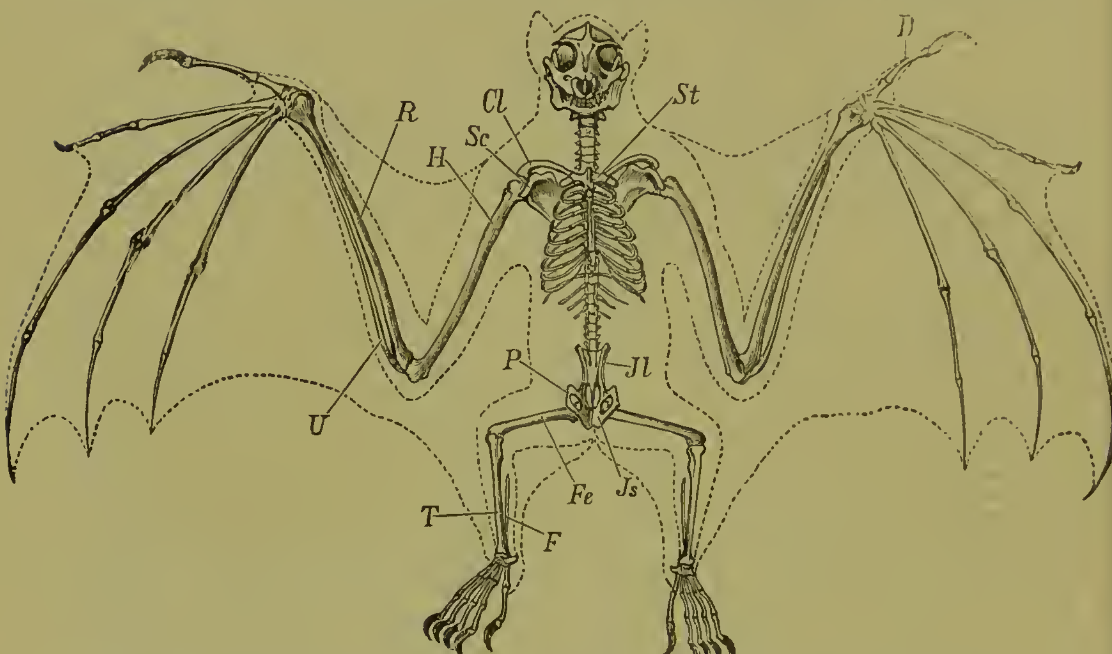



FIG. 699.—Skeleton of *Pteropus* (after Owen, slightly altered). *St*, Sternum; *Cl*, Clavicle; *Sc*, Scapula; *H*, Humerus; *R*, Radius; *U*, Ulna; *D*, Thumb; *Jl*, Ilium; *P*, Pubis; *Js*, Ischium; *Fe*, Femur; *T*, Tibia; *F*, Fibula.

pinna, which is provided with special lobes, and can be closed by a valve.

Bats are nocturnal animals, and feed on Insects. Amongst the exotic species there are some which attack Birds and Mammals, and suck their blood (Vampire); other, and especially the larger species live on fruit. Many fall into a winter sleep. They bear only one or two young at a birth, suckle them with their pectoral mammary glands, and carry them about during their flight.

Sub-order 1. **Frugivora** (Fruit-eating Bats). With elongated dog-like head, small ears, and short rudimentary tail. The index finger, which has three phalanges, often bears a claw as well as the thumb (fig. 699). The other fingers have two phalanges, and are without claws. The dentition has four or two incisors, which often fall out, one canine, and four or six grinders with flat, bluntly-tuberculated crowns. The præmaxillæ are loosely united with one another, and with the maxillæ. The tongue is beset with a number of backwardly-directed, horny spines. They inhabit the forests of the hot regions of Africa, East India, and Australia. Many of them are eaten on account of their well-flavoured flesh.

Fam. **Pteropidæ** (Flying Foxes). The small ears and the nose are without the cutaneous appendages and valves. *Pteropus edulis* Geoff., Kalong, East Indies. Dentition : $\frac{2}{1}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{2}{3}\Big|\frac{3}{3}$. *Harpyia cephalotes* Pall., Amboina.

Sub-order 2. **Insectivora** (Insect-eating Bats). The snout is short; the ears are large, and frequently covered with valves. Grinding teeth sharply tuberculated or cutting, and composed of three-sided pyramids. The thumb alone bears a claw. Some of them live on insects: some on the blood of warm-blooded animals.


FIG. 700.—Head of *Phyllostoma* (*Vampyrus*) *spectrum* (règne animal).

Tribe 1. **Gymnorhina.** The nose is smooth, and without foliaceous appendages. The præmaxillæ are firmly ankylosed with the maxillæ. The ears sometimes meet one another on the top of the head, and are sometimes widely separate; the valves of the ears vary considerably.

Fam. **Vespertilionidæ.** The long and slender tail is entirely included in the interfemoral membrane. *Plecotus auritus* L., Long-eared Bat; *Synotus barbastellus* Schreb., the Barbastelle; *Vespertilio murinus* Schreb. Dentition : $\frac{2}{3}\,\frac{1}{1}\,\frac{3}{3}\Big|\frac{3}{3}$. *Vesperugo noctula* Schreb.; *V. pipistrellus* Schreb.

Fam. **Taphozoidæ.** Tail shorter than the interfemoral membrane. The base of the thumb is within the patagium. *Taphozous leucopterus* Temm., South Africa; *Mystacina turbercuata* Gray, New Zealand.

Tribe 2. **Phyllorhina.** Cutaneous appendages are spread on and over the nose. They consist of a horseshoe-shaped anterior leaf (*ferrum equinum*), a medium saddle (*sella*), and a posterior, usually vertical lancet-shaped leaf (*lancet*) (fig. 700). The præmaxillæ are not ankylosed with the maxillæ. Ears separated. Feed partly on the blood of warm-blooded Vertebrates, which they attack while sleeping.

Fam. **Rhinolophidæ.** Ears separated without tragus. *Rhinolophus hipposideros* Bechst., small Horseshoe-nose. *Rh. ferrum equinum* Shreb., large Horseshoe-nose ; *Phyllorhina gigas* Wagn., Guinea.

Fam. **Megadermidæ.** The large ears approximated, with long tragus. *Megaderma lyra* Geoffr. ; *Rhinopoma microphyllum* Geoffr., Egypt.

Fam. **Phyllostomidæ.** With thick head and long truncated tongue. Nasal apparatus usually with upright lancet. Ears almost always separate, with ear-valve. *Phyllostoma hastatum* Pall., Brazil. Dentition : $\frac{2}{2}\frac{1}{1}\frac{5}{5}$. *Vampyrus spectrum* L., the Vampire of Central America.

## Order 13.—Prosimiæ (Lemurs).

*Arboreal animals of the Old World, with complete insectivor-like dentition, with hands and prehensile feet, without a closed orbit, and with thoracic and abdominal mammæ.*

Fig. 701.—*Chiromys madagascariensis* from Vogt and Specht.

The dentition holds a position intermediate between that of the Carnivora and that of the Insectivora. There are usually four incisors, of which the upper are separated by a wide gap, while the lower project more or less horizontally ; there are projecting canines, and numerous sharply-tuberculated grinders. The lower jaw is relatively weak, and its two rami remain permanently separate at the symphysis. The orbits are, indeed, completely surrounded by a bridge of bone, but are not shut off from the temporal fossa as they are in the Apes. In many Lemurs the clitoris is perforated by the urethra. Uterus two-horned or double. There are usually several pairs of teats. The anterior limbs are shorter than the posterior. The great toe, like the thumb, is opposable except in *Galeopithecus*. They thus have the hands and prehensile feet of Apes, and also flat nails on the extremities of the fingers and toes, except in *Galeopithecus* and *Chiromys* (fig. 701), which have claws on all the fingers and toes.

The second toe of the foot alone forms an exception, being armed with a long claw. There may, however, be a claw on the middle toe. The tail presents great variations in size and development, but can never be used as a prehensile tail. The *Prosimiæ* inhabit exclusively the hot regions of the Old World, principally Madagascar, Africa, and South Asia. They are almost all nocturnal in their habits, climb with great skill, but slowly and lazily, and feed on Insects and small Vertebrates.

Fam. **Galeopithecidæ = Dermoptera.** With closely-furred patagium, which they use as a parachute in jumping. Lower incisors pectinated and inclined forwards. They are most nearly allied to the Makis; they are nocturnal in their habits, and live partly on fruit and partly on Insects. During the day they sleep in their hiding-places, suspended like Bats. *Galeopithecus volans* L., the flying Maki, Island of Sunda.

Fam. **Chiromyidæ.** With rodent-like dentition, and with claw-like nails on the fingers and toes. The large opposable great toe of the hind foot alone has a flat nail. In the præmaxillæ and in the lower jaw there are two large rootless incisors, which project obliquely forwards, and, unlike those of Rodents, are covered with enamel on both sides. *Chiromys madagascariensis* Desm., the Aye-aye, permanent dentition $\frac{1}{1}\ \frac{0}{0}\ \frac{4}{3}$ (Fig. 701).

Fig. 702.—*Otolicnus galago* from Vogt and Specht.

Fam. **Tarsiidæ** (Long-footed animals). With thick head, large ears and eyes, short snout, much elonged proximal tarsal bones (calcaneum and naviculare), and long tail. The middle toe as well as the second may be armed with a claw (*Tarsius*). In their appearance they resemble the Hazel-mice (*Myoxus avellanarius*), in their movements the Squirrels. *Tarsius spectrum* Geoffr., (Gespenstmaki).

Fam. **Lemuridæ.** The lower incisors directed horizontally forwards. Only the second hind toe has a claw-like nail. *Stenops gracilis* v.d. Hoev., the slender Lori, Ceylon; *Nycticebus tardigradus* L., the unwieldy Lori, East Indies and Island of Sunda; *Lichanotus brevicaudatus* Geoffr., Indri of Madagascar; *Propithecus diadema* Wagn., Vlissmaki of Madagascar. *Lemur catta* L., *macaco* L., *mongoz* L., Makis, Madagascar; Dentition $\frac{2(0)}{2}\ \frac{1}{1}\ \frac{3}{3} \mid \frac{3}{3}$. *Otolicnus senegalensis* Geoffr., the common Galago (Fig. 702), Africa.

## Order 14.—Primates L., Pitheci* (Apes).

*With complete dentition and $\frac{2}{2}$ chisel-shaped incisors in closed series on each side; usually with prehensile feet on the hind limbs, and as a rule, with hands on the front limbs; with closed orbit and two pectoral mammæ.*

The Apes, as a rule, are of slender build, corresponding with their quick and easy movements as arboreal animals; there are, however, heavy unwieldy forms, which, as the Baboons (*Cynocephalidæ*), avoid forests and inhabit rocky mountain regions. The body is more or less closely covered with hairs, except on the face, which is naked in parts, and the callous parts of the buttocks (ischial callosities). The hair is often longer in places on the head and trunk, forming tufts and manes. The human look of the face depends mainly upon the slight prominence of the jaws, and is greatest in the early part of life. The facial angle of the adults rarely exceeds 30°; but in one case, viz., in *Chrysothrix sciurea*, is almost twice that size. With the increase in size of the brain, the cranial capsule becomes rounder, and the *foramen magnum* gradually moves from the posterior part on to the lower surface. The pinna of the ear also has a human look, as has also the position of the anteriorly directed eyes. The orbits are completely closed towards the temporal fossæ. Further, the mammæ are two in number and pectoral in position, as in Man. Finally, the dentition and the structure of the extremities (fig. 703) are so similar to those of Man, that he has been placed in the same order as the Apes. There are in each jaw four chisel-shaped incisors, which, as in Man, are placed close to one another without any interval. There are projecting conical canines, and in the Apes of the Old World five, in those of the New World six bluntly-tuberculated grinders, the form of which indicates that the diet is mainly vegetable. The size of the canines, which project almost as much as those of the *Carnivora*, occasions the presence of a considerable gap between the canines and the first præmolars of the lower jaw.

The anterior limbs are usually longer than the posterior. A clavicle is always present. The forearm permits of a rotation of the radius round the ulna, and accordingly of the pronation and supination of the hand, the fingers of which, except in the

* Vrolik. "Recherches d'anatomie comp. sur le Chimpanzé," Amsterdam, 1841.
G. L. Duvernoy, "Des caractères anatomiques des grands Singes pseudo-anthropomorphes." *Arch. du Muséum*, Tom. VIII., 1855.
R. Owen. "Osteology of the Anthropomorphidæ," *Transact. Zool. Soc.*, vol. i., 1835; vol. ii., 1841; vol. iii., 1849; vol. iv., 1853.

*Arctopitheci*, have flat or arched nails. In structure and function the hand is considerably inferior to that of man. The pelvis is long and extended, but in the *Anthropomorpha* it is shorter and more like that of man, though it is always flatter. The tibia and fibula are always separate and movable. The posterior extremity ends in all cases in a well-developed, prehensile foot, which, according to the osseous structure and muscular arrangements, we are not justified in calling a hand. The opposable hallux always has a nail, while the other toes may be armed with claws (*Arctopitheci*). By the arrangement of the hind limbs the Apes are admirably adapted for climbing and jumping. On the other hand they are less fitted for walking or running upon the four limbs, in consequence of the position of the foot; the leg is directed obliquely inwards, so that only the external edge of the foot rests on the ground. The gait is, therefore, clumsy, except in the *Arctopitheci*.

Their movements on the boughs and branches of trees, which are effected

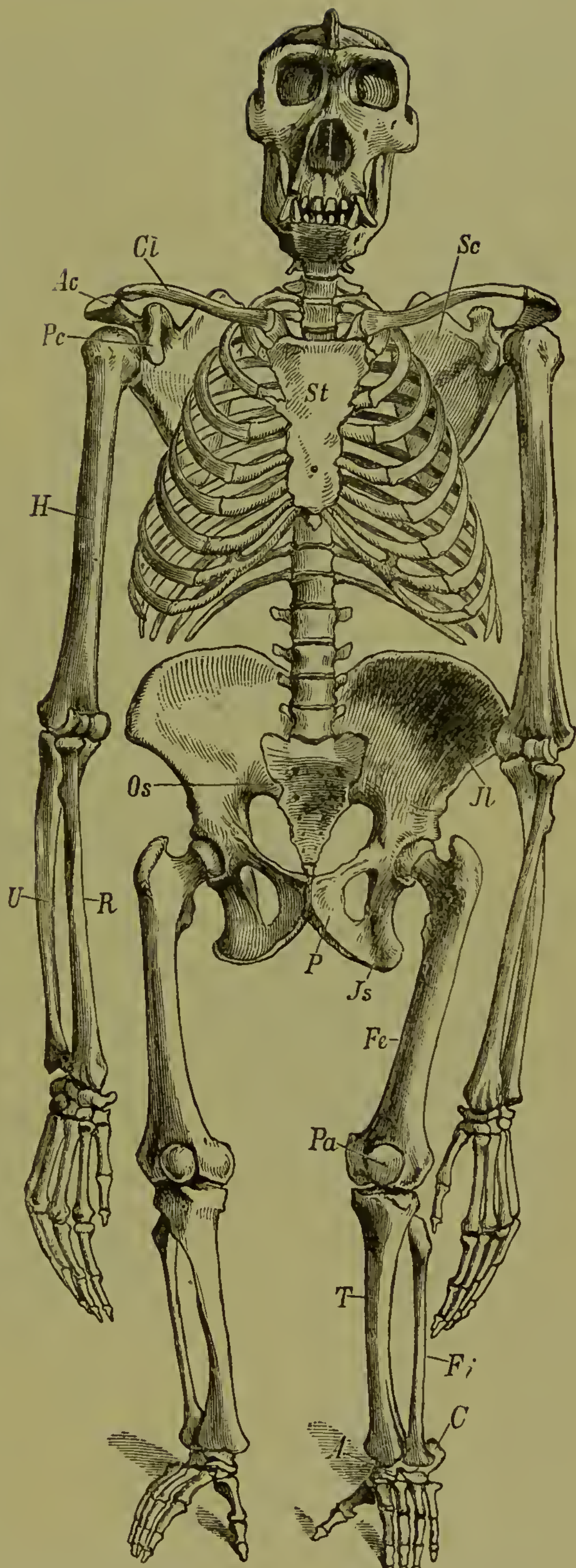



Fig. 703.—Skeleton of *Gorilla engena*. *St*, Sternum; *Sc*, Scapula; *Ac*, Acromion; *Pc*, Coracoid process; *Cl*, Clavicle; *H*, Humerus; *R*, Radius; *U*, Ulna; *Os*, Sacrum; *Jl*, Ilium; *Js*, Ischium; *P*, Pubis; *Fe*, Femur; *Pa*, Patella; *T*, Tibia; *Fi*, Fibula; *C*, Calcaneum; *A*, Astragalus.

with great ease and safety, are often assisted by the long tail, which may even act as an accessory prehensile organ.

Most Apes are gregarious, and live in forests in hot countries. In Europe, the precipices of Gibraltar are the single resort of a species of Ape, the Barbary Ape (*Inuus ecaudatus*), which is probably African in origin, and has elsewhere completely vanished from Europe. Only a few Apes lead a solitary life; most of them live together in large companies, which are led by the largest and strongest male. They feed chiefly on fruits and seeds, but also on insects, eggs and birds. The females produce only one young (more rarely two) at a birth; they protect and tend their offspring with great love. Intellectually the Primates take with the dogs and elephants the highest place amongst Mammalia.

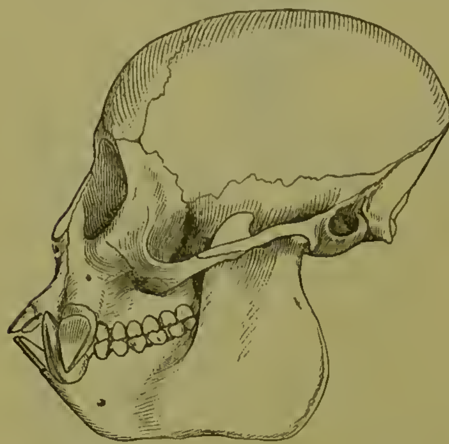


FIG. 704.—Skull of *Pithecia Satanas*.

Suborder 1. **Arctopitheci.** Marmosets. South American Apes of small size, with long hairy tail, and claw-like nails. The great toe is opposable, and has a flat nail. The thumb is not opposable. In the number of teeth (thirty-two) they resemble the apes of the Old World, from which, however, they differ in the fact that the præmolars (three) are more numerous than the molars (two). They produce two or even three young at a birth, and feed on eggs, insects, and fruit.

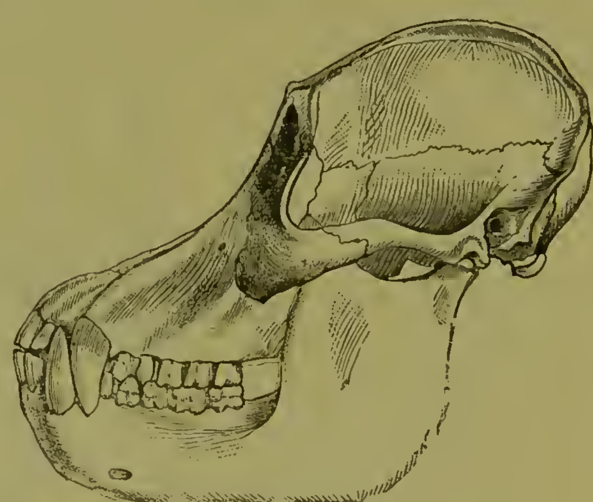


FIG. 705.—Skull of *Satyrus orang*.

Fam. **Hapalidæ.** Dental formula $\frac{2}{2}\ \frac{1}{1}\ \frac{3}{3}\ \Big|\ \frac{2}{2}$. Without prehensile tail. *Hapale Jacchus* Geoffr., the Sahui or Ouistiti; *Midas Rosalia* L.

Suborder 2. **Platyrrhini.** Apes of the New World, with broad nasal septum, and with thirty-six teeth $\left(\frac{2}{2}\ \frac{1}{1}\ \frac{3}{3}\ \Big|\ \frac{3}{3}\right)$. (Fig. 704

The tail is sometimes used as a prehensile organ. The fingers and toes have arched or flat nails. The thumb is sometimes reduced, and is never opposable to the same extent as the great toe. Cheek pouches and ischial callosities always absent.

Fam. **Pithecidæ.** Apes with long hairy tail, which cannot be used for prehension; *Pithecia Satanas* Hoffms., Brazil; *Nyctipithecus trivirgatus* v. Humb., New Granada; *Chrysothrix sciurea* L., Saimir, Squirrel Monkey, Guiana; *Callithrix personata* Geoffr., east coast of Brazil.


FIG. 706.—*Gorilla engena*, from Vogt and Specht.

Fam. **Cebidæ.** Apes with prehensile tail covered with hair or naked at the end. *Cebus capucinus* L., Sai, Capuchin; *Ateles paniscus* L., Koaita, Spider-monkey, Brazil; *A. Belzebuth* Geoffr., Guiana; *Lagothrix Humboldtii* Geoff., Peru. *Mycetes* Ill., Howling Monkeys. *M. niger* Geoffr., Brazil; *M. seniculus* L.

Suborder 3. **Catarrhini.** Apes of the Old World, with narrow nasal septum, and approximated, downwardly directed nostrils, with thirty-two teeth $\left(\frac{2}{2}\ \frac{1}{1}\ \frac{2}{2}\ \middle|\ \frac{3}{3}\right)$. (Fig. 705). The tail is never prehensile, but is in some cases rudimentary, or, as in the *Anthropomorphidæ*, entirely absent as an external appendage.

Fam. **Cynocephalidæ.** Baboons. Of stout, unwieldy build, with dog-like projecting snout. The canine teeth are large like those of the *Carnivora*. There are cheek pouches and large ischial callosities. *Cynocephalus hamadryas* L.; *C. Babuin* Desm., Abyssinia; *C. Gelada* Rüpp., Gelada; *Papio mormon* L., Mandrill, Africa.

Fam. **Cercopithecidæ.** Of slender, light build, with cheek pouches, ischial callosities, and tail of various length, without terminal tuft. *Macacus sinicus* L., and *silenus* L., India; *M. cynomolgus* L., the Java Ape; *Rhesus nemestrinus* Geoffr., Borneo and Sumatra; *Inuus sylvanus* L., *ecaudatus* Geoffr., Barbary Ape, North Africa and Gibraltar; *Cercopithecus sabæus* F. Cuv., West Africa.

Fam. **Semnopithecidæ.** With small ischial callosities, without true cheek pouches. The thumb is short. *Semnopithecus entellus* L., reverenced in the Indies as the holy ape of the Hindoos; *S. nasicus* Cuv., Borneo.

The African genus *Colobus* is allied to the *Semnopithecidæ*, from which it is distinguished principally by the thumb, which is rudimentary, or wanting. *Colobus Guereza* Wagn., with long pendent white mane and caudal tuft, Abyssinia.

Fam. **Anthropomorphæ.** Without tail, with long front limbs, without ischial callosities [except in the Gibbons] and cheek pouches. The body is closely covered with hair on the under side of the trunk and the limbs. *Hylobates Lar* Ill., *H. syndactylus* Cuv., Siamang, Gibbon. The front limbs are very long, reaching to the ground. *Satyrus Orang* L., Orang-Utang, Pongo. Lives in the swampy forests of Borneo. *Gorilla engena = gina* J. Geoffr., Gorilla (fig 706). Lives gregariously in forests on the west coast of Africa (on the Gaboon River) and reaches a height of five and a half to six feet. *Troglodytes niger* L., the Chimpanzee; lives in great companies in the forests of Guinea, and is said to build a nest with a roof upon trees.

## Man.*

*With reason and articulate speech, with upright gait, with hands and broad-soled, short-toed feet.*

Although the view, which formerly was so widely held, that Man belongs to a special natural kingdom, above and outside the animal

* J. F. Blumenbach, "De generis humanis varietate nativa." Gottingæ, 1795. And, "Decas Collectionis suæ craniorum diversarum gentium illustrata," Gottingæ, 1790-1820.

J. C. Prichard, "Researches into the Physical History of Mankind." 2nd ed. London, 1826.

A. Retzius, "Anthropologische Aufsätze," übersetzt in Müller's Archiv.

Huxley, "On the zoological relations of man with the lower animals," *Nat. Hist. Rev.*, 1861.

Huxley, "Evidence as to Man's Place in Nature," London, 1863.

C. Vogt, "Vorlesungen über den Menschen," etc., Giessen, 1863.

M. L. Bischoff, "Ueber die Verschiedenheit in der Schädelbildung des Gorilla, Chimpansé und Orang-Utang," etc., München, 1867.

Quetelet, "Anthropométrie," 1870.

Friedrich Müller, "Allgemeine Ethnographie," Wien, 1879.

kingdom, may now be completely put on one side as incompatible with the spirit and method of natural science, yet there are still differences of opinion as to the position of Man in the class of Mammalia, according to the value attributed to the peculiarities of his bodily structure. While Cuvier, and more recently Owen and others, establish a special order (*Bimana*) for Man, other investigators, as Huxley and his followers, attach a much less importance to the characters which separate Man from the anthropoid Apes, and, in agreement with Linnæus, who included Man with the Apes in his family of *Primates*, regard them only as of family value. The most important anatomical differences between Man and the Apes depend upon the configuration of the skull and the face, the structure of the brain, the dentition and the formation of the extremities, the arrangement of which, in connection with certain peculiarities of the vertebral column, permit of the upright posture of the body in walking.

The rounded arched form of the spacious cranial capsule, the considerable preponderance of the skull over the face, which is not placed in front of the skull as in the anthropoid Apes and in other animals, but almost at right angles beneath it, are essential human characters, as are the relatively large mass of the brain, the great size of the anterior and posterior lobes, and, finally, the great development of the cerebral convolutions, which, however, in the Apes are arranged on the same type.

All these peculiarities, which are of the greatest importance for the intellectual development of Man, cannot be regarded as fundamental distinctions, but must rather be ascribed to gradual deviations, since there are still greater differences between the highest and lowest Apes. Efforts have been vainly made to show that certain parts, which are always present in Apes and other Mammals, are absent in Man (*præmaxilla* Blumenbach—Goethe); and the attempts to prove the converse of this, viz., that there are parts of fundamental value in the human organism (*pes hippocampi minor* Owen—Huxley), which are found in no other Mammal, have as completely failed. Further, the completely continuous row of teeth, interrupted by no gap for the opposed canines, a character by which the human dentition is distinguished from that of the *Catarrhina*, is not an exclusive human character, but is known in a fossil Ungulate (*Anoplotherium*); while on the other hand similar gaps have been observed, certainly only in exceptional cases (Kaffir skull in the Erlangen collection) in the human dentition. The prominent chin of Man has indeed the value of a characteristic feature, although even this is less conspicuous in the negroes; nevertheless it is obvious that this feature cannot be regarded as a character of fundamental importance.

Far more important are the differences between the limbs of Man and those of the anthropoid Apes. The proportions of the individual regions are essentially different, although the differences are not greater than those which exist between the three species of anthropoid Apes in this respect. While in Man the legs constitute the sole support of the body, and greatly surpass the arms in length and weight, in the Apes the arms are longer, in various degrees, than the legs; the brachium in Apes being relatively shorter, the antebrachium and hand, on the other hand, much longer than in Man. In none of the three anthropoid Apes does the hand attain the perfection of the human hand; that of the Gorilla approaches it most nearly, but is clumsier, heavier, and has a shorter thumb. The foot also of the Apes is relatively very long, and is prehensile, the sole being more or less turned inwards. With regard to the arrangement of the bones and muscles, the human foot differs essentially from a true hand, but not from the prehensile foot of the Apes. The human foot presents a number of features, which are peculiar to Man, and are an essential condition of the maintenance of the upright posture; these are the large and strong, but non-opposable, great toe, the arched instep (articulation of the tarsal and metatarsal bones), and the horizontal position of the sole upon the ground. With these peculiarities of the foot are correlated the large development of the calf muscle, the form of the broad shovel-shaped pelvis, the form of the thorax, and the double curvature of the vertebral column. However high a value we may concede to the form of the head, the development of the brain and the upright position of the body, and the upright gait, yet it is undeniable that Man and the Apes are built upon the same type.

The most important consideration which induced the older naturalists to assign to man an entirely special place outside the animal kingdom, is his high intellectual development, which, founded on the possession of articulate speech, has elevated him to a reasonable being, capable of almost unlimited perfection. In fact, it were foolish to deny the great gap which, in this relation, separates Man from the highest beast. Nevertheless, if we examine without prejudice the intellectual development of the individual in early life, and of civilised humanity since the first dawn of culture, and if we subject the intellectual peculiarities of the higher animals to a comparative investigation, we shall reach with Wundt the conclusion that the mind of Man differs from that of the beasts only in the degree of development which it has attained.

The origin of Man and his early history are hidden in complete obscurity, but the view that he has existed for only a few centuries on the earth is completely contradicted by antiquarian and geological investigations. The simultaneous appearance of the remains of human bones (skulls of Engis and of the Neanderthal) and of stone implements, with the skeletal remains of extinct animals (*Mammoth*, *Rhinoceros tichorhinus*) of the diluvial period, proves the great antiquity of the human race. Man certainly existed in the pleistocene period, but possibly also at the beginning of the tertiary epoch. There are, however, at the present time, no definite facts with regard to his origin; * the view, that the highest form of life has also originated by the process of natural selection from one of the lower forms of Primates, is only a deduction from the Darwinian theory.

The question as to the unity of the species of Man,* which may be answered in different ways according to the different conceptions of species, may remain undiscussed, since from the impossibility of drawing a distinct line between species and race, a definite conclusion is impossible. Blumenbach, at the end of the last century, distinguished five races of men, and characterised them by the form of the head and skulls, by the colour of the skin, and the structure of the hair.

1. The **Caucasian** race, with white skin, fair or dark hair, globular skull, high forehead, vertically placed teeth, narrow nose, and long oval face. Inhabitants of Europe, West Asia, and North Africa. To this race belong the *Indogermanic* peoples (Germans, Celts, Hindoos, Iranians, etc.); the *Semitic* peoples (Jews, Arabs, Berbers, etc.); and the *Slavs*.

2. The **Mongolian** race, with yellowish skin, almost quadrangular short head, narrow, flat forehead, small nose, projecting cheekbones, and broad face, with oblique eyes (from above and outside to below and inside), stiff, black hair. They inhabit parts of Asia, Lapland, and North America (*Eskimos*).

3. The **Ethiopian** race, with black skin and close, crisp, curly hair, with narrow elongated skull, and prominent jaws with oblique

* Cf. Ch. Darwin, "The descent of Man, and selection in relation to sex." London: John Murray, vol. i. and ii., 1871.

Cf. Th. Waitz. "Anthropologie der Naturvölker," fortgesetzt von Gerland, Leipzig, 1859-1872.

alveolar portion; with thick lips, short flat nose, retreating forehead and chin (facial angle only 75°). They inhabit Central and South Africa (Negroes, Kaffirs, etc.).

4. The **American** race, with brown-yellow or copper-red skin, with stiff black hair, deep-set eyes, projecting cheek bones, and broad face. The forehead is narrow, the nose short, but projecting. They inhabit America.

5. The **Malayan** race, with yellow-brown to black skin, with close black loose hair, broad thick nose, turned-up lips and projecting jaws. They inhabit Australia and the East Indian Archipelago.

Cuvier recognised only the white, or Caucasian, the yellow, or Mongolian, and the black, or Ethiopian races as such; and in distinguishing them he laid great stress on differences in language and capability of civilization. The efforts of the modern Anthropologists to found a better and more natural division of races and stocks are based, according to the works of Retzius, principally on the value of the dimensions of the skulls, for the measurement of which a number of methods have been invented. Retzius distinguishes according to the different forms of the face and skull, the long-heads, or *Dolichocephali* (9 : 7), and short heads or *Brachycephali* (8 : 7); and further, according to the disposition of the jaws and teeth, the *Orthognathi* and the *Prognathi*. The people of Europe are orthognathous, and in great part, the Celts and Germans excepted, brachycephalic.

# INDEX.

Printed by Hazell, Watson, & Viney, Limited, London and Aylesbury.